The Right Plesaunt and Goodly Historie
of
The Fourse Sonnes of Aymon.

Early English Text Society.
1884, 1885.
THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PARTS X, XI.

The Right Pleasant and Goodly Historic
of the

Four Sonnes of Aymon.

ENGLISH FROM THE FRENCH BY
WILLIAM CAXTON,
AND PRINTED BY HIM ABOUT 1489.

EDITED FROM
THE UNIQUE COPY, NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF EARL SPENCER,
with an Introduction,
BY
OCTAVIA RICHARDSON.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXV.
THE ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART X.

The Right Pleasant and Goodly Historie

of the

Fourte Sonnes of Aymon.

ENGLISHT FROM THE FRENCH BY

WILLIAM CAXTON,

AND PRINTED BY HIM ABOUT 1489.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY, NOW IN THE

POSSESSION OF EARL SPENCER,

BY

OCTAVIA RICHARDSON.

PART I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIV.
Extra Series.
XLI.

R. Clay and Sons, Chaucer Press, Bungay.
NOTICE.

The length of this Romance has made necessary its publication in two parts. Part I, now issued, deals mainly with the adventures of the "Four Sons" in Ardennes, which is really the original idea of the story, and that portion which is connected solely with the Province of Champagne. The flight of the Sons to Gascogne and their betrayal by King John are episodes which take place in the interior of France, and consequently have no further interest in Ardennes.

Part II, which will be issued as soon as it can be completed (and will contain an Introduction, Glossary, and Index), ranges over a wider area, as the adventures of the two principal characters, Reynawde and Mawgis, occur partly in the East.

The title of the work has been taken from Copland's edition of 1554. From the same source also have been supplied the sheets wanting in Earl Spencer's unique copy of Caxton's "Four Sons of Aymon," which is deficient in all before sig. B. It also wants D. 8. and L. 8.

The original is without folios, though they have been inserted in the present text.

I am greatly indebted to Dr. F. J. Furnivall, who has throughout assisted me in all difficulties connected with this work, and without whose kind encouragement I should never have attempted to edit this Romance for the "Early English Text Society."

O. Richardson.

10, Roland Gardens, South Kensington.
July, 1885.
The right pleasant and goodly

History of the four sons of Aimon the which for the excellent ending of it, and for the notable prows and great virtues that were in them: is no les pleasant to red, then worthy to be known of all classes bothe hyghe and lowe.

CHARL. ROM. X
The Prologue.

As the philosopher, in the first booke of his metaphysique, sayth, that every man naturally desireth to know and to con newe thynges: And therefore have the Clerkes & people of great vnderstand-ynge desyred and concite to lerned sciences, and to know vertues of thinges. Some by Phylosophy, other by Poetrye, and other by Historyes / and crynykes / 8 of thynges passed. And vpon these three they have greatly laboured / in suche that thanked be God, by theyr good dylygence / and laboures, they have had greate knowledge by innumerable volumes of bookes, 12 whiche have be made / and compyled by great studye and payne / vnto thys day. And bycause that above all thinges, the princes & lorde of hie estate and entende-ment / desyre to see thystories / of the ryght noble and 16 hye vertues of the predecessours / whiche ben digne, and worthy of remembraunce of perpetuall recommendation. Therfore, late at ye request and commaundement of the ryght noble and vertus Erle Iohn, Erle of Oxeforde, 20 my good synguler / and especial lorde, I reduced and translated out of Frenche, into our maternall and Englyshe tongue, the lyfe of one of his predecessoures, named Robert, Erle of Oxeforde, tofore sayd, with
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON.

is this history translated,

[diverse & many great myracles / whiche God shewed for him as wel in his lyfe / as after his death, as it is shewed all a longe in hys sayde booke. And also that my sayd Lorde / desyreth to have other Hystories of olde 4 tyme / passed of vertues chyvalry, reduced in lykewyse into our Englishe tongue: he late sent to me a booke in Frenche, conteynyning thactes / and faytes of warre / doone and made agaynst ye great Emperour and king 8 of Fraunce, Charlemagne, by ye .iii. sonnes of Aymon, otherwyse named in Frenche, 'Les quatre fylz Aymon.' Whyche booke, accordynge to hys request, I have endevoorde me to accomplyshe / and to reduce it into 12 our englyshe, to my great coste / and charges, as in the translatinge / as in enprynting of the same, hopying & not doubtyng / but that hys good grace / shall rewarde me in suche wise that I shall have cause to pray for his 16 good and prosperus welfare. And besechynge his said noble good grace / to pardon me of ye rude, and this simple worke. For, accordyng to the copy / whiche he sent to me, I have folowed as nigh as I can, and where as, as any defaute shall be founde, I submyt me to the correction of them / that understande the cronycle & history, besethyng them to correcte it & amende there / as they shall fynde faute. And I shall praye 24 almighty God for them that so doo, to rewarde them in suche wyse, that after this shorte / and transytory lyfe, we all may come to everlastyng lyfe in heven. Amen.

Thus endeth the prologue:

Here foloweth the Table of this presente booke.

Chap. I.

Who that wyll know the history of the foure noble and worthye knyghtes / named the foure sonnes of Aymon, wherof the fyrrste was called 32 Reynawde, the seconde Alarde, the thyrde Guycharde, and fourthe Rycharde, let hym first reade this presente table folowynge / In whiche men shall fynde that thys

Names of the four sons.
[presente booke conteyneth .xxviii. chapytres, whiche

speaken of many faire / and dyverse matters, whiche

they that shall reade thys sayde chapytres, shall nowe

see the history all alonge. And ye shall see in this

fyrst chapytre howe, that after kyng Charlemagne / was

come agayne / from the partyes of Lombardy, where he

had had great and merveyllouse battaylles / agenste the

8 saraysns, he helde vpon whitsundaye, open courte / at

Parys, where was a fayre felawshyp of Prynces / and

Barons, as ye shall heare after alonge. And in the

same chapitre / ye shall also see howe, the same daye /

12 the duke Aymon of Ardeyne / broughte to the courte hys

foure sonnes, that is to wit, Reynawde, Alarde, Guichard,

and Richard, and howe kyng Charlemagne / made

theym knyghtes wyth his owne handes; also howe the

16 duke Benes of Aigremounce / slewe Lohier, the eldest

sonne of kyng Charlemain (the duke benes was vncle to

the foure sonnes of Aymon); and after, howe the

duke Benes of aigremount / was slaine coming to

20 Paris, by the commande of kynge Charlemagne,

after that he had appointed, for the death of his sonne.

And also in this first chapitre / men shal nowe see many

other faire matters, which were to longe for to be

24 reherced / in this preambule of this present booke.

The seconde Chapyter sheweth howe Gryllon of

haultefelle, and Guenes, after that they had slayne

the duke Benes of Aigremount, retourned to Parys,

28 and recounted to kyng Charlemagne / the mortall

treason that they had put to execucyon; wherof

the kyng was ryghte glad; and syn after he was ryghte

sorye for it. For after that, the two bretherne of the

32 duke Benes / made great warre agenst him, and so did

Gerarde of Roussillon, and Dron, and Mawgys, the

sonne of the duke Benes; and after, they made peace

and accorded toghyter. But the kynge Charlemain

36 accorded not with the foure sonnes of Aymon, nor to
Reynawde slays
the nephew of the
King.

Chap. III.

Charlemagne be-
sieges the castle
of Mountenforde,
and the four sons
escape to the
forest of Arden,
where their father
fights them for
his oath's sake to
Charlemagne.

Chap. IV.

The sons dwell in
Arden,
and then go to
their father.

Mawgis joins
them, and they go to
fight.

[their cosin Mawgys. Item howe Reynawde slew the new of king Charlemagne with a cheesse boorde, as they plaied togyther at the cheesse, wherof the warre began, the whiche was so mortall / and lasted so longe, that it bare a great dommage to the realm of Fraunce.

The thirde chapitre speaketh, how after that kynde Charlemagne hadde made all his barons to forsake the foursonnes of aymon / He went and besyeged them at mountenforde, where he was dyscomfyted two tymes; but the castelle of Mountenforde was taken, after that, by treason. And after, howe Reynawde and his brethern avenged them of the tray-12 toures that betrayed them, And after saved them selfe wythin the forest of Ardenye, Where theyr father found them / as he went from the syege / to warde his londe of Dordon. And howe, for to keep his othe that he had made to kynde Charlemagne / He dyd assayle hys sonnes; so that, of fyve hundred menne that they were, there abod on live with his sonnes but xvii. persones. But Reynawd and his brethern / had none 20 evil, but slew many of their fathers men.

The fourth chapytre sheweth how, after that the olde Aimon / had discomfyted his chylldren, they went and dwelled in the depest of the forest of Ardeyne, and abode there / tyll that they were al counterfayte blacke / and roughe / as wilde beastes, for the greate hungre that they had suffred; and after, they went to Dordon / for to see their father, that made them good chere, and feasted them greatly. And gave them of hauoyre so muche / that they myghte well make war with agenst the king; and howe Mawgis their cosyn arryved, whan that they should have departed, whiche went with theym in to the realme of Gascoygne / with fyve hundred knightes. And whan theyr mother sawe them departe, she was for it full sorye.
The fiftie chapitre sheweth how, after that Reynawde / and hys bretherne, with theyr cosyn mawgys, were departed from theyr mother / for to seeke their adventure / they went so longe tyll they came to the realme of Gascqoygne. And howe / goynge thitherwarde, they made manye evylles in Fraunce. And howe the kyng of Gascqoygn, whan they were come there / dyd receive them in his servise ryghte sweetly, in bourdeux vpon Gyronde, by cause / that than this king of Gascqoygne, that was called Yon, had warre agenst a kyng sarasin / that was entred into Gascqyne, that had to name Portus, that helde Tholouse and all the londe aboute.

The VI chapter speaketh how Reinawde / and his bretherne / dystressed bourgous, a sarasyn that had distroyed the realme of Gascqoygne, and had chased the kyng yon / to bordeux vpon Gyronde, that durste not departe from thence, for feare of the sarasyns. And howe kyng Yon gave his sister Clare / vnto Reinawde / to be hys wyfe, for the greate servyse / that he hadde doon to hym. And dyd doo make for hym the castell of Mountawban.

The seventh chapitre speaketh how Charlemagne, for a voyage that he made to saint James in Galyce, he knewe in his comynge agayne / howe Reynawde and his bretherne, that were his mortalle enmies, were in Gascqoygne / with in a stronge castel, called Mountawban. And howe he sente worde to kyng Yon, that he shoulde delyver to hym Reynawde and hys bretherne. And yf he refused to doo thys, he shoulde come and besyeye hym in hys londe / afore X or XII moneths were passed; Wherof king Yon answered / that he shoulde not doo it. And howe, after that kyng Charlemagne / was retourned to Parys, Rowlande, his neuewes, arryved...
Rowlande arrives at Paris. He sent some of the sons of Aymon to Coloyne, where they were besieged. After that they were brought to Coloyne, and after that they were brought to Paris, where they were sold to King Charlemagne. King John betrayed the sons to Charlemagne, but they escaped. Mawggis saved them from death.

Chap. VIII. The viii. chapitre speakeith how Charlemagne went into Gascoigne with his host, and besieged Reynawde and his brethren within Mountawban; and howe Reynawde wan the fyrst batal of the king, which Rowlande conduyted, with Olyver and the bishop Turpin; wherof Charlemayne was so sore wrothe, that he wende to have wexed mad for it of the great shame that he had of it.

Chap. IX. The ix. chapitre sheweth howe Reynawde and his brethren were betrayed, and solde to king Charlemagne by kinge Yon, that sent theym in to the playne of Walcoloures all vnarmed, but onelye of theyr swordes, ryding vpon mulettes clothed with mantelles of scarlate furred with ermynes. From the whyche they escaped worthylye, by the wyll of our lorde. But they were sore wounded. Of Charlemaines partye, abode there deade, Toulques of Moxillon, and many other barons, for whome the kynge was ryghte sorye.

Chap. X. The x. chapitre speaketh howe, after that Goodard, the secretarie of kynge yon, had be-wrayed all the treason to Mawgys that the kynge Yon had doone to hys cosyns, which he knewe well. For he had scene kynge Charlemagnes lettres, and had wrytten answere thervpon from kynge Yon, Mawgys brought to reynawde and hys suche a succourses, that by his wyt they were kepte from death.
The xi chapitre speaketh howe, by the succours that Mawgis broughte to reynawde / and to his bretherne / into the playne of Walcoloures, they discomfited kyng charlemagnes folke ; wherof Ogier had manye reproches of rowlande / for some goodnes / and favoure / that he had shewed to reynawde / and his bretherne / at roche mountbron, and was therfore called traitoure, wherof a great inconvenience came therof afterwarde / afore king Charlemagne.

The xii chapitre sheweth howe, that after reynawde / and hys brethern / were whole of their woundes that they had had in the playnes of Walcoloures, they returned to Mountawban. But whan kyng Yon / knewe of theyr comynge agayn, he fledde awaye, and made hymselfe to be shorne a monke in a monastery / that was within the woode of the serpente ; where rowlande and Ogier the Dane / founde him, and wold have made him be hanged for the treason / that he had done to reynawde / and to his brethern, yf Reynawde had not succoured hym.

The xiii. chapitre sheweth how, that after Reynawde had succoured kyng yon, was the same houre a merveyllouse battayle / betweene / Reynawde and the frenshemen. For Rowlande was there sore beten, and many other, wherof Ogier was glad, by cause that Rowland had called hym traytoure. And also he knewe / that the foure sonnes of Aymon / were not for to be so lyghtelye overcomen, as men had sayde afore. And for this cause / there had been a sore medle betweene Rowland and Ogier, yf it had not be the other barons that departed them ; and in this recountre Rycharde, the brother of Reynawde, abode for prisoner of Rowlande.

The xiii. chapitre sheweth how, after that Reynawde, Alarde, and Guycharde / were gone to warde 1 mais les autres baros les departirent, F. orig. 1480.
Chap. XV.

The sons with Mawgis capture the Golden Eagle from the King, who threatens to abandon the crown.

Olyver relates his capture of Mawgis, which reassures the King.

Chap. XVI.

Charlemagne wishes to hang Mawgis, but he escapes, and goes to Mountawban with the crown and sword of the King.

Mountawban / after the battayle, and that they had made full greate sorowe for Rychard / thery brother, which was in kinge Charlemagnes handes, The sayd Rychard / was delvyered by mawgys greate wysedome.

The .xv. chapitre speaketh how, after that Reynawde and hys brethern / and Mawgis / had discomfyted Charlemagne, they came and overthrew downe his pavilyon, and bare a waye with theym the Egle of golde / that was there vpon the pavilion ; wherof kynge Charlemagne was sore an angred, in so muche that he wolde yeelde vp his crowne vnto his barons, sayinge / that he wolde be no more kynge, for they had fayled hym and habandonned, for the fourse sonnes of Aymon ; and sayde to them / that they should crown Reinawd, that he might be thery king, for they loved him much more than they dyd hym. Than Olyver sayde to kinge Charlemagne, that he should take againe the crowne, and that he shoulde brynge to him Mawgis, that he had taken / when he was aboute to pyle the pavyllion, for he abode alone. whan kynge Charlemagne hearde he tooke agayne his crowne, and was ryghte glad of the prise of mawgis.

The .xvi. chapitre speaketh how the kynge Charlemagne / wolde doo hange Mawgis, Incontynente that Olyver had take hym to him. But by the meane of the Douseperes of Fraunce, that at the requeste of Mawgis, pledgyd hym for one nyght onelye. He made so muche that he escaped, to the honoure / and acquytaunce / of hys sureties / and of hym, and bare a waye with hym to Mountawban / the crowne and the swerde / of kynge Charlemagne / the same nyghte ; wherof kynge Charlemagne was full sory. And ther-fore he sende worde to Reynawde / that he shoulde sende to hym agayne his crowne / and his swerde, and
all that Mawgys had borne away with hym, and he shoule grant hym his truce for two yeres. To the which thing Reynawde accorded hym; wherof hapsed 4 to hym, after that, many great evylles.

The xvii. Chapytre sheweth how Reynawde faught with Rowland / which he overcame / by the wyl of god, And brought hym to mountawban, wherof kyng 8 Charlemagne was greatly wrothe. And also sheweth how Mawgys / brought king Charlemayne / into the castel of Mountawban / vpon bayarde all a slepe. And after tooke hym to Reinawd within his bed. And after 12 wente and arrayed hym selfe / in maner of an Hermyte / poorely clothed. And lefte all his kinnen / and freendes, by cause that he wolde not let the peace of Reynawde / toward the kyng Charlemagne / for the 16 war had lasted to longe.

The xviii. chapytre sheweth how, after that Mawgys had taken Charlemagne / in to the handes of Reinawde his good cosin, he went without leave in to a woode / 20 nyghe the ryver of Dordon, in to a hermitage, where he dyd dwelle as an Hermyte, lyvinge poorely, for to save his soule.

The xix. chapitre sheweth howe the barons of 24 Fraunce that were at Mountawban / made great sorowe by cause that they myghte not awake the kyng Charlemagne / that Mawgys by his crafte / had made to slepe, and broughte vnto Mountawban. But whan the 28 houre of the enchauntement of Mawgys / was passed, kyng Charlemagne awaked. And whan he saw himselfe in Mountawban / he sware that he shoude never make peace wyth Reynawde / as longe as that he were 32 prysoner. And so Reynawde dyd sende hym againe vpon his horse bayard, free and quite. Wherof he repented hym sore afterwarde; for soone after this kyng

Chap. XVII.

Reynawde subdues Rowlande, and brings him to Mountawban, and Mawgis also brings Charlemagne asleep to the castle.

Chap. XVIII.

Mawgis dwells as a hermit.

Chap. XIX.

The hour of enchantment having passed, Charlemagne awakes, and is set free by Reynawde.
whom he besieges at Mountawban.

Chap. XX. Charlemagne made Mountawban to be besieged of so nyghe / that he famyshed Reynawd / and his bretherne, his wife, his children, and all the people / so that they dyed for hungre and thirst / the most parte.

Reynawde escapes and goes to Arden.

Charlemagne pursues him,

and they fight.

Richarde of Normandy is taken prisoner.

Chap. XXI. The .xx. chapitre speaketh howe / after that Charlemaine had besieged Mountawban of so nyghe / that he dyd famysh all them that were wythin, knewe howe Reynawde was gone / and had habandonned Mountawban, and was gone his waye, he and his bretherne, hys wyfe and hys chylderne, by vnder the erthe, and were gone to Ardeyne, where kynge Charlemagne went and besieged them agayne. But afore that he dyd set his syege / Reynawde and hys bretherne yssued outhe agenst hym. Whereby manye one loste their lyfe / of the one partie and of the other. And the duke Richarde of Normandye was taken there / which was one of the Douse peres of Fraunce / and a ryghte noble and a worthy knyght, preu and hardy; wherfore kynge Charlemaine was ryghte sorye.

Mawgis goes to Mountawban.

Chap. XXII. The .xxii. chapiter sheweth how Mawgys, beynge in his hermytage / came in his mynde a vysion, that he hadde by nyghte in his slepe, for to goe see Reynawde and his bretherne. Than in the mornynge he tooke hys waye / and founde two marchauntes / the which had been robbed by seven theeves in a wood. Of the whiche seven theeves / Mawgys slewe five of theym with his palster, and tooke again to the marchauntes theyr marchaundyses / and all theyr havoyre. And than he went forth his waye toward Mountawban / for to see his cosyns and hys brethern.

1 Dordonne, F. orig. a. vi. back.
2 had been: 'he had be,' in original.
by cause he myghte not have peace with the kynge Charlemagne. And howe / when the Douse peere of Fraunce knewe this, they came to kynge Charlemagne, and prayed hym to make peace with Reynawde / for to have againe theyr felawe / the duke Rycharde of Normandye; to the whiche thynge, kynge Charlemagne answered, that he should not doo it; whereof they were so sore an angred that they left hym; but kynge Charlemaine dyd sende after them / and sent them worde that they should returne agayne to hym, and that he should make peace with Reynawde vnder this con-
dicyon / that Reinawd should goe beyonde the sea, beggyngye his breade.

THE TABLE OF THE CHAPYTRES.

The peers entreat Charlemagne to make peace with Reynawde;
he consents on condition that Reynawde should go beyonde the sea, begging his bread.

Chap. xxiii.
Reynawde goes away as a pilgrim;
his brethren are brought to the King.
Bayarde is cast into the water, but escapes.

Chap. xxiv.
Reynawde finds Mawgis at Constantinople, and they go together to Jerusalem.

T
he .xxiii. Chapytre sheweth howe, after that Reynawde was departed from Ardeyne / for to make hys vyage beyonde the sea, poorely clothed as a pylgrym, seekynge hys breade for goddes sake / Rycharde of Normandye tooke Bayarde, and brought with him Alard, Gychard, and Rycharde, bretherne to Reynawde / and presented them to Charlemagne, the whiche he receyved ryghte honourablye by good love, and after brake his syege, and departed for to goe to Parys. But when he was in the cyte of Lyege, vpon the brydge over the ryver Meuse the / made Bayard to be cast into the water with a mille stone at the necke of hym; but bayarde the horse escaped, and is yet a lyve in the forest of Ardeyne / as men sayen.

Chap. xxiv.

The .xxiii. Chapytre sheweth howe, that after Reynawde was departed from Ardeyne, from hys bretherne, from his wife / and fro hys chyldrene, for to goe beyonde the sea for to accomplyshe hys voyace to the holy grave, he found in Constantynople / hys cosyn Mawgis, and went both togethre vnto afore Iherusalem, that a kynge sarasyn / whiche was admryral of percie,
The Four Sons of Aymon.

Chap. XXV.

Reynawde sends his sons to Paris to be made knights.

Had taken by treason, but Reynawde and Mawgys dyd so muche wyth the folke of the londe, that the cytye was take agayne of the christen.

Chap. XXVI.

The sons fight with the kinsfolk of Toulques of Moxyllon, and discomfit them.

The xxvi. Chapitre sheweth how, that after Rey-4nawde was come agayne from the holy londe, where he had doone merveyles, he sent Aimoner / and Yonnet, hys two sonnes / to kynge Charlemaine muche honourably, for to be made knightes of hys hande. For he 8 taughte theym well in armes, in all good maners, and tooke to theym fyve hundred good men / well horsed, for to conduyte them towards the kyng at Parys.

Chap. XXVII.

The brethren of Reynawde mourn for him.

The .xxvii. chapitre conteneth how, that after Reynawde was gone from Mountawban in maner of a pilgrime / never to have returned agayne, after that he had dealed his goodes to his children, his brethern 24 and his sonne Aymanet / made great sorow whan they wyst that he was gone wythout theyr knowledge, all barefote, with a palster in his hande.

Chap. XXVIII.

Reynawde departs for Cologne, and there works as a labourer.

The .xxviii. chapitre sheweth how, after that Rey-28nawde was departed fro Mountawban for to save his soule / he went to Coleine vpon the Rine, and founde that men builded the churche of saynt Peter. And there came to hym a wyll / and a devocyon / for to serve 32...
CHAP. I. HOW CHARLEMAGNE HOLDS HIS COURT AT PARIS.

[the masons / that wrought there, for the love that he had to our lorde. But at the laste, the other labourers had so great envye at hym / of that he was more loved than they were of all the maysters, for the good service that he dyd / that they slew hym; and after, they put hym in a sacke & caste hym into the water of the Ryne; but by the wil of our lord, his corps appered above ye watir, makyng so many fayre myracles, healynge of sykenesses / so that he was named a saynte the daye of hys buryenge.

Here finyssheth the table, and consequently followeth the book heere after.

CHAPTER I.

Howe duke Aimon of Ardein brought to the courte his foure sonnes, that is to wit, Reynawde, Alarde, Guichard, and Richarde, and howe kynge Charlemagne / made theym knyghtes wyth his owne handes; also howe the duke Benes of Aigremount slewe Lohier, the eldest sonne of kynge Charlemain. the duke benes was uncle / to the foure sonnes of Aimon; and after, howe the duke Benes of aigremount was slaine coming to Paris, by the commande- mente of kinge Charlemagn / after that he had appointed, for the death of his sonne. And also in this first chapitre men shall now see many other faire matters, which were to longe for to be rehearsed in the preamble of this present booke.
Truelye we finde in the gestes & faites of the good kynge Charlemagne / that vpon a time
at a feast of Penthecoste, the sayde kynge Charlemagne kept a ryght great and solempne 4
court at Parys, after that he was come againe fro the partyes of Lombardy / where he had
had a ryght great and mervaylous batayle agenst the Sarasyns,¹ and suche folke as were oute of the beleve, 8
wherof the cheef of the sayde Sarasins was named Guithelym the sesne. The whiche the said kynge Charlemagne / by hys prowess and valyauntnes / had
dyscomfyted & overcomen. At the which battaylle 12
and dyscomfyture, dyed greate noblenesses of kinges,
princes, Dukes, Erles, barons, knyghtes, and squyers;
as Salomon of bretayne / Huon, erle of Mauns, syr
yves, syr yvoyre berenger, and Haton, syr Arnaulde of 16
Beaulande, syr Walleraunte of Bollon, and many
valyaunte knyghtes. The Douse peres of Fraunce
were come there / and many Almaynes, and Englyshe-
memme, Normans, Poeteuyns, Lombardes, and Barnyers. 20
And amongst other Dukes & princes, was come thyther the
good and worthye duke Aymes of ² Ardeyne. And
in his felawshyp his foure³ somnes, that is to wyt,
Reynawde, Alarde, Guycharde, and Rycharde, that 24
were wonderfull fayre, wytty, great, mightye, and
valyaunte, speyally Reynawde / whiche was the greatest
and the tallest manne that was founde at that tyme in
al the worlde, for he had .xvi. feete of length and 28
more. Than at this assemble and feast stood the sayd
kynge Charlemagne on his feete, amongst his prynces and
barons, sayinge in this wyse, 'barons, my bretherne and frendes, ye knowe howe I have conquested and gotten 32
so mange greate londes / by youre helpe and succours.
So many of the Sarasins and misbelevers brought to

¹ et mescreans, F. orig. b. i. ² Dordon, F. orig. b. i.
³ beauh, F. orig. b. i.
death, & in my subieccion; how but late agoe ye have scene by ye paynym Guetelyn, whiche I have dyscomfyted & overcomen /and reduced to the christen
faith. Not withstandynge we have loste there ryghte greate chevalry and noblenesse, and for faute of many of our vassaylles /and subjectes, that to vs dayneth not to come, howe be it that we had sent for theym, as
8 the Duke Rycharde of Roussellon, the duke Dron of Nantuell / and the duke Benes of Aygreemounte, that been all three bretherne Germayne. Wherof vnto you I complayne me and tell you, that yf it were not syr
12 Salamon, that worthylye came to succoure vs / with .xxx. thousande fyghtyngn menne, and syr Lambreyght bernyer, and syr Geffraye of Bourdelle, with walleraunte of Bullon, that bare our baner / we were alle dyscomfyted
16 and lost, as ye all knowe well; and this by the defaut of the said three bretherene, that dayned never to come to our sendynge, nor obey, and, above all, the duke
Benes of Aygreemounte. Ill be it that they be all oure
20 lyge menne / that ever owen to me servyce and fydelitye. Now I shall sende hym worde that he come to serve me at this nexte somer with all his power. And in case that he shall be refusynge to
24 obeyeoure commaundementes / by saynt denys of fraunce, I shall sende for all my frendes and subjectes, and I shall goe besyege him at Aygreemounte. And yf we can have him, I shall make hym to be shamefully
28 hanged / and his sonne Mawgis to be slaine all quycke, and shall do brenne his vncourteous wyfe; and I shall sett all his londes in fyre.' Than the good duke Naymes of Bavyre / rose vp dyligently, and said to
32 kynge Charlemagne in this wyse: 'Syr, me semeth that ye ought not to angre your selfe so sore; and yf ye will beleve my counseyll, ye shal sende a messanger to the duke of Aygreemount, which messanger shal be
36 well and honourably accompanied. And he muste be

The King complains of his subjects' infidelity, especially of Duke Benes of Aygremount.
To whom he sends a message by his son Lohier.

[To whom he sends a message by his son Lohier.

Sage / and prudent / for to shewe wel to the Duke of Aygremounte all, that ye shall charge hym and after whan ye shall know hys answere and his wyll; ye shall than aduyse you what ye oughte for to doo.' 4

'In good fayth,' sayde the kyng, 'ye counseylle me ryght well and wiselye.' Than thoughte Charlemagne what message he myght sende to hym. And than he sayde all hyghe afore them all, complaynyng he himselfe; 'who shall be he that shall doo thys message; and for doubt of deathe shall not leve nothynge unsayd of hys message / to the duke benes;' but there was none of them all that aughte answered, for manye 12 of them were of 2 Sybbe to hym / as the duke Aymon of 3 Ardeyne, that was his brother Germayne.

Thus were the four brethren of one father and one mother. Than was kyng Charlemagne ryghte 16 wrothe and angrye, and swere by saynte denys / that the Duke benes should be wasted and destroyed; and no manne shoulde be in the worlde that shoulde keep him therfro. Than he called high his eldest sonne 20 Lohier, saying in this maner, 'ye must doo this message, my dere sonne, and lede with you for your conduyt and suretye / an hundred knightes/ armed and honourably arrayed. And ye shall saye to the duke benes of 24 Aygremounte, that yf he come not for to serve vs thys somer, aboute saynte Iohans daye nexte comynge, as I have saide afore / that I shall besyege Aygremounte, & shall dystroye all his lande; and he and 4 his, I shall 28 doo hange or slea al quycke, and his wyfe to be brente.'

'Syr,' sayd Lohier, 'al at your pleasure I shall doo. And wit that it shall not be taryed / for feare of death, but that I shal tel him al alonke all that ye have 32

1 ce que luy ordonneres, et puis quant aurez seuu, F. orig.

b. ii. back.

2 du parente du ait benes daigremot, F. orig. b. ii. back.

3 Dordon, F. orig.

4 son filz', F. orig. b. ii.
charged me of. And I shall depart to morow in the mornung, by the grace of God.'

Than should you have sene ye king wepeo of pitie for hisonne Lohier; for he repented him that he had charged him / for to doo this message; but syn that he had so sayd, he must doo it. And the morn was come, Lohier & his noble companye / made them redy, and after lept on horsbacke, and came afore ye kyng. Than sayd Lohier to the king, his father: 'Syr, here I am redye and all my folke / for to fulfyll your wyll.' 'Fayre sonne,' sayd Charlemagne, 'I recom mend thee vnto god, that on ye crosse suffred death and passion, and hym I beseech to kepe and waraunt thee / & all thy felawshyp from evyl / and from any combraunce.' Than departed Lohier and his company;

wherof after warde / the kynge made great lamentacyon for his sonne Lohier, and not wyth out a cause; for he shal never see him quicke agayne, as ye shal understand, yf ye wyll herken it. Now go the gentill messangers streyght towards Aygremount, sore thretenynge the duke Benes of Aygremount, saying / that they should take the head from the body of hym / yf he doo ought to them agaynst his devoyre. But it shall go all other wyse with them; for it haped all contrary to theyr myndes and purpose / wherof afterward / many ladies abode widowes withoute husbands, & many gentil women without a lover; and so many churches destroyed, and so many landes brente / and wasted, wherof it is yet pitie for to see. And thus, riding & thretenye Benes of Aygremount, a spy heard all that they sayd, and came hastelye to Aygremount to ward Benes / that was in his palays, and tolde hym how messangers were coming vnto hym from kyng Charlemagne, that sore thretened him, and that the sonne of kyng Charlemagne was there in person. 

1—1 omitted, F. orig. b. ii.
Than sayd the Duke to hys folke, wherof he had at that houre foi-son with him / in his palays, because of the feast of Penthecoste. 'Lorde,' sayde he, 'the kynge Charlemagne setteth lytle by me, that will that I shal go serve him with all my power and my puys-sance; and that wors is, he sendeth to me his ellest sonne for to tel me some message that threteneth me greatly; what counsell ye me therto, my bretherne & 8 frendes?' Than spake a good knyght, that was called syr Simon, & sayd: 'My lorde, I shall counsel you truly yf ye wyll herken and beleve me. Receyve honourably the messangers of the kynge Charlemagne for wel ye wote that he is your ryght-wyse lorde, and wit that who that warreth against hys soverayn Lorde, he doth agaynst god / & rayson / and have no regarde to your kynne, nor to thy, that your bretherne, Gyrarde of Roussyllon, and the duke of Nantuell, wolde not obey hym. For I advise you wel that Charlemagn is myghty / and he shall distroye you of body and of goodes; but yf that ye obey him, and yf ye amiablie go to hym, he shall have mercy of you.' Than answered the duke, that thus he wolde not doo, and that the sayd knight gave him evill counsell. 'For yet,' sayd he, 'I am not so low brought but that I have three brethern / that shall helpe to susteine / and beare out my warre agaynst Charlemagne, & also my foure newes, the sonnes of my brother Aymes of Dordon, that ben full fayre knightes, worthy and well taught in faytes of warre.' 'Alas,' sayd than ye duchesse, 'my good lorde, beleve your good counsell; for no man shall prayse you that ye make warre agaynst your right-wyse lorde / and wit it well that it is agaynst the com-

1 Si ne luy obeisses, F, orig. b. iii. back.
[none heed to your brerthen / as syr Symon dothe counsell you, for never good may come therof, for to be evyl in favoure with his soverayne Lorde.’ Than behelde the duke the duchesse in great wrathe, and had her that she should holde her peace in ye devilles name, & that she should never more speake to hym of this mater / for in certayne he should not do for the kyng Charlemagne the mountenaunce of a peny. So helde her peace ye‘ duchesse, & sayd that she should speake nomore to hym therof.

Great was the noyse and the bruyte within the palayce of Ayremenunt, for some counselled the duke, that thus as the duchesse sayd he should doo; and many other sayd nay. Than sayd the duke vnto them that counselled him naye, and that he should not accorde / nor make peace / with the kyng Charlemagne, that he could theym thanke. Muche longe they spake of this mater; and the messangers of the kyng Charlemagne duryng the same / have riden so muche that they ben come to Ayremenunt. And the castell was set vpon a rocke ryght hye, and well envyroned with stronge walles / thycke, highe, and wel garnyshed with great towres, so that for the strength and sytuacyon of the castell, it was imprenable, but only by famyshyne. Than sayd Lohier to ye lorde that were wyth hym: ‘Lorde, nowe see what a fortesse is there / what walles! a ryver renmeth at the foote of it; I beleve verely that in al christendome is not her lyke. It can never betake by force, but yf it is by famysshynge.’ Than spake a knight that was called Savary, and sayd to Lohier his lorde, ‘syr,’ sayde he / ‘it semeth me (spekyng vnder correction) that my lorde, the kynge Charlemagne, your father, hath enterprised a great foly, whan he trouwe to come to

1 a chief de ce duc, F. orig. b. iii. back.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. I.

At an ende of this duke of Aygremount, for, in good sothe, he is right puissaut; and I believe that he shall make as mani men for to make the warre, as shall my lorde, your father / yf it cam there to that he 4 wolde make hym warre. It were a fayre thynge yf they myght be accorded together; 1 and, of my parte, I should counsell the same, yf it myght be doone. 1

But well I wot, that yf your father had hym, al ye 8 golde in Paris should not kepe hym, but that he should do hange hym / or els slea him quycke. So beseeche I you, ryght deere syr, that ye speake humbly vnto the duke benes of Aygremount, for, in certayne, he is ryght fyers / and outragyous, & incontinent might have there a sore meddle betwene you and hym, wherof the losse should tourne vpon vs, for we ben to few folke. 2 Than answered Lohier, and sayd to hym, 16 that he sayd well and wysely; but alwayses,' sayd he, 'we doubt hym not of any thynge. We be here al redy an houndred knyghtes / well appoynted, and for sothe, yf he say vnco hym anye thynge vnco our dyspleasur, 20 he shal be the fyrst that shall repent and be sory for it.' Than sayd the knight Savare al softly to hymself / that this were not wysely doone; 'for wel I swere,' said he, 'vpon my fayth, that yf it hap you to say any thyng to 24 hym / that by any maner shall displease hym, he shall make you sorye, and shall wreke it vpon your bodye; and, happelye, we shall all be in a waye for to dy. Syr, advyse your selfe well / & wyll to procede prudently in 28 your message. For well I say vnco you that he is ryght cruell, and of greate worthynesse accomplysshed.'

Thus, spekyng of one thyng and of other / rode so longe the messangers, that they ben come to the 32 gate of the castel, which was sone shet by the porter. Then knocked the sayd knightes, and the porter

---

1—1 omitted, F. orig. ed. 1480.
answered to them, 'Lorde, what be you?' 'Freende,' answered Lohier / 'open to vs this gate presently, for we wyll speake to the Duke Benes of Aigremount from the kinge Charlemayn.' 'Now abyde you a lytle, and hast you not,' sayd the porter, 'and I wyl goe speake redely to my lorde the Duke.' So went the sayde porter into the halle / where he sawe the Duke his lorde. He kneeld incontynent afore him, & tolde him howe downe at the gate was a right great company of men of armes; and that they were well an hondred men or more, ryght well horsed, & well armed. 'And with them is the eldest sonne of king charlemagne, that strongly threateneth you / and also your folke. My lorde,' sayde the porter, 'shall I open the gates vnto them?' 'Yea,' sayd ye duke, 'for I doubt them nothynge, and we ben ynough for them; and many worthy knyghtes and esquyers / ben no where able for to defende vs all, were Charlemagne himself with them with his puissauce.' So ran incontinent the porter downe agayne / for to open vnto them the gate. Lohier & his felowes entred within, and mounted vp vnto the dongeon of the castell, where the duke was, that sayd to hys barons: 'Lordes, heere cometh the eldest sonne of the kyng Charlemagne / for to tell me his message; but (bi that god that suffred death and passyon) yf he speake wysely to vs, he shal do as sage; and yf he sayth anything that shall dysplease vs, we shall soone / & without delaye, take vengeaunce therof.' So was the duke Benes well accompanied, & nobly of wel two hondred knyghtes and more. Thys was in the moneth of May, that all creatures humain ought wel for to reioyce then, and that folke pren and worthy in armes / taken hert and hardinesse / for to defende them self wel, and warre agaynst theyr enemes. And this during, Lohier, the sonne of king charlemagne, entred into the halle of the Palays of Aygremount.

The porter announces their arrival to the Duke.

Lohier and his folk enter the castle.

CHAP. 1.] OF HIS ENTRANCE INTO THE CASTLE.
The Duke Benes, with his son Mawgis, and all his barons are here assembled.

Lohier delivers his speech.

The Duke Benes, with his son Mawgis, and all his barons are here assembled.

Lohier delivers his speech.

Renawde, one of the sons of Aymon / wherof 12 specyally treateth now this historye / Thenne marched fourthe Lohier, & wente in the firste of alle, and after hym his folke by goode conduyte / And salued the duke Benes of Aygremonte in this wyse / 16 wherby moche grete euyH happped to hym at laste:

'That god that created the firmamente, and made aHe thynges of noughte, for the people to susteyne / And in the crosse suffred deth and passyon for alle soules to be redemed out of the peynes of helle, kepe and saue the / kynge Charlemanyne, emperoure of Almayne and kynge of Fraunce, and aH his noble lynee / and confounde the duke Benes of Aygremonte / My fader the kynge by me expressly sendeth to thee.

1 B. iii.
2 Here begins Caxton's print. [14 leaves are out of Lord Spencer's unique copy. It begins at Fol. iii. col. 3, l. 24 of Copland's edition of 1554.]
3 vnto, ed. 1554. Only a few collations are put, to show how slight are the changes of word in ed. 1554. The spelling varies somewhat.
4 thynges. 5 on.
6 creperour in text orig. Emperour, 1554.
7 thee.
8 pour le servir la ou il luy plaira toy employer, et aussi pour, F. orig. b. iii. omitted in Caxton.
that thou were not wyth hym in armes in the partyes of Lombardye, for to fyghte ayenst the enmyes of the crysten feyth. Where, by thy fawte, were ded there,

4 Bawdoyn, lorde of Melanke / Greffroy of BourdeHe / and many other grete dukes, prynces, knyghtes, and barons. And yf thou wylte not doo it / I telle the duke Benes that the kyng shaHe come vpon the8 wyth

8 an hundred thousands men of armes. Soo shalte thou be take and brought in to Fraunce / And there thou shalt be Iudged as a theef and a false trauent to 2 thy souerayne lorde. for to be sleyen3 and hanged all quycke, thy wiffe brente, and thi children dystroyed and banished. Do therfore this that I commaunde the in the kynges behalue / for thou knowest wel that thou arte his man, vysaHe, and subgette':

16 W

Han the duke Benes of Aygremounte hadde herde Lohier4 thus speke, Thenne5 yf ye hadde seen hym chaunge6 his colour, pouff7 blowe / as a man cruel prowde and owterageouse, and sayd to Lohier in this maner, 'I shal not goo to kyng Charlemayne, nor noo thynge of his wylle I shaHe not fulfylle / For I holde nother casteHe ne fortresse of hym / But I shal goo vppon hym wyth alle my puyssance / and shalHe

24 dystroye aHe the londe of Fraunce vnto Parys' / Thenne5 sayd Lohier vnto duke Benes of Aygremounte, 'Vassaylle,' sayd he, 'how dareste thou answere thus? And yf the kyng knewe now that thou threteneste hym thus as thou dooste, he sholde come Incontinente vpon the,1 and sholde ytterli dystroye the. Wel thou knoweste that thou arte his liege man / and that thou canne not saye ayenste hit / Comme then redeli, and 32 serue thy souerayne lorde, the kyng Charlemayne.

And byleue me, yf thou wyHe, saue thyne owne lyffe.

Duke Benes with the wrath of Charlemagne.

1 thee. 2 vnto. 3 slayne.
4 filz du roy Charlemagne, F. orig. b. iii. back.
5 Than. 6 chaunged. 7 pouffe &. 8 B. iii. back.
For yf thou doo it not, I make the\(^1\) sure and certeyne / that yf he canne have the by force, that he shalle make the\(^2\) to be hanged there as the ayre and the wyndes wyth theyr grete blastes shal\(^3\)e drye vppe the bones of 4 the.\(^4\) Whan the duke herde Lohyer speke to hym in this manere, he stode vppe anone vppon his feete, And sayd that to his eue\(^5\) chere he came there for make to hym his message. Thenn\(^6\) came fourthe a 8 knyghte, named syre Water, that was a man of the duke of Aygre\(^7\) mount, and sayd to the duke / 'My lorde! kepe, for goodys love, that ye doo noo folie. lettre Lohyer saye aHe his wyHe. For ye be neuer the 12 worse for his sayenge. And as ye we\(^8\) knowe, kyne Charlemayne is ryght puyssaunte, and soo moche, that there is nother castell, cyte, nor towne neuer soo stronge / that can holde aye\(^9\)nst hym / Goo then to hym 16 by my course\(^10\)H. for ye be his man, his vassay\(^11\)H, and his subget / and of hym you holde your caste\(^12\)H of Aygremount, and a\(^13\)H your londes / And yf ye soo doo / ye shal\(^14\)e doo as sage / and hit shal\(^15\)e be your prouf. 20 fytte, and also of a\(^16\)e your lande. And for to werre aye\(^17\)nte your ryghtewys lorde, noo thynge but euyll can come to you therof.' Whan the duke had herde the wyse knyghte soo\(^18\) speke, He coude to hym ryghte 24 goode thanke therfore; but alwayse a\(^19\)e angry he sayd to hym, 'Hold your peas / For I shal\(^20\)e holde noo thynge of hym as longe that I shal\(^21\)e may\(^22\)e\(^23\) bere armes, and mounte a horsebake. I shal\(^24\)e sende for my dere 28 bretherne, Gerarde of Roussyllon, and Dron of Nant\(^25\)uch\(^26\)H / and Garnyer his son. And thenne we shal\(^27\)e goo vpon kyng e Charlemayne / and yf I canne mete wyth hym in ony place, we shal\(^28\)e dystroye hym, and 32 shal\(^29\)e doo of hym that he troweth to doo of me / Wene ye that I am a cowarde\(^30\) / nay, by my feyth / For I

1 thee.  2 Than.  3 B. iiiii.  4 to.  5 be able.  6 Natuell.  7 cowarde, 1554.  coward, Caxton.
chap. i. how the fight between benes and lohier begins. 27

sholde not take all ye golde in Parys / but that I sholde slee the messenger. EuyHe was to hym when he durste soo threten me / And thenne 1 sayd Lohier, 'I nether prayse you nor doubte you not.' When the duke Benes of Aygremounte vnderstode Lohier, he wexed for grete wrathe as redde as ony fyre in his face / And beganne to ryse vppe and to eah 8 Now, barons! soo on hym / brynge hym to me / For he shaHe neuer be warraunted 2 but that I shaHe make hym to deye shamefuHy.' And the barons durste not saye ayenst theyr lorde, but drewe ah the theyr swerdes, and Incon-

dynente dyde renne soo on Charlemayns folke / And Lohier called his baner; & thenne 1 beganne he and his folke to defende theym selfie sharply; And god knoweth how many heddes and armes were there cutte 16 of that daye / For atte the same owre beganne a thynge / wherof afterwarde soo many ladyes and damoyselles were wythoute husbondes and wythoute louers / Soo many of children faderles, and soo many 20 churches wasted and dystroyed that neuer syth were repayred. What shall 3 I telle you more / wyte it that they fought therein 4 soo longe wythin the halle of the palays, that the noyse wente thoroughe alle the towne. Thenne 1 sholde ye haue seen the bourgeys, marchauntes, and men of crafte, wyth axes, swerdes, and other wepyns / And came to the castelle warde aboute vii thousande men and more / But the entre of 28 the palays of Aygremounte was narowe. And the frenshe men were wythin, that kepeth theym wel, that they entred not in atte theyr ease. Alas! what ter-

ryble and vnhappy a slaughter was there that daye / For the folke of kynge Charlemayne were but a fewe to the regarde of theym of the other parte / And as ye maye knowe, suche assemble was ryght euyH 1B. iiiii. back. 4 theyr.

1 than. 2 warraunted. 3 B. iiiii. back.
The folk of Charlemagne are worsted by reason of their small number.

Lohier prays for succour.

but is slain by Duke Benes.

defended theym selfe moche nobly and valyauntly the folke of kyinge Charlemayne / And soo moche that Lohier, seenge that he and his folke hadde the worse / he smote a knyghte by fore duke Benes of Aygremounte by suche a wyse that he ouerthrew hym doun deed / 'For the,' sayd he, 'godlys curse haue thou' / And afterwarde he sayd pyteously in waylynge hym selfe, 'Lorde god, that wythin the holy wombe of the blessed yrv-
for it, as ye here after shalHe here yf peasilbily ye wyth here me:

Now is outragously slayne the good Lohyer, the eldest sone of kyng Charlemayne / And the duke Benes of Aygremontende, suft of cruelnes, toke the hede from the body of hym. And after that the folke of the sayd Lohier, the sone of the grete kyng Charlemayne, sawe theyr lorde ded, thynke ye they made no grete deffence / Alwayes of a hundred that they were entred wythin the palays wyth theyr lorde Lohier, abode there on lyue but xx, wherof the duke incontynente made x of them to be slayne. And the other x he retayned alyue. and to theym sayd / 'Yf ye wyth promyse and swere to me vpon your othe and feyth of knyghthode that ye shaHe bere your lorde Lohyer to his fader, the kyng Charlemayne, and saye to hym that I sende to hym his sone Lohyer in good arraye / and that in an euyH houre he dyde sende hym to me for to teHe me suche wordes: 1I shaHe lete you goo quyte & sauf / and to hym ye shaHe saye, that for hym 2I shaHe not doo the mountenaunce of a peny / And that I shaHe goo vpon hym in this somer nexte comynge wyth three forty thousands men / And that I shaH destroye hym and aHe his lande / They aunswered, 'sire, we shaHe doo that. that shaHe playse you to commaunde vs' / Thenne the duke dyde doo make redyly a byere / and made the corps of Lohier to be putte wythin the sayd byere. And after he deluyerde hit to his x knyghtes that were lefte on lyue, and putte hit in a carte to drawe wyth two horses. And the duke conveyed theym throughe the towne / And when they were in the feeldes / the 4x knyghtes byganne to wepe, and to make grete moone for theyr lorde Lohier, saynge / 'Alas, my lorde Lohier, what shaHe we nowe

1-1 omitted, F. orig. b. vi. back. 2 B. v. back. 3 trente, F. orig. b. vi. back. 4 omitted, F. orig. b. vi.
They take Lo-
hier's body back to Paris.

Charlemagne at
Paris, mentions to his
barons his anxiety
for the safety of
Lohier.

Aymon offers
Charlemagne his
services and those
of his four sons.

saye for you to the k[y]nge\(^1\) your fader, that soo grete
sorowe shal He haue / when he shal He knowe your crueHe
deth. We may well be in certeyne that he shal He make
vs aHe deye' / Thus wepynge and makyng theyr mone 4
for the loue of theyr lorde Lothyer / They roode on
theyr waye streyghte to Parys /

But now we shal He here lene to speke of the
messagers, and shal He telle you of the kynge \(^2\)Charle-
mayne that was atte Parys,\(^2\)

Charlemayne, that was atte Parys wyth a grete mul-
tytude of lordes that were there assembled. And
there vpon a daye kynge Charlemayne sayd vnto his 12
lordys and barons / 'Lorde, I am moche wrothe and
sory of my sone Lohyer, that I haue sente to Aygre-
mounte / and I feere me sore that they haue taken
debate wyth the duke Benes of Aygremounte, whiche 16
is feHe and crueH, and I doubte me lest he hathe
slayne my sone Lohyer / But by my crowne, yf he haue
soo doone, or ony thyng that turneth to dysplaysure
or dommage to my sayd sone / I shaH go vpon \(^3\)hym 20
with a hundred thousande men, & shal He make him
to be hanged at a gybet' / 'Syre,' sayd the goode duke
Aymes of dordon, 'I shall commende you ryghte sore yf
he hathe offended agaynst you, that ye make punyssyon 24
thereof and wrek on hym grete vengaunce. He ys
your liege man, and oughte to serve / prayse / and
honoure you, and to holde aHe hys londe of you /
Alwayes yf he hathe trespassed ayenst you in ony 28
manere / I am ryghte sory for hit. And yf ye haue a
cause to be wrothe wyth hym, I haue here my foure
sones; that is, to wytte, Reynawde, Alarde, Guycharde,
and Rycharde, that ben ryghte valyaunte, as ye, syre, 32
weHe knowe, whiche shal He be trusty and true to you' /
'Aymon,' sayd the kynge Charlemayne, 'I conne you

---

\(^1\) Kynge in text. \(^2\) omitted, F. orig. b. vi.
\(^3\) B. vi.
CHAP. I.] HOW THE SONS ARE KNIGHTED BY CHARLEMAGNE.

And it is my wylle that ye make theym to come hether presently, to the ende that I make theym knyghtes / grete thanke of the offre that now ye haue doon to me. And Reynawde was the firste that spake, and sayd, 'Syre, if it playse you for to make vs knyghtes / we shaH be euer redy for to servye you and your noble lordeshyppe' / Thenne the kynge Charlemayne called his stywarde, and sayd to hym, 'Brynge to me the armes that were the kynge Cedres, whiche I haue wyth my handes slayne in batayHe byfore Pampelune. And I shaHe gyue theym to the gentle Reynawde / as to hym that is as I were, the mooste valyaunte of aHe. And of other goode armes I shaH gyue to the other three bretherne' / Soo broughte there the stywarde the armes, that were fuH fayre and ryche; and thenne were armed the fourre gentle bretherne, children to the goode Aymes of Dordonne / and Ogyer of Denmark, that was of their kynne, dyde on theyn spores to the newe knyghte Reynawde. And the kynge Charlemayne girde hym his swerde / And then he dyoubled hym to a knyghte, sayenge, 'God encrease in the2 goodnes / honoure / and worthynes.' And thenne mounted Reynawde on horsebacke vpon Bayarde / that was suche a horse that neuer was his like in alle the worlde, nor neuer shaH be, excepte BasifaH, the horse of the grete kynge Alexandre; for as to haue ronnie myle tegyder wolde neuer haue sweted. The sayde Bayarde, this horse, was growen in the Isle of Brousean / and Mawgis, the sone of the duke Benes of Aygremounte, hadde gyuen hit to his cosin Reynawde /
that after made the kynge Charlemayne full of wrothe and sory. As ye shall nowe nere hereafter.

Reynawde was a horsbak wyth a sheld paleynted hanginge att his necke / and thwerled his swerde by grete fyersnesse. And wytte wel that he was a fayr knyghte, vounderfull grete and well founded. and of hym was a fayr sighte / for well he semed one of the most valyaunte knyghtes that men coude fynde in aHe 8 the worlde. And the barons that were there, sayd / 'Ha, god, what a fayr knyghte is he / neuer was, nor shaH be, seen soo fayer a man of armes as Reynawde / god encrease to hym honoure and worthinesse, goode-nesse and pryse!' And after, were moche honourabli and worthyly arayed and armed, the other three bretherne of Reynawde / and syth lyghte alle on horse-backe vnder saynte Vyctor, nyghe Parys / Thenne made the kynge Charlemayne to sette vpppe in the grounde a poste ayenste whiche he made the newe knyghtes to assaye theym selfe / They Iousted moche worthyly / but Reynawde / jousted beste vpon hys horse bayarde / And ryght weH lyked and were agreeable to Charlemayne, the fayttes of the valyaunt knyghte Reynawde, to whom the kyng sayd, 'reynawde, from hens forth ye shaH come wyth vs in bataylle.' And Reynawde anserwde hym in thys manre / 'Syre, god yelde it you an hundred thousande tymes / and I promytte yow in goode fyeth to obeye and serue you truly / nor neuer ye shaH fynde my selfe in noo forfaytte, But yf it come of you.'

Hemperoure Charlemayne, after the ioustyng doon, returned to his palays in Parys / Thenne he resoned wyth his prynees and barons / And there were the duke Naymes of bauyres, Oger the dane / and the archebysshop Turpyn / and sayd to theym in this wyse / 'Barons,' sayd he, 'I canne not merueylle me to

1 B. vii.
moche of Lohier, my eldest son, that taryeth so longe in his message. I haue grete fere that some inconuenency be happed vnto him. I dreamed this 4 nighte in my slepe, that the thonder boltte felle vpon my son Lohier\(^1\) and thenne came the duke Benes of Aygremounte vpon him, and smote his hede of. But by my berde, ye he haue doo soo, whiles he luyeth he 8 shal never accorde wyth me/ nor I shal never haue ioye atte my herte; for it is he that I love best in this worlde.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'I blyeue not suche thynge, nor to suche dremes ye shal not gyue 12 noo credence' / 'Alwayes,' sayd the kynge, 'ye he haue doon soo / I shal never leuer hym the value of a penye / for I shal sende for the normans, the beryngers, the flamynges / the champenoys / the almayns, ye 16 banyers, & for englishemen; so shal I goo vpon hym, & shal utterly dystro\(^2\)ye hym' / And Naymes sayd euere to hym, that he sholde not fraye hym selfe of noo thynge tyll that he knewe the certente. And as they 20 spoke this, there came rydyng a messager vpon a hors faute, sore, seke and wery, and also sore wounded to the deth. He came to Parys afore the palays, where kynge Charlemayne was at the wyndowes. And when 24 he sawe come the messager, he came doon lyghtely \(^3\) from the palays hahte to the gate / and wyth hym, Naymes of Bauyre and Ogyer the dane / And when the messager sawe the kynge, he salued hym full softe, as 28 that he was ryght sory and sore wounded, and that wyth peyne myghte speke / And sayd in this manere / 'grete folye ye dyde, whan ye dyde sende my lorde, your sone, for to aske trybute and obaysaunce of the 32 duke Benes of Aygremounte, the whiche trybute your sone asked hym shamfuHy. But the duke, whiche is sore felle and cruete, when he herde speke my sayd

---

\(1\) si que il estoit tout pasme, F. orig. b. vii.  
\(2\) B. vii. back.  
\(3\) en bas du palais, F. orig. b. vii.
The messenger announces the fight at Aygremount, and the death of Lohier.

The King's grief.

Duke Bauyre comforts the King.

Duke Naymes advises him to bury Lohier at St. Germayne, and then march against Duke Benes.

lorde, your sone / he commanded to a meyne of knyghtes that were there, that he sholde be take, and that he sholde neuer retourne ayen to yow for to recounte hys message, nor what answere he hadde founde. To the whiche takynge, the medlee was grete and cruell / soo that your dere sone Lohier was ded there. And the duke Beynes of Aygremounte kylled hym and alle your folke, excepte me and ix other, that conduyttte and brynge your sone in a byere. And I myselfe am sore hurte, as ye maye see.' And thenne the messager coude speke nomore / but felle doun in a swoune, of the grete gryeffe and sore that he felte, bycause of his woundes / And when the kynge hadde herde these wordes / he felle doun vpon the grounde for the grete sorow that he toke therof, and wrange his handes / and pulled his berde / and tare alle his heres, saynge, 'Ha, god that made heuen and erthe, ye haue broughhte me in grete sorowe and tournement irreouerable, that neuer shaH ceasse wyth me / so requyre I to you the deth humbly / For neuer more desire I not to lyue' / The goode duke of Bauyre began to recomforte hym / saynge, 'For goddis loue, syre, tourmente not your selfe / but haue goode herte, and hope in god and recomforte your folke' / And this wolde saye the 24 duke Naymes for theym that he sawe wepe there for theyr kynnesmen and frendes that were ded wyth Lohyer. 'And do,' saye he to the kyng, 'late your sone be worshipfuHy buried atte saynte Germayne of the 28 medowes / And thenne ye shaH goo vpon the duke Benes of Aygremount, wyth aHe your noble power and grete puysaunce / and shaH dystroye hym and alle his lorde atte your playsure.' Thenne the kynge Charle-32 mayne recomforted hym selfe / and weH he knewe that Naymes counseylled hym truly and lawfully / Thenne sayd the kynge / 'barons, make you redy / and we

1 B. viii.
shall goo ayenste my dere sone Lohier / And incontynente aH the prynces and barons made theym selfe redy for to do the commaundement of the kynge / And whan they were goon two myle oute of Parys, they mette wyth the corps / And were there wyth the kynge, Naymes / Ogyer, Sampson of bourgoyn, and many other grete lordes / Thenne sayde the kynge Charlemayne whan he sawe the body of his dere sone Lohier / 'Alas, how shamefuyly am I treated' / he descended from his horse a foote, and toke vppe the clothe that was vppon the byere, and byhelde his sone Lohier. Thenne sawe he the hede that was smytten of from the body, and the face that was aHe to hewen / "Ha, god,' sayd he / 'how well may I be madde now aHe quycke. WeH I oughte to hate that duke Benes of Aygremounte, that thus hathe murdered my sone' / he thenne kyssed his childe aHe bloody 2fuH often, and sayd in this wyse / 'Ha, favre sone, ye were a taHe man and a gentylH knyghte; now praye I the puyssaunte god of glorye, that he take your soule thys daye, yf it be his plesure, into his royame of paradysye' / Grete sorowe made the kynge Charlemayne for the deth of his sone Lohier; But alwayes recomforted hym the goode duk naymes. And thenne Ogyer the dane, and sampson of Bourgoyn, 3toke hym vnder the armes, and ledde hym vnto saynte Germayne of the medewes. And there the body of Lohier was buryed and en-

32 E shaHe leue here to speke of the goode kynge Charlemayne, that was moche sory of his sone Lohier / as ye haue herde / and shaH teH you of the goode duke Aymon, of Renawde his sone / and of hys

1 tout detrauche. F. orig. b. viii.  1 B. viii. back.  2—3 omitted, F. orig. b. viii.

D 2
in fear go to Dordonne.

My chyldren,' sayd Aymon, 'ye knowe how the kyng Charlemayne is moche wroth, and not wythoute a cause, by cause that my broder, your uncle, hath slayne Lohier his 4 sone. And I wote weH that he shaH go vpon hym wyth all his puyssaunce / but verely we shaH not goo wyth hym / But rather shaHe we goo to Dordonne, and yf the kyng make were aycunste hym / we shaH helpe 8 hym wyth aH our Jowre /

Soo lyghted anone on horse-bak the goode duke Aymon and the foure knyghtes his children, and bayted noo wherre tytt they came to Laon / and from thens they rode soo long tyH they 12 came to Dordonne. And whan the lady sawe her lorde and her foure children, she was ryght gladde, and wente agaynste them for to welcome them, and asked after tydynges, and yf Reynawde and his other chy- 16 dren were made knyghtes / Thenne the goode duk answered 'ye'; 1 and after, she asked whi they were departed for the kynges courte.2 And themne he rehearsed vnto her worde by worde how his broder, the 20 duke Benes, had slayne Lohier, the sone of the kyng Charlemyyn / wherof the goode lady Margerye was wounderfuH wroth and sory; for weH she knew that this deth of Lohier was the totalle dysstructyon of the 24 duke Aymon her husbonde, of herselde, and of her children, and of theyr londe. She herde Reynawde her eldest sone, that threatened Charlemyne the grete kyng / themne sayd to hym the lady his moder / 'My 28 sone Reynawde, I praye the vnderstande me a lityH / Loue thy souerayne and thy natureH lorde / and drede hym abone aH thyenge; but bere hym honour and reuerence / and god shaH reward the for it / and ye, my 32 lorde Aymon, I am moche merueylled of you, that are departed from Charlemyne wythoute leue of hym, that hath doon to you soo moche goode and soo grete

---

1 C. i. 2 dauecq le roy Charlemagne, F. orig. b. viii.
worship, and hathe gyuen to your sones soo noble and soo ryche armes, and hathe made theym knyghtes wyth his owne handes / more grete honoure he myghte not
doo to you nor to your chyldren' / 'Lady,' sayd the
duke, 'we be thus departed from kynge Charlemayne
by cause that my broder hathe slayne his sone, as
I haue tolde you afore' / 'Ha, god,' sayd the lady,
that of the vyrgyn was borne in bedeleym, how hath
y® euyl thys daye surmounted y® goode / For godys
loue, my lorde,' sayde the lady, 'medlee not wyth aHe,
and bids him serve his King.

4

She upbraids Aymon for leaving Paris,

and bide him serve his King.

12 goo vpon your broder / and by my courseyH serue the
kynge, your ryght-wys lorde, nor faylle hym not for
noo thyng / For yf ye doo otherwyse, ye shaH be vntrue
and false toAvarde your souerayne and natureH lorde.'

16 'Lady,' sayd the duke, 'by god omnypotente I wolde
leuer haue loste my castell & the halfe of my londe /
than that my broder sholde haue 1slayne Lohier. Now
the wyll of god be doon therin, and none otherwyse.'

20 To speke of the good duke Aymon of Dordonne,
and of his wiff the duchesse, and of theyr sones /
we shaH here leue, and shall retourne to speke of the
kyenge Charlemayne that was come again to Parys /

21 makynge grete sorow for his son Lohier. There had
you seen many a gowne torne and broken / many a
hande wrongen, and many heres of the hede pulled, soo
that it was pyte & wonder for to see. 2'Alas, my dere

28 sone,' sayd kynge Charlemayne2 / 'he that hath slayn
theoos cruelHy, loued me but lityH. I shaH neuer be in
quyete nor in rest tyH that I haue take vengeance of
thy deth.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke Bauyere, 'haue mercy

32 of your selfe / For it behoueth not to soo grete a
prince as ye be, for to make soo grete sorowe as ye
dooy' / And in the meane while came a messager afore

1 C. i. back.

2—2 et le roy demenoit le roy qui . . . F. orig. c. i.
the kyng / whiche shewed to hym how Aymon / the duke of Dordonne, & his foure sones, were go on in to their countree / wherof the kyng was sore an angred & wrothe, And sware god and saynt Denys, that afore he sholde deye, that Aymon and his chyldren sholde abyde full sore for it, and that the duke Benes of Aygre- mount1 shold not kepe theym therfro. The dyner was redy, & they wysshe their handes, and were sette at dyner / but wyte it that the kynge dyde ete but litȳ as he that was in grete malencolye; and ye fayr Salamon serucd that daye afore hym the coppe / & grete people was there. After dyner, themperoure 12 charlemayne dyde reyson wyth his barons, & sayd to theym: ‘lorde[s],’ sayde he, ‘ye duke Benes of Aygremount hath doon to me grete outrage, that soo shamfuHy hath slayne my sone lohier / But, & it playse 16 charlemanye dyde reyson wyth his barons, & sayd to theym: ‘lorde[s],’ sayde he, ‘ye duke Benes of Aygremount hath doon to me grete outrage, that soo shamfuHy hath slayne my sone lohier / But, & it playse 16 god, I shall go wreke it vpon hym this nexte somer, & I shall dystro ye aH his londe; and ye maye take hym, I shall not leue hym, 2 for the duke Aymon that shamfuHy is goon from me / nor for his foure sones 20 that I haue made knyghtes, wherof I me repente sore, but that I shall make [t]hem to be hanged’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd thenne the duke Naymes, ‘now here what I shall saye to you / your sone is ded by grete vnhappe, and weH 24 in an euHy oure was he put to deth, for neuer deth was so sore solde ne so dere boughte as this shalH be / So sende now for your folke thrughe aH your londes, & thenne from hens towarde Aygremount take your 28 waye. And ye may take the duke Benes / lete the deth of your sone lohier be to hym fuH dere solde.’

Aymes,’ sayd the kyng, ‘ye be a good man / 32 N Aymes,’ sayd the kyng, ‘ye be a good man / 32 sage, curtois, & valyaunt. euyn thus shalH I doo / for weH wyseHlly ye haue counselled me’ / Thenne gaaf he leue to many of his barons and gentyH men

1 ne ses freres ne ses ōfās, F. orig. c. i. 2 C. ii.
that were in his courte at that tyme, and tolde theym
that ech of theym sholde goo in to his countrey for to
make themselfe redy, and that they sholde come ayen
4 to hym the nexte somer. Soo was it doon as the kynge
had commandes. And thus wente the barons & the
gentyHmen from the courte into their countrey, and
by theym were tydynges broughte throughe all the londes
8 vnto Rome / That kynge / Charlemayne made a grete
assemble of men of armes, soo that the renowne therof
floughe vnto the duke Benes of Aygremountes court /
whiche of that other parte dyd sende for his kynsmen
12 & frendes / & in especaH he sente for his bredern
Gerarde of roussyllon and Dron of nantuell / soo that
they were whan they came togither weH foure score
thousande fyghtynge men & moo / and as fayre folke as
16 euere were seen / whiche themne sayd, 'I bylyne, yf the
kynge besege the casteHe that the worsse shalHe re-
tourne vnto hym.' / Thenne sayd the duke Benes of
Aygremounte to Gerarde of Roussyllon, 'Broder,' sayd
20 he, 'be not dyssmayd / for I hope to hurt the kynge
soo sore yf he come vpon vs, that he shal be wery of
his bargayn / but tete vs goo fourth towards Troye in
chamayne, and / there we shal fyghte wyth the
24 kynge vygorously / for weH I wote that god shal helpe
vs ayenste hym.' / This was atte the begynnyng of the
moneth of Maye, and Charlemayne was at Parys / that
abode after his men that sholde come for to goo wyth
28 a grete puyssaunce vpon the duke Benes of Aygre-
mounte. And bode not longe, that Rycharde of Nor-
mandy cam to the kyng with xxx thousande fyghtynge
men. And of a nother side, came to hym the erle
32 Guy, that hadde wyth hym a ryght noble and a grete
company of goode men. And4 after hym came Sal-
mon of bretyane, and the erle Huon; and of all sides

1—1 omitted, F. orig. c. ii. back.  
2 C. ii. back.  
3—3 omitted, F. orig. c. ii.  
4 And in text.
They set out for Aygremount.

After many days marching a messenger rides forward and asks whither the army is bound.

The messenger, brought before the King, says he comes from Aubrey of Troyes to ask for aid against Duke Benes.

ye sholde haue seen come to the kynge Charlemayne, Poetenyms, Gascoyns, Normans, Flemynges, Bernyers, & Bourgoyns / and so many other grete lordez that it was grete wonder for to see / whiche come all, & lodged 4 theym selfe in ye medowes of saynte Germayne.

Henne when the kyng Charlemayne knewe that his folke was all arruyed, he had of yt grete Ioye / and incontynente made his bataylles to departe / for to go to 8 his enterpryse ; and made of Rycharde of Normandy, of Walleran of bryllon, of Gnydellon of banyere, of Yzacar of Nemours, of Oger the dane / and of Esconf the sone of Oedon, wyth theym xl thousande men, his forewarde / 12 There sholde ye haue seen a ryght noble companye, and many hardy men. They departed from nyghe Parys / and putte theym selfe to the waye streyghte towarde Aygremeunte. And they thus rydynge after many 16 dayes Journee, whiche I canne not telle, came there streyghte to Ogyer the dane, that was in the forewarde, a messenger sore hastily rydyng / that asked to whom was this noble companye / And he answered to 20 hym, that they were kynge Charlemaynes folke. Thenne sayd, 2 Syr, the messenger, 2 that he wolde wyth speke wyth hym. Thenne went Oger the dane, and shewed hym to the kyng / And assoone as the messenger sawe hym, 24 he made hym due reverence / and the kyng gaaf hym ayen his salute / and hym demaunded what he was and fro whens he come. And the messenger tolde hym that he was of Troye / and that vnto hym he was sent 28 from Aubrey, the lorde of Troye, that was his liege man, 3 whiche besoughte hym humblie for socoure, for the duk Benes of Aygremounte, and his two brederne, Gerarde of Roussyllon and Dron of nantuel, and wyth 32 theym an hundred thousande fyghtyng men, had beseged

1 C. iii.
2-2 omitted, F. orig. c. ii.
3 car il tenoit de luy Troye, F. orig. c. ii.
hym wythin Troye; and that yf he come not to helpe hym, he muste yeilde vp the towne, and also the fayre towre that Julyus Cesar dyde buykde there.

4 W

Han Charlemayne the emperour vnderstode that Troye was beseged by the duke Benes and his bretherne / he was ful sory for hit. And he swore thenne by saynt Denys of Fraunce, that he sholde goo there wyth his army, and that yf he myghte holde the duke of Aygremounte, he sholde make hym deye a shamfuH deth. Soo called he the duke Naymes of Bauyere / Goodebew of Fryse / and the duk walleran, 12 and sayd to theym, 'Barons, ye vnderstond what this messager sayth / lete vs ryde hastely towards Troy or it be take.' And they answered to hym ryght gladly that they wolde doo it soo / Soo dyde they rydde a 16 goode paas till that they came nyghe Troye / And fyrste of aHe came the forewarde wyth the Oryflame / of the whiche were gouernours Oger the Dane / Rycharde of Normandy: and 1 the duke Walleran /and [with] theym 20 fourty^2 thousande men /and the messager of Troye that conduytted theym / And whan they were comen soo nyghe that they sawe Troye afore theym, a messager came to Gerarde of Roussillon that was afore Troye /

24 saynge to hym that the kyng Charlemayne came upon theym, for to socoure Aubrey wyth a ryght grete and puyssaunte compaynye / Thenne sayd Gerarde to his bretherne / That is to wyte, duke Benes of Aygre-

28 monte and the erle Dron of NantueH, 'that it were goode that they sholde goo ayenste kyng Charlemayne wyth all theyr puyssaunce, and that ech of theym sholde preue hym selfe a goode man' / They dyde soo 32 as they hadde denysed, and Gerarde of Roussyllon was the fyrste in the forewarde; and they roode soo longe tyH that the one partye sawe the other. Thenne sayd Ogyer the Dane to Rycharde of Normandy, whan he

1 C. iii. back. 2 trente, F. orig. c. ii.
sawe come Gerarde of Roussyllon / 'See,' sayd he, 'how Gerarde of Roussyllon weneth for to fare fowH wyth vs. But now lete vs thynke for to diffende vs weH, soo moche that the worshippe abyde to the kyng Charle-4 mayne / and to vs' / And thenne they lete renne their horses from one parte and from the other / And Gerarde of Roussyllon went and smote an Almayn wyth his spere soo moche, that he made it to entre thoroughe the body of hym, whiche felle anone deed to the grounde. And Gerarde toke his baner and cryed wyth an highe voys / 'Roussillon, Roussyllon!'

The battle begins, Henne beganne the bataylle sore strong, felle, and 12 cruH. And when Oger the dane sawe thus his folke deye, he was woode and mad wyth hit / Soo wente he, and smote a knyghte named Ponson by suche a wyse, that he putte his spere thoroughe the body of hym, 16 whiche felle doun 2 deed afore him. And whan Gerarde hadde seen the same, he wente and smote one of Ogyers men / soo that aHe deed he cast hym afore hym / 3 And thenne he sayd, 3 'Ye haue this for your maysters sake, 20 Ogyer' / Moche grete and merueyllous was the stoure, and the bataiH soo fyers. For there sholde ye haue seen soo many of sheldes perced and clouen / and soo many a haubergeon broken / and salettes and helmes 24 unbooled and sore beten / and soo many men lienge upon thother deed, that aH the erthe was couered wyth the blood of the deed men, and of theym that were hurte there, soo that it was a grete pyte for to see. 28 And thenne came the duke Benes of Aygremounte, that spored hys horse terryble, and wente and smote Enguerran, lord of Peronne and of saynte Quyntyne, soo harde, that he ouerthrew hym deed afore hym, and 32 thenne sayd, 'Now goo, godlys curse haue thou!' and cryed wyth an highe voys, 'Aygremounte' / And thenne

\[1\] omitted, F. orig. c. iii. back.  \[2\] C. iiiii.  \[3\] omitted, F. orig. c. iii. back.
came to him his brother, the duke of NantueH, wyth all his folke, and they wente all togyder vpon Charlemayne's folke. And of the other parte came wyth grete 4 puyssaunce Almayns, Poeteuyns, and Lombardes also, that were of the parte of kyng Charlemayne / So medled theymself the one partye among the other / And there was moche harde and horrable assemble / For there 8 were slayne many myghty and worthy knyghtes of bothe sydes / And Rycharde of Normandy shewed weH there his grete prowesse and worthynes / for he wente and smote a knyghte that Gerarde of Roussillon loued 12 moche, by suche a streynge that he ouerthrew hym deed from hys horse to the erthe afore the sayd Gerarde / whiche thenne sayd / 'Now am I weH sory and wrothe for hym that now ys deed, that I loued 16 soo sore. Certes, I shalH neuer haue Ioye atte my herte but that I be a'euenged therof shortly.' Thenne toke Gerarde of Roussillon his baner in his fyste / but his broder of NantueH came 2 anone to hym and sayd, 20 'Broder, I counseyHe you that ye tourne agayn / for here cometh Charlemayne wyth his folke, and weH I telle you, that yf we abye hym / the losse shalHe torne vpon vs.' And whyle they were spekyng thus, Wal- 24 lerou of Bollon smote the neuew of Gerarde of Roussillon soo that he foyned atte hym wyth his swerde thrugh the body of hym, and felle doun deed to the erthe. Thenne trowed Gerarde to haue goon oute of 28 his wytte / and sente 3 anone for the duke Benes his broder, that he sholde come soone to socoure hym / And he dyde soo as preu and valyaunte that he was, And of the other side assembled there the kynge and 32 his folke. ¶ Soo shalH you now here of a thyng mer- neyllouse, of soo grete a noblesse, that at the same feeld were cruHy slayne / This was in the moneth of Maye,
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMEN. [CHAP. I.

upon a mornying, that kyng Charlemayne dide assemble his folke wyth the folke of the duke of Aygremounte and of his bretherne / to the whiche assemble ye sholde haue seen many fayr harneyses shynyng, for the sonne 4 that fayr and clere was that daye, the whiche assemble was wonderfull stronge / For there were so many feet and hedes smytten of, and so many good horses slayne, 1 and tho ther ranne thrughe the medowes, wherof the 8 maysters leye deed vpon the grasse. 1 And wyte it for trouth, that there were deed that same daye of the one side and of the other, more than xl 2 thousande men. Ha, god, what slaughter! there was moche grete noblesse 12 deed. The duk Benes, sore angred, went and smote sire Walter, lorde of Pyerelee, in his sheld, soo that his spere wente thorughe the body of hym, and felle doun deed afore hym. Thenne cryed he wyth an highe 16 voys, 'his banere, 3 Aygremounte!' Geete was the preesse / and the bataylle fyers and merueyllouse. And there shewed Rycharde of Normandye moche worthyly his grete hardynes / For 20 he lousted ayenste the duke of Aygremounte soo that he perced his sheelde, and dyde hurte hym ryght sore / And sayd to hym / 'By god, ye shaU not this daye escape dethe. It was an euyU daye for you whan ye 24 dyde slee my lorde Lohyer' / And wyth that, he dyd drawe oute his swerde / And smote the duke agayne vpon his helme / in suche a wyse that yf it hadde not be the coyffe of stele that made his stroke to slyde / 28 the sayd benes hadde be deed that houre. And the stroke felle doun vpon the horse, and cutte the horse in two, as though hit had be noo thynge; and thus felle the horse deed vnder his mayster / Thenne was the 32 duke Benes sore abasshed when he thus founde hym-

Duke Benes kills Sir Walter, Lord of Pyerelee.

Richard of Normandy jousts against Duke Benes.

Duke Benes' horse is killed.

1—1 et les aultres couvrir parmi les prez dont les maistres gisoiät mors par dessus lerbe.
2 lx, in F. orig. c. iii.
3 C. v.
CHAP. I.] HOW DUKE BENES IS DEFEATED.

selfe a grounde / But he stoode vppe on his fette redly, as he that was preu and valyaunte, holdyng hys swerde in his hande / And wente and smote a knyghte named sire Symon, soo that he kylled hym sterke deed in the place / And thenne he called wyth an highe voys / Aygremoute his baner. Thenne came to hym his two bretherne / the duke of Roussyallon and of NantueH / And of the side of kynge Charlemayne came Ogyer, Naymes, Walleron of Bollon, Huon lorde of Mauns, the erle Salamon, Leon of Fryse, the archebishop Turpyn, and Escouf the sone of Oedon / And thenne sholde ye haue seen there, at that assemble, moche grete and merueyllouse noblesse of knyghtes that leye deed vpon the erthe, the one vpon the other, that it was a pyetous sighte to be-holde.

TO this inhumayn occysion was come themperoure Charlemayn, cryeng, 'barons, yf they escape vs, we shal neuer haue honoure' / and thenne he bare vppe his spere to the reest, and wente and smote in to the sheld of Gerarde of roussyallon, so that he over-throwe bothe horse and man to the grounde / And there hadde be his last daye, yf hit hadde not be the duke Benes and Dron, his bretherne / that moche worthyly, and wyth grete deligence, socoured hym. Of that other partye, came Ogyer the Dane, vpon his goode horse Broyforte, that smote a knyghte of the folke of Gerarde, duke of Roussyallon, called sire Foulquet, soo that he cloue hym to the teeth, and felle doun deed to the erth. And whan Gerarde of Roussillon sawe thus his knyghte slayne, he called to god and to our lady, sayng, 'WeH haue I this day loste my fayr and goode knyghte.' And the duke of Aygremoute was sore abasshed, and prayed god also full pyetously that it wolde playse hym to kepe hym from deth, and from faHyng into the handes of Charlemayne. Nyghe

1 de France, F. orig. c. iv. back, 2 C. v. back.
The battle ceases at sundown.

Gerarde counsels a renewal of the fight on the morrow.

Duke Nantuell counsels that Duke Benes should make amends to Charlemagne for the death of Lohier.

was the sonne under, and it was well aboute complyntyme / and the fyghters of the one parte and of the other were wery and sore chaufied / And soo wyth-drew the thre bretherne abacke to their tentes wyth 4 moche wrathe / and in especyaH Gerarde de Roussyllon, that hadde loste that daye Aymanoy his cosyn, and a hundred other of the beste Knyghtes of his company / And he sayd in this wyse / 'An euyH houre it was 8 whan the sone of Charlemayne was slayne' / Thenne came to hym the duke Benes of Aygremounte bledyng, as he that was horrybly wounded / And whan Gerarde sawe hym / he began to sighe tenderly, saynge / 'Fayr 12 brother, are ye wounded to dethe?' 'Nay,' sayd he, 'I shall soone be hole.' Thenne swore Gerarde the duke of Roussyllon, that to morowe atte the sonne rysynge / He sholde begynne agayne the batayHe 16 ayenste kynge Charlemayne and his 1 folke, wherfore xxx thousande shal lose theyr lyues. 'Alas, for god, nay,' sayd his broder, the duke NantueH. 'But yf ye wyH doo my counseyH we shalH sende xxx. of the 20 wysest knyghtes that we haue, vnto kynge Charlemayne, and by our sayd knyghtes we shalH doo hym to wyte, and shewe humbli that he haue pyte and mercy of vs, and that the duke Benes our brother shalH amende hym 24 the deth of his sone Lohier, euen soo as it shalH be adyuysed by the prynces and barons of his felauhyp and of ours / and ye knowe weH aH redy that we ben his liege men, and that for to werre ayenste hym we 28 doo cruieH falshed / And yet more it is / that yf he had lost aH his folke that he 2 hath here wyth hym / or euer that it were a moneth passed he sholde haue recoovered twys as many / soo maye we no thyng doo ayenst 32 hym / And therfore maye we noo thyng doo ayenst hym; and therfore I praye you, my brethern, that ye

1 C. vi. back.
2 qu'il amene sur nous, F. orig. c. iii.
weH doo thus / And to hym answered his two brethern
that they wolde doo it / syn that he counseyllde theym
soo; And concluded togyder that they sholde sende
4 thyther as soone as it were daye. They made that
nyghte good watche vnto the mornyng / and thenne
they made redy theyr messagers for to sende to the
kyng Charlemayne. And whan they were redy / 8
Gerarde of roussyllon sayd to theym / 'Lorde, saye
weH to kynge Charlemayne that we be sore dysplaysed
of the deth of his sone Lohier, and that our brother,
the duke Benes, repenteth hymselfe of it full sore, &
12 that yf it playse hym to have mercy of vs, that we
shaH go and serue hym where it shaH playse hym
to sende vs, wyth x thousande fyghtyng men / And
also ye shaH saye to Naymes of banyere, that we
16 praye hym that we he wyH employe hymselfe to-
warde the kynge Charlemayne, that this accorde maye
be hadde.'

A fter that the messagers hadde weH aHe alonge
vnderstande what they sholde saye to the kynge
Charlemayne from the thre bretherne dukes / They
lyghted on horsebacke eche of theym / berynge
braunches of olyue tree in their handes, In token of
24 peas / And ceassed not to ryde tyll that they were
come afore the tente of the kynge Charlemayne /
Thenne spake one of theym, whiche was named Steuyn /
that salued the kynge in this manere /

28 'Syre, I praye2 our lorde that of his grace gyue
you goode lyfe and longe / And wyte, syre, that the
duke Gerarde of Roussyillon, & the duke Benes of Ay-
gremount, and Dron of NantueH, ben comen hider, the
32 whiche crye you mercy / and byseche you ryght humbly
that it playse you to pardone theym the dethe of your

1 C. vi. back.
2 celluy dieu q' forma noz pere et mere adam, et eue
createur de toutes choses, benoise vous roy Charlemagne, F.
orig. c. v. back.
sone Lohier / of the whiche they are wrothe and sory. And the duke of Aygremounte lete you wyte by vs / that yf hyt be your playsure to doo soo, that he and his bretherne shaHe be your liegemen,\(^1\) And shalle come to 4 serue you wyth x thousande fyghtyne men in aHe that shaHe be your playsure to employe theym / Syre, for godys sake, haue remembraunce that god forgaffe his dethe to Longys, that cruHy stycked hym to the 8 herte;\(^2\) wherfore, syre, playse it you to pardone theym, and take theym to your goode grace. And of this right humbly they beseeche you.'

\(W\) Han the kynge Charlemayne hadde thus herde 12 speke the messagers of the thre bretherne / He frompeled his forhede, and knytted his browes, and loked ful angrely / And atte that owre he answered to theym noo thynge / And thenne soone after he beganne 16 to speke in this manere: 'By my feyth, Sir Steuyn,' sayd he, 'weH had the, duke Benes lost his wyttes whan he soo shamfuHy slewe 3my dere some Lohier, the\(^4\) whiche I loued soo tenderly. Now, is he my 20 man? wyH he or not?' 'Syre,' sayd Steuyn, 'I am certeyne that he shaHe doo to you aHe rayson to the dyrectyon of your goode counseyHe' / Then sayde the kynge, 'of this we shaHe counseyHe vs' / And wyth- 24 drewe hym a lityH a side / and called to hym duke Naymes, Ogyer the dane / sire Salamon, Huon of Mauns, Walleron of Boullon / Odet of Langres, and Leon of Fryse, and sayd to theym / 'Lordes, here ben 28 the messagers of the duke Benes & of his brethern, that sende me worde that they wyH come to serue me where my wylle shaH be, wyth x thousande goode fyghtyne men / yf we wyH pardonne theym the 32 dethe of my sone Lohier; And they shaH be oure

---

\(^{1}\) Et luz et ses freres Gerart de Roussillon et Dron de Natuel les quelz vous viedrot servir.

\(^{2}\) de sa lauce, F. orig. c. v.

\(^{3}\) C. vii.

\(^{4}\) we in text.
vassaylles and treue liege men; And of vs they shaHe holde theyr londes and theyr lordeshyppes / 'Syre,' answered the duke Naymes, 'in this is noo thynge but weH. Soo counsaylle I you that ye pardoune theym / For they be moche valyaunte / and of grete renoune; wherfore pardoune theym, yf it playse you.'

Henne by the counsaylle of the duke Naymes of Bauyere, the kyng dyde pardoune the thre bretherne, and called to hym the thre knyghtes / and sayd to theym / how he pardouned the thre dukes the dethe of his sone Lohier / by suche a condycyon that the duke Bynes of Aygremounte sholde come for to serve hym atte the feste of saynte Lohier nexte comynge men at the feast of St. John.

The messengers return and announce the King's decision.

The Duke Bynes counsels the King to accept their allegiance.

The King pardons the three Dukes, on condition that they should serve him with ten thousand men at the feast of St. John.

In thys

1 car les troys ducs, F. orig. c. v.  
2 omitted, F. orig. c. v.  
3 baptiste, F. orig. c. v.  
4 C. vii. back.  
5 Girart de Roussillon a ses freres, c. v. F. orig.  
6 off. CHARL. ROM. X.  
6 off.
wyse they came to fore the kyng Charlemaigne, And wyte weH that in ryght grete humylete were sette the thre bretherne for to haue peas and accorde wyth the kyng Charlemaigne, that was wrothe to theym, specy-4 aHy to the duke of Aygremounte / as more playnly ye shaHe here hereafter.

W Han kyng Charlemaigne sawe thus come the thre bretherne wyth theyr barons and knyghtes, 8 he called to hym the duke Naymes and many other barons / and sayd to theym / ‘Canne not ye teHe me what folke ye see yonder commyne?’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd the duke Naymes, ‘it is duk Benes of Aygremounte 12 wyth his folke / that come for to requyre you of mercy’ / This hangynge, the duke Benes of Aygremounte came afore the kyng, and caste hym selfe vpon his knee / and sayd to hym in this wyse / ‘Syre, for god 16 I crye you mercy ; we ben here comeN by your commaundement / Yf I haue slyne your dere^ sone by my foly, I now (as your man) yelde me and my bretherne also, Gerarde of roussillon & Dron of nantuel, & wyH 20 be your liege men & serue you wyth aH our pussaune where your plaisur ^shaHe be to sette vs vnto / and neuer dayes of our lyues we shaH faylle you / but yf it be longe of you’ /

Thenne whan the kyng sawe theym thus come humbli towarde his presence in theyr shertes, and barefoote, & had herde this that the duke of Aygremounte had sayd to hym / he had of them right grete 28 pyte / and pardouned theym the deth of his sone Lohier, & aH his euyH wyH / Thenne shold ye haue seen from one parte and from the other, kysse and colle eche other theyr kynsmen / and some wepte for 32 ioye, & thother for pyte.

T Henne were pleased the barons wyth the kyng Charlemayn by the couseyH of the good duke

1 omitted, F. orig. c. vi. back.  2 C. viii.
Naymes. theyne sware and promysed the thre brethern 1 good fidelite 2 to the kynge Charlemayne 1 / and that they sholde serue hym at all tymes that he sholde calle 4 for theym / Soo toke they a glade leue from kynge Charlemayne; but the kynge charged the duke Benes of Aygremount that he sholde come to serue hym at the feste of seynt Ioijn nexte comyng / And thenne 8 returned kynge charlemayne towarde Parys / and the bretherne wente ayen right glad, eche of theym towards his place / for weH they trowed to haue accorde the duke Benes of Aygremounte theyr broder towarde 12 Charlemayne / But other wyse it wente, & ful lityt was worth the their acorde, for soone after deyed therof the duke Benes of Aygremounte by trason, and vnder the saufconduyt of the kynge Charlemayne, as ye 2 16 shaH vnderstonde yf ye wylle here me. 3 If ye shaH wyte that a lityl afore the feste of saynt Ioijn baptiste that the kynge Charlemayne helde a grete court in Paris, & the duke Benes forgate not to goo thyder 20 as he had promysed / soo departed he fro Aygremouhte wyth two hudred knyghtes, and toke his way for to come to Paris towarde the kynge for to serue hym where he wolde put hym vnto. Now shaH ye here 24 how the kynge, beynge in Parys / came towarde hym the erle Guenes his neuwe, Aoryfoulquet of moryllon, Hardres and Berenger, whiche tolde hym how the duk Benes came for to serue hym wyth weH two hundred 28 knyghtes / saynge by this maner / ‘Syr, how maye ye loue nor weH be serued of hym that soo cruelHy hath slayne your sone, oure cosin / yf your playsure were we sholde well avenge you of hym / For in goode soothe 32 we sholde slee hym.’ ‘Guenes,’ sayd ye kynge, ‘it were traison, for we haue gyuen to hym tryewes. Always doo wyth it your wyH, so that the synne tourne not

1–1 omitted, F. orig. c. vi. back. 2 ye ye in text. 3 C. viii. back.
upon me, and kepe you. For in certeyn the duke of Aygremont is ryght myghty, and of grete kynred / and weH ye myghte happe to haue a doo, yf ye fulfylle in this your owne entente.' 'Syre,' answered Guenes, 4 'care ye not therfore / for there nys soo ryche a man in aH the worlde that durste vndertake ony thynge ayenste me and my linage.' 'Syre,' sayd Guenelon, 'tomorowe erly we shaH departe wyre thousands fyghtynge 8 men / and take noo care for it / For we shaH delyuer although protest- this worlde of hym.' 'Certes,' sayd the kyng, 'it were trayson' / 'Care not therfor;' sayd Guenes, 'he slewe weH your sone Lohier by trayson, whiche was my 12 kynnesman, And therfore I wyre be auenged and I can. 'Now doo you therin,' sayd the kyng, 'protestynge always that I am not thereto consentynge.'

When the mornying came, departed weH erly from 16 Parys the sayd Guenelon and his felawes, and wyth theym weH fourre thousande fyghtynge men / And neuer they taryed tyll that they came in the Valey of Soyssons / And there they recounted the duke Benes 20 wyth his puyssaunce ; and whan the duk Benes sawe theym2 come, he sayd to his 8folke, 'Lordes, I trowe that yonder be som folke of the kingis, that retourne ayen from the court' / 'It is noo force4, sayd one of his 24 knyghtes. 'I wote not what it maye be,' sayd the duke / 'For the kyng Charlemayne is sore vengable for to auenge hymselfe / And also he hath wyth hym a lynage of folke, the whiche be felle and cruel / Is it 28 Guenes, foulques of Moryllon, and certeyn other of his court / And in trouthe, to nyghte in my slepe I dremed that a gryffon came oute of the heuens, that perced my sheld and all myn armes, soo that his nyales stacke in 32 to my lyuer and my mylte / and aH my men were therof in grete tourmente / and they aH were eten wyth

1 if. 2 vit veniri si noble copaignie, F. orig. c. vi. 3 D. i. 4 matter.
bores and of lions, and noone of theym scaped but one alone / And also me semed that oute of my mouth yssue a white douve'/ Thenne sayd one of hys knyghtes that it was aH but weH / and that for cause of this dreme he oughte not to dysmaye hymselfe / 'I wote not,' sayd the duke, 'what god shalH sende me, but of this my herte dredeH' / Soo commaunded the duk Benes that euery man shold arme hymselfe. And his knyghtes answered, that right gladly they wolde soo doo. Soo beganne euery of theym to seke his armes and hablymentes / Here shalH you here of the harde hewyng, and of a thynge heuy to be recounted, of the grete slaughter that made the traytour Guennellon of the goode duke Benes of Aygremounte. 

The Duke commands every man to arm himself.

T[h]E erle Guenes rode wyth grete force, that was wonderfuH strong & fyers, and weH accompanied. Thenne wente and mette wyth the duk Benes first, Foulquet of Moryllon, the whiche sayd to hym that he hadde doon ylle for to sée Lohyer the sone eldest of the kyng Charlemayne / but or euery the euyn came he sholde haue a sory rewarde for it. Whan the duke vnderstode hym, he merueyld hym 1selfe moche, and sayd / 'Ha god, how myght one kepe hym frome traytours / Alas, I helde the kyng Charlemayne for a true prynce / and I see now the contrary; but afore that I deye, I shalH selle my deth ful dere' / Thenne wente they and fought, the one partye ayenst the other, moche angrely. In so moche that Guenes smotte byfore the duke, hys cosyn Reyner, soo that he ouerthrew hym doun deed to the erth afore his feete; and after, he cryed wyth an hie voys / 'smyte on, knyghtes, for he slewe my good cosin Lohier / The duk Benes of Aygremount dayned not accorde wyth me / but now I shaHe selle it hym fulH dere.' So ranne Guenes & his folke vpon the duke Benes of Aygremounte / and the duke

1 D. i. back.
Guenes slays a knight, called Sir Fawcon.

Duke Benes weeps for the absence of Mawgis, and

The battle rages fiercely.

ryght worthilie deffended hym selfe, & smote a knyghte named sire Fawcon, so that he shoued his swerde in to the body of hym, and he felle deed afore hym. And after this the duke Benes of Aygremount toke hym selfe for to wepe strongly / and wyssshed moche after his two bretherne, and also after his neuewes. 'Alas,' sayd he, 'dere sone Mawgys! where be you now, that ye be not here for to socoure me / for wel I wote, yf ye 8 wyst this enterprise, ye sholde well socoure me / Ha, my dere broder, the duke of Dordonne & of NantueH, 1 & Gerarde of Roussyllon,1 weH I know that ye shaH neuer see me alyue / Alas, that ye knowe not the false 12 enterpryse of Charlemayne and of the erle Guenellon / that soo cruHy and by grete trayson shaHe this daye make me Inhumaylyn for to deye. WeH I wote that ryght worthily ye sholde come helpe me. Ha, my dere 16 neuewes, Reynawde, Alarde, Rycharde, and Guycharde, soo moche nede I haue this daye of you. Ha, my dere neuew Reynawde, worthy knyghte / as thou arte / yf hit playse to god of hys benygne grace / that thou 20 myghte know the greuous tourmente and the sorrowfull matyere to the whiche by trayson I am this daye lyuered / well I wote that by thee 2 I sholde haue socours / for in all the worlde ys not thy peer of 24 beaulite, of goodnesse, of prowess, and of worthynese / Now maye not this daye socoure me aH my noble and worthy lynage / but that cruHy, and vnder the sauf-conduyt of Charlemayne, I shaH deye pyteously.' 28

Yers was the batayH, and ryght harde to endure, but well ye maye wyte that the duke of Aygremounte myghte not resiste ayenste soo many folke; for he hadde not wyth hym but two hundred knyghtes / 32 and the other were moo than four thousande: thus were they euH matched / Themne sholde ye haue seen

1–1 omitted, F. orig. c. vii.  2 D. ii.  3 thee.  4 traictres, F. orig. c. vii.
that daye soo moche braynes in the feelde / soo many feete and hedes smytten of / that it was a pyteouse thynge to beholde / After came yet ayen Guenes, that 4 smote Toyusselyne of Bloye soo that he casted hym ded to the erth / and he made some to go backe the duk Benes folke of Aygremounte / Thenne was sore abasshed the duke of Aygremounte / the whiche knewe 8 weH that wythoute dethe he myghte not escape. Soo wente he, and smote one of Guenes folke soo grete a stroke, that he ouerthrew hym deed / for noon otherwyse he coude doo / but defende hymselfe as weH as 12 he coude for to lengthe his lyffe / Ha, god, what a grete dommage it was to liaue thus shamfuHy betrayed hym / for after, many chirches, many townes and castelles were therfore sette in a fyre1 / and soo many grete nobles 16 fuH pyetously broughte to deth / Soo moche sped the traytour Guenes ayenst the goode duke of Aygremounte, that the folke of the duke were weke and almoste gen / For, of the two hundred that he hadde broughte, he 20 hadde noo moo wyth hym but2 fourthi / 'Barons,' sayd the duke Benes of Aygremounte, 'ye see that we ben almoste 3aH deed, yf we defende vs not wyth grete herte and worthynes / and for goddis lone lete euery 24 of vs be worthe thre as longe as we shaH now be alyue. For ye see, that here pyetously we muste departe and breke felowshyp.' Thenne wente the duke agayn, and smote a knyghte named syre Helye, soo that he mad 28 hym to faHe deed to the erthe. And thenne cryed wyth an hyghe voyce / 'Smyte well, barons.' The valey was fayre, and sounded of the noyse4 that was made there / And atte that oure, one named Gryffoon of 32 Hautefelle / wente and smote the dukes horse in to the breste wyth his spere, soo that he ouerthrew hym 

1 et en flambe, F. orig. c. viii. back.  
2 cinquante, F. orig. c. viii. back.  
3 D. ii. back.  
4 des coups quilz donoient sur les heaulmes, F. orig. c. viii. back.
under the horse. And the duke anoone arose vrpon his feete, and take his swerde, wenynge to smyte the sayd Gryffon; but the stroke felle vrpon the horse, soo that he cutted hym asonder, as yt hadde ben noo thyng.

Han the duke Benes of Aygremounte sawe hym selfe thus on foote he knewe wel that it was doon of hym, but wel he swere that his dethe he sholde selle righte dere. But sodaynly came there vrpon hym the erle Guenes, that satte vrpon a goode courser, the whiche smote the duke Benes of Aygremounte wyth his spere suche a stroke, that he shoued hym thorughe and thorughe his body, and thus fell down deed the duke Benes of Aygremounte. And thenne the duke Gryffon, the fader of the sayd Guenes, cam to the duke Benes of Aygremounte that laye deed vrpon the sande, and shoued his swerde in to his foundemente.

Thenne sayd the duke Gryffon, 'Now haste you thi rewarde, for my lorde Lohyers deeth that thou late slew shamefully wythin thy palays. Now is the goode and worthy duke Benes of Aygremounte deceassed, god of his soule haue mercy.' And the traytour Guenellon and the lorde of Haultefelle, that lyghted vrpon a goode horse, wente after the duke of Ayyremountes folke that fledde, whiche were but x. a lyue of two hundred, and yet these x. were soone ouertaken. And thenne the traytoure made them to swere and promytte that the body of the late duke, their mayster, they sholde bere to Aygremounte lyke that he hadde doo brynge the body of Lohier to Parys in a byere. And the sayd knyghtes promysed them for to doo so. So toke they the corps from the other bodies deed, wherof was there grete number, and put hym in a byere, and thenne
wente on their waye wyth aH / And whan they were
goone a lityH ferder / god knoweth what sorowe and
lamentacyon that they made for the dethe of theyr
4 mayster, sayeng, 'Ha, god, goode duke that soo worthy
was, how now we are sory for the / Certaynly fuH
cuyH hath doon kyng Charlemayne, that vnder hys
sauconduytte hath made the to be slayn in traison' /
8 These soroufuH knyghtes went thus makynge theyr
mone, berynge the body of the duke Benes, their
mayster, vpon a byere that two horses bare, whiche
corps neuer staunched of bledynge by the space of viii
12 myles. And how many dayes Iourney that thyse
knyghtes were wyth the body of theyr mayster by
the waye, I can not telle you / but they wente soo longe
that they cam nygh Aigremounte / and approched soo
16 moche that the tydynges cam to the towne, and to the
duchesse, that her lorde hadde ben thus traytoursly
slayne. Soo oughte not be asked of the grete sorow
that the duchesse and her sone Mawgys made / They
20 yssued after oute of the towne wyth theym of the
chirche, and wente ayenste the corps / Nor also oughte
not to be asked yf there were made that daye grete
wepynges and lamentacyons. For whan the duchesse
24 saw her lorde / and the 3 woundes that he hadde in hys
body, more than thre tymes she felle doun in a swoune
vppon hym / and in thys wyse they bare the corps to
the chieff chirche / and the bysshop of the towne dyde
28 the seruyse, and thenne he was putte in his graue, and
was ryght reuerently buryed. Thenne sayd hys sone
Mawgys, 'Good lorde, what a dommage is this, of suche
a worthy lorde, to hane be thus slayne cruely by
32 trayson; but and yf I lyue longe, Charlemayne & the
traytoures that this hane doon, shall abyde for it fulH
derely' / His lady moder he recomforted, and sayd to

1 et piteux pleurs firent les ditz chevaliers, F. orig. c. viii.
2 pallefroys, F. orig. c. viii.         3 D. iii. back.
Mawgis comforts his mother, and vows vengeance on Charlemagne with the help of the four sons.

her / 'My dere moder, haue a lytyH paeyence; for myn vnclcs, Gerarde of Roussyllon, Dron of NantuH / and my cosins, Reynaude, Alarde, Rycharde, and Guycharde shal helpe me wel for to auenge the dethe of my lorde 4 my fader.' Now shal we leue here to speke of theym of Aygremonhte, that ben in grete lamentaeyon and wepynges for the dethe of theyr lorde / and shal re-toune to telHe of the traytours Gryffon and of Guenes 8 his sone, that wyth theyr folke were goon ayen to Parys.

CHAPTER II.

How Gryffon of Haultefelle and Guenellon after that they hadde slayiie the duke Benes 12 of Aygremonhte they retourned to Parys, and recounted to the kyng Charlemayne the mortalle trayson that they hadde com-mysed and doon / wherof the kyng Charle-mayne was glad / but afterwarde he was full wrothe and sory for it. For, after the duke of Aygremonthes dethe, his two bre-therne, Gerarde of Roussyllon and Dron of 20 Nantuell, werred sore agaynste hym1 wyth their neuewe Mawgys / and thenne they made peas and accorded togyder. But the kyng Charlemaiyne apoynted not wyth the 24 foure sones of Aymon, nor to Mawgys theyr cosin / ¶ Item, sheweth also the same 2 chapytre, how Reynawde slewe the nueuew of kyng Charlemaiyne wyth a ches borde, 28 as they were playnge togyder at the cheses / wherof the werre began / the whiche was

1 et aussi Mawgis son filz, F. orig. b. i. back.  
2 D. liii.
sore mortall / as ye shall now here here after, and lasted soo longe that it dyde grete dommage to the royame of Frauncce.

\[\text{Capytulum}\] / iiiii.

YE shalH now here & vnderstande from the hens-fourthon a terryle and a pyetous songe, yf ye thereafter liste to herken / This was atte the 8 feste of Penthecoste after the holy thursdae / that the kyng Charlemanyne helde a grete courte in Parys / after that he hadde accorded wyth the bretherne of the sayd duke Benes of Aygremounte / And to the sayd feste 12 came WyHiam the Englysse, Walleran of Bullon, xv / kynges and xxx dukes, and well lx erles were there atte that daye, for to crowne Charlemanyne / and also was come there the duke Aymon of Dordonne, wyth 16 his foure\(^2\) sones, that is to wyte, Reynawde, Alarde, Rycharde, and Guycharde / to the whiche Aymon the kinge sayd / ‘Aymon,’ sayd he, ‘I loue you and your children welH. And wyte that I wiH make of the 20 fayre Reynawde, my stywarde / and the other shaft serue me for to bere my faucons and goo\(^3\) wyth me. ‘Syre,’ sayd the good Aymon / ‘I thanke you moche of the grete worshippe that ye doo to me and to my 24 chylfren / and wyt that they shaH serue you truly as your liege men. But weH I telle you, good kynge, that ye mysprysed sore whan my brother the duk Benes of Aygremounte, vnder your saufconduyt, and 28 in treyson, ye made thus shamfully deye / And beleue that it greueth me fullH sore att herte / and yf we doubted not you soo moche, Certes, vengeance we sholde take therof / but sith that my broder Gerarde 32 hath pardoned it to you: I forgyne it you also.’

\(\text{‘Aymon,’ sayd the kynge, ‘ye knowe better than that}\)

\(^1\) chap. ii. ca. iii. in Caxton. \(^2\) beaulx, F. orig. b. i. back. \(^3\) en gibier avecques moy, F. orig. b. i. back. \(^4\) D. iiiii. back.
ye saye; for ye knowe weH the offence that your broder hadde doon to me, for to haue slayne soo cruethy Lohier my eldeste sone, that I loued soo moche. Now sette the one agaynste the other, and lete be spoken nomore therof' / 'Nomore we shall,' sayd duke Aymon / 'but weH I praye god to haue mercy of his soule, for he was a ryght worthy knyghte' / Thenne cam fourthe Reynawde, Alard, Guycharde, and Rycharde, whiche raysoned wyth the kynge / saynge in this maner / 'Syr,' sayd Reynawde, 'the fayreste of all knyghtes, and moost experthe in faytes of knyghthode^ ye haue made me, and my bretherne that ben now here afore you, knyghtes / but wyte it for veray certeyn, that we loue you not, and that we haue towardye you a grete and a mortaHe hate, for the dethe ofoure vnkle the duke Benes of Aygremounte / of the whiche dethe ye haue not accorded wyth vs' / Whan the kynge vnder-stode Reynawde, he loket grymly and fyersly in his vysage for grete wrath, and becam blacke as a cole / and smote his forhede for anger. And after sayde to Reynawde / 'Thou yonge boye, voyde oute of my presence / for I swere the, by saynte Symon, and yf it were not the companye of the barons that be here, I sholde make y^ to be put in suche a pryson that thou sholdeste not see nother hande nor foote that thou hast.' 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'it were not rayson / but sith that it is soo ferre come that ye wyH not here vs, we shal kepe our peas.'

Thus lefte the foure sones of Aymon the debate, and spake nomore to the kynge Charlemayne for that tyme of thys materere / Fayr was the courte, and the daye was fuH fayr and bryght / and fayr was the company, as of xv. kynges / xxx dukes & lx erles /

They wente to the chirche for to here the fayr messe that was song; & moche riche was the offerynge.
CHAP. II.] HOW REYNAWDE SLAYS BERTHELOT.

1 when they had herde the messe, they cam ayen to the palays, and asked after water for to wasse their handes; and the dyner was redy, soo they wasshed & set them 4 doun to dyner / And the xv kynges were aff set, excepte the kyng Salamon, that serued that daye wyth the duke Godfraye / But Reynawde, at this dyner myghte not ete / bycause that the kyng Charlemayne had 8 rebuked hym soo shamfuHy / ‘Ha,’ sayd Ryynawde to hym selfe / ‘alas, how shaH I conne doo soche moche, that I maye auenge myselfe of Charlemayn, for the deth of my vncle, that so moche was beloued / whiche 12 traytorsly & shamfuHy hath he shyn & yf I take no vengau?zce of it I sliaH wexe mad.’ In this wyse sorowed y* good renawde, & his bredern recu??iforted hym. The barons cam out after dyner for to plaie & 16 sorte hemself; and berthelot, the neuew of Charlemayn, called reynawde for to playe2 with him / wherof grewe a gret myscheef / for afterwarde many a good knyghte deied therfor, & many a fayr chylde was 20 faderles, as here after ye shaH here / if ye herken well. 

N ow was set Berthelot & the worthi reynawde for to playe at the ches, whiche were of yuori / wherof y* borde was of golde massy / & so long they playd 24 that debate feH bytwene them two, bi suche maner that berthelot called renaude ‘hoursone’ / & toke vp his hande, & smot reynawde in the vysage, so that the blood feH to the grounde / And when reynawde sawe 28 hymself thus shamfuHy outraged, he was right wrothe & sore angrayd, & sware by god, hym shold yH betyd; therfor theyne toke reynaude y* ches borde,3 & smote berthelot vpon his hede so harde, that he cloued hym 32 to the teeth / and thus berthelot feH doun deel to y* grounde afore hym / so began y* erie at that hour sore

1—1 omitted, F. orig. b. i.
2 jouer aux esches, F. orig. b. ii. back.
3 q’ dor massis estoit, F. orig. b. ii. back.
strong in the palays, that Reynawde, the sone of Aymon, hadde slayne Berthelot, the neweue of Kyng Charlemayne. When the kyng vnderstode thys, he wente nyghe out of his wytte / and called of heyghe, 'Barons! kepe weH that Reynawde scape not / for, by saynte Denys of Fraunce, he shalH not escape quycke yf we maye holde hym; for he hath slayneoure neweue Berthelot.' Thenne ranne soone the knyghtes vpon Eeynawde / and his kynsmen deffended hym nobly / and thus was there grete stryffe, and many heres pulled / and many gownes toren; for suche a fray was there neuer seen, as that daye was in the palays of Parys / Many strokes gaaff there Mawgys, the cosin of Re-ynawde / and sone to the duke Benes of Aygremente / And while that this fray was in the palays, Reinawde and his thre bretherne and their cosin Mawgys escaped redyly oute of the palays, and came to theyr horses that soone were made redy. Soo lighted they on horsebacke, and rode soone oute of Parys, and fledde streyghote to Dordonne, towarde their lady moder. And when the emperor Charlemayne wyst that Reynawde and his bretherne were goon oute of Paris, he made to be redy, weH two thousande knyghtes for to folowe theym / Nowe kepe theym, our lorde, that in the crosse suffred passyon; for yf the kynghe holde theym, they shaH deye wythoute remyssyon. But Reynawde, on hym is noo care, for he was yppon his horse Bayarde, that gooeth as the wynde. Soo taryed not the foure bretherne and theyr cosin, tyll that they came to Sawmore: and they bayted their horses of Alarde, Rycharde, and Guycharde / Thenne beganne Reynawde to make sorowe, sayenge / 'Fayr god, that suffred dethe and passyon, kepe thys daye my brethern and my cosin from the dethe, and from combraunce,
and from faHyng in the handes of Charlemayne the
enr! And of the other parte, chased them the
frenshemen, broychyng wyth ye spore as fast as theyr
horses myght renne / somoche that a knyghte that was
better horsed than the other were, ouertake Renawde,
and sayd to hym, "ye sha\H abyde, ye vntrue knyghte, and
I sha\H bryng you to kyng Charlemayne." And when
Reynawde herde hym, he tourned Bayarde ayenste
hym, and smote the knyghte wyth his spere in his
Reynawde kiiis one of the King's
shelde, and rought hym wyth soo grete a myghte,
that kynghotes that was better horsed than the other
were, ouertake Eenawde, and sayd to hym, "ye sha\H
abyde, ye vntrue knyghte, and I sha\H bryng you to kyng
Charlemayne." And when
Reynawde kills
one of the King's
knights.

12 the knyghtes horse, and toke hym to his broder Alarde,
that lyghted anone vpon the backe of hym / And after
that he was vpon this goode horse, he wente & smote a
nother knyghte wyth his swerde, so that he made hym
Reynawde slays
three knights, 
and gives their
horses to his
three brethern.

16 fa\H deed afore hym / and so betoke this knyghtes
horse to his broder Guycharde, that thanked hym
moche for it / And a nother knyghte of the kyng Charle-
Reynawde slays
three knights, 
and gives their
horses to his
three brethern.

mayne came to theym / 'Glotons,' sayd the knyght,
20 'ye sha\H come to the kyng, that sha\H make you a\H to
be hanged' / 'Ha, by my feyth,' sayd Reynawde, 'thon
shalte lie,' and wyth this, Reynawde tok vp his swerde 
Reynawde slays
three knights, 
and gives their
horses to his
three brethern.
& gaaf hym suche a stroke that he ouerthrew hym ded
24 at the grounde / Thenne toke Reynawde the hors by ye
reyne, & gaaf hym to his broder Richard, that grete
nede had of it. Now be the thre brethern newe horsed, 
Reynawde is vpon bayarde, & his cosin Magis, that

28 he loued so we\H, behinde hym / now they goo. god
wyH lede theym & kepe theym from euyH / and
Charlemayne pursued after theym / but for noughte he
trauuelled; for they were neuer the rather taken for
32 hym / Thenne was the sonne goon vnder, & the nyghte
beganne to come / and the foure brethern & therir
cosyn were come into the towne of Soysson.

1 D. vi. 2--2 omitted, F. orig. b. ii. 
3 omitted, F. orig. b. ii. 4 Sooner.
They reach Dordon, and Reynawde relates to the duchess how he slew Berthelot.

They reach Dordon, and Reynawde relates to the duchess how he slew Berthelot.

They reach Dordon, and Reynawde relates to the duchess how he slew Berthelot.

They reach Dordon, and Reynawde relates to the duchess how he slew Berthelot.

So moche rode Reynawde by nyght & by day vpon bayard, that bare hym and mawgis his cosin, that they came to dordon. There they mette wyth the duchesse, theyr moder / that ranne for to kysse theym and colle theym / and sin asked what thei had doon of theyr fader, and ye they were departed from the courte with wrathe. ‘Lady,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘ye / for I haue slayne Berthelot, the neuew of kyng Charlemayne / The reyson why I dyde soo / was by cause he called me ‘houre sone,’ and gaaff me wyth his fyst vpon my vysage, soo that the bloode ran oute of it’ / And whan the lady vnderstode hym, she felle doon aH in a swoune, and Reynawde toke her vppe redely / And whan the goode lady was come ayen to her selfe, she sayd to Reynawde ‘Fayr sone, how durst ye doo this that ye haue doon / for I promytte you ye shaH ones repente for it. And your fader shaH be dystroyed therefore, and caste oute of his landes ; and ye escape on lyue, it shaH be grete merueyH. Soo praye I you, aH my chylde, that ye flee awaye ; but take afore aH my tresour ; for ye your fader come agayn from the courte, he shaH wyH yelde you to the kynge Charlemayne.’ ‘Lady,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘wene ye that our fader is so cruH and soo wrothe wyth vs, that he wolde take and delyuer vs in to the handes of the kynge Charlemayne / that is our grete enmye mortalle.’

Reynawde, his thre bretherne, and Mawgys, wolde make noone other soiournyng, but toke soo moche of the hanoyre and treysour of their fader and moder, that they hadde Inoughe of hit / and thenne toke theyr leue of theyr lady moder / wherof there was grete pyte atte the departynge ; for the children wepte.

1 Peu lon trouvieroit auiourduy de tieulx cheuauxx par le mœde. Et tant ont cheuauche, F. orig. b. iii. back, omitted in Caxton. 2 D. vi. back. 3 after. 4-4 omitted, F. orig. b. iii. back. 5 de nostre ennemy mortel, F. orig. b. iii. back.
tenderly, and the moder also of thother side, whan she sawe that her chyldren that thus went fro her, and wysst not yf she sholde euer see them ayen. So departed the 4 newe knyghtes wyth their cosyn magys, & issued out of the towne, and entred in to yᵉ grete forest of Ardeyne, stryeayght through the valeye of Feyry, and rode so much / that they came upon the ryuer of Muse, and 8 there they chose a faire grounde where they made to be buylded a faire castell / upon a fayre roche muche stronge, & at the fote of it passed the saide riuer of Muse. And whan that the castell was made up, they 12 called it Mountaynford, & as I trow there was not suche another of strengthe fro the said place unto Mountpeller. For it was closed with great walles / & enuyronned rounde about with dyches sore deep, & well garnished with all maner of viittailles / & of all thinges be nedesful to be had in a fortres; now doubte the newe knightes nothinge Charlemayn, yf he wrought not by treason. Charlemayn was at paris much angry for ye 20 deth of his newe Berthelot, the which Reinawd had slayne playing at the cheesse / as it is sayde; so made he to come afor hym the duke Aymon of dordonne / the father of the foure knightes, and made hym to 24 swere that he shoulde neuer gyue no help to his children, and that they shoulde neuer be the better of a peny by hym, & in what place that he shoulde them fynde, he should take them / and shoulde bringe them 28 to hym, the which Aymon durste not saie ayenst hym, but sware that he should doo so ; whereof afterwarde he was sore repreaued. And after that he had sworn thus / he departed oute of Parys / all wroth & angurye 32 of this / that he muste chase thus his children, and came to Dordon. And whan the duches saw him / she

They enter the forest of Arden, and build there a castle which they call Mountaynford.

For it was closed with great walls & encircled round about with ditches very deep, & well garnished with all manner of victuals & of all things be needful to be had in a fortress; now doubt the new knightes nothing Charlemagne, yf he wrought not by treason. Charlemagne was at Paris much angry for ye 20 death of his new Berthelot, the which Reinawd had slain playing at the chess / as it is said; so made he to come before him the duke Aymon of Dordonne / the father of the four knights, and made him to swear that he should never give him no help to his children, and that they should never be the better of a penny by him, & in what place that he should them find, he should take them & should bring them 28 to him, the which Aymon durst not say against his children, because of the death of Berthelot.

Aymon dared not refuse, and goes in search of his sons towards Dordon.

1 One sheet lost from Caxton, supplied from Copland's ed, 1554, in B. Mus. Fol. xvi.
2—2 omitted, F. orig. d. iii. 3 D. iii, Copland.

CHRL. ROM. X.
began to weep full sore; and the duke knewe wel what she yeelded. 'Lady,' said the duke, 'where be my sonnes gone?' 'Syr,' sayde the ladye, 'I cannot telle whether they are drawen, but why suffred you that oure sonne Reynawde slewe Berthelot, the neuewe of kynge Charlemaine.' 'ladye,' said he, 'I coude not doo therto, & wit that oure sonne Reynawde is of so greate a strength / that neuer synth the incarnacion of 8 oure lorde / was not seen so stronge a knyghte as he is; Nor all the assemble that than was in the pallays at Parys / myghte not keep him, but that he slewe berthelot afore all the lordes that were there.' And 12 afore this our saide sonne Reynawde demaunded of kynge Charlemagne ryght and reason to be doone to him of the deathe of my brother, his uncle the duke Benes of Aygremount, wherupon the king ful sham-16 fullye and outrageously answered to our said sonne, wherfore Reinawd was wrothe and sore angred, and ye cause why Reynawde slewe Berthelot was for to aueng him of the king Charlemaine; Not withstandyng that 20 Berthelot had Injuryed oure sayde sonne ful sore at the playe of the chesse, And also he smote hym fyrste outrageously that the bloud came out of his face, so Reinawd for his great and hardy courage / might not 24 suffre this by no wise; And therfore the king hathe made me swere / that yf I can take my chylde / that I shal brynge them to hym at Parys, and that no helpe they shal neuer haue of me nor succours, nor that 28 they shall not be the better a peny of all my hauoure, wherof I am wrothe and full sorye.'

W E shall leaue heere to speake of the duke Aymon and of the duchesse / that ben ryght sory for 32 theyr children; And shal shew you how the worthye kynge Charlemain made to seeke after the foure sonnes of Aymon thoroughe all his realme, but he myght not

1 ne se vaillant cheualier, F. orig. d. iv. back.
CHAPTER III.

How, after that kyng Charlemayne hadde made the duke Aymon to forsake his sons, he wente and beseged theym atte Mountaynforde / where he was discomfyted two tymes / But the castell of Mountaynforde was taken by trayson. And how Reynawde and his bretherne auenged theym selfe of the traytours that had bytrayed theym; and how they saued theym selfe after that, wythin the forest of Ardeyne, where theyr fader fonde theym as he wente fro the siege towarde his countrey / And how for to kepe his othe that he had made to kyng Charlemayn, he dyde assaylle his sons, soo that of v / hundred men that they were, abode alyue with his sons but xvij. persones / but Reynawde and his bretherne had noo hurte of theyr bodyes / how be it that they slewe many of theyr faders men.

Capytulum iii.

1 Caxton begins again. 2 D. vii. 3—3 suyuir a tous ses barons les quatre filz Aymon et mesime-ment au duc Aymon leur pere, . . . . . F. orig. b. iv. back.
NOW sayth the historye, that sith the tyme of the kyng Alexandre, was none suche herde as this same is / And therfor, fayr lordes, playse you to here & vnderstande how it befeH of the four sones of Aymon, that were enmyes of the emperour Charlemayne, kyng of Fraunce. For the same tyme kyng Charlemayne had banysshed them oute of the royame of fraunce, and made all his barons, bothe yonge & S olde, to seke after theym / And also made theym swere that they sholde neuer helpe nor conforte theym by noo maner of wyse. And the same othe had made wyth many other, the olde duke Aymon theyr fader, as ye haue herde afore / wherof he was fuH sory afterwarde. It happed thenne that the kyngle Charlemayne helde a grete courte in Parys / And as this courte was assembled, where all the barons of fraunce were togyder / a messager cam there bifore ye kyng Charlmayn, & kneled afore him & sayd / ‘Sir, I bryng you tydynges of that ye dyde sende me for; wyte, syr, that I come from the grete forest of Ardeyne, where I haue founde the foure sones of Aymon, that dwelle there wythin a strong casteH, well sette vpon a rocke; and yf ye wyH fynde theim and be auenged of theym, wite that ye maye weH ynoughe doo so, as I belene for certeyn’ / Whan Charlemayne vnderstode this messager, he began to merueylle hym selve sore / and called his barons, and sayd to theym, ‘Fayr lordes, whan it is soo that ye be here, it apperteyneth not that I shokle sende for you at your places. Soo I praye you and requyre, as to my liege men, that ye helpe me to be auenged of the foure sones of Aymon, that soo grete dommage haue doon to me, as ye knowe well.’

1 moult planiere, F. orig. b. iv.
2 lempereur, F. orig. b. iv.
3 D. vii. back.
4 Et quant Il est ce dit Il se leua empiedz, d. iii. F. orig., omitted in Caxton.
WHan the barons understode the prayer that the
emperour Charlemayne made to theym / they
answered wyth one voyce: 'Syre, we shal doo your
commandement wythoute doubte / gyue vs leue, yf
it playse you, that we maye goo in to our countreys for
to make vs redy of barneys and of horses,' the whiche
thyng the kyng graunted theym. And so departed all
the barons from the courte, and wente in to their
countreys / The whiche abode not long, that they came
ayen to Parys, all arrayed and redy for to werre wyth
theyr armye / And whan the kyng Charlemayne sawe
the theym, he receyued theym gladly. And Incontynente
wythoute ony tarieng he departed oute of Parys / and
wente wyth all hys ooste at Mountlyon, a towne of
hys, and there he laye that nyyghte. And at the
morowe, as sone as the day appyered, the kyng Charle-
mayne departed from Montlyon, and wete on his way
wyth his ooste 1 / And ordeyned the forewarde to the
erle Guy of Mountpeller, that wolde moche grete
harme to Reynawde. And when they had sette theym
selfe in the 2waye / the emperour Charlemayne called
to hym his goode vasseylls, 3 Renyer, Guyon of aube-
forde, the erle Garner, Gefray, Langon, Oger the dane,
24 Rycharde of Normandy, and the duke Naymes of
Bauiere / and sayd vnto theym alle, 'Lordes, ye
know well what ye haue to do / I pray you that
ye kepe well your selfe from Reynawde, and goo not
to nyghe, but abyde aH togyder in suche a strong
place that we may haue noo dommage / and let goode
whatche be made eueri nyghte / for my herte gyueth
me that we shall dweHe there longe.'

Thenne sayd the duke Naymes of Bauiere, 'Sire, 4
we shall doo soo.' Thenne made they the
trompettes to be blowen, and aH the ooste they made

1–1 omitted, F. orig. d. v.  2 E. i.  3 et, F. orig. d. v.  4 vous dites bien, F. orig. d. v.
to come togyder / And thus they rode soo moche that they cam to Myleyne, otherwyse called Aspes / And when they were comen there, they saw the castle of Mountaynforde, that Reynawde and his brothers and their cosin Mawgys had doe make / Euyn atte that owre that kynge Charlemayne and his oost were come to Aspes, the thre brethern of Reynawde were comming fro the chasse oute of the woodde of Ardeyne / and Rycharde, ye youngest, bare a ryght riche horne, both fayr and good, the whiche Reynawde loued ful dere. And in their felawshyp myghte be wel xx knyghtes and no moo. And as they returned to Mountaynforde, Rycharde behelde and sawe ouer the riner of Muse, thost of the kynge Charlemayne,1 wheroft he began to be sore merucyelled / and called Guycharde his broder, & sayd to hym / 'Fayr broder, what folke maye be they that I see yonder. I herde saye the other daye of a messager, that tolde it to our broder Reynawde / that the emperour came for to besiege vs wythin our castell.'

And after, whan Guycharde vnderstode his broder, he behelde ouer the ryner, and sawe the forewarde that Guyon conducd / and whan Guycharde2 sawe them, he smote his horse wyth the spores / He & his folke went ayenst Guyon, & sayd to him / 'Fair sir, what are thise folke?' 'Sire,' sayd Guyon, 'thise ben the folke of themperour Charlemayn, that goeth to Ardeyn for to besiege a castell that the foure sones of Aymon haue do3 made there; for their strengthe, they trayueye he vs moche, god gyue them euyH rest' / 'Certes,' sayd Guycharde,4 'I am a sauldyer with Reynawde / & I conne you nother thanke nor grace of that that ye saye / for I am holden to desfende them at my power' / and with this he spored his horse &

1 de france, orig. d. v. 2 E. i. back. 3 Richart, F. orig. d. v. 4 do = cause to be.
smote the sayd Guyon through his sheld so harde that he ouerthrew hym deed to the grounde. And thenne he toke the horse of the sayd Guyon, & toke hym to one of his esquyers, and assembled all the knyghtes togider of one parte & of ye other. They of fraunce cryed 'Mountioye saynt denys!' and the brethren of Reynawde cryed 'Mounteinforde.' Thenne sholde ye 8 haue seen a feH batayH & ryght cruelH, the one ayenste the other, sheldes broken & helmes broken, som deed, & some sore wounded, soo moche that it was grete pyte to see. What shall I telle you? more, all the folke of 12 Guyon that made the forwarde, were there slayne. This hangyng, cam a squier to the kyng, & shewed hym how his forewarde was utterly dystroied / and that Guycharde, the broder of Eyynawde, had slayne 16 the erle Guyon. 'O god,' sayd theem theemperour Charlemayne, 'haue I now lost Guyon? of hym it is grete dommage. Now wote I not from hensforth on, how I 20 sholde wyn, sith that I haue loste the forwarde.' And thenne he called Oger the dane, & sayd to hym, 'Oger, goo to the socours, you & Naymes, for guycharde bere th wyth him all my hauoyr, & hath slayn all my folkke.'

Thenne oger the dane abode not, but lighted on horsbacke, he and the duke Naymes, wyth weH thre hundred knyghtes weH armed & weH arayed, & went after Guycharde / but their labour was nought worthe 28 to theim / for guycharde & his men were all redy wythin Mountainforde, wyth all the hauoyr that they had wonne. Whan Reynawde sawe his broder com wyth so grete hauoyre, he wente ayenst hym, & kissed 32 them all / and thenne he sayd to Guycharde, 'Fayr broder, where haue ye taken so grete hauoyre that ye

---

1 Reynier, F. orig. d. v. 2 Richart, F. orig. d. v.
3 E. ii. 4 Richart, F. orig. d. vi.
5 a si grans gens, F. orig. d. vi.
Guycharde relates to Reynawde his victory

Reynawde charges his folk to prove themselves good knights.

They swear fidelity.

bryng here.' 'Sire,' sayd Guycharde, 'I shall telhe you tidynge wherof ye shall be gretly merueyled / Now wyte, that kyng Charlemayn commeth for to besiege you wyth aH his oost, & hath so gretete chyualrie wyth him that it is wounder for to see / My bredern,1 I com fro the chasse out of the wood of ardeyn, and we haue recounted the forwarde of Charlemayne, that therle Guy conduycted; there fought we togyder wyth 8 theim / but, god by thanked, & my men / myn ennuyes were discomfyted & overthwen.2 One parte we haue slayne, & tother fled awaye; soo haue we brought their hauoyr that ye se here. And there is deed,3 therle Guy & many other gretete lordes, & aH their men' / Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'I ought to loue derly / when ye can werre so welH that ye hauue overthwen your ennuyes at ye firste comyng on' / and thenne he called 16 aH his brethren & his folke, & sayd to theym / 'Fayr lordes, now is the tyme come that eueryc of vs must pruene hymselfe a good man / wherfore I praye you that euery man force hymself to do worthyly his deuoyr, 20 that your worship & the ooure be kepte / & that men maye not wyte4 vs noo cowardnes, & let vs 5doo knowe5 our prowesse to kyng Charlemayn, so that he hold vs not for feble & myschaunt' / When reynawde had 24 spoke to his bredern & to his folke / they answered to hym in this maner, 'My lorde, haue no 6doubte of none of vs; but be sure that we shall neuer fayH you for the hewynge of our limmes as long as we shaH lyue.' 28 And when reynawde vnderstode the good wyll8 of his folke, & namly9 of his brethren / he began again to speke to theym, & sayd / 'Lete ye gate be shutte, & drawe vp the brydge / and soo goo we to the wyndowes, for to see this folke that com ayenste vs.'

1 et moy, F. orig. d. vi. 2 omitted, F. orig. d. vi. 3 le conte regnier, F. orig. d. vi. 4 blame. 5—5 cause to be known. 6 R. ii. back. 7 so far as. 8 de ses freres, F. orig. d. vi. 9 specially.
And theune they wente there, as reynawde sayd; &
whan thei loked out of y° wyndowes, they sawe ower the
dane comynge wyth a thousande men wyth hym / 4
whiche, whan he sawe that Guycharde was entred in to
y° casteH, he returned ayen, & sayd to the kyng how it
was / and theune he sayd / 'Syr, I let ye wyte that
the castell of mounteynforde is the fairest & the strong-
est that euer ye sawe / for it is set vpon a hie roche of
harde stone / and weH I telle you, for certeyn, that it
shall not be taken so lightly as men wene, for suche folke
doo kepe it, that well and worthwhile shah deflende it.' 12

The King swears to avenge himself on Reynawde,
and to have him hanged.

Theane they wente there, as reynawde sayd; &
whan thei loked out of y° wyndowes, they sawe ower the
dane comynge wyth a thousande men wyth hym / 4
whiche, whan he sawe that Guycharde was entred in to
y° casteH, he returned ayen, & sayd to the kyng how it
was / and theune he sayd / 'Syr, I let ye wyte that
the castell of mounteynforde is the fairest & the strong-
est that euer ye sawe / for it is set vpon a hie roche of
harde stone / and weH I telle you, for certeyn, that it
shall not be taken so lightly as men wene, for suche folke
doo kepe it, that well and worthwhile shah deflende it.' 12

The King swears to avenge himself on Reynawde,
and to have him hanged.

Han themperour Charlemayne herde spoke oger
the dane, he was of it so wroth that he wente
nyghe oute of his wytte / & sware god that he sholde
neuer retorne in to fraunee but that Ryynawde were
16 take; & that ye he maye haue hym, aH the worlde
shaH not saue hym, but that he shaH make hym to
be hanged, & his broder Guycharde to be drawen at
horsis taylles. 'Sire,' sayd oger, 'weH ye ought to doo
20 so / for they haue trauaylled you full often, & haue
gyuen you grete labour & peyne' / 'Syre,' sayd foulques
of morillon, 'haue no doubte, for shortly we shaH
auenge you of theym. Make to be cried incontynente
24 that your oost goo lodge lightly about mountenforde' /
'Certes,' said the kyng, 'ye saye well'; & thenne he
made trompetes to be blowen of a heygthe, for to
assemble togyder aH his men of armes / and com-
28 maunched that aH the casteH of mountenforde sholde be
enuyronned rounde aboute wyth folke, & that euer
ey baron sholde do pyghte there his panylyon; & they
dyd so as the kyng had commaunched / Now wyH I
32 shew to you how noble the casteH was set. 2 The sayd
castell was closed & sett vpon a hie roche; & of the one
side of it was betyng a grete riuer, called Muse / and of
the other side it had euyn at hande a grete wood fulH

1 E. iii. 2 Car il etoit, F. orig. b. iv.
playsant; of a nother side it hath a fayr playne, & of that other side a fulfayr medowe, grete & playsaunt to be holde. ¶ Whan the folke of the kyng Charlemayn were all lodged, themperour lighted on horsbak wyth a few felawship for to see the strength of the casteH & whan he had well byholden it, & seen at his ease, he began to saye in hymself & ha, he is this casteH closed & set in a strong place! god, how 8 thise knyghtes knew weH the craft of werre, not wythestandyng that they ben but yong folke 2 Fayr lorde, thynke for to werre weH / for we haue somewhat more to do themne I wende.' Whan the pauyHyons & the 12 tentes of yr kyngis were dressed vp, he made to be set a charbokeh right riche all hie vpon his tente, whiche stone fulf precyous was shynyng as a torche that brenneth, & wyth the same a grete appelle of fyne 16 golde, of grete value / and whan the sayd tentes wer all spred & hanged, themperour entred wythin, & made the duke naymes to be armed, & charged hym that no man of werr so hardy for to light on horsbak of 20 eyghtl dayes, but it were for to sporte hymself / For I wyH do knowe thorugh all yr royame, that men bryng to vs vytaylles in grete habundance, afores that the casteH of mountenforde be by vs assayled / and make my 24 chapel to be appareyleld, to thende that we praye god that he wyH helpe vs to be auenged of the foure sones of Aymon / the whiche we shaH famysshe, or ever it be a moneth / For they shaH not come haue no vytaylles 28 from wythoute 3 by no waye.' Thenne sayd the duk Naymes to the kyng, 4 Syr, ye maye do better, yf it be your playsur; sende a messager to Reynawde, for to tell hym that he yelde to you Guycharde his broder, 32 & ye shall quyte hym all his londe / and yf he yelde

1 les plenez, F. orig. b. vi.  
2 Lors dist a ses gens, F. orig. d. vii.  
3 omitted, F. orig. b. vii.  
4 E. iii. back.
hym to you / make hym to be byheded anone / & yf that reynawde refuse for to do this, he maye well be sure that werre shall not leue him as long as he shall be alyue / Thene answered Charlemayn, 'Ye saye well & ryght wysely / but certenly I wote not where to fynde a messager to whom I myghte well trust.' 'Sire,' sayd the duk Naymes, 'yf it playse you / ogyer & I shall do this message / 'It playse me well,' sayd the chariemagne consent, and sends Oger and Naymes to the castle. 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'we ben messagers of the kyng Charlemayn, that hath sent vs heder for to speke wyth reynawde, the sone of Aymon.' And when they were redy, they toke in their handes branche of olyue tree for to shewe that they were messagers / & so went they both togyder wythout any other company. And whan Alays, that kept watche, sawe the two knyghtes come, he wente & asked them what they were that cam there. 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'we ben messagers of the kyng Charlemayn, that hath sent vs heder for to speke wyth reynawde, the sone of Aymon.' And incontynent the sayd alais wente to his lord, and tolde hym, how at the gate were two messagers of the kyng Charlemayn, that wolde speke wyth hym / Reynawde commaundede forthwyth that the gate sholde be opened to theym, & that the drawe brydge sholde be lete doun, for he wolde see the messagers & speke wyth theym / Thenne were the two barons let in, & were brought afores Reynawde; and when reynawde sawe theim, he salued theym curtoysly, and after that they had salued eche other / they set theym ather vpon a benche. / And theyn began the duk Naymes to speke, & sayd thus / 'Reynawde,' sayd he, 'thempeour Charlemayn of fraunce let ye wyte by vs / that ye sene to hym Guy charde your broder, for to make of hym his playsur and his wyH; and yf

1 tous trois, F. orig. d. vii.  
2 Fol. E. iii. 
3 Richart, F. orig. d. vii.
ye wyH not do soo, Charlemayn defyeth you, & sayth that neuer he shalH leue you, vnto the tyme that he shalle haue take you aH / And whan he shalH haue you1 / he shalH make you aH to be drawn & hanged, 4 and deye an euyH deth wyth grete shame.'

WHan Reynawde understode thise wordes, he wexed aH red for angre / and them he sayd to the duk Naymes, 'By the feyth that I owe to 8 aH my frendes / yf it were not that I love you / I sholde make you both to be hewen aH to peces; and ye haue weH deresued it / for you, naymes,2 are my nyghe kynsman / and as me semeth, ye oughte weH to helpe 12 & defende me ayenst aH men / And ye now courseyH me to my grete dyshonour & ayenst myn honeste. TeH to Charlemayn, that he shalH not haue Guychard3 my broder / and that he leue his thretenyng, & doo the 16 worste that he can / for we shalH not do for hym nor for his thretenynges the mountenaunce of a peny / And goo ye to teH hym in my behalue / that a fore that he take vs / he shalH haue a greter nede of helpe than he 20 wenethe / Now voyde from our sighte lightely oute of our palays, for to see you thus here greureth me to sore.' Whan the duke Naymes & Ogyer vnderstode Reynawde / they made noo lenger dweHyng, but 24 departed incontynente wythoute ony more spekyng / and are come to Charlemayne, & recounted to hym aH this that Reynawde had sayd.

WHan themperour Charlemayne vnderstode this 28 answere, he was so sore an angred that he went almost oute of his wytte / & them he commanded that the casteH sholde be assaylled / to the whiche they saw but thre gates, wherof, was set 32 afore the masters gate, therle Renyer4 & foulques of

1 Il vous sera tous pendre, F. orig. d. vii.
2 omitted, F. orig. d. vii. 3 Richart, orig. d. viii.
4 le conte Guy, F. orig. d. viii.
moryllon, therle of Neuers, & ogyer the dane / And
1 afore the seconde gate was the duk of bourgoyne &
therle of alphinas; and afore the iii gate was the olde
4 Aymon, the fader of reynawde, that was com to Charle-
mayn for to werre ayeust his sones, as thother / Now
weneth the emperour to haue beseged weH reynawde &
his breder; but, & god kepe reynawde in good helth,
8 Charlemayne shaft lese there more than he shaH
wynne / Reynawde & his brethern were suche knyghtes,
& so sage, that they deffended weH their casteH ayeust
charlemayn / alwayes it was beseged wyth so grete
12 nombre of folke, as I haue sayd afore, that it was
merueyHe to see / For there were bretons, flemynge,
maunsealx, originers, englysshe, bourgo}Tis, the
bauyers, & the frenchemen / but Reinawde made one thyng
16 that turned hym to a grete worship, for he sayd to
his folke, "Fayr lordes, I praye you that ye mounte
not vpon your horses tyH that ye here the trompetes
blowe, for I see weH that Charlemayns folke ben
20 ryght sore trauellde; and now whyle they ben thus
weri / it were no worship to vs for to renne theym
vpon / but when they shaH be a lityH eased of their
werynes, we shaH thenne make dyligently & worthyli
24 our first yssue vpon them. And I praye you, &
requyre you aH in generaH, that every man shewe
thenne his prowesse & strengthe' / And wyte it that
in the casteH of mountenforde was a fawcebraye vpon a
28 roche, thrughe y^ whiche reynawde & his breder wente
oute vnder couerte at aH tymes that they wolde, wyth-
out daunger.2

W Hann reynawde saw that it was tyme for to goo
32 out vpon theyr enmyes, he called to hym
Sampson of bourdelois / this was a knyght, a trusty
man, that was com there for to helpe reynawde and his

1 Fol. E. iii. back.
2 quant Ilz vouloient aler en gibier, F. orig. d. viii.
bredern, and had wyth hym an hundred knyghtes / 
reynawde said to hym / 'Syr, it is now tyme that our 
enmyes knowe what we ben / for yf we tarre lon'ger, 
the kyng Charlemayne myghte 2 wyte vs of cowardnes.' 4
And when he had sayd thise wordes, he cam to his 
brother guycharde, 3 & sayd to hym / 'Fayr brother 
guichard, 4 leue not for to be always bolde and hardy as 
longe that I am man on lyue, for I loue you as moche as 8
I doo my owne body, and it is rayson that I do so / for 
xer & I are brethern, 5 bothe of fader & of moder 5 / And 
also I beleue that ye be the best knyghte of my lynage.' 
And then he taketh hym bytwene his armes, 
and when his 
Reynawde has the 
trumpets blown,
and when his 
men are arrayed, 
they issue out of 
the castle,
and make great 
havoc among the 
folk of Charle-
magne.

And yfl god wylH that we myghte take the erle of Estampes, 
I sholde be therof right gladde / for it is the man / 
among all our enmyes, that worste dooth to vs, that 
more hath hurted vs; haply he shaH not scape vs / for 20
he is always in the forwarde / when thise wordes were 
fynysshed, all the foure brethern, and all theym of theyr 
companye arrayed them selfe and yssued oute of the 
casteH atte the fawcebraye, wythout to make ony noyse 24
nor crye / and soo go vpon the oost of Charlemayne 
by soo grete wrathe that it was merueyH, and beganne 
to make soo grete dystructyon of folke, and to caste 
bothe tentes & paulyHons agrounde, that it was woun-
der & pite for to see / and who had seen themre reyn-
awde 5 the worthy knyght, 5 vpon his horse bayarde, &
the faittes of armes that he made 5 vpon his enmyes, 5
sholde haue grete merueyH for to loke vpon hym; for 32
that man that he recounted, 6 myght weH saye that he was

1 Fol. E. v.  2 accuse.  3 omitted, F. orig. b. viii. 
4 Richart, F orig. d. viii.  5-5 omitted, F. orig. d. viii. 
6 met.
born in an euyH houre / for to saye yᵉ trouthe, reinawd
smote no knyght so that his strokes cam right / but that
he cleued hym as lightly as they hadde not ben armed,
4 & whan yᵉ folke of charlemayn saw their ennyses, they
ranne incontynent to their herneis; & whan thei were
armed, they ranne vpon Reynawde ¹& his folke. And
thenne began the batayH so cruely that it was pite for
8 to see / for ye sholde haue seen many speres broken,
and sheldes bresten & clouen asondre / and many a
goode haubergen vnmayled / ²corsettes & flancardes aH
to-brosten & sore beten,² and so many a goodly man
12 and noble knyghtes deyng fūH: miseryably vpon the
erthe / Whan the olde Aymon herde the crye, he
mounted on horsebacke also, sone as he myghte, he
& his folke, and com to the batayH ayenste his sons /
16 and whan Reynawde apperceyued there his fader / he
was right sory for it / and sayd to his brødern / 'see,
here is a grete merueyHe / for here is our fader / and
by my couNSEYH we shaH make hym roume; for I
20 wolde not for nothyngge that none of vs sholde sette
vpon hym.' And then they torned at another side of
the batayH / but Aymon, theyr fader, cam there ayenst
them, & began to sette sore hande vpon theym &
24 theyr folke / and whan Reynawde sawe that his fader
leyd sore vpon theym, & bare theym grete dommage of
theyr men / he sayd to hym aH angred / 'Ha, fader,
what doo you / certeynly ye doo grete synne / for ye
28 sholde helpe defende & kepe vs, and ye do to vs worse
than thother doo; now I see weH that ye loue vs sore
lityH, & that ye be dysplaysed that we ben so pru³ &
so good men of armes ayenst Charlemayn / for yf ye
32 haue forbanysshed vs / weH we know it, & that we
shaH neuer haue no thyng of your herytage / and we
haue made this litH casteH for to kepe our selfe therin /

¹ Fol. E. v. back. ² ² omitted, F. orig. d. viii. ³ valiant.
and yet ye come heder for to helpe it to be dystroyed: it is no faders work, but it is operacyon of the deuyH. Yf ye wyll doo vs noo good / at lest do vs no harme; for I swere you, vpon all sayntes that ye com only 4 ferder ayenst vs I shaH forbere you no lenger / but I shaH gyve you wyth my swerd suche a stroke, that ye shall haue no leiser for to repente you of the folie that ye doo' / Whan Aymon vnderstode the wordes of his S sone Reynawde, he toke therof so grete angre at his herte, that it laked lytil but that he fell doun in a swoune to the erthe / for he knew "weH that Eeynawde tolde hym trouth; but he coude do none otherwyse, 12 for feere of Charlemayn, but alwayes he wythdrew hymselfe abacke, and suffered his sones to passe by hym\textsuperscript{4} harmles atte that tyme / the whiche wente and dommaged ryght sore the folke of kyng Charlemayne.\textsuperscript{5} 16

D
Urynge the tyme that Reynawde spake thus to his fader Aymon, cam Charlemayn and Aubery, Ogyer & the erle Henry, and Fougues of MoryHon. And whan Reynawde sawe theym come, he made his 20 trompettes to be blowen for to brynge his folke togyder agen; and when they were assembled of one parte and of the other / a knyghte of Charlemayn, that was called Thiery, made his horse to renne ayenste the folke of Reynawde / and when Alarde saw hym com he spored his horse, and cam ayenst hym, and smote hym so harde in his shelde, that he shoued a grete hauberke that he bare, thrughe his body of hym, soo that the sayd Tyery fell deed doun to therth / and whan kyng Charlemayn saw falle deed his knyght thyerry, he was therfore so sore an angred, that almost he loste his wytte & his vnderstandynge / Thenne beganne he to crye wyth a hie voys, \textsuperscript{6}sayenge in thyss manere\textsuperscript{6} / 'Lordes and barons,

---

\textsuperscript{1} et se ne seray plus honteux, F. orig. e. i. \textsuperscript{2} Fol. E. vi. 
\textsuperscript{3} omitted, F. orig. e. i. \textsuperscript{4} outre part celle fois, F. orig. e. i. 
\textsuperscript{5} tout que cestoit merueilles, F. orig. e. i. 
\textsuperscript{6}--\textsuperscript{6} omitted, F. orig. e. i.
delyuer you for to auenge me of thise glotons that leden our folke so cursedly. See that that they ben wel punysshed & sharply' when the olde aymon 
herde Charlemayn speke thus, for doubt to be blamed he spored his horse, and wente & smote one of his sones knyghtes that was named amany se so cruelly wyth his braunck of stele, that he smote his hede clene of 
8 sholders of hym / 'fader,' cryed 2 Reynawde to hym, 'ye do yll when so cruelly ye slee my men, but by the feyth that I owe to god, ye I trowed not to hurt therby my honour, I shold take therof cruel vengance 
of you.' And thenne sayd ayen the valyauit Reynawde / 'ha, lady moder, how shold ye be sori if ye knewe the grete werkes & the grete harme that our fader doeth to vs this daye.' 

W Han Foulques of Moryllon sawe that the folke of Reynawde mayntened themselfe so worthily ayenst theym, he began to crye, 'Syr emperoure & kyng, what meaneth this / I believe that ye be for-goten / sende for many of yore folke, & commaundde theym that they take incontynently traytours that now fayne themselfe ayenst your enemies, and wythout delaye make them to be hanged & slayen alquick.' 

When the frensmen vnderstode this that foulques sayd to Charlemayn / they made none other abydyng / but spored their horses, & smote vpon the folke of Reynawde so hard, that they made them to recule bak, wolde 
they or not / when alarde sawe his folke goo bak / he was ryght sory for it, and toke his swerde, & began wyth his folke to make so grete a fors of armes, that the frenshemen were all abashed of it / What shaH I 
teHe you more of this batayH / wyte it, that it was so mercuyllous & cruH, that it was pyte for to see, for euery one made the worste that he coude / the one ayenst theother. And wyte, that the foure sones of 

1 off. 2 Fol. E. vi. back. 3 a saint pol, F. orig. e. i.

Charlemagne calls on his barons to deliver him, and Aymon slays one of his son's knights.
Aymon made so grete occysion of men & of horses, that none durst come afore theym / but none myght compare wyth Reynawde for to do weH; for he made there so grete merueyH of armes, that the frensmen durst 4 not com forth for fere of hym; for to saye the trouthe, Reynawde smote no stroke a ryght, but that he slewe hym wheropon it lighted. What wyH ye that I telle you more / wyte that, in this batayl, kynsmen nor 8 parents 1 spared not ech other, for they slewe the one tother, as domm bestes / There sholde ye have seen comyng thurghe the batayli the kyng Yon of saynt Omars, that rode vpon a good horse that ranne well / 12 & ayenst hym cam a knyght called guyon / & Yon smote guyon suche a stroke that he overthrew bothe hors & man to therth / and when Reynawde sawe this, he was right wroth for it. And theyne he toke his 16 baner, & sayd to his folke / ‘doo so moche that I haue that good horse; for yf he goth awaye, I shaH neuer haue Ioye at my hert, for I wyH that he kepe fellowship to bayarde.’ And when rycharde 2 his broder, that 20 was so worthy a knyght and so gentyH, vnderstode his broder that so spake / he made no tarryeng, but spored his horse, & smote yon of saynt Omars so harde, that his sheldre nor his harneys myght not kepe / but that 24 he shoued his glayue thurghe the brest, & overthrew hym deed to therth / and thenne Rycharde 3 toke the hors by the BrydeH, & led hym to reynawde, & sayd to hym, ‘sire, we haue the horse that ye haue called after 28 so sore / now may you light vpon hym when it playse you.’ ‘Broder,’ seyd reynawde, ‘gramercy of this pre- sent / for weH ye haue serued me therof / now haue we two horses to whom we may trust weH vpon.’ 32 ‘Now light atons 4 upon hym,’ sayd reynawde / & when rycharde 2 vnderstode the commandement of his broder /

1 Fol. E. vii. 2 Guichart, F. orig. e. ii. 3 il, F. orig. e. ii. 4 at once.
he lighted lightly upon the horse, and take his owne
for to kepe to a good knyght /  
4 A

Nd whan reynawde cam agen to the batayH, he
saw yet his fader / & whan he saw hym, he
was ryght sory for it so that he lost almost his wyt for
the same, and cam & sayd to hym by a maner of
reproche, 'By my fayth, fader, ye are grety to blame,
ye myght well kepe your selfe that ye com not so often
to see vs / and for to doo vs harme / we wyll shewe to
you that ye be our fader / not goode 1 but euyH; for
ye shewe to vs harde frenshyp & a soweire loue. At
12 crystmasse and at ester, men ought to go ysisit and see
his good frende, for to feste hym and to do hym goode,
& ete wyth hym whan the dyner is redy; but this ye
do not; for ye com to see vs in a hote werre / & wyth
16 the poynt of ye swerde ye chere vs / it is no loue of a
natureH fader, but it is rigoure of a stepfader 2 / thenne
answered the duk aymon, 'I wil that ye kepe your
selfe well, for yf Charlemayn can take you, aH the
20 worlde shall not kepe you / but that he wyH sleye &
hange you, 3 or otherwise make you to dye a shamfuH
deth 13 / 'Fader,' sayd Reynawde, 'Ite that alone, &
come & helpe vs / so shalH the kyng be dyscomfyted.'
24 'go forth! glotton, goddis curse haue thou,' sayd Aymon
3 to his sone reynawde 4 / 'For I am to olde for to do
trayson' / 'Fader,' sayd Reynawde, 'lityH ye loute vs, I
see it weH, but kepe your selfe weH / for I shalH shew
28 you whether I can do any thyng wyth the sperre and of
the swerde;' and whan he had that sayd, he spored
bayarde, & wente & smote a squyer that was called
guyner, so that he onerthrowe hym deed from his horse
32 to the grounde / Whan Charlemeyn saw his esquyer
deed, he spored his courser wyth an angry chere, & had
in his hande a staffe of yron. for he wolde parte y6

1 Fol. E. vii. back. 2 Ribauld, F. orig. e. ii.
3—3 omitted, F. orig. e. ii.
Charlemagne wills that his men depart from the battle.

Reynawde slays three hundred knights with his own sword.

Alarde slays the Earl of Estampes.

batail a sonder; by cause he sawe well that his folke had the worse, and that they myght not resiste ayenst the grete strokes of reynawde in no wyse, for it was merueyllouse for to see the grete fayttes of armes that he made there / for he ouerthrew doun dede bothe horses & men 1 by grete strength /1

Charlemyne is come to the frensshe men / & com-
maunded theym for to wythdrawe theym selfe / 8 for it was tyme for to departe fro the batayll. & as they wolde hane goon awaye, cam there thrughe batayll Berarde the bourgoynier, & smote Simon of bremyss so fiersly that he fell doun deed to the 2 grounde; when 12 the foure sones of Aymon sawe Symon deed, they were ryght sory for hym, And spored their horses wyth the sporres, & cam at that side, & brake the preesse for to auenge Symons dethe. and wyte it, when Reynawde 16 was com there, it was knowen ryght weH / for he wyth his swerde brought to deth weH iij hundred knyghtes of the best men that kyng Charlemyne had in his companye. Wherof the kyng was ryght sory 3 & sore 20 an angred 3 / this hangyng, Alarde wenthe thrughe the presse; so cam he, & iousted ayenst therle of Estampes / & for his shelte he lette not / but he shoued his spere thrughe the body of hym. and thus was by hym 24 slayne the sayd erle / when Reynawde sawe that stroke, he cam to alarde his brother, and kyssed hym vpon his helme, and bowed hym selue towarde hym & sayd / Fayr broder, blessed be the wombe that bare the / for 28 ye haue auenged vs of the gretest foo that we had, and what he had sayd this word, he made his trompettes to be blouen, for to call his men togyder.

W

When themperour Charlemyne sawe this grete 32 dommage that the foure sones of Aymon dyd to hym, he cryed with a hie voys / 'Lordes & barons,

1–1 omitted, F. orig. e. ii. 2 Fol. E. viii.

3–3 omitted, F. orig. e. iii.
wythdrawe your selfe abacke / for our enmyes\(^1\) be to
good knyghtes for vs / now is this to vs grete dis-
honour & grete myshappe; lete vs returne ayen to our
4 pauyllyons, I praye you. For I swere vpon aH sayntes,
that ther caste\(^2\)H sha\(^2\)H neuer be taken but by famysshynge,
for they ben ouer good knyghtes, preu & wyse, & well
aduyse of the werre.'

When the barons of Charle-
8 mayn herde his commaundemente, 
they sayd to hym,
'Sire, we shall do your wyH,' and as 
they wolde haue the barons 
obey his command.
departed / came Eeynawde sporyng his horse, &
his brethern, & wente & smote vpon the folke
of the einperour sooo sharply, that he 
departed theym so well / 
Eeynawde puts 
the folk of the 
Emperor to flight,

and soo bode wyth theym prysoners, Anthony Guynemault, the erle of 
Neners, and Thiery of Normandy / 

for no man myght endure ayenste Rey nawde and his 
brertherne / And when Rey nawde sawe the dyscom-
fyture, & the folke of the emperour that fledde, he made 
his trompettes to be blowen for to wythdrawe his folke.

20 And when they were assembled, Rey nawde\(^3\) and his 
brotherne\(^3\) returned gladely into theyr\(^4\) castell / and was 
alwayes the hyndermost man for to kepe hys folke the 
better, that led prisoners afore. Thenne cam Aymon 
24 theyr fader afresshe vpon theym, and began to make 
theym grete combraunce / and when Rey nawde saw his 
fader, he wende to haue wexed madd for angre. soo 
returned he Bayarde, and smote the horse of his fader
28 soo harde that he fell doun deed to the erth / For as to 
his fader, he wolde not touche / and when Aymon sawe 
hymself a grounde, he rose vp quyckely vpon his feete, 
and toke his swerde in his hande / and began ryght 
32 well to deffende hymselfe. But his defence sholde 
haue ben but lytyH worth to hym / for his chyldren 
sholde haue take hym for their prysoner, yf it hadde

\(^1\) enmye's in text. \(^2\) Fol. E. viii. back.
\(^3\) omitted, F. orig. e. iii. \(^4\) son, F. orig. e. iii.
not be Ogyer the Dane that came and socoured hym. And thenne sayd to hym, the sayd Oger / 'Syr, what semeth you of your chyldef / they be right cheualrous and hardy, as ye may see and knowe.'

Han Aymon was horsed agayn, he pursuyd his chyldef as a man wroth and oute of his wyte / and sayd to his folke / 'Now goo we after the glotons! for yf they lyne long they shall doo vs harme 8 and dommage soo grete that wyth payne it shall be reserved.' When Reynawde saw his fader that folowed theym so sharply / he turned bayarde, and wente and smote amponge the thickest of his faders folke, & be-12 gayne to herte theym so sore wyth the helpe of his bredern, 2 that he putte theym to flight, magre their teeth / for they myghte no lenger endure the grete magre 3 that Reynawde bare to theym / for to say the 16 trouth, noo harneys was naughte worthe ayenst the swerde of Reynawde. For he cleued all that he roughte.

4 [W]han the emperoure Charlemayne saw this hie 20 prouesse that Reynawde made / he blessed hym selfe of the grete meruayll that he had thereof / and soo stronge he spored his horse, that he wente ayenste Reynawde, and themne he said to hym / 'Reynawde, I for-24 bede you that ye goo no ferther.' When Reynawde sawe the kyng he made to hym reuerence, and themne wyth drewe hymselfe abacke / and sayd to his men / 'lete vs goo fourth, for here cometh the kyng. I wolde 28 not for noo thyng in this worlde that ony of you sholde laye hande vpon hym' / When the folke of Reynawde vnderstoode thise Wordes, they putte their swerdes in their sheethes, and wente agen to theyrs castell, right 32 gladde of theyrs fayne aventyre that was happed to theym that daye. And when they were wythin theyrs

1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. F. i.
3 dommalige, F. orig. e. iii. 4 the 2 line W is omitted.
castell of Mountenforde, they made the brydge for to be
drawn up / and wente & unarmed them, and fonde the
souer redy, and soo they sette theym selfe atte the
4 table / And there was a grete many of prysoners / And
when they had ete / Reynawde cam to his broder, &
thanked hym moche wyth all his herte of that he hadde
slayne the erle of Estampes.

8 And when the emperour Charlemagne saw that
Reynawde was wythin his castell, he lighted
down from his horse to his tente / and sware god,
that he sholde never departe thems unto the tyme that
12 he sholde have the foure sonnes of Aymon, or that the
castell were take / What shall I telle you more; the
emperour Charlemagn laye well ¹ XIV ² monethes at
sege afore the castell of mountenforde, and there was no
16 weke but they had a batayll or a scarmysshe; and I
tell you that Reynawde was not so sore beseged, but
that he wente to chasse in woodes & in ryvers as
often as hym playesd / And dyverse tymes it happed
20 that Reynawde spake wyth the freeshemen of traytte,
the one to thother / sayeng thus to theym: 'Fayr
lordes, I praye you that ye speke to themperour
Charlemayn, & telle hym that he shall never take
24 us by no force, for our castell is right strong & well
garnysshed / But knowe the kyng one thyng / that
whiche he maye have by goodnes / he nede not make
by force. He maye have the castell, & us also, yf
28 it playse hym, in suche maner as I shall telle you /
When I shall put in his hande the castell of Mounten-
forde, my brethern and my selfe, our goodes & bagage
sauff, and that the werre take an ende, that hath
32 lasted so longe / ³ he maye be well content.'³ 'Reynarde,'
sayd Ogyer the dane, 'ye saye well & wysely; and I
promytte you I shall shewe the same to the kyng, as

¹ Fol. F. ii. back. ² XIII F. orig. e. iii. back.
³—³ omitted, F. orig. e. iv.
ye haue sayd / And ye wyll beleve my counsell / I ensure you I shall telle hym that he doo so, for ye are not folke for to be sette lityll by thus / nor for to be fro the court / for ye the kyng had you nygte hym, he shold be the better for it.'

All thus as Reynarde & Oger spake togyder / there came Foulques of morylloy, that cryed to Reynaw, 'vassell, ye be but a foole. for certes I have 8 herde your wordes well. Ye shall leve us, mountenforde, for it is not your herytage, & your hedes in like Wyse'/ 'Foulques,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye have repreve me full often. I knowe well alle the harme that I have slayne Berthelot his newe wyth a ches borde / of whom god have mercy / Certes I coude not doo therto; but I was full sorry for it, god wote it. / It is 16 trouth when we playd togyder, we hade some wordes, by the whiche, wythoute ony worde, he gaaff me suche a stroke upon my face that the bloode ranne me doune atte the grounde / And whan I sawe myselfe soo arrayed / I myghte not be so softe that I coude endure the grete owtrage that he hadde doon to me wythoute a cause / Soo deffended I my selfe to my power / for who letteth hym self to be slayne, his soule shall never have pardonne / And thou knoweste well, Foulques, that I dyde, was in my defendynge. But to this muste be made shorte wordes / and yf it playse you / ye shall telle to the kyng Charlemayn, that he taketh us to mercy, and that we maye be frendes. And yf ye doo this ye shall doo your honoure. For asonne maye ye be slayn there as a nother' / 'By god,' sayd Foulques, 'all this is noughte worthe to you / for ye shall deye therfor, ye and your brederen' / 'Foulques,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye threten to moche / It apperteyneth not

1 Fol. F. ii. 2 what.
to you for to threten knyghtes so moche that ben better than you. And yf ye haue ony thynge upon your herte, doo it wythout any more wordes / For I tell you well that ye purchace your dethe / And when Reynawde hadde sayd thyse wordes / they wente agen to theyr pavyllyon. And thus abode the ooste unto themne wythoute any fyghtynge. But the 8 frenshmen came agen, wolde they or not; wherfore the kynge Charlemayn was wrothe.

Thenne the emperour Charlemagne sente for men thurghou all his londe / And when they were all 12 come he sayd to theym / ‘Syres, I comptayne me to you of the foure sonnes of Aymon, that hathe my londe dystroyed and wasted. And Mounteynfourde is soo stronge, that by strengthe it canne never be taken / but 16 by famysshynge. Now telle me what I oughte to doo / For I shall doo therin your counseyll’ / When the barons herde the comptaynte that the kynge made to theyrm of the foure sones of Aymon / there was 20 none soo hardy that durste saye a worde, but the duke Naymes of Bavyere, that sayd to the kynge / ‘Syre emperour, if ye wyll have goode counseyle, I shalle gyve you goode, yf ye wyll byleve me. Let us retourne 24 into highe Fraunce, for we be to nyghe the wynter for to make werre / And when the newe tyme shall be come, ye shall mow come agen to laye your siege afore Mounteynforde. For I doo you to wyte that Reynaude 28 is not sore pressed, but that he gooth in woodes and in ryvers atte all tymes that he wyll. And a man that maye goo oyte and in atte his wyll, is not over sore bysegd / And of the other parte, Reynawde and his 32 brethern are suche knyghtes that they shall not be lyghtly over come. This is my counseyll, syre / Who knoweth a better, lete hym telle.’

1 Le roy, orig. e. v. back.
2 Fol. F. iii, back.
Hernyer of Seveyne promises to take Reynawde and his brethren prisoners, if the King will cede to him the castle.

Thenne spake Hernyer of Seveyne, and to hym sayd, ‘Syre,¹ I shall gyve you a better counseyll yf ye wyll beleve me / gyve me the castell and alle the havoyr that is wythin, and the lordeshyp fyve myles abroad about it, and I shall yelde to you Reynawde and all his brethren for prysoners afore a moneth com to an ende. And thenne shall we go in to France, for to see our wyves and children.’ ‘Hernyer,’ sayd the kynge, ‘ye have sayd well and wysely, yf ye may do this that ye have sayd / I graunte to you the castell, and all that ye have asked wyth the same’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd Hernyer, ‘I thanke you for it an hundred thousande tymes. And I promytte you I shall delyver unto you Reynawde and his bredern as your prysoners, or ever a moneth be passed’ / But knowe you, that Hernyer dyde mysse of his enterpyse, for he kepte not covenaunte to the kyng as he had promysed hym, for Reynawde toke hym,² and made hym to be hewn all in peces ; and³ made all they that were wyth hym when he mathe trayson to be hanged & slayne, as more playnly ye shall understonde / yf ye liste to herken.

Hernyor of Sayne made noon other taryeng / but he sayd to kyng Charlemayn in this maner / ‘Syr, commaude ye Guyon of Bourgyne that he doo put in arraye a thousande knyghtes well armed / and that to morowe, afore the daye, he goo upon the montagne fayr & softly wythout noyse⁴ / And I shall put hym wythin the castell shortly’ / Whan he had sayd this / he wente into his tente / and made hymselfe to be armed / And whan he was armed, he lighted a horse-backe / and rode to the gate of the castell,⁵ and sayd to them that kepte warde / ‘Alas, for god, fayr lordes, 32

¹ droit emperœur, F. orig. e. v. back.
² luy couppa la teste a peu de temps, F. orig. e. v.
³ Car il en mourut luy et toutes ses gens, F. orig. e. v.
⁴ et bruyt, F. orig.
⁵ de mountenfort, F. orig.
have mercy of me; yf it playse you let me com inne, or elles I am but deed / for the emperour Charlemayn maketh to folowe & seke me alle about, for to make me deye, by cause I have sayd to hym moche good of Reynawde; and also I telle you well, that I shall shewe to Reynawde a thyng wherof he shall be ryght glad, łyf his playsur is to here me.'

When they that were above upon the gate, herde hym spoke thus / they wythout long taryenge lete goo doun ye drawe brydge, & made hym come in, and dysarmed hym, and dyde to hym grete honoure /

But the false traytour rewarded theym full ylle for it after that / This hangynge, Charlemagne commaundt Guyon to make hym redy, and a thousande knyghtes wyth hym / And sente theym upon the hylle, wythoute makynge of ony bruyt, tyll that the daye were come. And wyte, that Guynon hadde wyth hym of the beste knyghtes of Charlemagne.

Now is Hernyer the traytour wythin the castell of Mounteynfourde, to whom men made goode chere; and whan Reynawde wyste that a knyghte of Charlemagne was come / He sayd that he wolde speke wyth hym / And soo he was broughte afore hym / And whan he saw hym, he sayd to hym / 'What be you, fayre knyghte, that are come hyder?' / And he answered, 'Syre, my name ys Hernyer of Saveyne / and I have angred kynge Charlemagne for the love of you / And for this cause I am come hyther, praynge that ye have me for recomaundt / For I wote not wether to goo now.' 'Goode frende,' sayd Reynawde / 'sythe that ye saye that ye be oure frende, ye be ryght wellcome to me; for of suche goodes that god hathe sente me, ye shall not faylle / Now telle me, I praye you, how doothe the ooste of the emperoure? Have

1 omitted, F. orig. e. v.
2 Fol. F. iii.
He tells Reynawde that Charlemagne will retire within forty days.

Reynawde is comforted,

and they all sup gladly.

When all are asleep Hernier arms himself,

He lets down the drawbridge, and slays the watch.

He opens the gates,

they any grete plente of vytayles? / 'Syre,' sayd Hernyer, 'they ben scarce wyth theym. But I telle you for veraye certen, that they shall goo theyr wayes wythin this fourthy dayes / For noone of the barons wyl no lenger abyde there. Wherfore the kynge Charlemagne is sore an-angered wyth theym / And I promytte you, yf the ooste wente awaye ye myghte hurte theym ryghte sore / and gete moche goode, yf ye wyll sette themne upon the taylle of theym.' 'Frende,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye have comforted me well / yf it is soo as ye saye / For yf the kynge be ones overthrown, he shall not come a nother tyme upon us wyth soo goode a wylle / as he dooth now.' And Reynawde hadde hym wyth hym to his brethren, that made to him good chere; and when the soper was redy Reynawde and his bretherne sette theym down to theyr mete, and sopped gladly. And in theyr companye was the traytour Hernyer / to whom they made good chere. After souper [all the knightes wente to slepe, for they were wery of bearing of theyr harneys, and they had not ceased to fyght all that day. And wit / that Hernier was well and honestly brought to bed, for Reynawde had so commaundde. And when all the knyghtes were fast aslepe, Hernier, as the false Judas, slepte not. But he rose and tooke hys harneys, and armed hymselfe. And when he was well armed at his ease, he came to the drawebridge, and cut the cordes / that kept it vp, and let the drawbrydge go downe; and than he went vpon the walles, where he found him that made the watche, and slew him. And whan he had doone this, he came to the gate / and opened it, for he had taken the keyes / from hym that he had slayne, whyle he had them in his kepyng.

1 et luy demandoient comment se portoit lost de Charlemaigne, oltre chose ne fut alors, F. orig. e. vi. back.
2 Two sheets lost from Caxton, supplied from Copland's ed. 1554 in B. Mus., Fol. xxv.
Than whan Guyon of Bourgoyne saw the gate open, he made no tarying, but came and entred into the castell, and al hys folke with hym, and began to kylle and slea all them that they found.

Now shall ye heare of the fayre adventure, how that Reynawde & his brethern / were saved from this mortall slawghter. Wyt, that whan the yemen of the stable had supped, thei were drokke, and went to theyr bed; & whan they were a slepe, the horse of Alarde / that was somewhat proude, began to make noyse agaynst the other. And Alarde and Richard heard the noyse of the horses; they rose vp, and saw ye doore of the halle open, and perceyved out of it the harneys that glystered agaynst the moone, that shone full bryght.

Than went they to the bedde where they had brought the false Hernyer / whych they found not there, wherof they were ryght sore abasshed. And than was Reynawde awaked, and asked 'who was there that maketh thy noyse? Let our knyghtes take their rest, that have so sore travayled all the day; it is evyl doone for to go thus stampying at this houre.' Than cryed Alarde to Reinawde, and sayd, 'Fayre brother, we ben betrayed! / for Hernyer, that false knyght, hath put the folke of Charlemagne / within thes castell, the whiche kyll and slea your folke, and put them to a greate marter.' Whan Reynawde vnderstode this, he made no tarying, but he arose and armed hymself quickly, and cried vnto his brethern / and to his men, 'Now, my freendes, let us beare our selfe worthy; we had never so great need.' And wyt, that Reynawde had with hym but.xxx knyghtes within the dungeon of that fortresse, for all the other were within ye base courte, whiche was as it had ben a lytle towne well peopled, where as Guyon of Bourgoyne & his folke slew them.

1 qui ales a ceste heure, F. orig. c. vi.
This hanging: Reynawde & his brethren / had armed themselfe right wel, hopynge for to defende themselfe well.

Than came Hernyer the traytour, steryng aboute 4 throughe the maystres strete, & with him well an hundred knightes. Than sayd Reinawde to hys brethern, 'fayre Lordes, come forth! for yf god helpe vs not, we are all lost.' & than Reynawde and his bretherne / came to the gate, & defended so well / that none durst passe but he was slayne; what shall I tell you more? the base courte began to be sore moved, and the crye was so great, for al them of the dongeon defended themselfe valyantlye. Whan the folke of the Emperor Charlemagne / sawe that they that were within the dongeon defended themselfe so well, they set ye base court in a fire, and began to brenne and pul 16 down the houses, and al that they founde. And ye fyre was soone so great that it tooke the dongeon of the castell.

When Reynawde saw that he was so taken wyth 20 fyre, he was sore angred, and sayd to hys brethern, 'what shall we doo here? for yf we tary any lenger, we shall all be brent or taken, and yf it were not the fyre / that thus warreth agaynst vs, I make 24 myne avowe to god, that we should yet caste this folke out of thys castell; but syn that the fyre is in it, we cannot kepe it no lenger.' And than he sayd to his bretherne, 'come all after me'; & they went to the 28 fausebray, that was allwayes open, and yssued out, he & his bretherne, & his folke with them; and when they were out / than were they more abasshed than they were afore, for they wysst not whether to goe.'

Now heare how they dyd as worthy knightes: for when they saw the castell brenne, they entred wythin a pyt that was there vnder the erthe / for feare
[of the fyre, & set the dore vpon them, & there they began to defend themselfe so strongly, that none entred therein / but he lost anon hys head. And whan Hernyer 4 the traytour was aware of ye same, he tooke his folke with him, & came to ye pyt and began to assayle Reynawde sharply, and his brethern, and al they that were therin with them; & wyt it, that there, at thentre 8 of the sayd pyt, were made great faytes of armes, for they of within defended themself so wel / that none myght come in / but he were dead anon. ¶ Whyyle that the foure sonnes of Aymon / were in ye pyt under 12 therth, they hearde the crye that his men made, the whiche Hernyer made to be slayne. Than began Rew- nawde to sai to his brethern, ‘Lordes, let vs go succour our folke, for, and they should thus dye, it were to 16 vs a great blame.' ‘Syr,' sayd hys bretherne, ‘goe in goddes name, whan it please you.' And when they were come out of the pitte, the batayle began to be there ful terryble; for ye should have seen Reynawde 20 & his brethern / gyve there great strokes and manye. For Reynawde smote so merveyllouse strokes wyth hys swerd Flamberge, the whyche did cut all that he rought. For Reynawde was all wrothe, and for great angre he 24 habanded and Jeoparded both lyfe and gooddes.

A nd therfore he bare greate hurte and harme to hys enemies, for he had cast hys sheelde over his backe, and helde his swerde Flamberge / wyth both his 28 handes, & made so great destruction of the folke of Charlemagne, that the place was al full of bloud. And whan Reynawde saw that theyr enemies were sore abasshed, and that they durste not abyde him / he sayd 32 to his brethern, ‘It was to vs great cowardnes to hyde vs so.' ‘Syr,' sayd Alarde, ‘ye say trouthe.' Than sayd Reynawde, ‘My lorde, my brethern, let vs to doo well. For traitours ben good to overcom; they shall

\[1-1^{\text{o}}\text{mitted, F. orig. e. vii.}\]
not now endure longe agaynst vs. And when he had sayde these wordes, he came to ye gate of ye castel, and the fyre was a lytle quenched. and maugre al his enemies, he shet the gate of that dounegeon / and had 4 vp the drawbridge of the sayde castel. And when he had doone this, he came agayne to the batayle, & found his brethren, that slew and beate downe so many knyghtes, 1 and barre themselwe so worthelye 1/ that it 8 was marvayle for to see; for they smote no stroke but they slew a man.

Than was Hernyer the traytour in the medle within the dounegeon, wherof Reynawde had locked the 12 gate / and drawen the bridge; and the good Reynawde sawe that he was safe of the hoste of Charlemagne, and began to put hymselfe in the medle so sharpenlye, that he dyd so muche / he and hys brethren, that of ye 16 folke of Charlemagne that were wythin the dounegeon, abode of them alive but Hernier / and .xii. 2 other; and whan Reynawde saw that they were all dead, he and hys bretherne and hys folke tooke Hernyer] 3 and the 20 XII other / And theuene Reynawde dyde doo make a gymbette upon one of the hygheste towres / And there he made to be hanged the XII men / And made Hernyer to be bound hys foure 4 membres, that is to wyte / feete 24 and handes, to foure horses taylles / And soo he was drawen all quyck, and quartered in foure peces / as a traytoure oughte to be doon unto. And when Hernyer was deed, Reynawde dyde doo make a grete fyre / And 28 made hym to be caste therin / And as he was altohyder brente, he made the asshes of hym to be cast in the ayere to the wynde / And there ye maye see how the

1–1 omitted. F. orig. e. vii.  
2 [xi] F. orig. 3 Caxton begins again, Fol. F. vi.  
4 a la cue dung cheual. Et puis fist tous montes Ilz frapperent des esperons, et les cheuaux est oientors et courageux, et commencèrent a courir lunge a laute la parmy la rue, tant que en pru de temps Ilz leurent tout des membres, F. orig. e. viii. back.
traytours that wolde be-traye Reynawde, were deed and slayne. For they were punysshed as they had deserved.

Thenne whan kyuge Charlemagne wyste that his folke were thus deed, and that he sholde not have Reynawde nor his brethern, he was sore angry therfore, and sayd to hymself / 'Ha, goode god lorde, how am I evyll dealed wyth all, by this foure knyghtes brethern. I dyde my selfe grete harme / whan ever I made theym knyghtes / And it is often sayd / That men make often a rodde for theym selfe; and that I maye well now take to me / for theyr uncle slewe my sone Lohier / and Reynawde my nevewe Berthelot, that I loved so derely. And yet now he has hanged my men, and many of theym slayne / Well I myghte calle myselfe unhappy whan I, that am the moste puyssant of the worlde / canne not avenge me of the foure symple knyghtes / I shall never departe from hens tyll that I be avenged, or elles they shall overcom me / and all my armye.' 'Syr,' sayd Foulques of Morylloy, 'ye have a goode cause why, and Reynawde is a foole that he fereth you not. For yf he hadde doubted you, he shold not have hanged your men / but he has doon so in dispyte of you.' themne sayd ye duk naimes of bavyere, hadde ye beleved me, ye sholde not have loste your men. Ye wolde beleve Hernyer / It is happed of it as ye see. Now beholde your folke that ben shaken wyth the wynde' /  

When the emperour Charlemagne understode this that the duke of Naymes sayd to hym / He knewe that he sayd trouth, and wyste not what he sholde saye to it, but loked down all a shamed. This

1—1 omitted, F. orig. c. viii. back.
2 dont son est bactu, F. orig. c. viii. back.
3—3 omitted, F. orig.
4 en grant marture et tourment, F. orig. c. viii.
5 Fol. F. vii.
hangynge, Reynawde and his bredern are goon upon the walles, and loked about theym, & sawe that the base-courte of the castell brenned there as their wytaylles were / Thenne began Reynawde to saye to his bredern / 4 'Fayr lordes, the thynge gooeth well, sithe that we ben scaped, thanked be god, from soo peryllous and harde adventure / I laked lityll but that we were all deed by false trayson / but the worste that I see is, that we have S loste our store of wytaylles, so that we have noo thynge for they have noo victuals. to lyve upon. And me semeth that yf we dwelle ony lenger here wythin, we doo not wysely; but yf it seme you goode it is tyme that we departe hens' / 'Broder,' sayd Alarde, 'ye speke well & wysely / and we shall doo as ye have sayd: for as longe as the liffe is inoure bodyes, we shall not leve you' / When the foure bredern were togyer accorded for to departe thens, they trussed 16 all their harneys / and taryed tyll that it was nyghte, and thenne they armed theym selfe / and lighted on horsebacke / And when they were redy / Reynawde sayd to theym / 'Lorde, how many men ben we' / 'We ben,' answered a lorde, 'well V hundred' / 'It is ynoygh, sayd Reynawde / 'But wote ye what we shall do? Lete us kepe ourselfe alwayes to gyder, wythoute makynge of ony affraye, & so goo thrughe ye londe of almayn1 / & 24 yf ye folke of charlemagn hap to assaile us / thinke to defende ourselfe well, & smyte harde vpon theym, 2 so that we have tooure worshyp the better of theym' / When it was tyme to lighte on horsebacke, Reynawde 28 mounted vpon bayarde, and the other also lyghted vpon theyr horses. And when thei were all horsed, they opened the gate and wente oute atte theyr leyser wythoute making any noyse: and when they were all yssued 32 oute, Reynawde behelde and sawe the castell that brente. Wherof he toke grete pyte, and sayd, 'Ha, god! goode castell! it is grete dommage that ye be thus dystroyed

1 sans faire noise, F. orig. e. viii. 2 Fol. F. vii. back.
and wasted / goddys curse have he that betrayed this goode castell. It is ago seven yere *that* ye were made fyrste. Alas! we have hadde therin soo moche goode, and soo mykyll worshyp, and now we leve you nowgre vs./ Certes ye were my truste after my brethren / And when I muste lese you, there is none so sory for it as I am' / And as he spake thys wordes, the teres felle 8 down from his eyen / And he was soo taken wyth grete hevenes, that almoste he felle doune in a swoune / soo moche of sorowe he had atte his herte.

And whan Alarde sawe Reynawde so full of sorowe, he cam to hym and sayd / 'By my feyth, broder, ye be to blame to saie soo. Ye be not the man that shall com to myschyef, for all the knyghtes that ben a lyve are not worthe you; and therfore I praye you 16 that ye wyll conforte yourselfe / for I swere you vpon all halowes, that a fore two yere be passed, ye shall have a castell that shall be worthe suche foure as this is / But now lete vs putte ourselfe to the way, for we have 20 noo nede to tary' / 'Broder,' sayd Reynawde, 'I have founde ever in you goode counseyll / Now goo we thenne oure waye / and take you and Guycharde the forewarde, and I and Rycharde shalle come behynde' / 24 'Syre,' sayde Alarde, 'all shall be doon as ye saye' / And thenne toke Alarde his broder Guycharde wyth hym, and went afore wyth a C. knyghtes wyth theym / and hadde forthe their caryage in the myddes of theym / 28 And Reynawde and Rycharde cam after wyth the residue of theyr folke / But they coude never make nor passe soo softly / but that the folke of the ooste 2 of the emperour 2 overtoke theym.

32 Thenne whan Charlemagne knewe that Reynawde came, he was moche wrothe, and made his com-mandement that every man sholde be armed. And thenne the ooste began to moeve, and wente inconti-

---

1 Fol. F. viii. 2--2 omitted, F. orig. f. i. back.
The host of Charlemagne advance against the four sons.

Reynawde and his brethren over-throw all who come before them.

The sons pass through in spite of the host of Charlemagne.

The host of Charlemagne, that went afore, saw that they myghte not passe / but that they muste medle / they spored theyr horses / and ranne vpon Charlemayns folke soo sharply that they were all an-angered wyth it, for they over-threwe two knyghtes to the grounde, and incontynente was there grete a doo / And whan Reynawde sawe that the ooste mooved / he called to hym XX. knyghtes, 8 and bad theym take and lede forthe the caryage afore oute of the ooste, and he sholde goo helpe his bredern / 'Syre,' sayd they, 'we shall doom your commandemente' / And 2 themne Reynawde spored bayarde and 12 entred among the thyckest, and began there to make soo grete merveylles of armes that all the folke of charlemagne wondred vpon / for he & his brederne overthrewere there deed soo many knyghtes, that noone durste come afore theym but that he was slayne.

What shall I telle you / wyte it that the folke of kynge Charlemagne was so discomfyted, for by cause that it was nyghte, 3 and myghte not well see what 20 nombre of folke the foure bretherne were / that Reynawde and his companye passed, mawgre theym of the ooste / And also I tell you for certeyn that Reynawde and his bredern dyde soo grete harme to the folke of Charlemagne that he was sory for it many dayes after. 4 Whan Reynawde was passed, he fonde his sommeres and his caryage / and his knyghtes that conduytte theym / wherof he was gladde / Thenne he sayd to his 28 brethern / 'Syres, goo on your waye' / and they dyde his commandemente / And Reynawde wyth his broder Richard 5 abode byhynde / And whan Charlemagne wyste that Reynawde wente awaye, he was gladde, by cause he hadde lefte the castell 6 of Mounteynforde /

1 entre eulx et leurs gens, F. orig. f. i.
2 quant Renault eut ce fait, il, F. orig. f. i.
3—3 omitted, F. orig. 4 Fol. F. viii. back.
5 Guichart, F. orig. 6—6 omitted, F. orig.
CHAP. III.] HOW CHARLEMAGNE PURSUES THE SONS.

And Incontynente he made hym to be followed / and also all the oost was redyly armed / And whan they were well arrayed, they toke theyr waye after the foure 4 sones 1 of Aymon. 2

Now ben the foure knyghtes bretherne 3 ryght sory of that they have thus left theyr fayr castell of Mounteynforde / And wyte it that Charlemagne fol-
lowed theym well of nyghe / and sayd that / it sholde hurte hym sore but yf he myghte take theym / But Reynawde the worthy knyghte is not abasshed / but he taketh all his folke, and seteth theym afore hym, and sayd to his broder Alarde / 'Goode broder Alarde,' 4 take kepe of this folke betwene you & Guycharde / and yf the folke of Charlemagne assaylle vs, we shall defende us well.' / 'Syr,' sayd Alarde, 'as ye have sayd, soo shall it be doon.' / And thenne they saw come Charlemagne and Oger the dane, duke Names of bauyere, Foulgues of Morylloy, & many other, & whan Charlemagne that cam afore well horsed, saw reynawde 20 & his folke, he cried to theym and sayd, 'Soo helpe me god, glotons, ye be now deed! thys is the daye that I shall make you all foure to be all hanged.' / 'Syr,' answered Reynawde, 'it shall not be so as ye wene, and it playse god; for that god gyve me 5 lyffe and 5 helth, and to my horse bayarde, 6 the pursuette shall sore dere be boughte, that ye nowe do.' / And whan he had sayd the same, he torne bayarde agenst Charlemagne for to 32 Smyte hym / for he wende well to have slayne hym wythoute ony fawte / The kyng Charlemagne was in daunger to deye, yf Reynawde had raughte hym / But Dampe Hughe wente bytwene the kyng and Reynawde 32 that cam wyth his spere in the reest, willynge for to

1—1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Aymon, F. orig. f. i.
3 a Alard, F. orig. f. ii. back. 4 omitted, F. orig.
5—5 omitted, F. orig.
6 sera compare et chier vendua ma mort, F. orig. f. ii. back.
7 Fol. G. i.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. III.

doo grete harme / And at his comyng, he smote dampe hughe thrughe the sheldre so harde, that he perced his herte wyth the yron of his spere, and soo he fell doun deed afore the kynge / And whan Reynawde had gyven 4 that stroke, he wente his waye after his bretheren.

W hen Charlemagne\(^1\) sawe hughe fall deed, he cryed with an high vosys / 'Now after, lordes, after / for yf thyse glotons scape vs, I shall never be mery' / 8 And Reynawde cam agen to hys folke, and sayd to theym / 'Lorde, doubt ye not aslonge as I am a lyve, but be all assured, and soo ryde on hardely\(^2\) & in good arraye.' What shall I telle you more / Wyte it 12 that XXIV\(^3\) myle lasted the chasse, and there was never a myle but that they iusted togyder / and many knyghtes were there overthrown & slayn / But Reynawde & hys folke bare theym selfe soo manly, that 16 they loste\(^4\) but thre of theyr felawshyp at that tyme / but they rode so long tyll they cam to the ryver. The kyng called to hym his barons, and said to theym / 'Lorde, lete alone the chasse! it were folie from hens- 20 forth for to followe theym. For I see that all our horses maye no more. Le te theym go to a hundred thousand devils! for yf Reynawde wroghte wyth wytche crafte, he coude doo nomore than he dooth. 24 Late vs thynk for to lodge us here ngyhe the ryver / for the contrey is goode and playsaunte as me semeth. 'Syre,' sayd the barons / 'lete it be doon as ye have commaunded.' Thenne they vnladed theyr sommeres, 28 and pyghte there theyr pavyllyons / and whan they were sette\(^5\) up, the kyng made hym to be dysarmed. And in the meane while the souper was made redy lightly; for of all the daye y\(^*\) kyng had nother eten 32 nor dronken / nor none of his felauhshyp / And Rey-

---

\(^1\) vit ce coup, F. orig. \(^2\) et sans desroy, F. orig. f. ii. back. \(^3\) XIII lieux, F. orig. f. ii. back. \(^4\) ne perdireut riens, F. orig. f. ii. back. \(^5\) Fol. G. i. back.
nawde was passed over the ryver, he & his br elders & his folke, sauff & sounde, where as they wolde he bi the grace of our lorde / and whan Reynawde & his 4 br elders saw that the chasse was ceassed and lefte, they wente all softly; and whan they had goon ferre from the oost of kynge Charlemagne, they fonde a fountayne fayr & clere / and aboute that fountayne was moche 8 fayr grasse & thycke / When reynawde sawe the place was soo playsaunt, he sayd to his folke, 'here is a fayr grounde for to lodge us, & for our horses.' 'Syr,' sayd Alarde, 'ye saye trouth.' And thenne they vnladed 12 theyr somers & theyr cartes / and wyte it, the horse were mery; but the poure knyghtes were evyll lodged / for they had there noo mete nor no drynke, but clere water / But wyte it, that reynawde nor none of his 16 knyghtes dysarmed theyrm not, but made good watche all the nyghte, one after another / And when they sawe the day com / Reynawde made his harneys to be trussed, and they lighted on horsbacke, and toke their 20 waye thurgh the 2 grete forest of Ardeyne / and whan they had rydden longe, they lighted down afore another fountayne, that they had watched the nyghte afore, sholde rest themselfe there. 24 Now myght well saye Charlemagne, that he can never hurte the fourc sones of Aymon / And wyte, that he was lodged vpon the ryver, where he abode / whan he wolde no more folowe after Rey- 28 nawde / And whan the daye was clere / he sayd to the duke of Naymes / 'What thynke ye what we ought to doo?' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'yf ye wyll bel- leve me, we shall tourne backe agayne / for to goo ony 32 3 ferther this waye, it were but a foli; for this wood is to thyke, and the ryver over moche perillouse / and also

1—1 omitted, F. orig. f. ii.
2 une forest grant et espesse moult des nömable, F. orig. f. ii
3 Fol. G. ii.
Reynawde & his brederen are suche knyghtes that they ben not for to be lightly overthrown.' And while the kyng and the duke spake to gyder / there cam many knyghtes to hym; and whan Charlemagne sawe theym / he called Vydelon, Renyer, Oger the dane, & sayd to theym / 'Lorde, I wyll that ye com agen to Parys wyth me.' And when they vnderstode this, they were glad, & sayd to the kyng / 'Syre, it is the best coun-seyll that ye can doo' / and after that they were so accorded / Charlemagne made to be cryed, that everi man sholde retorne agen in to his country / and that they sholde kepe it well, & that he prayed theym so to doo / 'Syr,' sayd the barons, 'we shall do your com-maundement' / and when all was sayd, they made thoost to descedende & take their waye / and the kyng went streyghte to Parys, & the barons in their coun-treys. And whan Charlemagne was come to parys, he called afore hym his barons, & to theym sayd / 'fayr lorde, I am the most unhappy kyng of ye worlde, whan I have no power to avenge my self of the foure sons of Aymon; and they led me, as ye knowe / I wene they shall retorne in to their countrey or to their castell / & it be so, I wyll that we goo there agen for to leye sege there' / 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'that shal they not do, for they are in Ardeyne; and ye knowe that the forest is soo grete, that they shall fynde some cheuysaunce' / 'That myghte well be,' sayd the kyng Charlemagne / 'but whersomer they goo / eyyll waye myghte they fynde' / And when he had sayd thys, he tourned towards Ogyer / and sayd to hym / 'Take Gerarde, Foulgues the almayne, and Dron of Mondy-dyer, and gyve leve to the frenshmen and to the other / 'Syre,' sayd Ogyer, 'well shall be doon your com-maundemente.' And thenne wente Ogyer to Foulgues, to Gerarde / and to Dron / and toke theym

1 Fol. G. ii. back.
that that Charlemagne had commaunded / And after came to the frenshe men / and tolde to the other knyghtes / and gaaff theym leve / And whan the 4 kynges folke hadde leve, every man wente to hys countrey / not the ryght waye / but traversynge the mountaynes. And thus as Aymon wente traversynge the lande towarde his countrey, it happed to hym soo 8 that he came by the fountayne where his sones dwelled.

Whan Aymon sawe hys chyldren / he was abasshed, and ryght sory for it / And thenne he sayd to his barons, 'Lordes, counseyll me, I pryde you, what I oughte to 12 doo agenst my children / for, and I assayle theym / and that they ben slayn or taken, I shall never have Ioye / and yf I lette theym goo / I shall be forsworne to Charlemagne' / Whan his barons herde hym speke 16 soo / there was never one that answered any worde / And whan Aymon saw that he was counseylled of noo man / he sayd agayn to theym, 'Syth it is soo that ye wyll gyve me noo counseylle / I shall doo after my 20 owne wyll / for god forbede that it be layd unto me, that I have founde theym here, and have not foughte wyth theym / but well I telle you, that it is for my synne that I have founde them here. But from hens-

24 forthe it shall be doon therin as it playseth god and fortune.' 'Syr,' sayd Esmenfray, 'yf ye assaylle your chyldren, ye do not amys / for ye swere it to the kyng Charlemagne / Kepe, syr Aymon, that ye be not for-

28 sworne / for a man of your age shoulde rather deye than he sholde doo ony treyson.' 'Goode frende, ye saye well,' sayd Aymon / 'and I shall soo doo that I shalle not be blamed' / And thenne he called two of his 32 knyghtes, and sayd to theym / 'Goo toward Reynawde and his bretherne, and defye theym in my behalve.' 'Syre,' sayd the knyghtes, 'it is a harde thyng for to be doon / but sith it playse you, we shall doo as ye have

1 omitted, F. orig. f. iii. 2 Fol. G. iii.
commanded.' And thence they went to warde Reynawde, that was sore abasshed / for he knewe well that they were of his faders folke. Werof he was full sory for it / and after he sayd to his brendren / 'Lorde, now 4 arme yourselfe / for a man that is well garnysshed is not of lighte overthrowe / And of the other side, I knowe soo moche the hardenes of my fader, that he shall not feyne to be fyght us.' 'Broder,' sayd Rycharde, 'ye 8 saye trouthe' / This hangying, came the two knyghtes afore hym, and when Reynawde sawe theym come ngyhe hym, he wente agenst theym, and sayd to theym, 'Lorde, what ye be, and what wynde dryveth you hyther' / Thenne spake one of the knyghtes, and sayd to Reynawde / 'Syre, we ben knyghtes of my lorde, your fader, that sendeth to you by vs a defyaunce.' 'Lorde,' sayd Reynawde, 'I wyst it well 1assone as I 16 dyde see yow of ferre / but goo agayn and telle to our fader, that it will playse hym to gyve vs triews / for he shall not do well for to befyghte vs that are his natureyll chyldren.' 'Syre,' sayd the knyghte, 'of folie 20 ye speke / but thynke to defende your selfe well, for he shalle assayll you withoute doubte' / When they hadde sayd thise wordes, they retournd agayne for to rehearse to Aymon their message, and how they had 24 defyed his children / When the olde Aymon understode theym, he made none other tarienge, but spored his horse wyth the spores, and ran the formeste vpon / vpon his sones. And when Reynawde saw his fader 28 come, he come agenst hym and sayd, 'Ha, fader, what doo you / we have none soo grete a foo as ye be to vs / and I have grete merveylle that ye come always vpon us. Ye doo yll and grete synne for to doo soo. Atte 32 the lest, yf ye wyll bi noo wyse helpe vs / be not to us contrary ne ennuye, 2yf it 3playse you' / 'Thou theeff!'
sayd Aymon, 'ye shall never doo goode, sythe that ye begyynne to preche. Goo to the wode! soo shall ye be come wylde bestes / evyll daye gyve you, god; for ye ben not worth an hanfull of strawe. Now thynke to defende yourselfe; for yf ye ben taken, ye shall be putte to a grete tourmente.' 'Syre, sayd Reynawde, 'ye doo vs wronge / I shalle defende me, sythe that I maye none other wyse doo / for yf I sholde lette myselfe to be slayne, my soule solde be putte to peyne and tourmente' / Whan Aymon saw that, he broughte his speere in the reeste, and putte hymselfe amonge his chyldren / lyke as they hadde ben strangers / And whan Reynawde sawe that, he cryed to his men, and sayd / 'here is none other, but doo well now. Lordes, thynke to smyte well / for nede compelleth us therto' / And whan he hadde sayd that worde / he spored his horse wyth his spores / and putte hym selfe in the thyckest, and beganne to make soo grete effortes of armes, that all the folke of his fader merveylled of it gretely.

What shall I syaye? the bataylle beganne so felle and cruell / that pytte it was to see / For you sholde have seen, gyve and recyeve, grete and horryble strokes of the one parte and of the other. And many knyghtes and horses deye / many sheeldes brosten, and many white harneys broken / So many he des smytten of, and soo many legges and armes broken, and sore hurte. And thynke that this bataylle was sore stronge, and well helden of the one syde and of the other / But to saye the truthe, Reynawde must loose atte that tyme / for his fader had thre tymes as many folke as he hadde / For of fyve hundred men that abode wyth Reynawde after his castell was take / which were wyth hym atte thys bataylle, were lefte on lyve / what

1 beaucoup plus gens, F. orig. f. iv.
2—2 omitted, F. orig. f. iv.
hurte and sounde, but fyfthy persones: But I telle you well for certeyne, that Reynawde and his bretherne dyde soo grete harme to the folke of their fader: that they slewe well halfe of theym. But atte laste 4

Reynawde must loose, and flee awaye towarde the mountaynes / And Aymon chassed hym as well as he coude / for he wende well to have taken theym / And whan Reynawde sawe theymselfe vpon the toppe of 8

the mountayne, he sayd to hys bretherne / 'Lete vs mines to defend, the mountayne. not departe from hens / for this is a goode place for to deffende' / Wyte that there was grete scarmysshynge / and many a knyghte deed and 12

sore wounded. And there was slayne vnder Alarde, his goode horse / And whan Alarde sawe hym selfe a grounde, he lepte on his feete ryght quyckely, and toke his swerde in his hande, and beganne to deffende 16

well hys bones / And whan Rycharde sawe his broder Alarde a fote, he turnede towards hym for to come helpe and socoure hym / And Aymon and his folke came there for to take hym. Soo beganne the bataylle 20

yet agen more cruell than it hadde be afore. And wyte that Alarde sholde have ben taken there / yf it had not ben the noble and worthy knyghte Reynawde that came to helpe hym. And whan he was come 24

there, he smote Bayarde wyth his spores / and wente in to the gretest preesse / soo that he overthrew Aymon his fader down to the erthe / and after, he sayd to hym, 'Fader, ye have pledged my broder Alarde, 28

for ye be now sette a foote as he is' / Thenne was Aymon sore angry, that he loste almooste his wyttes / And Reynawde sette his hande to his swerde / and beganne for to departe the preesse in such a wyse / 32

that he broughte his brother Alarde oute of the preesse. And after sayd to hym, 'Fayre brother, lepe behynde me 2vpon Bayarde; 2 for to abyde here ony
lenger, it were foly' / Whan Alarde understode his brother Reynawde, he was ryght glad, for he was so wery that he myghte no more / and soo he mounted vpon bayarde behinde hys brother Reynawde. And whan Bayarde wyst hymselfe lade wyth two knyghtes, he strengthened hym selfe so strongly / that it semed to Reynawde that he was more ioyouse & more mery than he had be of all the daye / Now wyt it, that Reynawde made fouer ioustes vpon his horse bayarde, wyth his brother Alarde behynde hym. Wherof he slewe foure knyghtes of the folke of Charlemagne, that were come wyth his fader Aymon / And all thus Reynawde toke Alarde oute of his enemies handes, mawgre theyr teeth, and bare hym selfe ryght worthily the same daye / as here after ye shall mow more playnly understande.

Now ben the foure sones of Aymon recreaunte & almost wery / but onely Reynawde, that never was the weker for no thynge that he dyd in armes / For as he went, he torned hym selfe at every pas that he made, and rebuked & kepte his enmyes abacke wyth his harde strokes that he gaaif to theym / soo that his folke wente afore hym all atte ther ease and leyser / And when he sawe that his folke were well ferre from theyr enmyes / he spored bayarde, and cam to his folke, hys brother Alarde behynde hym, as lightly as bayarde had be wythoute ony bridyl, and no sadle vpon hym / for this horse was suche that he was never wery / And thus as Reynawde wente awaye, than cam and followed after hym Esmenfray / that was one of the most worthy knyghtes of Charlemagn, and was vpon a horse ryght good and blacke, that Charlemagne had gyven to hym / And when he was nygh Reynawde, he cryed to theym, 'Soo helpe me god, ye ben deed or

1 Fol. G. iv. back.  2-2 omitted, F. orig. f. iv.  3 gloutons, F. orig. f. v. back.
taken surely / I shall bryng you to Charlemagne'/ And anone wente and smote Reynawd in his sheelde / Wherof Reynawde was moche angry; and Reynawde smote hym agen in suche a wyse, & wyth so grete a strengthe / that nether for his sheelde nor for his goode armures of stele, he was not kepte / but that Reynawde overthrowe hym sterke deed to the grounde / And whan this knyghte was deed / Reynawde toke his horse by the bridyll, & sayd to Alarde his broder, 'Hold, fayr broder, lighte vpon this blacke horse, whiche is good / for I gyve hym to you' /

And whan Alarde sawe the fayr present that his brother Reynawde had doon to hym / he was as glad of y° same as though he had wonne Parys / And thenne he made none other taryeng, but that / he lighted down from bayarde, and mounted vpon Esmenfrays blacke horse, that hys broder had gyven hym / and smote hym wyth the spores, & wente & iousted agenste a knyghte of his faders folk that was called Anfray, so harde that he overthrowe hym deed to therthe. And shortly to speke, after that Alarde was in thys wyse sette agen on horsebacke, began the batayll of a freshe, sore harde & fell, in soo moche that at that owre were slayne XX of the best knyghtes that Aymon had wyth hym. When Aymon sawe this, he was sore angry for it, and cryed to his folke, 'Ha lorde, yf they scape you, I shall never have ioye / for they have slayne Esmenfray, the good knyght that kyng Charlemagne had gyven to me.' / When the folke of Aymon understode thise wordes, and the wyll of their lorde / thenne they dyd renne vpon Alarde so moche, that they made hym to leve the place by force. And yf it had not be the passage of a lityll ryver, that eased & holpe them greately, Reynawde & his brethren had had moche to doo. But I telle you wythout fawte, that

1 Fol. G. v.  2 le morcœu, F. orig. f. v.
Reynawde & his brethen made so grete occysion of the folk of their fader, that it was pyte for to beholde, for there deyd well of theym XXV at the passage of the ryver; and ye reynawde had had wyth hym a L knyghtes more than he had at the passage; he sholde have dyscomfyted his fader & all his folke; but for fawte of men, Reynawde must forsake the place, & myght not save wyth hym but XIII knyghtes of his owne. Now see how sorowfull was the batayll for of V hundred knyghtes that Reynawde had wyth hym there; abode wyth hym alyve but XIII & and ye may wel wyte that the olde Aymon had dommaged his children right sore; but that they passed over the ryver. For as it is sayd / they had lost all theyr men, wherof they were full sory & wroth. / Now hath Reynawde so fewe folke, that he wote no more what to do / but he myght not doo therto. Wherof the teeres fell down contynuelly from his eyen / and in lyke wyse wepte Aymon his fader at that other side, as thistory doth tell. And whan he had wepte ynough / he sayd in this maner / Ha, fair sone, prue and worthy, how sory am I / for I am theoccasion of your harme & dommage / Now shall ye all goo as exyled / for ye have noughte to lyve vpon, & I can not helpe you by ony wyse / Wherof I ensure you I am gretyly dysplayed & sory for it. The devyll take his soule that first began the striff! & soo shall he. / Whan he had made his mone & lamentacyons longe ynoughe, he made incontynt all the deed bodyes to be taken for to be buryed / And they that were hurte / he made to be brought wyth hym as well as he conde / And made the body of Esmenfray to be put vpon a litter / & toke on his way towards Ardeyne / where he bode but a nyght; and in the mornynge he made

1 Fol. G. v. back. 2 et piteuse, F. orig. f. v. 3 add. grant, F. orig. f. v. 5 omitted, F. orig. f. v.
The litter to be borne upon two horses, & went again to Paris, & cam afore Charlemagn & said to hym / 'Sir, when I wente now late towarde my countrey, wyte that as I was on my waye, I fonde my children / and fyve hundred knyghtes wyth theym in the forest of Ardeyn, & for that acquytaunse of myn othe, I dyd sende to theym my dysfynaunce / and wolde have taken theym / for to have brought theym to you as prysoners / but I myghte not / for they ben sore doubted / And that I assaylled theym, it hath cost me sore dere / for thei have borne vnto me soo grete harme & dommage that it cannot be estemed; and I slewe all theyr folke excepte XII persons, that ben escaped wyth them / but they have slayne your knyghte Esmenfray, but at the last they wente awaye dyscomfytet and overthrown / And they sholde have ben taken, if it had not be a ryver that they passed over / wherby they were saved / When Charlemagn vnderstode thise wordes / he was ryght sore an angred / soo moche that he lost almoste his wyte. And thenne he sayd to olde Aymon in angre / 'By god, Aymon, ye escuse yourselfe falsly / for never raven ete his yonge byrdes / To a nother ye shall make this to beleve, but not to me.' When the olde Aymon vnderstode the kyng that speke thus, he sayd to hym / 'Syr Emperour, wyte that I do telle you is trouth / and I doo shewe it to the ende that my trouthe be knowen / & for none other cause / Soo bryng afore me your reliques & hallowes, that I shall swere vpon the sayntes that ben in hevyn / that it was as I have recounted & sayd to you / and yf it playse you, ye shall beleve me / and yf ye wille not / ye maye chuse therof' / 'Aymon,' sayd Charlemagne, 'I knowe

1. deux mulletz. F. orig. f. vi. back.
2. par vostre commandement, F. orig. f. vi. back.
3. Fol. G. vi. 4. a tout cent, F. orig. f. vi. back.
5. 5 omitted, F. orig. f. vi. back.
6. XIII. F. orig.
CHAP. III. — HOW AYMON RETURNS TO HIS HOME.

well your hert, for yf it went all at your wyll, your
sones sholde be lordes of all fraunce / and of all my
empyre' / 'Sire,' sayd amon, 'ye be wroth of som other
thyng, wherof I may not do therto; and yf ye have
ony knyght in your courte that wyll make good this
that it playse you for to saye / I shall prove it on hym,
wyth my body, that he lieth falsely. But ever\textsuperscript{more}
ye have be suche, that ye never loved a true knyghte
but flaterers and lyers, wherof many evylles been
happed, & shall happe' / And theonne Aymon came
down from the palays, and lighted vpon his horse
and wente agen to his countrey / Wythout ony leve
that he toke of the kynge. And he rood soo longe oo
daye after a mother, that he came to Ardeyne / And
there he fonde the duchesse his wyff, that came agenste
hym, and receyved hym wyth a glad chere / and asked
hym how he had doon.

Thenne sayd the duke Aymon / 'Full evyll have I
doon / For I founde my foure sones in the wood of
Ardeyne / and soo I assaylled theym cruelly / Wenying
to me for to have taken theym / whiche I coulde not
do / but I slewe and dyscomfyted all theyr folke /
And they have doon to me soo grete harme of my
folke / and soo many they have slayne of theym, that
I knowe not the numbre. And I telle you for veraye
certeyn, but yf it had not ben the proves and grete
worthynes of oure sone Reynawde / I had taken
Alarde / For my men had slayne his horse / and had
brughte hym so lowe that he myghte no more goo /
But reynawde his broder came vpon us, and brake vs
so sore that he brughte Alarde out of the preese,
mawgre us and our folke, and made hym sitte behynde
hym vpon Bayarde / And I telle you that Reynawde
fought soo sore, that never lyon nor noo bore foughte
soo strongly agenste ony other best / as he dyde fyghte

\textsuperscript{1} Fol. G. vi. back.

Charlemagne is angry with Aymon, who leaves the
palace and goes to his own country.

Aymon tells his wife how he attacked his sons,
and nearly captured Alard,
but the prowess of Reynawde delivered him,
and how Esmenfray was slain.

The duchess blames Aymon for having fought against their own sons.

against our men / for at everi paas that he made forwarde, he torned hymself agenst vs wyth Alarde behynde hym, that made vs so gretly abasshed that we myght not bere nor abyde his grete strokes / & at this 4 tornyng that he thus made / he slewe Esmenfray, a knyght of Charlemagnes, whiche he loved moche; & whan he had slayn hym, he toke his horse, & gaaf hym to 1 alarde, and made hym to goo doun fro Bayarde / 8 and lighted a none vpnon the horse of Esmenfray. And thus they wente from vs, wolde we or not / And I wente agen to Parys towarde Charlemagne / and shewed to hym / how the thynge was com / and 12 how Esmenfray was slayne / Wherof I trowed not to have hadde blame; but he blamed me ryght gretly for it. But sith that, he is my hevy lorde, wythoute a lawfull cause / I shall make hym wrothe and sory 16 afore sxx² monethes com atte an ende.'

Ye have doon evyll,' sayd the lady / 'that ye have thus sore dommagedoure chyldren. Ye sholde deffende theym agenste all men / and ye doo to theym 20 the worste that ye canne! be they not your sones naturell, commen of your owne fleshe? For sooth, my lorde, ye ought well to bere yourselve better towarde theym than ye doo / for never soo rych a bourdeyne 24 was borne in the wombe of a lady: blessed be the hour that they were begoten & norysshed / And soo helpe me god, my lorde, as I wolde that your chyldren and myn hadde taken you prysoner / to the ende that 28 ye sholde yelde to theym agayne all that they have lost by you / And I thanke god ryght highli that Charlemagne is wrothe wyth you / for evyll to doo maye noo goode come of. Ye assaylled your chyldren 32 agenst god and agenst all ryghtwysness / And ye harme is come to you therfore / thanked be god' / Thenne sayd Aymon, 'Lady, you saye me ryght, for I have

¹ Fol. G. vii. ² six F. orig.
doun grete wrong / And I promytte you that I never
dye thynge / wherof I repente me so sore, as I doo of
this / But truste me, I shall kepe me a nother tyme to
do theym any harme /

But here leveth the historye to speke of Charle-
magne and of the duke Aymon, & of the duchesse
his wyff / and retorneth to speke of Reynawde and of
his breddren / that are in the wodes of Ardeyne.  

CHAPTER IV.

How after that the olde Aymon hadde dys-
comfyted his chyldren / They wente and
dwelled in the deepste of the foreste of
Ardeyne soo longe that they were all

countrefayte blake and roughe as bestes,
for the grete hongre that they had endured.
After they went to Ardeyne to see their
moder, that fested 4 and chered 4 theym
gretly / and gaaf to theym soo grete goode
that they mighte well entereteyne theymselwe
4 and their astate thervpon 4 agenst Charle-
magn / And how Mawgys their cosin
arryved whan they wolde departe, which
wente wyth theym in to the royame of
Gascoyn wyth fyve hundred knyghtes /

And of the sorowe that their lady modre
made atte their departynge.

Capytulum III.

I ne this party the tale sayth / that after Reynaude
had slayn Esmenfray, & gyven his horse to his

1 mais je vous prometz ma chiere Dame, F. orig. f. vii. back.
2 en Ardeyne, F. orig. F. vii. back.
3 Fol. G. vii. back.
4—4 omitted, F. orig.
broder Alarde, they passed over the ryver, & wente in
to the forest of Ardeyn, sore depe in it, by cause they
wolde not be aperceyved. And whan they had ben
there a lityll while, they began to kepe the wayes / and 4
all they that cam foreby theym, & that bare ony
vytaylles, they were dystressed by theym,¹ and therof
they lived / for they durst not goo to no townes nor to
castelles for to bye ony vitayles; and therfore they 8
suffred grete nede & grete disease, for thei hadde
nother mete nor drinke / but water. For the most
parte they ete flesshe withoute ony brede / And knowe,
that for cause of this grete suffrausé that they endured 12
thus, and also of the grete colde that they had for by
cause of the snowes that were there, theyr folke began
to dye / And abode nomoo lyve, but Reynawde and his
thre brethern. And this was by cause of the grete 16
strengthe that was in their bodyes./

For noo traveylle myghte not hynder theym / ²And
wyte, that they hadde but eche of theym foure
an horse / that is to wyte, Bayarde and the thre other / 20
But they have nother ootes nor other corne for to gyve
theym / ³but they ete onoly suche as they myghte
fynde in the foreste, of rotes and leves.³ And for this
cause theyr horses were so lene, that wyth peyne myghte 24
they stonde / sauff Bayarde, that was fatte and in good
plighte, for he coude better fede and lyve wyth rotes /
than the other sholde have doon wyth heye and otes / And
wyte it well, that the foure sones of Aymon lyved 28
there this liffe soo longe, that every man that passed
there as they were & kepte theym selfe / escaped not /
but he was other slayne or dystressed ⁴of suche vytaules
as he hadde,⁴ soo that all the countrey aboute theym 32

¹ tous ceulx q portoient viures estoient destroussey, F, orig.
² Fol. G, viii.
³—³ fors que de racines de ble, F, orig. F, vii.
⁴—⁴ omitted, F, orig.
was sore wasted by them that it was merveylle. And
at the laste, the foure\(^1\) knyghtes were soo sore apayred,
that they that hadde seen them afore sholde not have
\(^4\) knowe them. For theyr harneys was all rousty, and
theyr sadylles and brydelles all roten, soo that they
hadde made theyr reynes wyth cordes. And theymselfe
were become all blacke. And it was no merveylle, for
they were alwayes theyr cote of mayle all rousty
vpon theyr doubelettes, and hadde nother sherte nor
jacket, but they were all roten.

What shall I telle you more? Wyte that Reynawde
was doubted and fered soo sore, that it
was merveylle. For nyghe there as Reynawde haunted,
was no man that durste abyde there, but onely wythin
the fortresses. For whan Reynawde was mounted vpon
Bayarde, and his thre brethern upon thare other thre
horses, all theyr ryche & power was wyth them,
and yet they wasted and dystroyed all the countrey all
aboute them. And soo the foure powre knyghtes
were soo sore dysfygured, that who had seen them
sholde not have knowe them. For they were as
roughe as beres that ben famysshed, & were sore lene,
that every body had of it pyte.

And whan Reynawde sawe hymselfe soo pooreli
arayed, he called to hym his breder, and sayd/
'Lordes, I merveylle myselfe moche that we take not
some good counseyll what we have to doo; and me
semeth that we ben become yll, and that slougthe is
amonge us. For yf we were suche as I trowed, we
sholde not suffre the martyrdome that we endure; and
that we have endured soo long agoo, now knowe I

\(^1\) omitted, F. orig.
\(^2\) et aussi leurs auquectons estoient tous pourries, F. orig.
f. vii.
\(^3\) tout le monde les suqoit et si pastoient le pays, F. orig. f.
viii. back.
\(^4\) Fol. G. viii. back.
and says he would rather die as a knight, than of hunger or disease in the forest.

that we ben but lityll worthe, to have lette reste our enmyes as we have. But one thyngle I consider / we have but fewe horses\(^1\) and lityll harneys / and no money at all, and yet we ben in suche a plyghte that we ben more like bestes than folke / Soo praye I you all in generall, that ye wille tell me what we oughte to doo for the best / for I telle you for veraye certeyn, that I had moche lever deye as a knyghte, than for to deye 8 here for hunger and for dysease.'

When Alarde herde Reynawde speke thus, he sayd / 'Broder, soo helpe me god / It is long sith I dyde take hede to that ye saye now / but I fered 12 me full sore to telle you therof, lest ye wolde have ben dysplaysed wyth me for it / but sith that ye have opened the wordes / yf ye wyll byleve me / I shall gyve you good cownseyll as me seemeth / Syr, we have suffred 16 here grete poverta a long tyme / & we maye not goo in to no countrey but we shall be take / For as ye knowe all the barons of fraunce / and namly,\(^2\) our fader and all our kynsmen haten vs dedly. And yf ye wyll 20 beleve me / we shall goo streyghte to Ardeyne, towarde our moder / for she shall not faylle vs ; and there we shall soiourne a lityll / And when we shall have soiourned / we shall take wyth vs som company, and 24 shalle go serue some grete lorde / Where we 3\(^3\) shall get som goode. For ye be not suche a man but that ye shall yet ones have grete plente of goodes; for I knowe no man in erthe that of worthynes & of strengthe maye 28 compare to you' / 'Broder,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye well and wysely, and I promyt you I shall doo soo' / When the two other knightes herde the counseylle that Alarde theyr breder had gyven to Reynawde / they 32 began to saye / 'Broder Alarde, we knowe well that

\(^{1}\) ne harnoys ne monnoye, F. orig. f. viii. back.
\(^{2}\) specially.
\(^{3}\) Fol. H. i.
ye gyve goode counseyll to our broder Reynawde. 

Thenne sayd Reynawde, ‘Sith that this counsayll semeth to you goode, we shall doo it to nyghte’ 

Soo moche abode the four sons of Aymon; that the nyghte came. and when it was come, they lighted on horsebacke, & put theymselwe to the waye soo well clothed & arrayed, as I have tolde you above, and in suche wyse that theyr flesshe was seen naked in many places of theyr bodyes / And so longe they rode by nyghte & by daye, that they came there as they were borne, that was nygte the cyte of Ardeyne / and whan they were soo nigh the cyte that they myght well see it / they looked vpon it; and thenne they remembred the grete ryches wherfrom they were caste & banysshed / and of the grete poverte that they had suffred longe.

And as they approached nygte the cyte, Reynawde sayd to his brethern, ‘We have doon evyll that we have not taken surete of our fader, for ye knowe well that he is soo cruell, that yf he maye take vs he shall yelde vs prysoners to Charlemagne.’ ‘Broder,’ sayd Richard, ‘ye saye well; but my herte gyveth me not that our fader wolde doo as ye have sayd. And yf he so dyde, yet have I lever deye afore Ardeyne, than for grete dysease and hungre in the foreste. Late vs ryde surely, for I tell you that no body shall knowe vs. And of thother parte, yf we can sette our feete wythin Ardeyne / we shall be sauff ynough / for we be well beloved / and my lady, our moder, sholde never suffre that men doo to vs any harme ne dysplaysure.’

Certes, sayd Reynawde, ‘ye have sayd ryghte well and wysely / and moche ye have recomforte me. Now late vs ryde in a good hour.’ And whan he had sayd thise wordes / they

1—1 a Reynault. F. orig. 
2 Ils sont tant dolent que peu sen faillit, quilz ne tomberent pasmez a terre. F. orig. f. viii. 
3 Fol. H. i. back. 
4—4 omitted, F. orig.
They enter the chief street of Arden.

The people do not know them, and ask to what country they belong.

They reach the palace, and leave their horses to three knights, who have lately joined their company.

The sons enter the hall, where they find no one to whom they can speak.

The Duchess comes from her chamber, but does not recognise her sons.

entred soone after wythin Ardeyne / and thei rode thrugh the maysters strete, that they were not known of noo body. And they went streyghte to the castell wythoute ony taryeng / And wyte, that whan they passed thrugh the stretes, the folke that behelde theym marueylled moche of theym. For they wysyt not what folke they were, and sayd the one to thother / 'See, what folke ben thyse / I trowe that they ben not of our lawe / nor of our beleve' / Themne they asked theym / 'What ben ye, lordes, that are soo countrefayt / are ye paynemes / or of what countrey ben ye?' 'Syres,' answered Reynawde, 'ye enquere over moche; see ye not what folke we ben.' And whan they were com to the palays, they lighted doun a fote / and toke theyr horses to kepe to their knyghtes that were com of late in their felawshyp / And thenne the four brethren went vp to the hall, and met wyth noo bodi / For the olde Aymon theyr fader was a hawkyng vppon the ryver / and the duchesse their moder was in her chambr, where she was contynuelly pencyfull & sory by cause that she myghte not here noo tydynges of her children. Whan the four brethren were entred wythin the hall, they fonde noo man to whom they sholde speke / wherof they were sore merveylled / And / they sette themselfe doun / the one here / and the other there / And abode thus a longe while that noo body came there / and whan they hadde taryed longe ynough, she came the duchesse their moder outhe of her chambr, she lokd a longe the halle, Where she saw her soues thus countrerfayte, whyche she knewe not / But merveylled

1 a troyes cheualliers. F. orig. g. i. back.
2—2 omitted, F. orig.
3—3 [ ] from ed. 1554 corrected, as there was a piece cut out of Caxton.
4 et elle veoir, F. orig. g. i.
5 Fol. H. ii.
herself greatly what folke they were / And when Alarde sawe his lady moder com / he sayd to his broder Reynawde and to his other brethren, ‘yonder is our moder that we sore desire for to see. Late vs goo agenst her, yf it playse you / and tell her our grete penurye and our nedo’ / ‘Brother,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘we shall doo soo; but we shall tary tyll she speke to vs or not.’

And taryed thus the foure brethren tyll that theyr moder was com to theym. And whan she sawe theym so blacke and soo hidous / and princypally Eeynawde, that was so grete & soo roughe, she toke soo grete fere and is frightened by their rough appearance.

She asks them whether they are Christians or Pagans, and out of pity offers them clothing.

And whan the duchesse hadde sayd this, she toke so grete pyte to remembre her children that she beganne to wepe sore tenderly. And whan she hadde wepte a longe while, she sayd soo highe that her children vnderstode it, ‘Ha, good god! when shall the daye come that I shall see my chyldren / Alas, goode lorde, how fayne wolde I see theym! Was there e[ver2] lady that bare soo ryche a bourden as I have / And that [were2] of it soo dyscomforted as I am?

And whan Reynawde sawe his lady moder soo so[row]full and sory, He hadde of hit grete pyte / And [the] teeres began to come atte his

1 pour veoir se elle nons congnoistra ou non, F. orig. g. i.
2 From ed. 1554. A piece cut out of the Caxton.
The Duchess recognises him by a scar in his face,

and embraces all her children.

eyen / And wolde dyscovere hymselfe / But whan the duchesse behelde well his visage and his byhavoyr / and maner / her blode ranne vppe to her face / and hevered wythin her body / and beganne to shake full faste, soo that almoste she felle down in a swoune to the erthe, And was a grete while that she myghte not speke, her herte was soo close and soo sore pressed / and all her colour loste and goon / And whan she was come agen to herselfe, she dyde caste her sighte agayn vpon Eeynawde, and knewe hym ryght well by a wounde that he hadde in his face, whiche was doon to hym of a fall / whan he was in his tendre age / Thenne she sayd to hym, as gladde as any moder may be, 'Reynawde, my sone / whos peere is not amonge all the knyghtes of the worlde / How see I you soo sore appayred and chaunged? Where is goon your grete beaulte / Why, my sone, doo ye hyde you towarde me / that loveth you more than my selfe' / And while that she sayd thysse wordes, she loked aboute her / and knewe her children / and anone she went towarde theym wyth her armes spred abrode / for to colle and kysse theym, sore wepyng for grete pyte that they were soo sore apayred of theyr beaulte. And soo longe she kyssed one and theunne a nother / that at laste she felle down in a swoune / And Reynawde toke her vp in his armes / where she abode a good while. And Reynawde and his bretherne ceassed not from weppyng, for grete pyte that they hadde of theyr moder.

A nd whan the duchesse was come agen to herselfe, she toke her chyldren, and made theym sitte down by her / And sayd to theym, 'How is it that I see you thus poure and dysfygured? Why is it that ye have wyth you no knyghtes / nor none other com-pany / Where have ye ben, that have endured so grete
poverté and soo grete dyseyse' / 1 When 2 the duchesse spake thus to her children, she dyd wepe styll sore tendrely / and fowndered all in teeres 3 / holdeynge her 4 sone Reynawde bytwene her armes / and kyssed hym full swetly / 'Lady,' sayd Reynawde, 'we have wyth vs but thre knyghtes, that kepe our horses yonder wythoute / For our fader hathe slayn all our knyghtes and 8 all our folke. And also he sholde have slayne vs, if it hadde not be our lorde that kepte vs therfro thoroughe his pyte and mercy / Sore harde parentage dyd he shewe to vs, our naturell fader' /  When the duchesse 12 vnderstode thise wordes, she was ryght sory for it, And called to her one of her seruauntes, and sayd to hym / 'Goo and make my sones horses to be in to a good stable / And that they be well tended. And brynge 16 hither the thre knyghtes that kepe the horses wythoute / For I wyll see them.' 'madame,' sayd her squyer, 'it shall be doon Incontynente' / And themne he wente to the thre knyghtes / and sayd to theym that the 20 duchesse wolde see theym, Which incontynente dyde as the lady hadde commaunded, and cam vp to the palays, where as Reynawde taryed for theym. 'Lorde,' sayd the duchesse to theym, 'ye be ryght welcome' / 24 'Madame,' sayd the knyghtes, 'god gyue 3 you goode lyffe and longe, 3 and Ioye of your chilydren / For they ben the beste 4 and the moste worthy of all the worlde' / This hangyng, came there a yoman / that sayd to the 28 duchesse / 'Madame, ye it playse you to sitt atte the table, the meete is redy.' The lady toke Reynawde and the other wyth her / and ledde theym to dyner, & made theym sittte doun all afore her / And theyr thre knyghtes 32 atte the lyfte syde of her 5 / There made goode chere the foure sones of Aymon, and ete at theyr ease and atte

---

1 Saiches que quant la duchesse, F. orig. g. ii, back.
2 Fol. H. iii.
3—3 omitted, F. orig.
4 meilleurs du monde, F. orig. g. ii.
5—6 aupres delle, F. orig. g. ii.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON.  [CHAP. IV.

Duke Aymon arrives from hawking and hunting,

and enquires of his wife who are these men.

The Duchess tells him they are his sons,

and implores him to lodge them that night.

Aymon, in great anger, curses his children because they have neither folk nor money.

Reynawde excuses himself

theyr owne wyll / For it was longe syth that they hadde ony goode mele, Where they myghte take theyr naturell foode 2 atte theyr ease / And as they were atte the table, Thenne came theyr fader Aymon from hawkyng and hunting, / whiche hadde taken foure hertes and two wyldke bores, 3 and dyverse pertryches and feysauntes 3 / Whan Aymon sawe theym / he knewe theym not / and he sayd to the duchesse / 'Lady, what are theyse 8 folke that ben thus countrefayte' / Whan the duchesse vnderstode her husbande, she was sore agaste / and beganne to wepe, and sayd / 'Syre, thyse ben your children and myn / that ye have travelylled so moche, 12 and sore hunted as wyldke bestes, The whiche have dwelled longe tyme in the foreste of Ardeyne 4 / Where as they have ben sore tourned, as ye now maye see. Now are they come to me, by cause I am ryght gladde 16 whan I see theym / For to you they ben not come, for they knowe well that ye love theym not. But I praye you for god, that for the love of me ye wyll lodge theym thys nyghte, For they shall departe to morowe erly. 20 And I wote not ye ever I shall see theym / wherfore of this I beseche you ryght humbly.'

Thenne whan Aymon vnderstode thyse wordes, he shoke all for angre, And tourned hymselfe towarde his sones / and made to theym evyll chere, and sayd to theym, 'Glotton, godlys curse have you / 5 For ye ben not worthe a strawe, For ye have nother folke nor money, nor noo prysoner that myghte paye to you a grete havoyr.' 'Fader,' sayd Reynawde, 'by the feyth that I owe to you, ye your londe is in peas / the

1 ung seule repes, F. orig. g. ii.  2 Fol. H. iii. back.
3–3 omitted. le quil entra en sa salle et trouva ses enfans qui memgoeolent, et la duchesse leur mere qui les servoit, F. orig. g. ii.
4 la grant forest la ou ilz sont aussi devenu en comme veoir pourres, F. orig. g. ii.
5 Car vous ne valles riens, et comme garcons de neant estes, F. orig. g. ii.
other ben not soo / For ye myghte goo ¹ six score myles that ye sholde not fynde nother ryche man nor pour.

But that they kepe theymselffe wythin fortresses
and in castelles / But ye doo grete wronge for to doo vs the worst that ye canne; ye toke fyrste frome vs our goode castell of Mountenforde / And after that ye hadde assaylled vs in the ² wode of Ardeyne, and slewe all oure folke / so that of ³ fyve hundred knygthes that I had, ye lefte a lyve with me but enlevyn / Wherof VIII ben deed, and thyse thre that ye see here are abyden a lyve / Now beholde well, fader, and thynke how ye bare your selfe towarde vs / But sith it is thus that ye oughte to vs noo goode wyll, and that ye maye not see vs, Make vs the hedes to be smyten of / And soo shall you be beloved of Charlemagne / And hated of ¹² God / and of all men.'

And whan the olde Aymon vnderstode Reynawde thus speke, he knewe well he sayd trouth / and beganne to fyghte sore atte his herte / And thenne he sayd to his children / 'Myschaunt, your ledernes and slouth hath overconen you. Ye were never my chyl-
dren / For if ye were suche as men wene / ye sholde not have suffred the grete poverte that ye have endured soo longe / But ye shulde have goon wynne vpon your en-
myes / for to mayntene your selfe honestly / and make good werre to Charlemagne thorough all his londe. But ye are becom myschaunte; and therefore I telle you that ye gete noo thynge of me / Now thenne, voyde outsone my palays, and ⁴ goo begge where ye wyll atte a nother place.'⁴ 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye that / that an evyll and an vnkynde fader oughte to saye / For I telle you for veraye certeyne, that we have slayne soo many theves & brygauntes that I canne not

¹ quatre vings lieux, F. orig.
² Fol. H. iv.
³ cent cheualliers, F. orig.
⁴—⁴ omitted, F. orig. g. iii.
number them, Whereof I fele my selfe in grete synne /
But for god we requyre you that you, wyll helpe vs to
recovere our londes of Charlemagne.

And yf ye wyll not do so, gyve to vs of your goodes, 4
& we shall goo ferre from you’ / ‘I wyll not,’
sayd Aymon. ‘Fader,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘here I see
well your evyll wyll. I and my bretherne have doon
soo moche, that we ben come in to your place / that 8
we sholde fare the better for it; but I see well 1 ye wyll
caste vs therfro wyth grete afray.

And yf ye wyll not do so, gyve to vs of your goodes,
4 & we shall goo ferre from you’ / ‘I wyll not,’
sayd Aymon. ‘Fader,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘here I see
well your evyll wyll. I and my bretherne have doon
soo moche, that we ben come in to your place / that 8
we sholde fare the better for it; but I see well 1 ye wyll
caste vs therfro wyth grete afray. And I swere to you,
by the feyth that I owe to my lady moder, that yf I
muste nedes departe fro you in suche a maner, ye shall 12
abye it full dere, yf ye cast vs thus oute of your londe.
For I have lever deye here by you / than to deye for
hungrre / Syth that it maye be none other wyse.’

Thenne when Reynawde sawe that his fader was 16
soo harde herted agenst hym & his brethern / he
wexed red for angre / and began to chaung colour, and
drew his swerde halfe oute of the sheeth / And whan
Alarde sawe his brother Reynawde chaunge colour, he 20
knewe well that he was wrothe / so ranne he & called
hym, sayng, ‘ha, fayr brother / for goddys love, angre
not yourselfe so sore to our fader, for he is our lorde /
And therfore, where2 it is ryghte or wronge, he maye 24
saye to vs as yt playseth hym / and we oughte to doo
nis commaundement / And yf he is cruell towarde vs / we
oughte to be humble & playsaunte3 towarde hym /
Soo kepe your selfe for goddys love that ye sette not 28
hande vpon hym / For it were agenst the commaund-
ment of god’ / ‘Brother,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘it lacketh
but lityll that I wexe madde al quycke / When I see
afore me hym that sholde helpe vs, defende & love vs 32
as his chyldren, and gyve vs his good counseylle to vs /
and towarde all men. And he dooth all contrary the
same / He hath made peass wyth Charlemagne for

---

Reynawde’s anger
is roused against
his father,
and he draws his
sword,
but Alard
inter-
feres,
and begs him to
remember that
Aymon is their
lord.

---

1 Fol. H. iv. back. 2 whether. 3 omitted, F. orig.
How Aymon is reconciled to his sons.

And when Aymon herde Reynawde speke thus, his herte wexed softe, & began to wepe full sore: and sayd, 'Ha, god, how I am sory that I maye not 16 enioye the goode that god hath gyven to me largely; there sholde be no man in the worlde soo happy as I were; yf my chyldren had theyr peas with kyng Charlemagne. For I am sure that the kyng Pyramus 20 of Troye had never better men to his chyldren, nor more valyaunte than I have. Ha, eyvll herte, thou sholdest not take hede to none other agenst thy chyldren, But sholdest helpe theym & kepe theym 24 agenste all men, wherfore I ought well to hate the; eyvll herte; thou hast made me hate that I oughte to love as myn owne selfe' and when he had thus spoken to hymselfe he sayd to Reynawde, 'Fayr sone, ye are 28 ryght worthy and sage; For never Hector of Troye was worthe thou, 3 Nor in all the worlde is not founde your matehe, And therfore I oughte well to doo your wyll' When the duke Aymon had sayd this worde, he spake 32 to his wyff the duchesse, and sayd / 'Lady, I goo yonder wythout, for I wyll not be forsworn agenst the

---

1 Fol. H. v.
2-2 omitted, F. orig.
3 Il na cheuallier au monde qui te vaille, F. orig. G. iii.
4 a la duchesse, F. orig. g. iii.
kyng charlemagne. Ye have wythin golde & sylver ynough / and mani horses and moche barneys / palfreyes & somers / Now gyve to my chyldren all that they will take.' And whan he hadde sayd thus / he 4 toke his men wyth hym and wente his waye.

Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'we oughte to thanke you moche of that ye have now sayd. And we shall goo hens to morowe erly 1wyth goddys grace 1 / To the 8 ende that ye ben not evyll at ease ; and yf it playse you, we shall 2abyde for thys nyghte for to conforte our moder, 3that hathe be so yll at ease for the love of vs 3 / And I promytte you, fader, we sholde not have come 12 yet, but it had be for her sake' / 'Reinawde, fayr sone,' sayd the duk, 4 'you are full of grete wyt / wyte that whan berthelot 5 was deede, I durst not shewe me afore the kyng Charlemagn / by cause he sayde he had lever 16 have lost the halfe of his royame / & threatened me for to hange or brenne and dystroye all my londe / and I dyd so moche by the counseyll of my frendes, that I made myn a-poyntement, and that I was oute of all 20 blame / And ye have not considered the othes that Charlemagn made me doo agenst you / as agenst all other that helde wyth you / and I am sore dysplayed of that I fonde you in the wodes of Ardeyn as I dyd / 24 But I was forced of myn honour to do as I dyd, for to be in peas wyth kyng Charlemagne / Your moder hath not forswn you / & therfore she maye gyve you of our goodis at her wyll.' And whan the duke had sayd 28 thise wordes, he yssued oute of his palays, and wente to the woode.

After whan the free ducnesse herde that, that the duke Aymon gaaff her leve to doo wyth his 32 goodes at her wyll, she called her chyldren, and sayd

1—1 omitted, F. orig
2 Fol. H. v. back.
3—3 pour lamour de nous a cause quelle nous aouit perduz, F. orig. G. iv. back.
4 aymon, F. orig.
5 artus, F. orig.
to theym, ‘Fayr children, now be you sure, that sin your fader is not wythin, ye shall be well tended vpon, and shall have all the chere that I can doo to you12 / 4 And thenne she dyde doo make the bayns redy, and made theym all to bayne honestly / And wyte, that in theyr bayne were many a sweete herbe / And when they were well clene, the good lady3 made bryng lynnen & 8 other clothes for to chayne, & to eche of theym a mantelle of fyne scarlet furred with hermyns / and when she had theym well appareilled / she led theym in a chambre where their 4 faders tresur was, and shewed it 12 to her chyldren. When reynaud sawe so riche 5a tresur / he began to laughe, & sayd, ‘lady moder, gramercy of so fayre a yeft as here is / For it mystreth me well’ / & thenne he toke of that tresour at hys wyll. And 16 incontynente he sent messagers thoroughe all the coun-trey, for to gete hym sawdours 2 of the beste men of werre.2 Wherof many one cam gladly to hym / the whiche Reynawde payed for an hole yere. What shall 20 I tell you more? Reynawde and hys brethern laye that nyghte wythin the castell of ther sayd fader. And the nexste mornyng after, or it was daye, they departed. & had wyth theym V hundred men well horsed 2 & well 24 arayed2 / And when Reynawde and his brethern had take leue of ther lady moder the duchesse, she sayd to theym / ‘Fayr sons, I wyll that ye draw towarde Spayn, for it is a plentuouse countréy.’ And as they 28 wolde have departed / thenne cam Mawgis theyr cosyn, that cam ouyte of France, Where he had ben long tymé. Af-ter whan Mawgys was lighted / from his horse, he ranne to Reynawde / his armes spred abrode, 32 and began to kysse hym / and 6 when he had soo doon /

The Duchess attends to the comfort of her sons, and clothes them in rich apparel.

Reynawde takes at his will of the rich treasure of his father, and sends messengers through the country to procure him soldiers.

As the Sons are departing, Mawgis arrives.

---

1 est hors de seans, F. orig.  2 omitted, F. orig.
3 leur mere, F. orig. g. vii. back.
4 ou le tresoir estoif, et le monstrases enfans car pour autre nestoit il amasse, F. orig. g. iv.  5 Fol. H. vi.
6 quant il eut baise il basse ses autre freres, F. orig. g. iv.

CHARL. ROM. X  K
he kyssed his other thre brethern\(^1\) / and thenne he sayd to theym / \textquoteleft Ha, fayr cosyns, I am ryght glad to see you / And thanked be our lorde that he hath broughte me in to this coste.' \textquoteleft Cosyn,' sayd Reynawde, \textquoteleft where have you ben so longe, that we had never tydynges of you' / \textquoteleft Cosyn,' sayd Mawgys, \textquoteleft I come from the grete cyte of Parys, Where I have stolen thre horses laden wyth golde; and here they ben / the whiche Charlemagne wende for to have hydde well. And I gyve you the halfe of it / for I myghte not bestowe theym better than to you' / \textquoteleft Cosyn,' sayd Eeynawde, \textquoteleft god thanke you.' And when he had sayd soo \(^3\) he wente 12 oute of Ardeyne wyth his bretherne & his folke / and fonde his fader, \textit{that} cam fro the wode; & when Reynawde saved his fader, he made hym reverence, & bowed hymself to hym; & aymon \(^2\) sayd to theym / 16 \textquoteleft fayr sones, now ben ye well garnyssed & honestly arrayed. I praye you that ye doo soo in Fraunce / that men speke of your prowes / And ye, my other children / I commaunde you that ye obeye Reynawde / 20 and kepe hym above all thyng. \textquoteleft For as longe as he shall lyve, ye oughte not to be a ferde of noo harme.'

Thenne sayd Alarde, \textquoteleft syre, we shall doo your commandement / and we praye you for goddys love 24 \textquoteleft that ye wyll be evermore our good fader' / \textquoteleft I wyll be soo, my chyldren,' \(^4\) sayd Aymon. \(^4\) And thenne Reynawde toke leve of his fader and of his moder, \textquoteleft that conveyd theym oute of the towne.\(^4\) But the good 28 lady fell down in a swoune whan she sawe departe her chyldren. And all the towne began to make suche a sorowe that it was grete pyte\(^5\) / And Reynawde & his

\(^1\) il monte a cheval et sortit hors dardeyne, F. orig. g. iv.
\(^2\) Fol. H. vi. back.
\(^3\) que nous vous soions pour recommandez, F. orig. g. iv.
\(^4\) \textquoteleft omitted, F. orig.
\(^5\) a veoir, F. orig. g. v. back.
CHAPTER V.

How after that Reynawde, his brethren, & his cousin Maugys were departed out of Dordoune from their moder, For to seke their adventure, they roode so longe that they came in to the royame of Gascoyn / And how by the waye thei made grete harme to the royame of Fraunce / And how the kynge of Gascoyn reteyned theym in his servyse.
Now sayth the tale, that after that Reynawde, Alarde, Guycharde, and Rycharde, and Mawgys ther cosyn, were yssued oute of Ardeyn wyth all theyr fellawshyp, that was well of VI hundred men / Well 4 mounted and arrayed / they wente and passed thorughe Byheuse, and wasted all Fraunce / And passed thorughe the countrie of Gastynoys / and so forthe to Orleane / where they wente over the ryver of Loyre / And wasted all the londe vnto Poyters / And when they were come to Poyters / they herde tydynges of the kyng Yon of Gascoyn, that was a puyssaunte prynce, was assayled of the sarrasins / And when Mawgys herde thyse wordes, he cam to Reynawde, and said to hym / 'Cosyn, the kyng Yon of gascoyn is a prynce of grete renommee and of grete power / goo we to hym & serve hym, and suche servyse we shall mowe doo to hym / 16 that Charlemagne shall not mow hynder vs by noo wayes' / 'Cosyn,' sayd Reynawde, 'lete vs themne go there, sin that it semeth to you good' / And when they were hereto accorded, they toke theyr waye towards Gascoyn / and rode so longe by theyr iournes that they cam to Bordews, a fayr cyte / Where they fonde kyng Yon wyth a grete company of knyghtes / and when they were don from ther horses, Reynawde sayd 24 to his folke, 'go we lodge vs' / 'cosin,' sayd mawgys, 'we shall not do so, but we shall speke streight wyth kyng yon; & yf he reteyneth vs, in a good hour be it; & if he do not so / we shall serve borgoyns 2 the sarrasin, which is ryght prue & sage, & hath all redy conquered almoste all the londe of kyng Yon / as Tholouse, Montpeller, Lyetary, and saynt Gyle Tarasoon / & Arles; & yf we faylle here / we shall not faylle there' / 'Cosin,' sayd Reynawde, 'you speke

1--1 et passerent parmy gastinois et orleans et passerent la riviere de loyre, F. orig.
2 que charlemaigne ne nous prendra jamais, F. orig. g. v.
3 Fol. H. vii. back.
well and wysely, and we shall do as ye have sayd.' And thenne Reynawde toke wyth hym L. knyghtes, and his thre brethern, and Mawgys; and toke of his 4 armes, and clothed hym selfe honestly & rychely / And when he was well arrayed / he wente to kyngge Yons courte vpon a lytyll nagge. And when he rode thoroughge Bordews, all the peple ranne for to see hym / 8 by cause he was soo grete and soo well made / and soo fayr wyth all, and also his thre brethern, but they were not all eveyn soo grete. And when they were come to the gate 1 of the kynges place, 1 Reynawde 12 lighted on foote / and wente vp to the palays, and foude the kyng atte the counseyll / 2 And whan the stywarde sawe Reynawde soo fayr a man / and soo goodly, and soo many folke wyth hym / he came hym 16 agenste, and sayd to hym, 'My lorde, ye be ryght welcom.' And Reynawde answered to hym / 'god gyve you good adventure!' Now telle, and playse you, where is the kyng?'/ 'My lorde,' sayd the stywarde / 20 'he holdeth now his counseyll / For Bourgons the sarasyn is entred in hys londe, and hath doon to hym grete harm / For he hath brente townes and castelles, abbeyes, hospytalles, 1 chirches / and all other monas- 24 teryes / and now he is parforce wythin Tholouse 1 wyth a grete puyssaunce.' 11 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde / 'This borgoyns ys of grete power as me semeth, and after that men sayen.' Thus as Reynawde and the stywarde 28 spake togyder, came kyngge Yon 1 outhe of the counseyll chambre. 1 And when Reynawde sawe hym 4 / he toke his brethern & his cosyn mawgys wyth hym, & went agenst the kyng, whiche Reynawde salued 5 ryght 32 humbly, and sayd to hym / 'Syr, I am com to you fro a ferre londe 6 wyth my thre brethern & my cosyn, that

1–1 omitted, F. orig. 2 mais, F. orig. g. v. 3 orther, Text orig. 4 il se dresse et prent ses freres, F. orig. g. vi. back. 5 Fol. H. viii. 6 et suis cheualliers moy et mes freres, F. orig.
ye see here, for to doo you servyse, and our folke, yf it playse you; and we shall serve you in suche a maner that we wyll have nothynge of you. But & our servyse be agreable vnto you, Ye shall promyse me as 4 a kynge, yf it be your playsur\textsuperscript{1} / that ye shall be my warraunt & helpe agenst all other.' 'Good frende,' sayd the kyng Yon, 'ye be ryght welcom to me / And where ye saye ye be come for to serve me / I thanke you for it wyth all my hert\textsuperscript{2} / but I wyll fyrst knowe what folke ye ben. For ye myghte be suche that I sholde defende you, or that I sholde be your enmye.' 'Syr,' sayd Reynaude, 'syth that it playse you to knowe what we ben / I shall tell it to you / Wyte that my name is Reynawde, and am some eldest to the duk Aymon of Ardeyn, and thise thre knyghtes ben my bredern; here is Alarde, Guycharde, & Rycharde\textsuperscript{3} / and here is Mawgys our cosin, one of the beste knyghtes of the worlde, & most wyse. Charlemagne hath caste vs out of Frawace / and hath dysavowed vs / And our fader hath dysavowed vs for the love of hym / and for this cause, sir, we goo seke about after a lorde that is good & true, that sholde helpe vs to deffende agenst Charlemagne / and we shall serve hym well & truly.'

W when kyng Yon herde this that Reynawde sayd / he was ryght gladde of it that they were the foure sones of Aymon, the beste knyghtes of all the worlde, & mooste doubted / and Mawgys, that was the 28 moost subtyll of the worlde / that were com for to serve hym. He wolde not have been so gladde yf men hadde gyven to hym alle Parys; For he wyste that yf ever he sholde fynisshe his verwre / It sholde be by 32 theyr meane / Thenne he loked vppe towarde heven /

\textsuperscript{1} comme roy que vous etes, F. orig.
\textsuperscript{2} Je vous mercie humblement, F. orig.
\textsuperscript{3} le combatquant, F. orig. g. vi. back.
And thanked our lorde of the comyng of thyse worthy knyghtes. And thenne he sayd to theym, 'Lorde, ye are reteyned of me / For ye ben not the men that ought to be refused: I promitte you truly, and in feyth of a kynge / that I shall defende you wyth all my power agenste all men. Ye are dysheryted, and I also; theryfore it is well rayson that we be togyder, and that the one helpe the other of all his power.' 'Syr,' sayd Reynawde, 'we thanke you a thousande tymes / & I promyse you that we shall deye in your servyse, or elles your londe shall be recovered agayne' / The kyng called his stywarde, and sayd to hym, and commaunded that Reynawde & his felawship sholde be well lodged. Incontynente the stywarde toke Reynawde by the hande, and fulfylled the commaundement of the kyng.

Now are the foure sons of Aymon acoynted wyth the kyng Yon of Gascoyn / whiche wente to have doo well / but he repented hym soone after / But here we leve to speke of kyng Yon / and of the foure sons of Aymon / and retrore to speke of Burgoyns, that were at Tholouse, the whiche he had take by force of armes.

CHAPTER VI.

How Reynawde / his bredern, & Mawgys, dystroyed Borgons the sarasin / that had dystroyed the royame of Gascoyn, & chassed the kyng Yon vnto Bordews vpon Gyronde, that durste not goo thens for feere of the sarasins / And after, how kyng Yon gaaff my lady Clare, his suster, to Reynawde, for to be hys wyff, for the grete servyse that

---

1 Fol. H. viii. back. 2—2 et luy commanda, F. orig. 3—3 omitted, F. orig. 4 de gascongne, F. orig. g. vi.
he hadde doon to hym / And how he made for hym the castell of Mountawban.  

In this party showeth the historye, that after Bourgys hadde taken Tholouse / he made a grete parliamente to his folke / And sayd to theym / ‘Lorde, ye knowe well / That whan the yron is well hoote, hit warketh the better / 2Thys worde I have sayd afore 8 your lorde’shyppes for to gyve you to knowe that we oughte to doo. And therfor me semeth that we oughte to ryde nowe towarde Bourdews while the corne is in the eere / For our horses shall have mete ynoughe.’ 12 ‘Syre,’ sayd his folke / ‘ye speke well and wysely; lete it be doon as ye have devysed.’ & whan the morow cam / Bourgons departed out of tholouse wyth well XX thousande knyghtes well armed, And ceassed not for to ryde tyll that they cam afores Bourdews in IX dayes. And he sat all his folk in a bushement wythin a grete wode that was nyghe / and abode there wyth theym, excepte foure hundred men, 20 that wente to the cyte, wastynge and brenynge all the countrye vnto the cyte of Bordews / And whan the daye watche that was vpon the gate of the cyte sawe the sarasyns com / he cryed wyth an highe voys / 24 ‘Arme you, knyghtes! for here ben the paynynms, that com for to hurte you.’ When the cyte understode this, she began to be sore mooved.

Theme when Reynawde sawe that it was tyme to 28 take his harneys on, he sayd to hys bredern, ‘Goo make you all redy / and make our trompettes to

---

1 omitted, F. orig.
2 que quant il est froit, F. orig. g. vi.
3 Fol. i. i.
4 faictes que soyes demain prest comme pour mourir, F. orig. g. vi.
5 prez de la citie manda bien quatre cens sarazins, des myeux montez pour courir, et ceulx aloient tout ardont et gastant tout le pays au pres de la citie, F. orig.
be blowen, that all our folke put theym selve in armes.'
Incontynent made his brethren his commaundement /
And whan they were all armed / Reynawde mounted
4 vpon bayarde / and cam to kynge Yon, and sayd to
hym / 'Syr, be not abasshed of noo thynge, but be sure
that god shall helpe vs this daye / Myselffe, my
brethren / and all our folke, we goo afore. And make
8 your folke to be redy incontynente, for my herte
gyveth me that this cursed sarasin shall be this daye
dyscomfyted / and overcome wyth the helpe of god' /
'Frende,' sayd the kyng, 'god be wyth you / and
12 I shall doo that ye telle me.' 1And thus Reynawde
wente out of Bordews,2 the formest of all his folke,
agenst 2 the sarrasins, vpon hys horse Bayarde / the
shelde atte his necke / and his swerde in his hande /
16 and ranne fyersly vpon his enmyes, and incontynent
smote a paynym throughe hys shelde, so that he over-
throwe hym deed to the grounde; and forthevyth he
cast a nother / god wote he helde well his swerde, For
20 he hewe the sarrasins3 as they had ben wythoute
harneys. And shortly to speke, after that Reynawde
& his folke were assembled, the paynymes myght not
endure / For Reynawde and his brethren slewe theym
24 as bestes, soo that they muste nedes flee towards their
bushement / And whan borgons sawe his folke4 come
thus, he yssued oute of the wode 5 wyth his companye,5
and made bussynes & homes to be blouen / and came
28 for to socoure his men. And whan Reynawde sawe so
grete nombre of folke 5 comynge oute of the wode,5
he was sore merveylled, and tourned hymselfe towards
his brethren, & sayd to theym / 'Lorde, kepe that ye
32 be not dysmayed / for we shall gete a grete worshyp
this daye; and I praye you that every man parforceth

1—1 Quant Renault eut dit ses parolles il sen isit hors de
bourdeaulx, F. orig. g. vii. back. 2 Fol. I, i. back.
3 si legereement. F. orig. 4 si desconfitz, F. orig.
5—5 omitted, F. orig. g. vii. back.
hym selfe to doo well' / 'brother,' sayd Rycharde / 'we shall never be dysmayd as long as ye be vpon bayarde' / 'Broder,' sayd Reynawde, 'doo as goodе
men / for ye wyll parforce yourselfe a lityll, this 4
paynymes shall not holde afore vs' / Thus as Reynawde
spake to his brethern / they sawe Borgons com, the
spere in his reest, and smote a man of Reynawde
by suche a strength that he shoued his spere thuroughe 8
and thuroughe his body / soo that he fell down dead to
the erthe. Whan Alarde sawe that, he was wroth,
and spored hys horse, & ran vpon a paynym so harde
that he felled hym sterke deed aforesyme / And 12
shortly to speke, there was never seen suche a dystresse
of folke / as Reynawde, his brethern, and Mawgys 1his
cosin,1 made wyth soo fewe folke as they were, agenst
Borgons the sarrasin /

2Thenne whan the kyng Yon, that cam to the
socours of Reynawde, sawe the grete faytes of
armes that he & his brethern made / and how hardly
they dyd set vpon & overthrewe all that they recounted 20
afore them / he blessed hymselfe of the merveyll that
he had of them / And thenne he sayd to his folke,
'goo we socoure thise worthy knyghtes / for it is tyme
longe agoo' / and whan kyng Yon had sayd thise 124
wordes, he spored his horse, & put hymself amonge the
thykest, & began to doo well; and dyd so moche that
he brake the grete preesses / and cam where Reynawde /
was / and whan Reynawde sawe the kyng Yon, he sayd 28
to hym, 'Syr, be sure and certeyn that the sarrasins are
dy[s]comfyted' / thenne sayd the kyng, 'Reynawde,
I am well assured that god shall doo me grace through
your highe provessse; blessed be the hour that ye were 32
borne / and cam in to thyse marches' / To speke
shortly, ye bataylles were assembled of one parte & of
thother; but whan Borgons sawe the gret harme that

1—1 omitted, F. orig.  
2 Fol. I. ii.
Reynawde bare to him of his folke, he sayd to his men ‘we ben overcome by the prowes of these five knyghtes. Late vs goo backe agen / for it is tyme’ / and when he had sayd thysse wordes / he & his folke began to flee / And when Reynawde sawe Borgons, that fled / he smote bayarde wyth the spores & ranne after hym, & sayd to hymselfe, that Borgons sholde abyde there, or elles it sholde cost hym his lif / Wythin a short whyle Reynawde was ferre from his brethern / and ferre from his felawshyp, so that they wyst not whiche waye he drew / When Alarde sawe that he wyst not where Reynawde was drawe / he sayd to hymselfe, ‘Ha, god! whiche waye is my brother drawe to that I am not wyth hym?’ and themne cam there kyng Yon, that sayd to theym / ‘Lordes & knyghtes / well ye knowe, gramercy god that it ys not wysdome for to chasse overmoche 2his enmyes, for often tymes cometh there a grete dommage / let vs wythdrawe vs, I praye you.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd Alarde, what saye ye / we have lost reynawde our broder, & wote not where he is, nor if he is deed or taken.’ Whan kyng Yon vnderstode this worde, he was full sory & wrothe / and they wente & sought among ye deed that laye vpon the feelde. And whan alarde sawe he coude not be founde, he made grete sorowe wyth guycharde, rycharde, & Mawgys also. And when the folke of Reynawde saw that he was not founde, they began to make so grete sorow that it was a pyte to see.

A las,’ sayd Alarde, ‘what shall I doo? I departed fro my londe poure & exyled / but I dyd not care for it / for I wente wyth the beste knyght of the worlde, & trowed by the prowes of hym to have recovered honour & havoyre, myselfe & my brethern / and now I have lost hym thorough my defawte!

1 Que vous diray je plus, F. orig. g. vii. 2 Fol. I, ii. back.
Alas, myschaunt! what shall we doo frohens forth? For the erthe shall not mow susteyne vs no more / But that it shall fowndre vnder our feete’ / and whan the kyng Yon sawe the grete sorowe that the poure knyghtes made for theyr brother, he sayd to theym, ‘Lordes & knyghtes, what is this that ye doo? sith that he is not deed, it oughte to sufFyse you / For yf he be take, ye shall have hym agen, & shold cost me all that I have in the worlde / And also we have soo many of theym prysoners / that Borgons shall not doo hym noo harme for no thyng.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd alarde, ‘lete vs goo after, for goddys sake / lete vs wyte where he is becom.’ ‘Frende,’ sayd yᵉ kyng, ‘I wyll doo so gladly.’ and thenne they spored theyr horses, & went as fast as theyr horses myghte renne / and wyte that alarde, guycharde, rycharde, & mawgys, rode a good pase, so moche that it semed that therthe sholde have cloven a sondre vnder theym / ¶ Now wyll I tell you of Reynawde, ¹that went after borgons so fast as yf the tempest had chassed hym; and he was goon so ferre wythin a shorte while, that it is wonder for to here tell, for there was no best that wente afore bayarde his horse / and whan reynawde had overtaken borgons / he cryed vpon hym as hie as he myght do, ‘Certes, borgons, thy horse maye no more, I see it well / and therfore flee no ferder / but turne thyself towaerde me ; for yf thou deyed fleeng thou sholdest be shamed’ / whan borgons herde reynawde speke thus to hym, he 28 returned incouztynent. And whan he sawe reynade, he knewe well that it was the good knyghte that had dy[g]scomfyted all his folke, & sayd to hym / ‘Syre knyght / goo backe agen, & marre not your horse about noughte; for yf ye lese hym, ye shall never recover suche a nother.’ & this he sayd for to abasshe the

¹ Fol. I. iii.
good knyght reynawde / for he durste not ioust wyth hym by cause of the grete prowes \textit{that} he had seen in hym. But reynawde was not the man that sholde be made a ferde wyth wordes / \textit{And} thenne reynawde said agen to hym \textit{‘borgons, thys worde mystre not to you for to saye, for ye must nedes defende yourselfe’ / And thenne he spored incontynent bayarde / & whan borgon saw that he myght not be delyvered of reynawde but by iustynge / he spored his horse & rame vpon reynawde as harde as he myght, and smote reynawde so sharply that the spere went in peces. reynawd fell not / but smote borgons suche a stroke that he overthrewe both horse and man to the grounde, \& wounded borgins in hys brest full sore / And whan borgons sawe hymselfe atte the grounde, he rose vp lightly, \& toke his swerde in his hande / and cast his shelde vpon his hede / and whan reynawde perceyved the stroke \textit{that} he had gyven hym in his brest, he cryed to hym, \& sayd / \textit{‘Certes it shall not be reproched to me that ye fyghte me a fote, \& I on horsbacke’ / and wyth this he lighted doune from bayarde, and drewe oute his swerde \textit{\& went agenst borgons, and borgons agenst hym / and there began a sharpe batayll. and whan the horse of the pagnym felte hym selfe from hys mayster, he began to renne awaye \textit{\& over the feldes;}} \ & whan bayarde sawe hym renne awaye / he went after \& overtoke hym soone ynough / and thenne he toke hym by the mane \textit{\& wyth his teeth,}} \ & drew hym wyth so grete myght that he broughte hym agen to his mayster, in the same place where the two \textit{\& worthy knyghtes fought togyder / and reynawde gaaf a stroke to borgons wyth his swerde vpon his sheld, \& all \textit{that the sworde roughte he cut throug, the flesshe, \& well

\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{1}—1 si luy dist, F. orig. g. viii. \textsuperscript{2} hors du fonteau, F. orig. g. viii. \textsuperscript{3} Fol. I. iii. back. \textsuperscript{4—4} omitted, F. orig.}
an hundred mayles of his flancardes, and made hym a grete wounde in to the haunche.

Thenne whan borgons the sarasyn sawe the wonderfull strengthe of reynawde, & the grete strokes that he gaaf to hym / he was sore afrayed, & fered leste he sholde deye; & so he wythdrew hymsel abacke, & sayd to reynawde, 'Ha gentyll knyght, I praye the for the love that you haste to thy god, that thou gyve 8 me trewes / and I shall make the lord & sire of all that I have in this worlde' / 'certes,' sayd reynawde, 'I wyll not do so / for I have promyse to kyng Yon that I shall holpe hym agenst all men / and he in likewyse hath promyse me; but & ye wyll make your selfe crysten, I shall do it gladly.' 'Syr,' sayd borgons, 'I wyll yelde me to you; for to no better knyght than ye be I can not yelde myselfe / ye wyll save my liss & 16 my membres' / 'Borgons,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye wyll yelde you to me, ye shall have no more harme than I shall' / 'wyll ye promyse me this?' sayd borgons / 'ye,' sayd reynawde. 'Now holde my swerde,' sayd 20 borgons / ' & I put my selfe all togyder in your hande.' And reynawde toooke his swerde, & assured hym that he shold not deye / and they two went togyder for to take theyr horses / and whan they had theym, they 24 lighted ypon, and toke theyr waye towards Bordews / and as they cam agen, they met wyth kyng Yon, that cam, & his folke, rennyng agenst hym as fast as they myght. Whan reynawde sawe the kyng / he thanked 28 hym moche that he was comyng after hym, & presented to hym borgons, that he had thus taken & conquested, as I have herereceed to you, & sayd to hym, 'Noble kyng of gascoyn, I besche you that borgons have no harme / for I have assured hym.' 'Good frende,' sayd kyng Yon, 'nomore he shall / but all honour for the love of you / & I praye to god that I

\[1\] ung peu, F. orig. h. i. back. \[2\] Fol. I. iv.
maye do no thyng that is agenst your wyll' / And
when alarde, guycharde, richarde, & mawgys sawe
reynawd, that brought borgons prysoner, they were
ne ver so glad, for thei wende to have lost hym / so
ranne they & kyssed hym full swetly, & made hym
grete feste & grete honour / For they had ben in grete
sorow for the love of hym.

8 'Brother,' sayd Alarde, 'in to a grete sorowe &
hevynes ye had brought vs this daye, for we
wonde that ye had be take; but sith that ye have
taken borgons, the werre is doon / and blessed be
the hour that ye were borne, & the pappes that ye
souked' / and when they were well fested, they
toke on their waye towarde bordews / where they led
borgons as a prysoner / And when the kyng yon was
at bordews, he lighted doun, and toke wyth hym
reynawde & his brethern by the hande, & mawgis also,
& wente vp to the palays, and founde his folke, that
made grete fest / and he called them to hym, & sayd,

20 'Lorde,

that dyd put in their myndes for to com into this
coste, For they have quyted my londe, & have set all
my royame in peas / To speke shortly, the kyng made
the buty to be dealed, Wherof the most party he made
to be gyven to reynawde & his brethern. And reynawde
wolde take no thyng of it / but gaff it all to his
folke / and when y\textsuperscript{e} kinge sawe the grete largenes of
reynawde, he loved hym more than he dyd afore / &
thene he sayd that he wolde make reynawde lorde
over hym / and of all his londe /

\textsuperscript{1}--\textsuperscript{1} omitted, F, orig.  \textsuperscript{2} le roy yon, F, orig. h. i.
\textsuperscript{3} faictes honneur a ses cheualliers, F, orig.
\textsuperscript{4} Fol. I. iv. back.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. VI.

The kynge yon had a suster, the whiche was a ryght fayre damoysell / whan she herde speke so moche good by reynawd, she called to her a knyghte that was called water, and sayd to hym / 'tell by your feyth / 4 who had the pryce of the batayll.' 'madame,' sayd water, 'I shall tell it you wyth a good wylle. Now wyte that reynawde is the best knyght of all his brethren, & of all the wolde, for he toke borgons the 8 sarrasin by force / wherby he hath brought the werre at an ende.' Whan the pucell vnderstode this worde she was right glad, & dyde thanke our lorde for it wyth all her hert. And ye kynge & his knyghtes 2 ceassed not to make ioye for the victory that god had sente to theym thrugh the grete prowes of the valyau?it reynawde / Whan borgons sawe hymselfe in pryson, he sente worde to kynge yon that he sholde 16 come speke wyth hym / And as sone that kynge yon wyst of it, he wente to hym / and whan borgons sawe hym, he salued hym, & after sayd to hym, 'Syr, I am your prysoner, & also the moste party of my folke; & yf it playse you, ye shall put me to raunson, and my men also, & I shall gyve you X. horses laden wyth golde, for me & for mi folke' / 'Borgons,' sayd the kynge, 'I shall doo it wyth a goode wyll, yf reynawde 24 counsayll me so, & noo otherwyse I wyll not doo' / And thenne the kynge yon sente for reynawde, & for his brethren, & all his other barons / And whan they were come, he helde his counsayll how he sholde doo for 28 the delyverau?ce of borgons. Reynawde & his barons counsayled the kynge 3 that he sholde put Borgons to raunson: and whan the kynge sawe that his barons counsayled hym the same, he made borgons to be 32 called / and made his delyverau?ce to be signyfyed vnto hym / And thus was borgons delyverde, & wente

1 roy yon, F. orig. h. i. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. 3 Fol. I. v.
wyth his folke into his country, and yielded Tholouse agayn to kyng Yon, & sente to\(^1\) hym X. sommers all laden wyth fyne golde, as he had promysed to hym / 4 And incontynt that the kyng Yon had received theym he gaff them to reynawde & to his brethern; but reynawde dyd as a worthy knyghte / For not a peny he wolde take of it, nor his brethern also. 8 It happed vpon a daye that Re cyanawde and his brethern wente in a forest that was not ferre thens / and toke foure wylye bestes / And as they were comyng homwarde, they founde themselfe vpon the ryver of gyronde / and as they wente, Alarde loked over the ryver, & sawe a hyghe montayn, & all highe to the topp of it was a fayr roche / And whan Alarde sawe soo fayr a grounde and so stronge, he tourned hymselfe towarde Re cyanawde, and sayd to hym / 9 'Brother, yonder vpon that highe mountaynke is a fayr grounde and a stronge, I beleve that there hath ben somtyme a castell. And yf we myghte doo soo moche to buylde there 3 a stronge place 3 for ourselfe, Charlemagne sholde never take vs there / And yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall aske it of kyngge Yon. And yf he gyveth it to you, Lete vs doo make there a 24 stronge castell.' 4 'Cosyn,' sayd Mawgys to Re cyanawde, 'Alarde gyveth you good counseylle, And I praye you that ye wyll doo soo as he hath sayd' / 'Cosyn,' sayd Re cyanawde, 'I shall doo it, syth that ye counseylle me soo' / And whan they were accorded to the same / 5 they entred into a barge, & wente over Gy ronde / And whan they came a londe / they ceassed never tyll that they came afore the kyngge\(^5\) / And presented hym

\(^1\) an roy Yon, F. orig. h. ii. back.  
\(^2\) beau frere, F. orig.  
\(^3\) ung chastel, F. orig. h. ii. back.  
\(^4\) ung forteresse, F. orig. h. ii. back.  
\(^5\) Ils se mirent dedens gyronde et passerent outltre et ne finerent de chevaucher tant quizl sont venuz devant le roy, F. orig.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. VI.

the bestes\(^1\)\(^2\) that they hadde taken. And whan the kynge sawe theym he receyved theym curtoyusly, For he loved theym moche / And thenne the kynge embraced Reynawde in his armes.

The morowe nexte, after that the kynge hadde herde masse / Reynawde toke the kynge and drewe hym a lityll atte oo side / and sayd to hym, 'Syre, we have served you longe well and truly.' 'Certes,' sayd 8 the kynge, 'ye saye trouthe / and therfore I am holde to rewarde you well for it. Now loke yf I have in all my londe, cytes, townes, or castelles, or other thynge that ye wyll have, For ye shall have it Incontynente.'

'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'I thanke you moche of your goode wyll. But here my wordes, yf it playse you' /

'say on hardely,' sayd the kynge / 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'I and my bretherne were the other daye com-\(^1\)\(^6\) ynge fro the chase / and as we came alonge by the syde of Gyronde and of Dordonne, and namely betwene thys two ryveres / I sawe a mountayne sore hyghe; And yf it playse you, I wolde well buylde therevpon a castell 20 after my playsure / Wherfore, syre, and it playse you, 3ye shall graunte to me this gyfte\(^3\) / for all the servyse that ever I dyde to you.' When the kynge understode thys wordes, he was ryght gladd of it, and sayd to 24 Reynawde / 'I ryght gladly graunt this to you. And wyth the same, ye shall have of me X thousande marke every yere for to maynten your astate' / 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'gramercy' / and caste hym selfe to his feete. 28 And the kynge yon toke hym vp\(^4\)another curtoynsly,\(^4\) & kyssed hym for grete love; & after, he sayd vnto hym / 'Noble knyght, I promyse you I shall make you a ryche man, 5yf god spare me liffe.'\(^5\) 'sir,' sayd rey- 32 naude, 'god yelde you, & we shall serve you truly' /

---

\(^1\) saulnaiges, F. orig.  
\(^2\) Fol. I. v. back.  
\(^3\) vous le me donnez, F. orig. h. ii.  
\(^4\) incontinent, F. orig. h. ii.  
\(^5\) si je viz longuement, F. orig.
1& thus they departed fro eche other. The nest daye, after whan the kyng was rysen oute of his bed, he made reynawde to com afore hym / And after he toke 4 XX. knyghtes wyth hym, and no more, and toke his barge vpon gyronde, and passed over the ryver, reynawd & his brethren wyth hym / and thei dyde so inoche that they cam vpon the roche / and whan they sawe the place so fayr & so playsaunt, the kyng was merveylled of it, & reynawde was ryght glad / For the grete streughte that the place had / for yf he myght doo so moche to buylde there a castell, he sholde not doubte Charlemagne of a peuy, nor none other persone of the worlde, whan vytaylles were in it, for vpon the highest of the montayn spronge oute a fayre fountaync, & plenteous ynoughe for X. thousande persone. Whan the knyghtes that were wyth the kyng sawe the place so fayr & so playsauit, & so strong wythall, they were gretly abasshed / a knyght thenne toke the kynge, & had hym a lityll aside, & tolde hym / 'Sir, what is this that ye wyll doo / wyll ye have a lorde above you? wyll ye doo make here a fortresse / I tell you vpon my feyth, that yf reynawde set here a castell, he shall fere you lityll, mother you nor all other barons of gascoyn / for reynawde is suche a knyght as ye knowe, & also his brethern & their cosin mawgys / and also they be strangers / and soone they shall bere you grete harme yf they wyll; doo to hym some other good, yf ye wyll beleve me, and lete this alone, For over grete harme myghte come to you therof.'

Thenne whan kyng you understode suche wordes, he becam all abasshed of it, for he wyste well that the knyghte sayd trouth / and lityll it lacked that the werke of the castell cam not forthe. he began to thynke a lityll; & after, he sayd that he had promysed

---

1-1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. I. vi. 3 et monterent au dessus, P. orig. h. ii.
The King will not withdraw his promise to Reynawde, it to reynawde / and thus he sayd to the knyght that the castell sholde be made; so called he reynawde, and sayd to hym / 'My good frende, where will ye that the castell be made' / 2 'sir,' sayd reynande, 'I wyll yf it playse you that it be set here in the same place vpon the roche.' 2 'Certes,' sayd the kynge, 'I gyve it to you / Now hast you to see that it be made & buylded vp as ye thinke best / and thenne ye shall 8 doubte nother me nor my folke' 4 / 'sire,' sayd reynawd, 'lete be thise wordes, for it is no nede to speke therof / for I certyfye you as a true knyght, that I had moche lever deye an evyll deth amonge the turkes / than that I sholde thinke treyson vpon you nor vpon no other / Syre, I am & have be take hederto, & holde for a true knyght / god gyve me grace that I doo not from hens forth, therby I sholde other wyse be taken / sire, thinke you by cause I am emnye to charlemagn, my soverayn lord / that I sholde be therfore a traytour, & that I have doon agenst hym som treyson; wyt that whan I slewe berthelot his nevew, alas, I dyd it in my 20 defence / for he drewe first blode vpon me wythoute reyon or cause why. But I swere to you vpon my feyth, that yf ony man doo ony wronge vnto you / I shall avenge you therof after my power; but & yf ye have ony suspextyon vpon me, gyve me it not' / 'Good frende reynawde,' sayd the kynge, 'I dyd but iape wyth you, for I know well your trouth, & wel ye have shewed it vnto me; 1 'god thanke you' / and 28 therfore I have graunted it vnto you / and yet I doo. And I wyll that ye be lorde above me, and of my londe.'

1—1 omitted, F. orig.
2 Sire je veul quil soit asses ici si vous plaist, F. orig. h. iii. back.
3 Fol. 1. vi. back.
4 mais je ne cuide mye que vous me vueillez quierroyer moy ne mes barons de mon pays, F. orig.
5 pour desloyal, F. orig.
And when Reynawde vnderstode the curtoysie & the
goodnes of the kyng / he thanked hym ryght
moche / and he sent thruge all the londe / and made
com all the maysters masons, & carpenters, & many other
crafty men in suche werke / so moche that they were
well two hundred, beside the labourers / and when all
his stuff was redy, he made theym to buylde there a
strong castell / wherof ye grete hall was first made, & after
many chambres, & themne the grete towre. And when
ye douengeon was well closed, reynawde made after,
y® castell to be closed rou®de about wyth double walles,
lie & thick, of harde stones, & many toures vpon, that
it fered no sawtyng of no side of it ; & made to this
castell foure gates, & no more; & also he made ye
portcolisse, fawesebrayes, & barbacanes well defensable,
so that it myght be no better / when ye castell was
accomplysshed / reynawde & his brethern were therof
right glade / for it semed theym that they were assured
from their enmyes / And when kyng Yon knewe that
the castell was accomplysshed & full made, he went to
see it / And when reynawde wyst that the kyng cam /
he went agenst hym, & welcomed hym full honestly, &
made hym goo vp to the grete toure of the fortres,
by cause he shold see the compas of the castell rounde
aboute at his ease / for, fro the grete toure, men myght
see all. The kyng behelde well the fayr werke, that
was so playsaunt & so strong wythall, & the fayr
fountayne that was in ye myldes of it / And thenne he
called reynawde, & sayd to hym, 'Good frende reynawde,
how shall this castell be called / for me semeth
it ought well to have a noble name, for the grete
beaute wherof it is garnyshed'/ 'sire,' sayd reynawde,
'it hath no name yet / and yf it playse you ye shall
gyve it a name as it shall like you best' / 'certes,'
sayd the kynge, 'the place is praty and fayr / and
I wyll that it be called Montalban' / and thenne the
kynge made to be knownen through all his londe, _that_
who wold come dwelle & enhabyte in the sayd castell; _which_
whiche was as grete as a towne / he sholde be free of
all maner of dutyes the space of X yeres.

Thenne whan the folke of the countrey knewe the
fredome of the castell / ye sholde have see come 8
there / knyghtes, gentylmen, burgeys, yonge & olde /
yomen, & folke of all maner of craftes / so that this
castell was pepled of all maner of folke / that in all
yª countrey was no towne so wel pepled / for there 12
dwelled V hundred burgeys, all ryche men; & 3 there
were well L. taverners, 4 and XVC. men of crafte,
beside other folke. / And shortly to speke, montalban
was so well garnysshed, and so riche wythin a lityll 16
while, that it was grete mervell for to see / and wyte
it, that the kynge yon loved reynawde wyth so good a
love, for by cause of the grete worthyness of hym, that
he gaaf to hym valery & all the lordshype, that was 20
worth a thousande marke of good rente well set / when the barons sawe that the kynge loved reynawde
soo well, they were wroth for it, 1 & had enuye vpon
hym; 1 and thei cam to yª kynge & sayd to hym, 'sir, 24
take well good hede what ye doo / for montalban
is ryght stronge, & so is reynawde suche a knyght,
that none better is not in all the remenauent of the
worlde / and yf it happe by ony wyse that he be an 28
angred vpon you, he shall moowe lightely bere to you
& to all your folke over grete dommage.' 'Lordes,'
sayd the kynge, 'ye saye trouth / but reynawde 5 is so
gentyll & so courteys of hymself 6 that he shall never 32

---

1—1 omitted, F, orig. h. iv. back.
2—2 cleris, villaines et sergens, F, orig.
3 Fol. I, vii, back.
4—4 et cent homines des glise, et y auoit bien plus de cent
hommes de mestier, F, orig. h. iv. back.
5—5 a si gentil cueur, F, orig. h. iv. back.
CHAP. VI.

How the Castle Is Called Montalban.

thyne vpon no treyson nor to no shame in no maner of wyse.' 'sire,' sayd thenne an olde knyght, that stode before the kyng, 'If ye wyll beleve me, I shall 4 tell you how ye shall always be lorde & mayster above reynawde all the tymc of your liff.' 'Frende,' sayd the kyng, 'tell me this I praye you.' 'Syr,' sayd the knyght, 'gyve hym your suster to his wyfe, so 8 shall he be well maryed, for reynawde is well a noble gentylman of all four sides. And therby ye shall be assured that he shall never be angry ne wrothe wyth you' / 'frende,' sayd kyng Yon, 'ye gyve me good 12 counseyll / and I shall doo it as ye have counseyllled me / but I praye you that ye purchase this mater.' 'sire,' sayd the olde knyght, 'sith that I knowe your wil in this behalfe / I shall doo my best for to bryng 16 the mater to a conclusion effectuall' / after these wordes thus sayd, the kyngre returned agen to Bordews wyth ioye, devysynge wyth yede olde knyght of the matier wherof they had spoken togyder.1

20 2 The first daye of the moneth of Maye, reynawde went from his castelle of Montalban, to bordews for to see kyng Yon, & toke alarde his broder wyth hym / And whan the kyng Yon wyst of it, he cam to 24 hym agenst, and receyved reynawde wyth grete ioye, and kyssed hym full swetely / And after, the kyng toke hym by ye hande, & went vp togyder to ye hall of the palays, 3 and so forth to the chambre of paremente, 28 whiche was hanged right rychely; 3 and thenne the kyng called for the chesse / for to playe at it wyth reynawde. And as they were playing togyder, there cam in the olde knyght, that had charge of the kyng 32 for to make the maryage of reynawde & of the kyngys suster, whiche knyghte was called godefraye of molyns / and whan he was come afore the kyng, he sayd,

1 de la mette a effect, F. orig. h. iv. 2 Fol. I. viii.

3—3 omitted, F. orig.
Here, Lordes, what I wyll tell you / To nyghte, as I was in my bed a slepe / me semed that I sawe Reynawde, the sone of Aymon, that was set hyghe in a chayre, & all the peple of this royame enclined theymself byfore hym. And the kyng gaaf to hym a sperhawke, mewed full fayr & good. & me semed also that thenne came a grete bore 1 out of the wodes, 1 that made an horruble noyse, so that no body durst not approache nyghe hym / thre men assaylle hym / but they coude not hurt hym, & passed by them. 2 And when Reynawde sawe that, he lighted vpon bayarde, & cam agenste hym, & faughte wyth hym, & hurted hym sore / and thenne I woke out of my slepe / and when the olde knyghte had sayd so / thenne rose a doctour, that was called bernarde, the whyche was ryght wyse & a grete clerke, & sayd / 'fayr lordes, yf ye liste to herken, I shall expowne and declare vnto you the signyfycasion of this dreme / Wyte it that the chaier where Reynawde sat, betokeneth the castell that he hath buylded / & the peple that bowed themself towarde hym, signyfyeth the folke that are come dwelle there / And the yefte that the kyng gaaf to hym, betokeneth that the kyng yon shall gyve hym his suster to his wyff / that wylde bore signyfyeth som grete prynee, crysten or pagnym, that shall come to assayll kyng Yon / and the same is the sygnyficacyoun of the dreme of Godfray; and I, indygne for to speke / sholde counseyll that the maryage sholde be doon of Reynawde & of the suster of kyng yon. For they shall be thus bothe ryght well 4 & rychely 4 weded / And thenne the kynge answered, 'thou hast spoken well & wysely.' When the clerke had declared the betokenyng of the dreme of tholde knyght Godfray, the kyng yon sayd that, touchynghe this maryage, the thynge was

---

1–1 devers gironde, F. orig. h. iv.
2–2 mais il passa tout aultre, F. orig. h. iv.
3 Fol. I. viii. back.
4–4 omitted, F. orig.
well agreeable unto him. And when reynawde understode this word, he sayd to the kyng / 'sir, gramercy of your fayr yeft that ye doo to me / but & yf it playse you, ye shall have a lityll pacynce vnto the tyme that I have counseylled wyth my brethern & my cosyn Mawgys’ / 'Broder,' sayd alarde, 'ye have sayd yll. What refuse you of the kyng so grete a yeft as he 8 gyveth you now; yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall fulfyll ye kinges wyll incontyne / for to me & to my brethern it shall playse well / And when the kyng gaaff you not his suster / but a simple damoysell, yet oughte 12 you to beleve hym & doo after his wyll’ / 'brother,’ sayd reynawde / 'it is not the firste tyme that ye have gyven to me good counseylly & true / and I promyse you I shall doo it, sith that ye doo counseyll me so’ / and 16 thenne reynawde torned hymself towarde the kyng, & sayd to hym / 'Sir, I am all togyder redy to doo all that1 ye wyll’ / and thenne reynawde rose vp, and the kynge toke hym by the hande / and made his suster to 20 be affyau(ced vnto hym.

Thenne when the maryage was made accorded, and made sure of the one parte / & of thother, the kyng Yon cam 2to the chamber of his suster / and fonde her besi aboute a penouncell of a spere / that she made full fayr for the knyghte Reynamde, but she durst not tell it. The kyng salued her as sone as that he sawe her / and the noble mayd rose vp anone agenst her brother, 28 & made him due reverence ryght manerly. ‘Fayr suster,’ sayd the kyng; 'I have doo marye you well & highly;’ when the pucell vnderstode hym / she began to chaunge her colour, & bowed her body to hym, and 32 sayd no worde of a longe whyle / And when she had the power for to speke, she sayd to the kyng her broder / 'Syr, to whom have you gyven me?’ ‘Fayr

1 voestre vouloir et commandement, F. orig. h. v. back.
2 Fol. K. i,
suster,' sayd the kyng, 'I have gyven you vnto the best knyghte of the worlde. It is Reynawde / the sone of Aymon, the noble knyght & valyaunt? / Whan the noble damoysell vnderstode that it was to Reynawde 4 to whom her brother had maryed her, she was ryght glad of it / For she loved Reynawde of a grete love, and sayd to y« kyng / 1 'Syr, I wyll doo wyth all my veraye herte your co??aunderaente & your wyll'1 / Thenne the kyng toke her by the hande and broughte her to the palays, and sayd to Reynawde afore all his barons, 'Holde here, worthy knyghte2 Reynawde, I gyve you my suster to your wyff & spouse.' 'Syr,' sayd 12 Reynawde, 'a thousande gramercys of so fayr a yefte that ye gyve to me presently;3 For it apperteyneth not so grete a yefte to so poure a knyghte as I am' / Thenne toke Reynawde the pucell, & fyaujced her / and sware. 16 And the kynge wolde make no taryenge therat, but toke the pucelle by the hande / and broughte her to the chyrche well honourably. And the bysshop of Bordews wedded them / and whan Reynawde had his wyff 20 espoused / 4he sente for his brethern and for his cosin Mawgys, that were at 5Montalban, the whiche made grete ioye / and made all montalban for to be hanged wyth ryche tapyssery / And 6theyme they mounted their 24 horses all covered wyth sendall, and wente to Bordews / and met wyth Reynawde and his wyff by the waye, 7where as grete ioustynge was made afore the ladyes7 / And after the ioustynge was doon, they came all to 28 Montalban / and whan they were com there, the ioye began to be grete in the castell, as god had descended there / For to saye trouth viij dayes lasted the feste, and many grete yeftes were presented and gyven to the 32

1—1 Sire je vucil ce que vous plaist, F. orig. h. v. back.
2 omitted, F. orig. 
3 a present, F. orig. h. v. back.
4 il la mena a ses freres et a son cousin mawgis, F. orig. h. v.
5 au chastel de Montaiban, F. orig. h. v. 
6 fol. K. i. back.
7—7 la ou lont faisoit moult belle joustes, F. orig. h. v.
CHAP. VII.] OF THE MARRIAGE OF REYNAWDE. 155

lady / And whan the feste had endured as longe as I tell you / The kynges Yon wente agen to Bordews, right glad of the mariage / that he had made of Reynawde and of his suster. For he thoughte well that Reynawde sholde helpe hym agenste all men: and he sayd trouthe / For after that the maryage was ones made, there was noo baron in all Gascoyn that durste loke vppe, and 8 yet there were some that wolde not^1 doo their devoyre to the kyng / but Reynawde made theym well come forth for to doo the kyngis comaunderment accordyng to theyrr ligeaunce, wolde they or nght. For Reynawde was both loved and doubted throuthe all ye londe of Gascoyn / But now leveth here the history to speke of Reynawde and of his bretherne & of Mawgys, And retorneth to speke of Charlemagne, that wente to saynt Iames in Galyce for to doo pennaunce for his synnes.

CHAPTER VII.

¶ How the kynges Charlemagne made a vyage to saynte Iames in Galice / And how at his comyng agen he knew how Reynawde and his bredern were in the royame of gascoyn in a right strong castell called Montalban / And how Charlemagne sente worde to kynges Yon of Gascoyn that he sholde yelde to hym his enmyes; 2 that is to wyte, Reynawde, Alarde, Guycharde, & Rycharde, the sones of Aymon, and in caas that he wolde not, he sholde com besiege hym in his lande afore X monethes came atte an ende. Wherof the kynges Yon answered that he wolde doo

1 nat, in text orig.
2-2 cest assauoir regnault et ses freres, F. orig. h. v.
3 Fol. K, ii.
noo thyng for hym in this behalve / And how after that the kyng Charlemagne was returneth to Parys wyth his felawshyp / Rowlande, his nevew, arryved at Parys, the whiche the kyng made knyghte / and after he sente hym to reyse a sege afore Coleyn, that a sarrasyn had besieged that was called Escoufrawde, y which Rowlande con- quered / And after sheweth how Reynawde won the crowne of kyng Charlemagne / for the goode remynge that his horse bayarde made at Parys. ¶ Capitul[u]m vij. 12

N owes sheweth the history that Charlemagne was at Parys, and cam to hym a devocyon for to goo in pylgrymage to saynt Iames in Gales. And soo he departed oute of Parys, and toke in his company Oger the dane & the duk Naymes of bavyre, and many other barons and grete lordes / Whan they were vpon their waye, they dyde soo moche by there iourneys that they cam to saynt Iames in Galyce. And whan they were arryved there / The kyng wente streyght to the chirche, & offred afore the aulter ten marke of fyne golde. And whan he had offred and doon his devocyon / he toke on his waye agayne, and came wyth his felawshyp to Bordews / And in his comyng thider, he loked over the ryver of gyronde, not ferre thens / And save the castelle of Mountalban, that was vpon a roche, soo fayr & so well made, & so well shette wyth fayr wallis, & thyeke in the forme, as I have tolde you afore / And whan Charlemagne sawe it, he behelde well vpon it a longe while, and thenne sayd, 'Ha, good lord, yonder is a fayr castell, stronge and well set / I 32

1—1 omitted, F. orig. 2 wan, in text orig.
see well that the kyng Yon\textsuperscript{1} hath made it of late / for it semeth yet to be all new; and it can be none other wyse, sith that he hath buyled it in suche a strong place / but that he thinke to make were to some body.' And thenne he called to hym a knyghte of the londe, & sayd to hym / 'tell me how ye calles that castell.' 'Syr,' sayd the knyghte, 'the name is Mount-
8 alban' / He had grete luste to speke / for yf he had kepeth his peas there had ben none other thynge of it / But he sayd suche wordes that afterwarde bare grete harme to hym selfe and to many other. For he tolde
12 to the emperour that reynawde and his brethern, the sones of Aymon, had do make that castell / and was called Mountalban / And how the kyng Yon had gyven to Reynawde his suster to his wyf.

W\textsuperscript{1} han Charlemagne vnderstode thyse wordes, he was ryght angry for it and wrothe, And wyste not what he sholde saye / and helde hym selfe a grete whyle that he spake not / and when he had mused a
20 lityll / he sayd to his folke / 'fayre lordes, I shall telle you a wonder; For I have founde my enmyes in this londe, that ben the foure sones of Aymon. Now vp, Ogyer, and you, duke Naymes / lighte on horsebacke
24 incontynente, and seke so moche kyng Yon that ye fynde hym, and telle hym in my behalve that he yeld to me agen the foure sones of Aymon, that ben myn enmyes, the whych he hath wythdrawen and borne
28 oute agenste me. And that he fynde me knyghtes for to brynge theym only into my londe / for I am delibered, sith that I have fonde theym, for to hange theym or fleye theym quycke. And yf he wyll not do
32 soo / defye you hym on my behalfe, And telle hym that wythin this thre or foure monethes I shall be wythin his londe of Gascoyn wyth all my ooste / and I shall destroye and overthowe all his townes and castelles,

\textsuperscript{1} de gascogne, F. orig. h. vi. back.  \textsuperscript{2} Fol. K. ii. back.
and yf I maye take hym, I shall punyssh hym wythou	
to ony mercy’ / ‘Syr,’ sayd Ogyer, ‘we shall doo your commaundemente, but we shall 1take wyth vs Lances and Hostes, the whiche ben prue and sage’ / 4 and Charlemagne sayd that he was contente; and incontynente they wente on theyr waye, And wente aboute for to vnderstode where kynge Yon was / And soo longe they asked after hym, that they founde hym atte 8 Montalban, evyn atte the foote of the roche / For the kynge Yon wente agen Bourdews, and Reynawde conveyed hym. When Ogyer sawe Reynawde and the kynge Yon, he knew theym well / And incontynente 12 he salued the kynge / and sayd to hym / ‘Syre, god gyve you good liffe and longe’ / And the kynge rendered to hym his salute, and after sayd to hym, ‘Of whens be you?’ 2‘syre,’ said Ogyer, ‘We ben of the swete 16 Fraunce / And also we be sente vnto you / And we are of Charlemagne folke. Now here vs, yf it playse you.’ 3‘Syr,’ sayd the kynge, ‘ye be ryght welcome. Now telle on what ye wyll sayo’ / 4‘Sire,’ sayd Ogyer, ‘the 20 emperour Charlemagne sendeth to you worde by vs, that ye yelde agen vnto hym his enmyes ye whiche ye have withdrawen in to your landes, and that ye sende to hym a hundred of your men for to conduytte and 24 brynge theym wyth hym vnto Fraunce. And yf ye refuse to doo this / 5We, by his commaundemente, deffy ye of his behalve 5/ And wythin thyse thre monethes he shall be in Gascoyn / and shall take all your londes, 23 and shall bege you wythin the cyte of Bordews / And yf he take you, he shall punyssh ye in your body. Now have we sayd our message, And yf it playse you, ye shall gyve us an answere.’

1 Fol. K. iii. 2 beau sire, F. orig. h. vi. 3 seigneurs, F. orig. h. vi. 4 doux roy Yon. F. orig. h. vi. 5—3 Il vous deflie de sa part, F. orig. h. vi.
CHAP. VII.] HOW JOHN REFUSES THE COMMAND OF CHARLEMAGNE. 159

' Ogyer, sayd the kynge / ' It is well trouth that I have reteyned the foure sones of Aymon, whiche ben worthy knyghtes; and soo have I reteyned theym, 4 by cause they ben prue and valyaunte in armes, and also that they have holpen and socoured me atte my grete nede / For I was dysherited and vndoon for ever yf they had not ben / And for the grete goode that they 8 have doon to me, I have gyven my suster Germayne to Reynawde for his wyff / And therfore I sholde be to cruell, and eke well myschaunte, yf I sholde now take theym in to the handes of theyr enmyes mortalle, syth 12 that they have doon to me soo good servyse / I have lever for to be dyshereted, and deye an evyll deth, than to yelde theym, or suffire that they have ony harms nor shame to my power / For namly the kynge Charlemagne sholde thenne holde me for a foole and well nyce / And therfore, Ogyer, yf it playse you, ye shall telle the emperor from my behalve, that I shal forsake firste all my londe and my royame, than I sholde deliver theym in his handes / And this is myn answer yet / Thenne when the kynge had sayd thus, Reynawde spake after and sayd, 'Ogyer, I merveyll Gretly of the kynge Charlemagne, that wyll not leve vs in peas / He caste vs oute of Fraunce poure and dys- hertyd, wherof I am ashamed / and as ye knowe, I wolde be reformed wyth rayson to the sayenge of his 28 barons; but it playseth hym not / And soo he casted vs oute of Mountenfourde shamfully / so that we wyste not where we sholde go / And yet it suffyseth hym not, but he wyll cast vs oute of the londe of Gascoyn, 32 wherof he dooth grete synne. For yet am I redy for to doo his wyll in rayson and ryght / And I telle you well, that yf he refuse this by hys pryde, I wyll well

1 Fol. K. iii. back. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. 3 et loyualment, F. orig. h. vii. back.
that he knowe that / I and my brethern are not suche that shall be taken as lyghtly as he weneth. And I promise you, that or ever he hathe vs / I shall make hym more than ten tymes angry and wrothe / For this 4 that 1 he dooth / he dooth it but of pryde / Ogyer, I wyll well that kynge Charlemagne knowe, that the kynge 2 Yon of Gascoyn hath gyven to vs leve to buylde a castell that hath to name Montalban / the whiche is 8 stronge and imprenable, and yet I have knyghtes wyth me that shall not faylle me at my nede. And tell to kynge Charlemagne that sith I can not have noo peas nor accorde wyth hym, that I shall doom to hym all the 12 dommage and harme that shalle be to me possyble for to doo.'

"Reynawde," sayd Ogyer, 'ye speke not wysely; wene ye to abasshe vs wyth wordes / ye shall 16 not so; but whan ye shall see the oost and the grete power of Charlemagne togyder, ye shall be sore abasshed, and atte the ende ye shall be full wrothe and sorry / 3 Ye knowe well that the emperour Charlemagne made 20 you knyghte, and ye slewe his nevew Berthelot / and therfore thynke not to fynde peas towardde hym / And ye wene to be assured by cause the kynge Yon hath made you to close a castell / but well I wyll that he 24 knowe that he shall repente for it full sore / For afore two monethes be paste we shall be in the myddes of his londe, and shall dystroye all his royame / And we shall brenne bothe castelles and townes." 'Ogyer,' 28 sayd Reynawd, 'I swere to you on my feyth, that whan kynge Charlemagne 4 shall be wyth his oost in this londe, 4 he shall wyshe hym selfe soone agayne in Fraunce wyth his folke. And whan ye shall see the 32 harde ioustyng and sharpe werre that I and my brethern shall make agenste hym / he and ye shall be sore

1 le roy, F, orig. h. vii. back. 2 Fol. K. iv. 3 Regnault, F, orig. 4-4 sera retournre en gascogne, F, orig. h. vii.
abasshed of it; and some of you speketh now hye, that when the dede shall come to preeff, he shall be full lowe' / 'Reynawde,' sayd then Ogyer, 'I wyll hide no 4 thynge from you / The kyng Charlemagne hath so grete a power / and is delibered for to besiege Bordews / and yf he maye take you, he shall punysshe you cruelly / now doo as ye wyll. I have tolde you all 1 my message, 8 and I goo agen to kyng Charlemagne'/ when he had sayd thise wordes, he returned towarde kyng Charlemagne, & shewed vnto hym what kyng Yon & reynawde had sayd / And when the kyng vnderstode 2 the same / he 12 shoke all for angre, & sayd / 'now shall it be seen how kyng Yon & Reynawde shall defende Gascoyn against me' / And thenne went forth charlemagne & passed the ryver of gyronde, and rode soo longe that he cam 16 to Paris; and the daye after, he called all his barons that they sholde com to him. And when they were all com / the kyng helde hys counseyll, & sayd to theim, 'Lordes, I have sent for you to telle you the grete 20 shame that the kyng Yon of gascoyn dooth to me. For he holdeth the foure sones of Aymon, 3 my mortell cannyes, in dyspyte of me, and ye knowe what dommage they have doon to me / for they slew my newv 24 Berthelot / I dyd banysshe theym oute of Fraunce; thenne made they the castell of Mountenforde wythin my londe / and I chassed theym oute of it. Now ben they in Gascoyn wyth the kyng Yon, that sayth he 28 shall defende theym agenste me, and he has gyven his suster to Reynawde / wherfore I praye you all that ye wyll helpe me that I be avenged.'

And when Charlemagn had sayd this, there was none of the barons that answered to hym ony worde, for they were wery of the werre. that they had

1 Fol. K. iv. back.
2 ses paroles que le roy Yon et Regnault luy mandoient, F. orig. h. vii.
3—3 omitted, F. orig. h. vii.
made soo long agenste Reynawde / ¹And Charlemagne
sawe that no body answered to hym no thinge / he
called to hym the duke Naymes & ogier the dane / and
the erle Gyuadellon / and sayd to theym / 'Lordes, ⁴
what counseylle doo you gyve to me in this matere?'
'Sir,' sayd the duke Naymes / 'yf ye wyll beleve me,
I shall gyve you goode counseyl / Suffre your ooste to
reste this fyve yeres / By cause that your folke is very ⁸
of the werre / so shall they reste theym selfe a lityll / 
And when thei shall be fresshe / thenne ²shall ye mow
make werre atte your wyll / for every man shall thenne
com to it wyth good wyll.' And when the emperour ¹²
vnderstode this counseyl he was sore an angred for it,
that he wente almost oute of his wyt. And as he
wolde have sayd agenst the duke Naymes, there cam
a yonge gentilman of grete beaulte / and broughte in ¹⁶
his company XXX. fayr sqyers, well arrayed.³ this
yonglynge cam to the palays, & wente vp / and when
he cam afore the emperour, he made his obeysaunce to
hym full courtoysly. 'Frende,' sayd the kyng, 'ye be ²⁰
ryght welcom ; what wynde brought you hider, & what
be you' / 'sire,' sayd the sqyer, 'I am called Row-
lande of bretayn, & I am the sone of your suster and
of the duke Myllon.' ²⁴

Theynne when Charlemagne vnderstode Rowlande
spéketh thus, he was right glad of hym, & toke
hym by the hande & kyssed hym many tymes, & sayd
to hym, 'ye be ryght welcom / I wyll that ye be made ²⁸
a knyghte to morow in ye mornynge, & ye shall
assaye yourself vpon Reynawde, the sone of Aymon.'
'Syr,' sayd Rowlande, 'I shall doo your commandem-
ment, & I promyse you / Reynawde shall not be spared ³²

¹ Et quant Charlemaigne, F. orig. h. viii. back.
² Fol. K. v.
³ et vit le damoisel emmy la court du palays et montre contremont les degraz. Et quant il fut au palays il sen vint devant l'empireur charlemaigne. F. orig. h. viii. back.
of me, and he shall not bere awaye no thyng of yours. He slewe me cosyn Berthelot, wherof I am right sory / and therfore I shall avenge his deth, yf I maye by ony manere / or elles Reynawde shall slee me / And in the mornynge the kyng Charlemagne dowbed his newe rowlande to a knyghte, wyth moche ioye and wyth grete honoure. and as the feste was a doynge / there came a messager that sayd to the emperour, Most hie Amessencrer arrives & moste puyssaunt prjaice / your men of Cologne, recommende theym ryght humbly to your goode grace, And they doo you to wyte that the sarrasyns have beseged theym, And have hurte theym ryght sore / For thesaracens they have brente and dystroyed alle the contree / wherfore they besche ye ryght humbly, that ye com for to helpe and socoure theym yf it be your playsure / Or elles they are but deed / and vtterly dystroyed.'

And whan the emperour vnderstode thyse tydynges he bowed his [head] toward the erthe, and begunne to thyuke a lityll / And whan Rowlande sawe his vnclen that mused thus in hym selfe / he sayd vnto hym / Wherof be ye soo dysmayed / Gyve me some parte of your men, And I shall goo reye the sege of Cologne' / And whan the emperour herde Rowlande speke soo, he was ryght gladd of it, and embraced and kyssed hym full swetly, and sayd to hym / Fayr nevew / blessyd be the hour that ever ye were borne / For I knowe for certeyn that ye shalle kepe me fro peyne and traveylle, and in you shall be my rest and my conforte / And I wylle that ye goc there / And thenne he gaaff hym XV. thousande men of armes well horsed & well arrayed / And whan they were well appareyled / Rowlande lighted vpon his horse and sayd to his vnclen the kyng / Syre, I commende you to god. 'Fayr nevewe,' sayd Charlemagne, 'I have

1–1 Droit emperceur, F. orig. h. viii. 2 Fol. K. v. back. 3 Sire, F. orig. 4–4 omitted, F. orig.
They arrive at Cologne,

and meet certain Saracens carrying away prisoners and cattle.

The French fall upon them,

and slay them, recovering all the prisoners and cattle.

The host of the pagans fly, pursued by the folk of Charlemagne.

taken to you my men in your kepynge / I praye you that ye wyll kepe theym well / and doo so moche that ye gete worshyp / and god be wyth you'1 / 'sire,' sayd Rowlande, 'be not dysmayed, for at my retorn, 2 ye shall knowe how that we have doo.' And whan he had sayd this worde / he teke leve of his vnkle / and wente on his wyse wyth his folke / and they rode so longe by theyr Iourneys that they came to cologne all by nyghte / and put theyr bussliement nyghe the oost / And as thei were nyghe the oost they met wyth certen sarrasins that cam 3 agayn wyth a grete proye of oxen and shepe, and of men and of wymen that were theyr prysoners / And made theym suffer grete martyrdom / When the frenshemen sawe theyr enmyes / They sayd in this maner / 'Lorde, our lorde hath sente vs hyther. Here ben the traytoures sarrasyns / that soo sore we have desired for to fyghte wyth theym 4 / Now shall it be seen what we shall doo to theym / Putte vs amonge theym / for atte this hour they shall be overthrown.' / Whan they hadde spoken ynoughe, they made none other taryenge / but spored their horses and ranne vpon the sarrasyns by grete streynghete, Soo that in a lityll while they had theym dyscom-fyted soo sharply, that they slewe theym all, And recovered all the prysoners and the bestes. 5 And shortly to speke, Whan the ooste of the pagynmes herde the noyse of the frenshemen 6 they moved theym selfe / and lighted vpon their horses / and vpon the frenshemen. And whan the frenshe men sawe theym come, they wente agayne to their bussliement aswell as they coude / 6 And beganne to chasse theym.

1 amen, F. orig. h. viii. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. h. viii. 3 Fol. K. vi. 4—4 que tant avons defirez, F. orig. I. i. back. 5 incontinent, F. orig. 6 et les sarazins, F. orig. I. i. back.
When Rowlande sawe that it was tyme to set vppon / he yssued oute of his busschemente wyth his folke, and wente and smote vpon the sarra-
syns so harte that he casted to the erthe a grete parte of theym. ¶ And to speke shortly, the bataylle begunne soo cruell and soo fell that it was pyte to see / For ye sholde have seen soo many speres broken / and soo many sheeldes in two / and so many sarrasyns liyng deed on the grounde, soo that wyth peyne men myght go by fore the dead men that laye so thyck one vpon thoder / & Rowlande spored his horse wyth ye®& spores, & went & smote a sarrasin that was a kyng & the chyef of y® sarrasins oost, with so grete myght that he overthrew him to erthe, 3but he slewe hym not of that stroke / but taryed vpon hym, & gaaff to hym suche a stroke wyth his swerde vpon his helme, 4that he made hym all a stonyed.*

And when Eowlande sawe hym so evyll arayed, he bowed hymselfe, and toke hym for his prysoner, and dyd set hym agen vpon his horse & brought hym wyth hym. and when the sar-
rasins sawe their lorde taken, & sawe y® woundre of armes that Rowlande made, & of the frenshmen / they putte theymselfe to flighte full shamfully. And whan Rowlande sawe the sarrasins flee thus, he cryed wyth a highe voys / 'Lorde, goo after theym / for they flee all / and yf they scape vs / it shall be to vs a grete blame towards myn uncle the kyng Charlemagne, and we shall beholden for cowardes / wherfore I praye you lete not one escape, for ye shall have theym lightly, sith that I holde in my handes theyr kyng' / Whan the frenshemen herde Rowlande speke thus, they sayd, 3free knyghte, be not dysmayed of no thynge / for we make noo doubte that none of theym shall scape, but

1 grant pitie, F. orig. 
2 moult cruellement, F. orig. I. i. back. 
3 Fol. K. vi. back. 
4—4 quil luy fist chaucceler les dens cn la gorge, F. orig. I. i. back.
they shall be taken or slayn' / 'Lordes,' sayd thence the kyng sarrasin that Rowlande had taken, that had to name Escorfawde / 'They ben all myn / I praye you that ye kylle theym not, for they ben all ynoughge dyscomfyted / sith that ye have taken me, but gyve theym tryews. And have me to kyng Charlemagne, ye it playse you / And ye maye doo so moche that Charlemagne pardonne me the grete offence that I have doon to hym, I shall holde from hensforthe all my herytage of hym, and yet all my lignage shall be obeys-

saunte vnto his wyll, & of this ye maye beleve me.' 'By my hede,' sayd rowlande / 'ye speke curtoysly' / 12 '& by my feyth,' sayd Naymes, 'Escorfawde sayth well, & we shall do so' / they gaaf tryews to y' sarasins, & toke their way agen to charlemagn, & brought escor-

faude wyth them, & so longe thei rode that they cam 16 to paris / and 1 whan the kyng Charlemagne knewe that his newewe Rowlande was come agayne to Parys, and that he had dyscomfyted the sarrasins, and broughte prysoner wyth hym kyng Escorfawde, he was ryght 20 gladde of it / And anone he mounted on horsbacke, and came agenste his newewe Rowlande / And whan Rowlande sawe hym, he lighted downe from his horse / and wente & caste hym selfe to the feete of kyng 24 Charlemagne 2his vnkle.2 And anone he made hym to ryse vp / and kyssed hym swetly / And thenne Rou-

lande sayd to hym, 'Syre, here I deliver vnto you the kyng Escorfawde that we have taken. He hathe tolde 28 vs that he shall make hym selfe a crysten man / And that he and his lygnage shall holde theyr londes of you / ye ye wyll pardonne hym youre ylle wylle' / 'Neuwe,' sayd the kyng Charlemagne, 'there ys noo 32 truste in hym / And therfore I wyll kepe me from hym.' Thenne commaunded the emperour that / Escorfawde sholde be broughte to pryson / and he sholde be well

1 Fol. K. vii. 2-2 omitted, F. orig.
kepte, And that he sholde have all his wyll of mete 
and drynke / And after, whan Escorfaude was put in 
pryson / The kynge Charlemagne dyde calle to hym 
the duke Naymes, and sayd to hym, 'What thyneke 
you by my nevew Rowlande? What dyde he whan 
the batayll was assembled' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke 
Naymes, 'of Rowlande nedeth not to speke. For ever /
8 
sith that god was borne of the vyrgyne Marye, suche a 
kynght was not seen / For he alone hathe overcomen 
the sarrasines1 by his grete prowes / And yf he hadde 
a horse that myght bere hym whan he were armed / I 
12 
swere by my feyth that ye sholde never have enmye / 
but that he sholde breyne hym to your mercy by force 
of armes /2 Soo moche he is prue and valyaunte.'2 The 
kyng Charlemagne sware by his hede that he was 
16 ryght gladde therof / 'But tell me,' sayd he to 3 the 
duke Naymes / 'where myght men fynde suche a good 
horse as ye speke of' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke, 'yf ye 
wyll beleve me / I shall gyve you goode counseyll /
20 Make to be cryed wyth a trompette vpon Mounte mar-
tyr, that ye wyll see renne all the horses of your ooste. 
And he that shall renne beste, shall wynne your crowne 
of golde, And fyve hundred marke of fyne silver, and 
24 a hundred rolles of silke / And all thus ye shall move 
know the beste horse of your royame / And whan ye 
shall have seen hym / bye hym / & gyve hym to your 
nevew Rowlande / And after, gyve leve to all your 
28 barons vnto the feste of saynt Iohn the baptyste nexte 
comyng / 'Duk Naymes,' sayd the emperour Charle-
magne, 'ye gyve me goode counseyll / And I shall do 
thus as ye have devysed.' Thenne the kynge made 
32 to be cryed vpon Mounte marter eynyn thus as duk 
Naymes had devysed / And dyde make the lystes for 
the horses to renne in / And whan this was doon, he 

1 et desconfits par sa prouesse, F. orig. I. ii. back.
2--2 omitted, F. orig. I. ii. back. 3 Fol. K. vii. back.
made his crowne to be set atte the ende of the listes / and also the fyve hundred marke of sylver, and the hundred rolles of sylke / And this hangynge, a yoman wente to his countrey in gascoyn / and as he passed 4 throughe Montalban, he recounted to Reynawde & to Mawgys all the thynge that men wolde doo at Parys, And how Rowlande was come to the courte / And how he had dyscomfyted Escorfawde the kynge sarrasin, and 8 how ye kynge Charlemagne wolde have the best horse of all his royame for to gyve hym to Rowlande, and shewed the sayd yoman the pryce that the kynge had set. And also how the emperour Charlemagne gadred 12 his ooste for to come to mountalban, And how the course of the horses sholde be made atte saynt Iohns tyme nexte comyng.

Thenne whan reynawde vnderstode thys worde, he 16 began to laugh, & after sayd to maugis, 'cosin, by all hallowes of god, Charlemagn ne shall see the beste torne of the worlde, but he shall not knowe that I shall have hys crowne. For I wyll go there vpon Bayarde, 20 to see how he shall prove hym selfe atte thys tyme' / 'Syre,' sayd Mawgys, 'ye shall not doo so yet; but yf ye wyll goo there, suffre that I bere you company / soo shall you be more sure / and have with vs knyghtes 24 well armed.' 'Gladly,' sayd Reynawde, 'syth that ye wyll soo.' Whan it was tyme for to meve towarde Parys / Reynawde called to hym Alarde, Guycharde, and Rycharde 2 his bretherne, 2 and 2Mawgys2 his cosyn, 28 and sayd vnto theym / 'It is tyme that we goo to Parys / Take knyghtes chosen, and putte our selfe in the waye.' 'Syre,' sayd his bretherne, 'your commaundemente shall be doon' / And whan they were 32 all appareylled / Reynawde came to his wyff, and sayd to her, 'Lady, I praye you that ye doo kepe well my castell / and I shall come soone agen' / 'Syre,' sayd

1 Fol. K. viii. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. I. ii.
she, 'commande knyghtes that they ben not oute of the waye / & I prouyse you, yf the kyng Yon my broder can hym selue, he sholde not come inne / nor none other, vnto the tyme that ye be come agen / Now goo god be wyth you' / Thenne toke Reynawde leve of hys wyff / and sette hym selue towarde the waye, & his folke, and went to Parys. And when they were 8 come to Orleaunce, and hadde paissed the ryver of Loyre, men asked theym of whens they were. And Mawgys, that spake for theym all, answered, 'Lorde, we ben Bournoys, that go to Parys for to assayre our horses for 12 to wynne the pryce that the kyng hath set vpon, yf god wyll so consente.' Thenne by fayre wordes they passed forth, & so longe they rode that they came to Melym, but they entred not wythin the towne, but lodged 16 themself in a grete valey, and there they soiuerned themy selfe & their horses foure dayes.

Thenne whan cam the evyn of saynt Iohn, Reynawd called Mawgys, & sayd to hym, 'What shall 20 we doo? to morowe shall be the courses of the horses / wherfore I saye that it is covenable that we goo lye to nyghte at Parys' / 'Cosin,' sayd / Mawgys, 'ye saye well 2and wysely. Now lete me doo a lityll & playse you.'

24 Thenne toke Mawgys an herbe, & stamped it vpon a stone wyth the pomell of his swerde / and tempered it wyth water, and rubbed bayarde therwyth, soo that anone he becam all white, in suche wyse that they that 28 had seen hym before, knewe hym not / and after he enoynted Reynawde wyth an noyntement that he bare always wyth hym, & incontynent he becam to the age of 3xx. yeres / And whan he had thus atorned Rey- 32 nawde and his horse / he toke hym, & broughte hym afore 4his brethern and afore the other knyghtes, 4

When they reach Orleans, men ask them from whence they came.
Mawgys replies, they are Bournoys, and are going to Paris to run their horses there.
Mawgys takes a herb, and rubs Bayard with it, so that he becomes quite white;
and also anoints Reynawde with an ointment, which makes him look like a youth.

1 Fol. K. viii. back. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. I. iii. back.
3 quinze ans, F. orig. I. iii. back.
4-1 les autres chevaliers freres de Regnault, F. orig. I. iii. back.
sayd to theym / 'Lordes, telle me how thynke you; have I not well transfygured hym / shall not they maye com agen and not be knownen? Beholde bayarde, how he is waxen whyte, he shall lese the pryce for age.'

Thenne when the barons sawe reynawde & bayarde so torned / they began to laughe, & were grety merveyllled how Mawgys had thus dysfygured theym / Whan Mawgys had transfygured reynawde & bayarde, & mawgys vpon morell, and toke leve of their folke / But reynawde atte his departyieng sayd to his bretherne / 'have no feere for me, For I shall not be knownen, yf god wyll' / Thenne wente Reynawde on his waye; and his folke wepte for hym, for Reynawd wente in such a place where he had many enmyes / For yf Charlemagne had come take hym, all the golde of the worlde had not saved hym / but he sholde have caused hym to be hanged / And whan they departed, Alarde sayd to Mawgys / 'I praye you for god that ye have my broder Reynawde for recomended / for yf it were not for the truste that I have to you, I sholde not suffre that he sholde goo to Parys, for all the golde of spayne.' And thenne Reynawde and mawgys wente on theyr way. Now shall I leve a lityll to speke of theym, And shall retorne to the kyng Charlemayn, that was at Parys wyth his folke.

Charlemagne sawe his barons that were all com / and thenne he called the duke Naymes, Ogier and Fouques, that they take an hundred knyghtes well armed, & goo toward a the yeare of Orleans / and beware that none goo by, but that ye knowe theyr names, & that they ben well advysed / for

1 Lors se mist a la wye tout en plourant et ses gens plourient aussi, F. orig. 1. iii. back.
2 Fol. L. i.
I doubt me sore of Reynawde that he shall come / for he weneth well hymselfe to be over subtyll / and yf it cam in his hede, he shokde come soone hytherwarde / 

4 'Syre,' sayd the barons, 'we shall doo gladly your commandemente; & yf reynawde be soo folishe that he come hitherwarde, he shall not scape vs / but he shall be deed or taken, & broughte a fore you' / And 8 themne they take leve of kynge Charlemagne, & wente to make them redy in their horses / and after mounted on horse backe wyth an hundred knyghtes well armed, and rode the waye towards Orlcaumce / and arrested 12 them selfe in the myddes of the waye, foure myles oute of Parys; and there they were a longe while that noc body passed by, and endured grete hunger and thurste. And whan the duke Naymes sawe that they were there for noughte, he sayd to Ogyer, 'Syre ogyer, by my feyth the kyng Charlemagn maketh vs lyke fooles / and holdeth vs for nyce & musardes, that he maketh vs to tari here aboute noughte.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogier, 'ye saye 20 trouth / And god confounde me yf I tary ony lenger' / And whan they wolde have comyn agayn aback, the duke Faymes sawe com a ferre 3 Reynawde and Mawgys / Thenne sayd Naymes to Foulques of moryllon / 'yonder 24 I see comyn two men on horsbacke.' And whan Foulques sawe theym / he cryed wyth a highe voys / 'by my feyth, here cometh reynaude / Now can he not scape by no maner / but he shall be hanged' / 'By my 28 feyth,' sayd the duke naymes, 'ye saye trouth / For the horse that cometh afore is moche like Bayarde, the horse of Reynawde, yf he were of a nother colour' / When foulques understode these wordes, he sette hande 32 to his swerde, and cam agenste Reynawde ryght nere;
and when he was well nyrge theym / he behelde theym / And whan he sawe that it was not Reynaude, he was all abasshed, & drewe hym selfe abacke. And Reynawde and Mawgis rode forthe their wayes. And 4 when the duke Naymes sawe that they cam forth / he wente agenste theym, and called Mawgis, and sayd to hym, 'What ben ye / and whether goo ye?' 'Sire,' sayd Mawgis, 'I am borne of Peron / & my name is 8 Iousser.' 'Frende,,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'can not ye telle me noothying of reynawde the sone of Aymon, the worthy knyghte?' 'Ye,' sayd Mawgis, 'by my feth / he hath ryden wyth vs two dayes, and he is not passed 12 two myles behynde vs' / At that howr Reynawde spake not / thenne sayd Naymes, 'what is he that is wyth you, that holdeth hym soo styll, and that sayth no worde / I beleve that he hath some evyll thoughte' / 16 'sire,' sayd Mawgis, 'it is my sone / and he can not speke no fre?«she / For he hath be norished in the grete Bretayn' / Whan the duke Naymes vnderstode this / he sayd to Reynawde / 'tell me, vassall, knowest 20 thou noo tidynges of Reynawde, the sone 1 of Aymon?' and Reynawde answered to hym in this wyse: 2 'By my feyth, noo poynte fre?«she, graunt Bretayyne horse, a Parys cloyth ganera my.' 2 And contrefaytted thus his 24 langage / by cause the duke Naymes sholde not knowe hym.

Thenne whan the duke Naymes herde Reynawde speke thus evyll / he began to laughe / And after 28 sayd to hym agayn / 'a hundred devylles have well taught the to speke so good fre?«she. 3 Vassayll, I wote not what you sayste, thou arte more like a foole than a bysshop.' And soo Naymes lete hym in peas / And 32

1 Fol. I, ii.
2—2 ymy seay poin francoys en bretant, parler cheval a paris, couronne roy non draps horniz gaigner my, F. orig. I. iv, back.
3 Sire, F. orig. I, iv, back.
And 111 him,—., feet, 111 For and by, 2

173

And

CHAP. VII.] HOW MAWGYS BINDS THE FEET OF BAYARD.

thenne Reynawde and Mawgys rode so longe that they cam to Parys, 1
tyme ynouge for to doo their enterprise 1 / And atte the entre of the towne / they mette

4 wyth an evyll rybawde / to whom god gyve yll adventure, For he knewe Reynawde / And as sone as he sawe hym, 3 he beganne to crye wyth a highe voyes, 'here come Reynawde ye sone of Aymon.' When the

8 folke vnderstode the crye / they wente that waye. And

when the yll rybawde sawe com so many folke / he was yet more hardy than he was afore, and wente afore the other / and toke Reynawde by the brydell of Bayarde / 12

And whan Bayarde sawe that / he lifted his forfote and

smote the Rybawde upon the breste / that he braste the herte in hys belye / and casted hym all deed to the erth /

And whan the peple sawe the stroke / they beganne all

16 to laughe / And Bayarde wente forthe, and Mawgys, after that they were not knownen, And passed thorough the towne to the olde market / And whan they were comen there afore the lodges / they founde all the

20 Innes full / wherof reynawde was merveyled. And

soo they lighted att a cordueners house / that was of the devylles syde / For by hym was almoste Reynawde, and Mawgys taken / and delyvered to Charlemagne, 24 that hys bretherne sholde not have 2 holpen hym of noo thynge. When they were lighted and lodged where it is sayd / And that theyr horses were well dressed, Mawgys dyde doo make a bedde for Reynawde, 28 and toke a thredye of sylke / and cered it well, and came to bayarde, and bounde hym the movess of the feete there wyth all well streyghte. And the ooste behelde well this / and after sayd to hym / 'Why have

32 you thus bounde this horse / he shall not conne well goo / But telle me, what knyghte is he that oweth the horse / For yf he hadde of age more than he hath I sholde wene to knowe hym / For he is moche like

1—1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. L. ii, back.
Reynawd the sone of Aymon. 'Syre,' sayd Mawgys, 'I have bounde this horse thus by cause he wyl fyghte / and the yoman that rydeth vpon hym is my sone / Nowe have I telled you that that ye have asked me.' 4 'Certes,' answered the ooste, 'your sone is a fayre felawe / but I / belewe ye mocke me.' 4 Now here a grete mysadventure that happed to Reynawde & to mawgys. For thus as mawgys spake wyth his ooste, he 8 named reynawde. 'Ha, syre,' sayd thenne the ooste, 'Ye have sayd ynoughe / ye node not for to hyde it ony more. It ys reynawde, wythoute ony doubte, that slewe Berthelot, the neve we of the kynge, wyth a 12 chesse borde / I shall telle it to the kynge afore that I slepe.'

And when Reynawde understode this / he shooke alle for angre, And rose from his place, and toke 16 his swerde, and sayd, 'Hooste, ye have myssayed. For I never sawe reynawde / nor I wote not what he is? / ' Holde your peas,' sayd the ooste, 'I knowe you well / By my hede, ye are reynawde the sone of Aymon' / 20 And when he hadde sayd thysse wordes, he wente oute of his howse / And when reynawde sawe that / he wente a goode paas after hys oost, And smote hym soo grete a stroke wyth his swerde vppon his 1 hede, that he 24 clove hym vnto the teeth. And when mawgys sawe this, he was right sory for it / and sayd to reynawde / 'What have you doon / have you loste your wytte? 2 but yf god thynke vpon vs, we ben loste and ashamed.' 28 'I can not doo therto,' sayd reynawde / 'But how somever it gooth, he hath his reward.' And thenne mawgys cam forthwyth to the stable, and saddled Bayarde, And made reynawde to mounte vpon hym / 32 And after hymselfe lighted vppon morrell / and wente oute of the lodges. And when the wyffe and the

1 Fol. L. iii.
2 si dieu ne pence de nous, F. orig. I. iv.
children of the ooste sawe thys that Reynawde hadde done / they beganne to crye. But Reynawde and mawgys were soone oute of theyr waye, soo that none wyste where that they were become / And wente and put theymselfe amongethe other in the preesse / and they were never knowne. But bayarde wente halyngge / and wente to the gate of saynte Martyne / and there they bode all the nyghte. And whan it was daye, they wente wyth the other to the chirche, where the kynge herde hyse masse. And whan the servyse was doon, the kynge came oute of the chirche / and mounted vpon his horse / and all the other barons wyth hym, and came vpon the ryver of Sayne in to the medowe. And Reynawde & Mawgys wente wyth theym / but bayarde wente ryghte sore halyngge. And whan the kynge was come there / he commaunded that his crowne sholde be sette atte the ende of the lystes, And the fyve hundred marke of sylver, And also the C clothes of sylke / And incontynente the duke Naymes and Ogyer dyde as the kynge hadde comnaunded. And whan all was appareylled / Thenne sholde ye have seen knyghtes lepe a horse backe, For every man trowed to have goten the pryce. And the kynges commaunded to the duke Naymes and Oger, to Guydelon of Bourgogne, and to Rycharde of Normandy, that they sholde take a hundred knyghtes well armed, and that they sholde kepe well the feest, that noo noyse nor noo stryffe were there made / and that none sholde wronge thother / And they dyde his commanaundemente. And thenne the knyghtes that sholde renne, beganne to beholde Reynawde, that was mounted vpon halyngge Bayarde / And soo they began to laugh and scorne wyth hym, And sayd in Iape the

1 omitted, F. orig. I. v. back. 2 Fol. L. iii. back. 3 qui clochoit si fort comme je vous ay compte, F. orig. I. v. back.

Charlemagne with his barons go into the meadow, where Reynawde and Mawgis follow.

All the knights mount their horses.

The Emperor commands that no noise and strife shall take place among the knights.
The knights ridicule Reynawde because Bayard goes so lame, one to the other / ‘this felawe shall wynne the pryce And the crowne of golde’ / and sayd, ‘beware that his fote smyte you not.’ and the other sayd, ‘he shall wynne the devyll’ / And a nother knyghte sayd to Reynawde / ‘ye have well doon, swete knyghte, for to have broughte your horse here / And yf god destyneth hym, he shall wynne the pryse this daye’ / Reynawde vnderstode full well the grete wordes that men sayd to him, wherof his herte swelled hygh / that yf it had not be for doute to have loste the pryce / he wolde have begunne the stryffe. And therfore he held his peas / and made nother noyse nor worde agenste it / 12

Thenne whan themperour vnderstode yᵉ grete wordes that the knyghtes sayd to Reynawde / he was wroth for it, And he sayd soo hygh that it was well herde of all, ‘I commaunde you, vpon peyne of my grace, that ye saye noo shame nor yll worde to noo maner of knyghte; For yf ye doo, ye shall angre me sore.’ But Reynawde cared not moche of that it was sayd to hym / Whan the duke Naymes and ogier sawe that it was tyme for to renne / they made to sowne the trompettes. Thenne every man putted hymselfe for to renne / And whan Mawgys sawe that every man rynne, he lyghted on foote, and vnbounde the foot of Bayarde. But or ever he was vnbounde / the other were well ferre ; and when Reynawde sawe that it was tyme for to renne after thother, he spored his horse / and sayd, ‘Bayarde / we ben ferre behynde, ye myghte well abyde / For yf ye be not soone afore ye shall be blamed.’ whan bayarde herde his mayster speke thus, he vnderstode hym as well as thoughe he had ben a man / Thenne he grylled his nostrelles, and bare his

---

1 bon cheval, F. orig. I. v. back.
2 Car il ne luy chaloit de tout ce que ilz luy disoient, F. orig. I. v. back.
3 Fol. L. iv.
4–4 Reynault, F. orig. I. v.
hede vp, and made a lange nekke / and toke his cours so faste that it semed the erthe sholde have sonken vnder hym / and wythin a whyle he was passed all the 4 other horses 1 a ferre way, 1 so that men coude not see hym for duste that he reysed. And whan they that toke hede to the courses, sawe Bayarde renne thus, they were grely abasshed wyth all, and sayd the one to thother, 8 ‘beholde that whyte horse 2 renneth faste & lighte 2 / and but late he halted sore / he is the best of all thother that ben here’ /

And whan themperour sawe this / he called to hym 12 Rycharde of Normandy / and sayd to hym, ‘sawe ye ever so many good horses togyder as here ben now? but the whyte passeth theym all / god, how is he well lik bayarde, the horse of Reynawde / yf he had 16 the heres of bayarde / I sholde saye that it were he hymself, and he that sitteth vpon hym is also lighte & prue.’

Thus wyte it, that Reynawde hath doo soo moche that bayarde hath overronne all thother horses. And whan he was at the ende of the listes / he toke the crowne & put it on his arme / and the silver & the clothe he lefte alone / for he dayned not to take theym. 20 And whan he had taken ye crowne, he retorned agen towarde the kyng Charlemagne 3 al fayra and softe paas 3 / whan the kyng sawe hym com towarde hym / he sayd to hym all laughynge, ‘Frende, akyde a litil I praye 28 you / for yf ye wyll have my crowne, ye shall have it; & I shall gyve you for your horse so gret havoyr that ye shall never be poure.’ ‘By god,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘thise wordes shall 4 nought avaylle you; now have I 32 well begyled you / for I go doo marchandyse elles where, & I holde you for a chylde / I have soo often...

---

1–1 si grandement, F. orig. I. v.  
2–2 Il va roidement, F. orig. I. v.  
3–3 tout le beau petit pas, F. orig. i. v.  
4 Fol. L. iv. back.
angred you, & of your men I have so many slayn / I am Reynawd, that bereth awaye your crowne! seke elles where for a nother horse that ye shall gyve to Rowlande for to overcom bayarde / for ye shall not have bayarde 4 nor also your crowne / And assone that he had sayd this / he spore Bayarde wyth his spores, & went so fast away that it semed that the tempest had chassed hym / And whan ye kyng charlemayn understode this that 8 reynawde had sayd to hym, he was wode angry for it, that he wyste not what he sholde doo, so that he myght not of a grete while speke a worde / And whan he had recovered his speche, he began to crye wyth a highe 12 voys / 'now after, lordes, after / for it is my enmye reynawde, the sone of aymon' / And whan the knyghtes herde thus crye the kyng charlemayn, they spored their horses wyth the spores, & wente after reynawde; but 16 theyr goynge avaylled theym noughte, For baiarde was ferre from theym wythin a while, soo that they wyste not where he was becom. and reynawde cam to sayn, & passed over it all atte his case wyth swymmynge / for 20 bayarde was well wonte therto / and also he had passed it afore wyth more grete hast / & whan reynawd was thus passed the ryver of sayne / he lighted from bayarde at the banke of hit. 3 This hangyng, 4 the kyngCharlemaigne & his knyghtes that folowed after hym came to the ryver side / and began to calle Reynande, & sayd to hym, 5 'Ha, true manson, 5 yeilde me my crowne ageth, & I shall gyve the ten tymes as moche as 28 it is worthe / and I shall gyve the tryews two yeres / soo that thiself & thy brethren shall mow goo in arde / yn to se your moder / the whiche desireth sore to see

1—1 quill devoit faire dung grant pisse. F. orig. I. vi. back.
2 ung fier & dur couraige, F. orig. I. vi. back.
3—3 fut oultre, il ce descend a la rive, F. orig. I. vi. back.
4—4 Charlemaigne ariva de lautre quartier qui luy couroit apres, F. orig. I. vi. back.
5—5 a filz de proudomme, F. orig. I. vi. back.
you / and there is no knyghte in my londe\textsuperscript{1} that shall saye contrary to it.\textsuperscript{2} ‘by god,’ said reynawde, ‘as for thys yeres ayayle you nothyng / for ye shall never have agen your crowne. I shall selle it, & pay my knightes wyth all / and the charboncle\textsuperscript{3} that thus shineth shall be set hie vpon my pavillon, to thende that they that shall go to saynt Iames in Galis maye see it the 8 better / and ye shall be blamed of your knyghtes that ye have loste your crowne bi the horse bayarde.’ When charlemayn herde hym speke thus, he wyste not what he sholde saye for angre, and kept hymself styl like as 12 he had ben deed. and whan reinawd had sayd so, he mounted agen vpon bayarde, & put hym selve to the waye, but not the right waye / but rode thrughe a lityll pathe whiche he had passed afore tyne /

\textbf{N}ow shall I telle you of mawgys, how he dyde for to com out of Parys,\textsuperscript{4} that was mounted vpon his horse morell. Whan he wyste that reynawde was passed sayn / he yssued out of Parys, \textsuperscript{5} passed the 20 ryver over the brydge\textsuperscript{6} as soone as he myght. and whan he was without / he began to loke after reynawde; & as he rode, he loked a traverse, & sawe reynawde\textsuperscript{7} so called he after hym as hie as he coude /

\texttt{4-4} ‘cosin, thynke to ryde fast, for to tary here no good shall com to vs’ / ‘Cosyn,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘ye saye well, & we shall doo so’ / And so they toke their waye towards myllon / and whan alarde saw his broder com 28 & mawgis, he sayd to his folke, ‘Lorde, we maye well com oute of our bushement / For I see com my brother Reynawde & Mawgys.’ ‘alas,’ sayd Rycharde, ‘I see theym com wyth grete hast; I fere me moche 32 that men chace theym / now lighte we all on horsbacke,
where they meet the other three sons.

They all ride to Orleans,

and from thence to Montalban.

All the folk of the castle are joyful at the coming of the Sons and Mawgis.

Reynawde relates to them all his adventures.

& yf they have mystre of vs, Lete vs goo helpe & socoure theym' / And they answered all, 'we ben all redy' / and when they came out of their 1 bushement, there cam Reynawde and Mawgys, that sayd to theym / 4 lordes, thinke to make hast / For the longe taryeng myght doo to vs harme, by cause that I bryng wyth me the crowne 3 of Charlemagne, 3 the whiche bayarde hath made me wynne by his prowes.' and when alarde 8 understode his brother speke thus, he was so gretly in ioye that he wyste not what he sholde say, but collod & kyssed his broder Reynawde wyth grete ioye. And thenne incontynente they put theymselffe to the waye / 12 & so long thei rode that they cam to orleauince, & passed the ryver of loyre wyth all diligence / and after they made so moche bi their iorneys, that they cam to montalban 3 hole & glad, thanked be god 3 /

Thenne whan they were at Mountalban, the lady came theym agenste, & receyved theim ryght gladly / and made theym ryght grete chere / and all the folke of the castell were right glad of the comynge of 20 Reynawde & of his bretherne / and asked hym how he had doon in his vyage.* 'Lordes,' sayd Reynawde, 'well, god gramercy, I was known of myn oost, the whiche wolde have betrayed & acused me, but I solde 24 it to hym full dere, for I cloof his hede to the teeth / & went oute of his hous by nyght, & put vs in the presse of thother; but ye wyst never folke so well scorned as we were / for ye folke of charlemagne 28 mocked me & bayarde, wherof ye kyng was angry / and thus they lefte me in peas. And whan 5 the trompettes began to blowe for to begynne the cours / they that shold ronne, departed incontynent, and I bode behynde 32 well the shotte of a bowe. And I tell you well for

1 kushemente in Caxton.  2 Fol. L. v. back.  3—3 omitted, F. orig. I. vi.  4 pour quoy il estoit ale a paris, F. orig. I. vii. back.  5—5 la trompecte, F. orig.
certeyn, there were well twenty thousande horses. And whan I sawe me behynde / I sayd to Bayarde that it shold be grete shame to hym yf he abode behynde. And bare awaye the pryce / and of it I have broughte wyth me the crowne of Charlemagne, wherof he ys full sori' / whan they of montalban vnderstode thise 8 wordes, they were right glad / But here I leve to speke of reynawd & of his brethern, & retorne to speke of the kyng charlemagn, that was at parys, right sori for his crowne that he hadde loste.

CHAPTER VIII.

12 ¶ How the kyng Charlemagne went in to Gascoyn with² his oost / And how he beseged reynawde & his brethern wythin ye castle of Montalban. And how reynawde wan the fyrst batayll of the kyng, the whiche Rowlande conduytted, & Olyver & the bysshop Turpyn.³

Capitulum viij.

In this party sheweth the history, that whan reynawde⁴ had wonne the crowne of kyng charlemagne, the kyng abode all wrothe & sore an angred / and he called all his barons, & sayd to theym / ‘Lordes, I praye you that ye counseille me how I shal maye avenge me of reynawde the sonc of Aymon / For ye knowe how he hath angred me / I promyse you, but that I maye have my crowne agen, I shall wexe madde all quycke; for my comage telleth me that he shall do breke it, & he shall put the carboncle that is theron

¹ Fol. L. vi. ² tout son ost, F. orig. I. vii. back. ³ dont le roy Charlemaigne cuida enaigner tout vif de honte quil en est, F. orig. I. vii. back. ⁴ le filz aymon, F. orig. ⁵ be able.
Naymes counsels him to wait until next Candelmas, and then besiege Montalban, and avenge himself on the Sons.

Charlemagne accepts the counsel of Naymes, and sends letters through all his land summoning men for war.

vpon his pavyllion / by cause the folke that goo to saynt James shall see it, 'to my grete vitupere & shame.'

'Syr,' sayd rowlande, 'if ye wyll avenge you well of reynawd / goo we vpon hym and we shal exhyle & 4 distroye hym & his londe, and if the kyng Yon of Gascoyn maye be taken soo make iustyme of hym in suche wyse that it maye be remembred perpetuely' / 'Never,' sayd the kyng, 'ye saye well and wysely, & it shal be 8 doon as ye have advised me / & I promise you that I shall never have ioye tyl that I be avenged at my wyll.'

'Sir,' sayd ye duke Naymes, 'leve this angre in peas / ye know how reynawd is your enmye, & prayseth you 12 no thing / but & ye wyll, I shall gyve 2you suche causeill that reynawde shall be brought to dystrucceon, & his brethern & mawgyes also / syr, doo that your barons be redy atte candymas nexte comyne / and 16 that every one of theym make good provysion of vitaylle for vii yere / and theynne abyde so longe afore Montalban tyll that ye take them / and after, ye shal avenge your selfe at your wyll vpon theym' /

Thenne when the kyng Charlemagne understode the good counseyl that the duke Naymes had gyven vnto hym / he lifte vp his heede & sayd, 'Naymes, it is not the fyrste good counseyl that ye have gyven to me / and I wyll that it be doon as ye saye.' And theynne the kyng Charlemagne dyd doo make his lettres, and sent theym thrughe all his empyre. In the whiclie lettres was conteyned, that every man that was 28 acustomed to bere armes & to goo to the werre, sholde come to hym at the feest of candymas nexte folowyng, well garnyssshed of vytyaille for the space of VII yeres, for to abyde att sege afore Montalban / 32 when the barons knewe the kynges wyll / every man

1—1 et qu'il me soit reproche de tous ceux qui la verront, F. orig. I. vii.  
2 Fol. L. vi. back.  
3—3 omitted, F. orig. I. vii.
made hymself redy as well as he cowde, & cam to Parys, and presented theim to kyng Charlemagne & to his neveue Rowlande. and bycause of the grete 4 nombre of folke that were come there / they myght not lodge alle wythin Parys / but they lodged wythoute the towne, vpon the ryver of Sayne / When the kyng sawe that all his barons were com / he made theym all to 8 com byfore hym, & sayd to theym / 'Lordes, ye all know right wel, at the leste the most party of you / how I have overcom & subdued xl kynges in my dayes / the whiche are all to me obeyssaut / except the kyng 12 Yon of gascoyn, that hath wythdrawe in his londe my enuyes mortall, that ben the foure sones of aymon. ye knowe wel ye grete dishonour thei have doon to me / 3 wherof I me complayne vnto you, & praye you & 16 commaunde you, that ye come wyth me in to gascoyn, for to helpe me that I be avenged of the grete harme & shame that thyse foure sones of Aymon doo to me / For by your ooth / ye ben all beholden therunto.'

20 Thenne sayd the erle of Nantuell / 'Syre, we shall not goo there at this tyme.' Ye knowe well that we ben come oute of Spayne but late / wherof we ben yet all wery. And also in this felawship ben many 21 prynces and barons that have not ben yet in theyr country, nor seen theyr wyves and chyldren, and ye wyll that we goo in to Gascoyne vpon the kyng Yon / and vpon the foure sones of Aymon. And I telle you, 28 that the two wounds that I receyved in Spayne ben not yet hoole / and therfore we maye not goo in to Gascoyne at thyse tyme / But ye shal doo as a good kyng and a sage / and shall shewe that

---

1-1 omitted, F. orig. I. vii.  2 ct dommaige, F. orig. 3 tous les jours dont a vous me complains, F. orig. I. viii. back.  4 Fol. L. vii.  5-5 le quel est montt grant, F. orig. I. viii. back.  6 car nous ne pouvons, F. orig. I. viii. back.  7-7 omitted, F. orig. I. viii. back.
ye love your folke / For ye oughte to kepe theym as
your selfe / Wythdrawe your ooste vnto whytsontyde
nexte comyng / & gyve leve to alle your barons to goo
to theyrr places for to rest theym a while. And whan 4
the tyme shall be come, 1and that your playsure is
to calle theym / They shall be all freshe and redy to
fulfyll your commaundement wyth all dilygence.11
Whan the kyng vnderstode thes words he was wroth, 8
and sware by saynte Denys of Fraunce / saynge in this
maner: 'Yf I sholde be dysheryted, I sholde goo now
in to Gascoyne / and I shall take wyth me alle the
yonge folke of my ooste, the whyche I shall putte in 12
good arraye honestly / and I shall gyve theym all that
they shall nede / thoughe ye shold abyde behynde,
as weke men and feynte.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke
Naymes, 'ye saye well; For this yonge men shall be 16
ryghte glad for to assaye themselfe.' 'Therefore wyll
I do it,' sayd kyng charlemagn, ' & so shall y<sup>e</sup> kyng
Yon be distroyed; & when I shall have reynawde &
his bretherne / and Mawgys the 2<sup>e</sup>theff taken, I shall 20
departe the londe of gascoyn to this yonge kyghtes for
theyr herytage.' This hangynghe, that the kyng Charle-
magne sayd thes words / a spye that longed to
Reynawde was in this companye, that vnderstode alle 24
that sayd ys / And whan the spye hadde herde all
togyder well, he put hym selfe to the wyse, And dyde
soo moche by his Iourneys, that he came to Moun-
talban, where he founde Reynaude, his bretherne, and 28
Mawgys / And Incontynente that Reynawde sawe
hym / he demaunded of hym, 'what tydynges brynge
you from Parys and from the courte of kyng
Charlemagne' / 'My lorde,' sayd the spye / 'Wyte it 32
that kyng Charlemagne is gretyly wrothe wyth kyngye

1—1 Ilz vendront de bon gre et de bon vouloir pour aler en
Gascongne aneques vous ou la ou vous les voulores mener,
Yon, and agenste you / & agenst your bretherne/ and agenst mawgys / He hath sent for all his subjectes in his empyre / but none wolde have komen wyth hym

1 in to Gascoyn1 / And thenne he sware 1seynte Denys that he sholde come in to thysse partyes1 / and sholde brynge wyth hym none other but all yonge knyghtes / To the whyche he shall gyve all Gascoyn / And sayth 8 that he shall besiege Mountalban / and shalle doo to be caste downe the grete towre / and shall sette all Gascoyn in a fyre and flamme.' Thenne2 sayd Reynawde to his folke / 'be not discoraged of no thyenge, For I shall see how Rowlande and Olyvere shall bere theym selfe agenste me and my bretherne.' And thenne wente Reynawde in to the halle / And founde his bretherne and Mawgys wyth hys knyghtes, and sayd to theym / 16 'Lorde, I brynge you tydylnges / Now wyte that the kynge Charlemagne cometh to besiege vs / and bryngeth wyth hym all the puysaunse of fraunce / Now lete vs thynke to receyve hym well / for he shal have more to do than he weneth' / 'broder,' sayd alarde, 'have no doubt / for they shal be well receyved / for as long that we shal 3lyve, and shall see you ryde vpon Bayarde, we shall not faylle you / nor we shall not be a ferde to be 21 take / nor ylle handled ; For no man a lyve is worth of goodnes nor of prowes' /

This hangynge, Charlemagne was advysed and thoughte vpon the counseyll that the duke of 28 Nantuell hadde gyven to hym / And after, he called hys folke, & sayd to theym, 'Lorde, I gyve you leve, and lete you wyte that atte Ester I shal holde my counseyll generall / 1and it playse god1 / Now kepe 32 that ye faylle not to come thenne, well appareyled and redy. For I wolde not leve for noo thyenge / but that I sholde goo see the kynge Yon. And yt he yelde me

1–1 omitted, F. orig. I. viii. 2 He Dieu, F. orig. 3 Fol. L. viii.
not the foure sones of Aymon / I shall doo to hym wythoute doubtre soo moche shame, that I shall make his berde to be cutte harde by the chynue. And also I shall take the crowne 1 of Gascoyn 1 from hys hede / 4 and I shall make hym come a foote after me, beggyngye his brede.' And whan he had sayd thys wordes / The barons toke leve of Charlemagne / and wente in to theyr countreys / But atte theyr departynge / Charle-8 magne sayd to theym / ' Lordes, remembre well your selfe, that ye come atte the terme that I have sette / For I swere vnto yon, that thoos that shall not come / yf I ever come agen from Gascoyn, 2 they shall repente 12 full sore.'2 Shortly to spokke, Rycharde wente in to hys duchye of normandy, Salamon in to bretayn / Godfroy in to auynon, Hughe the olde & Dyssers in to spayne, and Bertons in to almayn / And all the other, everyche 16 in to hys owne countrey / Whan it was tyme for to come agen to the courte / at y6 terme that charlemagne had set / every man made hymself redy as well as he coude / for to 20 com to y6 court, as thei were expressly charged they sholde doo / First came there Ry6[charde of Normandye, and brought wyth hym manye a noble knyght, and presented hym selfe to fore the kynge Charlemagne, 24 evyn at saynt Denys. After, came Salamon of Bretayne, and brought with him of hys barons a fayre companye, and presented hymselfe to the kynge at saynt Denys. After, came Dyssyers of Spayne, which brought with 28 him well X thousand knightes wel armed and well garnysshed of vytayles, For in all the hoste 4 of Charle-magne 4 was none so well arayed as they were of all

---

1—1 de son chief, F. orig. K. i. back.
2—2 Il ne sera jamais jour quilz ne se plaignent de ma venue, F. orig. K. i. back.
3 Two pages lost from Caxton. The following part is taken from the 1554 edition of The Four Sonnes of Aymon.
4—4 omitted, F. orig. K. i. back.
[thynges, And presented him self in this maner at saynt Denys unto the kyng Charlemagne. Than came Godfray the erle of Avynyon, and brought with him all his power, and a fayre company, and foyson of vytayle, And presented hym and hys folke to the king Charlemagne. And after, came Ponthus out of Almayne, & brought wyth hym a fayre companye & of men of 8 armes. For he had wyth him them of Illande and of Armony, 2and wel three thousand archers, the whych for no doubt of death wolde never flee from bataylle, And presented hym selve and hys felawshyp to the kyng Charlemagne, the whiche he receyved ryght honourably. Than after came the good bisshop Turpin, and broughte wyth hym a fayre company, and well enewred to the warre, and presented hymself to the kyng Charlemagne, that was ryght glad of hys comyng, for the bysshop was a good true man. And y^e king Charlemagne trusted muche to hym for his great fydelitie, and also for the great prowess that was in 20 hym.

Al the great Lordes that helde theyr landes of the kyng Charlemagne, came to Parys, & presented theymselfe and theyr men to y^e kyng Charlemagne, that receyved theym with great Ioye, and was glad to see aboute hym so fayre a companye 3of good men of warre; but I tel you, that whan the hoste was assembled at Parys, there was so great a derth that it was great pitie, for the rasour of whete was solde for fourty shelynges and twenty pence; and yf the kyng had taried there any longer, there should have ben so greate a derth that all the small people had ben all dead for 32 hu?gre. But the kyng Charlemagne began for to make hys mustres, for to know how much people that he

1—1 omitted, F. orig. K. i. back.
2—2 et bien milles bon archiers, F. orig. K. i. back.
3—3 que chescun avoit amence, F. orig. K. i.
had. And whan the mustres were made, they found
that they were well XXX. thousande knyghtes that
had theyr fyrst berdes, besyde the olde knyghtes that
were well an hundred thousand. And whan that this 4
was doone, the Emperor Charlemayne called Rowland,
his nevew, a Fore him, and sayde to hym, ‘Fayre
nevew. I recomende to you myne hoste, and I praye you
that ye wyll conduce it by good maner.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd 8
Rouland, ‘I shal doo therin my devoire after my
power.’ Than made to be take to hym the oryflambe,
and departed out of Parys; and they dyd so muche by
smal journeis, that they came to Bloye; and than 12
Charlemagne made to be cryed, that all the vytaylers of
the land should goe wyth vitayle after the hoste. And
yf that they brought that were worth a peny, they
should have two for it.

A nd whan that thys greate armye was come to Bloy,
they passed over Gyronde, and wente afore the
great castell of Mountawban. 2 And they lodged them-
self there rounde about the place. And then the 20
Frenche men began to say the one to the other, ‘by
myne othe, there is a fayre castel and a stronge, and
but yf wee get some other parte, heere shall we wynne
but a lytle.’

A nd whan the batayles were ordeyned rounde aboute
mountawban, Rowlande began for to say to the
kynge Charlemagne, ‘Syr, me semeth that wee should
nowe gyve a sawte to Mountawban.’ And the kynge 28
answered, ‘I wyll’ 3 not that my folke have ony
dommage; but firste I wyll knowe yf the castell wyll
holde or yelde vp / For yf he wyll be given vp / I

1—1 omitted, F. orig. K. i.
2—2 Et cependant les nefs passerent autrre gironde qui
passerent larrnee. Et quant ilz furent outre, ilz mirent les
batailles en ordonnance, et puis sen vont a montawban, F. orig.
K. i.
3 Continuation from Caxton, Fol. M. i. back.
wolde not that ony bataylle shold be doon to it / And thenne incontynent he sente a knyghte mounted vpon a mewle all vnarmed / the whiche came to the gate of the castell / and when they that kept the gate sawe that it was a messenger, they open to hym the gate, and the knyghte entered in / And as he was come in / he fonde the stywarde with a hundred men, that wente aboute 8 vysitynge the watches & the wardes. Incontynente the knyghte salued hym, and the stywarde rendred hym agen his salute, & sayd to hym, "What be ye, gentylman / and what seke you here wythin? I praye you telle me what folke are yonder wythoute, soo fayr a company' / 'Sire,' sayd the knyghte, 'they ben the folke of the emperour Charlemagne, that is come for to besege the castell of Montalban / And I am one of his knyghtes, that am com here for to speke wyth Reynawde from the kyng Charlemagne.' Thenne the styward toke the knyght by the hande, and ledde hym byfore Reynawde the sone of aymon / And whan the knyte sawe Reynawde, he made reverence to hym / and after sayd to hym, 'Reynawde, the emperour Charlemagne sendeth to you worde by me, that yf you wyl yelde your selfe to his merci / and gyve to hym your brother Richard, to doo his wylle of hym / he shall have merci of you / And yf ye wyll not doo soo / he shall doo sawte your castell / And yf he maye take you by force, he shall make you to be hanged / or deie a cruel detho' /

Thenne whan Reynawde vnderstode thise tidynge that Charlemagne sente to hym, he beganne to smyle, and sayd, 'Frende, goo tells the kyng that I am not the man that shall doo ony trayson / For if I sholde doo it / he hym self sholde blame me for it. But and yf it playse hym, my brethren, mawgis / and my selfe, ben at his commandement / and we shal gyve

1 Fol. M. ii.
our selfe to hym as to our soverayne lord / our lyves sauffe, and our membres / and we shall yelde to hym the castel all atte his wyll / And telle the kynge that he shall doo well & wysely to take suche fyve knyghtes as we ben. And yf Charlemagne refuseth this / I have myn hope soo faste to our lorde god, that we shall not set moche by the kynge / nor of his grete ooste.' The messager vnderstode well the answere that Reynawde had doon to hym, and incontynente he retourned to Charlemagn / and shewed vnto hym all that Reinawd had sayd, worde bi worde1 / when the emperour vnder-stode the wordes of Reynawde2 / he beganne to thinke a goode while / for he knewe that Reynawde sayd but well. And thenne he sente for the duke Naymes and Ogier the dane, and sayd to theym, 'Lorde, Reynawde sendeth me worde that he shall doo no thynge after my wyll. And for this cause I wyll that ye3 castell be assayled forthywyth' / 'Sire,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'me semeth, as I have vnderstande, that Reynawde offreth to you fair / and yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall take hym to merci wyth his brethern.4 For ye knowe well that they ben folke that maye doo to you good servyse. And yf Reynawde be ones in peas wyth you, ye shall be the better beloved, and more dred therfore. 24 But sith that your wyll can not accorde to the same we maye not doo thereto / To assayle the castell I coun-seylle it not; For ye see that the castell is fair and right stronge / And Reynawde hath wyth hym a good company of good men / and he / & his brethern, and mawgis, ben suche knyghtes as ye knowe. yf ye doo assaille the castell, they shall yssue oute at the fauce posternes / and shal doo to you soo grete a dommage of your folke, that ye shall be wrothe5 for it / but and yf

1 Sans riens faillir, orig. K. ii.
2 que Reynault luy manoit, F. orig. K. ii.
3 omitted, F. orig. K. ii.
4 Fol. M. ii. back.
5 et dolant F. orig. K. ii.
ye wyll beleve my counseylly, ye shall besiege the castell nyghe that no man shall maye com out nor entre in but he shall be take, and thus ye shall mow have the castell by famysshynge / For by no sawte ye shall not have it.'

Charlemagne vnderstode well thise wordes, and knew well that the duke Naymes spake well & wysely, & sayd to hym / 'I wyll that it be doon thus as ye have devysed it.' And thenne he made erie throughe all his oost, that every man sholde lodge hym selfe evyn nyghe by the castell; and he hymself commaunded that his pavyllion sholde be pighte as nyghe the gate as cowde be doon / After this was cryed, ye sholde have seen wythin a lityll while moo than X thousande pavylions round aboute the castell of Mountalban, whan thooste was all lodged, Rowlande departed oute of the oost well wyth two thousand knyghtes well armed & well horsed, & all yonge men of prymo berde / whiche were very freshe, borne of the douce fraunce and went atte the other syde of Montalban in a place whiche is called Balencon, Where was a ryver grete and depe / in the whiche was fishe ynoughe / and ther he dyd pytche his pavylyon. And soo full he was of grete pride / that he had sette the dragon above vpoo his pavylion, and dyd doo make the lodgys of his felawes rounde aboute hym / And they were in suche a grounde where as they myghte see from thens the wodes and the ryvers and all the contrey, and Mountalban that was vpon the grete roche wel closed / and behelde the two grete rivers, that is to wyte, Gyronde and Dordonne / that envyronned Mountalban.

Rowlande sawe the place soo stronge, that he mer-veyled gretyly, and sayd to his folke, 'Lordes,

1 le plus que lon pourra, F. orig. K. ii.
2—2 omitted, F. orig. K. ii.
3—3 de la droite france, F. orig. K. iii. back.
4 a grant foison, F. orig. K. iii. back.
5 omitted, F. orig.
6 Fol. M. iii.
Roland tells Oliver that he does not believe the castle will be taken.

Roland beholds the river, which is full of birds; and sets forth with XXX thousand knights to hawk thereon.

I merveylle me sore of this castell. And I merveylle not yf the foure sones of Aymon make werre agenst myn vnclle Charlemagne, 1 syth that they have soo goode & soo stronge a place for to wythdrawe theymselfe; 1

For I promise you that Mountalban shall never be taken of vs' / 'Ye saye not well,' sayd Olyver / 'For we toke well by force Lezonne / 2 and also we overthowe doun the grete towre and the dongoen of Sernoble 2 / 8 wherof I saye that we shall well have Mountalban. And yf Reynawde and his brethern come not and yeilde theym selfe, they shall be in daunger of deth' / 'I promise you,' sayd Rowlande, 'that they shall doo noo thynge of that ye saye. For I promise you that the gentyll Reynawde shall make vs soo sore a ferde, that the moste hardy wolde be atte Parys. Reynawde is prue and corageus / and his brethern in lyke wyse. 16 And also they have wythin the castell many noble and worthy knyghtes / wherfore I saye, and I am of oppynyon / that as longe as they have vyttaylle, they shall never be taken.' When the pavyllion of Rowlande was dressed and pyghte vp / Rowlande behelde the ryver, and saue that it was full of birds. thenne he sayd to the bysshop Turpyn and to the other barons / 'See how we are lodged in a goode place. Late vs goo 24 in thise ryvers to lete fleo our fawcones.' 'Sire,' sayd 3 the bysshop 3 Turpyn, 'goo in the name of god' / Thenne lighted Rowlande on horse backe, & toke wyth hym well xxx. knyghtes / and noo moo / And they toke 28 their hawkes, and rode the moost parte of theym vpon mewles, all vnarmed sauff their swerdes / and came and sported theym alongethe ryver side, and toke many birdes vpon the water / In soo grete quantyte that they 32 laded a horse wythall. 4 the bissishop turpyn and ogyer

1–1 puis quilx oux si bon retraict, F. orig. K. iii. back.
2–2 et si abactismes de noble la grant tour et le denion, F. orig. K. iii. back.
3–3 omitted, F. orig. K. iii. back.
4 Fol. M. iii. back.
went not there, but abode behinde for to kepe the oost / and they were before the tentes, wher they made two auncyent knyghtes to recounte & telle how the 4 grete Troy was taken and dystroyed / this hangyng, was a spye in the ooste of kyng charlemagne that longed vnto Reynawde, the whiche he had sent there for to knowe what they wrought / and how they dyd, & all 8 the faytte of Rowlande. And incontynente the spye departed out of the ooste and wente to Reynawde / and shewed to hym how Olyver & Rowlande were goon to sportyng wyth their hawkes vpon the ryver / and 12 with theym thyrty of the beste of the oost /

Wiane the spye had recounted thise tydynges to reynawd / he was of it right glad / Thenne he called his brethern & Mawgys his cosin / and tode 16 theym how Rowlande and Olyver and XXX. of the beste barons of Charlemagne were goon to hawkyng vpon the ryvers in the plane of Balancon / ‘What oughte we to doo?’ sayd Reynawde. ‘Cosin,’ sayd 20 Mawgys, ‘we may well kyll theym yf we wyl, For they ben well proude and folyshe / Remembre ye not wele that a messager told you a moneth agoo that Charlemayne had lefte all olde knyghtes of his royame / 24 and had taken of the yonge / And that he had departed al Gascoyne to the yonge bachelers of Fraunce / And by this bowan, Roulande and Olyver ben mounted in to so grete pride / that they trowe in all the worlde is 28 noo man that dare assaylle theym nor loke vpon theym angrely / But and yf ye wyll beleve me, I shall well tell you suche a thyng that shall make theym wrothe and sory.’ And thenne Reynawde made sowne his horne, 32 the whiche men never herde sowned But that it was nede / For whan men herde it / every man rane to his armes for to arme hym. And incontynente, Rey3nawde and his bretherne and Mawgys made theym selfe to

1—1 omitted, F. orig. k. iii. 2 Fol. M. iv.

CHARL. ROM. X
The Four Sons of Aymon. [Chap. VIII.

They issue forth

And when Reynawde sawe that his folke was well appareyled / he wente oute wyth his men atte a 12 fawce posterne / that they of the ooste coude not see theym / And they were well in his companye a boute foure thousande well horsed and well armed / And a forester conduytted theym thoroughge the thyckest of 16 the forest / And reynawde sayd to the foster, 'brynge me thou in to the ooste of Rowlande wythoute faylle' / the foster answerde to hym that he wolde do it gladly / Thenne broughte he theym streyghte to Balencon. 20

And when Reynawde sawe the pavyllions, he shewed theym to his folke / to whom he sayd / 'Lorde, beholde what fayr gayne we have fonde here, yf we dare sette vpon theym' / 'Syr,' sayd his men / 'lete vs 24 goo to it hardly / For we durste well assaylle the devyll / whan ye be wyth vs' /

Now shall I telle you of the bysshop Turpyn, that was abyden to kepe the ooste / wherof he had grete fere, be cause he wyste 28 well againste whom he had a doo / And had a grete suspectyon, And heved vppe his hede / and sawe thre ravens and the dawes flee aboute vpon the fortresse. And from thens they toke their flighte 1 over Rowlandes 32 pavylyon, 1 And made grete noyse; And soo was he a ferde.

For he wende that it hadde 2 ben some evyll

---

1—1 pardessus la forteresse, F. orig. k. iv. back.
2 Fol. M. iv. back.
token / and he behelde towarde the woodes, that were
grete / and sawe anone his enmyes / wherof he was
sore frayed, that almoste he was beside hym selfe /
4 Thenne he called Ogyer the dane, and sayd to hym,
'Free knyghte, for godys love goo arme yourself / and
lete our folke be armed / for here comyn our enmyes.
Now ben well Rowlande & Olyver goon for noughte,
8 that are goon to the chasse, and have lefte theyr ooste
thus in grete daunger. I beleue that they shall not
fayle / but they shall repente of it' / Whan Ogyer
herde Turpyn speke in thys maner, he was wrothe;
12 soo went he in to his pavylion, and made hym to
be armed incontynente for to moeve the ooste / And
and commands the Frenchmen to arm themselves.
whan the frenelahmen herde the trompettes blowe, they
put theym selfe in ordenau?; This hangynge,
16 Ogyer was armed, and mounted vpon his horse bray-
forde, & fonde that a grete parte of them was armed
and all redy / Thenne Oger sayd to theym / 'Lordes,
Reynawde telleth Mawgis to abide
thyneke to defende you well / for we ben assaylled.'
20 Reynawd was abassed when he sawe the ooste that
moved soo / and sayd to his folke / 'Lordes, we
assaylled thes.' thei answered that they were all redy
to doo so. And when Reynawde vnderstode thys
wordes, he sayd to Mawgis / 'Fayr cosin, take a
thousande knyghtes, And abyde here wythin this
wood / And yf ye see that we nede of helpe / come
28 thenne and socoure vs.' 'Gladly,' sayd mawgis, 'your
he sets spurs to
commandamente shall be doon' / And whan reynawde
Bayard,
had sayd soo, he spored bayarde wyth his spores, and
he recounteth Earl
wente in to the ooste, and passed the playne of
Emery, whom he
32 Balancon; and the firste that he recounted, it was
shoves his spere thorouge the body of hym, and felle
deed to therth / Thenne sayd reynawde,1 'ye shall abie

1 par saint Nycholas, F. orig. k. i.
the bargayn, ¹false gloton / Ye dyde a grete folye When ye came ever in to Gascoyne / And whan he had sayd thus, he sette his hande to his swerde, And beganne to make soo grete occysion of knyghtes that noone canne ⁴telle it / And whan Reynawde sawe his enmyes soo strongly abasshed, he beganne to saye, 'Where is Rowlande and Olyver, that soo sore hath threatened me and my folke, And sayen that we ben traytoures / But ⁸and they sayen soo afore me / I sholde shewe to theym that they sayen not well nor trouthe' / whan the bysshop Turpyn vnderstode this that Reynawde sayd / He sayd to Reynawde / 'Ye nother saye well nor ¹²trouthe.' And thenne he spored his horse wyth the spores / and wente agenste Reynawde / an gaaff eche other soo grete strokes thorughe theyr sheeldes that they brake bothe theyr speres all in peces / But nother ¹⁶of theym felle doun / And whan Reynawde hadde broken his sperre / he sette the hande to his swerde, and gaaffe soo² grete a stroke wyth it to the bysshope Turpyn vppon his helme, that he made bothe the man ²⁰and the horse to rele sore / And whan Reynawde sawe the bysshop in that plyghte / he sayd to hym / 'Fader, be ye the same Turpyn that prayseth your selfe soo sore? By my fayth, me semeth it were better for you ²⁴to be in some churche to syng some masse, than for to be here, wenynge to greve me.'

Thenne whan the bysshop Turpyn vnderstode the reproche that Reynaude made to hym / he ²⁸trowed wel to have goon oute of his mynde for it, And sette hande to his swerde / and wente vpon Reynawde. And thenne was the ooste mooved of one partye and of the ³other. Shortly to speke, there were ³²soo many speres broken, soo many a knyghte overthrown / and soo many horses deed, that it was grete pyte for to see. There was Ogyer the Dane, that

hadda his sheld afores his brest, And his swerde in his hande, & set uppon Brayforde; the whiche smote Rycharde, the brother of Reynawde, soo grete a stroke that his horse felle down to the erthe. / Whan Rycharde saw hym selfe a grounde / he rose uppe agayne quyckely / as a knyghte pru and valyant / And toke his swerde in his hande. And Ogyer passed beyonde 8 for to folowe his course, And beganne to crye the baner 'saynte Denys.' Whan Reynawde sawe his brother Rycharde cast on grounde / he was wrothe for it / Soo spored he his horse Bayarde, and wente 12 agenste Ogyer the dane / and Ogyer agenste hym / and gaaff eche other grete strokes vpon theyr sheldes / Reynawde smote Ogyer by soo grete force that the horses gyrtle nor the pytter myghte not helpe, But 16 that Ogyer muste fall down, 2sadell and all,2 to the grounde /

When Reynawde sawe Ogyer atte the erthe, he toke Brayforde by the brydell / and sayd to 20 Ogyer / 'Ye have doon evyll for to have cast down my brother afore me / Ye knowe that ye be of my lynage / and my cosyn nyghe; ye shold helpe and deffende vs agenste all men / And ye doo worse than the other /

24 Wherof I saye it is no dede of a cosyn, but of an enmye. Nevertheless, take your horse agayne, vpon suche condycyon that ye shall doo to me a playsure at a nother tymne if I have nede / the whiche thynge god 28 forbede.' 'cosin,' sayd oger, 'ye speke as a good man; and I promyse you that if I faylle of this that ye saye, god punysshe me for it' / Reynawde yelded hym agayn his horse / & helde the styrop to Ogyer, 4when he 32 lyghted agayne vpon his horse Brayforde. And wyte it that Ogyer syth dyde moche for Reynawde, and

1 si que la coyfe de son heaulme tomba en la fablonniere, F. orig. k. v. back.
2—2 omitted, F. orig. k. v. back.
3 Fol. M. vi.
4—4 pour monter dessus, F. orig. k. v. back.
yelled hym agen his rewarte at the roche Mountbron, wherof he was rebuked of Charlemagne shamfully / Whan Ogyer was set on his horse agen / he set hande to his swerde, and entred amonge the thyckeste of the 4 gascoynes / and began to hew theym so sore that he made theym all to flee afore hym / Whan mawgis sawe that all the bataylles were thus medled togyder / he cam 1out of the wood, 1 and cam to balancon, and put 8 hym selfe and his folke amonge the gretest prees, 2& began to cleve and hewe so harde, hedes, legges, & armes, 2 that none durste abyde longe afore hym / And thenne the frenshemen were so sore and weri that 12 they myght not more, & were all dyscomfyted at the passage of the ryver 3 / whan they dyd put theymselfe to flyglite. And the gascoyns chassed theym alle betyng a long myle / and after returned to thooste / and toke 16 all the havoyr that they fonde there / And mawgis cam to y e pavyllion of Rowlande, & toke the dragon 4 of golde 4 that was set vpon the sayd pavyllion ; and they passed thorouge Balancon / and soo returned to 20 Montalban wyth grete Ioye. And whan they were come there, they dysarmed theym selfe, and ete right well / For they hadde well mystre therof. Whan they had eten at theyr ease / Reynawde made brynge y e boty 24 afore hym / And after dealed it among his folke, And kepte to hym not one penny / Whan Reynawde hadde thus departed all this goodes, Mawgys wente vpon the grete towre of Mountalban / And dyd sette the dragon 28 of Rowlande vpon the same / soo that the folke of the oost of both 5 sydes of the castell myght see it. 5 And whan Charle 6 mayne sawe the sayd dragon vpon the

1–1 hors de son embuschement, F. orig. k. v. back.
2–2 omitted, F. orig. k. v. back.
3 moult oulraigeusement, F. orig. k. v. back.
4–4 omitted, F. orig. k. v. back.
5–5 que lost dune part et dautibre le pouvient veoir, F. orig. k. v. back.
6 Fol. M. vi. back.
CHAPTER IX.

8 Oil. How Reynawde and his brethern were betrayed & solde to the kyng Charlemagne by the kyng Yon of Gascoyn, that sent theym in the playne of Valcours all wyth-out armes but theyr swerdes / and were mounted vpon mewles / & were clothed wyth mantelles of scarlet, furret wyth ermyn / Fro the whiche they escaped by the wyll of god / but they suffred moche payne & grete traveylle / for they were gretly hurt & sore wounded. But of the kyng charlemagne party abode there deed 12 Foulques of Moryllon, & many other barons and worthy knyghtes, wherof the kyng charlemayn was wrothe and sory.

Capitulum IX.

24 Now must we telle of Rowlande & of Olyver, that came agen fro hawkyng vpon the ryvers wyth their felawes, & besemynge they were right glad that they had so well chassed & taken a grete quantyte of birdes / & thus as they cam agen / they met wyth damp Rambault, the free knyght / that tolde theym by

1-1 omitted, F. orig. k. v.
a grete angre / 'Ye have taken many birdes; see that ye be good marchuantes, & selle your praye well, for I promyse you ye shall never selle your chasse and hawk-ynge so dere as it hath coste you / And yf ye have taken 4 byrdes / I lette you wyte that Reynawde & his bredern have taken knyghtes and horses / and whan ye see your dra'gon vpon the grete towre of Montalban / ye oughte wel to be thenne glad, and thanke moche therof 8 the four sones of Aymon. For all tho that seen it set there of an heyght, they wene that ye have goten the castell by force' / Whan rowlande understode thyse wordes, it lacked lityll that he wente oute of his 12 mynde / he lighted down from his mewle, And sette him selve vpon a stone / and beganne to thynde & muse sore. And soo dyd Olyver in lyke wyse / And whan Rowlande had thoughte ynowe / He called to hym 16 the bysshopp Turpyn, Ogier the dane, and Richarde of Normandy, and sayd to theym, 'For god, fayr lordes, what counseyll gyve you me vpon this dede / For I dare never more fynde myselfe before my vnkle, the 20 king Charlemagne; for I fere me to sore of evyl reporte / and that men tell of me otherwyse than the trouthe' / And he sayd to the bysshopp Turpyn / 'For goddis love, good fader in god, gyve me leve to departe / for I wolde goo in to the holy londe to see the sepulture of our lorde, for to werre there agenste the sarrasins / For sith this mysshape is thus come to me, I wyll no more bare armes agenste cristen men' / 28 'Sire,' sayd the bysshopp Turpyn, 'be not dismayed for no thyng / For this is but an uxe of werre / suche a thyng befalleth often to many one / I promyse you that ye shall have, or thre dayes ben paste, as many of 32 the folke of Reynawde as he hath of yours' / 'Sire,' sayd Rowlande, 'ye gyve me good corage, and I promyse you that to your prudence I shall arreste

1 Fol. M. vii.  
2 omitted, F. orig. k. vi. back.
CHAP. IX.] OF ROLAND'S GRIEF AT THE SONS' VICTORY. 201

myselfe.' Whan Rowlande had said thise wordes / the bysshop Turpyn and Ogier dyd so moche that they made hym lighte a horsbacke / and they wenete togylde all towards charlemagne. & wite that after rowlande, cam moo than a hundred young gentylmen all a fote, bi cause thei had lost their horses. & whan thei were come to thoste of charlemagne, they wente streyghte to the pavyllion of the duke Naymes / and whan Rowlande entred wythin, he was ashamed / and abode there two dayes that he cam not oute, and durst not goo to the courte, nor loke no man in the face. But he de hym selfe in the sayd pavyllion, as a man all abashed of the grete sorow that he had at his herte. Whan Eowlande and Olyver was thus abyden in the tent of the kyng Charlemagne, in his tente / whare he entred wythin, and saluted the kyng ryght honourably / and the emperour rendred to hym his salute / and after sayd to hym, 'Damp bysshop, ye be welcom' / 'Syre,' sayd Turpyn / 'god be your keper; and I beseeche you to pardonne me / yf I telle you ony thyng that shall dysplayse you.' 'Now telle hardly,' sayd the kyng, 'what ye wylle / For nothynge that ye canne telle can not dysplayse me.' 'Syre,' sayd the bysshop Turpyn, 'Wyte that the foure sones of Aymow have dyscomfited vs, And have taken wyth theym all that we had in our tentes, bothe horses & harneys / and all our pavyllions / and namly the dragon of Rowlande, besides a grete many of prisoners / And they have slayne the moste party of our folke' /

Thenne whan the emperour vnderstode this that Turpyn had tolde hym, he was a long while as a mañ al forcened / And thenne he swere saynte Denys

1 Fol. M. vii. back. 2–2 omitted, F. orig. K. vi. 3 et ne disoit mot du monde, F. orig. k. vi. 4 quilz en out amene a montauban, F. orig. k. vi.
by grete angré. And sayd / 'Now have ye fonde that ye went tellynge; & the grete pride that ye had, ye have well founde'/ At this hour he dyd sende throug all his oost by expresse wordes, that every lord and 4 baron sholde come incontynent1 afore hym in his tente, for he wolde kepe parlyamente wyth them / whan ye prynces knew ye commaundement of ye kynge, ye sholde have seen them com wyth grete hast towaerde ye kynge / & whan they wer al assembled wythin the kynes pavyllion / he stode vpon his feete, & sayd to theym in this maner / 'Lords, I have sent for you for to shewe vnto you that to vs is happed of newe. Now 12 wyte that the foure sones of Aymon have dyscomfited all our knyghtes that Rowlande my neevew had wyth hym at balencen / wherof I am right wroth & sori. for I wolde I had lost a greter thyng, and that this were 16 not happed ; but a thyng that can not be amended, must be suffred & borne as well as men may / I re quyre & beseeche you all, my lordes and fremes, vpon the ooth that ye have made to me, that ye wyll counselyll 20 me truly how I shall be ruled in this mater, and how I might have this castell of Montalban'/ Whan the kynge had thus spoken, there was none so hardy that ever durste saye one worde, but only the duke Naymes, the prue and wyse knyght. 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'ye aske counselyll for to besiege montalban. But no man that hath ony rayson in his hede ought not to counselyll you the same / for whi the 28 daunger is there grete, be cause that Guynarde the lorde of Berne knoweth of it, and so dooth the Godfray the lord of Poycy, that are good knyghtes, & sore dred for their worthynes, and also the kynge yon3 that is at 32 tholose the whiche shall come all to helpe & socoure reynawd / by cause they be of his aliaunce / And also

1 omitted, F. orig. k. vi.  2 Fol. M. viii.  3 de Gascongue, F. orig. k. vii. back.
they know that he is one of the beste knyghtes of the worlde / And they knowe well also that Reynawde gyveth to vs moche to doo. And soo I telle you, yf

4 they sette theym selese togyder, they shall gyve you ynoughhe to doo, And shall maye bere to you a grete dommage. ¶ But and ye wyll have goode counseyll and beleve me, I shall gyve it to you truly / Syre,

8 sende worde to kyng you / that he wythdrawe not nor kepe your enmyes ¹ wythin his londe, but that he yelde theym in to your handes, for to doo wyth theym your playsur and your commaundement. And yf he wyll

12 not doo soo, ye shall distroye all his londe, and no mercy ye shall have vpon hym.’ ‘Naymes,’ sayd the kyng, ‘now gyve you me good counseyll / and I wyll that ye have sayd be doon incontynente’ / Thenne the kyng made com an heraulde of his, and sayd to hym /

¹ Now goo lightly to Tholouse / and telle kyngge Yon on my behalve / that I am entred in to Gascoyn accom-

panyed of ye twelve douspyers of Fraunce, with a hun-

20 dred thousande fyghtyng men / and wyth Rowlande & Olyver / and telle hym that, by saynt Denys of Fraunce, yf he yelde me not my enmyes, that ben the foure sones of Aymon / that I shall waste and distroye all his londe / nor to hym shall abyde nother cite nor castell / but it shalle be overthrownen to the erthe / and yf I can take hym / I shall take from hym his crowne / soo shall he be called kyng overthrown’ / ‘Sire,’ said the heraulde, ‘your commaundement I shall do wythout varienge of one worde / ² evyn as your good grace playseth to comaunde me ¹² / and thus departed the herawde ² from the oost of Charlemagne ² / and toke his

32 waye towards Tholouse / There he fonde the kyngge Yon of Gascoyn in his palays / wyth a ryght fayr company / And assone that he sawe the kyng / he knewe hym well / so made he thenne to him the rever-

¹ Fol. M. viii. back. ² ² omitted, F. orig. k. vii.
A knight called Godfrey rebukes the King for ence / and sayd to hym in the emperours behalve the thyng warde by worde, 1 wherof he was sente there.

And whan the kyng Yon vnderstode the herawde that spake soo / he bowed his hede toward the 4 erthe, and began to thynde a lone while / and sayd not a worde / And whan he had thus lone mused ynoughe / he sayd to the messager: 'Good frende, ye must tary 2 here a seven nyght, 2 I praye you / and thenne 8 3 I shall telle you my wyll / and what I purpose to doo 3 / 'Sire,' sayd the herawde, 'I shall abide wyth a good will, sith that it playse you' / Thenne wente the kyng Yon in to his chambre, & eyghte erles wyth hym, 12 and commanded that the dores sholde be well shet / and thenne they set theym all vpon a benche. And whan they were all set, the kyng e Yon toke the worde & sayd in this maner / 'Lorde, I besche & require, 16 vpon the feyth that ye owe to me, that ye gyve me good counsell to thonour 5 of me / not at my will, but bi rayson / Now wite it that ye kyng Charlemagne 6 is entred wyth in my londe with the xij peres of France, 20 & Rowlande & Olyver, wyth a hundred thousande men. And he sendeth to me worde, but yf I deliver vnto hym the four sones of Aymon, he shall not leve me nother eyte nor towne / but he shall cast all to therthe, 7 24 & shall take the crowne fro my hed / and so shal I be called a kyng overthrowen / My fader helde never noo thyng of hym, & no more shall I / it is better to dye wyth grete worship than to lyve in grete shame.' 28

Thenne whan the kyng Yon had thus spoken, there rose vp a knyght named godfray, that was neveve to kyng yon, and sayd to hym, 'Sire, I merveille me

1 sans point varier en riens, F. orig. k. vii.
2—3 par lespage de huit jours, F. orig. k. vii.
3—3 et puis vous respondray ma volente que direz au roy Charlemagne, F. orig. k. vii. 4 Fol. N. i.
5 thonour, orig.
6 le roy de france, F. orig. k. vii.
7 Et si a jure que si je suis princes, quil me ostera ma couronne, F. orig. K. vii.
that ye aske counseyll for to betraye suche knyghtes as ben the foure sonnes of Aymon / Reynaude is your man & your carnall frende\(^1\) / ye knowe what good he hath doon to you & to your londe / It is not longe agoo that he dyscomfyted Mareyll the puyssaunt sarra-
syn, & chassed hym well foure myle / and smote of his hede, & presented it to you / and ye have promysed 8 & sworne to hym that ye shall defende & kepe hym agenste all men. Myn vncle, ye thynek to faill hym, & wyll not holde that ye have promysed to hym / lete hym & his brethern goo oute of your londe in to som other countrey to seke their adventure / And haply they shall serve some lord that shall doo to 2 theym more goode than ye wyll doo. And also I praye you, my dere lorde and vncle,\(^3\) as moche as I can,\(^3\) that ye wyll doo noo thyng that torneth you to blame, nor to dishonour, nor that can be cast by maner of reproche towards your frendes.' Thenne spake the olde erle of Ansom, and sayd, 'Sire, we wyll that we gyve you counseyll / yf ye wylle doo that we shall counseille you, ye shall doo well for your selfe.' 'Now saye on hardely,' sayd the kyng, 'that semeth you best to be doon, for I wyll doo as ye shall counseille me' / ‘Sire,’ sayd the erle, 'ye have well herde saye / and soo it was trouth, that Benes slewe the erle Lohier; wherfore Charlemagne sente for hym and made his hede to be smyten of at Parys\(^4\) / And at that tyme Reynawde & his brethern were veri yonge; and of theym was none meneyon made / And afterwarde whan they were grete, the kyng wylde amende it vnto theym. For the thynge toucheth theym, but they had the herte so fell that they wold take none amendes, and lasted their

\(^1\) car vous luy ausz donne vostre seur a femme devant vos barons et amys, F. orig. k. viii. back.  
\(^2\) Fol. N. i. back.  
\(^3\) omitted, F. orig. k. viii. back.  
\(^4\) par male intencion. Et puis en prist acordance a benes daigremont, F. orig. k. viii. back.
hate longe / wherof ever sith hath come grete harmes and evylles / For Reinawde slewe Berthelot, the nevewe of the kyng, wyth a chesboorde / Sire, I knowe not why I sholde hide any thynge fro your knowlege / ye knowe well that Charlemagne is soo myghty a kyng that he never undertoke were, but he came to his above of it / Wherfore I doo gyve you counseille that ye yelde Reinawde & his brethren and Mawgis to the 8 kyng Charlemagne; and thus shall ye be deliverd of a grete thoughte, and of grete daunger. / And after this spake the erle of Mobandes, and sayd / syre, yf ye wyll doo this that the erle of Anson counselleth ye, ye & we shall be traytours / For Reinawde is your man / and so moche ye have loved hym that ye have gyven hym your suster to his wyf / And when he cam in thse marches / he came not like a knave / but he cam to you as a noble knyght, pru and worthy / For he brought in his felawshyp fourse thowsande men well armed & well horsed / and sayd to you afore vs all, or ever he toke of his spores, that he had werre wyth kyng Charlemagne / Netheles ye receyved hym wyth goode herte / and after made of hym at your wyll. And for you he conquested many bataylles / and dyde so moche that he delyvered you from the handes of your enmyes / And therfore, syre, I telle you that ye be not worthy to calle yourselfe, ne to bere the crowne vpon your hede, yf for fere of deth ye betraye suche knyghtes as are the four sones of Aymon; For ye have not yet loste nother castell nor towne: and if ye doo it otherwyse / ye shall be taken and holden for a traytour. After spake Anthony the olde erle / and sayd to the kyng / Syre, beleve not this counseylle / for suche counseylle he gyveth you

1-- omitted, F. orig. k. viii. back. 2 Fol. N. ii.
3 Et quant il vint a vous il vois dist, F. orig. k. vii.
4 roy, F. orig. k.
5 et mys ou nombre de Judas, F. orig. k. viii.
now, wherof ye shall be betrayed at the laste. For I knowe better thentente of Reynawde than any man that is here: Ye muste vnderstonde, syre, that Reynawde was sone to a man that had but one towne, and was soo provde that he dayned to serve nor obeye his lorde the kyng of Fraunce; but slewe Berthelot by his grete Pryde and owtrage / Wherfore kyng Charlemagne chassed hym oute of the royame of Fraunce. Now it is happed soo that he is in Gascoyn, and ye have gyven to hym grete landes; and by cause he hath your suster to his wyff / he is become soo prowde that none maye dure afore hym / And he setteth not a peny nother by you nor by your courte / Wherfore I swere to you by the hede that I bere / yf he may by ony wyse, he shall take the lyffe from you / for to have all the royame to hymselfe. Wherfore I advyse to you by ryghtwys counseyll, that ye yeelde hym and his bretherne to Charlemagne / And ye shall doo as a wyse kyng; and so shall you pease the grete wrath of kyng Charlemagne of Fraunce ' / After spake the duke Guymarde of Bayonne, and sayd to the kyng ' Sire, I tell you that the erle Anthony lieth falsly / and gyveth you evyll counseyl / For Reynawde is sone to the duke Aymon of Ardeyne, which is of right grete lynage / And Charlemagne made to sée the duke Benes of Aygremounte, their vncl, by grete wronge / and Reynawde toke therof venoence vpon Berthelot by good rayson / and that more is, it was his body defiendynge / wherof I telle you that noo kyng is not worthy to bere ony crowne nor to have honoure, that wyll doo trayson for thretyng of a nother lorde ' / And after spake Humarde an olde knyghte, and sayd / 'By god, Guymarde, I beleve that ye have lost your

1 Fol. N. ii. back. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. 3 roy de gascoyne, F. orig. i. i. back. 4 damps Guymart, F. orig. i. i. back.
lost his wit to counsel thus the King.

Guymarde defies him in anger.

Earl Hector says that Guymarde is wrong, and condemns Reynawde for fighting against Charlemagne;

he advises John to take his sister away,

and yield up the Sons without fail.

wytte / to counseyl the kyng Yon for to bere oute Reynawde agenst ¹ the grete kyng¹ Charlemagne, for to make all the londe of Gascoyn for to be dystroied / Wherof ye sholde care but lityll / yf the royame were ⁴ wasted, and the kyng broughte to shame / soo that ye had lawde and praysyng.' Thenne sayd Guymarde, 'Thou liest falsly / and yf we two were in a nother place than here, I sholde shewe the that thou were an ⁸ olde dooterd and a foole / For I wolde not counseyll the kyng Yon / but all thynge that concerneth his honour / and profyte also of his royame.'

A fter spake one named syr Hector / an ancyente ¹² erle, and sayd to the kyng / 'Sire, ye aske counseyl of suche that canne not counseyl theymselfe / For it is all other wyse than Guymarde sayth / And I ensure you, that yf ye lose in this mater / he shall ¹⁶ lese therby noo thynge. Sire, ye knowe that Reinawde is a knyght good ynoughe. But by his grete pryde / he hath made werre wyth Charlemagne / For he slewe Berthelot his nevewe by his owtrage. ² now he is come ²⁰ in Gaseoyne / and ye have gyven hym your suster in mariage. Wherof ye dyde grete folie / and ye made hym the castel of Mountalban vpon the strengest grounde that is wythin your royame / Now is come ²⁴ the kyng Charlemagne that hath besieged him ; wherfore I counseyll you that ye accorde wyth the kyng Charle- magne, and delyver yourselfe of Reynawde assone as ye maye. For it is better that ye lese foure knyghtes ²⁸ than all your royame. take fro hym your suster, and gyve her to a nother that is a gretter gentilman than is Reynawde / and that have no suche enmyes as is Charlemagne / & fynde some meanes to yelde Rey- ³² nawde & his brethern to Charlemagne. And this ye shall well ³ may doo wythoute blame, yf ye wyll doo

¹—¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. N. iii. ³ well may = be able.
that I shall counseyle you.' 'Frende,' sayd the kyng yeon / 'I am redy to doo that whiche ye shal counseille me,¹ above all other that ben here' /  

Thenne whan the kyng yeon of Gascoyn sawe that yᵉ moost party of his counseille accorded to that he sholde yelde Reynawde and his brethren to kyng Charlemagne, he beganne to wepe right tenderly / and sayd in hymself, that no body cowde bere it. 'Bi god, Reynawde, I am sore charged for you / now shall de parte my love fro you. For ye shall lese the body / and I shall lese therby the love of god and of his moder. For I shall never fynde mercy in hym / for to betraye suche a knyghte as ye be' / But I telle you that god shewed that daye for Reynawde a fayr myracle, for the chamber where the counseille was kepte that was all white / chaunged colour and becam all blacke as a cole: 'Lorde,' sayd the kyng Yon, 'I see well that I muste yelde the foure sones of Aymon. syth that the moost parte of you accordeth therto. And I shall doo it / syth that ye counseyle me soo / But I wote well that my soule shall never have therof noo pardonne; And ²shall be therfore taken all my lyffe as a Judas.' and thenne they lefte the counseyle, and wente out of the chamber. And whan the kyngye was come out of the chamber: he sette hym doun vpon a benche, and beganne to thynke sore / And as he was in this thoughte / he beganne to wepe sore for grete pyte that he had / And whan he had thoughte and wept ynough / he called his secretary, and sayd to hym: 'Come forth, syre Peter / and write a letter from me to the kinge Charlemagne, as I shall telle you: It is that I sende hym salutacyon wyth goode love / And yf he wyll leve me my londe in peas, I promyse hym that a-fore ten dayes ben paste / I shall delyver vnto hym

¹ Car je voy et connois que vous me donnez bon conseil, F. orig. l. i. ² Fol. N. iii, back.

CHARL. ROM. X
and says he will send the Sons to Vaucouleurs, clothed in scarlet upon mules, so that men shall know them.

The Steward departs for Montalban, where he finds the Emperor in his pavilion, and presents him with the letters.

the foure sones of Aymon, and he shall fynde theym in the playne of Valcolours / clothed wyth scarlette / furred wyth ermynes, and ridyng vpon mewles / berynge in theyr handes flowres and roses for a token / bycause that men shall better knowe theym. And I shall make them to be accompanied of eyghte erles of my royame / & yf they scape from hym, that he blame me not for it.' Thenne sayd the secretare, 'Sire, your commaundemente shall be doon.' the whiche toke anone penne and ynk, and wrote the lettres / worde for worde, as the kyng had devysed to hym. And when they were writen and sealed, the kyng called his stywarde, and sayd to hym / 'Now make you redy on horsbacke / and goo to the sege of Mountalban / and recommende me to kyng Charlemagne: and gyve hym thise lettres / And telle hym, yf they wyll quyte my londe / I shall doo this that is of reason, and none otherwyse.' 'Syre,' sayd the stywarde, 'I shall gladly doo your commaundemente / doubt not of it.' Thenne wente the stywarde in his house, and made hym redy on horsbacke, and rode out of Tholouse, and toke the herawde of Charlemagne wyth hym / And whan they were come to Mountalban, thei fonde the emperour in his pavylion / where the stywarde lyghted doun / and wente wythin / and saluted the kynge Charlemagne fro the kynge Yon of Gascoyn / and presented hym the lettres fro his behalve, and sayd to hym; 'Ryght myghty emperour, the kynge Yon sendeth you worde by me / that yf ye wyll ensure his londe, he shall fulfylle the tenoure of this lettre / and otherwyse he wyll not.'

When charlemagne vnderstode thise tydynges, he was right gladde / he toke the lettre of the messager / And called Rowlande to hym, and Olyver /

1–1 Et lors sen entra en sa chambr... F. orig. l. ii. back. 2 Fol. N. iv.
the bysshop Turwyn / the duke Naymes / Oyger the
dane / and the xii peres 1of Fraunce 1 / and sayd to
theym / 'Fayre lorde, be not dysplayed: goo out of
this pavilion / for I wyll talke with this messager
pryvely.'  'Syre,' sayd they all, 'wyth a good wyll' /
And than they wente all oute of the pavyllion / and
whan they were all goon / Charlemagne opened the
8 lettres, and red theym all alone / And he fonde therin
that whiche he mooste desyred in this worlde / that
was the trayson as it was ordeyned / When Charle-
agne had red the lettre, he myghte be noo gladder
12 than he was. And of the grete Ioye that he had of it /
he beganne to smyle / 'Syre,' sayd the stywarde, 'yf
ye see ought in the lettre that playseth you not / blame
not me for it / 2For I knowe not yet what it is.'
16 Thenne sayd Charlemagne to the stywarde / 'Your
lorde, the kynge Yon, speketh full curtesly / and yf he
doo that he dooth me to wyte / he shall be well my
goode frende / And soo shall I doo to hym grete wor-
20 shyp, and shall make hym a grete man / and also I shall
defende hym agenst all men.'  'Syre,' sayd the sty-
warde, 'of this that ye saye / ye shall gyve me suretyes
if it playse you.'  Thenne sayd Charlemagne, 'I wyll
24 doo soo 3gladly / This I swere vpon the sone of the
vyrgyn Mary, and also vpon saynte Denys of Fraunce,
whos man I am.'  'Syre, ye have sayd all ynoughe,'
answered the messager of kynge Yon / 'And noon other
28 surety I aske of you.'

Thenne Charlemagne called hys chambrelayne, and
sayd to hym / 'Make a lettre to kynge Yon of
Gascoyne in my behalve / as I shall devyse it vnto
32 you. Wryte that I sende hym salutacyon and goode
love / And that yf he dooth for me as he sayth, I shall
encrease his royame wyth fourtene goode castelles /

1—1 omitted. F. orig. l. i. back.  2—2 omitted, F. orig. l. ii.
3 Fol. N. iv. back.
and therof I gyve hym for surete our lorde and saynte Denys of Fraunce / and that I sende hym four maunteltes of scarlette furred wyth ermyes, for to clothe wythall the traytoures, when they shall goo to the 4 playne of Valcoloures. And there they shall be hanged, yf god wyll. And I wyll not that ony other have harme, but oonly the foure sones of Aymon.' / 'Syre,' sayd the chambrelayne / 'your commandement shall 8 be well doon' / and theynne he made the lettres as themperour had devysed hym. And when he had made theym, the emperour Charlemagne sealed theym / and after he called the messager afore his presence, and 12 sayd to hym / 'Holde thise lettres, and take theym to kynge Yon from me, and recommende me moche to hym.' And thenne he dyde gyve hym x marke of golde / and a ryng that he toke of 1 his fynger / wherof 16 the messer thankd hym moche humbly, and incontynente lyghted on horsback. 2 And whan he was arryved, he salved the kynge yon of Gascoyn from kynge Charlemagnes behalve. And toke hym the 20 lettres and the maunteltes, 3 as Charlemagne had commanded hym.

Thenne whan the messager of the kynge yon was goon / Charlemagne made come afore hym Foulques of moryllon and Ogyer the dane / and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, I have sente for you / For I wyll that ye knowe a lytyll of my secretes. But I telle you, vpon your feythe that none other shall knowe the 28 same, but oonly we, vs thre, unto the tyme that the dede be accomplysshed.' 'Sire,' sayd Ogyer, 'yf ye thynke that we sholde dyscovere your secrete, telle it vs not / And yf ye truste vs, declare hardely your 32 playsur.' 'Certes,' sayd the emperour to Ogyer, 'ye be well worthy to knowe all. For I knowe you for a

1 off. 2 et sen va vers thoulouse, F. orig. l. ii. 3-3 omitted, F. orig. 4 Fol. N. v.
How Ogier departs for Vaucouleurs.

Ogier, thy trusty knyghte.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogier, 'your goode gramery. But I telle you that I wylle not knowe noo thynge therof / but that ye take firste

myn othe the ropon' / 'Lorde,' sayd Charlemagne / 'I take it.' Now shall ye goo to the playne of Valcolours / wyth thre hundred knyghtes well armed / and whan ye shall come there, ye shall fynde the four sones of

Aymon / And thus I commaunde you, that ye brynge themy to me other deed or quycke.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogier, 'I sawe themy never but armed: How shall we knowe themy.' / 'Ogyer,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye shall

well may knowe themy / For eche of them shall be clothed wyth a mauntell of scarlette furred wyth ermynes / and shall bere roses in theyr haules.' 'Sire,' sayd Ogier, 'that is a goode token / and we shall do your commaundement.' They made none other taryeng, but departed from the ooste of the kyng Charlemagne as pryvely as they myghte doo / And rode to the playne of Valcolours / and put themy selfe in a busshement

wythin a woode all of serpyn trees / vnto the tyme that the four sones of Aymon came to the playne of Valcoloures / Ha, god! why knewe not Reynawde and his brethern this mortalle trayson, for they wolde not have come thero\(^3\) vpon mewles. / But they sholde have come there vpon goode horses, and well armed, as prue and worthy knyghtes that they were / But, and god had not remedyyed it / this Reynawde and his brethern sholde have ben soone taken in a lityl space / for they were in daunger of deth. Whan Ogier the dane and Foulques of Moryllen were in theyr bushement / Foulques called his folke and sayd to themy: 'Fayr lordes, I oughte well to hate Reynawde / for he slewe myn vncle by grete wronge / Now am I come to the poynte that I shall be avenged on hym / and I shall

---

1 omitted, F. orig. l. iii. back. 2 Fol. N. v. back. 3 comme bricons, F. orig. l. iii. back.
telle you now. Now wyte it that the kynge Yon of Gascoyn hath betrayed theym;¹ and they shall come hider anone, all vnarmed sauf their swerdes / ²And therfore² I praye you all that ye thynke to smyte well ⁴vpon theym / thenne shall I knowe who loveth me beste. Doo soo that none of theym scape / and ye shall be well, my goode frendes. And I shall love you well.'

Now shall we telle you of the kynge Yon that was at Tholouse: whan he had receyved the lettres of the kynge Charlemagne, he called to hym his secre-
tary Godras, and sayd to hym, 'Loke what this lettre sayeth:' And the clerke brake incontynente the scale, ¹²and behelde the tenoure of the lettre / and founde how Reynawde & his brethern sholde be betrayed / and lyvered to dethe / And whan the clerke had redde the lettre, he beganne to wepe tenderly; and yt it had ¹⁶not be for doubte of the kyng, he wolde gladly have vtted it. And whan kynge Yon sawe his secretary wepe, he sayd thus to hym: 'kepe well vpon your lyf that ye hide no thyng fro me, but telle me all that the ²⁰lettre conteyneth, and what the kynge Charlemagne wrytteth ³to me.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Godras / 'It is a sore thynge for to reherce' / 'Now lightely,' ⁴sayd the kynge Yon:⁴ 'telle me what the kynge Charlemagne ²⁴sendeth me.' 'Syre,' sayd Godras, 'I shall telle it you gladly' / And thenne he beganne to shewe to kynge Yon how Charlemagne sende hym worde / that yt he wolde doo as he had wryten vnto hym, he sholde en- ²⁸creace his power of fourtene goode castelles more than he had.

For the surete wherof, he swereth it vnto you vpon our lord god / and saynte Denys of Fraunce, ⁴⁴his ³²patrone⁴ / And he sendeth you four mauntelles of

¹ et les doit remectre a charlemaigne . . . F. orig. l. iii.
²—² Et pourtant quant ilz viendront . . . F. orig. l. iii.
³ Fol. N. vi. ⁴—⁴ omitted, F. orig.
scarlētte furred wyth ermynes / that ye shall gyve to
the four sones of Aymon for to were theym / And
thus they shall be known. For Charlemagne wyll not
that none take ony harme / but onely the four sones
of Aymon / And he doth you to wyte, that his folke
are wythin a bussiaemmente wythin a woode by the playn
of Valcolours / that is to wyte, Foulques of Moryllon
and Ogyer the Dane, wyth thre hundred men well
horsed and well armed, that abyden there the four
sones of Aymon / ye whiche ye sholde lyver in to theyr
handes.' Whan the kyng Yon vnderstode the tenoure
of the lettre, He made haste for to fulfylle his promyse /
And Incontynente he lyghted on horsbacke: and toke
in his company a hundred men well arrayed / and toke
his waye towarde Mountalban. And as soone as he
myghte / he came / and entred wythin atte the gate
fletcher. And whan he was wythin, he made his folke
to lodge theym in the borow / And he wente up to the
palays, as he was wounte to doo whan he came there.
Thenne whan hys suster, the wyffe of Reynawde, wyste
of the comynge of the kyng yon her brother / she
came agenst hym & toke hym by the hande, & wolde
have kissed hym as she 1 was accustomed to do whan he
cam there, but the kyng, full of evyll trayson, tourned
his face a syde / And sayd he had the tooth aiche, and
wolde not speke wyth her but lityll / But he sayd that
men sholde make hym a bedde redy / For he wolde
reste hymselfe a lityll 2 / and whan he was layd, he
gan me sore to thynke, and sayd to hym selfe, 'Ha,
goode lorde / what have I wroughte agenste the beste
knyghtes of the worlde that I have betrayed soo
falsely / Now shall they be honged to morowe wythoute
fawte. I praye god to have mercy and pyte vpon
theym / now may I well say that I shall be lykened to

1 Fol, N. vi, back.
2 pour myeulx couvrir sa trahison, F. orig. 1. iv. back.
Iudas from hens forthe. And I shall have loste the love of god / and of his moder / and also myn honour. But I muste nedes doo it, syth I have promysed it soo / And the wyle of my barons is suche / for thus they have counseyllled and have made me doo it. 1 Whereof I am full sore dysplayset.'

Reynawde and his brethren return from hunting.

A lle thus as the kyng yon thought in the grete treyson that was thus machyned vpon the four sons of Aymon / there came in Reynawde from hunting / and all hys bretherne wyth hym, and had taken foure wylde bores sore grete / and whan Reynawde was within Mountalban / he herde the noyse of the horses, 12 and wende that it had ben strange knyghtes that were come vnto hym to take wages. 2 And thenne he asked of a yoman, what folke were thees strangeres that were come in wythoute leve / 'Syre,' sayd the yoman, 'they ben the folke of kynge yon, that is come wythin for to speke wyth you of some materes / But me semeth by his folke that he is not well atte ease of his persone. 3

Thanne sayd the goode Reynawde / 'Ha, god / why hath my lorde traveylled hym selfe soo moche for to come hyder, For I wolde wyth a goode wyll have goon to hym' / And after, whan he had that sayd, he called to hym a servaunte of his, and sayd to hym / 'Goo fette me my horne Boudyere / For I wyll make feest and Ioye for the comyng of my soverayne lorde,' and Incontynente it was broughte to hym / And Reynawde toke it / and sayd to his bretherne / 'Now take eche of you his owne, and lete vs make feeste for the love of kynge Yon.' 4 Thenne they toke eche of them his horne, and beganne to sowne all foure at ons ryght hyghe. And made so grete noyse 32

1–1 omitted, F. orig. l. iv. back.
2–2 Reynault, F. orig.
3 Car il semble a le veoir qu'il soit mal dispose, F. orig.
4 Fol. N. vii.
5–5 omitted, F. orig.
6 Sire dirent ilz nous le ferons tres volentiers, F. orig. l. iv.
that the castell sowned of it. For they made so grete Ioye for the love of the kynge Yon, that it was merveyll. Whan the kynge Yon herde the trompettes, that thus sowned soo sore that the chambre where as he laye shoke of it, he arose vp from the bed and came to the wyndowe / and sayd to hymselfe / 'Ha, what evyl have I wroughte agenste thyse knyghtes! Alas, how make ye Ioye agenste soo grete a combrancce, the whiche I have purchaced to you / I have betrayed you right falsely / as a wycked and vntrewe kynge that I am / For a man that betrayeth his frende, oughte never to have honoure, nother in this worlde nor in the other / but oughte to be loste bothe body and soule / For ne has forsaken god, and hath gyven hym sefle to the devyll.' And whan he had sayd that / he returned agayne vpon his bedde, sore vexed atte the herte, and evyll at ease more than ony man myghte be. Thenne Reynawde and his brethern came vp to the palays, where they fouande the kynge yon. & whan he sawe theym com, he rose agenst theym, and toke theym the haunde, and sayd to Reynawde / 'Be not merveyllled that I have not embraced nor kyssed you, for I am sore laden wyth grete evyll / And it is well fourtene dayes goon that I cowde nother ete nor drynke ony thyng that dyde me goode.' Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'syre, ye be in a good place, where ye shall be tended vpon right well with goddis grace. And I and my bretherne shall serve you to our power' / 'Gramercy,' sayd the kynge Yon / Thenne called he his stywarde, and sayd to hym, 'Goo and brynge me the mantelles of scarlette furred wyth emynes / that I have doon make for my dere frendes.' Incontynente the stywarde dyde the

1 si que lon cuidoit que le clocher de la chapelle saint Nyeholas en deust tomber par terre, F. orig. l. iv.
2—2 omitted, F. orig.
3 Fol. N. vii. back.
4 quinze jours, F. orig. l. iv.
5—5 omitted, F. orig. l. iv.
and puts them on the Sons, praying them to wear them for love of him.

John takes Reynawde by the hand, and relates to him how he has interviewed Charlemagne in their behalf, and obtained his consent to make peace, if the Sons will go to Vaucouleurs unarmed.

commaundement of kynge yon. And assone that he was come agayne, the kynge made the foure bredern to putt the four mantelles vpon theym, and prayed theym to were theym for his love. 'Sire,' sayd Alarde, 'this is a gladde presente / And we shall were theym for the love of you, wyth veri goode wyll' / Alas, yf they had knowen how the thyng was broughte aboute / they sholde not have borne theym, but they sholde have 8 doon all other wyse. Alas, and what sorowfulle harme they had of this, that they were thus clothed. For that were the tokens & reconyssaunce wherof they were in daungeur of deth, yf god had not holpen theym of his pyte and mercy. And whan the foure sones of Aymon had theyr mantelles on / the kynge Yon behelde theym / and had of theym grete pyte, and beganne to wepe. There was his stywarde, that the 16 trayson well wyste / that sayd not one worde for fere of the kynge Yon / And whan the mete was redy / Reynawde prayed moche the kynge that he wolde ete. For he made hym to be served right well. Whan 20 they had eten, the kynge Yon rose vpon his feete / and toke Reynawde by the hande, and sayd to hym, 'My fayre broder & my goode irende / I wyll telle a couceryll that ye know not / Now wyte that I 24 have ben atte Mountbenden, and I have spoken wyth kynge Charlemagne, the whiche charged me of treyson / by cause that I kepe you in my royame / wherof I have presented my gage afore all his company; and no 28 man was there soo hardy that durste speke agenste that, that I sayd. After this we had many wordes togyder / emonge whiche we spake of goode accorde and of peas / wherof at the last the kyng Charlemagne 32 was contente for my love for to make peas wyth you / in the maner that foloweth. That is to wyte, that tomarowe erly ye shall goo to the playne of Valcoloures,

1 Fol. N. viii.
ye and your brethren, all vnarmed but of your swerdes / mounted vpon your mewles / and cloathed wyth the mantelles that I have gyven to you; and that ye shall 4 bere in your handes roses and flores. and I shalle sende wyth you eyghte of myn erles, for to goo more honourable / the whiche ben all of mylynage / And there ye shall fynde the kyng Charlemagne / and the 8 duke Naymes of baviere / and Ogyer the dane, and all the xii peres of Fraunce / and there charlemagne shall gyve you suerte. And ye shall doo to hym reverence in suche manere that ye shall caste yourselfe to his 12 feete, and there he shall pardo?ine you / and he shall gyve you agayne all your londes entieily.'

Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'Sire, for god, mercy; For I have grete doubte of the kyng Charlemagne, 16 by cause he hateth us to deth, as ye knowe / and I promyse you, yf he holdeth vs, he shall make vs to deye a shamfull deth.' 'Goode frende,' sayd the traytour kyng Yon, 'have noo doubte atte all; For he 20 hath sworne vnto me vpon his feyth afore all hys baronye' / 'Syre,' answerde Reynawde, 'we shall doo your commaundementes.' 'Ha god,' sayde Alarde / 'What saye you, brother / ye knowe well that 1Charle-
tagne hathe made his othe many tymes, that yf he maye take vs ones by ony maner of meane, he shall bryng vs to a shamfull deth. Now I merveylle me gretly of you, fayr brother / how ye wyll accord for to 28 goo put yourselfe and vs into his handes all vnarmed, as a poure myshaunte / Never have god mercy vpon my soule yf I goo there wythoute myn armes, nor wythout to be as it apperteyneth!' 'broder,' sayd 32 Reynaude, 'ye saye not wele / God forbede that I sholde mystruste my lorde, the kyng Yon, of ony thynge that he telleth me.' And thenne he tourned hym towarde the kyng Yon, and sayd to hym / 'Sire,

1 Fol. N. viii. back.
Reynawde tells John he shall go there to-morrow without fail, and then goes to the chamber of his lady, and tells her all King John has said, and how they will make peace with the Emperor.

The lady enquires where the treaty shall be made.

wythoute ony fawte we shall be there to morowe erly in the mornynge, What soever happeth of it. 'Fayre lorde,' sayd Reynawde, 'god hath holpen vs well, that we have peas wyth the kynge Charlemagne, to whom we have made soo longe tyme so mortall a werre; but syth that my lorde, the kynge Yon, hath made this peas, I am contente to doo to hym as moche reverence as to me is possible / For I am delired to goo naked in my smalle lynen clothes to the mount saynte Mychaell.' And when Reynawde had sayd this worde, he toke leve of kynge Yon; and wente in to the chambre of the fayr lady his wyff, and fonde there his other two brethern, that were wyth her / And whan the lady sawe her husbonde com / she came agenst hym, & toke hym betwyx bothe her armes by grete love, & kyssed hym / 'Lady,' sayd Reynawde, 'I oughte well to love you by grete rayson / For your broder, the kynge Yon, hath traveyled hyraselfe ryght sore for me; and hath ben sore blamed atte the courte of charlemagne for me, but he hath doon soo moche, blessed be god, that he hath made my peas wyth the kynge Charlemagne; And that Rowlande and Olyver, nor all the twelve peres of Fraunce myghte never make, he hath graunted vs agen all our londes / And all thus we shall be riche / and shall lyve all our liffe in rest & peas / and so shall we mowe helpe / and gyve the havoyre that we have, to the powre knyghtes that have served vs all their lif 4 truly and well.'

Thenne sayd the lady, 'I thanke god gretly therof with all my herte / But telle me where the concordauns shall be made, and hide it not from me, if it playse you' / 'Ladi,' sayd Reynawde, 'I shall telle it you wythout ony fawte / Wyte that tomorowe we

1—1 tous ses freres, F. orig. l. v.
2—2 et leembrasse par grant amour, F. orig. l. v.
3 Fol. O. i. 4—4 omitted, F. orig.
muste ride to the playne of Valcoloures, and there the peas shall be made; but I and my brethern muste goo thair wythoute armes but oonly our swerdes, and

4 vpon mewles / berynge roses in our handes / And there we shall fynde the duke Naymes of bavyere, & Ogier the dane, and all the xii. peres of Fraunce, that shall receyve our othes.' When the lady vnderstoole

8 thise wordes / she was soo sore an angred therof that almoste she had loste her wytte / and sayd to Reynawde / 'Sir, yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall not go one fote there / For the playnes of Valcoloures are soo
dangerous / for there is a roche right lighe, and there ben foure grete woodes rounde aboute.\(^1\) yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall take a daye for to speke wyth Charlemagne here in the medowes of Mountalban;

16 and ye shall goo there mounted vpon bayarde, and your brethern wyth you / and there ye maye conferme your peas / or elles contynue your werre. and take two thousands knyghtes, & gyve them to maugys

20 your cosin, whiche shall kepe theim in a busshement vpon the ryvage, yf it happe you to have nede; for I doubte me sore of trayson. wherfore I praye you that ye kepe your selfe well sure / For I dyd dreme to

24 nyghte a dreme, that was farefull and merveyllous. For me semed that I was atte the wyndowes of the grete 2palays, & sawe com oute of the grete wood of Ardeyn well a thousande wylde bores / that had grete

28 & horryble teeth; the whiche slewe you / and rented your body all in peces;\(^3\) and also I sawe that the grete towre of Mountalban fell doun to gronde / and, moreover, I sawe a shot of adventure / that smote your

32 broder Alarde so harde that it perced his body throughe and throughe / and that the chapell of saynt Nycolas, which is wythin this castell, felle doun to therthe,

---

\(^1\) Dont la maindre dure bien dix lienes, F. orig. l. vi. back.
\(^2\) Fol. O. i. back.  \(^3\) omitted, F. orig. l. vi. back.
and all the ymages that ben in it wepte for grete pyte. And that two angeles came doun from hevyn, that hanged your broder Richard at an apull tree / and thenne the sayd Rycharde cryed wyth an hyghe voice / Fayr broder Reynawde, come and heipe me! and Incontynente ye wente there vpon your horse Bayarde, but he felle doun by the waye vnder you wherfore ye myghte not come tyme ynough / wherof ye were full sory. And therfore, ¹ good syre, ¹ I counseylle you that ye goo not there.'

'Lady,' sayd Reynawde, 'holde your peas; For who that beleveth over moche in dremes / he 12 dooth agenste the commaundemente of god.' Thenne sayd Alarde, 'by the feyth that I owe to god / I shall never sette soote there.' 'nor I nother,' sayd Richard / 'Alas,' sayd thenne Guycharde / 'yf we muste goo 16 there, lete vs not departe thyderwarde as men of counselle, but lete vs goo there like as prue and worthy knyghtes / havynge eche of vs his armes vpon hym, & well a horsbacke, ¹ and not vpon mewles; ¹ and 20 that our broder Reynawde be well mounted vpon bayarde, which² shall maye bere vs all four at a nede' / 'by god,' sayd reynawd, 'ye shall say what ye wyll / but I shall goo there, as I have sayd: what soever 24 happeth' / And thenne he wente out of his chambe, & came to kynge Yon / and sayd to hym, 'By god, I merveylle me moche of my bredern, that wyll not go wyth me, by cause ³ they have no horses wyth theym. 28 and yf it playse you, ye shall gyve vs leve to take eche of vs a horse, & ye shall kepe stylly your eyghte erles wyth you / and we shall go there as ye have commaunded vs' / 'I wyll not doo it,' sayd the kyng yon / 32 'For the kyng Charlemagne doubteth you to sore, & your bredern, and your horses / and also I have gyven

¹¹ omitted, F. orig. l. vi. ² shall may = be able. ³ Fol. O. ii.
hostages & suretes that ye shall bere noo maner of harneys wyth you, but oonly your swerdys, as I have tole you afore / and that ye shall ride vpon mewles, and not vpon horses/ And yf ye goo there otherwyse arayed, Charlemagne shall thinke that I wil betraye hym, and so shall he dystroye all my londe / that shall be the payment that I shall have for you / I have traveylled myselfe full sore for to brynge you & your bredern atte one wyth Charlemagne; and therefore, goo there yf ye wyll, and yf ye wyll not / leve it.'

T
dehe sayd Reynawde, 'Sir, syth that it is soo / we shall goo there;' and thende he wente from king yon in to his chambre agayne / and fonde his wyff, that noble lady, alarde & Richard / that asked hym how he had doon / and if they sholde have his goode horse bayarde wyth them.' 'By god,' sayd Reynawde, 'I canne not have leve to doo so; but, my bredern, doubte you not / for the kyng yon is as true a prynce; and yf he sholde betraye vs / he sholde be sore blamed for it, for he shall make vs to be con-
duyttee by eyght of the moost grete erles of his royame / and god confoude me yf I sawe ever ony evyll doon by hym.' 'Syr,' sayd his bredern, 'we shall goo gladly wyth you, sith that ye wyll have vs nedes to doo soo.' when they were thus accorded herto / they wente to bed, & slepte vnto the daye appered / And when Reynawde sawe the day, he rose vp, and sayd to his bredern, 'Arise, syres, & make vs redy / for to goo there as we shold goo / for if Charlemagne be soner to the playnes of Valcolours than we / he shall haply be angry for it.' 'Syre,' sayd his bredern, 'we shall soone be redy.' and when they were all redy, they went to the chirche of saynt Nycolas for to here and says that he has given his word to Charle-
magne that they shall go on mules.

Reynawde then determines to go, and tells his wife that John would never betray them, and that he will send eight Earls with them for safe conduct.

1—1 que vous ny pourterez armes ne ne serez montez sur voz cheaulx, F. orig. l. vi. 2—2 omitted, F. orig.
3 Guichart, F. orig. 4 Fol. O, ii. back.
masse / and when [they] cam to the offrynge, Reynawde & his bredern offered many riche yeftes / And after the masse was doon\(^1\) / they asked after theyr mewles, & incontynent they mounted vpon / and in their felaw- 4 shyp were eyghte eiles / the whiche knewe all the maner of trayson. and when they were all mounted they toke on theyr way, but the foure sones of Aymon were good to knowe by thother / for they had on grete 8 mauntelles of scarlet furred with ermynes / and bare in theyr handes roses in token of peas, and also theyr swerdes / for \(^2\)they wold not girde theym.\(^3\) \(^3\)Now god be wyth theym\(^3\) / for if he kepe them not / they ben 12 in waye of perdicyon, and never to com agen to Montalban / Whan the kyng yon sawe theym thus goo, he felle down in a swoune more than four tymes, for the grete sorowe that he had atte his hert / \(^4\)for how be it 16 that he had betrayed theym so / yet had he grete pite of theym\(^4\) / but this that he had doon / evyll comseyll had made hym doo it / And themne he began to make the gretest sorow in the worlde / and sayd / ‘Ha, 20 good lord, what have I doon / dyde ever ony man so grete a trayson as I have doon, nay vereli; for I have betrained the best knyghtes of ye worlde / and the most worthy / \(^5\)and true.'\(^5\)

\(^1\) chantee, F. orig. l. vii. back.
\(^2\) Ilz ne les volurent oneques laisser, F. orig. l. vii. back.
\(^3\) or en pense nostre seigneur qui prit mort et passion en la croix, F. orig. P. vii. back.
\(^4\) Car non obstant qu'il les auoit ainsi trahiz Il en auoit peur, F. orig. l. vii.
\(^5\) omitted, F. orig.
knowe this mater / Reynawde dyd grete foly / when he toke 1 not your advyse in this thyng / for yf he had knowen of it ye sholde not have suffred hym [to] go 4 there' / 'Lorde,' sayd y' kynge yon, 'I, poure wretche / whether shall I becom, if the four sones of Aymon deye / for mawgis shall slee me wythout merci / and also it is well rayson / for who that betraeth a nother 8 & pryncipally his frende carnall ought not to lyve nor have ever ony worship 12 / but his folke toke hym vp incontynejite & began to reco?forte hym by many grete raysons 3 that thei layde afore hym.

Nowe begynneth the piteouse histori of the four sones of aymon, that went to their dethe by the meanes of y' traytour kyng yon / And because of the trayson that he commytted agenst the four sones of 16 aymon / he loste the royame of gascoyn, the name & the dygnyte therof 4 / for never sin that tyme was no kyng crowned in gascoyn. Now shall I telle you of Rey- nawde & of his brederm 5 / thenne rode Reynawde & his 20 brederm towarde the playne of Valcoloures / and as they rode thiderwarde, Alarde began to syngge 6 right swetly 8 & joyfull 8 a new song / and Guycharde & Richardo dide in lykewyse / but I telle you that no instrument 24 of musike 7 sowned never so melodiously as the the brederm dyd syngyng togider; alas, what pite was it of so noble & so worthy knyghtes that wente syngyng & makyng ioye to their deth; they were as the swan 28 that syngeth that yere that he shal deye / Reynaude went behynde theym sore thynkyng; his hede bowed doun towards therthe / and behelde his bretherm that

---

1 Fol. O. iii.
2 Et quant Il eut ce dit, Il cheut tout pasme a terre, F. orig. l. vii., omitted in Caxton.
3--3 omitted, F. orig. l. vii.
4 de non jamais y anoir roy, F. orig. l. vii.
5 que dieu vuclle garder de mal et descombrer par sa pitie, F. orig. l. vii.
6--6 omitted, F. orig.
7 ne psalterion, F. orig.
rode forth makyng grete ioye / and he sayd / 'O god, what knyghtes be my bredern, that there ben none suche\(^1\) in all the worlde, nother so gracous' / and whan he had sayd this, he set his handes togyder & heved 4 them vp towarde hevyn, all wepyng / and sayd in this maner, 'Good lorde, by thy glorious & blessed name,\(^2\) that dydest cast danyell out fro the Lyons / and delyverest Ionas fro the fysshes beli / and saved saynt 8 peter when he caste hymselfe in the see for to com to y\(^6\), and pardonne\(^3\) mari magdalene / and made y\(^6\) blynde to see / and suffred passion and dethe upon the crosse for our synnes / and pardonne lonugys\(^4\) that 12 smote the wyth a spere\(^4\) in to thy blessed side\(^4\)/ wherfro thy blessed blood fell in to his eyen; and incontinent he recovered his sylghte therby / and by thy resurrec
tyon / kepe this daye my body (yf it playse the) fro 16 deth & fro prison; and also my bredern, for I wote not where we goo / but me semeth that we go in grete peryle' / And whan he had fynysshed his oroyson, his eyen wexed weete agen for pite that he had / lest his 20 brethern sholde have ony harme for love of hym / For it playseed theim not well that they were so bare of their armes.

Thenze when alarde saw his broder Reynaud that 24 had his eyen full of teres, he sayd to hym, 'Ha, broder,\(^5\) what eylleth you / I have seen you in right grete peryll, & a bout a harde werke / but I sawe you never make so yll chere as ye doo now, for I have seen 28 you wepe at this owre / Wherof I merveyll me gretly / for I wote well for certeyn that ye wepe not wythoute some grete occasion.' Thenze sayd Reynaud / 'fayr broder, me aylleth no thynge' / 'By the feyth that I 32 owe to you,' sayd alarde, 'ye wepe not for no thynge.

---

1 si bons, F. orig. l. viii. back.  
2 Fol. O. iii. back.  
3 Longius.  
4 omitted, F. orig.  
5 beau sire Regnault, F. orig. l. viii. back.
This is the day that we sholde be attone wyth kyng Charlemagne; so praye I you for god, my dere broder, that ye leve this sorow / and lete vs goo forth merely, & bereoute a good face as longe as we ben alyve / for after that a man is ones deceased / it is no more spoken of him. And thus I praye you, broder, that ye synge wyth vs; For ye have soo fayr a voyce, that it is a grete playseure for to here you syng, whan ye be wyll-ynge to it.’ ‘Brother,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘wyth a goode [will,] syth 1 that it playseth you.’ And themne began Reynawde for to syng so meledously that it was grete playseure for to here hym. Soo longe rode the four sones 2 of Aymon 2 the lityll pase of their mewles, synge-ynge & devysynge amonoge theyn selfe, that they came to the playne of Valcolours / Now wyll I telle you of the facyon of the valey. For wyte, that ys I telled you not / ye sholde not maye 3 knowe it / There is a roche right hie and noyous to goo vp / and it is envyronned rounde aboute wyth four grete 2 forestes ryght grete & thyck, for the leest is there a dayes journey to ryde thorugh it ; and there ben four grete ryvers all aboute it sore depe / wherof y e gretest is named Gyrounde ; the other is called Dordonne ; the thirde is named Nore / and the other Balancon ; and there is nother castell nor towne 4 by XX myles nyghe aboute it. And thherefore the trayson was there devysed / for this playne 2 of Valcolours 2 was ferre from all folke / and there was a waye crossed in four / the one waye was towarde Fraunce, the other in to Spayne / the other 5 in to Galycye, and the fourt in to Gascoyn. And at every one of theyse four e wayes was layde a busslement of V hundred men well horsed 2 and armed, 2 for to take Reynawde & his bredern quycke or deed ; for thus had

---

1 Fol. O. iv. 2 omiss. F. orig. 3 be able. 4 ne nulle habitacion, F. orig. i. viii. 5 le tiers, F. orig. i. viii.
they sworne it, and promysed to kynge Charlemagne. Thenne cam there Reynawde & his brethern wyth theyr felawshyp of eyghte erles, that the kyng yon of Gascoyn had take to theym, the whiche wyst well all the mys-tery of this trayson. And incontynent Ogier, the dane, sawe theym firste of all / the whiche was all abashed / and sayd to his folke, 'Fayr lorde, ye ben my men, my subgettes, & my frendes; ye knowe that Reynawde is my cosyn, & I oughte not to see his dethe nor his dommage. Wherfore I praye you all that ye wyll doo hym no harme at all, nor to none of his brethern, my cosyns.' They answerd all, that they sholde doo his commaundement wyth a goode wyll / This hangynge, Reynawde & his brethern passed by and wente in to the myddes of the playne.

Thenne whan Reynawde & his brethern were com there, and fonde noo body / they were of it sore abasshed / And after, whan Alarde saw this / he called his brother Rycharde, and sayd to hym: 'What is this, fayr brother, I see well that we ben betrayed / for I see you chauwge your colour / how thynke ye?' 'Brother,' sayd Richard, 'I doubte me sore for reynawde.' 'Have noo doubte,' sayd Alarde; 'for we shall have no thynge but goode' / 'My brother,' sayd Rycharde, 'I promyse you all, my herte shaketh / nor never in my dayes I had not soo grete feere; For all my heeres rise vp / Wherof I doubte me sore that we ben betrayed / And that more is, I sholde not be aferde yf Reynawde were armed and set vpon bayarde, and we also; for thus as we ben now, we ben halfe discomfyted' / And whan he had sayd thus, he spake to Reynawde and sayd: 'Brother, why do we tary here, sith that we have founde noo body wyth whom we sholde speke? for yf xx knyghtes were here armed / they

1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. O. iv. back. 3 Guichard, F. orig. m. i. back.
sholde have vs where they wolde, mawgre our teeth as bestes / seenge that we have so many enmyes in Fraunce. Ye wolde not beleve this that we tolde you / and also your wyf at Mountalban / wherof I fere me sore that ye shall have no leyser for to repente you of it / For yf our cosyn mawgis had ben here wyth vs / and that ye had your goode horse bayarde / we sholde 8 not doubte Charlemagne wyth all his puissauice, of a strawe / I praye you lete vs goo hens, for I promyse you it is foly for to abyde here long; for I know well that charlemagne hath made vs for to com here as bestes 12 clothed with scarlet / nor I can not beleve none other / but that the kyng Yon hath falsly betrayed vs / Reynawde / 'and I perceyve me well of it / now 16 lete vs goo backe agen all fayr & softe / and as they wolde have retourned,' Reynawde hehelde a side & saw well a thousande knyghtes armed, comynge a grete paas agenst theim / And foulques of morillon cam 20 afore all the other, well horsed, his shelde afore hys breste, & his spere alowe in the reest, the grete valop agenste Reynawde; 4 for he was that man in the worlde that he mooste hated. Whan Reynawd sawe com 24 foulques of morillon, he knewe hym well at his sheld, and was so an-angred for it that he wyste not what to doo. 'Ha, good lord, what shall we poure synners doo? I see well that we must deye this day withoute 28 doubte' / 'Broder,' sayd Alarde, 'what saye ye' / 'by my feyth,' sayd Reynawde, 'I see here grete sorow. Here cometh foulques of morillon for to slee vs; and whan alarde had seen theim comynge / it lacked lityll 32 that he wexed madde, and fell doun almost for grete

1—1 nous ne doubterions Charlemaigne ung bouton, F. orig. 
m. i. back. 
2 Fol. O. v. 
3 et mauluisement, F. orig. m. i. back. 
4—4 la lance baisse contre Regnault, F. orig. m. i. 
5 comynge, orig.
angre that he had of the same / and whan guychard & Richarde sawe this, they began to make grete sorow. For they scratched theyr vysages & pulled theyr heeres / And whan alarde was a lityll assured / he sayd / 'Ha, 4 fayr brethren, guychard & rycharde / now is the day com that we shall deye all throughe mortall treyson; for I knowe well that Reynawde hath betrayed vs, and certes I wolde never have thoughte that ony treyson sholde have entred wythin so noble a man as he is; he made vs come here agenst our wylles & mawgre vs, by cause he knoweth well the trayson. Ha, Reynawde, the sone of Aymon of ardeyne / and who shall 12 ever truste ony man / whan ye that are our broder, and that we take for our lord / have brought vs hider magre vs to our deth / and have betrayed vs so falsly' / 'O richarde,' sayd alarde, 'draw 2oute your swerde' / 16 by god, the traytour shall deye wyth vs. For well ought the traytour to deye that hathe procured so mortall a treyson.' When alarde had sayd this, they all thre dyde set hande to their swerdes & cam to Rey- 20 nawde for to sle hym yrefully, & sore an-angred as lyons; for they trowed for very certen that Reynaud had betrayed theym. Whan reynaude sawe theym com thus / he made semblat to defende hymself / 24 but longe at theym by grete love. ' alas,' sayd richarde, 'what had I thoughte? I wolde not slee my broder for all the good in y° worlde' / and so sayd alarde & guycharde; for thei were sore repented of 28 this that they had enterprised for to doo / and they began all for to wepe for pite, & caste their swordes doun to therthe, & kyssed reynawde, sore wepyngne. And alarde sayd, 'ha, good Reynawd, whi have you 32 betrayed vs so ? / we be nother normans nor englyshe, nor almayns; but we be all bredern of one fader & of

1 motaril, orig. 2 Fol. O. v. back. 3 du fourreau, F. orig. m. i. 4 comme lyons, F. orig. m. i. 5 Flamans, F. orig. m. i.
one moder / and we holde you for our lord. For god, brother Reynawde, tell vs of whens cometh this trayson / we ben com of so noble kyng, of gerarde of roussellon, & of dron of nantuell, & of the duk benes of aygremounte, and never none of our lynage thought no treyson / and how have ye doon so that have procured it now / agenst your naturell brethern; certes it is a 8 grete fawte to you.'

Brother,' sayd Reynawd, 'I have more grete pite of you than I have of my owne self / for I have brought you here agenste your wyll; and yf I had beleved you, this myshap had not com to vs. I have brought you here, and I promise you I shall brynge you agen from hens, wyth godlys grace. Recomende our self to our lorde, and thynke for to defende vs well, and feere not the delte for our worsyhp; For ones we must deye wythoute faylle. But it is goode to gete worsyhp / 'Broder,' sayd Richard, 'shall ye helpe vs?' / 'ye,' sayd Reynawd, 'doubt not therof' / and when he had that sayd, he torned towarde therles, & sayd to theim / 'fayr lordes, the kyng yon hath sent you wyth vs for to conduyt vs, & under the surete of you we be com here to lese our lyves / And therfor I pray you that wyll helpe vs' / 'Reynawde,' sayd therle of ansom / 'It is not for vs to bargayn here long / but let vs all flee for to save ourself, & we maye' / then ye sayd Reynawd / 'by my hede, ye be all traytours, and I shall smyte of all your hedes' / 'Broder,' sayd alarde, 'what tary ye soo long, for they be well worthy to deye / sith that they ben traitours.' and whan Reynawde vnderstode that worde of his broder / he set hauze to his swerde, & smote therle of ansom so grete a stroke upon the hede that he cloved hym to the harde teeth, & it was well rayson, for it was he that counseylled this trayson to the kyng yon; 1-1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. O. vi.
that was the rewarde that he had for the first / Whan therle of ansom was thus slayn / the other vii began to flee, and Reynawde ran after; but he coude not renne fast; for his mewle was to sore lade of the weyghte of 4 his body / so that the beest fell down under hym / for Reynawde,\(^1\) to say the trouth, was 2\(^{so}\) bygge made & so grete,\(^2\) that no horse myghte bere hym but oonly bayarde. For as it is sayd / Reynawde had xvi. fete 8 of lengthe, & was well shape of body after y\(^e\) gretnes.

Thenne whan Reynawd sawe hymselfe a grounde, he stode vp lightly 3\(^wyth\) his mewle,\(^3\) & sayd / 'Ha, bayarde, my good horse, that I am not on your 12 backe armed of all peces, for, or ever that I sholde be overcom / I sholde sell my deth full dere. Alas, none ought not to complayne my deth, sith that I have purchased it myself' / 'Broder,' sayd guycharde, 'what 16 shal we doo? here by 4\(^\text{our ennayes evyn by vs: Yf ye thynke it good, lete vs adventure to passe over this ryver, & go vpon \(^5\)that highe roche / and soo we shall maye save our selfe' / 'Goo foole,' 6\(^\text{sayd Reynawde,}\(^6\) 20 'what saye ye / ye wote well that our mewles myght not renne before the horses / what sholde avaylle vs for to flee, sith that we myght not save ourselfe / Certes I sholde not flee for all y\(^e\) world / I have lever deye 24 wyth my worship / than I sholde lyve wyth grete shame; for he that deyth in fleynge, his soule shall never be saved.' Thus as Reynawde spake to his broder Richarde,\(^6\) alarde sayd to hym, 'broder Reynawde, 28 lete vs lighte from our mewlis a fote, & shryve our selfe the one to thother,\(^7\) to thende that we be not overcom by the devyll.' 'Frende,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye well & wysely.' and they dyde as Alarde had devysed / 32

\(^1\) le filz aymon, F. orig. m. ii.  
\(^2\),\(^2\) si grant, F. orig. m. ii.  
\(^3\) omitted, F. orig.  
\(^4\) be.  
\(^5\) Fol. O. vi. back.  
\(^6\) omitted, F. orig. m. ii.  
\(^7\) Et communions nous de fueilles du boys a celle fin que nous ne foyons surprins de l'enemy, F. orig. m. ii.
And whan they were confessed thone to thother / Reynawd sayd to his brederun, 'Lordes, let vs doo suche a thynge / wherof we shal be worshipp, sith it is 4 soo that we maye not scape / lete vs kylle theym that com firste vpon vs / And we shal have advantage vpon thoder; and goddis curse have hym that shal feyne hym selfe.'

Thenne whan Alarde herde Reinawde speke thus /
he collet hym wyth his armes, and kyssed hym all wepyng, and sayd to hym: 'Broder, we ben two & two. I praye you that thone faylle not to helpe the 
12 other aslong that lyf is in our bodyes.' 'Brother,' sayd
thother, 'we shal helpe you wyth all our myghte' / and thenne they wente & kyssed Reinawde by grete love. and after, whan they had kyssed eche other /
16 they toke of their manetelles & wrapped theym aboute their lifte armes / and toke their swerdes in their handes, and begane to crie, & called their badges & tokens. Reinawde cried 'montalan' / alarde 'sayn
20 nycolas,' guyarde 'balancon' / & ye gentil richarde / 'ardeyn,' whiche was the badge or token of their fader aymon. Whan Foulques of Moryllon sawe the four 
1sones of Aymon comyng towardel hym all unarmed / 
24 and vpon mewles so boldly / he was all abasshed of it / Thenne he began to crye, and saye, 'Reynawde / Reynawde, ye are come to your dethe; and I promise you, he that moste loveth you hath betrayed you, that 
28 is the kyng You / but have pacyence, for I shall set to your nekke an halter / Now have you not your horse bayarde / the whiche ye have ryden vpon wrongfully / 
Now shall be avenged the deth of Berthelot, that ye 
32 slewe.2 Reynawde, what shall ye doo: wyll ye deffende or yelde you? but your deffence shall be not worthie to you / And ye make ony semblant to deffende your selfe / I shal sley you Incontynente.'

and Reynawde counsels them to kill all their enemies who shall first approach.

The four brethern vow to defend each other,

and then take their swords, each crying on his own banner.

Foulques of Moryllon derides Reynawde, saying he will put a halter round his neck, or slay him immediately.

1 Fol. O. vii. 2 faulcement, F. orig. m. iii. back.
'Foulques,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye spoke well like a beste; and trowe you that I shall yelde me quycke to Charlemagne or to you / I shall first smyte of your hede, and the helme wythall / yf I can retche ye knowe well how my swerde cutteth / By god, Foulques,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye are gretly to be blamed for to have gyven the counseylle for to make vs to be betrayed by the kynge Yon / For it is the 8 foulest crafte that a knyght may for to doo treyson. But doo as a gentylman oughte to doo / to the ende that, men say not that it is treyson, yf ye wyll lete vs goo / we shall be all four redy to become liegemen of the kyng Charlemagne, and I shall gyve you my horse Bayarde / the whiche I gaaf not for all the golde in the worlde; and also I shall gyve you y* stronge castell Montalban. and yf the kyng Charlemagne maketh werre agenst you for love of vs / we shall serve you wyth fyve2 hundred knyghtes well armed & well horsed ever more / and yf it playse you, ye shall save vs our lyves / And yf ye wyll not doo this / doo a 20 nother thyng that I shall telle you,3 for to kepe you to be not called a traytour / Chese XX 4knyghtes of the beste that ye have / and put theym in a felde well armed vpon good horses / & we four shall fyght wyth theym 24 vnarmed as we be, vpon our mewles. And yf your XX. knyghtes well armed & well horsed may overcom me & my breder, though we have no harnes vpon vs / we pardoane theym our deth; and yf god wyll that we 28 sholde overcom theym / that ye sholde thene lete vs go free where we wolde / it is that I requeryre you, for5 god dys love & for your worshyp, & no more. and yf ye doo not so, ye shall be taken for an ylle knyghte 32 all dayes of your liff' / 'By god, Reynawde,' sayd

1 de Paris, F. orig. m. iii. 2 quatre, F. orig. m. iii. 3 pour vous oster de blasme, F. orig. m. iii. 4 Fol. O. vii. back. 5 pour dieu et pour aulmosne, F. orig. m. iii.
foulques, 'your prechyngs shall not ayayle you no thyng / for I have leuer to have founde you now in this araye / than that I hadde wonne an 1 hundred 4 thousande marke of syne golde.' Now is your cosin, the wyse Mawgis, ferre fro you; he can not give you no couseyllle at this hour / and also all your folke be well ferre fro you / they shall not gyve you no socours /

And also I knowe the goodnes of my men, & that they have promysed the kyng Charlemagne / that they shall not faylle to assayll you worthily.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Reynawde, 'and we shall defende ourselfe also to our power.' 'Thenne sayd Alarde to Reynawde / 'breder, what ordenaunce shall we kepe?' 'breder,' sayd Reynawd, 'we shall kepe fote two & two. ye & Guycharde shall be behynde, and I & Richarde shall make the forarde; and lete vs smyte well harde, I praye you: For the tyme is now come that we must nedes doo so / and make we that thynge that shall be lefte in perpetuell memory to them that shall be after vs / sith that by no wyse we maye not scape.' 'Fair breder,' sayd Alarde to Guycharde, 'ye were well deceyved, for that ye trowed that reynawd had betrayed vs / I promise you he wolde not doo it for all the golde of the worlde.' 'By my feyth,' sayd thenne Guycharde 2 to Alarde, 'I am now well hole, sith that our dere breder Reynawde shall be to our helpe; for aslonge as he shall be alvy, we shall defende ourselfe, but not after, for though I myght chose, I wolde not lyve after he were deed.' And whan he had sayed this, they medled theymself among their enymes. Shortly to speke of, the four sones of Aymon assembled wel agenst thre hundred good knyghtes / But their corages were never the lesse therfore aslonge as they had lyfe in the body, but that they shewed to their

1–1 mille mares dor, F. orig. m. iii.
2–2 omitted, F. orig. m. iv. back. 3 Fol. O. viii.
enmyes a knyghtes face / when Foulques of moryllon sawe Reynawde com / he spored his horse wyth the spores & bare his speere a lowe, and went & smote Reynawde by the manuettell of scarlet that was aboute 4 his arme so grete a stroke that his speere entred thrugh his thye, & overthrew bothe hym & his mewle to therthe. Whan Alarde sawe that stroke / he cried sore, & sayd, 'alus, we have lost Reynawde our broder, 8 that was all our hope & our socour; now maye we not scape / but that we shall be deed or taken, and it is better that we yelde us prisoners at this tyme, thenue to defende vs ony more / 1For sith it is so, our defence 12 shall helpe vs no thynge agenst so many folke.' 7 And when Reynawde vnderstode that worde of his broder, he cried to hym wyth a hie voys, & sayd, 'Fy vpon you, gloton! what is that ye say? I have no harme 16 yet, but I am all hole as ye ben / 1thanked be god / and yet shall I selle me full dere or I deye' / And when Reynawd had sayd this, he rose vp quyckly, & toke the spere wyth bothe his handes / and pulled it 20 out of his thye wyth grete greef / and after set hande to his swerde, And sayd to Foulques of moryllon, 'knyghte, yf ye wyll doo like a good man, lyghte a fote as I am / And ye shall knowe what I canne 24 doo' / Whan Foulques of Moryllon vnderstode hym / he tourned vpon hym sore an-angered / and thoughte 2 to have smytten hym vpon his hede; but Reynawde drewe a lityl aside, and went & gaaf to Foulques suche 28 a stroke vpon his helme, 3 that nether yren nor stele myghte not save hym; 3 but that Reynawd clove hym into the harde teeth, and felde hym deed to the erthe / & whan he saw hym falle, he sayd to hym / 'Now 32 vnhappy traytour, that thy soule maye have no pardonne, but goo to the pyt of helle' / And whan he

1—1 omitted, F. orig. m. iv, back.  
2 Fol. O. viii. back.  
3—3 que rien ne le seest garder, F. orig. m. iv. back.
had sayd that, he toke the horse of Foulques, that was
right good / and light vpon it incontyent; and toke
his sheeld and his speer / that Foulques had shoved
thrue his thighe. & thenne he sayd to his bredern /
'Be ye all sure that aslong as I am a lyve ye shall
have no harme / but the frenshmen shal saye that they
have an yll neyghbour of me.' And wyte it, whan he
was on horsbacke, he was not well at ease /
by cause that the stiropes were to sliort
for hym. But he had other thyng
to doo / than to make theim lenger.

whan he was thus set on horsbacke, he
made his horse
to renne, & helde his speere alowe / and wente & met
wyth therle Angenon by suche maner that he put
bothe the yren and wood thrue the breste of hym,
so that he muste falle doun deed fro the horse to the
grounde afore his foote / And after, Reynawde set
hande to his swerde, and smote a knyghte a stroke
that his helme myghte not save hym, but cleved hym
to the teth. What shall I telle you more? Now
wyte it that at that tyme Reynawde slewe wyth his
ownte handes four erles / iij dukes, & VI knyghtes /
and after he began to eirie 'Montalban' wyth a hie voys.
And after his eirie, he went and smote Roberte the lorde
of dygeon, that was sone to the duk of Burgoyne,
so that the hede with the helme he made it lepe to the
grounde. and after he slewe a nother sterke deed /
that cam to rescue the sayd lorde.

And whan Reynawde had doon thise noble prowes /
he behelde aboute hym / and trowed to have
seen his brethern thenne: but he sawe none of theym /
wherof he was sore abasshed. 'O god,' sayd he,
where are my brethern goon, now be they well ferre
from me; we shall never com togyder agayn. / And
Alarde then comes to him, who has also won a horse, and Richard and Guicharde appear. They make great havoc among the Frenchmen, who say they must be devils to fight so marvellously.

The Sons are parted after this, but Reynawde and Alarde come out of the skirmish safely.

Guicharde is taken prisoner, having lost his mule, and is bound and laid on a horse by the Frenchmen, who beat him, and say he shall be hung by Charlemagne.

than cam there Alarde, that in lyke wyse had wonne a horse / the sheldre and the sperre, for he had slayne a knyghte / and had taken his horse, but he was sore hurte / Nevertheless he came, and helde syde wyth his 4 broder / ¹ and Richard & Guicharde came soone at the other syde / Thenne Alarde sayd to Reynawde / 'Brother, be all sure that we shall never faylle you to the deth' / And when the four brethren were assembled 8 togyder agayne / they began to make soo grete dystruction of frenshemen, that none durste abyde theym / For all they that they hitte, scaped not the deth / when the frenshemen sawe this, they were merveylled / and sayd 12 thone to the other / 'By my soule, this passeth all other wounder; I trowe that they ben noo knyghtes, but that they ben devylles / now lete vs make to theym a sawte bothe behynde & before, For yf they lyve longe / they 16 shall doo vs grete hurte' / And when they were herto accorded, they ran all vpon the four sones of Aymon soo harde that they parted theym, wolde they or not / But Reynawde passed throughe theym all, and brought hym / And Reynawde was wounded hym wyth two speres well depe in to the fleshe, & was taken for prysoner; ² & they bonde hym both hande and fote / and layed hym vpon a lityll horse overhwarthe / like as a sacke of corne, soo 28 wounded as he was / and I promyse you men myghte well folow ³ hym bi the trase, by cause of the blode that cam out of his body; and so led hym soo shamfully as that it had be a theef, & went all betyng vpon hym, 32 sayng to hym, that they led him to Charlemagne / the whiche sholde make hym to be hanged, for to avenge

¹—¹ omitted, F. orig. m. iv. ² voulisst on non, orig. m. iv. ³ Fol. P. i. back.
the dethe of his dere nevew Berthelot, that he loved soo moche / the whiche Reynawde slewe soo shamfully playng at the chesse.

And whan Reynawde sawe his enmyes led his broder Guycharde so shamfully, he wexed almost mad for angre / and called his brother alarde to hym, & sayd / ‘Fayr brother, what shall we doo? see how shamfully they fare wyth our broder Guycharde. If we suffre theym to bryng hym forth of this facyon / we shall never have worship in our dayes’ / ‘Brother,’ sayd alarde, ‘I wote not what we maye best doo, for to abide, or for to goo to theym / For I telle you that we be no moo but two, and they be so grete nombre of folke that we can doo no thynge agenste theym’ / ‘O god,’ sayd Reinawde, ‘what shall I doo yf the kyng Charlemagne make my brother to be hanged / I shall never be at my hertes ease / nor I shall never com to no court, but men shaU poynte me wyth the fynger / and shall say : “see, yonder is the sone of Aymon, that lete his brother to be hanged to the pyn tre of Mount-facon / and he durst not socour hym.” Certes,’ sayd Reynawde to alarde / ‘broder, I had lever deye firste / but yf I sholde rescue our brother fro deth.’ ‘Broder,’ sayd alarde, ‘now set yourselfe afore, and I shall folowe you, & after my power I wyll helpe you to rescue hym’ / and whan Reynawde herde that, he caste his shelde behynde hym / and habandouned his body all boldly as a lyon, and cared not how the game sholde goo; for ye sawe never wood men hewe in a forest, nor make so grete noyse as Reynawde made wyth his swerde amonige his en^myes, for he cutted and hewed legges and armes by suche wyse that no man sholde beleive it / but they that see it. Thus made Reynawde

1—1 omitted, F. orig.  2 nonbre in Caxton.  3 see, orig.  4 Fol. P. ii.  5—5 que cest chose Increable, F. orig. m. v.
at that tyme that the frenshemen must nedes make hym waye to passe, whether they wolde or noo. And
many made hym waye for the love of Ogier / for they
knewe well that the four sones of aymon were his cosins. 4
and whan Reynawde was passed, he sayd to theym that
led 1his brother1 guycharde, ‘Lete goo the knyghte,
ye yll folkes, for ye be not worthy to touche hym’ / and
whan they that ledded guycharde sawe com Rey-
8
nawde / they were sore afryed, that they put theym
selfe to flighte, & lefte Guycharde free, & sayd the one
to the other, ‘Here cometh the ende of the worlde’ / and
whan Reynawde sawe that they fled, he sayd to 12
alarde, ‘Goo ye, fayr brother, and vnbynde guycharde
1our brother,3and sette hym vpon this horse / and gyve
hym a spere in his hande, and com after me, for the
traytours ben discomfited.’ ‘Brother,’ sayd alarde, ‘I 16
shall goo where it playse you / but I telle you yf we
parte one from thother, we shall never come togider
agen / seenge that we be so fewe & so yll armed / but
lete vs keppe togyder / and helpe thone the other’ / 20
‘Brother,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘ye saye well & wysely;
and we shall doo it.’ And thenne they wenete bothe
togyder to Guycharde / and vnbounde hym / and made
hym mounte on horsbacke, the sheld at the necke, and
the spere in the hande / Now goo there [the] thre
brothern togyder / and the fourth the fyghteth agenste a
grete nombre of folke / that was the valyaunt Rycharde /
that was the mooste worthy of all 1after his brother 28
Reynawde.4 But men had slayne his newle vnder
hym / and was wounded ryght sore. But he had slayn
fyve erles / and well xiii. knihtes2 / wherof he was
soo sore travayled / and soo wery, that he myghte not 32
almoste deffende hym selfe no more, but went 3rounde
aboute the roche / And thenne cam Gerarde of Val-

1-1 omitted, F. orig.  2 knihtes in Caxton.  3 Fol. P. ii. back.
come, that was cosyn to Fouloques of morillon / the
whiche he had founde deed, wherof he made grete
sorowe / and sayd / 'Ha, gentylly knyghte, it is grete
dommage of your dethe. Certes, he that hath broughte
you to this dethe is not my frende. Now shall I
avenge me yf I maye.' and thenne he came to the
roche. And whan he saw Richard in soo grete greef,
he spored his horse wyth his spores, and bare his speere
alone, and smote Richard thorughe the mauntell of
scarlet / that he had wrapped aboute his lyfte\(^1\) arme
soo harde, that the speere entred ferre in his body, soo
moche that he brought hym to the erthe / and as he
drewe his speere agayne / the guttes of Richard came
oute of the body in to his lappe ; and the wounde was
soo grete that the lyver and the lounges appyered.

\(^{16}\) Thenne beganne Gerard to crye / 'Now are dyscoupled
the foure sones of Aymon, for I have slayne Richard
the hardy fyghter; all the other shall sone be slayne or
taken / yf god gyve me helthe. And I shall brynge
theym to the kyng Charlemagne / that shall make
theym to be hanged atte Muntfacon, as sone as he
hath theym.'\(^{2}\)

\(^{24}\) Thenne whan Richard was come a lityll to his
ease, he rose vp quyckely vpon his feete / and
toke his bowelles wyth both his handes and put theym
agayn in to his bely ; and after set hande to his
swerde, and came to Gerard, and sayd to hym in

\(^{28}\) grete angre / 'Thou cursed man, thou shalte have thy
rewarde anone for that ye have doon to me. For,
certes, it shall not be vnbrayed to Reynawde that ye
have slayne his brother.' And whan he had sayd

\(^{32}\) thus, he smote Gerard thorughe the quyras / and
thorughe the sheldre, soo grete a stroke / that he hewed
the sholdre and the arme wyth all from the body,

\(^{1}\) omitted, F. orig.

\(^{2-2}\) qui les meetra a montfacon, F. orig. m. vi. back.
Brother, come unde, Certes, luz now. We breed brethren, castell of Eynawde, For quills and theym lie his he and the wound, because God of fight and Reynawde, Aiarde, and Kichiird, King then weeps, poor absence." Guichard, the come to valiantly, they can praying to socour and swoune. of Mount-alban, I comende the to god, that he wyll by his mercy and pyte brynge agayne your lorde sauff and sounde of his body / Ha, kyng Yon of Gascoyn / Why have ye betrayed us / and taken vs to the kyng Charlemagne / certes, ye dede therin grete synne / and a shamfull fawte. and after, he sayd all wepynge / 'O fader, kyng of glory / and lorde of all the worlde / socoure this daye my power bredern, For I wote not where they ben; nor of me they maye have nother 20 helpe nor socours, for I am all redy for to deye.'

Now shall I telle you of Reynawd, of Alarde / and of Guychard, that faughte strongly agenste theyr ennies, as worthy knyghtes that they were. But all theyr grete fayttes of armes sholde avaylld theym noo thynge yf they had not come to a narow waye of the roche / where men myghte not come to theym but afore. And when they had be longe there / Reynawl beganne to saye to his brother Alarde / 'Brother, where is become our brother Richard, that we sawe not of a goode while agoo. Now thynke none other but that we shall never see hym / For 32 I lefte hym here by this sapyn tre, whan ye and I

1 Fol. P. iii. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. m. vi. 3 comeude in Caxton. 4 . . quilz ne fussent ou mors ou prins . . ., F. orig. m. vi. 5 brother in Caxton.
had soo moche adoo. I praye g'd, yf he be deed, that
he have his soule / Now 1 I wyll wyte tydynes of hym
yt it be possyble' / 'Brother,'2 sayd alarde, 'yf ye wyllle
4 beleve me, ye shall abyde her / god pardonne hym yf
he be deed, For we may not helpe hym, the parylle is
to grete / And I beleve that we sholde deye afore that
evyn were come' / 'Ha, brother;' sayd Reynawde,
8 'shall we fayle to our brother Rycharde, the goode
knyghte and worthy.' 'Thenne,' sayd Alarde / 'what
wyll ye that we shall doo therto / For as to me, I
knowe no remedye to it' / 'Alas,' sayd Reynawde /
12 'ye speke folysly / For I sholde not doubte for fere of
dethe to wyte where he is become / And yf I sholde
goo alone / yet shall I understonde some tydynes of
hym.' 'Brother,' sayd Alarde / 'I promysse you / yf
16 we departe thone from the other, we shall never see vs
agayne togyder.' 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde, 'other
deed or all quyke I shall fynde hym, where soo ever
he be / it maye none other be' / And when Reynawde
20 had sayd thise wordes / he spored his horse with his
spores / and came atte the other side of the roche / And
whan they that had chased Rycharde there for to slee
hym / sawe Reynawde3 come / they smote theym selfe
24 to flyghte. And thenne Reynawde wente a littyll more
vpwarde vpon the roche, and founde there his broder
Rycharde, that laye nyghe deed vpon the grounde, and
helde his bowelles bytwene his handes; and aboute
28 hym were a grete nombre of folke whyche he had
slayne. Whan Reynawde sawe hym deed, and soo sore
wounded / he had of it soo grete sorowe at his herte
that almoste he felle doun deed to the grounde / But
32 he toke corage, and came nyghe his brother / and
lyghted doun from his horse, and kyssed hym sore
wepyngge, and sayd / 'Ha, fayre brother / It is grete

and says he will seek tidings of him.

Alarde counsels him to remain where he is, as to move is perilous.

Reynawde says he will go along rather than not rescue his brother,

The Frenchmen fly at his approach,

and Reynawde discovers Richard;

he kisses him,

wepynge, and sayd / 'Ha, fayre brother / It is grete

1 Fol. P. iii. back.  2 Sire, F. orig. m. vi.
3 et ses aultrre deux freres . . . F. orig. m. vii. back.

R 2
Foxe, who tiewer for O, and ydendes and yf.

Weeping sorrowfully over his sad plight,

pyte and dommage of you / and of your dethe / For, certes, never man was worthye you; for yf ye had* come to manmys age / never Rowlande nor Olyver were so prue in knyghthode / as ye sholde have be. Alas, 4 now is loste our beaumte and our yongthe thorughhe grete sygne / O, goode lorde / who sholde ever a thoughte that ony treason sholde have entred? in to the herte of the kynge Yon / Alas, my brother Richard, 8 woo is me for your dethe / For I am cause of it / Alas, this daye in the mornynge, when we departed oute of Mountalban we were four bretherne, all good knyghtes. Now are we but thre, that ben worthes noo 12 thynge, for we ben peryllously wounded, and all vnarmed. Now god forbede that I sholde scape, syth that ye be deed 5 vpon the traytours. 3 But I praye god that I maye venge your deth vpon4 theym or ever I 16 deceasse / For I shall sette therto my gode wylle; and yf god wyll, it shall be soo.' Evyn thus as Reynawde made mone over his brother / he behelde behyste hym, and sawe come his brethern Alarde & Guynawde, all 20 dyscomfyted / that cryed vpon Reynawde, 'Brother, what doo you / come anone and helpe vs / for we have grete ned!' / And when Richard herde the voys of Alarde / he opened his eyen, and when he sawe 24 his brother Reynawde afore hym, he sayd to hym / 'O, brother Reynawd, and what doo you here / see ye yonder that roche, whiche is soo highe and so stronge / where as ben many smalle stones above; yf we myghte 28 doo soo moche that we eleymed vp there / I beleve that we sholde be sauf from our enmyes, for it can not be but our cosyn mawgys knoweth our dysease by this / and he shall come to socour vs.' 'Brother,' sayd 32 Reynawde, 'wolde god we were there. Now telle me,
my fayr broder / how fele your selfe; thynke ye that ye maye recovere helthe? 'Ye,' sayd Richarde, 'yf ye scape, and elles not; for wyth the sore that I have 4 I myghte well deye \(^1\) for sorowe.'

\(^2\) And when Reynawde herd Rycharde speke thus, he was ryght glad of it. Soo called he Alarde to hym / and sayd, 'brother, take Richarde vpon your 8 sheldde, and lede hym vpon the roche / and Guycharde and I shall rowme the waye afore you.' 'Brother,' sayd Alarde, 'doubte not / I shall doo my power.'

And thenne he lyghted doun, and toke vp Rycharde 12 and layd hym vpon his sheelde; and after he lyghted agayne on horsbacke. and Reynawde and Guycharde leyd hym wyth his brorher vpon the horse necke / And after put theym selife a fore to breke the preesse of the 16 frenshemen. And they dyde so moche that they came to the roche / But wyte it well that Reynawde made there soo grete fayttes of armes that all his enmyes were sore merveyllde wyth all. For he slew at that 20 tyme well thirty knyghtes / that never wylde bore, nor tygre, nor lyon / nor bere, dyde that Reynawde made there of his body / But, for to saye the trouthe, Reynawde setted noughte by his lyffe, and ioparded hym 24 selfe all togyder / for he was as a man dyasperate / And when they were come to the roche, Alarde set doun his brother Richarde to the erthe / and beganne to defende quyckely. but I wote not how they myghte endure / 28 for they had nother castell nor fortresse / but onely the roche.

Alle thus as the thre bretherne deffended theym selfe wyth grete woo, Thenne came there Ogier 32 the dane and his folke / And had in his company Magôn of Fryse, wyth well a thousande knyghtes, and cryed vpon Reynawde, 'Certes, knyghte, ye shall be deed / we have sworne your dethe. This daye is

\(^1\) omitted, F. orig. \(^2\) Fol. P. iv. back.
the departynge that ye and your bretherne shall suffre
dethe / Ye dyde as fooles 1 whan ye belived the kyng
Yon, For he hath put you all to dethe.’ Whan Alarde
sawe soo grete folke come / he was sore an angerd / and 4
sayd to Guycharde, ‘See how grete a sorowe is here
afore vs, and the grete nombre of folke that ben redy
for to slye vs four knyghtes. Certes, yf we were fyve
hundred well armed / yet sholde not we scape / For 8
they ben well armed, and a grete quantyte of knyghtes’ /
‘Surely,’ sayd Guycharde, ‘here is a mervelouse com-
pany / 2 but yf god helpe vs now; 2 we ben come to the
ende of our dayes / It is noo grete dommage of me 12
mother of Rycharde / but the grete dommage is of
Reynawde, that is the best knyghte of the worlde’ /
And whan Alarde and Guycharde had spoken togyder,
they wente to Reynawde and kyssed hym, full sore 16
wepynge, and sayd to hym / ‘O, brother Reynawde,
gyve vs a gyfte yf it playse you, for the love of our
lorde god.’ ‘Lordes,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘what thynge
aske you of me? ye knowe well ynoughe that I canne 20
not helpe you of noo thynge. And this daye muste I
nedes see you deye byfore my eyen.’

Brother,’ sayd Alarde, ‘herke what we wyll telle
you, and yf it playse you ye shall doo it’ / ‘Sey 24
on, hardely,’ sayd Reynawde. ‘Brother,’ sayd Alarde,
‘men sayen comynly that it is better to doo one harme
than two / I saye this, by cause that yf ye deye here,
it shall be grete dommage, And the loss shall never be 28
recovered agayne. For none shall avenge your dethe /
But though we deye here and not you / it shall be noo
grete dommage / For ye shall avenge vs well. And
therefore we praye you, swete brother, 3 for all the play-
sures that ye wolde doo ever to vs; 3 that ye wyll goo

1 Fol. P. v.
2–2 Si daventure dieu ne pense de nous . . . F. orig. m.
viii. back.
3–3 omitted, F. orig. m. viii.
your wayes / and we shall abyde here. And when the
dethe shall come, we shall take it a worthe / This that
we saye ye maye well doo; For ye be well horsed /
and ye shall well save your selfe mawgre the frenshe-
men, yf they goo to Mountalban. And when ye be at
Mountalban / lyghte vpon Bayarde well armed / and
brynge ane wyth you our cosyn Mawgys for to
socoure vs' / 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde / 'ye speke to
folyshly. Certes, I wolde not doo so for all the golde
of the worlde. I sholde be sore balde and full vn-
kynde yf I dyde soo / For I cowde not spylle my selfe
sooner than for to lewe you in soo grete perylle. Other
we shall all scape, or elles we shall all deye togyder /
For the one shall not fayll the other as longe as we
maye lyve / Now god that suffred deth and passyon
save vs!' Thus, as Reynawde spake to hys bretherne,
came the erle Guymarde / to whom god gyve eyvyl
adventure, and sayd to Reynawde / 'knyghte, ye be
take / and ye muste deye wyth shame vpon this roche /
Whan ye beleved the kynge yon, ye dyde grete foly.
He wrought grete trasyon when he dyd sell you to
the kynge Charlemagne, that hateth you soo moche / For ye
loved hym more than ye dyde your cosyn Mawgys /
He hath well rewarded you for the grete love that ye
oughte to hym. Telle me, Reynawde, whether ye wyll
yelde you or defenssde you? ' Certes,' sayd Reynawde,
'now speke ye for noughte / I shall never yelde me as
longe as I am man a lyve' / Reynawde,' sayd thenne
Ogyer, 'what wyll ye doo? We canne not helpe you
of noo thyng; other gyve yourselfe vp, or defensse your
selfe.' 'Ogyer,' sayd Reynawde, 'by hym that made
the worlde, I shall never yelde me. I was never noo

1 Fol. P. v. back. 2 vos, F. orig. m. viii.
3-3 Car je ne me pourroye myeuix honnir . . . F. orig. m. viii.
4 par mortelle trahison, F. orig. m. viii.
5-5 qui a luy avies, F. orig. m. viii. 6 omitted, F. orig.
7 par celluy dieu . . . F. orig. m. viii.
Reynawde says he would sooner die than yield and be hung as a thief.

Ogier makes great sorrow over his kinsmen, and his fair cousin Reynawde, grieving that he cannot help them, because of his oath to Charlemagne.

Four Earls assault the rock on which the Sons stand.

Thef, & therfore wyll I not be hanged / I have lever deie lyke a knyght, than to hange lyke a theeff.' 'Lorde,' sayd Guymarde, 'lese vs sawte themys / For they shall not may kepe longe agenste vs' / 'Lorde,' sayd Ogyer, 'ye maye well sawte themys yf ye wyll / but by my soule I shall doo themys no thyng, For they ben my kysysnys, nor I shall not helpe themys / For ye shall take themys well wythoute me' / 'Certes,' sayd S the freshe men, 'we shall themys assaylle themys worthyly' / Thenne Ogyer drew hym selfe and all his folke a side, well the lengthe of a bawe shot, And beganne to make soo grete a sorowe as thoughe all the 12 worlde had fynysshed a fore his eyen; and all his sorowe was for Reynawde his kysyn / and for his bretheren / And thus as he made his mone, be beganne for to saye / 'Ha, fayr kysyn Reynawde, it is grete pyte of your dethe; And I, vnhappy man, that am of your kyñ, suffice you to deye afore myn eyen / And yet I canne not helpe you / For I have promysed it to Charlemagne / nor I oughte not or to breke myn othe.' 20 But the history telleth that 3 Ogyer duange hym selfe gretyly that daye / And thorughe his purchace the four sones of Aymon scaped / For yf he wolde have put peyne to it, they sholde not have scaped by no maner / 24 But as men sayen, 'true blood may not lye.'

Byfore the roche were four erles / for to sawte the four sones of Aymon, and made themys moche adoo; For theyr folke sawted themys in four partyes. 28 Wheroft Reynauade kepte the two partes / and Alarde and guycharde kepte the other tweyne / For Rhycarde laye dowm vpon the erthe sore wounded / as I tolde you a fore / And yet was Guycharde2 wounded sore 32

1 Fol. P. vi. 2 be able.
3 Ogier se faignit celluy jour grandement, F. orig. n. i. back.
4 seffe in Caxton.
5 tant quilz ne furent mye prins, F. orig. n. i. back.
6 alart, F. orig. n. i. back.
throughe the thye / wherof he had bled soo longe that he was feynte / and felle doun to the ethe.  

1 And when he sawe that he myghte noo more defende, he 

4 beganne to call ²vpon Reynawde,² and sayd / ' Ha, Reynawde, fayr brother / Lete vs yelde vs, I praye you / for I nor Richarde maye noo more helpe you' / 

'Brother;' sayd Reynawde, 'what saye you, now shew 

8 ye well that ye be ferdfull; but I lete you wyte / that 
yf I trowed to scepe other for golde or for sylver / or for cyte, or for castelles / or for my horse Bayarde that 
I love soo muche / I shold have yelde me prisoner to 

12 day in the mornyng. For ye wote well, ³that ye be 

16 ben take, all the golde of the worlde save vs not from 
hangyng / or som other shamfull dethe:³ And therfore 

I wyll not yelde me by noo maner of wyse / A man 

20 of one moder / Now oughte we well to helpe eche other 
wyth all our power for our worship; for otherwyse 
men shold saye that we ben bastardes, and of an ylle 
fader.' ' Ye saye trouth,' sayd Guycharde⁴ / But ye 

24 wolde not beleve how feble I am, for I am wounded to 
the deth.' 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde, 'I am sory for 
it / but I shall defende you as longe as lyffe is in my 
body.' Who had seen thenne the noble knyghte Rey-

28 nawde take vp the grete stones, and caste theym vpon 
hys enmyes, ye wolde not have sayd that he had not 
be wounded nor travelyled of noo thyng / Whan 
Rycharde that lay a grounde thus wounded, as I have 

32 tolde you above, sawe and herde the grete noyse that 
they that sawted the roche made, he toke up his hede, 

¹ Fol. P. vi. back.  
²—² ommitted, F. orig. 
³—³ que tout le monde ne nous pourroit eschapper de mort 
se Charlemaigne nous peut tenir, F. orig. n. i. back. 
⁴ alart, F. orig.
Gaj'oliade pleads with Ogier for the life of Reynawde.

Ogier is sorry, and would give much to help them;

he commands his men to withdraw for a time while he speaks to the Sons;

he calls the Sons,

and sayd to Reynawde, 'Brother, I shall helpe you; But cutte me some of my sherte, and I shall bynde my syde and wounde soo that my bowelles maye not yssue oute of my bely / And thenne I shalle sette me to my 4 defence and shall helpe you wyth all my herte.' / Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'Now arte thou well worth a true man.' / And whan Guycharde vnderstode hym, he was ashamed / and toke agayne strength in hym be-8 yonde his power, and came to the defence / and sayd wyth a hyghe voyse, 'Ogyer, Fayr cosyn, what doo you to your lynage? Certes, it shall be a grete shame to you yf ye socoure vs not / for the fawte that ye doo to vs shall be layd vnto you in every place where ye goo, to lete vs deye thus, we that ben your kynnes men / the beste of all the worlde / Save Reynawde, and ye shall doo lyke a true man. And as for vs 16 other / it maketh nother lesse nor more.' / Whan Ogyer vnderstode thise wordes / he was sorry for it / that noo man myghte more / and wolde have gyven a grete thynge to have delyvered theym, And sayd that he 20 wolde doo wyth all his herte all that he myghte doo for theym / And thenne Oger spored Brayforde wyth his spores / & came to the roche wyth a staff in his hande, And sayd to theym that sawted the roche, 24 'wythdrawe yourselfe a lityll tyll I have spoken wyth theym a lytyll, for to wyte whether they wyll gyve themyselv vp or noo / For it is better that we have theym quycke than deed.' 'Syre,' sayd the frenshe-28 men, 'we shall doo your commandemente; But we leve theym wyth you to kepe in the name of the kynge Charlemagne.' 'Ha, god,' sayd Ogyer, 'I never thoughte trayson / nor I shall not begynne yet.' / And 32 thenne he came more nyghe the roche than he had be, and called to hym the foure sones of Aymon / and

1 Fol. P. vii. 2-2 et dist a Ogier, F. orig. n. i. 3 doo in Caxton.
CHAP. IX.] HOW OGIER COMMANDS HIS MEN TO WITHDRAW. 251

sayd to them, 'Fayre cosyn, rest you, and take agayn
you[r] brethe / and yf ye ben hurte, wrapppe vp your
woundes / And make good garnyssheng of stones / and
4 so defeende yourself nobly of all your 1powre; For yf
the kynge Charlemagne maye have you, ye shall never
have pardonne; but he shall make you to be hanged
and strangeled / And therfore ye muste nedes kepe
8 your selfe well. For I promyse you, yf Mawgys knowe
of it, he shall come to socoure you / thus shall ye scape,
and other wyse not.' 'Cosyn,' sayd Alarde, 'ye shall
have of it a goode rewarde / yf ever we may scape.'
12 ' Ye saye true,' sayd Reynawde; 'For yf I maye scape,
by god that suffred deth and passyon for vs upon the
crosse / all the golde of the worlde shall not save hym /
but I shall slee hym wyth my owne handes / For I
16 hate hym moche more than I doo a straunger / For he
that sholde defeende and helpe me agenste all men, It
is he that dooth me harme.' 'Cosyn,' sayd Ogyer, 'I
maye not doo therto, so helpe god my soule / For the
20 kynge Charlemagne made me swere afore all his barons
that I sholde not helpe you in noo maner of wyse.
And of this that I doo / I am sure that the kynge
Charlemagne shall comma me noo thanke' / 'Brother,'
24 sayd Alarde, 'Ogyer telleth you trouth.' And also it
was well trouth that ogyer was reprieved theerof for
treyson; For Charlemagne called hym traytour afore
all his barons. Thenne Reynaude bonde the woundes
28 of his bretherne as well as he cowde / But the wounde
of Rycharde was soo greefull to see, that it was pyte to
beholde / For / all the entraylles appyered oute of his
body / And when he had lapped theym all, Alarde
32 wrapped the wounde that Reynaude had in the thye /
And when they had reste theymselfe a lityll / Reynawde
stode vp and wente vppon the roche for to gader stones
to defeende theym selfe. And garnysshed therwyth

1 Fol. P. vii. back.
their defence where 1 hys bretherne sholde stande. Whan the frenshemen sawe that Ogyer, the dane, made there to long a soiourmyng, they beganne all to calle and crye / 'Ogyer, ye make there to longe a seramon, 4 telle vs yf they wyll yelde theym or noo / or yf they shall defiende theym selwe.' 'Naye,' sayd Ogyer, 'as long as they have lyffe in theyr bodyes' / 'By my soule,' sayd the frenshemen, 'threne goo we sawte 8 theym ete agayne.' 'Thenne,' sayd Ogyer, 'I promyse you, I shall helpe theym with all my power.' Whan therle Guymarde herde Ogyer speke soo, he wente to hym, and sayd / 'We commaunde you in the kynges 12 name of Fraunce, that ye come to the batayll wyth vs, agenste the four sones of Aymon / As ye have promyzed and sworne / and for doubte of you many a lorde is here in our companye that wyll not fyghte' / 16 'Lordes,' sayd Ogyer, 'for god mercy / ye knowe all redy they ben my cosyns germayne / I praye you let vs wythdrawe ourselfe abacke, and lete theym be in peas ; and I shall gyve eche of you large goodes.' 'Ogyer,' 20 sayd the frenshemen / 'we shall not doo soo, but we shall brynye theym prisoners to the kyng Charlemagne that shall doo wyth theym his playsure / and also we shall telle hym what ye have doon. Whereof / he 24 shall conne you lytyll thanke all his lyft.' And after whan Ogyer vnderstode thise wordes, he was sore an angred / and sayd by grete wrathe, 'By the feyth that I owe to all my frondes, yf there be ony of you soo 28 hardy that take Reynawde or ony of his bredern for to delyver theym to kyng charlemagne I shall smyte of his hede, what somever come after it.' 'Ogyer,' sayd the erle Guymarde, 'we shall not leve therfore, for 32 to take theym ryght shortly / And whan we have theym / we shall see who shall take theym from us / 2 for we shall well conne shewe this to the kyng Charle-

The Frenchmen renew the assault.

The Frenchmen renew the assault. And thenne they began to sawte the roche agen. Wyte it that Reynawde & his bretherne defended themyselfe full nobly. But whan Reynande sawe this grete myltitude of folke that cam to for sawte themy / he beganne to saye / 'Ha, Mawgis, my fayr cosin / where are ye now that ye knowe not this myshap, for ye woldc come anone to helpe vs, but ye knowe it not; and wherof I am evyll contente / For I was a foole and over hasty that I spake not to you of this matere afore that I cam here / Ha, bayarde, if I were vpon your backe / I sholde never entre within this roche, for fere of the frenshemen. But the kynge Charlemagne sholde lose here of the beste knyghtes of his company.' and when he had sayd thys, he beganne to wepe full tendrely for the love of his bretherne, that he sawe soo sore wounded & soo wery / Thenne the frenshemen sawted themy efte as stronge agayn; and I promyse you if it had not be the grete prowes of reynawd they sholde have ben taken at that tyme by fyne force. Whan the sawtynge was fynysshed / Reynawd set hymself vpon his deffence; for he was so wery, that if he had goon he sholde have fallen down to the erthe, soo weke he was, and that was noo merveyle, for they had soo sore traveylled hym / and had suffred soo many tormentes & terrible sawtes that it was wonder they cowde endure soo longe.

And whan Oger, the dane, sawe his cosyn soo sore tournented, he take hymselfe to wepe tendrely. And thus as he wepte, he bethoughte hymselfe of a grete wysedome, & called to hym a knyght of his that was named gerarde, and sayd to hym / have, for god, mercy of me; & if ye doo that I shall telle you / I am dishonourd for ever more' / 'sire,' said Gerarde, 'telle me what it plaise you / for it shal be doo

1 they repeated in text. 2 Girart, F. orig. 3–3 se vous ne faictes ce que vous diray, F. orig. n. iii, back.
and tells him to take XL. knights and go to Mount Hosy, and keep watch there, lest Mawgis should come to succour the Sons.

Ogier does this that the Sons may not have to fight so many folk.

though 'I sholde lose my liffe' / 'gramercy,' sayd Ogyer / 'Now shall I tell you what I wyl that ye do. Take wyth you XL. knyghtes of the best of my felawshyp / and goo lightly to the mount Hosy / and kepe your selve therupon / and beholde towardde Mountalban all the ryght waye that noo body come but ye see hym / For yf Mawgys maye wyte by ony waye the mysfortune of his cosins, I promyse you that he wyll come to 8 socoure theym, and shall gyve vs moche a doo, soo that ye mooste hardy shall be sore afrayed' / 'Sire,' sayd gerarde, 'this that ye have sayd shall be well doon' / and thenne he toke XL of ye best knyghtes of 12 his company, and went to the mount Hosy; where they made not well theyr watche for the prouffyte of the frensheumen / Ye oughte here to wyte that Ogyer founde this manere to sende his men forth, but oonly that 16 Reynawde & his brethern sholde not have a doo wyth soo many folke; and thoughte not of that that happed.

But now leveth here the history, to speke of the foure sones of Aymon that were in the roche Mountbran. And also leveth to speke of Ogyer the dane, and of thother folke that Charlemagne had sent / and retorneth to speke of Godarde the secretary of the kyng Yon, that had red the lettres, where the trayson was conteyned all playnly /

CHAPTER X.

Howe after that Godarde the secretary of the kyng yon had rehersed all the treyson to Mawgys / that the kyng yon had doon to his cosins to Mawgis brought suche a

---

1 Fol. Q. i.
2 la quelle Il seauoit bien au long car Il auoit leues les lectres du roy charlemaigne et escripte la responce que le roy yon luy auoit surce faicte, F. orig. n. iii.
socoures to Reynawde & to his brethren,  
that he saved theym fro deth by his grete  
wysdom /  

Capytulum x.

Now sheweth the history, that whan Godarde sawe  
Reynawde & his brethren goo to their deth  
thoroughe soo false a trayson / he had of it grete sorowe  
& pyte, and he was ryght sory for it / for two pynceypall  
causes / 1 wherof thone was for his mayster, the kyng  
yon, that had wroughte that shamfull treyson / And  
that other was for the grete pyte & dommage that it was  
for to make deye so pyetously suche worthy knyghtes  
as the four sones of Aymon were / So began he to wepe  
pyetously ; and thus as he wept, came there Mawgys,  
the cosin of the four sones of Aymon, that went to the  
kechyn for to haste the mete / for the kyng you wold  
ete, to the whiche men made good chere, because thei  
knewe not the trayson that he had doon / When the  
clerke sawe Mawgys, he called hym / and sayd to  
hym / 'Ha, mawgys, how it is yll wyth you / for yf  
god put noo remedy in you, ye have loste that thynge  
that ye moost love in this worlde, that is Reynawde &  
his brethren / for the kyng you hath betrayed theim  
shamfully.' And thanne he shewed to hym all the  
trayson. when Mawgys vnderstode thise wordes, he  
was all oute of his wyttes, & sayd to the clerke,  
' Godarde, for god goo away fro me / for all my lymmes  
shaken for angre, nor I can not stonde vpon my feet,  
for my herte telleth me that Reynawde & his brethren  
ben deed.' 'Certes,' sayd Godarde, 'ye saye trouth /  
For 2 the lettre sheweth that Ogier the dane & Foulques  
of morillon are set in a bushement 3 wyth a grete nombre  
of folke in the playne of Valcolours / and Reynawde &

1 Fol. Q. i. back.  
2 Fer in Caxton.  
3 a tout deux mille cheualliers bien armez, F. orig. n. iv. back.
and how they cannot defend themselves without arms.

Mawgis is so grieved that he would have killed himself, but is restrained by Godard, who advises him to go to the rescue of his kinsmen.

Mawgis, without a word to King John, orders all the soldiers in the castle to arm,

his brethren are goon thymber all unarmed by the counseyle of kyng yon / and thus they can not defende / but they muste be deed or taken.' When Mawgys vnderstode this, he was sory for it, that he 4 felle down in a swoune to therthe / and atte the fallyng that he made, he brake all his browes. and when he was come agen to himselfe, he was so sory that he wyste not what he sholde doo / So toke he a S knyff, and wolde have shoved it in his breste / but he myghte not / for Godarde toke hym by the handes, and sayd to hym / 'Ha, gentyll knyghte, I have mercy vpon you / kylle not yourself / for your soule shal be 12 damned for it; but light a horsbacke, & take wyth you all the men of armes that ben wythin, and the good horse bayarde, that renneth so fast / and goo there as your cosins ben goon assone as ye may: and 16 whan ye come there, ye shall see anoone yf ye can helpe theym or not; for yf thei ben alyve, ye shall socoure theim ryght well' / 'Godarde,' sayd Mawgis, 'your counseyle is right good.' and theynne he began 20 to wepe, and sayd / 'Ha, noble knyghte Reynawde, it is grete dommage yf ye be deed / but I make my vow to god, that yf ye & your brethren be deed, I shall never lyve two dayes after you' / And thenne 24 Mawgis, wythout any noyse or 3 ony worde to be made of this to the kyng yon, nor his suster, the wyff of Reynawde / commaunded all the souldyou[r]es of the castell to be redy in armes lightly. and whan the 28 knyghtes understode hym, they toke their harneys on Incontynent, as they were wound to doo / And whan they were all armed, they cam all to the loweste parte of the palays & presented theymselfe; and whan 32 Mawgys sawe theym, he shewed vnto theim all the

1 Fol. Q. ii.
2 Sire, F. orig. n. iv. back.
3 or repeated in text.
traison that the kyng Yon of Gascoyn had doon to Reinawde and to his bretherne.

Thenne whan yᵉ knyghtes of Reynawd understode this, thei began to make suche sorowe that it was pyte for to see, and wysshed after the noble knyghtes that were gon to their deth / ¹ and were so disperat that thei wolde almost have kylled theimself ² / For thone wysshed after Reynawde, & yᵉ other after Alarde, ³ thother after Guychard, & thother after Richard, and sayd, 'Ha, valyant & pru knyghtes, it is grete dommage of your deth, for certeuly all the world shall be the worse therfore / Alas, & who shall gyve vs now the fair armes & the good horses that ye were wont to gyve vs? ' thus ⁴ as thei were makyng this grete sorow / mawgys sayd to yᵉ palfreyner that kept bayerde / ¹² freunde, goo & set the sadell vpon bayerde, and I shall bryng hym to Reynawde ' / 'syr,' sayd yᵉ palfreyner / 'I may not doo it / for Reynawde ⁴ my maister ⁵ com-maunded me whan he went, that I shold not suffre no body to lighte vpon it tyll he were com agen' / whan mawgys understode thanswere of the palfreyner, he was wroth / and smote hym wyth hys fiste so grete a stroke that he cast hym ⁶ at his fote afore hym, & after went hymself to the stable where bayerde was / whan bayard sawe Mawgis, he began to shrynke his eeres, & smote wyth his forfete so strong that no body durst goo nyghe hym / ⁶ but the palfreyner that tended vpon hym. and when mawgys sawe that bayerde played so, he toke a staffe & smote bayard vpon the hede so that he made him knele to the erth. and whan bayerd sawe he was so eurstly dealed wythal / he was a ferde lest he shold be yet more shreudely handlyd, & so he helde hymselfe styll / and mawgis caste the sadel vpon hym, & brydled and tells them of the treachery of the king.

The knights make great sorrow over the misfortunes of the Sons.

¹—¹ et a peu quilz ne se desesperent . . . F. orig. n. iv. back. ² Guichart, F. orig. ³ Fol. Q. ii. back. ⁴—⁴ omitted, F. orig. n. iv. ⁵ Sur ses genouix, F. orig. n. iv. ⁶ fors que Regnault ou le palefrenier, F. orig. n. iv.
Mawgis saddles and mounts Bayard, and with five thousand men bares out of the gate Fawcon, and goes secretly through the wood.

Reynawde sees the approach of Mawgis from the wood; he is mounted upon Bayard, who flies like a swallow, leaping xxx feet at each step.

hym. And wyte it, that when mawgis was vpon bayardis backe, he was well like a valyaunte man 2 & a hardy knyghte, 2 for he was one of the fayrest knyghtes of the world, & one of the best / and the moost subtyl 4 of the worlde. And when mawgys & all his folke were 2 all redy a horsbacke 2 well armed / thei went out ate the gate fawcon. And they myght well be a boute V. thousande men well horsed & well armed, and 8 vii hundred good archers, that never wolde goo backe for noo doubte of deth by ony maner / 3 and they set theymself to the waye / not by the right waye / but 3 went thorugh the wode 4 all a covert wyth grete 12 dyligence / And all wayes mawgis wente wysshynge after Reynawd and after his brethern, for he wyst not yf they were deed or a lyve / and sayd to hymselfe, 1 Ha, Reynawde, 5 god be this day wyth 6 you / and kepe 16 you 7 & your bredern 7 fro dethe & fro prison! But now yf the frenshemen kepe not theymself well / they shal have suche a neyghbour & so cruel that thei shalle soone wery of it, & shall sore repent / 7 Now shall we 20 leve to speke of maugis, that brough socours to Reynawde to the playn of Valcolours. and we shall shewe of Reynawde & of his brethern, that were at roche montbron full of woo & sori, for thei saw theymself in 24 grete peryll / All thus as Reynawde dyde reste hymselfe vpon the defence of the roche, & thought in hym selie what he myght doo / he torned his sight towards the wood, 4 & sawe come mawgis wyth his folke, the sheld 28 at the necke, the sword in the hande, & mounted vpon bayerdie. wyte it that bayarde went not the lityll pase, but went lyke a sualowe / for at every lepe that he made, he lept xxx fot of grounde / and when Reynawde 32

1 puis se arma et monta dessus bayart, F. orig. n. iv. 2--2 omitted, F. orig. n. iv. 3--3 Et se mirent a la voye hors le chemin, F. orig. n. iv. 4 de la serpente, F. orig. n. iv. 5 le filz aymon, F. orig. n. iv. 6 Fol. Q. iii. 7--7 omitted, F. orig. n. iv.
Chap. x.] How Reynawde perceives the approach of Mawgis. 259

Sawe mawgys com wyth so grete folke & so fayr a company, all his body shevered all sodenly for grete ioye / and forgate all the grete sorowe & tormente that he had suffred all the daye, & sayd to his breddren / 'Breddren, 1 be mery, & 1 be not dysmayed of no thyng, for here cometh mawgis for to socour vs 1 wyth a grete nombre of folke; 1 now he sheweth well that he is our kynsman & a good frende: blessed be he of god that hath tolde hym the daunger that we were in' / 'Brother,' sayd alarde, 'is it trouth that we shall have helpe anone?' 'Ye,' sayd Reynawde, 'by the feyth that I owe to you.' 'Certes,' sayd alarde, 'now com-playne I not' / and whan Rycharde, that laye with his boweles betwene his haedes, understode this word, hym semed that he dremed this that he herde whiche his brethern sayd / for he was all redy brought as one that had loste hys brayne / by cause of the grete sore that he felte, and forced hymself so that he righted hymself vpon his buttocke, but it was wyth grete peyn / & sayd to his broder, 'Reynawde, me semeth that I have herde named mawgis, or elles it is come to me by a vision' / 'broder,' sayd Reynawd, 'by my feyth we have socours of mawgis, that bryngeth to vs all the power of montalban' / 'Broder,' sayd Rycharde, 'for god, shewe me hym!' And thenne Reynawde toke hym vp bitwene his armes, & shewed hym mawgis, that cam ridyng vpon bayarde as faste as tempest. whan Richard saw mawgis he was so glad that he fell in a swoone bytwene his broders armes. and whan he was com agen to hymself, he sayd, 'Now am I hole, for I fele nother yll nor sore' / 'Brother Rey-nawde,' sayd alarde, 'what shall we doo? For yf the frenshemen perceyve the comyng of mawgis, they shall fle, and I wolde for no good that they shold doo so;

1—1 omitted, F. orig. n. iv.
2 Fol. Q. iii. back.
for I wolde that we were first avenged upon them for the grete hurt that they have done to us; but let us do one thing that I shall tell you / Let us go down to the fote of the roche & begin the batayll / and while that they shall fyghte wyth us / mawgis shall be com / & by all thus they shall not scape us' / 'broder,' sayd reynawde, 'ye saye well, & we shall doo so' / and thenne reynawd, alarde, & guycharde went 8 dawn to the fote of the roche / and the lityll richarde bode above vpon the roche, for he cowde not move nor helpe hymselfe.

Reynawde cam down fro the roche wyth his two 12 brendren; and when the frenshemen sawe them, thei began to saye thone to thother / 'Here com the sons of aymon, that wyll yelde themself prisoners / now let us not kylle theim, but take we theim for 16 to brynge them a lyve to themperour Charlemagn.' and when they had sayd this / they began to crye / 'Reynawd, but yf ye wyll deye shortly / yelde yourself! and yf ye doo it wyth good wyll / we shall 20 all praye Charlemagn that he have mercy vpon you' /

When Oger herde theym speke thus, he wende it had be trouth that reynawd & his 1 brendren wold have gyven them self vp as prisoners / Soo was he full sorri for it / 24 and spored brayford wyth the spores, & cam agenst reynawd & his brendren, & sayd to theym, 'knyghtes, I holde you now for foles, that ye have lefte your roche, that was ye' savynge of your lif / this day shall ye be 28 hanged wyth grete shame / and yet I can not helpe you, for I shold be blamed of Charlemagn' / 'Oger,' sayd Reynawd, 'we be not suche foles as ye wene / but I wyll that ye flee. For by the feyth that I owe 32 to the olde aymon my fader, yf ye tary ony while here ye shall not be wyse / for yf I can reche to you / I shall shewe what I canne doo' /

1 Fol. Q. iv.
This hangyng / that reynawd spake to oger, oger behelde towards the right waye that cam fro the wode,1 and sawe folke com to reynad, that mawgis brought / and was all afore mounted vpon bayarde, that cam fast / And whan oger sawe com thus2 the folke of reynawd in grete nombre, he knew theym well, and was right glad of it / and his hert rored 8 in his beli for ioye. and righted hymself vp in his sadle wel halfe a fot, & sayd to his folke / 'Fayr lords, what shall we doo / the devyl hath told mawgis that we be here. he cometh ridyng vpon bayard, & 12 bryngeth wyth hym a fayr company. Certes, yf we were xx. thousand, yet were we not able to fighte wyth theym, and ye shall see this day that the sorow shall retorne vpon vs' / This hangyng, cam mawgys wyth 16 all his felyshyp / and there where he saw oger, he cam to hym & sayd / 'Oger, I holde you for a folke by-cause that ye cam here to werke treyson. I chalenge of you reynawd & his bredern, & am com here for to 20 be their surete. By god, oger, it longeth not to you for to betray thus reynawd & his bredern / for ye be of his lynage; but ye have yll shewed it to hym. your fader wroughte never treyson, and I merveyll me 24 sore how ye wold graunt to it / your fader lefte you in france for a pledge at saynt omers to Charlemagun, whos man ye are / paynge to hym everye yere four peny weyghte of golde / Oger, oger, ye be descended of 28 damp Richardre of roussillon, of dron of nantuell, of the duk benes of aygremauant; all thise were bredern, and good true men & feithfull knyghtes / and aymon of dordonne was theyr broder, & is fader to 32 reynawd / this knowe ye wel, and ye wyll be other than was your lynage; whereof I defye you to the deth /

1 de la serpente, F. orig. n. v.
2 Maugis et les gens, F. orig. n. v.
3 dessus la teste de son cheval, F. orig. n. v.
4--4 omitted, F. orig. n. vi. back.
5 Fol. Q. iv. back.
for I hate you utterly.' Whan mawgis had sayd this worde / he spored bayarde wyth the spores, & smote Ogyer in the sheeld so harde that the sheeld ne his harnes coude not save hym / but that he made hym a grete wounde in his brest / and of that stroke floughe the spere in peces. And whan oger sawe that / he was so sore an angred for it that he waxed almost mad, and wold have goon vpon mawgys, but he myghte not. 8 For whan bayard smelled his lord / he ran myghtely towarde hym / wold mawgis or noo. And whan he was com byfore reynawde, he kneled byfore hym / & mawgis lighted from hym, & cam to reynawd & kyssed 12 hym full swetyly / and after he kyssed alarde & guycharde. And themne sayd / 'where is the lityll rycharde? For men helde hym for one of the moost hardy of the worlde.' 'Cosin,' sayd reynawd, 'he is 16 there above sore wounded, that I wote not whether he be deed or a lyve.' 'cosin,' sayd mawgys, 'can not he move hymself' / 'it is not tyme to speke so long;' sayd reynawd / 'but lete vs se who shall doo best of vs all. 20 gyve me my horse & my armes.' 'with a good will,' sayd mawgys. and thenne reynawd armed hym & lighted vpon bayarde / the sheeld at the necke & the spere in the hande1 / and whan he had said this he 24 spored bayard with his spores / and lept at everi tyme xxx. fote of lengthe / Whan reynawd saw hymself vpon bayarde he was right glad, for 2 he trowed never to have set vpon his backe agen,3 and whan he sawe 28 hymself thus horsed & armed 4 wyth his owne armures / so helde hymself more sure than that he had be in the maister towre of montalban / and theane he made a course & ran vpon Oger, & smote hym so harde that 32 he made hym lighte fro the sadle, and bare hym fiersly

1 et dist a ses freres. Freres, armes nous car le besoing en est venu, F. orig. n. vi. 2 Fol. Q. v. 3 et qu'il peut retourner en son premier estre, F. orig. n. vi. 4—1 omitted, F. orig.
to the grounde. & when reynaude sawe oger a
grounde / he lighted a fote, & toke the horse of oger
& brought it to him agen, and helde the stirrup, &
made oger to light vpon brayforde agen / and themne
Reynawd sayd to hym / 'Cosin ogyer, now have ye the
rewarde of the goodnes that ye dyde vnto vs / but,
certes, this that ye have doon, ye dyde it as a traytour
8 & an yll kyusman / therafore kepe you fro me, for I
defy ye you; and by hym that made y° worlde, I shall
spare you nomore / for ye are slaundred /'

Cosin Reynawd,' sayd Ogyer, 'and we shall kepe
vs fro you, double ye not.' who thenne had be
in that place, he shold have seen how Reynawd had
medled hymself vygoriously among the frenshemen /
and myght well saye that he was a knyghte 1prue &
16 valyaunt. And thanne cam mawgis vpon a nother
horse that he had recovered, & spored hym with his
spores, and cam to therle Guymarde, & smote hym
thorugh the sheeld so that he shaved his spere
20 thurgh & thurgh his body / and felde hym doun deed
to therthe. 2And when he had guyven that stroke
he cried 3 'Montalban cleremoun.' and after he sayd
in this manner, 'Fre knyghtes, smyte vpon thise frenshe-
24 men, that wold sle the best knyghtes of the world;
they have well shewed grete worthynes when they be
com heder in grete nombre for to fight agenst four
knyghtes vnarmed: but they shall repente theym of
28 their bargayn right sore, 3or that two owres ben a
goo 4 / & 4therefore leye strongly vpon theim, & as harde
as ye can / for ye oger scape vs, we be 5dishonoured ' /

---

1—1 omitted, F. orig.
2—2 Et puis mist la main a son espee, et frappa ung cheval-
lier qui aoit nom alian, et luy donna sur son heauume si grant
coup, quil labact mort a terre.  Et quant II eut fait ses deux
coups, II escrie son enseigne, F. orig. n. vi.
3—3 omitted, F. orig. n. vii. back.
4 Lors dist a les gens, F. orig. n. vii. back.
5 Fol. Q. v. back.
and thenne began the striff fell and cruell; & many a frensheman was cast doun to therth: For they myghte not endure the grete merveyllcs of armes that Reynawde & his bredern made. And whan the frenshemen saw that they coude not wythstande no lenger / and saw the grete dommage & hurt that Reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis bare to them, they put theimself to flighte, and oger wyth theim, towarde the ryver of 8 dordonne; and oger passed it over vpon his horse brayforde / and whan he was come at thother side of the ryver / he lighted a fote / and Eeynaud called in a scorne, & sayd to hym / 'Oger, I trowe ye be becom 12 a fissher / have ye eeles or sawmons? I gyve you leve to chuse whether ye wyll com agen at this side, or that I go to you at that side. and yf ye come agen at this side / I shall kepe you sauf from all men, but of me 16 onely / or els make me sure fro charlemagnes folke, & I shall passe over to yonder side & shall iuste wyth you' / and after sayd to hym / 'Ye horson false knawe, ye have falsed your feyth to Charlemagn, for 20 ye be my cosin germyn / And how had ye the hert for to see vs murtherishd in your presence / and that ye defended vs not agenst all men / and ye come yourselfe for to slee vs by traison. Certes, oger, ye 24 have doon amys gretly / But thanked be god, ye leve wyth vs behynde you a good pledge / For here abideth with vs Foulques of morillon and therle Guimard / the whiche shall never make vs no werre; & more than vi." 28 hundred of your frenshe knyghtes / evyll tydynges ye shall bere of theym to charlemagne and to Rowlande / and ye shall gyve theym an yll rekenyng of your men. And godlys curse have they yf they make not 32 you to be hanged as a theeff 4 by the necke.' 4

---

1 Fro in Caxton. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. n. vii. back. 3 quatre, F. orig. n. vii. back. 4—4 omitted, F. orig.
CHAP. X.] HOW OGIER IS REPROVED BY HIS MEN.

1 Thebome were the frenshemen sore abashed when thei herde reinaud reprise oger^2 so, wherof thei were glad,^3 & said to oger / 'well fynde ye now ye^e 4 rewarde of your goodnes! yf ye wolde have doon your devoyre, ye^e four sones of aymon had be taken' / & whan oger saw hymself thus repreved of thone parte & of thother, he was right sori for it / and thenne thei 8 lefte hym vpon the river side of dordonne; & abode wyth hym but V^4 men / and whan oger sawe that all his company had lefte hym / he knew well that they dyd so for dispyte. thenne said he all by hymself, 12 'Fayr god of heven, I am well worthy to be served thus! and the proverbe may well be reheered for a trouth, that sayth / "Often happeth evil for a good torne"' / whan oger had said this, he '^cried &^5 sayd 16 to reynawd / 'O, mad beest, ye blame me wrongfully & wythout a cause, for ye & your bredern shold have be hangered by this wythout ony pardonne / nor mawgys had never com here tyme ynouge; wherof ye have 20 called me traytour / but ye lye falsly, for I never dide treison, nor never shall, yf god wyll. Ye have also called me fyssher, now ought I well to wexe mad all quycke, whan suche a gloton doth to me soo grete 24 owtrage / but by the feith that I owe to all my freades / but yf I fered other than you / I shold goo gyve you suche a stroke thorugh the sheldes that ye sholde saye it is a stroke of a maister.' ¶ Thenne said 28 reynaued / 'oger, ye speke well at your ease / for ye shall doo no thynge at all of that ye say, leest your limmes should be hurt' / 'by my berde,' sayd Oger, 'I shal' / And thenne he broched braiford with the spores, 32 and put hymselfe to swymme over the ryver. And when he was come to the playn grounde / he made

The Frenchmen also reprove the Dane for not having slain the Sons.

The Frenchmen also reprove the
de for not
having slain the
Sons.

OGIER laments over his evil
fortune,

and tells Rey-
nawde how
wrongfully he
blames him after
his goodness
towards him.

He swins over
the river again
on Brayford,

1 Fol. Q. vi.  2 le dannys, F. orig. n. vii. back.  
3 Lors direant entreux. Dieu soit loue de ses parolles, F. 
   orig. n. vii. back.  4 dix, F. orig.  5—5 omitted, F. orig.
and declares himself ready to fight.

Reynawde does not wish to begin the quarrel again,

but Ogier will fight, so that men may not say he has betrayed the Emperor,

and would rather die than return thus to Charlemagne.

Reynawde in great anger defies Ogier to the death,

and runs so hard upon him that both their spears are broken,

hym redy for to ioust as wete as he was. and whan reynawde saw oger so yll arayed for to fighte, he had pite therof / And said to him,

'C osyn, I have at this our no wyll for to fyght, 4 and therfore 1 goo your wayes agen, for this daye ye shall not be defoyled by me; now know I well that ye have holpen me' / 'Reynawl,' sayd oger, 'moke not wyth me / Ye have called me traytour byfore many 8 knygthes. yf I went my waye agen / men mighte saye to Charlemagn that I had betrayed hym falsly / My spere is yet all hole: it were a grete shame to me but yf I brake it vpon you or vpon one of your bredern / For 12 Foulques & therle guymarde shold complayne in helle vpon me / and of thother parte I shold have non excuse toward the kyng charlemagn yf I went thus away / for ye have well slayne four hundred knygthes of ours / 16 wherfore I saye for a conclusyon that I shall not goo my waye, but that I medle firste wyth you / for ye wote well that yf I wente thus my waye / the kyng Charlemagn sholde bere me som dishonour for it, & 20 he shold have rayson, & also he shold make me to be heded, and therfore I wyll fyghte wyth you / for, certes, I have lever dey than to retorne thus to hym / and yf god hath ordered that ye shall Smyte of my hede, I 24 pardoone you my deth / for yf I can overcome you, I shall brynge you to the kyng charlemagn, what som- ever come of it.'

A nd whan reynawd herde oger speke so, he wexed 28 mad for angre, & sayd by wrathe / 'Oger, I defye you to y' deth, & kepe you fro me!' 'and you of me,' sayd oger / And whan they had defyed eche other so, Reynawd spored bayarde, & Ogier brayford, their good 32 horses, & ran thone vpon thother so strongly that the erthe trembled vnder their fete / and whan cam to laye the speres alowe, thei hit eche other so harde that they

1 Fol. Q. vi. back.
brake their speres; and after their speres were broken / they recounted echc other wyth theyr sheldes, & gaaf echc other so grete strokes that thei both fell down to 4 therth over the coper of their horses,1 & were sore wounded. and whan y2 two good knyghtes2 sawe theimself at the grounde,3 thei rose vp quyckly & set hande to their swerdes, & began to make so harde medelyng 8 that it was merveylle. But herke of their horses! wyte that whan bayarde & braiforde sawe their maisters at the grounde / incontynent they went thone to thother / and began to byte echc other, & cast their fete thone 12 vpon thother. whan oger sawe that, he was ful sory for it / for he knewe well that bayarde was the stronger; so ran oger thider, the shelde at his necke & his swerde in his hande; for he wold helpe his good horse braiforde, for he was a ferde that bayarde sholde have kylled hym. Whan reynawd sawe this, he cried & sayd / 'what is it oger that ye wyll doo? it is not the werke of a knyghte to smyte a beest / and well me 20 semeth that ye have ynoughe to doo of me wythout ye bete not my horse’ / Thenne reynawd smote oger so grete a stroke vpon his helme, that he felde hym down to the grounde; but the stroke slidde a side & kyt a 24 sondre all that it rought well a hundred mayles of his flankarde, and wounded hym sore vpon his hippe / and yf the swerde had not tourned wythin reynawdes hande, oger sholde never have eten bred / and whan 28 reynawd had gyven to hym that stroke / he sayd to hym, ‘oger, lete alone bayarde, for ye have ynoughe adoo wyth me / I beleve that I have apayred your helme / for I see your visage that is sore pale.’ and 32 whan oger felt hymself hurt / he waxed almost wood for angre / and returned to reynawd wyth his swerde

1 tieullement que de tieulle iouste, F. orig. n. viii. back.
2 Fol. Q. vii.
3 Sans faire demourance, F. orig. n. viii. back.
cortyne, and sayd, 'Ha, cortyne that so moche I have
loved the, and, certes, it is wel rayson / for ye be a good
swerde, & in many places ye have well holpen me, &
many a proud man overthrown / and when I went
with charlemagn at estborwgh in almayn / Rowlande
& Olyver dyde assaye their swerdes at Perron / And I
smote after for to assaye you, And ye kytted therof
well halfe 1 a fote, and there I brake you, wherof I was 8
right sori. But for the goodnes that I know in you,
for to be amended agen, & therfore ye be called courten /
and if ye avenge me now of this gloton I shall
never have no trust to you / and themne he smote Rey-
nau'd vpon his helme so harde, that he made hym rele /
and when oger saw Reynau'd thus arayed, he said to
hym, 'by god, Reynawde, I have yeld ye agen that
ye had gyven me / we be now quyte: wyll ye begyn a 16
freshe.' 'by my feyth,' sayd Reynawd, 'ye, for I
desire more to fight than I do ony other thynge' / and
themne they went & ranne thone upon ye other and
began a nother medelynge; but themne cam there 20
alarde, mawgis, & guycharde, & all their folke / and
when oger sawe theim com, he was 2 wrathe & sory 2 for
it / and so went he agen to brayforde, his good horse,
& lighted upon him, & swymmed agen over dordonne. 24
and when he was over, he abode still at the ryver side,
& lighted down to therthe / but he had no sadel upon
his horse, for the gyrthes brake when he iusted wyth
Reynawde / When Reynawd sawe brayforde sadeles, he 28
called to oger, & sayd, 'Oger, com fetche your sadell,
for it shall be to you a grete shame yf ye ryde thus;
and thanke our lorde that ye be thus departed fro me
wythout ony more harme; for yf we had taried a lityll 32
lenger togyder / I wold have broughte you in suche a
place where ye were never; for the kynge Charlemagn,
your lord, sholde never have rescued you in [t]yme 3 /

---

1 Fol. Q. vii. back.  2—2 moult doulant, F. orig. n. viii.
Reynawd,' sayd oger, 'ye threten me of ferre / it longeth not to a good knyghte to threten one so; but I wote well that ye it had not be your folke that have 4 socourde you, I wolde have brought you to kyng Charlemagn or evyn.' 'Ogyer,' sayd Reynawd, 'ye have well shewed that ye be a good knyghte that passed ye ryver of dordonne for to com fight wyth me; but 8 shall ye tari the1 for me tyll I passe over at theother side 2vpon my horse bayard.' 'ye, vpon my soule,' sayd oger / 'and ye doo it, I shall saye that ye be the best knyghte of the world. When Reynawde vnder-

12 stode that worde, he spored bayarde wyth the spores, & wold have passed over dordonne, but mawgis, alarde, & guycharde letted hym / and wold not suffre hym to goo, but toke hym by the brydell; and alarde sayd to

16 hym / 'Ha, fayr broder, & what is this that ye wyll doo / ye be overhasty / for who that dooth you goode, he leseth well his tyme. ye knowe well, and Oger had not be, we sholde have be ded this daye, and the

20 socours of mawgis had helped vs but lityll / Lete Ogyer be in peas, I praye you / for there is not a better knyghte in the worlde than he is one' / & thenne cryed alarde to ogyer / 'Fayr cosyn, goo to god / for ye have well

24 holpen vs' / when alard had spoken to ogyer / he re-
torned him to his broder Reynawd, & sayd to hym,

'Fayr brother, me semeth it were good that we shold torne backe agen, for to wyte howe our brother Richard

28 dooth / that abydeth upon the roche mouthebron so wounded as ye knowe. Lete goo our ennuyes with shame ynoughe, for we have dommaged them ryght sore.' Thenne called Ogier to Reynawde / and sayd, 32 'ye have dyscomfyted vs / but by my faders soule, we shall come agen soo grete folke vpon you, that we shall bere to you grete harme, and so shall we take the proye / the whiche ye shall not dare defende' /

\footnote{1 sur broyfort, F. orig. o. i. back.} \footnote{2 Fol. Q. viii.}
"Now threten all fayr," sayd Reynawd, "for we have suche a castell where we dare well abyde Charlemagne / and you, at any owre that ye come / and also I telle you for certen that, or ever thre\(^1\) dayes be passed / 4 ye shall never take vs for all that ye can doo. And how somever the game gooth, the losse hath ever be vpon you vnto this tyme / And also ye shall bere no goode tydynges to Charlemagne."

And whan ogier had spoken ynooge to Reynawde / he spored Brayforde,\(^2\) \(^3\)and wente after his folke that had lefte hym, and he rode soo long that he cam to Mountbandell, & lighted doun before the tente 12 of Charlemagn / and whan Rowland & Olyvere saw com Oger thus wounded & makynge so evyll chere / thei trowed that there had bee a battayll; and that ogier had taken Reynawde & his breder. and so thei dyde 16 call the duke Nameyns, Salmon of breten, Rycharde of normandy, & therle Guydellon; and when thei were all assembled / they sayd, thone to tother, "Pour vnhappy, & what shall we do / this day shall we see hange the 20 four sones of Aymon / thei be cosins to vs all, and yf Charlemagn maketh them to be hanged / we be dyshonoured for ever" / And whan Charlemagn sawe com ogier, he sayd to him, "Oger, where ben the foure sones\(^4\) of Aymon / have ye taken theym, or slayn theim, or remysed theym for prysoners?" "Syr," sayd ogier, "all fair and softly, wyte it that they ben no children / but thei are the best knyghtes of the world / and they be 28 a lyve / I tell you, syre, that we fonde theym in the playn of valcolours / all four clothed in scarlet, furred wyth ermyns, & vpon mewles / and bare in their handes flowers & roses. well has the kyng yon of gascoyn kep\(^5\) 32 his covenant to you / for he hath sent theym forth in suche maner as he promysed to you / but worthynes

---

\(^1\) quatre, F. orig. o. i.
\(^2\) des esperons, F. orig. o. i.
\(^3\) Fol. Q. viii. back.
& the proues was suche that they chaunged ther meules
to gode horses, & recovered both shelde & spere.
And whan Reynawd had goten a horse / he slewe
4 foulques of morillon first of all, and mounted upon his
horse\(^1\) / but at the last they fonde a roche corven after
the maner of a cave, that is a strong place / where they
defended theymself a longe while ; and Rycharde, one
8 of their brethern, had be slayn / and another thre shold
have ben other taken or slayn, if mawgis had not com
there to socoure theym, mounted vpon bayarde, &
brought with hym V. thousande knightes,\(^2\) whiche have
12 dyscomfyted vs, and have slayne therle Guymarde' /

\(H\) a,' sayd Charlemagne, 'that is it true that they
ben so scaped.' 'syre,' sayd Ogyer, 'ye, verely.'
When the kyng vnderstode that reynawde & his
16 brethern were scaped, he was\(^3\) right wrothe & full angry\(^3\)
for it / and sayd / 'Ha, good lord of glory / 'how am I
shamed for four glotons! certes this weryes me sore!
but no forse, lete themy doo the worst that they can,
20 for yf they have scaped me now, they shall not scape
me a nother tyme' / 'Syre,' sayd Ogyer, 'wyte it / but
mawgys had not be, they cowde not have scaped.'
'goodlys curse have he for it,' sayd Charlemagne, 'and
24 an evyll yere; for often has he holpen theym agenst
me / and soo I wote well, that yf I helde Reynawde &
his brethern wythin my prison / Mawgis sholde delyver
theym oute, and therfore I hate hym to deth, wherof I
28 praye you our lord that I deye not tyll I be first
\(^4\) avenged of it.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogyer, 'by the feyth that
I owe to you / Reynawd gaaff me soo grete a stroke that
the corner of my helme felle doun wythall to therthe,
32 and I promyse you I was well gladde when I was scaped
from his handes. For of thre thousande \(^5\) that we

---
\(^1\) puis nous les menasmes ung grant traiect dare tous desco-
fitz, F. orig. o. ii. back.
\(^2\) Fol. R. i.
\(^3\) moult douant, F. orig. o. ii. back.
\(^4\) avenged in Caxton.
\(^5\) cheualliers, F. orig. o. ii. back.
broughte wyth vs, there are com agayn but thre hun-
dred, and the surplus is all slayn or taken’ / When
Rowland vnderstode thise wordes, he shoke all for
angre, & sayd by grete wrethe, ‘By god, syre Ogyer, 4
ye were sore hardly, for ye had noo felawes that dyd
soo wel as ye dyde / but by saynt peter the postle / I
saw never soo stronge a cowarde as ye be, nor never
cam oute of Denmark a good knyghte.’ ‘Ha, hourson 8
cowarde kaytiif, how have ye ony eyen that dare
holde vpo! a man / but a nother thyng there is / for
ye have spared theym / for they ben your cosins &
your frendes. Now be the kyng blamed, but yf he 12
maketh you to be hewen in all peces, for they sholde
have ben take, if ye had not be’ /

Thenne whan oger sawe hymselfe so reprieved he
wexed all madde of the grete injury that Row-16
lande had sayd to hym soo / and answered boldly &
sayd, ‘Damp Rowlande, ye lye falsly of that ye saye;
For I am not suche as ye telle / And here is my pledge
for to defende me this quarelle agenst body to body; 20
for I nor none of my kyñ dyde never amys agenste
Charlemagn; but of all Fraunce I am one of the best
& truest knyght that be in it; and of a better kynne I
am come than ye be, Rowlande2 / Gerarde of roussyllon 24
was myne vncle / he kept me of a lityll chylde; and
Dron of nantuell & the duke Benes of aygremount;
these thre were brethern, the whiche were all myn
vncles. And Myneus of aygremount was my fader / 28
and also the bishopp Turpyn & Rycharde of normandy
ben my kynsmen / and thus are the four sones of
aymon of my lynage. Now, good sire Rowlande, telle
me your lynage, for I knowe your highnes; for by saynt 32
dens of Fraunce, I shall defende me agenst you wyth
my swerde / and so shall I shewe to you yf I be true or

1 Fol. R. i. back.
2 Sire droit emperour, F. orig. o. ii.
no' /1 Rolwanede was thenne wounderfull wrothe / when he herde ogyer speke so, and vanueed hymselfe agenste hym, & wolde have smyte hym / And when ogyer sawe 4 hym come, he set hande to his swerde cortyne, & sayd to Rowland / 'Beware ye be not so hardy for to set hande vpon me, for by the feyth that I owe to him that begate me / I shall make the hede to flee fro thy S body / yf ye come ony nerer' / When Charlemagn saw thise two barons move theymselfe soo sore, 2 the one agenste thother2/ he was right sory for it / And thenne rose the duke Naymes of bavyre, & therle Aymery, and 12 sayd / 'Syr Rowlande, what wyll ye doo / by my hede, the thyng shall not goo as ye trowe / For oger is not suche as ye make hym ;3 and yf the kynge were not, the thynge sholde goo otherwyse than 4 ye wene / ogyer is 16 suche a knyghte as all the world knoweth; nor in his lynage was never noo man borne that made treyson; but he is the best knyghte in all Fraunce of all sides but we merveylle how Charlemagn suffreth you to tak 20 so grete a pride vpon you. And yf he suffreth it / we wyll not doo so for no thyng that can come of it.' When Charlemagne sawe this grete noyse betwene his barons, he was right wrothe, & sayd to Rowland, 'Fayr 24 nevew, lette this alone, for it longeth not to you to saye so / and betwene this & to morow I shall enquire of this matere; and yf Oger hath doo amys in ony thyng agenste me, I shall make hym abye it full dere / for all 28 they in the world shall not kepe hym, but I shall make hym beheded for it.' 'Syr,' sayd ogyer, 'I wyt well but there is in fraunce no man so prue ne so hardy / that shall saye that I have doon treyson agenst you nor 32 agenst ony other, but that I shall fighte agenst hym in the quarrell / and shold shewe to hym that he lyed

1 Aultrement me conuiendra mourir de dueil, F. orig. o. ii.
2-2 omitted, F. orig. o. ii.
3 et que vous le doyes bactre ne outraiger, F. orig. o. iii. back.
4 Fol. R. ii.
and relates to him all that happened at Mountbron, and says he will from henceforth help the Sons whenever he shall find that they need it.

He blames Roland for his hastiness, and vows he would not dare to meet Reynawde mounted upon Bayard for all the gold of Spain.

falsly / but and it playse you to here me, I shall telle you the trouth of the mater / Wyte it, syre, that when I came to the roche Mountbron where the four sones of Aymon were, and sawe that we were so grete nombre of folke agenst four knyghtes all vnarmed / I promyse you that I holpe theym not / nor I was not agenst theym / but wythedrew me aside & lete the other shytte wyth theym / and I stode stylly & behelde vpon the grete sorow / For I sawe deye my flesshe & my blode, and I myghte not helpe theym of noo thyng / Now have I tolde you all the trouth / and all that I dyde / And yf ye fynde otherwyse than that I telle you a fore all thise noble barons / I wyll be sore punysshed / but by the feyth that I ow to god, yf ever I fynde me in any place where I maye helpe theym, I shalle helpe them wyth all my power, yf I shold lose my hede for it. For all the worlde oughte to hate me, by cause I faylled theim atte theyr nede. For they ben my cosins / and ye, syre, have doon so moche to theym that it shold suffyez you, for they be not soo moche gilty of that they be charged of as men make semblaut; but by the virgyn Mary / as long as I shal lyve, I shall not fayll theym of that I maye doo. Over hasty was Rowlande for to have smytte me wrongfully / and wythout ony cause, but I wyll well that he knowe that yf he sawe Reynawde mounted vpon his horse bayarde / he sholde not take hym for a ribawde, nor he sholde not dare abyde hym body to body, for all the golde of spayne. Whan Rowlande herde Oger speke thus / he sayd to hym, ‘by god, Oger, ye have prayed hym moche / and ye make hym wonderfull hardye / but I praye god that I maye ones fynde hym vpon bayarde, his good horse, all armed from hede to too / for to knowe yf he be as valyaunt as ye make hym’ /

---

1 Sans mentir de mot, F. orig. o. iii. back.
2 Fol. R. ii. back.
How Ogier Vows to Help the Sons.

Wyte that god herde the prayer of Rowlande, for Rowlande not longe after that fonde Reynawde upon bayarde, and I telle you that Rowland helde hym not 4 sith for noo rybayarde nor for no knave / but toke hym for the beste knyght of the worlde / But the history leveth now to telle of kyng Charlemagn of Frangue / of Rowland,1 & of Ogier the dane, and of the XII peres 8 of Frangue that ben at ye sege afore Mountalan / and retorneth to speke of Reynawde, that was yll at ease for the love of Richarde, his brother, that was wounded to deth in the roche Montbron.

CHAPTER XI.2

12 [How by the succours that Mawgis brought to reynawd and to his bretherne into the playne of Walcoloures, they discomfited kyng charlemagnes folke, wherof Ogier had manye reproches of rowlande for some goodnes and favoure that he had shewed to reynawde and his bretherne at roche mountbron, and was therfore called trai-

20 toure, wherof a great inconvenience came therof afterwarde afore king Charlemagne.]

Now sheweth the history, after that Reynawd had dyscomfyt the frenshemen / he returned agen

1 et de Olivier, F. orig. o. iii.

2 The heading of this chapter is omitted by Caxton, and is therefore given here from Copland's Table: the French Edition of 1480 has it in the following form:

Comment, par le secours que maugis amena a Regnault et a ses freres es plains de Vaulx couleurs, ilz des confirent les gens du roy Charlemaigne, dont ogier en eut mains reproches de Rollant pour aucune bonte quil anoit faicte a Regnault et a ses freres en la roche moabron. Et en fut ogier appelle 'traictre,' dont grant Inconvenient en vint apres devant Charlemaigne, Chapitre xi.
Reynawd returns to the rock Mountbron, and weeps over the sad state of Richard.

Mawgis comes to the rock, and is sorry when he sees Reynawd weep thus.

He promises to cure Richard of his wounds, if Reynawd will vow to help him against Charlemagne.

towarde roche mountbron, where he had lefte his brother Richard, thus wounded, as ye have herde / And whan he was come there, & saw his brother so horryble wounded / he cowde not kepe him from wepynge / and 4 sayd, 'Alas! what shall I doo whan I 1 have lost my dere brother, the beste frende that I have in the world?' and after he had sayd that worde he felle to the grounde from bayarde in a swoune. and whan alarde 8 & guycharde sawe their broder that was fall, they began to make theyr mone for Eicharde pietously. And whan Eeynawd was com agn to hymselfe / hs mad a grete sorowe wyth his two bredern, Alards & 12 guycharde, vpon Richard their brother, that laye vpon therthe wyth his bowelles betwene his handes. And this hangyng, cam mawgis vpon broykarre, his gode horse, the best that men wyste after bayarde / and 16 helde a pece of a spere in his hande / And whan he saw Reynaud make suche sorow, he was right sori for it. And whan he sawe Richard thus sore wounded / he was wrothe, & had grete pyte for to see the wounde 20 that was so grete / for men sawe the lyver wythin his body. Thenne sayd he to Reynawd, 'fayr cosin, take hede what I shall say, & leve this sorow; ye know wel that ye be all my cosins / and therfore we ought to 24 parforce ourselfe for to socour thone the other whan it is nede. I have socoured you many tymes / and wyte it that all the [h]arme that Charlemagn bereth to me / it is all thrughe your occasion / he slewe my 28 fader but late, wherof I bere yet at my hert grete hevynes, that was your vnclc that deyed for your love: that knowe ye well / But ye wyll promyse me afore all your barons for to com wyth me into the 32 tente of the kynge charlemagne, & helpe me to sawte hym for to avenge vpon hym the dethe of my sayd fader / ye we can, I shall delyver to you Rychard, evyn

1 Fol. R. iii.
now hole & sounde without any sore' / and whan Reynawde understode thise wordes, he cam to mawgis / and kyssed hym in the breste all wepyng, & sayd to hym / 'Ryghte swete & fayr cosyn, for god mercy, Delyver to me agen my broder Richarde hole, yf it playse you. And yf ye wyll that I 1 doo any other thynge for you / commaunde me, and I shall do it wyth right good herte / For ye wote well that I dyde never ony thynge that was ageast your wyll; nor there is no man in the worlde for whom I wolde doo so moche as I wold do for you.' 1

whan mawgis sawe Reynawd 12 wepe so tenderly, he had grete pite of it, and sayd to hym, 'Now be not dysmayed of no thynge, fayr cosyn, for ye shall have Richarde hole & sounde incontynente.' And thenne he lighted down from his horse / and toke a botell wyth white wyne, & wasshed the wounde of Rycharde ther wythall ryght well / and had awaye all the blood that was aboute / And be not merveyled where he gate all suche thynges as apperteyneth to this cure / For he was the subtillest nygramancer that ever was in the worlde; and whan he had doon so, he toke his bowelles, & put theym agen in to his body / and thenne he toke a needle & a thred / and sewed vp the 24 wounde full maisterly, and hurted not rycharde / and after, he toke a salve, he anoynted all the wounde / and as soone as the wounde was thus anoynted it was as hole as thoughe he had never be hurte in that place 28 of his body / And whan he had doon all this, he toke a drynke & gaaf it to Rycharde for to drynke / and whan Richarde had dronken it, he rose lightly upon his fete, all delyvered & quyte fro his dysase / and sayd to his breder / 'where is Ogier goon and his folke / are they seaped from vs' / 'brother,' answered Reynawd, 'we have dyscomfyted theim, god gramercy, & mawgis, that cam to socour vs / for otherwyse we sholde have

1 Fol. R. iii. back.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. XI.

ben all deed, and so he hath saved vs & our lyves at thyts tyme. now ought we well to love hym more than our selfe.' 'broder,' sayd Richard, 'ye saye trouthe' / and after, Alarde sayd to mawgys / 'fayr 4 cosin, hele me, I praye you / for I have a grete wounde in the thye.' 'And I also,' sayd Reynawde, 'for I 1 am hurt right sore' / 'and I also,' sayd guycharde, 'for goddys love gyve vs helihe to all vs' / thenne sayd mawgis to 8 theim / 'be not dysmayed, my fayr cosyns / for I shall helpe you al anone' / Thenne toke mawgis of the white wyne wherof he had washed the wounde of Richard / and wasshed their wounds to theim all / and after he 12 noynted theim swetly, & anone they were all hole / And whan they were all guarisshed / they made Richard to lighte vpon a horse, and put theymself to the waye, for to retorne agen to montalban. 2 And thus as they 16 went on their waye, 3 a spy departed fro their felyshyp of Reynawde / and cam to montalban to the kyng yon, & sayd to hym, 'Sir, I bryng you tydynges / Now wyte that reynawd & his bredren ben scaped fro 20 the playn of valcolours, where ye had sent theim; and they have dyscomfyted ogier the dane & all the folke of charlemagn, and also they have slayn foulques of morillon & therle guynarde / and soo many of other 24 knyghtes that I cowde not telle you the nombre.'

And whan the kyng yon vnderstode thise tydynges, he was sore abashed of it, that he wyste not what he sholde saye; and after he sayd, 'Alas, how 28 gooth this / here ben evill tydynges! how may this be / dyde they fynde the busshemente of the kyng Charlemagne? 'sire,' sayd the spye / 'ye, certenly / and shold have ben cursedly handled yf mawgis their 32 cosin had not socourde theim / And for the socours that mawgys broughte wyth him / Oger was dyscom-

---

1 Fol. R. iv. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. o. iv. 3 a moult grant joye, F. orig. o. iv.
fyted, & all his folk of Charlemagne, soo that fewe of
theym scaped / For mawgis broughte to Reynawd
Bayarde, his good horse / that was cause of all the harme
4 that was doon there of the other parte1 / ʼAlas! vn-
•,! 1

For omitted,

Fq

12
16
20
24
28
32

No

muti.

iij

F

HN

chcvaulx

279

/ 

Now

Alas

2

•,!

1

For

omitted,

F

12

made soo grete a treyson as I have doon, that wold
have brought to a cruell deth the best knyghtes of the
worlde, 1 that ben the four sones of Aymon,1 for the
thretynge of a pryncy.ʼ And when he had sayd thise
16 worde, he beganne to make grete sorowe / and sayd /
ʼHa, fayr suster Clare / this daye shall departe our love /
ye shall never see me more / This daye shall I forsake
Gascoyn, for I shall never come agen therinʼ / And
20 thenne he cryed wyth an hyghe voys / ʼNow goo hens,
fayr lorde, for goddis sake / be lightly redy / For the
nede of it is now com; and lete vs bryng with vs the
beste knyghtes3 that I and ye have. and yf we maye
24 doo so moche to gete the wode of the serpent, 4 which
is a grete forest, we shall be sauff ynough / and 4 we
shall may sace at our ease / For we shall lodge our-
selxe wythin an abbey of saynte Lazare / and we shall
28 take suche habyte as the moxte there have / And by
all thus shall we maye be saved. For I knowe soo
moche goodnes in Reynawd, that when he shall fynde
vs shoren as monkes / he shall do vs no harmeʼ /
32 Thenne was there a snye, that was called Pygwade,
that was soo grete that he had well XV fote of lengthe/

1–1 omitted, F. orig. o. v. back. 2 Fol. R. iv. back.
3 chcvaulx que vous ayez, F. orig. o. v. back.
4–4 omitted, F. orig. o. v. back.
A spy called Pygwade writes all the words of John on parchment, and wente as faste as any horse cowde trotte / This Pygwade had well herde all that the kyng yon had sayd / & wrote it in a skynne of parchemente / and wente lightly out of Mountalban at the gate, called y* 4 gate fawcon / and passed thrugh the wood of the serpent in a lityll while, And mette wyth Reynaud, his bretherne, and Mawgis, that came agayn to Mountalban, that broughte wyth them 1 a grete multytyde of 8 prisoners; and Pygwade, that grete theeff watched vpon 2 theym. And anone he ranne as faste as he myghte to Mountbendel / and wente in to the pavylyon of Charlemagne, and called Rowlande / and sayd to hym, 'Syre, I shall telle you such tydynges / wherby ye shall gete goode ynounge, yf ye wyll beleve me / And I shall telle you a thynge wherof ye shall be right gladde' / 'Goode frendes,' sayd thenne Rowlande, 'thou arte welcom to me / and what tydynges bryngeth thou, telle me, I praye the.' 3 'Syre,' sayd Pygwade / 'wyte it that the kyng yon fleeth awaye all vnarmed / he and all his folke, and hath wyth them nother somer nor 20 mewle, but oonly their beste horses' / And they goo in to the wode of the serpente, in to a house of religyon, which is named saynte Lazare / and he hymselfe is delybered for to take the habyte and to be come a 24 monke / 'By my feyth,' sayd thenne Rowlande, 'I shall goo mete wyth them anone wyth foure thousande knyghtes / And I shall avenge Reynawde and his brederne vpon theym / and I shall make theym to be 28 hanged as traytours / For I never loved traytours / nor never shal, and god wylle' / 'Syre,' sayd Pygwade, 'yet is there more / for I have founde Reynawde, his brethern, and Mawgis, that came over the ryver of 32 Balencon, that bryngeth wyth them many prisoners of your folke / And yf ye wyll fynde theim, ye muste

1–1 omitted. F. orig. o. v. back.  
2 Fol. R. v.  
3 thee.
CHAP. XI.] OF THE ARRIVAL OF ROLAND AT THE ABBEY.

281

goo that waye' / 'Frende,' sayd Rowlunde, 'ye have deserved a grete rewarde / for ye have broughte to vs goode tydynges' / Thenne Rowlunde called to hym Olyver / and sayd, 'Olyver, my good & true felawe, lighte vpon your horse quyckely / and brynge wyth you Guydellon and Rycharde of Normande; and ye syre Oger of Danmarke, ye shall come wyth me, yf it playse you / and ye shall see the grete prouesse of Eynawde, the sone of Aymon / And we shall take wyth vs but foure thousand men, and yet Eynawde is fyve thousand well horsed and well arayed / And thus we shall mowe fyghte wyth theyra wythoute ony avantage.' 'Certes,' sayd Oger, 'I shall goo there to see howe ye shall have hym / And whan ye have taken hym, I promyse you to lende you a rope, yf ye have nede of it' / And whan they had all devysed, they mounted on horse backe / and toke their wyaye, And the grete rybawde guyded theym streyght to the ryver of Balancon. And the kynge of Gascoyn rode thenne thorughe the wodes of serpente wyth his folke / and he rode soo longe that he aryved at the monastary of saynte Lazare / And they prayed the abboto of the place soo moche, that he made theym monkes in the devylles name / This hangynge, came there Rowlunde and Olyvere wyth theyr folke, that entred anone in to the abbey. And whan the abbot sawe them, he came theym agenste, and all the covent syngyng, 'Te deum laudamus.' And whan they had songe / the abbot sayd to Rowlunde, 'Syre, ye be right welcome / wyll ye have ony thynge that we may doo?' / 'Lorde abbot,' sayd Rowlunde, 'we thanke you wyth all our herte / But wyte that we seke here the falseste traytour of the worlde / that men calle the kyng yon of Gascoyn / the whiche is here wythin; for I wyll hange hym like a theeff' /

1 Fol. R. v. back.
Thenne answered the abbot / 'ye shall not, syre, and plaise you, for he is become our monke / and also he hath taken the habyte / And therfore we shall defende hym agenste all men.' Whan Rowlande herde 4 the abbot speke soo / he tooke hym by the hoode / And Olyver toke the Pryour that was nyrge, & they shoved them so prately agenste a pyllor of marbell stone that their eyen lepte oute of theyr hedes. And 8 1thenn Rowlande sayd to the abbot / 'Now mayster monke, delyver to me lightly that devyll the kyng Yon, whiche is the brother of Iudas, or elles I shall make an ende of you, For I have sworne that he shall 12 never doo treyson more' / Whan thabbot vnderstode this that Rowlande sayd to hym, he and all his monkes fledde awaye from hym. And whan Rowlande sawe this, he set ende to his goode swerde, Durandall, and 16 entred in to the cloystre, where he fonde the kyng yon knelynge byfore an ymage of our lady, And was cladde wyth the abbyt of religyon / and the hode vpon his hede / And whan Rowlande sawe hym / he knewe 20 hym well / For he had seen hym afore that wyth his vncl Charlemagn / Thenn he toke hym and sayd to hym, 'Syre monke, in the devylls name, conne ye well your lesson / arise vp wyth sorowe, and come wyth 24 me for to see the kyng Charlemagne; for he shall make you to be hanged as a traytour proved evyll kyng, and a felon / Where ben the foure sones of Aymon that ye sholde have delyvered vnto Charlemagn? ye 28 shall be payed for the trayson that ye have doon; and I wyth myn handes shall avenge Reynawde and his brethern vpon you.' And whan he had sayd this / he made the kyng Yon to be set vpon a horse / and 32 blynded his eyen 2wyth a clowte, that he myghte not see noo thynge. 2 And thenne gaffe hym the monkes hode vpon his hede / And thus satte in the sadle, the

1 Fol. R. vi. 2 2 omitted, F. orig. o. vi.
face toward the horse taylle / and the back forward. The kyng yon made none other thyng but that he wyssshed styll after Reynawd and his brethren / and 4 sayd / 'Alas, and that I dyde grete harme / whanne that I consented to this mortalle trayson 1 / Now oughte I well to deye ten tymes yf 2 it myghte be soo 2 / For I have well deserved deth.' 3 When the kyng e Yon had 8 sayd this, he sayd to one of his pryve counseyll that he herde nyghe hym, how well he sawe not, 'Frende, goo to Mountalban, and telle Reynawde that he com to socour me, for he is my man, and that he take no 12 hede to my trespase 2 & evyll dede 2 / but to his fraunchyse. For yf he let me deye soo, he shall be therof repreved & blamed evermore, and his yssue shall be dishonourde by. And yf he can recover me / I wyll 16 that he make my tonge to be kyt of, wherby I dyd consent to the trayson / or elles my hede / yf it semeth hym good / for I have well deserved it agenst hym' / 'Syre,' sayd the knyghte, 'I shall not goo 20 there, for I wote wyll that reynawd wyll not set one fote forth for to save you, by cause of the grete harme that ye wold have doon to hym' / 'he shal,' sayd the kyng yon, 'for I knowe so moche by hym 24 that he shall not saye there agenst.' 'Syr, 4 I wyll thenne goo to hym wyth a good wyll, sith that it pleise you; and god gyve that reynaude, his bredern, & mawgys wyll com & helpe you / for I know well 28 that ye have grete nede of it / but yf god helpe you' / This hangyng, olyver sayd to rowland / 'Rowlande, good felawe myn / what shall we doo with this vnhappy kyng?' / 'frende,' sayd Rowland, 'we shall 32 lede hym to mountfawcon / and we shall leve Balencon at the right hande' / And this they dyd, for to fynde

1 comme ceste a este, F. orig. o. vi.  
2—2 omitted, F. orig. o. vi.  
3 Fol. R. vi. back.  
4 dist le cheuallier, F. orig. o. vi.
reynawde & his bredern / for rowland was sore wyllinge to fynde reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis ¹his cosin. ¹‘Godle lord,’ said oger the dane, ‘by thy pite & mysericorde, graunt to Rowlande his prayer & ¼ his wyll, that is that we maye fynde Reynawde, his brethern, & mawgis / for to see how rowlænde shall bere hymself, and yf he shold take theym or noo / for I knowe well that none shall put down his pride ⁸but onely reynawd.’² ²But here I leve to speke of Rowland, olyver, & of Oger, & of their folke, and of the kynge yon of gascoyn, that ³they broughte wyth [them] for to be hanged, and retorne agen to shewe of ¹²the foure sones of Aymon.

CHAPTER XII.

¶ How after that Reynawd & hys bredern were garnysshed of theyr wounds that they had in the playne of valcolours, they ¹⁶went agen to Montalban. And how they rescued the kynge Yon from the handes of Rowlande.⁴

In this partye sheweth the history, that whan Rey- ²⁰nawde & his brethern were well hole of theyr

¹—¹ omitted, F. orig. o. vi.
² le filz aymon, F. orig. o. vii.
³ Fol. R. vii.
⁴ Caxton has left out part of the French original, which has:

“Mais quant le roy jon sceut leur destour, il sen fouryt, et sen ala rendre moyne en un moustier qui estoit dedens le boys de la serpente, la ou rolant et olivier et ogier le danæois le trouverent, et le volurent faire pendre pour la trahison quil anoit faicte a regnault et a ses freres. Non obstant que regnault fut leur enemy. Mais regnault le recourut des gens de rolant.”

Chapitre .xii.
woundes, by the helpe of Mawgys, that had heeled theym, they put theym selfe to the waye agayn towarde Mountalan. And whan they were come there / 4 my lady Clare wente agenste theym, and broughte wyth her two chyldren, Yonnet and Aymonet, that had wepte and* scratched their swete vysages soo sore that there appered of theym nother eyen nor mouthes / 8 Alwayes they wyste not wherfore they dyde soo / for they were veri yonge. And she also was dysfygured for wepynge, And of grete lamentacions that she made, for she wyste well how 2 her brother, 12 the kynge Yon, had betrayed Reynawd her husbonde and his bredern / and wende that they had ben deed. But whan she sawe theym come, she was never soo gladdle. And the two chyldren ranne at their faders 16 fete / and wold have kyssed theym. And whan Reynawde sawe theym, he shoved theym awaye wyth his fete soo strongly that he had almoste broste theym / And the lady wolde have taken hym in her armes and 20 kyssed hym, but he wolde not sufre her / and sayd to her / *Lady, goo oute of my syghte to your brother, that fellon cruell and false traitour / for ye shall never have my love agen / for it hath not holden in hym / but 24 that we shold have be deed by this tyme, ye god & our cosin mawgis had not socourde vs / now goo after hym all a fote & wythout company / for ye shall not take 4 no thing of myn, & as an evyll woman ye shall goo your way, for ye be the suster of ye gretest traytours & the vntruest kyng of the worlde / and I shall hang your chyldren / for I fere me least they sholde be traytours as their vncler / 'Syre, for god mercy,' sayd 32 the lady, 'I shall swere to you vpon all halowes, that I had doubte of your goynge, and many tymes I dyde

1 end in Caxton.  2–2 omitted, F. orig. o. vii. back.  
3 et de leurs oncles, F. orig. o. vii. back.  
4 Fol. R. vii. back.
telle you of it, thorughge thoccasion of the dreme that I
dremed that nyghte / And I tolde you that ye sholde
not beleve the kynge my brother. And, notwythy-
standynghe that he was my brother / I doubted this 4
that is befallen sith. Syre, for god I crye you mercy /
For in this I am noo thyng gyty / and soo god have
mercy of my soule / For I love moche better the leest
too of your fote, than all kyng yon my brother / 8
nor all the londe of Gascoyn.' And whan she had
sayd this, she felle doun in a swoune vpon the fete of
Reynawde. And whan guychare saw the lady in a
swoune / he toke her vp, & sayd to her / 'Madame, 12
discomft not yourselfe so sore; lete Reynaude saye
his wyll / for ye be our owne lady, 1 & our suster1 / now
be of good chere / as longe as we be a lyve we shall
not faylle you ; & thoughe 'our broder1 Reynawd faylle 16
you, we shall not doo so / but we shall serve you wyth
all our hert' / 'broder,' sayd richarde, 'lete vs doo one
thyng / goo we praye our broder Reynawd that he
pardon me my lady, our suster, his evyll wyll / for she 20
is not gyty in the mater / And yf we wold have
belved her, we shold not have gon on fote oute of
this place / and now we oughte to shewe the grene
& ye russet mauetelles of ermynes, the good horses & 24
palfreis that my lady dyde gyve vs, more oftener than
dyde Reynawde. Now lete vs reward her for it / for
she hath mystre of it / and at the nede the freade is
knowen.' 'by my feith,' said alard, 'ye saye well.' 28
And theme wente the thre breddren vnto Reynawde,
2and drewe hym a syde. and after, Alarde sayd to
hym / 'Fair broder, for god dys love be not thus angry,
for ye know that my lady hath noo culpe at all the 32
treyson that her brother, the kynge yon, hath doon to
vs / For yf ye wolde have byleved her, we sholde not

1—1 omitted, F. orig. o. vii.
2 Fol. R. viii.
have goon thider / Wherfore we praye you that ye wyll pardonne her' / Thenne sayd Reynwd, 'my brethren, for the love of you I graunt the same, and I 4 pardonne her myn evyll wyll presently' / Whan the brethren vnderstode hym, they were right glad / and came agen to the lady Clare, and sayd to her / ‘Madame, be of good chere, and make Ioye, for we 8 have made your peas’ / And thenne 1Alarde & Guy- charde 1 toke her by the handes, and broughte her to her husbonde Reynwd / and whan Reynawde saw her / he went and toke her by the chynne, and kyssed her. 2

12 And thenne began the ioye & the feste rght grete at Mountalban / And they wasshed their handes & went to their mete. And thus as they sat at the table, there came in the messager of the kynge yon / that cam to 16 Reynwd / And whan he was afore Reynwd, he sayd to hym, ‘Syre, the kynge you sendeth you worde by me that ye come to socour hym / for otherwyse he canne not scape the dethe, For Rowlande & Olyver 20 ledeth hym for to be hanged at Mountfawcon. And doo this, syre, yf it playse you for god / and beholde not his evyll wyll / but take hede to your goodnes, for our lord pardonne mari magdalene & longys 3 of their 24 synnes. He knoweth well that he hath deserved dethe for the grete fawte that he hath doon to you; and yf ye slee hym, he pardonneth to you his dethe’ /

28 Goddys curse have he,’ sayd Alarde, ‘that shall set his fote thiderward, nor that shall bye hym agen, though he myghte be had for a strawe / But goddys curse have Rowlande, 4 yf he hangeth hym not as a traytour approved’ / Whan Reynawd had herd this 32 that the mesager said, he loked downwarde, & studied a goode while that he sayd noo worde. and whan he

1— omitted, F. orig. o. vii.  
2 par grant amour, F. orig. o. viii, back.  
3 Longius.  
4 Fol. R. viii. back.
had thoughte long yncaghe / he began to wepe, behold-ynge his brederen / For a good herte can not lye whan it cometh to a nede. Thenne sayd he a good raison as a noble knyghte / 'Lorde,' sayd Reynawd to his brederen & to his knyghtes, 'Now here what I wyll saye to you / Ye know how I was dysheryted at parys wrongfully vpon feste of Penthecoste, that Charlemagn helde open court and full in his palays, where was a fayr 8 company of grete Lordes / For there were vii½ hundred knyghtes, all gentylmen, bothe of name & of armes / and a hundred, what of dukes & of erles / and more than four² score byshshopes, and many barons. and that 12 tyme was slayne the duke Benes of aygremount, myn vncl, that was so goode a knyght, as men knew well. I dyde aske right for hym to Charlemagn afore all his coure / wherof the kyng rebuked me, ³& 16 called me all to nought³ / and grete injuriy he sayd to me / And whan I sawe that the kyng reproved me thus, I was wrothe & right angry for it / And I behelde vpon my brederen, & knewe their stomackes / and sawe 20 myn emmyes byfore me / soo neded not that I shold have soughte theim elles where / And it suffysed theym not of that I had be owtraged by charlemagn / but that Berthelot owtraged me of newe, he & I 24 playng at the ches, Wherof I toke the ches borde, & smote hym wyth it soo grete a stroke vpon his hede, that I slewe hym ³a fore my fete.³ And Lews, another nevewe of Charlemagn, wolde have slayn my broder 28 Rycharde, and had hurt hym all redi full sore / But I smote hym in suche wyse wyth my fyst that I felde hym doun ded afore me to therthe / and whan Charlemagne wyste of it / He wolde have made me ⁴to be 32 kylled and hewed in to peces / but my kynnesmen

¹ Troys, F. orig. o. viii. back.
² cinquante, F. orig. o. viii. back.
³—³ omitted, F. orig. o. viii. back.
⁴ Fol. S. i.
wold not suffice it / for there was grete medlynge, soo that many strokes were gyven. And whan the medlynge was ended, I mounted vpon bayard / and my 4 brethren I made to monte also, thone byfore, & the two other behynde me / 1And thus rode we all four vpon my horse bayarde1 / and so came to ardeyne / where I dyde buylde a castell. And there Charlemagne came & beseged me / and made swere my good fader Aymon that he shold never helpe vs wyth none of all his godes / 1and that he shold be vtterly agenste vs1 / and in likewyse he forclosed me fro all my kyis-12 men, that none of them was not soo hardy for to have shewed to vs the leest favour of the worlde. Fayr brethren, ye knowe well the grete poverte that we have endured soo longe tyme / And whan I sawe that 16 I wyst not where to goo / I cam in to this londe wyth suche a feliship, as ye knowe, and I spake to the kyng yon and shewed hym howe I had werre agenste Charlemagne; and he shewed me grete love, and made me 20 grete honour, soo that he gaaff me his suster to my wyff, and wyth her a duchye, and buylded Montalban for me. And of thother part, my chyldren are his nevews / wherof thone bereth his name / that is 24 Yonnet, and ye see them here / and I have saved hym, his royame & all his londe; and all his rebelles2 I have made come to seke mercy of hym; and I fonde hym never in noo fawte / but Charlemagn is soo grete & 28 soo myghty a kinge, and also ye knowe well that he hath overcom & dyshonourde many good men / and for fere of hym, the kyng yon betrayed vs, wherof he is not to be blamed overmoche, seenge that agenste charlemagne soo thyng hath power / And therfore, yf the kynge Yon delyverde me to Charlemagne, it was by evyll counseyll that some of his barons gaaf hym / 3for

1—1 omitted, F. orig. o. viii. back.
2 de son pays, F. orig. o. viii. 3 Fol. S. i. back.
CHARL. ROM. X .
and therefore there is reason why he should succour him now, and not let him be hanged as a thief.

Alarde declares that he will not go to the aid of a traitor, nor will Guycharde either.

Richard says that they shall do as Reynawde desires.

god made never soo good a man, but that\(^1\) he mysdoeth by evyll couneysyle sometyme / And how can I leve hym when I have not mystrusted hym afore tyme; me semeth that I oughte to shewe hym goodnes agaynst 4 felony. Therfore I praye you all, that ye wyll make you redy, for I wyll go socour hym / For it were grete reproche to my chylde to that theyr vnclle sholde be hanged as a theeff / and it were to vs a grete dishonour, 8 for he is our lord. And yf he hath doon evill, we ought to doo well agenst it / and also we oughte not to forgete the benefeyttes that the kyng yon hath doon to vs; and I promyse you that the fawte & the treyson that he 12 hathe doon, is not com thorugh his malyce, but thorugh evyll couneysyle. For yf it had be onely by his mocyon / I wolde see the herte from the body of hym / but I wote well nay / For Charlemagn is of soo 16 grete a power, that every man fereth hym. And therfore, I telle you that I wyll goo rescue hym 2 from Rowlande, yf I can, 2 wyth all my power.' 'By my feyth,' said Alarde / 'ye shall themme goo wythout me / 20 for I shal not put my fete there / for a traytour oughte never to be holpen nor socoured' / 'Nor I,' sayd Guycharde; 'I shal not goo there.' 'Ye shall,' sayd Rycharde, ' & it playse you, sith that Reynawd wil 24 have vs to doo so / For he is our lord and our wele / and therfore I praye you, fayr bredern, that ye wyll obeye hym.' Whan Reynawd had concluded that he sholde goo for to rescue the kyng yon agenste 28 the wyll of Alarde & of Guycharde, all y\(^e\) Gascoynes that were there began to crye, & sayd, 'Blessed be the hour that ever Reynawde was borne / for noo man ertily ys worthe hym of goodnes & of prowes' / and 32 thennce they sayd to Reynawde, 'Syre, we shall gyve vp to you all the londe of Gascoyn / and shall make

\(^1\) that repeated in text.

\(^2\) omitted, F. orig. p. i. back.
you the lord of it / For there shall be never none other lord in Gascoyn but you, as long that ye shall lyve / that for god, ryght swete syr, that ye suffre not the kyng yon to be had away to Charlemagn; for it were a grete shame to all them of the royame of Gascoyn that men had hanged their kyng. 'By my soule,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye trouthe' / And themhe he 8 toke his horne, & blewe it thre tymes so strongly that he made all Montalban to sowne wyth it / And incontynent, wythout abydyng, they of the town went & armed them / and cam byfore Reynawd /

12 and when they were all redy, Reynawde lighte vpon bayarde / the sheelde at the necke & the spere in the hande / and they were well in his felawshyp six thosande men on horsbacke, and well a thousande a

16 fote / And when they were oute of Montalban, Reynawd spake to his folke, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes, remembre you that your lordes is in grete daunger, and in perell of dethe; and but ye wyghte strongly, he is 20 deed wythout remedy. Wherfore I praye you all, that ye doo this daye that / that shall torne to our worschyp.' And when reynawd had sayd thise wordes, he went agen towarde his bredern / and sayd to theym, 'Fayre 24 bredern, ye knowe that Rowlande hateth me to deth / and not thrugh my defawe, but onely thorughe enuye. Wherfore, I praye you that ye attende vpon me this daye, and ye shall see me doo as a good knyghte; and 28 this daye the pride of Rowlande must be layd, or elles myn, a doun.' When Alarde herd his broder Reynawde speke so / he sayd to hym / 'And wherof care you? be sure & certeyne that as longe that lif is in 32 our bodyes, we shall not faylle you' / and wyth this worde thei put theym to the way. And Reynawd toke two thousande knyghtes, & gaaff theym to alarde

1 Fol. S. ii. 2 be to, orig. 3-3 omitted, F. orig. p. i. back. 4-4 ceulx qui ouyent le son de la trompe, F. orig. p. i. back.
& Guycharde, & sayd to theim, 'Fayr brethren, ye shall make the forwarde, & kepe your men in good ordenaunce; and I & my broder Rycharde shall make the reregarde' / 'syre,' 1 sayd Alarde, 'we shall doo it well ye god wyll' / and thenne they rode forthe so long that thei sawe ye folke of Rowland nigh theim. and when Alarde aperceyved theim, he made his men to tari, & sente worde to Reynawd that he sholde make haste to com / for thei had fonde their enmyes. And when Reynawde wyst of thise tydynges / he made his folke to ride hastely, & cam anone to Alard his broder. and when he sawe his enmyes, he put his folke in araye, and devysed his batailles honestly 2 as a good capitan of werre. / Thenne when Rowlande sawe so grete folke / he called to hym the bishop Turpyn, & Guydellon 16 of bavyre, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes, now behold / I see yonder many folke armed / myght that be Reynawd & his bredern, wherof the renownme is so grete; & of their cosyn Mawgis, the subtyll knighte? 20 'Sir,' sayd the bishop Turpyn / 'ye, they ben tho verely / and also I telle you they make theymself to be well know wherscever thei goo; and I tell you that we can not save vs, but that we must medle wyth 24 theym.' When Ogier sawe Reynawde, he Ioyned & heved his handes towards heven, & sayd / 'O god, blessed thou be that hast suffred Rowland to fynde Reynawde, his bredern & Mawgis! 13 certes, who that 28 gaff me a thousande marke of golde, I shold not be so glad, for Rowland hath now all his desire; 9 and, for certen, I am right glad that we have founde theim. 3 Now shall I see how he shalle bere hymself agsten the 32 valyaute Reynawd, his bredern / and Mawgis' / and when he had sayd this / he tormed hymself toward

1 Fol. S. ii. back. 2 Comme II le scauoit bien faire, F. orig. p. i. 3—3 omitted. F. orig. p. ii. back.
Rowland, & said to hym, 'Rowland, now have ye that ye have desired so long! and I am glad that it is com so/ for now shall I see how ye shall take theym / For 4 yf ye can take theym a lyve, & bryng theym to Charlemagn, he shall con you grete thanke for it; and so shall bayarde be your owne, that 1 ye have soo sore desired / and the werre shall be thus fynished' / 8 'Ogyer, ogier,' sayd themne Rowlande, 'thise ben reproches that ye telle me. But, by saynt Denys of Fraunce, ye shall see or evyn who shall be mayster of vs two' / 'Rowlande,' sayd Ogier / 'now shall it be 12 seen what ye can doo' / when Rowlande knewe that he muste have medlyng wyth his enmyes / he or- deyned all his bataylle, as he cowde well doo / and after he set his folke in ordenaunce of bataylle, the 16 beste that he myghte / And when Reynawde sawe that Rowland ordeyned his bataylles / he called his brethren, and sayd to theym / 'Lordes, here com the frenshemen: yonder is Rowlande & Olivere / and the duke Naymes 20 of bavyre, and Oger the dane; Ye shall abyde here for to make the reregarde / and yf we have mystre of helpe / come & helpe vs' / 'Syr,' sayd Mawgis, 'ye make to longe sermone / delyver you, for we tary to 24 long fro sawtynge 2 vpon our enmyes'2 / 'Cosyn,' sayd Reynawd, 3'ye say well, and3 ye speke like a good knyghte / For yet have I no better knyghte than ye be one, when I see you armed by me; now thynke 28 to doo well / for I goo firste of all for to overthrowe the pryde of Rowland, that is so grete, as every man knoweth / And I praye you all that every man doo his parte wyth all his power. 32

And when the brethern vnderstode that reynawd 4 wold goo prove hymselfe vpon rowland 4 / they

beganne all thre to wepe, & sayd / 'Ha, brother/ and wyll ye that ye & we be deed all atones? For ye can slege yourselfe noo better than to prove yourself vpon Rowland / For he is overmoche prue & valiant, and also he can not be hurt wyth yron; but we pray you that ye wyll assaye yourselfe vpon the other, & lete rouland alone / 'Lords,' sayd reynawd, 'ye have spoken ful well. I knowe well that rowland is hardly 8 & prue, and that his matche is not in the worlde of knyghte hode; but I am in the right / and he is in the wronge, which shall mover tourne hym to a grete harme, and therefor I wyll not refuse / but that I shall goo agenste hym / But and yf he wyll peas he shall have it / and yf he wylle have werre, he shall fynde me redy to receyve him therto, For I have lever deye than be longe syke.

Now I praye you speke noo more of it, but see that ye bere yourselfe well agenste our enmyes, For we have to doo agenste many a noble knyghte / 'Cosyn,' sayd Mawgys, 'thynke to assayle well, For ye shall be socoured ryght well.' Thenne the worthy knyghte Reynawde wente afore all the other wyth his sheeld at the necke, and his spere in his hande, sittyng vpon bayarde / Whan Rowland sawe Rey- nawde come wyth his folke well ordred / he shewed it to olyver, and sayd / 'Felawe, what thynke you by that folke? / see how they come towarde vs in good arraye / 'Certes, Rowlande,' sayd Olyver, 'Reynawd knoweth more of werre than any other knyghte that lyveth, and the moost gracyous; For ther is none so poure a knyghte in the worlde, if he come to hym / but he shall be ryght welcome to hym / and yf he come a fote, he shall set hym anone a horse backe.

1 omitted, F. orig. p. ii. 2 Regnault, F. orig. p. ii. 3 Fol. S. iii. back. 4-1 il aura, F. orig. p. ii. 5 que bien ressembloit chevalier a leure, F. orig. p. ii. 6 omitted, F. orig. p. ii.
And yf he be yll appoynted / he shall anone araye hym after his astate. Is not this a grete goodnes of hym?" / 'Ye, by my soule,' sayd Rowlande / 'and he dooth well / For yf he dyde otherwyse, he myghte not abyde longe agenst myn vnclle Charlemagne.'2

'And me semeth,' 3 sayd againe Olyver, 'that he hathe well thre tymes moo folke than we have, wherof he myght well gete vpon vs / but yf we take better hede, for they ben well subtyll folke.'

'Olyver,' sayd Eowlande, *ye saye trouth, but ye knowe well the gascoyns Roland says the Sons.

Roland is angry

Roland says the

Gascons are

cowards, and are

sure to run away

Bayard.

Reynawde hastily

approaches Rol-

land,

Oliver fears the

strength of the

Sons.

12 stroke of swende, but that thei will 4 flee lightly away.'

'that is true,' sayd the byッシュhop Turpyn, 'but they have wyth them a good guyde as ony is in all ye worlde. And wyte it, syr Rowland, that the valiant man causeth his folke to abyde nyghe hym. For a worthy capytayn is the myrrour & ensample to thother for to doo well.'

When Rowland herde this, he wexed almost mad / bycause men prayed Rey.

20 nawe & his folke soo moche; & wyth this he spored his horse, and went byefore all his folke well the shot of a bowe ferre / and cam agenst Reynawd. And when Reynawde sawe Rowland com alone, he sayd to

24 Alarde, 'Fayre broder, beware, vpon asmoche as ye love me, that ye move not, nor your folke; but abyde stylly here till that I have iousted wyth Rowland, that cometh alone / and therfor I wyll no man helpe me

28 agenste hym' / When Reynawd had sayd this, he spored bayard wyth the spores, and came agenst Row-

land so faste, that they that sawe it wende that bayarde

had floughe in the ayer, For the smallest lepe that he

32 lepte, was of XXX fote ferre or more. And when he was com nyghe Rowlande as for to have iousted /

1 dist Olivier, F. orig. p. ii.
2 car trop est noble chevallier, F. orig. p. ii.
3-3 omitted, F. orig. p. ii. 4 Fol. S. iv.
Reynawd lighted doun a fote / & pyghte his spere in therth, And bounde bayard therat, bycause he shold abyde there stille / And vngirte flanberge, his\textsuperscript{1} swerde, and cam before Rowland & presented it to hym, 4 and kneled afore hym & kyssed his fote, and sayd all wepyng / 'Damp rouland, I crie you mercy for that pite that our lord had in the crosse vpon his moder when he comended her to saynt Iohn, that ye wyll 8 have pyte vpon me. Ye knowe well that I am your kynsman, and, how be it I am poure, yet shal I be and my brethern your men / And also I shall gyve you bayarde, and shall make you lord of Mountalban, so 12 that it wyll plase you to purchase our peas wyth the kyng Charlemagn your uncle; and, yf it playse you for to doo so I shall make all \textsuperscript{2}my bretherne to graunte the same, And I shall forsake fraunce all my lif / And \textsuperscript{16} I promise you that 3 I shall goo in to the holy londe\textsuperscript{3} wyth Mawgis and my brethern for to make weren agenste the sarrasins.\textsuperscript{4} And yf ye thynke that I saye well / brynge it aboute yf ye canne. For yf ye doo it 20 ye shall have a felawe and a servaunt of me.'

Rowlande had grete pyte whan he herde Reynawd speke in this manere, And beganne to wepe full tenderly / and after sayd to hym, 'By god, Reynawd, 24 I dare not speke of it, but yf soo be that ye wyll delyver vnto hym Mawgys' / 'Alas,' sayd Reynawd, 'I shold never doo that, for to deye for it, For Mawgys ys no man for to be gyven awaye for to have peas.' 28 And thenne he rose vp and toke his swerde & his sheelde, And came to bayard and mounted vpon hym wythoute styrope / and thenne he toke his spere in his hande / And whan he was well appareyled, he 32 wente agen to Roulande, and sayd to hym / 'Row-

\textsuperscript{1} bonne espeç, F. orig. p. iii. back. \textsuperscript{2} Fol. S. iv. back. \textsuperscript{2–3} Iray outre mer, F. orig. p. iii. back. \textsuperscript{4} Tres doulx sire, F. orig. p. iii. back.
lande, wyte that I shall never more crye you mercy, for fere that I have of you / But I have cried you mercy for to bere you worship, by cause that ye be of my 4 kynne / But sith that I see that ye be so proude that ye wyll doo noo thyenge for me / nor for my prayer. I shall mowe deale resonably wyth you / to the ende that ye shall not mow reporte nor saye to the other barons 8 and knyghtes of Fraunce / that Reynawde the sone of Aymon hathe cryed you mercy for fere / The caas is suche / ye have wyth you a grete company of folke / And also I have of my side men ynough, thanked 12 be god / and yf our folke assemble togider / it canne not be otherwyse, but that grete harme shall falle of bothe sides. But, and ye wyll, we shall fighte, we two togyder, for theym all, wythont ony helpe of 16 other / and yf ye overcom me, ye shall bryngye me to charlemagne / that shall 1doo his playsure of me / And yf I can conquere you, ye shall com wyth me to Mouatalban, under condycyon that ye shall have 20 nother evyll nor shame / no more than shall my owne persone’ /

'Shall ye doo this that ye have sayd?’ sayd Row-
lande / ‘ye, wythoute fawte,’ sayd Reynawd / ‘By 24 mi hede,’ sayd roulande, ‘ye shall make me sure therof fyrst’ / ‘Certes,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘wyth a god wyll’ / And thanne Reynawd swere it vnto hym vpon his parte of paradys.2 ‘Reynawd,’ sayd rowlande, ‘I wyll 28 go take leve of my felawe Oliver / for I have promysed hym that all the bataylles that I shall vndertake, he shall mow make them hymself, yf it playse hym.’ ‘Go themme,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘& make it short.’ and 32 thanne Rowland went agen to his felawes / And whan he was com to them / hector, the sone of oedon, olyver, & ogyer the dane, asked of hym, saenge / ‘Syr

1 Fol. S. v.
2 de tenir loyaument ce que auoit este devise, F. orig. p. iii.
Rowland, what sayeth Reynawd? have ye spoke wyth hym? 'ye,' sayd rowland / 'and what thynke you by hym?' 'Certes,' sayd rowlande, 'reynawd is a sage knyght & well taughte / for he hath requyred me to fyghte wyth hym body to body / and that our folke be styll of the one syde, and of the other' / 'Rowlande,' sayd olyver, 'ye shall doo in this your playsure / for other ye or I must fyghte wyth hym / But I 8 counseyll that ye go there / for as longe as I shall lyve, I shall not be enmye to Reynawde, onely for his worthynes. For Reynawde is a knyghte of grete honour' / Whan the byshop turpyn, ector the sone 12 of odeon, & thother erles herde this, they began to saye, 'Rowland, what is that ye wyll doo? For god mercy, doo it not, for reynawd is of your linage & of ours; and ye brynge hym to dethe / we shall 16 never love you after / sire, leve that off're that reynawde gyveth to you, & make your folke to assemble wyth the folke of reynawde, for it is 1 better that they be take of your folke, than that the one of you two were deed.' 20 'wyll ye that it be so?' sayd rowland / 'ye, sir, ye playse you' / 'certes,' sayd roland, 'it playse me right well' / and thenne he sayd to all his folke / 'Lordes, thynke to defende you well / for it is now ned 24 therof' / 'Syre,' sayd thother, 'have no doubte of no thyng, for we shall do well your commanundement' / and thenne thei put theymself in ordenaunce. and rowland began to erie 'monetioye, saint denys' / and 28 whan cam to ye setting on wyth spores, Ye shold have seen thenne many a knyght brought to grounde, & many horses that ranne masterles thrughe the feeldes, so moche that it was grete pite for to see so grete a 32 dystructyon of knyghtes as was made there. Whan reynaud sawe the two oostes muste assemble togyder / he spored bayarde wyth the spores, & put hymselfe

1 Fol. S. v. back.
among the thykest of the frenshemen / and smote a knyghte so harde in the breste that he overthrew bothe horse & man to the grounde; and after smote a 4 nother soo sore, that nether for sheelde nor for quyras 1of stele 1 he let not, but that he shoved the yreu of his spere thrughe & thrughe hys body / and fell deed to therth / and wyte at that stroke he brake his spere. 8 and reynawd set hande lightly to his swerde, and began to crie 'Mountalban' as lowde as he cowde. And theinne he made so grete slaughter of frenshemen that none durst abyde afore hym, but fled fro him as fro 12 the deth. Shortly to speke, reynawd dyd somoche thorughe his strengthe / and thorughe the highe knyghthode of his brethern, that he brake the firste bataylle of the frenshemen / wolde they or noo /

16 When the lityll Rycharde / the brother of Reynawde, sawe that the Frenshemen were putte a backe / He beganne to crie on heygthe 'Ardeyne' as moche 2as he myghte. And put hymselfe in to the 20 greteste preesse 1amonge his enmyes, 1 and beganne to make soo grete hewynge of folke that it was wonder to see / For Reynawde faughte not for to loke the better vpon hym. And thenne Rycharde, that thoughte hym selfe never wery of gevynge of strokes, beganne to calle vpon his broder, and sayd, 'Reynawd, fayr broder, where ben your grete strokes goon that ye were wonte for to gyve 1vpon your enmyes?' 1 Alas, Smyte 28 now vpon theim / for they ben almost overcom ; make that the frenshemen, full of pryde, mocke not of you / and soo make we suche a thynge that it be spoken of it vnto Parys' / When Reynawd herde Rycharde 32 spake thus, he began to smyle / and after he smote bayarde 1wyth the spores 1 / and beganne to Smyte better than he dyde afore. Who that had seen thenne his grete strokes departe / he myghte well have sayd that

1-1 omitted, F. orig. p. iv. back.   2 Fol. S. vi.
no carpenter smotte never soo well in wood as Reynawde dyde vpon the helmes of stele and vpon the sheldes of the frenshe men. And whan the frenshemen sawe that the dyscomfyture tourned vpon theym, they beganne to calle Rowlande and sayd to hym: ‘Ha, Rowlande, what doo ye? whi come ye not and helpe your folke? For they ben deed, but yt ye socoure theym.’ Whan Rowlande vnderstode that worde, wherof he was wrothe and ryght sory, And whan he sawe his folke soo sore handeled, He beganne to crye ‘Mountioye saynte Denys.’ And after spored his horse, and entered in to the medlee; And wente here and there, cryenge, ‘Reynawd, where be you goon? See me here; I am all redy for to doo the bataylle, my body agenste yours, that ye aske of me.’ When Reynawde herde Eowlande, that called thus after hym, He put flamberd in to his sheeth; And toke a spere in his hande, and cam there as Rowlande was, & sayd to hym: ‘Where are ye, Rowlande? be ye a ferde of me, that ye have taryed soo longe for? Beware your self from me!’ ‘And you of me,’ sayd Rowlande. And thenne they spored theyr horses, and dyde ionste the one agenste the other. And whan the frenshemen and the gascoyns saw that, thei withdrewe theym selve from eche other, for to beholde the ioustynge of the twc worthy knyghtes. For, to saye the trouth, there were not two other suche in all the worlde!

Whan Salamon of Bretayne and Ector, the sone of Oedon, sawe that the ioustynge of Reynawde and of Rowlande was begon, they set theym selfe to wepe full tendrely; and came to the duke Naymes, to the bysshop Turpin, and to Olyver, and set sayd to theym: ‘How, lordes, may ye suffre that one

---

1—1 omitted, F. orig. p. iv. back.  
2 omitted, F. orig. p. iv.  
3 son espee, F. orig. p. iv.  
4 et prent une lance courte et grosse, F. orig. p. iv.  
5 Fol. S. vi. back.  
6 des esperons, F. orig. p. v. back.
of the beste knyghtes of the worlde / and hym that we oughte to love beste, be slayne and deed before you.'

'Certes,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'that shall be grete sorow to vs for to see?' And thenne he cam to Olyver, and sayd to hym / 'I praye you that ye goo to Rowlande, and telle hym from vs all, that he oughte not to fyghte wyth Reynawde wyth the swerde / But lete hym take a spere and breke it vpon reynawde; for to acquyte his feythe / For yf he slee Reynawde we shall never love hym after' / 'Lordes,' sayd thanne Ogyer, 'lete this alone / ye knowe not Reynawde so well as I doo / Reynawde is noo childe for to be made a ferde soo lightly as ye trowe. Lete theym shyfte hardely, 1 they two togyder, 1 For, by the feythe that I owe to you / Rowland shall be all wery or ever he retourne agayne /

And he shall be as fayne to leve the bataylle as shall Reynawd. And ye shall see that Rowlande wold he had not gon there, for the best cyte that the temperour Charlemagn hath.' 2 'Oger,' sayd ector / 'ye speke of it as for enuye / certes yf ye shold fight wyth rowlande, ye shold 2 well saye otherwyse' / And thanne he sayd to Olyvere / 'Good syre, lete this bataylle be defferred yf ye maye be ony wyse.' 'Lordes,' sayd Olyver, 'wyth a goode wyll, sith that ye will have it soo' / And thanne he wente to Rowland, and sayd to hym all that the barons had sayd. 'Felawe myn,' answered Rowlande / 'god confounde theym / for they take awaye this daye the desyre of myn vncle Charlemane' / And thanne he tourned hym towarde Reynawd, and sayd to hym / 'Syre reynawd, ye have assayed of my swerde / and not of my spere.' 'Rowlande,' sayd Reynawd, 32 'yf ye leve your swerde I shall conne you nother thanke nor gramercy for it / For I fere you not of noo thynge / but lete vs make an ende of our bataylle / And to whom god gyveth the vyctory, lete him have

1—1 omitted, F. orig. p. v. back. 2 Fol. S. vii.
Roland will not fight with a sword, but runs on Reynawde with his spear.

They break their spears in the encounter,

and Roland is unhorsed,

through the fall of Melantes.

Roland prepares to kill Melantes for having fallen,

but Reynawde interferes, and prevents him.

it’/ Rowlande wold not doo soo, but dyde like as a curteys man/ and he dyde as the barons had sent him worde. For he toke a spere, and ran vpon Reynawde as moche as he myghte/ And when Reynawd sawe he 4 woldhe none otherwyse do, he ranne also 1 wyth a spere1 vpon Rowlande/ And roughte eche other sore wonderfull harde that they made theyr speres to flee all in peces. And when they had broken their speres, they 8 recounted eche other wyth their sheldes so strongly that bothe theyr horses, that is to wyte, Melantes & Bayarde, stakerde/ and were all a stonyed ther wythall/ But wyth that stroke Rowlande & Melantes2 were 12 both felde to the grounde in a hepe/ And Reynawd passed forthe by theym, cryenge ‘Mountalban’ wyth a hye voys. Wherby I telle you, for certeyn, that Rowlande never felle down for no stroke of spere, but 16 onely that tyme/ but it was no merveylle/ For he cowde not holde hym selfe by the clowdes/ syth that his horse had faylled hym.

3 Thenne whan Rowlond saw hymselfe thus over-20 thrown, he was not well contente, & rose vp incontynente and toke his swerd in his honde, And came to melentys to kit of his hede/ And beganne to seye/ ‘Evyll courser, who kepeth me that I kylle the 24 not4/ sithe that thou haste lette falle thyselfe through the stroke of a childe, I shall never trust the’/ ‘Soo helpe me god, Rowland,’ sayd Reynawd, ‘ye do 5 to melantis grete5 wronge, For it is longe sith that he ete 28 ony mete/ and therfore he can not well traveyle/ but bayarde hath eten well to nyghte that was, and therfore he is more strong than is your horse’6/ and thenne Reynawd lighted down fro bayard/ bycause that Row-32 land was a fote. and when bayarde sawe his mayster

1–1 omitted, F. orig. p. v. back.
2 Son cheval, F. orig. p. v.
3 Fol. S. vii. back.
4 not repeated in text.
5–5 omitted, F. orig. p. v.
6 Benoiste soit leure que oncques fut ne, F. orig. p. v.
a fote, he ran vpon melantis, the horse of Rowland, and smote hym wyth his hinder fete soo grete strokes that he had almost broken his thie/ whan rowlande sawe that, he was wrothe for it, & cam towarde bayarde for to have smyte of his hede. And whan Reynawd saw that / he sayd to Rowlande / 'What wyll ye doo? it is no worship to you to smyte a beest; and yf ye wyll doo ony fayt of armes, com to me & not to my horse, for I shall gyve you strokes ynowe, so moche that ye shall be wery of it or we departe; but kepe well that I slee not you / and leve bayarde in peas, for there is not 12 in all the worlde another so good a beest; For he dyd shewe it well whan he wan the crowne of charlemagn your vnkle in your presence / and yf he doth helpe me, he doth but his devoyre, & that a good horse ought to doo; but torne your sheeld towarde me, & ye shall see how Flamberde cutteth.' 'Reynawd, reynaud,' sayd Rowlande, 'threten not soo moche, For before this daye be com at an ende / ye shall see a thynge that shall not playse you over moche.'

Reynawde was not contente whan he understode the yll wordes of Rowlande, and shoke all for angre; 1 and Incontynente ranne vpon Rowlande, and gaaff hym suche a stroke vpon his helme that he all to brused it; and the stroke slided vpon the sheeld soo that he cut of it a grete quarter, and of the course of stele also, but he cut no thyng of the fleshe / And when Reynawd had gyven Rowland that stroke, he sayd in maner of a mocke to Rowland, 'what saye ye bi my swerde / doo it cut well or no? for I have not myssed at that stroke / Now kepe ye well fro me / for I am not suche a chylde as ye take me for' / Whan Rowlande felt that grete stroke that Reynawd had gyven to him / he was all merveylld of it / and wythdrew hymself abacke / for he wolde not that 1 Fol. S. viii.
Reynawd shold have recovered a nother stroke vpon him sodenly / and set hande to durandall, his good swerde, & ran vpon Reynawd / and reynawd helde his sheeld aegen it / & Rowlande smote in to the sheeld 4 so grete a stroke that he clove it bi the myddes thrughe & thrughe / and the stroke descended vpon the helme, & dyde it no harme. and whan Rowland had made that stroke / he sayd to Reynawd, 'Vassall, ye be now 8 quyte / for I have yelded you agen that ye lended me right now / Now shall I see who shal begyn agen.' 'By my soule,' sayd reynawd, 'fowle fall have I now yf I feyne me now / For I dyd but play afore; nor 12 your fraunchise shall never avaylle you agenst me, but that I shall bryng your pride al doun to therthe.' 'Reynawd,' sayd rowland, 'yf ye doo this that ye saye, ye shall werk merveilles' / And all thus as they 16 wold have begun agen the batayll, soo cam there Mawgis & all his company, and sayd to Reynawd / 'Cosin, monte vpon bayarde / for it were to grete a losse yf you or Rowland were ded.' And there came 20 Ogier and Olyver, and made Rowlande to lighte agayne vpon his horse. But wyte it well that Ogyer had not be soo gladde yf one hadde gyve to hym 1a grete2 cyte, as he was be cause that Reynawde had cast doun 24 Rowlande 2& his horse2 / and whan they 3had recounted roulannde3 / they began agen a sore batayll & a cruell / and so felle that it was pite for to see / for thone hewe the other wythout ony mercy / And whan Rowlande 28 saw that the batayll was begunne agen / his hert dide swell for angre bycause that reynawd had overthrown hym to the grounde. soo began he to call as hie as he myghte, 'Where are ye goon, Reynawd the sone of 32 Aymon? goo a side & lete vs parfornyshe our batayll, for men knowe not yet whiche is the beste knyghte of

vs two' / 'Syr,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye have the corage of a knyghte that wyll conquere honour / but & we fighte here togyder, our folke shall not suffre it / But 4 lete vs doo one thyng that I shall tell you; ye be well horse, & I am also, lete vs bothe swimme over the river & goo to the wode of the serpent, for ye can not wysshe no better place for to fighte / and we shall not 8 be there departed, thone fro the other, of our folke, but 1 we shall maye fyghte there togyder tyll the one of vs two be dyscomfited & overcome'1 / 'Certes,' sayd Rowlande, 'ye have well spoken, and I graunt it as ye have 12 sayd.' and thenne they spored their horses for to go to the wood of the serpent. but Olyver toke hede to theym / and toke Rowland by the brydell & wythhelde hym, wold he or noo. and Reynawde went for to have 16 passed over the river vpon bayarde, that ran as the wynde, & waloped so harde that he made all therthe where he passed to shake vnder hym; and as he ran in this maner / he loked afore hym and sawe the kyng 20 yon, that was avyronned wyth well four score knygthtes, that kept hym for fere of Reynawd, leste he & his bredern shold have rescued him / & thise knygthtes ledde him shamfully, as ye have herd afore. and whan 24 reynaud saw ye kyng, he was glad of it, & sayd / 'Ha, good lord, blessed 2 be thy name, whan ye have graunted me so fayr adventure,' and wyth this he set hande / to his swerde, and spored bayarde wyth the spores / and 28 cryed as hie as he cowde / 'lete go the kyng yon, evyll folke that ye be / For ye be not worthy to laye hande vpon hym.' and thanne he entred wythin theym, & smote a knyghte vpon his helme so rudely that he 32 clove his hede to the harde teeth / and overthrew the hym deed to therthe / And when the other sawe

1 et la pourrons finer nostre bataille, et a qui dieu en donra lon ne, si le peigne car ceste le meilleur selon mon aduis, F. orig. p. vi.  
2 Fol. T. i.
Reynawde amonge theym / they put theymselfe to flighte / and sayd the one to thother / 'The devyll hath broughte this cruell\(^1\) man here now / lete vs flee ; goddis curse have he that shall abyde hym / For the soule of hym that wylfully suffreth hymself to be slayn shall never come to the mercy of god' / And thenne they put [t]heymself in to the thyckeste of the forest, and lefte behynde theym the kinge yon, that they lodged as a prisoner / and Reynawde cam streyghte to hym / and vnbounde hym and vnstopp’d his eyen, and after sayd to hym / 'Ha, evyll kyng / how have ye the hert for to betraye vs so falsly, as ye have doon me & my 12 bredern ; dyde we ever ony thyng that was in\(^2\) your dysplaysur / It is not longe on you, but that we shold have ben all hanged by this / but I shall Smyte of your hede, evyn anone / and shall avenge me & my bredern\(^3\) 16 vpon your body' / Whan the kyng yon sawe Reynawde, that hadde delyverde hym, he kneled adoun byfore hym, & sayd to hym / 'Certes, noble knyghte, it is well rayson that men slee me ; Wherof I praye 20 you, for god, that yourselfe wyl\(^4\) take the liffe fro me, and\(^5\) out of my hede / and lete it not be doon by none other / and pulle out my tonge, wherwyth I speake the trayson / For I have well deserved gretter martyrdom. 24 and all this made me doo therle of Ansom / and the erle Anthony / Now slee me, for god / for suche an evyll man as I am oughte not to lyve longe. I have moche lever \(^5\)that ye kylle me wyth your swerde,\(^4\) 28, than that cruell kyng Charlemagn \(^4\)shold make me to be hanged.'\(^4\) 'Now light vp,' sayd Reynawde, 'for ye shall be well payd as ye have deserved.' But here leve I to spoke of kyng Yon & of Reynawd, that ben in the 32 wood of the serpents / where he taried after Rowlande

1 omitted, F. orig. p. vii. back.  
2 m. in text.  
3 chetif serorge et mauaulais homme que vous estes, F. orig. p. vii. back.  
4–4 omitted, F. orig. p. vii. back.  
5 Fol. T. i. back.
for to fighte wyth hym, as he had promysed hym / & shall retorne to speke of Rowland & of Olyver, that spake to their folke for to telle theim a part of theyr besines, and how they had ben dyscomfyted.

CHAPTER XIII.¹

[The xiii. chapiter sheweth, how that after Reynawd had succoured kyng yon, was the same houre a merueyliouse battaylle betweene Reynawde and the frenshe men. For Rowlande was there sore beten and many other, wherof Ogyer was glad by-cause that Rowlande had called him tray-toure; And also he knewe that the foure sonnes of Aymon, were not for to be so lyghtelye ouercomen, as men had sayde afore. And for this cause there had been a sore medle betweene Rowland and ogyer, yf it had not be the other barons, that de-parted them, and in this recounted Rycharde the brother of Reynawde, abode for prisoner of Rowlande.]

In this parte sheweth the history, that after Reynawde was departed fro the bataylle for to go fighte body to body agenste Rowlande, the nevewe of Charlemagne, in the wood of the serpent / Rowland Olyver & the dane Ogyer faughte agenst Alard, Guycharde, & the lityl Richarde, agenste Mawgis & agenste their folke / and the batayll was there so sharpe & soo fell of one parte & of the other / soo that

¹ The heading of this chapter is omitted by Caxton, and is therefore given here from Copland's Table: Ed. 1554.
The folk of Roland are overcome by the Sons and Mawgis.

grete hurte & scathe was there made of bothe partes / but at the laste the discomfyture torned vpon Rowlande / and vpon his folke. In somoche that Rowlande & Olyver were constrainyd by force for to goo 4 backe agen all dyscomfyted / for the thre brethern & Mawgys made agenst theim so grete efforte of armes that they gat the pryce that daye / And then as Rowland went backe agen all dyscomfyted, he bare his 8 hede lowe, for he was a shamed that he had be soo rebuked / And thenne1 Ogier sayd to hym / 'Lord Rowland, who hath arayed your sheelde of this facyon? I see your horse hurte in the thye, & vnder the croper / 12 he was felled vpon the right side, and you also / it is well seen on your side. I trowe that ye have founde reynawd the sone of Aymon. have ye brought him wyth you / where have ye put hym' / Whan Rowlande understode that reproche that Oger made vnto him / he waxed almost 2 madde for angre / Soo toke he his swerde, and ranne vpon Ogier for to have smytte hym vpon the hede / But whan olyver sawe this, he 20 toke Rowland by the brydelle / and the erle Guydellon toke Ogier / and thus they were departed / And thus as they were departed, and that Rowland went on his wyae / came there after hym the lityll rycharde, the 24 brother of Reynawde / that beganne to calle as hie as he myght / 'Damp Rowlande, ye goo cowardly awaye / retourne agayn that I may see your sheelde / and let ye vs have a course, 1 we two togyder.'1 'Knighte,' an- 28 swerde Rowlande, 'I graunt therto by my feth.' And thenne they spored theyr horses wyth theyr spores; and Rowlande cam agenste rycharde soo harde that he overthrew hym and his horse wyth all in a hepe 32 to the grounde. And whan rycharde sawe hymselfe thus a grounde / he rose vp quyckely and came to his horse / and lighted vp agayn wythoute ony styrop /

1 omitted, F. orig. p. vii. 2 Fol. T. ii.
And when he was on horsbacke, he set hande on his swerde, and defenced hymself nobly against his enmye Rowlande.  

When Rowland sawe this / and that he knewe that it was one of the brethren of Reynawd, he had so grete Ioye of it that hym semed that he had be in paradise / and Incontynente he beganne to erie / S 'Mountioye saynt Denis.' And sayd vpon hym, 'now, my frendes / For yt he scape vs, I shall telle it to Charlemagn.' And when the Frenchmen sawe that Rowlande wold have rycharde taken, they set all vpon hym, so that they smote hym wyth more than fourty swerdes all at ones / and it happed so that his horse was kylled vnder hym / and he overthrown to therth / and when Richarde sawe his horse deed a grounde, he was right sory for it / and rose vp quyckely vpon his fete / and smote therle Antony so grete a stroke wyth his swerde that he wounded hym right sore / Humall the breton sawe that, and he smote Rycharde; & rycharde recovered vpon hym wyth suche a stroke that he fell the bothe horse & man down to the erth / And wyth this guydellon cam from behinde, & overthrew richarde from the arsons of his sadle to the grounde / And when Rowland sawe richard at the grounde, he cam to hym & sayd / 'Now yelde you, and abyde not that we slee you, for it were grete dommage' / 'sire,' sayd thenne richarde, the yongest sone of aymon, 'to you, rowlande, I shall yelde me, & to none other / For I can not yelde me to no better man than ye be one.' And wyth this he toke hym his swerde; and Rowlande receyved it wyth a goode wyll, & made the lityll richarde to light

1-1 contre ses ennemys, F. orig. p. vii.
3-3 all repeated in text.
4 Fol. T. ii. back.
5 que luy et cheval versa par terre et si le naura durement a mort, F. crig. p. viii. back.
6-6 omitted, F. orig. p. viii. back.
upon a mewle. And thus they had hym prisoner. Alas, & what dommage shall it be if the prue richarde be hanged / he is well like to be / but that god & Mawgys delyver hym / all this myshappe sawe a servant of richarde. and when he sawe that men led thus his mayster richard / he spored his horse wyth the spores, & adventured hymselfe to passe over the ryver / and cam lightly¹ to reynawd, & sayd to hym / 'Syre, I 8 bryng you evyll tydynges. Wyte that Rowlond ledeth wyth your brother richard for prisoner well shamufully.' When Reynawd vnderstode thise wordes, he was so angri for it that he had almoste lost his wyte / and after he sayd to the yoman / 'com hyder, tell me, my frende / are they that leden my broder² ferre hens' / 'Sir,' sayd the yoman / 'ye, it is not possible that ye sholde overtake theim.' And when Reynawde vnder-stode this, he was more angry than he was to fore / and fell fro bayard in a swoune to therthe. And when he was com agen to hymselfe / he beheld afore hym / And sawe his brother Alard come wyth his folke, that 20 came after Reynawde by the trase / For they wende that Rychard had be goon to hym long afore theym. And whan ³alard sawe reynawd make suche a sorowe / he came thenne to hym, & sayd in this maner, 'Ha, 24 fayr broder, and what eyellth you / It longeth not to suche a knyghte as ye be for to make so grete a sorowe as ye doe.' 'Alard,' sayd Reynawd, 'ye have doon full yll, for I have lefte my brother richarde wyth you to 28 kepe him / and ye have lost hym, for Rowland ledeth hym wyth hym as prisioner / and he is all redy so ferre broughte that we can not socour hym' / whan alard & guychard vnderstode thise tydynges / they began to 32 make suche a sorowe that it was merveyll for to see

¹ omitted, F. orig. p. viii. back.
² Richart, F. orig. p. viii. back.
³ Fol. T. iii. (S. in text.)
the lamentacion that they made¹ / ‘alas,‘ sayd Reynawd, ‘what is he that hath parted our company / to daie in the mornyng we were four bredern togider / and now we ben but thre. Ha, fayr brother richard, it is a grete dommage of you; for yf ye had lyved your age, ye shold have passed all your brethern / seenge that ye were the yongest of vs all, & yet ye were the moost hardy / and thrugh your hardynes ye are taken.’ ‘fayr¹ brother,’ sayd alard / ‘all cometh by you, that broughte vs here agenst our wyll for to socour the kinge yon / Now have we lost richard, wherof the losse shall never be recovered, for we shall never see hym a lyve.’ And when he had sayd this, he sayd to guycharde / ‘Broder, draw oute your swerde, so shall we cut of the hed of this traytour kyng yon therwyth / for whom we have now lost our broder richarde.’ ‘Brother,’ sayd theinne Reynawde, ‘I praye you, for ye love that ye have to me, that ye touche not the kyng yon¹ for to doo hym ony harme¹ / for he hath yelded hymselfe vnto me / but bryng hym vnto montalban, and see that he be kepte sure. And I shall abyde here wyth my good horse bayard, & flamberde my good swerde, wythoute any other company / Soo shall I goo in to the pavylion of charlemagn, where I shall recover my brother Richard, or a nother prisoner for hym, or ²ellesh I shall deye wyth hym’ / and when he had said that worde, he spored bayard wyth the spores, for to have goon thyder, but alard toke hym bi the bridyll, & guychard toke hym with both his armes fro behynde for to kepe hym, that he shold not goo / and theinne alard sayd to hym / ‘Bi saynt peter of rome, ye shall not goo no fote there, for it is better that richard deye, yf it must be so / than ye shold deye.’ And thus as the thre brethern made

¹⁰ omitted, F. orig. p. viii.
² Fol. T. iii. back. (S. in text.)
their mone for richarde, cam there mawgis theyr cosin, that followed theim. and whan he sawe his cosins make suche sorow / he was sore agaste, & sayd to theym / ‘What eyleth you, fayr cosins / it is no worship to you, nor ye maner of good knyghtes / but of wymen, to make suche sorrowe as ye doo.’ ‘Cosin, cosin,’ sayd alard, ‘I shall tell you what causeth vs to doo so / wyte that rowland ledeth wyth hym our 8 broder richard for his prisoner, the best knyght of the world after reynawd; and reynawd wyl go to the pavylion of charlemagn; and ye know well yf he goo there, he is but lost for evermore’ / ‘Reynawde,’ sayd 12 theyme mawgis, ‘it were no wysdome to you yf ye went there / for your goyng shold not profyte no thynge / but go your wayes to montalban, & I shall go there 2 as ye wold have goon my self; 2 and yf richarde 16 be not deed, I shall bryng hym agen wyth me vnto you all, were he shitte vp in X prisons, mawgre charlemagn.’3 ‘Cosin,’ sayd reinawd, ‘I shall becom your man yf ye doo this that ye saye’ / ‘cosin,’ sayd 20 mawgis, ‘I shall doo it wythout fawte / but leve your sorow; I shall deliver hym agen in to your handes 4 hole & sounde, 4 yf it playse god.’ and whan he had sayd so, the bredern set themself to the waye for to 24 retourne to montalban / but soo grete sorow was there never made, as the the bredern made for their broder richard 5 / And thus, makyng their grete mone, they dyd somoche that they cam to montalban, & 28 lighted 6 from their horses in the base court, and after

---

1 que estoit grant pitie a veoir, F. orig. p. viii.
2-2 omitted, F. orig. p. viii.
3 de france, F. orig. q. i. back.
4-4 omitted, F. orig. q. i. back.
5 Helas! ce dist regnault, frere richart comme cest grant dommaige de vous se vous estes mort, car oncques chevallier ne vous valut de hardiesse, ne de prouesse. Et si etiez ung yosne enfant. Et se maist dieu Je plains plus la grant bonte de vous, que Je ne fais ce que vous estes mon frere, F. orig. q. i. back, omitted in Caxton.
6 Fol. T. iv.
went vp to the dungeon / And when the noble\textsuperscript{1} lady clare, the wyf of Reynawde, wyste that her husbonde came / she came agenste hym right glad & Joyfull / and ledeth at ether hande of her both her yonge children / aymon & yon; and eyther of them bare a lityll staff in his hande / and began to cry vpon their vncl / ‘vassayll / but that ye be now prisoner / ye shold have dyed by our handes’ / and they cam nyghe hym, & sayd / ‘cursed kyng & vntrue! why have you betrayed my lord our fader, & his bredern, our vncl / that have doon to you so god servyse? certes, ye be well worthy to deye a shamfull deth’ / When alarde herde his nevewes speke of this maner / he beganne to wepe full tendrely. And thus as he wepte, he kyssed Aymonet, that bare the name of their fader / and sayd, ‘Ha, god, how ben we broughte lowe and dystroyed’! And when the lady herde Alarde speke thyse wordes, and sawe that he wepte / she thoughte well that it was not wythoute a cause; and she sayd to alarde / ‘Fayr brother, for god telle me the occasyon of your sorow.’ ‘Lady,’ said alarde, ‘wyth a good wylle\textsuperscript{2} / Now wyte that we have loste our brother rychade / Rowlande ledeth hym for his prysoner to charlemagn; but yf our lord save hym, we are not like never to see hym’ / ‘Alas, I unhappy! what shall we do?’ sayd the lady, ‘syth that Rycharde is loste, For we shall never have honoure.’ And saynge thyse wordes, she felle doun in a swoone to the erthe. And when she was come agen to herselfe, she beganne to make soo grete a sorowe / that all they that were there had grete pyte of her / But Clare falls down in a swoon, and grieves terribly for Richard. here leveth the history to speke of Reynawd, of Alarde / and of Guycharde / and of the lady Clare / and her yonge chyldren / And retourneth to shewe of
\textsuperscript{1} omitted, F. orig. q. i.
\textsuperscript{2} le vous diray, F. orig. q. i.
Mawgis, the goode knyghte, that had put hymselfe in adventure and in peyne, for to deliver Rycharde oute of the handes of the kynge Charlemagne.

CHAPTER XIV.

Now telleth the history / that when Mawgys was come agayne to Mountalban / soo moche wrothe he was, that he myghte nomore, for the love of Rychard that was take / And by cause that reynawd and his bretherne made therfore soo grete sorowe, Incontynente that he was lighted from his horse / he wente into his chambre, and made hymselfe to be dysarmed; and after he toke of all his clothes, and put hymself all naked / and this doon, he toke an herbe and ete it, and as soone that he had ete it / he swelled like a padde / and thenne toke an other herbe / and chaufed and helde it betwene his teeth / and anone he be came all blace as a cole in his face, as one that is beten wyth staves / and his eyen reled in his hede as he had be other dronken or madde / and dysguysed hymself wonderfully, that he that had well knowe hym afore shold not thenne have sayd that he had be mawgys. And whan

1 Fol. T. iv. back.  
2—2 omitted, F. orig. q. i.  
3—3 quil sembloit quil deust mourir, F. orig. q. i.  
4 ne leust congneu, F. orig. q. i.
he was thus 1torned and 1 countrefayt / he toke a grete mantell and a hode, and clothed hymselfe therwyth, and toke on his fete a grete payre of botes, & the staff 4 of a pylum in his hande. And thus arrayed, he yssued oute of mountalban. And whan he was oute, he sette hymselfe for to goo the waye so grete pase that no horse cowde not have waloped so fast / tyll that he 8 cam to mountbandell, byfore the tentes of themperour Charlemagn, 2or ever that Rowlande were come there agayn. and there he helde hym styll, & spake no thynge at all / but loked onely vpon the kyng & vpon his 12 pavylion / And whan he went, he halted wyth thone fote / and lened before the kynges vnto his staff, and kept the one of his eyen close. And whan he sawe the kyng com out of his pavylion / he nighed hym, 16 & sayd, 'God of heven, that suffreth deth & passion in the crosse, kepe you, kyng Charlemyne, fro deth & fro pryson, and from evyll treyson /'

Vassall,' sayd the kyng charlemyne / 'god con-

founde you! for I shall never truste vpon none suche a begger as ye be / by cause of the evyll theef mawgis / the whiche hath deceyved me many tymes / for whan he wil, he is a palmer, a knyghte, or a gryfon, 24 or elles a heremyte / be suche maner that I can not beware of hym. And yf it playse god & hys blessed moder, I shall avenge me ones vpon hym, how that the game gooth' / And whan mawgys herde themperour 28 speke of this manere, he answered no thynge / and kepeth hym styll a grete while; and after he sayd to the kyng, 'Syre, yf mawgis be a theef / all other poure folke be not so. I have more nede of helthe then I 32 have to doo ony treyson; & it is well seen on me that I am not the body that myghte doo ony grete harme / Syr, I come from Jerusalem, where I have worshypd the holy grave, and have doon my oblacyons in the

1-1 omitted, F. orig. q. i. 2 Fol. T. v.
and is going to Rome;

he relates how he passed the river Gironde yesterday with x men,

and how he was attacked by thieves, and all his men were slain,

and the thieves were the four Sons and Mawgis;

and how they beat and robbed him so that he nearly died,

and therefore he has come to implore help against the Sons from the Emperor.

temple of Salomon, and yet I must go to Rome & to saynt James in gales, and god wyll. But I dyd passe yesterdaye over balencun & over gironde\(^1\) / wyth x men, \(^2\)my servauztes, \(^2\)that I ledde alwayse by the waye wyth me for to kepe & defende my body. And whan I had passed over gironde / \(^3\)I cam wyth my meyne thrughe a wood nyghe montalban \(^3\) / where I mette wyth many brygantes & theves, that slew all my men, & al that \(^8\) I had thei toke \(^4\)fro me, and lete me goo / and gladde I was whan soo fayr I was deliverde of theym. And after I asked of the folke of ye\(^c\) countrey what men they were that \(^5\)had so \(^5\)slayn my men / and they dyd telle 12 me that they were the four sons of aymon, & a grete thef that was called mawgys \(^2\)wyth theim \(^2\) / And I asked them why they wold set themself to so fowle a craft & vnhappy / seen that thei were so grete gentylmen 16 born. and the peple of the countrey answerde me that they were constrained for to doo so, by cause they had soo grete povertie wythin montalban that they wyst not what to doo / but I dyde never see so cruell a man 20 as the same mawgis is / for he bouande my handes behinde my backe whan he had robbed me / and theme he bete me so sore that I wende to have dyed therof / and hathe arayed me as ye see. Syr, ye be the best 24 kynge of the worlde, & ye be lord of all this londe, wherfore I pray you, for god, that ye wyll do me right of thise four sones of aymon, & of mangis that grete thefeft / And whan charlemagyn vnderstode thise wordes, 28 he righted his hede vp & sayd / `Pilgryme, is it true as thou sayst' / `ye, syre,' sayd mawgis / `Now tell me thy name,' sayd charlemagyn / `Syr,' sayd mawgis, `my name is gaydoñ, & I am borne in bretayn, & I am 32 a grete man in my countrey / wherfore I requyre you, in

\(^1\) et entre dedens ung dronom, F. orig. q. ii. back.

\(^2\) omitted, F. orig. q. ii. back.

\(^3\) Je vins par dessous montauban, F. orig. q. ii. back.

\(^4\) Fol. T. v. back.

\(^5\) so had, orig.
the worship of the holy sepulture ¹ that I have soughte, ¹ that ye doo me ryght’ / ‘Pylgryme,’ sayd Charlemagne, ‘I can not have noo ryght of theim my selfe / for I promise the! yf I had theym, all the worlde sholde not save theym, but that I sholde make theim deye a shamfull dethe.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd thenne mawgis / ‘sith that ye can doo me no righte of theym, I beseche all 8 myghty god, that is in heven, that it playseth hym for to doo it’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd the barons, ‘this pylgryme semeth to be a gooode man and a true / as I suppose / For it is well seen on hym / gyve to hym your aimes.

12 ² yf it playse you’ / And thenne the kyng commannded that men sholde gyve hym² xx. li. of money / and mawgis toke theym & put it in his hode / and he sayd in himself / ‘ye have gyven to me of your owne good, 16 but ye have doone like a fole / I shall reward you right dere for it or ever I departe fro you.’ and when he had the silver, he asked after some mete, for goddys sake / for sin yesterdaye he had not eten, as he sayd / 20 ‘by my feth,’ sayd Charlemagne, ‘thou shalte have ⁴ mete & drynke⁴ ynough.’ And anone they brought to hym mete /and he set hym doun,⁵ & toke & ete well of the beste.⁶ And the kyng sayd to hym, ‘now ete fre, 24 good pylgryme, For thou shalt be well served’ / and mawgys ete styll, and answered never a worde, but beheld oonly the kyng in his visage / And the kyng sayd to hym, ‘tell me, pilgryme, & hide no thynge fro me / 28 why haste thou loked so sore vpoun me!’ ‘syre,’ sayd mawgis, ‘I shall tell you it wyth ryght a good wyll / Wyte that I am a well traveylld man; but in noo place that ever I was / I saw never, nether crysten man.

32 nother sarrasyn, soo goodly a prynce / ne soo curteys / as ye be one / wherof of all the pardons that I have

¹° omitted, F. orig. q. ii. back. ² Fol. T. vi. ³ tresne, F. orig. q. ii. ⁴° omitted, F. orig. q. ii. ⁵ sur ung eschaquier, F. orig. q. ii. ⁶ car il en auoit mestier, F. orig. q. ii.
worne in my vyage makyng, I gyve you the halfe freely' / 'Certes, pylgryme,' sayd the kyng, 'and I take it gladly / And I thanke you moche therof.' And mawgis gaaf hym thenne, for a wytnesse of the same, his palmers staff for to kysse it. Thenne said the barons / 'certenly, syre, the pylgrym hath given you a fayr gifte; ye oughte to rewarde hym well for it' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgis, 'I aske none other rewarde for it / but that ye wyll take my gyfte a worthe / and that I may reste me here a while / for I am very syke and wery' / And thus as ye kynge spake to mawgis, cam thenne Rowlande and Olivere, and all their folke, that broughte Rycharde for a prysoner.

A nd whan Ogyer and Estorfawde, the sone of Oedon / and the duke Naymes, sawe that Rowlande wolde goo to the pavylion of Charlemagne wyth 16 Rychard, They came to Rowland and sayd to hym / 'Syre Rowland, how canne you hate Rycharde soo sore / that ye wyll yelde hym to Charlemagne' / 'Lorde,' sayd Rowlande, 'what will ye that I shall doo wyth 20 hym; teill me and I shall doo it' / 'Syre,' sayd they, 'we wyll that ye delvery Rycharde, and ye shall saye that it was a nother prysoner.' 'Lorde,' sayd Rowland, 'yf I canne doo this, I shall doo it gladly' / All thise worde herde a yoman, that Incontynent spore his horse / and came to the kynges tente, and sayd to Charlemagn, 'Syre, I bryng ye tydynges sore strange/ we have fou[g]hte by 6 the ryver syde of Balencon / where there Reynawde, the sone of Aymone, hath kept his owne right well agenst rowlande your nevewe / and setteth not a strawe by hym. And Rowlande loste there more than he wyll.' Whan the emperoure 32 Charlemagne vnderstode that worde / he was abassen

---

1-1 omitted, F. orig. q. ii.  
2-2 car Je suis plus malade quil me fait mestier, F. orig. q. iii. back.  
3 Fol. T. vi. back.  
4 aymon, in text orig.  
5 la ou Il vit le roy, F. orig. q. iii. back.  
6 be, orig.
gretly; and after he sayd to the yoman, 'Telle me, my frende, how was yet of my nevewe Rowland' / 'Syre,' sayd the yoman, 'he foughte wyth the four sones of 4 Aymon, that defended theymselfe well. But Rowlande hath broughte wyth hym prisoner one of the four sones 2 of Aymon 2 / the whyche is the mooste hardy & the moost valiaunt of theim all / in all poyntes.'

8 Charlemagne began thenne to lepe for Ioye, whan he understode thys tydynges / and came oute of his tent, & behelde & sawe Rycharde, that Rowlande brought. Whan Charlemagn sawe rycharde, he knew 12 hym well incontyuente, & began to erie for grete ioye that he had / 'by my soule, neew, it is well seen that ye have be there, for elles Richarde sholde 4 not have ben take' / 'Certes,' 5 sayd Rowlande, 'well lied Ogier 16 to you / for if he had not be / ye four sones of aymon were take as well as one' / and thenne said the kyng to richard / 'Hoursone! by the fyeth that I owe to god, ye shall be hanged by the necke / but first ye shall have of evyll & of tormentes ynough.' 'sire, sayd Richarde, 'I am in your prison. I fere me not to be hanged as long as reynawd, my broder, shall may light vpon bayarde / and that mawgis be a lyve, alarde 24 & guycharde, my righte dere bredern / for ye ye doo to me ony owtrage, no castell, ne towne, ne fortresse shall not kepe you; but that thei shall make you deye an evyll deth or two dayes be passed.' Whau charlemagn herde 28 richard speke so proudly, he was right an angred for it, & toke a staff with both his handes, & smote Richarde therwyth vpon the hede so harde that he made the blode renne oute of it to therthe / And whan richard 32 felt hymself thus wounded, he vanued hymselfe / and toke the kyng wyth both his armes by the waste, &

1 au gue de balancan, F. orig. q. iii. back.
2 omitted, F. orig. q. iii. back.
3 son nepveu, F. orig. q. iii. back.
4 Fol. T. vii.
5 Sire, F. orig. q. iii.
wrastled togyder alonge whyle, so that thei fell both doun, thone here & the other there. And Richard rose vp quyckly, & wolde have renne vpon charlemagn, but oger & salamon seased him & kept him therfro / and after they sayd to charlemagn, 'Sir, ye have doon overmoche amys for to bete a prisoner.' 'certes, my lordes,' sayd richard, 'it is more dishonour to the kyng for to Smyte me / than it is to me for to defende my body / but he is well wonte to doo suche owtrages / for it is not the first that he hath doon, nor it shall not be the last' / And whan mawgis sawe that charlemagn had smyten richarde / he was sore an angred therfere / that he had almoste layd vpon hym wyth his palmers staff; but he thought if he had doo soo, bothe Rycharde & he shold have been deed. and whan charlemagn sawe that richard spake so boldly, he said to hym, 'richard, god confounde me yf ye scape me for all your wyckednes / for ye shal sooene be hanged by the necke.' 'sir,' sayd richard, 'speke more courtesli, yf ye playse you, for I shal see you soner be feyn quycke than 20 ye shal see me hange / nor ye shal not be so hardy to doo so.' 'what somever ye prate / say, or erake' / sayd charlemagn, 'ye shal not scape me, but ye shal be hanged or nyghte; and wold god I helde as faste your bredern, & mawgis, that theef, as I hold you now / for they shold be hanged wyth you to bere you company, bycause ye sholde not be a ferde.' All thus as richarde strove with charlemagn / he tornd hymself & sawe mawgis behynde him, that held hymself styll lenyng vpon his staff; and he knewe hym well, wherof he was well glad, for he wyste well he shold not deye sith mawgis was there. And whan richard had seen mawgis, he was sure of his liff, & sayd to charlemagn,

1-1 omitted, F. orig. q. iii. 2 le roy, F. orig. q. iii. 3 Fol. T. vii. back. 4-4 en brief, F. orig. q. iii. 5-5 Si ne meschapperez vous mye toutesfois, F. orig. q. iii. 6-6 omitted, F. orig. q. iii.
The Right Plesaunt and Goodly Historie

of

The Foure Sonnes of Aymon.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XLV.

1885.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
The English Charlemagne Romances.

PART XI.

The Right Pleasant and Goodly Historie

of the

Four Sonnes of Aymon.

Enlisht from the French by
William Caxton,
and printed by him about 1489.

Edited from
the unique copy, now in the possession of Earl Spencer,
with an Introduction,
by
Octavia Richardson.

PART II.

London:
Published for the Early English Text Society
by N. Trübner & Co., 57 & 59, Ludgate Hill.

MDCCLXXXV.
Extra Series
XLV.

R. Clay and Sons, Chaucer Press, Bungay.
INTRODUCTION.

Caxton's "right pleasant and goodly lustorie of the Four Sons of Aymon" is englisht from the French prose romance "Les Quatre Filz Aymon," which is a rendering more or less free of an ancient chanson de geste bearing the same name, though more often entitled "Renaud de Montauban." The earliest extant text of the chanson is a remaniment of the end of the 12th century.\(^1\)

The conversion of the poem into prose was not accomplished before the close of the 14th century. None of the prose manuscripts are earlier than the 15th century. Of them the British Museum has three MSS., all in writing of the 15th century. In one,\(^2\) a large vellum folio, about 1445 A.D., the story is illustrated by nine miniatures; in the borders of the first appear the arms of John Talbot, first Earl of Shrewsbury, and those of Henry VI. and his Queen Margaret of Anjou empaled. It is similar to the usual printed edition, from the third chapter of that edition to the end. Another manuscript, a vellum folio of the 15th century, is also a prose version, to which is prefixed a fragment of a metrical version of the story, the text of which closely resembles that published by Bekker in his Introduction to "Fierbras"; another metrical fragment is added at the conclusion of the prose tale, which contains the adventures of Maugis, how he became Pope under the name of Innocent, hears Charlemagne's confession, and is stifled by the Emperor in a cave near Naples.

\(^1\) For the history of the chanson de geste see Histoire Litteraire de la France, vol. xxii, pp. 667-700; Renaud de Montauban, edited by H. V. Michelant Stuttgart, 1843; and M. Longnon's paper in Romania, for 1878. The general introduction to this series might also be examined together with M. Gaston Paris' Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne, pp. 19, 139, 298.

The third manuscript at the British Museum contains a much briefer text than that of the printed editions, and is imperfect at the end.

The French prose rendering of this romance is much inferior to the poem in every sense, and cannot properly be deemed a direct reproduction of it, although it follows the thread of the narrative throughout, sometimes closely enough, at others wandering to a considerable distance; but even while following, it robs the original of half its beauties through its prosaic rendering. The valuable historical allusions are for the most part cast to the winds, the names abstracted, the circumstances altered, the speeches shortened or omitted, the sequence of the story being frequently unsettled.

The palm for superior dramatic treatment must also be given to the chanson's version of the chess-murder, on which the mincing of the prose version has a damaging effect. The toning down of the ferocity of the chanson destroys the prose relation completely as a picture of old time. The story also can ill afford the omission made in the prose of the curse with which Foulques of Morillon is first introduced—

"En France et i linage cui Dame Dex mal dont;  
Ce fu Grif d'Autefueil et son fil Guenelon,  
Béranger et Hardré et Hervi de Lion,  
Antaumes li felon, Fouques de Morillon."  

The curse has an important bearing on the events which follow, and gives, in fact, a key to the venom with which Foulques is pursued throughout the story.

The prose loses much by its rejection of the first embassage of Charlemagne to Beuves d'Aigremont. The murder of Enguerran, which precedes that of the second ambassador, Lohier, the king's son, lays a far broader basis for the Emperor's revenge, on which the story is built, than the single murder of Lohier in the prose version. In connection with this, it may be well to notice the omission of another striking passage from the prose, in which Charlemagne swears vengeance on the murderers of his son and nephew—

1 Renans de Montauban, p. 39, ed. Michelant.
"Il jure Dame Deu qui tot a` jugier,
Qu'il ne s'en tornera por Mars ne por Fevrier,
Tant Kara pris Renaut qu'il ne puat avoir irer ;
As forches lert pendus, nus nel puat respitier.
Richars sera detrais a keue de somier,
Ki oest Loois a l'espée d'acier
Et Renaus, Bertelai au pesant eschekier," p. 57.

The circumstance, which we know from history, of Charlemagne having had a son who died young, gives an interest to this passage, which should have pleaded for its preservation, and for that of several others which allude to the same murder. The exclusion of many such passages of historical interest is a matter of regret. One passage may be instance in which mention is made of the monastic foundations of Gerard de Roussillon, to which pious works the name of Doon de Nanteuil is joined with that of his brother. Of them it says—

"Il des confirent Karle lui et ses compaignons ;
J'en estora saint Pere de Cluigni le baron
Et puis la charité et vezelai selone,
Saint Beneoit sor Loire, là où si moine sont," p. 156.

Of the early printed editions of the French prose romance, which are numerous, the British Museum possesses four, two of Paris and two of Lyons. One alone of these editions is dated, that of Lyons, 1539. The general catalogue of the Museum gives as probable dates to the others, 1480, 1520, 1525 respectively. The edition said to be of Lyons, with the supposed date of 1480 attached to it, is a folio volume whose typography is singularly beautiful. The letters all stand out distinctly, the type is large, and the words are amply spaced. Ornamental capitals head the paragraphs throughout. Caxton's translation of *Les Quatre Fils Aymon*, which he undertook "at the desire of John Erle of Oxenforde," seems to have been undoubtedly made from this edition, as in portions of the story where these various editions differ from each other, that of the 1480 edition is invariably adopted by Caxton. In his translation of this work, Caxton shows himself piously literal. Words and phrases, both foreign and unusual, he transferred bodily to his text; nothing ever deterred him, simply because it was French; he wandered along every winding of the sentences he was rendering, and brought
them over with all their sinuosities into the English. In consequence, his translation is perhaps one of the most literal that has ever been produced in the English language, and though to some extent stilted and even awkward, yet it is impossible not to admire his faithfulness to his original; and the very quaintness of those peculiarities of language sometimes adds a charm to his composition.

The few instances where Caxton has differed from the French will be seen by the collations which have occasionally been marked in foot-notes on the pages of this work.

As a picture of the language of the time, his "Four Sons of Aymon" is highly curious and interesting. He continues the use of double negatives—so common in Chaucer and other Early-English writers. That this was not merely an imitation from the French, is shown by Caxton making use of two where his original gives him warrant only for one. On p. 65, l. 24, "Charlemagne made Aymon to swere that he should never gyne no help to his children"; p. 18, l. 10, "for doubte of death shall not leue nothynge unsayd of hys message to the duke benes." On p. 255, l. 27, "All my lymmes shaken for angre, nor I can not stande upon my feet." In the French there is but one negative. Ed. 1480. Caxton frequently omits the pronominal subject of a verb in the clauses of a sentence, which succeed the leading one, so that often the drift of the narrative alone leaves the reader to decide the subject of the verb thus omitted. This practice with him is generally an imitation of his original. On p. 238, l. 24, "The frenshemen had wounded hym wyth two speres well depe in to the flesshe and was taken for prysoner." The French is (Ed. 1480) "et lavoient naure de deux espees bien parfond en la cher et fut prins pour prisonnier."

Caxton uses many words in the plural which are now allowed only in the singular, this also is usually in obedience to his original. On p. 262, l. 29, "armed with his own armures"; on p. 235, l. 32, "But their corages were never the lesse therfore." Occasionally a word occurs in the singular where a plural is now used: on p. 182, l. 31, the troops are ordered to come, "well garnyshed of vytaylle for the space of vii. yeres." The Midland plural in en occurs frequently: on p. 3, l. 16, "virtues which ben digne"; p. 5, l. 2,
"chapytres whiche spoken of many faire matters"; p. 13, l. 27, "Bayard is yet a lyve in the forest of Arleyne as men sayen." The Southern plural in eth also occurs: on p. 70, l. 26, "thise ben the folke of themperour Charlemayn that goeth to Arleyn." Sometimes the plural form now used is found in the singular: on p. 75, l. 32, "Themperour Charlemayn of fraunce lete you wyte by us that ye sende to hym Guycherde."

The possessive case of nouns in Caxton is made, as usual, by the addition of s or es: thus on p. 77, l. 19, "Charlemayn's folke"; p. 13, l. 17, "for goddes sake"; though it is sometimes made in is, p. 25, l. 8, "Bayardis back." On p. 283, l. 1, there is a singular example, "his face towards the horse taylle."

Caxton almost invariably uses ye for the nominative and you for the objective case of the pronoun. There is an exception on p. 172, l. 31, due possibly to the compositor setting the MS. 'y" = thou, as 'you':—"I wote not what you sayste thou arte more like a foole than a bysshop." Also on p. 142, l. 7, "I praye the for the love that you haste to thy god, that thou gyve me trewes."

Which is constantly used for persons, and so used is generally preceded by the definite article. That and that are frequently used instead of what, whose occurrence is rare in comparison with these substitutes: on p. 70, l. 32, "I conne you nother thank nor grace of that that ye saye." This (="pl. thise) is frequently used for these: on p. 184, l. 20, "I will departe the londe of Gascoyn to this yonge knyghtes for theyr herytage." Other is invariably used for others, and self for selces: on p. 98, l. 28, "Reynawde mounted upon Bayarde and the other also lighted upon theyr horses." A very common use in Caxton—as in many other writers—is that of the past participle losing its final n, and assuming an infinitive form after an auxiliary verb. On p. 3, l. 12, "the clerkes haue had great knowledge by innumerable volumes of bookes which haue be made"; p. 14, l. 3, "Iherusalem was take agayne of the Christen." A great many old or peculiar forms of the past tenses and participles occur: on p. 137, l. 20, "he hewe"; p. 79, l. 11, "flancardes all tobrosten"; p. 176, l. 22, "Every man putted hymself for to renne." The word conne, to be able, is constantly used; and a similar use is
made of *may*, on p. 227, l. 16, "For wyte that *yf* I telled you not, ye sholde not *maye* knowe it." The form *more* of this verb sometimes occurs: on p. 167, l. 25, "ye shall *more* know the beste horse of your royame." Giving a future auxiliary to the verb *will* is curious. On p. 64, l. 1.25, "il *vous rendra au roy*" is translated, "he *shall wyll* yelde you to the kyng." A striking feature of Caxton's English is the number of reflective verbs with which it abounds. On p. 4, l. 11, "Whyche booke I haue endevoerde me to accomplyshe." P. 236, l. 18, "Yet *shall I selle* me full dere or I deye." An example may be given of verbs completed by prepositions: p. 6, l. 30, "and gaue them *of havyre* so much, that they myghte *Auell* make war witJi against the king." Caxton has many substitutes for present participles, which reduces their use considerably, as on p. 70, l. 27, "These ben the folke *of themperour that goeth to Ardeyn*"; p. 74, l. 32, "sende a messager to Reynawde *for to tell* hym that he yelde you Guycharde."

He makes use also of a great many particles needless in modern English, by the omission of many others in places where they are now deemed indispensable. A few characteristic sentences will illustrate his practice in this respect. On p. 154, l. 30, "ioye began to be grete in the castell *as god* had descended there"; p. 87, l. 10, "So he *swere* god"; p. 109, l. 3, "he was so wery he myghte no more."

The adverb *very* had hardly come into use: it has many fore-runners, such as *full*, *sore*, *right*, etc.

*Nother* is constantly used for *neither*; *sith* and *syn* for the later *since*. *Ne* is sometimes used for *nor*, in second alternatives, as on p. 317, l. 31, "I saw neuer nether crysten man, nother sarrasyn, soo goodly a prynece, *ne* soo curteys as ye be one."

An-*angered* is an intensive by which Caxton translates the French *enrage*.' *But yf* is another old expression continued by him for *unless*: on p. 101, l. 9, "it sholde hurte hym sore *but yf* he myghte take themy."

The use of *doo* with the infinitive—'doo make' = cannot be made,—is another continuation by Caxton of an older usage, and is a great contrast to modern English: on p. 18, l. 28, "I shall *doo*
INTRODUCTION.

hange"; p. 7, l. 21, "And dyd doo make the castell of Mont-
awban." Sometimes the verb make is substituted for do, in its sense of 'perform,' as on p. 84, l. 4, "the grete fayettes of armes that he made there."

Caxton makes use largely of articles where they are now omitted, and omits them frequently in places where they are always used, as on p. 6, l. 5, "it bare a great dammage to the realme"; p. 8, l. 32, "Mawgys broughte suche a succourses."

The order of words in sentences is frequently changed in Caxton's text, as in earlier English: on p. 87, l. 18, Reynawde "wente to chasse in woodes & in ryvers as often as hym playesd" = it pleased him; on p. 117, l. 23, "everybody had of it pyte."

The original edition of Caxton's "Four Sons of Aymon" has neither title-page, printer's name, place, nor date. It is a folio volume, and the fortunate possessor of the only copy known is Earl Spencer. The celebrated founder of the Althorp Library, Earl George, acquired it by purchase in the year 1822. Of its previous history we can discover nothing. The date assigned to it by Blades, in his life of Caxton, is 1489, and has been adopted from the circumstance, that the works issued from Caxton's fount No. 6 range from 1489 to 1493. Although Earl Spencer's copy is unique, it is not perfect. It lacks Caxton's prologue and colophon. To its owner I return the warm thanks of the Society and myself for generously sending his treasure to the British Museum for so many months for our use. The General Catalogue of the British Museum mistakingly represents that institution as the possessor of two leaves of another copy of Caxton's "Four Sons of Aymon." Unfortunately, however, there is really only one leaf, for the second is apparently an extract from some work of devotion or popular theology, and though resembling in both type and style the leaf to which it is attached by the compiler of the Catalogue, has no connection with it. The genuine leaf is the beginning of chapter xxv, and is similar to the corresponding leaf in Copland's edition. Even the vignette which heads the leaf is the same, and is a repetition from the block used for chapter ix. Four leaves of the same edition were discovered by Mr. Blades to be in the possession of Mr. Green of Bishops Stortford.
in 1882. They are portions of signature E, and do not therefore supply the defects of the Althorp copy.

A second edition, as we learn from the colophon of the third edition, was "Imprinted at London by Wynken de Worde, the viii. daye of Maye, and the yere of our lorde. M.cccc.iii." One leaf only of this edition is known to be extant. It was discovered in 1882 in a volume of early-printed fragments by Mr. Henry Bradshaw, and is now in the Cambridge University Library.

Copland's third edition was issued on 6th May 1554; the colophon describes it as printed for Thomas Petit, not for Robert Toye, as asserted by the Catalogue of the Harleian Library. It was no doubt printed for both these and other booksellers, as the 'trade' editions of Chaucer were. The prologue to this edition is undoubtedly a literal reprint of Caxton's original preface, and it thus supplies one of the chief defects of the Althorpe copy. 1 Although no edition later than Copland's is now known, entries in the Stationers' Registers point to the conclusion that the romance was twice reprinted before the close of the century. Licences to reissue it were granted in March 1582 (Arber's Transcript, ii. 408), and in February 1598-9 (ibid. iii. 137). On 22nd Feb. 1598-9 a printer was licensed to print "the last part of the ffowre sons of Aymon" (ibid. iii. 139). 2

The success of the story of the Sons of Aymon gave birth to many and various editions. The name and adventures of Renaud were a passport to success of which poets availed themselves, and on all sides there are testimonies to the universal fame of Bayard. His namesake, "sans peur et sans reproche," is said when besieged in Mezières, recalling the feats of the noble steed through the identity of their names, to have answered the summons to surrender, sent him by Prince Henry of Nassau, with the proud reply, "A Bayard of France will never yield to a cart-stallion of Germany." The noble Bayard carried the Sons of Aymon everywhere, and all lands were eager to possess them and offer them a home. Horse and riders were depicted upon the walls of castles and convents. "On

1 For the bibliography of the romance, see two letters by Mr. W. Blades, and one by Mr. S. L. Lee, Athenæum, Aug. 19, 26, and Sept. 9, 1882.

2 In Arber's Transcript, iv. 459, is an assignment of 'The four sons of Aymon' by Wm. Stansby, and his widow Elizabeth after his death, to Master Bishop, on 4 March, 1639.
the walls," says Roquefort, "of the nunnery of St. Reynold in Cologne, is a painting of four Paladins, mounted upon Bayard, and Reynold is distinguished among them by an aureole, the sign of saintship."\(^1\)

It is well known that the mediæval romance of France became the property of cultivated Europe. From its source was supplied the fuel of the worldly imagination, and Renauld taking a prominent part was translated universally, and imitated in all fashions. In the 13th century Maerland could speak of having read the history of the Four Sons of Aymon in his native Flemish, "Hiemskindre, dat ic las."\(^2\) This translation is said to be due to Nicholas Vescboschten, and it became the source of a German translation of the 13th century.\(^3\)

Through what channel the story of the Sons of Aymon found passage to Iceland is uncertain. It is still a question whether the Icelandic versions originated from French manuscripts brought into Norway, which were read by the Scandinavian reciters, or whether they were learnt in France and brought over orally. The numerous manuscript copies testify to its popularity, the oldest of which may be referred to the middle of the 13th century. Here the story has acquired a new name. The Saga of Earl Magus adopts altogether a strange character, it knows nothing at all of the sojourn of the Sons of Aymon in Mountauban, mingles the story with that of Gerard, in whom some recognize the hero of Vienne, brings Charlemagne to live at Worms, and makes the chateau of Aymon Buslaraborg in Germany, giving that of Strasburg to Magus. The Saga was published for popular reading at Reikavick in 1858.

In Italy Renauld shone as the hero of every style of poetry, whether chivalrous, amorous, or comic. The "Quatre Fils d'Aymon" formed one of the volumes of the 13th century "Reali di Francia." Renauld is one of Pulci's heroes; in Boiardo the Emperor Gradasse is obliged to raise 150,000 men to conquer Bayard; and Renauld, side by side with Roland, divides the honours of the famous

1 Poésie Franoise dans les xiiith et xiiiith Siècles, p. 141. Roquefort.
2 Reiffenberg, Philippe Mouskes, vol. ii. ccxiv.
3 Hist. poet. de Charl., G. Paris, p. 139.
“Orlando Innamorata” of Ariosto. Tasso’s “Rinaldo” is based immediately on the French romance of the Four Sons.

Outside the world of letters altogether, the story has left its trace in the popular traditions of certain portions of France, Belgium, and Germany, chiefly in the neighbourhood of the Ardennes. The name of the Four Sons of Aymon still clings tenaciously to the ruins of the rock-built Chateau of Ambleve, as does that of Bayard to a chateau at Dhuy. The whole North of France is associated with the story, and the neighing of Bayard is still believed to be distinctly heard through the valleys of the Ardennes. In the beginning of the 18th century the presses of Troyes found full employment in its reproduction. To this day Chateau-Renaud, surrounded by the waters of the Meuse, is still believed to be the neighbourhood of the retreat of Maugis and Bayard, and the Castle of Renout’s Steen, in the Province of Liege, is freely abandoned to them in the surrounding universe of popular tradition. In Brittany, a rude dramatization of the original Epic witnesses to the popularity of the story at the present day. During the celebration of the Kermesse, a Belgium popular feast, which is said to date back to the year 891, an enormous horse bearing four knights, and decorated with their escutcheons, paraded the streets of Louvain in 1490, behind the corps of the University. “As late as the year 1825,” says Reiffenberg, “Bayard repaired to Mechlin, to crown a feast framed on the oldest models which was held there; and at Dortmund, in Westphalia, Renaud is still held in heroic and saintly esteem.” M. Léon Gautier also calls our attention to the pictures decorating the chimneys of the peasant in France, where, by the side of rude representations of the battle of Austerlitz and the Wandering Jew, is seen that of the Four Sons of Aymon.

Proofs of the popularity of the English translation of the romance are not far to seek. We know not only (as we have shown) that reprints of it were numerous, but that the reprints were widely read and appreciated during the later years of the 16th century. The book is one of those which Cox, the Quixotic old captain of Coventry, who took prominent part in the Kenilworth festivities of 1575, had at his fingers’ end. Francis Meres, in the Palladis
Tamia, 1598 (p. 268b), mentions the work among others as "no lesse hurtfull to youth then the workes of Machiavell to age." Wherever, in fact, in Elizabethan literature romances are under discussion, the "Four Sons of Aymon" is brought into court, and receives some sort of tribute to its popularity. The least equivocal of its commendations is the mention in "Henslowe's Diary" of the fact that the story was dramatized, and arrangements made for its production on the stage at the time that Shakespeare and his companions were proving the potentialities of the English drama. The entries in the theatrical manager's diary runs as follows:—

"Layd owt for the componye, the 10 of desembr 1602 unto Robarte Shawe for a booke of the 4 sonnes of Amon the some of ... ... ... ... ... xl."

"Memorandum that I Robert Shaa have receaued of Mr. Phillip Henshlowe the some of forty shillinges upon a booke called the fower sonnes of Aymon, which booke, if it be not played by the Company of the Fortune nor noe other company by my leane, I doe then bynd my selfe by theis presentes to repay the sayd some of forty shillinges upon the delivery of my booke att Christmas next, which shall be in the yeare of our Lord God 1603 and in the xlvijth yeare of the Raigne of the Queene.

per me ROBT. SHAA."

Proof is extant of the production of the play by a company of English actors at Amsterdam, but nothing is known of Robert Shaw or Shaa beyond the facts that he was an actor at Philip Henslowe's theatre, received many small loans from his employer, and occasionally assisted him in the management (Henslowe's Diary, pp. 96 et seq.). It does not appear that the play was published.

Thomas Heywood, in his Apology for Actors, 1612 (repr. in Somers' Tracts (1810), iii. 574—600), the Third Booke, argues that, among the benefits of plays, they "haue beene the discouerers of many notorious murders, long concealed from the eyes of the world." (sign. G, bk.; Somers, iii. 598). And after citing an instance of this 'at Lin in Norfolke,' and another of marauding Spaniards at 'a place called Perin [i.e. Penryn] in Cornwall,' being frightened into flight by a battle on the stage, he goes on with the following
case of the play of the *Four Sons of Aymon* and Renaud's murder (sign. G 2; Somers, iii. 599).

"Another of the like wonder happened at *Amsterdam* in Holland: A company of our *English* Comedians (well knowne) trauelling those Countreyes, as they were before the Burghers, and other the chiefe inhabitants, acting the last part of the 4 sons of *Aymon*, towards the last act of the history, where penitent *Renaudo*, like a common labourer, lined in disguise, vowing, as his last pensance, to labour & carry burdens to the structure of a goodly Church there to be erected, whose diligence the labourers enjoying, since, by reason of his stature and strength, hee did usuallly perfect more worke in a day, then a dozen of the best, (hee working for his conscience, they for their lucre,) whereupon, by reason his industry had so much disparaged their lining, conspired amongst themselves to kill him, waiting some opportunity to finde him asleepe, which they might easily doe, since the sorest labourers are the soundest sleepers, and industry is the best prepartuitive to rest. Hauing spy'd their opportunity, they droue a naile into his temples, of which wound immediately he dyed.

"As the Actors handled this, the audience might on a sodaine understand an out-cry and loud shrike in a remote gallery; and pressing about the place, they might perceiue a woman of great gravitie, strangely amazed, who, with a distracted & troubled braine, oft sighed out these words: 'Oh, my husband, my husband!' The play without further interruption proceeded; the woman was to her owne house conducted, without any apparent suspicion, euery one conjecturing as their fancies led them. In this agony shee some few daies languished; and on a time, as certaine of her well-disposed neighbours came to comfort her, one amongst the rest being Churchwarden, to him the Sexton posts, to tell him of a strange thing happening him in the ripping vp of a graue: 'See here (quoth he) what I haue found!' and shewes them a faire skull, with a great nayle pierst quite through the braine-pan; 'but we cannot conjecture to whom it should belong, nor how long it hath laine in the earth, the graue being confused, and the flesh consumed.' At the report of this accident, the woman, out of the trouble of her afflicted conscience, discovered a former murder. For 12 years ago, by drining that nayle into that skull, being the head of her husband, she had trecherously slaine him. This being publickly confest, she was arraigned, condemned, adiudged, and burned.

"But I draw my subiect to greater length then I purposed: these, therefore, out of other infinites, I haue collected both for their familiarnesse and lateness of memory."
SKETCH OF THE STORY.

The story opens with an account of the Court of Charlemagne at Paris, where nearly all the powerful Barons of the land are assembled, and among them the Duke Aymon of Dordon, with his four sons, Renaud, Alard, Guichard, and Richard. Duke Beuves of Aigremont, brother to Aymon, is absent from the court, and the Emperor is so enraged by this insult, that he vows to besiege Aigremont, unless Beuves promises to serve him next summer with a powerful army. Duke Naymes advises Charlemagne to send a messenger to Aigremont, and after some discussion, Lohier, the eldest son of the Emperor, is sent there with a hundred knights. He delivers his message insolently to Duke Beuves, who answers him with equal warmth, and a fight ensues, in which Lohier is slain by Duke Beuves; his body is conveyed to Charlemagne by the few survivors of his company and buried at Saint-Germain. The Emperor vows to revenge the death of his son by besieging Aigremont.

Meanwhile the Sons of Aymon have been created knights by Charlemagne, and Renaud has been presented with the wonderful horse Bayard.

When Aymon hears of the death of Lohier, he departs with his sons in haste to Dordon for fear of the Emperor's wrath. Great preparations are made at Paris for the campaign against Duke Beuves; while the army are on their way to Aigremont, a messenger informs them that Beuves is at Troyes, and is besieging that city with the assistance of his brothers, Doon of Nantueil and Gerard of

1 In the original chanson Enguerrand, the nephew of the Emperor, is first sent to Aigremont, he is slain, and Lohier then undertakes the message and shares the same fate. A knight called Enquerrard of Peronne is killed at Troyes by Beuves in this prose version.

2 In the chanson Aymon is banished by Charlemagne before the death of Lohier, and is received again into favour when the preparations for the attack on Aigremont are being carried out; his sons are then created knights.
Roussillon; 1 the inhabitants therefore implore the help of Charlemagne.

The fact of Beuves having summoned his brother Gerard of Roussillon to Aigremont, in order to march upon Troyes, has enlightened us as to the situation of Aigremont. M. Paris says:

"Le château Roussillon devait être plus éloigné de Troyes que l'autre, puisque c'est le duc Girart qui va trouver son frère pour marcher d'Aigremont sur Troyes. . . . La situation d'un village voisin de Chablis en Bourgogne, encore aujourd'hui nommé Aigremont, semble répondre aux indices que nous offre le texte des deux (romances) de Girart et des quatre fils Aimon."

The French army arrives at Troyes, where a battle takes place, and lasts until sundown; the armies then cease fighting, neither side having gained the victory. Next day Beuves and his chief Barons appear barefoot before the Emperor, and crave his pardon; which having been granted to them, peace is proclaimed.

Beuves promises to serve the Emperor at Paris on the feast of St. John next summer. On the way thither he is treacherously slain by Earl Guenes, who has obtained Charlemagne's permission to murder him.

At the next assembly of the Barons at Paris, Aymon and his four sons appear again.

Renaud plays chess with Bertholais, the nephew of Charlemagne, in the palace; they quarrel over the game, and Renaud, seizing the chess-board, deals Bertholais a blow with it which causes his death. 2 A great tumult thereupon arises in the palace, and the sons escape with much difficulty to Dordon, where they are received by their mother. They are soon obliged to quit Dordon for fear of the

1 This includes Aymon in the chanson, but no mention is made of his being present at the siege of Troyes in the prose version; he is supposed to be still at Dordon until after the death of Beuves.

2 This incident is differently related in the chanson. Renaud and Bertholais quarrel during their game of chess, and Bertholais strikes Renaud, who complains of this insult to the Emperor. Charlemagne takes his nephew's part, which causes Renaud to reply wrathfully to the Emperor, accusing him of the murder of his uncle, Duke Beuves. Charlemagne then deals Renaud a blow; the latter retires, meets Bertholais, and slays him with the chess-board.

This scene seems to be an imitation of the death of Baldwin (a son of Ogier), who is killed by Charlot (Charlemagne's son) with a chess-board, in the chanson of "Ogier le Danois."
Emperor's wrath and take refuge in the forest of Ardennes, where they build a castle, called Mountaynford (Montessor), and conceal themselves for several years. M. Paris says:

"Il existe encore au-dessus de Sedan et de Mezières un village nommé Château-Renaud situé sur le pénchant d'une haute montagne enfermée par les eaux de la Meuse vers le midi l'est et l'ouest. On distingue aujourd'hui difficilement sur la roche quelques ruines d'une forteresse, mais ces ruines avaient, il y a deux ans, plus de caractère, quand Malherbe notre grand poète écrivait au savant antiquaire Peiresc. "La principauté de Madame la princesse de Conti s'appelle Chasteau-Renaud, à deux lieues de Sedan et autant ruiné, ou l'on voit encore la tour de Maugis et l'estable de Bayard."

Charlemagne, as soon as he hears of the Sons' retreat, collects an army and besieges the castle;\(^1\) the old Duke Aymon fights against his children, as he has sworn to defend the Emperor's cause. Terms of peace are offered to Renaud if he will deliver up his brother Guichard, which he indignantly refuses to accept. The three gates of the castle are then surrounded by the Frenchmen, but this does not prevent the Sons from hunting daily in the forest. After the siege has lasted 14 months, Hernyer of Seveyne\(^2\) promises to take Renaud and his brother's prisoners, if Charlemagne will give him the castle as a reward. He then approaches the castle and begs Renaud to grant him shelter as an enemy of the Emperor's; Renaud believes his story, and allows him to sleep in the castle; when all have retired to rest, Hernyer lets down the drawbridge and signals to his men to enter. Fortunately for the Sons, Alard's horse wakes Renaud, who rouses his brothers, and they fight their enemies valiantly; Charlemagne sets a portion of the castle on fire; in the tumult Hernyer and his followers are slain by Renaud, who afterwards escapes on Bayard with his brothers into the Forest of Ardennes. They are pursued for some distance, but their enemies cannot overtake them. Duke Naymes advises Charlemagne to give up the campaign and disband his army. This being done the Emperor returns to Paris.

\(^1\) No mention is made here of the Espans pass, supposed to be inhabited by fairies. In the chanson Charlemagne warns his men against the dangers they may encounter in this ravine.

\(^2\) Hernyer of Lausanne; he is promised the town of Laon as well as the castle. The Espans pass is again alluded to when the Sons are chased from Montfort in the chanson.
Aymon on his way to Dordon, meets his Sons encamping in the Forest, when Renaud begs him to grant them peace, but Aymon only reproaches him for his conduct; they fight, and lose heavily on both sides, and the Sons with but 14 of their men are only saved by crossing a small river.

Aymon departs for Paris, taking with him the body of Esmenroi, a favourite knight of Charlemagne’s, who has been slain by Renaud. He gives the Emperor a full account of the battle, but he is not believed to have fought against his sons, and is received coldly by Charlemagne; he therefore leaves Paris and arrives at Dordon, where the Duchess blames him severely for his conduct towards his children.

Renaud and his brothers wander in the forest until they are nearly famished, and all their horses die, except Bayard, who thrives on roots; at last they determine to go to Dordon and entreat their mother to receive them. They are not recognised in the streets of the city as they pass through, and even their mother does not know who they are at first; but she discovers Renaud by a scar on his face, and welcomes them joyfully. They sit down to supper,¹ and while they are relating their adventures, Aymon enters the castle. He is furious with his Sons at first, but soon afterwards repents of his conduct towards them, and allows the Duchess to give them food and money; nevertheless, he will not break his promise to Charlemagne, so he retires into the forest while his Sons inhabit the palace.

Next day they depart from Dordon, and on their way meet Maug’s returning from the Court of Charlemagne, where he has managed to steal a quantity of gold, which he divides with Renaud and joins their company.

They journey towards Bordeaux, and from the description of the journey it is possible to determine the situation of Dordon, which is, as M. Paris says:

“La ville actuelle de Dourdon effectivement située dans cette partie de la Brie Françoise nommée le Hurepois, et d’où l’on doit passer dans le Gâtinais puis dans l’Orléanais, pour se rendre en Aquitaine.”

¹ In the chanson the four brothers enter the palace and sit down to supper before their mother recognises them.
On arriving at Bordeaux they offer their services to King John of Gascony, who is at war with the Saracen King Bege (Borgons); John willingly accepts their aid, and Renaud conducts the war so successfully, that Bege is taken prisoner and peace proclaimed. Renaud is then allowed to build the Castle of Montauban, and is soon afterwards married to King John's sister Clare; the wedding being solemnised with great ceremony at Montauban.

The Emperor on his way to Gallicia passes Bordeaux, he looks over the river Garonne, and marvels at the beauty and strength of the castle newly built there. On discovering that it belongs to Renaud, he sends Ogier to demand the four sons from John; when this request is refused, Charlemagne wishes to besiege the castle, but his Barons demur, as they are tired of war. At this juncture Roland arrives, and undertakes a campaign against the Saracens on his uncle Charlemagne's behalf. He besieges Cologne, takes the Saracen chief prisoner, and returns to the Emperor.

All Roland now requires is a good horse; for this reason Charlemagne proclaims a horse-race at Paris, and the best steed is to be bought for Roland. Renaud determines to race Bayard, so he and Maugis set out for their journey to Paris. Maugis, in order that they may not be recognised, changes Bayard from a black into a white horse, and makes Renaud look like a boy of fifteen.

Four miles outside Paris they meet Ogier and Naymes, whom the Emperor has sent to guard the way; the Barons, however, do not recognise them, and allow them to proceed. They arrive at Paris, and lodge in a shoemaker's house; but from some hints dropped by Renaud, the man discovers their secret, and vows to inform the Emperor, whereupon he is instantly slain by Renaud, who escapes with Maugis from the house. Bayard has his feet tied by Maugis, in order that he may appear to be lame until after the other horses have started, when he is unbound, and wins the race.

1 When Roland arrives at the Emperor's palace, he tells Charlemagne, "I am called Rowland of Bretagne, and I am the son of your sister and of the duke Mylon." These words accord with the history which makes Roland governor "des marches de Bretagne."
2 Saxons in the chanson.
3 This incident is omitted in the chanson.
easily. Renaud seizes Charlemagne's crown, which is exhibited as a prize, and telling the Emperor that he may look elsewhere for a horse for Roland, rides hastily from the city, and swimming over the river Seine, joins Maugis. They arrive at Melun, where they meet the other three Sons, and ride through Orleans to Montauban.1

The Emperor, determined to be revenged upon Renaud,2 assembles a mighty army at Paris, during Eastertide, and marches towards the Castle of Montauban,3 where they encamp. Roland and Oliver pitch their tent at Balencon, near the river, and go hawking one day, thinking they may leave the camp in safety, but Renaud discovers their absence, goes forth against Charlemagne's army, which he surprises, and finally, having captured the golden dragon from Roland's tent, returns to his castle with much plunder.4

The Emperor, in despair of ever taking the castle, despatches a messenger5 to ask King John to deliver up to him the four Sons; after a long discussion with his Barons6 John consents to betray them, which he does by sending them unarmed to the plain of Vaucouleurs, where the Barons of Charlemagne await to take them prisoners. The Sons discover the treachery of King John when they

1 In the chanson Renaud joins Maugis at Champeaux, they reach Monthery, and then journey through Poitiers and Orleans to Montauban.
2 It is on the Emperor's return from an expedition against the Saxons, where he has killed the chief Gutechim, that he collects an army to besiege Montauban in the chanson. This incident is omitted in the prose version.
3 In the chanson Charlemagne marches first to Montbendel, which he surrounds with his immense army; he admires the strength of the castle, which, he says, is finer than Roche Guyon, Paris, or Orleans; "that is nothing," says Ogier, "Montauban is a hundred times stronger." Charlemagne subdues the Castle of Montbendel, he hopes to conquer all Gascony in the same manner without bloodshed. The siege is then directed towards Montauban.
4 This incident is not mentioned in the chanson.
5 The name of Girard the Spaniard, who advises Charlemagne to demand the surrender of the Sons, and of Gainemark, who undertakes the message, are mentioned in the chanson. When the messenger arrives, King John attempts to strike him, threatening to have him hung; his barons interfere. John then consents to consider Charlemagne's proposals, and keeps the messenger three days for his answer. This incident is very differently related in the prose version, where John receives the herald courteously, and tells him, "ye must tari here a seven night" for his answer.
6 Among the Barons who argue with John for the deliverance of the Sons to Charlemagne is the Lord of Montbendel, who in speech mentions the surrender of his castle, referring to that portion of the siege by Charlemagne which is omitted in the prose version.
arrive at Vaucoules, but they nevertheless fight bravely against an enormous host of adversaries, and finally gain a respite through the kindness of Ogier. Meanwhile Maugis, who is at Montauban, hears from King John's secretary of the plot against his cousins, and sets off for Vaucoules, where he arrives in time to rescue them. King John on receiving the news of their rescue, flies to an abbey in the wood of the Serpent, where he seeks refuge for a time, but is discovered by Roland, who takes him prisoner. John, in terror of his life, contrives to send a messenger to Renaud, who is now at Montauban, beseeching him to come to his assistance. Renaud and his brothers ride forth to meet Roland, and a battle ensues, in which Renaud is victorious, and rescues King John, but Richard remains a prisoner in the hands of Roland. Maugis, in order to save Richard from the cruelty of Charlemagne, departs for the Emperor's tent disguised as a poor pilgrim, and arrives before Roland has returned with Richard. Maugis completely deceives the Emperor, who orders food to be given to him as a holy man. Roland then enters the tent, and presents Richard to Charlemagne, who declares that he shall be hung without delay. Richard recognises Maugis, and is therefore certain of escape from the hands of the Emperor. Maugis then leaves the tent, and retires hastily to Montauban; he orders Renaud and his two brothers to arm themselves, and with an army to proceed to the tent of Charlemagne.

Renaud willingly consents, and proceeds to Monfaucon with his folk, where they encamp in a wood near the gallows which are being prepared for Richard, but unfortunately they fall asleep from extreme weariness. Meanwhile Charlemagne commands the execution of Richard, and orders several of his Barons to perform the deed, but they all refuse on various pretexts, until Ripus of Riplemond undertakes the duty. Richard is led before the gallows, and believing that there is no chance of escape for him, begs for time in which to pray, and confesses to a priest. Just as he has finished his confession, and is prepared for death, his brothers (who have been

1 When Maugis appears before the Emperor, and craves for food, he asks Charlemagne to put it in his mouth, as a dream has led him to believe that thereby he will be saved from all his sufferings. Charlemagne consents to this; no mention is made of the palmer's staff in the chanson.
awakened by the sagacious Bayard) appear, and a fight ensues, in which Ripus is killed by Renaud, who gives his armour to Richard; the latter, with four hundred men, presents himself before Ogier, who is rejoiced over the victory of the Sons. Richard afterwards meets Charlemagne, they fight, Renaud and his men join in the battle, and after a prolonged skirmish, the Sons enter the Emperor's pavilion with three thousand men, and bear away the golden eagle, which Renaud conveys to Montauban. Maugis is left alone with the Emperor's army, and fights bravely for his liberty, but is overpowered by Oliver, who presents him to Charlemagne, just as the latter is complaining of his subjects' infidelity to him in allowing the Sons of Aymon to escape. The Emperor vows to slay Maugis without delay. The Sons meanwhile have returned to Montauban, where they discover the absence of their cousin. Renaud, in great anxiety for his fate, mounts Bayard, and goes to the river Balencon; he meets there two pages from the Emperor's camp, who tell him that Maugis is in Charlemagne's hands. Renaud vows to rescue him next day.

The Emperor commands his Barons to prepare a gallows on which to hang Maugis; but Naymes begs him to delay the execution until the following day, and Charlemagne consents to this, on condition that Maugis will promise not to escape. The twelve peers give their pledges for his safety, and prepare to watch over him all night; but Maugis, who has been put in irons, nevertheless contrives to charm all his guardians to sleep, and then departs, taking with him the Emperor's sword, and those of Roland and Oliver, with much treasure to Montauban. On the way thither he meets Renaud at the river-side of Balencon, and the cousins journey together to the castle, where much feasting and rejoicing takes place. Richard shows Maugis the golden eagle which they have captured, and it is set up on the high tower of the castle. Naymes and Ogier are sent to Montauban by Charlemagne to demand the surrender of his sword, in return for which a truce shall be granted them for two years. Renaud consents to these conditions, and, moreover, goes back with the Barons to the Emperor's camp. He is conducted before Charlemagne, who vows he shall be slain, but a compromise is effected, in
which Renaud and Roland are doomed to fight a duel on the morrow. At Montaucon the battle begins, but the final contest between the heroes is prevented by the appearance of a miraculous cloud, and Roland goes with Renaud to Montauban as his prisoner.

Charlemagne besieges the castle, but in the night Maugis, through the medium of a charm, carries the Emperor asleep to Montauban; he then leaves the castle, and goes over the river Dordogne into a hermitage, where he lives poorly, doing penance for his sins. The Sons discover the presence of the Emperor in Montauban still asleep, they search for Maugis, but are bitterly afflicted when they hear he has left them. Charlemagne will not consent to peace unless Maugis is given up to him, but Renaud allows him to return to his tent unharmed with the Barons. Charlemagne, vowing he will starve the Sons into submission, has the castle surrounded by his men, and although Renaud several times repulses the enemy, he can gain no advantage over them. Great famine prevails in Montauban, and all the horses, except Bayard, are slain for food. Renaud, as a last resource, goes to the tent of Duke Aymon and implores him to give his starving children food. Aymon finally consents, and sends provisions into the castle by means of the engines used in the assaults on Montauban, which he fills with food instead of stones. The Emperor discovers that Aymon has been befriending his children, and dismisses him from his army for this offence.

The Sons are again reduced to starvation, but are finally saved by an old man in the castle, who shows Renaud a secret passage from Montauban into the wood of the Serpent. All the people abandon the castle and go to the monastery, where Renaud's friend Bernard dwells; and after obtaining food and wine from him they depart for Arden (or Dordon, in the French prose version), where they are joyfully received by the people of the town.¹

Charlemagne quickly discovers the flight of the Sons from Montauban and the secret passage; he immediately orders his army to besiege Arden (Dordon). As they hasten towards the castle, Renaud

¹ In the chanson the Sons are said to go to Tremogne, not Arden or Dordon. This Tremogne is the ancient name for Dortmund in Westphalia, which position would account for the fact that Charlemagne passes Liege to go to Paris; from Dordon this would be impossible.
perceives their approach, and at once orders a number of his knights to arm and accompany him in his attack upon the Emperor. Renaud and his army are obliged, however, to retreat after a fierce skirmish with the enemy; and having captured Duke Richard of Normandy, they take him prisoner into the castle. The Peers all implore Charlemagne to make peace with the Sons for fear they should slay Duke Richard; but the Emperor is still persistent in his refusal. King John at this time dies in the castle. Maugis within his hermitage has a dream of the distress of his kinsmen, and he sets forth towards Arden. On the way he encounters two merchants, who have been robbed by thieves in the wood; Maugis slays the robbers and gives back the plunder to the merchants, and he hears from them of the condition of the Sons, and hastens towards their castle, which he enters in the guise of a pilgrim, and is served with food as a stranger. Renaud towards night recognises him, and great joy is made over his arrival. Next day he departs for the Holy Land. Renaud causes a gallows to be erected on the walls of his castle, in order to hang Duke Richard; seeing this Charlemagne is persuaded by his Barons to send Duke Naymes to the castle with terms of peace; the conditions being that Renaud should give up Bayard to the Emperor and depart to the Holy Land in poor array, begging his bread as a pilgrim, while his brothers keep all his lands during his absence. Renaud accepts these conditions, and after clothing himself poorly and commending his wife and children to the protection of Duke Richard, departs from his castle. Charlemagne takes possession of Bayard, and on his way to Paris stays at Liege, where he orders the horse to be thrown into the river Meuse, with a millstone round his neck. This command is carried out, but Bayard contrives to break the stone, and swimming to land, gallops away unharmed into the forest of Ardennes.

Renaud arrives at Constantinople and lodges with a holy woman, who tells him there is another pilgrim in the house lying sick; Renaud goes to see the pilgrim, and finds his cousin Maugis. They meet joyfully, and after feasting together set forth for Jerusalem. They find a large army surrounding the Holy City; on inquiring the cause of this, they are told that the Admiral of Persia has taken the
city by treason, and it is being besieged by the Christians. Renaud and Maugis pass through the Christian encampment, and set up a small tent for themselves. Next morning the enemy advances towards their tent, which in the confusion of battle is overthrown. Renaud mounts a wall near by, and with a large fork or tent pole defends the way, and assisted by Maugis, slays numbers of the enemy. Earl Rames approaches the two pilgrims, and on learning their history welcomes them with delight; he provides them with rich clothing and armour, giving the command of his army to Renaud. King Thomas, who is a prisoner within Jerusalem, wonders why so much feasting and rejoicing is taking place amidst his army. Next day the Admiral renews his attack on the Christians, the Saracen King Margary is slain by Renaud, and after a fierce battle the Saracens are discomfited, and fly towards the city pursued by Earl Rames. Renaud contrives by placing a large beam under the portcullis to keep open the gate into Jerusalem, and the Christian army enters and takes possession of the city. The Admiral vows to slay King Thomas unless Renaud will grant him terms of peace, and allow of his safe conduct back to Persia; to these conditions Renaud consents, and peace is concluded amidst general rejoicings. King Thomas prepares a ship, which he fits out for Renaud and Maugis, in order that they may return to France. After eight months at sea they arrive at Palermo. King Simon of that town receives them gladly, and tells them how his lands are daily wasted by the Persian Admiral. Renaud and Maugis vow to assist him against his enemy. They encounter the Admiral and rout his forces, compelling him to retire utterly discomfited. Soon after this Renaud and Maugis take leave of King Simon and journey by sea to Rome,

1 In the chanson Renaud mounts a mule and pursues the enemy, while Maugis showers stones upon the Saracens.

2 Geffroi, orig.

3 No mention is made of King Thomas in the chanson; Geffroi of Nazareth is in command of the Christian army, and is subsequently made King of Jerusalem at the conclusion of the war. When Renaud enters Jerusalem he goes straight to the Holy Sepulchre, where he and Maugis offer their devotions.

4 In the chanson this incident of Renaud's encounter with the Persian Admiral is entirely omitted. They take ship at Acre and go straight to Brindisi, whence Renaud journeys to France, and arrives at Tremogne (Dortmund) in Westphalia. Maugis retires to his hermitage.
where they confess to the Pope, and having received his benediction depart for France. They are joyfully received at Arden by the three brothers, and from them Renaud hears of the death of his wife Clarisse. He takes his two children and Maugis to Montalban, where the people of that town welcome them gladly. Maugis then takes leave of Renaud and departs for his hermitage, where thirteen years afterwards he dies. Renaud prepares his two sons for their journey to Paris to be presented to Charlemagne, and sends them to the Court with an escort of five hundred knights.\(^1\) They arrive there, and are graciously received by Charlemagne, who confers on them the honour of knighthood, and raises them to the post of carvers at his table. This rouses the jealousy of Constant and Rohart, the two sons of Foulques, whose father was slain at Vaucouleurs by Renaud, and they determine to insult Aymonet and Yon, in order to raise a quarrel. One day Charlemagne presents Yon with a valuable knife; after receiving this gift Yon chances to push Constant with his elbow as he passes him; and Constant, seizing this opportunity to quarrel, calls him the son of a traitor, and challenges him to fight.\(^2\) The Emperor endeavours to prevent the combat, and orders Constant to ask pardon of Yon; but the sons of Renaud both implore him to grant them the satisfaction of a duel. Charlemagne consents, and orders the fight to take place on the Isle of our Lady, within Paris. He also sends word to Renaud to appear at Court, in order to witness the battle between his sons and the sons of Foulques. Renaud arrives at Paris on the appointed day with his three brothers and a large company of knights. Griffon of Auteville lies in ambush near the battle-field ready to help the sons of Foulques in case of their discomfiture. This plot is revealed to Renaud, who commands Richard to take his men to the Isle to protect his sons in case of treachery on the part of Griffon.

The Emperor and his Peers witness the battle, which lasts until all the four champions are grievously wounded; Aymonet finally

\(^1\) In the chanson Renaud accompanies his sons to Paris.

\(^2\) This incident is differently related in the chanson. Charlemagne calls Aymonet and Yon to bring him wine; during the meal Constant and Rohart throw down Yon and break the Emperor's cup; in the uproar the sons of Foulques challenge the sons of Renaud.
compels Constant to yield himself prisoner, and presents him to the Emperor. Yon slays Rohart, and his brother Constant is hung by command of the Emperor.

After Aymonet and Yon are healed of their wounds, they take leave of Charlemagne, and return with their father to Montauban. Renaud divides his possessions between his two children, and clothed as a pilgrim departs from Montauban never to return again. After wandering in the woods for many days he arrives at Cologne, where the Church of St. Peter is being built. He works there as a labourer, and through his wonderful strength gains the approbation of the chief mason. The other labourers are so jealous of him that they vow to kill him, and one day, as Renaud is asleep under an archway they slay him and throw his body into the river Rhine in a sack, and answer the questions of the master mason as to Renaud's disappearance with jests. A wonderful miracle is then manifested: the fish of the river support the body of Renaud upon the surface of the water, torches appear round the body, and angels are heard singing in the night. The Archbishop with his clergy come to take the body out of the water, and on opening the sack they discover the corpse of the lost workman of St. Peter's Church. The labourers then confess their crime and pray for mercy; the Archbishop contents himself with dismissing them from his service unpunished.

The corpse is laid in a coffin to be buried, but it rises slowly and is borne by invisible hands out of the church into a cart, which passes out of Cologne and carries the body to a little town called Croine, followed by the Archbishop and his clergy. There it is laid in a small chapel, and the Archbishop uncovers the face of Renaud, in order that he may be recognised by the people collected there.

A pilgrim appears before the brothers of Renaud, and tells them of the miracles at Cologne. They set forth for that city, and then go to Croine, where they discover the corpse of their brother; they reveal themselves to the Archbishop, who has the body of Renaud richly entombed at Cologne, where, as we are told, it rests unto this day—the memory of Renaud the Martyr being yearly commemorated by a service held in his honour.

1 Tremogne in the chanson.
syre, where shall I be hanged, tell me? / 'certes,' sayd charlemagn, 'at the gibet of mountfawcon; & there shall your breder may se you, & mawgys your cosyn'/  

4 'Sire, it is no reyson that suche a man as I am shold be hanged / but make peas wyth vs, & ye shall doo wysly / & yf ye doo not soo, ye shal sere repent it, as I trowe.' And whan mawgis had herde all that he  
8 wold here, he made no lenger taryeng / but he went out of the pavyllion & said no worde / and whan he was out of it, he began to walke so grete a pas that no horse myght not have folowed hym, and passed throug  
12 the wood of the serpent, & dyd someche that he cam to montalban, where he fonde Reynau'd & his folk, that wayted for hym / And whan reynawd saw hym com wythout richard, he was full sory, so that he fell  
16 doun in a swonne / and alard & guychard toke him vp & sayd to hym, 1 'Fair broder, ye doo as a childe / ye ought not to make suche sorow' / 'holde your peas, traytours,' sayd reynawd / 2 'for ye have lost the beste  
20 knyght of the 3 worle, 2 For I see Mawgys come alone,  
4 wherfore I beleve that Richard is deed / for if he were a lyve, Mawgis wold have brought him wyth hym, For he never myssed of no thyng that he toke in  
24 hand' / And whan alard & guychard vnderstode thise wordes / thei toke therof so grete a sorow that they fell both doun in a swonne to therth / And whan they were com agen to theymself, they made so grete sorowe  
28 that it was pyte for to see ; and this hangyng, cam there Mawgis. And whan he saw the grete sorowe that his cosins made, he was wrothe for it, And sayd to them,  

1 Sire Regnault beau frere, F. orig. q. iv.  
2–2 dieu vous confonde car par vostre defaulle a este perdu le meilleur chevalier du monde, car se vous leussiez suiuy ; il neust mye este prins mais vous ny ousastes mye aler pour crainte. Et aussi vous ne vouliez point que Je y alasie pour le secourir car Je y eusse bien este a temps. Or lavons nous perdu ne Jamais ne le verrons, F. orig. q. iv.  
3 word, orig.  
4 Fol. T. viii.  

CHRL. ROM. XI.
Mawgis is angry when he sees them, and enquires why they make such sorrow, and tells them that they must rescue Richard by force of arms.

Reynawde is comforted by this news, and no longer fears for his brother's safety.

The Sons and Mawgis arm themselves, and depart for Monfaucon;

'What eyleth you, Fye cosyns, that ye make so evill chere' / 'Alas, mawgis,' sayd Reynawde / 'what is doon of our broder richard?' 'Cosin,' sayd mawgis, 'richard is yet in prison; but charlemaghe hath sayd that he shall make hym to be hanged at the gybet of mountfawcon / And hath sayd that he shal not kepe hym longe alyve, leest ye & I shold rescue hym. And here is xx.\(^1\) li of money that charlemagn hath gyve me in hys pavylyon, 8 and made me have bothe mete & drinke at my plaisur.\(^2\) Now shall it be seen yf ye love Rychard, and yf ye be a goode knyghte or not; for ye must socoure & delyver hym by force of armes, or elles he shall deye, for all 12 the world shall not kepe hym otherwyse therfro.'

Reynawd was well recomforted when he herd maugis speke;\(^3\) & after he sayd / 'sith that it is so that Richard is yet alive, yf I had but myself, my 16 brethern & mawgis, yet sholde I kepe richard fro deth, mawgre the power of charlemaghe' / and thenne mawgys, wythout ony long abidyng, toke of his cope & his hode, and toke an herbe & ete it, and anone the 20 swellyng went fro him\(^4\) / and whan he was armed, he presented hymself to reynawd\(^5\) / and incontynent al his bredern put theymself in armes / And anone they toke their waye towards mountfawcon / And 24 whan they were come to a bowe shotte nyghe from it, Reynawde sayd to his folke / 'Lorde, yf ever ye loved me / thynke for to doo now so moche that my brother rycharde may be rescued from this shamfull 28 deth. For I promyse you that I shall brynge hym wyth me, or elles I and my brethern & Mawgys shall deye wyth hym'\(^7\) / 'Syre,' sayd his men, 'doubte not of vs / for we shall doo our devoyre' / 'brother,' sayd 32

\(^1\) trente, F. orig. q. iv. \(^2\) au pres de luy, F. orig. q. iv. \(^3\) ses paroles, F. orig. q. iv. back. \(^4\) et puis se arma, F. orig. q. iv. back. \(^5\) moult honorablename, F. orig. q. iv. \(^6\) Fol. T. viii. back. \(^7\) et ils sont tieulx comme vous scaues, F. orig. q. iv. back.
CHAP. XIV.] HOW THE SONS GO FORTH TO MONFAUCON. 323

thennen Alarde, 'lete vs lighte here doun / and lete vs hide ourself within that bushe that we se yonder; for yf we were seen, the frenshemen myght kylle our 4 broder rychad or ever they wolde come.' 'Broder,' sayd Reynawde / 'ye speke wysely' / and thenne they lighted doun a fote, and put theymself in a bushemente within a wode that was nyghe Mountfawcon, 2 Reynawd at the right side of it / Alard at the lefte side, and wyth hym Guycharde & Mawgys /

Well, ye have herde how thei were sent to the playn of valcolours, and theayne that Reynawde & his bredern suffred; and thenne howe they wente & socoured kynge yon of Gascoyn, that had betrayed theim / And how Reynawde dyde fyghte wyth Rowland, wherof he was sore trayvellled / and 16 had ben all redy thre dayes wythoute slepe, and therefore ye ought not be merveyelled yf Reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis fell a slepe / and, to saye the trouth, assone as Reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis 20 were embushed ynder the sapyn trees, thei fell in to so harde a slepe that thei forgate rychard / Now god, for his pite / have pite vpon him, 2 and kepe hym 2 / For otherwyse he muste deye / 24

Now shall we telle you of Charlemagne, that was in his pavylion. he called to hym the duke Naymes & rychard of normandy, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes, what counseyll gyve you me? ye knowe 28 that rychard the sone of aymyn is of grete power / I fere me that reynawd shal com to socour him whan I shall sende hym for to be hanged, & therfore I must sende 3 company for to withstande reynawde, his bredern, & Mawgis.' And thus as the kyng and the duke Naymes spake togyder, he loked before hym & saw they put them- selves in ambush in a wood near Monfaucon.

1 de sappin, F. orig. q. iv. back.
2-2 omitted, F. orig. q. iv. back.
3 ung tieul homme de ma part, F. orig. q. v.
4 Fol. V. i.
Berenger of Valois / and called hym, & sayd to hym / 'Berenger, ye are of my men, For ye hold of me scotlond & wales / ye oughte to come serve me in Fraunce wyth all your pouer every yere ones whan 4 I have nede. I shall now quyte you & relese vnto you all the servyse that ye owe me, to you & to your eyres for evermore, soo that ye wyll take 1 Richard, the sone of Aymon, 2 and see that he be hanged & strangeled 8 at Mountfawcon. 2 And yf Reynawde com there for to rescue hym / I praye you that ye wyll take in hande my quarell.' 'Sire,' sayd Berenger, 'I see well now that ye love me but a lityll / whan ye sende me to doo 12 suche a dede. it were to me a grete shame yf I dyd it; for no thynge that is to my disworshippe, I wyll not doo wyth my good wylle / and also ye ought not to conseyle me to it, nor suffre me to doo so. 16 Yett have I lever to serve you, as mi dute is for to doo, than that I shold doo the same that ye wolde put me to.' And when Charlemain sawe that Berenger wold not doo it / he called to hym therle Guydellon, & sayd 20 to hym, 'Guydellon, ye be my man, & holdeth Bavire of me; and ye ought to serve me at ony tyme that I call you, with thre 3 thousande men / yf ye wyll goo hange Richarde, 2 the sone of aymon / I shall make you 24 free, & 2 I shall gyve you ye & eyte of mascon' / 'I wyll not doo it,' sayd therle Guydellon; 'but I telle you for certeyn that Richard shall have noo harme if I may helpe hym fro it to my power.' Thenne sayd Charle- 28 magn, 'goe oute of my sighte / for ye be no good man' / And thenne he sayd to rychard, 'by god, yet shall ye be hanged in dispite of theym' / Thenne called Charlemagne Oger the dane, & sayd to hym, 'Ogier, ye is 32 be my man. it is shewed vnto me that ye dyd 4 the

1 aillez pendre richart, F. orig. q. v.
2-2 omitted, F. orig. q. v. back.
3 deux, F. orig. q. v.
4 Fol. V. i. back.
other daye treyson agenste me in the playn of Val-
colours, for love of Reynawde / Now shall it be seen now
yf it is true or not / Yf ye wyll goo hange Richarde, I
shall gyve you the cyte of Lion. And I shall holde
you quyte of all the servyse that ye owe me, & your
eyres also, for evermore.’  ‘By the feith that I owe to
you, sire, I shall not doo it, for ye wote how Richarde
8 is my cosyn germany ; and I telle you, that who soever
shall hange Rycharde 1 the sone of Aymon, 1 I defy hym,
and I shall helpe Reynawde wyth all my power’ /
‘Go fro me,’ sayd charlemagn, ‘goodys curse have ye /
12 nevertheles, by my berde, yet shall he be hanged’ /
And whan he had sayd so / he called to hym the
bysshop Turpyn, & sayd to hym, ‘Ye bysshop, I shall
make you pope 1 of rome 1 yf ye wyll hange Rychard.’
16 ‘syre,’ sayd the bysshop Turpyn / ‘What saye ye /
ye knowe well that I am a preest / and ye wyll that I
shold hange folke / yf I dyd so, I shold lese my masse,
& be regulet / and also ye knowe well that Richarde
20 is my cosyn / wolde ye that I sholde commytte treyson
vpon my kynsmen / certes, it were agenst reyson’ /
‘Soo helpe you god,’ sayd Charlemagn, 2 ‘ye leve it
neyther for kynred ne nor for masse, but as a cowarde ;
24 ye leve it only for fere that your crowne sholde be
bete.’ 2

Thenne called Charlemagn, Salamon of breten, &
sayd to hym, ‘Salamon, ye ye knowe well that ye
28 be my man, & that ye holde breten of me / I shall
gyve you y 2 duchie of Ansom, yf ye wyll hange
Richarde, 1 the sone of Aymon.’ 1 ‘Syr,’ answerde Sal-
mon / ‘yf it playse you to commaunde me ony other
32 thynge, I wyll be redy to doo it wyth a good wyll, but
this I wyll not doo / And I telle you for certeyn, that

1–1 omitted, F. orig. q. v. back.
2–2 vous le laissez plus pourquoy est vostre parent que
pour dieu ne pour vostre messe, F. orig. q. v. back.
Charlemagne turns towards Roland, and tells him to see that the traitor is hung.

Roland also refuses because of his promise to Richard.

The Emperor rises in great wrath, and addresses his barons.

rycharde shall have noo harme, yf I maye’ / ‘Salamon,’ sayd the kyng / ‘ye be a traytour, sith that ye wyll not doo my commaundement.’ And after this he sayd, ‘Rycharde, I wyll that ye 1know well that ye 4 shall be hanged in dyspyte of all thy kynsmen’ / ‘Sir,’ sayd Richard / ‘peraventure it shall be otherwyse than ye wene.’ and thenne Charlemagn tourned hymself towards Rowlande, and sayd to hym / ‘Fayr neewewe, 8 goo & see that he be hanged, I praye you / for it is well reyson that ye doo thosyfye, sith that all the frenshemen have faylled me / & also ye have taken hym / wherfore ye must nedes hange hym; and I 12 shall gyve you Coleyn vpon the ryn, & soo many other cou??treys that ye shall have ynoughe.’ ‘Syr,’ answerd Rowlande, ‘yf I dyde this, I shold be taken for a traytour / For I have answered Richarde a fore 16 that I toke hym, that he shold have noo harme of his body; and yf ye make hym deye, no man shall never truste me vpon my feyth / Wherfore I praye the xii peres of Fraunce, that none of theym wyll take the 20 charge vpon hym for to see hym hanged / for yf he were hanged / I sholde be dyffamed / And I promyse you, that who shall hange Richarde, I shall goo to Reynawde / and shall put myself in hys pryson / and 24 yf he wyll pardonne me his broders deth, I shall helpe hym vndre my othe agenste all men wyth thre thousande fyghtyng men, well arrayed on horsbacke’ / ‘Neewewe,’ sayd Charlemagne, 2‘the devyll spede you / 28 ye ben all false vnto me.’

And when Charlemagn sawe that he myght not bringe his wyll aboute 3for to hange Rycharde, 3 he was soo wrothe 4that he shoke for angre, 4 and rose 32 vpon his fete, & sayd / ‘Lordes, ye knowe well that I

1 Fol. V. ii.
2–2 de dieu soyes vous mauldit, F. orig. q. vi.
3–3 omitted, F. orig. q. vi.
4–4 quil ne seauoit que faire, F. orig. q. vi.
am the sone of kyng Pepyn, & of the quene Bethe. to whom he
my fader was norished in Fraunce, and I fled in relates the story
of Spayn to Alaffre vpon the see; and there I dyd
4 many merveilles of armes that I was made knyght,
& dyde conquere salienne, my love, that forsake XV.
kynges bering crowne for my sake; and she cam with
me in to¹ Fraunce,² and thenne I was crowned kyng
8 accordyng to the right of my patrymonye³ / and
thenne I dyde wed the sayd lady galiene wyth right
grete ioye, & wende to have had my royame in peas / but the same day that I was crowned, the xii peres of
12 Fraunce purposed to have made me deye at cristmasse
nexte folowyng / but our lord sent me an angell / and
made hym to telle me that I shold goo hide myselfe /
the whiche I dyde so, & I durste not saye agenste it /
16 nor I wyst not where I sholde hide me / but god wold
that I sholde fynde Bason, a grete thef / that brought
me in to a pytte; and this hangyng, men conspired my
deth / but Bason⁴ shewed me all togyder, & thoruge
20 his ayde I toke myn enmyes; and I punysshed them
afterwarde at my wylle; and so shall I do by you / yf
there be ony that wyll do contrary to my wyll.
And I am delibered to enquire ech of you by this
24 maner, for to see who shall be false or true to me.' and says he shall
Whan Charlemagne had sayd this, he tored toward the judge of their
sone of Oodon, & sayd to hym / 'Escouff, com fidelity by their
forthe! I have brought you to grete honour, & we
28 have norysshed you full derely. ye knowe that ye
holde Langres of me; yet shall I doo to you moche
more good than I have doon, for I shall gyve to you
therdomes of mountferaunt & of Clermont, so that
32 ye will goo hang that hourson rychard! / 'Sir,' sayd
escouff, 'ye wote well that moreoedon holde all the

¹ la doulce France, F. orig. q. vi. back.   ² Fol. V. ii. back.
³ omit. F. orig. q. vi. back.   ⁴ Bazyn, in text orig.
lond that ye speke of, and I had never no\(^1\) thing therof / but I am felaw wyth Rowland in armes; and
whan I shall be lord of that londe my father holdeth
in his hande, I shall fulfyll your commaundement\(^2\) / 4
'By saynt Denys of Fraunce, ye must goo see that he
be hanged,' sayd charlemain, \(^3\)& I shall make you
lord of moo londes.'\(^4\) 'Sir,' sayd estorfawde / 'is it
erneste that ye speke?' 'ye,' sayd Charlemagn. 'By 8
my hede, syre,' sayd Estorfawde / 'Ye wolde not be
wyth me for to see Rycharde hange, for halfe 4 of your
royame' / Whan the kyng herde that he was thus
reproved / he toke a staff, & caste it after Estorfawde\(^5\) / 12
but Estorfawd sterte from his place, and \(^6\)the staff
brake in peces agenste a post / And whan the xii.
peres sawe that / they wente all out of the pavylion
of Charlemagn. And whan that charlemagn retorned 16
hym / and sawe that none of all the xii peres wolde
abyde there wyth hym, Thenne he sayd to the duke
Naymes, 'where be my xii peres goon?' 'Syr,' sayd
the duke Naymes / 'they ben all goon oute of your 20
pavylion / and not wythout a cause, for it becometh not
to suche a 3 noble kynge as ye be, for to smyte his
barons / for ye shold be sore blamed.'

Thenne whan Charlemagn sawe this, he called to 24
hym Rychard of montrolonde,\(^7\) & sayd to hym /
'Com forthe, Rycharde de montrolonde' / here what I
shall tell you. ye know well that ye be one of theym
that I love best in this worlde, but ye must doo 28
one thynge at my request / It is that ye wil goo hange
Richard, the sone of Aymon, at the gybet of mount-
fawcon' / Thenne Rychard of montrolonde answerde,
Sir, I shall do so wyth a good wyll / for I am your man, & soo I outhe not to refuse your commandement / but, by my soule, syre emperour / yf ye wyll that I goo hange Richard, ye shall come wyth me with a thousand knyghtes well armed / and I shall hange hym where soever it playse you / And yf Reynawd & his bredern com there to rescue / I shall ieparde

8 my owne body for to save yours. Now see yf ye wyll do this or no, for none otherwyse wyll I not goo there one fote.’ ‘Goo from me, gloton,’ sayd Charlemagn / ‘goddys curse have thou’ /

12 The kynge thenne called to hym the duke Naymes, and sayd to hym, ‘What counseylle gyve you’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd the duke Naymes, ‘goode / yf ye wyll beleve me.’ Syre, ye wote that Reynawde, his brethern, and Mawgis, are of the best knyghtes of Fraunce / as every man knoweth well / this were hath lasted ryght longe, For it is wel xvi. yeres that it began fyrste / and many a noble knyghte hath be slayn for the same /

20 yf it playse you, ye shall sende worde to Reynawde, to Alarde, Guychard, & Mawgis, that they wyll becom your men / and ye shall deliver agen vnto theym their brother Rychard &lyve, and that ye wyll doo make reynawde & alarde of the xii. peres of Fraunce. And when Reynawd & his bredern shall see that ye have doon to theim soo grete worship, they shall serve you wyth good herte, and so that ye shall co[n theim grete thanke for it / and I ensure you ye shall be the more dred & more redoubted for cause of them. and yf ye have ones the four bredern & Mawgis their cosin to your frendes / there shall be no prynce in all crysten-dome so hardly that dare move werre ageinst you / and I promyse you, sire, that the more ye kepe this werre ageste theym / the more shall ye lose therby / and,
moreover, they be all of our house by theyr fader. Aymon / this knowe ye well / and therfore I can not nate theim by noo wise' / 'Naymes,' sayd charlemagne, 'I wyll not doo so / for they all have doon amys 4 agenst1 me, and so shall I doo hange Rycharde, bi the feyth of my body' / 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'ye shall not doo so, & god wil, For he is of grete lynage, & of our lynage / for we sholde never maye suffre it 8 nor endure, and ye also sholde be blamed full sore for it. But & ye wyll make hym deye, I shalgyve you better counselylle' / 'Telle me how,' sayd Charlemagn / 'and I shal doo it / yf it semeth me good' / 'Syr,' sayd 12 the duke Naymes, 'sith it playse you that Rycharde shall deye, lete hym be caste in to a depe prison vnder the erthe, and make hym to be kepte surely 2 there in that he scape not awaye2 / and commaunde 3 that noo 16 mete at all be broughte to hym / and so shall he deye for hungre. And ye shall not be blamed yf ye doo soo' / 'Naymes,' sayd Charlemagne / 'ye doo iape wyth me / I knowe it well / whan ye doo telle me this / Ye knowe 20 well that Maugys is to grete a nygremancer / For I shold never maye ke ye Rycharde in pryson, but that mawgys wolde have hym outhe thorugh he crafte / and therfore I wyll not doo as ye saye' / Thenne came 24 Ogyer the dane / and sayd to the duke Naymes, 'Ye make to longe a sermon; lete the kynge doo wyth it as it playseth hym; For the more that ye praye him, and the worse shall he doo / but he shall make peas whan 28 he see that he canne none otherwyse doo / But this daye shall be seen who loveth Rycharde74 / And whan Ogyer had sayd this / he wente outhe of the pavylion, and Escouff wyth hym, and Rycharde of Normandy, the 32 bysshop Turpyn, and Guydellon of Bavyre / and made

1 aienst, in text. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. q. vii. back. 3 Fol. V. iv. 4 et combien que son lignaige soit luy tourne dune part et se Il y a nul qui luy face mal, je les defie de moy, F. orig. q. vii. bk.
their folke to be armed. And when they were armed, they were well xii thousande men. And thenne ogier beganne to crie wyth a hie voys / 1 Now shall it be 4 seen who shall be so hardy for to lede Rycharde the sone of Aymon the sone of Aymon to hangynge / For suche shall brynge hym that never shall come agayn / but he be hedles' / and ogier wente into the pavylion where Rychard was / 8 that was bounde bothe handes & fete, and was blindefelde. And when Ogier sawe rycharde that was thus arrayed, he had of hym grete pyte; soo wente he to hym to have delivered hym / but he advysed hymselfe / 12 & sayd that he shold not doo it, but he wolde tary for to see an ende of it, what the kyng shold doo therof. And when Rychard herde Ogier speke, he called to hym, & sayd in the presence of the duke Naymes, and of 16 Rycharde of normandy, of Guydellon of bavyre, and of the bysshop Turpyn / and of Rowland, that themen happed to come there / 4 Fayr lorde, I knowe well that yf it were at your playssur ye wolde let me go quyte; 20 and all ynoughe ye have traveylled yourselfe for me, wherof I thanke you right moche; but sith that I muste nedes be broughte to the galohous / It is better that I, poure, vnhappy, deye alone / than that ye sholde have 24 ony harme for my sake; wherfore lokie that ye lose not the good grace of Charlemagne / and I praye you that ye wyll goo vnto hym, & tell hym that he doo his wyll vpon me, for I have lever deye shortly / than to lyve 28 longe in sorowe.' When Ogier sawe Richard speke soo, he was so sory for it that he felle almost doun to the grounde for grete sorow in a swoune, and sayd to Rychard in angre, 'What saist thou, folke destestable, 32 Wylte thou be hanged? for yf we sayd the same that thou sayst to Charlemagn / all the golde of the worlde

1 Damps roy, F. orig. q. vii. back.  
2--2 omitted, F. orig. q. vii. back.  
3--3 omitted, F. orig. q. vii. back.  
4 Fol. V. iv. back.  
5 et quant Il fut revenue Il dist a Richart, F. orig. q. vii. back.
shold not save the, but that thou sholdest soone be hanged bi the necke. 'I care not,' sayd Rychard, 'hap as it hap wyll.' And thenne he tourned hymself toward Rowland, & sayd to hym / 'I pardonne you, sire Rowlande, here & afore god, the feith that ye have promised me / and that ye gaaff me when ye toke me afore balancon.' And when Ogyer herd this he wexed almost mad for grete angre, and sayd to Rowlande, 'Syr, beleve not Richard, for he speketh as a man that is vexed in his spyrites, and not wythout a grete cause / but kepe to hym the feyth that ye have promysed hym, for it shall be your grete worship ye shall doo so.' 'Ogier,' sayd Rowlande, 'doubt not / I shall kepe to Rycharde all that I have promysed hym, & more.' When Richard herd that worde, he called to him oger, & sayd / 'Fayr cosin, for god, kepe your peas / for I have seen here mawgis ryghtuow / and I wote well he hath not forgotten me / For by the feyth that I owe to you, suche shall lede me to the gibet that shall soone lose his hede, and many other moo wyth 20 hym.' 'Cosin,' sayd Ogyer, 'is it trouth that ye saye that ye have seen Mawgis here' / 'Ye,' sayd Richard, 'withoute ony fawte.' Thenne sayd Ogyer, 'blessed be the good lorde of this tydynges / now have I noo doubte of Rycharde / sith that my cosin knoweth of it.' And thenne all the xii peres of Fraunce lighted a fote / and cam to Charlemagn & sayd to hym / 'Sir, we ben all your men sworn to you. All that we have sayd & doon / we dyde it for to see whether we myghte have deliverde our cosin from deth by your good wyll / but sith that it playseth not to you that he be saved, & that ye wyll that he be hanged, we wyll not speke no more agenst it / by cause that ye angre yourselfe to sore /

1—1 omitted, F. orig. q. vii. back.  
2 Fol. V. v. 
3 richart, F. orig. q. viii. 
4—4 omitted, F. orig. q. viii.
Now sende Rycharde to be hanged by whom ye wyll / for he shall not be letted of vs therfro’/

Thenne sayd Charlemayn, ‘by my feith now ye spoke well & wisly, and now I pardonne you all’ / And thenne charlemagn called to hym Rypus of Riplemonde, & sayd to him, ‘Rypus, yf ye wyll doo so moche for me that ye wyll goo hange Rychard / I shall make the lord of grete londes / and ye shall be my chambrelyyn all your lifft’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd Ripus, ‘I am all redy to fulfylle your commaundement / for Reynawde slewe my vnclle be side balencon.’ ‘Ye speke now well,’ sayd ogyer / ‘ye shall be a cowarde but yf ye avenge yourself at this tyme’ / And whan Ripus vnderstode Ogyer speke thus, he thoughte hym-selfe the more sure for it, And 2right humble & courteely he kneled doun tofore thempemour Charlemagne, and kyssed his fete, & after he sayd to him / ‘Syre, I am ordeyned for to doo you servyse & your commaundement. Yf it playse you, ye shall make me sure that when I shall com agen fro the hangynge of Rycharde, that none of your xii peres shall not awaite me none evyll tourne for it afterwarde’ / ‘Bi my feth,’ sayd Charlemagne, ‘I wyll doo soo wyth a good wyll.’

And thenne he sayd to Rowlande and to Olyvere / and to all the twelve peres of Fraunce / ‘Lordes,’ I wyll that ye promyse hym that he shall not be hurt by none of you, nor in tyme to come by noo maner of wyse / by cause I make hym to hange Rycharde.’ The whiche thynge all the xii peres promysed hym wyth a good wylle. And whan Rypus had taken the othe of the xii peres of Fraunce for his surety / he wente to his owne tente / and made hym to be armed / and whan he was armed, he lighted on horsbacke / and cam before

1 mon mal talant, F. orig. q. viii.
2—2 omitted, F. orig. q. viii.
3 Fol. V. v. back.
4 par ma fois, F. orig. q. viii.
kynge Charlemagn / And whan themperour sawe hym / he sayd to hym, 'Rypus, take a thousande knyghtes wyth you for to kepe you / and yf Reynawd or Mawgys come there, take theym & hange theym wyth rycharde.' 4 'Syr,' sayd rypus / 'I shall doo your commandement.' And thenne the kynge made theym deliver rycharde / and whan rypus had hym, he put hym to the waye, & mounted richard vpon a mewle / and put a halter at

Ripus puts
Richard on a mule
with a halter round his neck,
and leads him to Charlemagne.

The Frenchmen
sorrow when they see the evil plight
of Richard.

Ripus shows
Richard the
gallows prepared
for him.

Ripus
puts
Richard on a mule
with a halter round his neck,
and leads him to Charlemagne.

W

Whan the frenshemen saw rychard that was led to 16 hangyng so vilainously, they began to make suche a sorowe for hym that it was merveille / soo that none so grete was never seen / Rypus rode on his waye, & dyde somech that he cam to Mountfawcon. And 20 whan rypus dyde see the galous sette vp / he sayd to rycharde, 'By god, rycharde, see yonder is your lodgyng, where ye shall be hanged by myn owne handes / this daye shall be avenged the deth of foulques, my vncl, 24 that Reynande slewe besides Balence. The socours of 5Mawgis is now ferre fro you, for he can not kepe you, but that I shall hang you now in dispite of Reynawd & of your other brethern.' / Whan Richard 28 herde Rypus speke so proudly, & sawe that he was so nigne the gibet / and that he sawe noo socours comyng of noo parte / he was sore agast & a ferde / and thoughte he wold kepe Rypus wyth wordes, & sayd to hym, 32 'Rypus, for god have pyte vpon me! For I am noo

1 omitted, F. orig. q. viii.
2 mon amy vengez moy de ce truant. Sire dist ripus . . .
F. orig. q. viii. 3 a grant vilite, F. orig. q. viii.
4 de morillon, F. orig. q. viii. 5 Fol. V. vi.
man that should be hanged by rayson / but I ought to
be delivered by you; and yf ye wyll delyver me / I
shall gyve you two hundred marke weyghte of fyne
golde, & I shall make you a grete lord' / 'Certes, Richard,' sayd Ripus, 'ye speke for noughte / for I
wold not leve you but that ye shall be hanged, for x of
the best eytees of Franne.' 'Rypus,' sayd Rychard /
8 'sith that ye wyll not have pyte vpon my body / have
pyte vpon my soule. And I praye you, asmoche as I
can, that ye wyll make a preest com to me for to shryve
me.' 'Certes,' sayd Rypus, 'ye shall have one wyth
right good wyll.' And thenne he made come a preest,
som sayen that it was a bysshop, for to shryve Richard /
the whiche began to shryve hymself, & shewed to the
preest many moo synnes than ever he dyd in his dayes /
16 and this he dyd for to 2 lengthe the tyme / and 2 to see
yf he shold have ony socours or noo. And when
Rychard sawe that his helpe cam not, he wexed almost
mad, and sayd to his confessour / 'Syr, I wote not
20 what I shold more say / gyve me absoluycyon' / and he
gaff him penaunce according to the terme of his lif / and the confessour went from him all wepyng. And
whan Rypus sawe that Rychard was confessed / he
24 came to hym & put the halter aboute his necke / and
made hym monyte vpon the ladder, & dyd shit the
cheyn 2 wherat he shold hang 2 / & whan richard 3 sawe
that his bredern cam not for to save him / he wende
28 none other but that he shold have dyed / & delibered
hymselfe 4 for to suffre deth atte that owre; and themne
he sayd to Rypus, 'My frende, I pray the for god that
thou suffre me awhyle tyll I have sayd an oryson
32 that I dyde lerne in my youthe, to the ende that god
have mercy of my soule.' 'I wyll not,' sayd Rypus /

1—1 dix fois plus de pechiez, F. orig. r. i.
2—2 omitted, F. orig. r. i.
3 Quant richart fut monte sur leschielle, F. orig. r. i.
4 Fol. V. vi. back.
'thou shalt have no longer respyte.' 'Syre,' sayd his men / 'yes / ye shall yf it playse you / For yf he maye doo so moche that his soule be saved / he shall praye for you in the other world / and for vs also'/ And thenne Rypus gaaf respite to Rychardc, wherof he dyd like a fole1 / And thenne Rychard tourned hymselfe towarde the eest / and beganne to saye his prayer wyth good herte and devotly / For he trowed to have deyed wythoute remyssyon / And he sayd in this maner.  

Glorious Ihesus / by thy blessed name / that made heven & erthe / and all the elements that ben, and wente in this world as a poure man, and saved Ionas from the beli of the fysshe, and in Bethleem reysedest Lazaron, and delyvered Danyell from the pyt of the lion. the synnes of the theef / ye dyde pardonne in the crosse / where the felons Iewes had crusified you. Also to marie magdalene her symne / ye forgaff in the hous of Symon / For she wysshe your fete wyth grete devocyon / Iudas, the false traytour, murmured throug enuye / wherof ye dyde shewe to hym that he dyde grete foly; and Iudas kyssed you by grete treyson, and delivered you to the iewes, wherof he was rewarded after his deserv-24 ynge.2 Good lord, ye created & made our fader Adam3 of the slyme of therth / and yllumyned him with the grace of the holi gost; and after ye dyd haban-done to him the frutes of paradise / but he brake your commaundement, Wherbi mankynde went to damnacion, & we all were damped wythoute remys-sion / but after ye redeemed vs bi the merite of your blessid passion; ye did suffre 4grete evylles and grete 32

1 Et quant richart eut le respit Il se tourne devers orient... F. orig. r. i. back.
2 Car pecha mallement a tort et sans raison. Dont faulce-ment mourust en desesperacion, F. orig. R. i.
3 omitted, F. orig. r. i. back. 4 Fol. V. vii.
aflyctyons for vs poure synners, wythout ony devocyon. Whan Longys\(^1\) dyde shove the spere in to your dygne side, the water ranne of it, and also the blode lepte into his eyen / wherof he recovered his sighte; and ye pardoned hym his synnes / whan he called vpon you for mercy. And also to Noe ye lete make by your carpenters an arke for to save hymself, and of every beest a couple. In Iosaphat, good lord, ye broughte your apostles, where ye dyde make a fayr myracle / For wyth two fysshes & fyve loves of barle / ye fed v. thousande men all their fylle / O, gode lord / as I doo byleft this that I have sayd stedfastly, kepe this daye my body fro deth that is so nyghe, that I be not hanged nor put in pryson, but deliver me from the handes of my enmyes / that I be not vytupered nor broughte to shame by Rypus of rylemonde, that holdeth me in his gynnes / Ha, Reynaude, my right dere broder, that ye be not here now wyth my brethern & wyth my\(^2\) cosyn mawgis / ye have now forgotten me, & lete me here deye, Wherfore I recomende me to god of heven.’ And thenne Richard began to wepe full tendrely, & sayd to rypus, ‘Rypus, doo wyth me what ye will.’

Now shall we speke of bayard, the good horse, of Reynawd, of his bredern, & mawgis. It is trouth that bayard, \(^3\) the horse of reynawd the sone of Aymon,\(^4\) that cam of the fery, and thus he vnder- stode the worde when it was spoken as well as it had be a man / Whan bayard vnderstode the noise\(^4\) that the folke made about the galous, and sawe that his mayster slept fast / he cam to reynawd, & smote him soo hande wyth his fete in the myddes of his sheelde that he

---

1. Longius
2. bon cousin le saige mawgis, F. orig. r. i. back.
3–3. omitted, F. orig. r. ii.
4. et le bruit des gens que ripus avoit amene auecques soy a monfaucon . . . F. orig. r. ii.
who sees his brother on the ladder, leaps on Bayard, and flies to his rescue.

Mawgis and the brethren wake and follow him.

Ripus sees the brethren approach, and is in great fear for his life.

He begs Richard to have mercy on him.

made hym awake. Soo lept reynawd vpon his fete all afrayed, & beheld what it was, and loked toward mountfawcon & saw his brother vpon the ladder. Soo made he none other taryenge, but lighted vpon a bayarde, that ranne as the wynde / For at every tyme he lepte xxx. fote in a playne grounde. And alarde, guycharde / and mawgis awoke for love of bayarde, that made grete noyse / And whan they were all awake, mawgis began to crye as hie as he cowde vpon his horse, 'the devyll spede the, evyll beeste, that thou hast lete me slepe soo longe' / and thenne he lighted quyckly vpon his backe / For there was noo better horse in all the worlde after bayarde.  

Whan Rypus of rylemonde, that wold have strangled Rycharde, sawe come his brethren & mawgys / he was soo sore abasshed wyth it that he wyste not what he shold doo, and he sayd thenne to Rycharde / 'Rychard, ye be deliverde out of my handes / For here comen Reynawde & Mawgis / and all their puissauence, that com for to socour you;' and yf it playse you, ye shall have mercy on me For this that I dyde / for to have broughte you here. It was put for to have awaye ye debate that Charlemagne had wyth the xii peres of Fraunce; and I knew well that ye shold be rescued wythout ony fawte by your brethren & of Mawgis. 'Rypus,' sayd Richard, 'mocke not wyth me / for here is to hard a mocke for me, and ye wynne not moche by, for to gabbe me of this facyon.' 'By my soule,' sayd Rypus, 'I mocke you not / it is in good ernest that I saye / ye maye see them here not a bowe shotte a ferre, nor I seke not to doo you ony harme / but goo down fro the ladder / and have mercy on me, I beseeche you, for goddys love.'

1 Fol. V. vii. back.
2 et sen va apres regnault, F. orig. r. ii.
3 dont je me rens a vous beau sire, F. orig. r. ii.
Rychard was mervellously abashed whan he herde Rypus speke, and he torned his hede aside & sawe Reynawde, that cam a good pas / and whan he saw him, he sayd, 'ripus, I shall never clayme my broder reynawd for my broder / ye hange you not by the necke to the same gibet where as ye thought to have hanged me right now.' This hangyng that

Richard threatens to make his brother hang
Ripus on the gibbet he had prepared.

Rychard spake to Rypus, Reynawd was arryved, and herde this that Richard had sayd to Rypus / And Reynawde began theenne to erie wyth a hie voys / 'so helpe me god, Reynawd, ye be deed. For ye be a cursed man / and for your cursidnes I shall hange you my owne self at this gibet / so shall you be possessour of my broder Richardis place / for all the power that Charlemagne shall make shall not save you therfro' / This hangyng, cam there mawgis, sore chanffed, & sayd to Ripus, 'Ha, rypus, thou traytour, evyll man, ye have alwayse be redy for to doo som evyll agenst vs, but sith that I have founde you here, I shall not seke you nowhere elles' / and theenne mawgis bare vp his spere for to have perced his body therwyth, but Reynawd cryed vpon hym, 'cosyn, touche hym not, for I wolde not for a grete thynge that a nother than I sholde slee hym. For I shall avenge vpon hym my dere broder Rycharde' / and theenne he drewe oute flamberde, & smote rypus wyth it suche a stroke that he felde hym deed to therthe at the fote of the ladder; & after he sayd to his breder, 'kepe wel that none of his folke scape, but that thei be ded or taken' / And theenne Reynawd descended a fote, & went vpon the ladder, & toke richarde betwene his armes & brought hym doun / and vnbounde him handes & fete / and after he kyssed his mouth, & sayd to hym / 'Broder, how doo ye fele your selfe? are ye not yll at ease' /

---

1—1 omitted, F. orig. r. ii. back.  2 Fol. V. viii.

Reynawde slays Ripus and his folk,

and releases his brother Richard.
'Brother,' sayd Rycharde, 'I have noo harme / but lete me be armed, I praye you.' 'By saynte Iohan,' sayd Reynawde / 'ye shall be armed anone.' 'Brother,' sayd Rycharde, 'lete me have the armours 4 of Rypus of Rylemonde' / 'wyth a good wylle,' sayd Reinaude / And Incontynente he made Rypus to be had from his harneys, & made his broder richarde to be armed. therwyth he made hym to lighte on 8 hors'backe, and toke hym his sheelde / and his baner. and whan Richard was well appareilled, Reynawd toke y* halter that rypus had put aboute Richardis necke / and put it aboute rypus necke; & after, he mounted 12 upon the ladder, & drewe hym all deed / and hanged hym there as he wold have hanged richarde, and wyth hym well xv. moo2 of his company, suche as kyng charlemagn loved moost / and when he had hanged 16 [t]hem, he sayd to rycharde / 'Brother, thise many shall kepe here whatche in stede of you' / when this was doon, mawgis came to Reynawd, & sayd to hym, 'Cosyn, telle me who waked you so well in tyme 20 as ye were.' 'cosyn,' sayd Reynawde, 'by the feyth that I owe to god, I slept as harde 3 as though I had not slept in xii. nyghtes a fore3 / but baiard, my4 gentill horse, awoke me' / thenne sayd mawgis, 'O gracious 24 lord of heven, blessed be god that made suche a horse / it is not the first good tourne that bayarde hath doon to you, my cosin, nor also it shal not be the laste.' And they all went and kyssed bayarde for the 28 goodnes that he had shewed vnto theym / 'My lordes,' sayd Reynawde, 'what shall we now doo? we have wrought well / sith that we have rescued the gentill richarde hole & sounde / me 32 semeth that we ought to goo to mountalban, so shall

1 Fol. V. viii. back.
2 des plus principaux de sa compaignie, F. orig. r. iii.
3-3 si je neusse jamais dormy, F. orig. r. iii.
4 le, F. orig. r. iii. back.
we recomforte clare, my wyff, & my two children, that ben all evyll at ease for the love of rycharde, & so shall we ete & slepe at our ease / for we have well nede therof / and we shall doo iustyce of kyng yon, that so falsli hath betrayed vs. And after tomorowe we shall assaylle\(^1\) charlemagne, that we love not / and we shall leve \(v\) hundred men wythin montalban / and 8 as many above mountbandell, that shall socour vs if nede be / And the\(\text{me}\) sayd richard / 'sir, yf it playse you, ye shall not doo soo. For ye knowe not the sorowe and the grete lamentacyon that the frenshe men made /for the love of me in thoste of Charlemagn. 

And I promyse you, ye oughte well to love Ogyer / Rowland / Estorfawde the sone of Oedon, Richarde of normandy / the fayr Guydellon, Salamon of bretein, 16 and eke Olyvere of vyen / For thei toke grete debate for me wyth Charlemagn wythin his pavylion; and all this they dyde for the love of you / for they wend all for certen that Ripus shold have hanged me, and 20 that I sholde have noo socours; but, & it playse you, gyve me leve that I may shewe me to Ogyer the dane, & to all other our kynsmen \(^3\) that ben in Charlemagnis court,\(^2\) For thei shall have grete Ioye for to see 24 me scape from the dethe.'

Thenne sayd Reynawd / 'for sothe, Ogier dyd like a valiaunt man; for men ought to love \(^4\)their frendes, & helpe theim when it is nede' / & after sayd 28 Reynawde,\(^5\) 'Broder, ye sonne is almoste vnder all redy. I fere me sore of you yf ye wyll goo in to the osto of Charlemagn / but & ye will nedes goo there / take wyth you four hundred knyghtes well horsed & 32 well armed, and put theym in a bushemente nyghe by where ye go / and I shall be here wyth my folke /

\(^1\) le roy charlemaigne, F. orig. r. iii. 
\(^2\) Fol. X. i. \(^3\)-\(^3\) omitted, F. orig. r. iii. 
\(^4\)-\(^4\) les sciens, F. orig. r. iii. back. 
\(^5\) richart, F. orig. r. iii. back.
and ye shall take wyth you Bondy, my good horne / and yf ye nede of ony helpe / sounde it hie as ye can well doo / and I shall socour you incontynent’ / ‘Syr,’ sayd Richard, ‘be it as it playse you.’ And thenne 4 Reynawde toke his horne to Richard, & foure hundred knyghtes. and Richard\(^1\) toke on his waye, & bare the baner of Ripus wyth hym / and he\(^2\) dyde so moche that he came to thooost of Charlemagne / and the kynge 8 stode armed afore his pavylion wyth his folke, that kept the way of mountfawcon / and they sawe come the baner of Rypus /\(^3\) as it had be borne by Rypus hymselfe vpon his horse\(^3\) /  

When Ogier sawe Richardi com, he wende it had be Rypus of riplemonde, that had hanged Richard / and of \(^4\) the sorowe that he toke for it, he fell down to therth in a swoone / And after, when he was 16 come agen to hymself, he sayd, ‘Alas, we have lost Richard, we shall never have hym agen\(^5\). Now it is well seen, Richard, that ye had fewe frendes.’ And wyth this he spred his good horse braiford / and cam 20 agenste Rycharde / for he trowed verely that it had be Ripus. And when Charlemagn sawe that Ogier the dane ranne towards Ripus, he sayd to his folke, ‘goe after hym, barons, I shall now see whiche of you is 24 my frende \(^6\) or my foo\(^6\) / here cometh Ripus, certeynly he hath doon well his devoyre, & hathe doon me good servyse, for he hath made me quyte of Rycharde, \(^7\) one of my mortalle emyes,\(^7\) and now Ogyer wyll kylle 28 hym in treyson / but & I canne holde hym / I shall doo suche iustyce vpon hym that it shall be spoken of it long time here after’ / And thenne spored their horses, frenshemen & bourgoyns, after Ogyer / and 32 Charlemagn hymselfe went after hym / but Ogyer was  

\(^1\) omitted, F. orig. r. iii. \(^2\) richart, F. orig. r. iii. \(^3\) monte sus son cheval, F. orig. r. iii. \(^4\) Fol. X. i. back. \(^5\) trahey la regnault et maugis, F. orig. r. iii. back. \(^6\) omitted, F. orig. r. iii. bk. \(^7\) 7 le filz aymon, F. orig. r. iii. bk.
CHAP. XIV. HOW RICHARD SHOWS HIMSELF TO OGIER.

all redy ferre from theym, wrothe & fyers as a lyon / and he cryed as hie as he cowde, 'Soo helpe me god, Rypus, ye be deed / and ye shall have a rewarde of 4 that ye have doon to my cosin Rychard; and I pro-

Richard declares

Ogier will not

He shows his face
to Ogier.

ogyer speke thus, he sayd, 'have mercy on me, my fayr

8 cosyn, For I am rycharde, your cosin, & not rypus / for we have hanged rypus in my place. And I promyse you my brother Reynawde heath the well avenged me vpon hym / and therfore I am come for to shewe me to you

12 & to my other kynsman / for I wote well that ye shall be glad therof.' 'ye make a lesyng, false traytour of rylemonde,' sayd ogyer / 'but ye shall not scape me soo.' When rycharde sawe ogyer soo sore chauffed

16 wyth wrathe2 / he sayd to hym / 'Cosin, knowe not you me?' 'nay, wythout fawte,' sayd ogyer / 'For ye bere the armes and the baner of Ripus'/ 'I have doon so, syre,' sayd Rychard, 'by cause I shold not be

20 knowen.' 'By my soule,' sayd Ogyer / 'I wyll see your face naked, For otherwyse I wyll not beleve that that ye say.' 'Syre,' sayd Richarde / 'and ye shall see me anone' / And thenne he unboked hys helme

24 & shewed his vysage / And when ogyer sawe hym he was right glad / and went & kyssed the mouth of Rycharde full swetly4 / and toke hym in his armes many tymes, & said to rycharde, all lawghyng / 'Cosyn, 28 what have ye doon of rypus?'5 'by my feith,' sayd rycharde, 'he is now Archebysshop of that feeldes / gyvynge the benedyction wyth his fote; ' For my broder Reynawd hath hanged hym, his owne handes / and wolde

32 not sufre that none other sholde sette hande vpon hym but onely hymself' / 'by my soule' sayd oger / 'he hath

1—1 charlemaigne vous sera mauluais garent, F. orig. r. iii. bk. 2 contre luy, F. orig. r. iv. 3 Fol. X. ii. 4—4 omitted, F. orig. r. iv. 5 le mauluais traictre, F. orig. r. iv
doon right well.’ and thenne he sayd to rycharde, ‘Fayr cosin, see to your selfe / for here cometh Charlemagn / and god be with you;’ and thus returned ogyer / And whan Charlemagne sawe Ogyer, he sayd 4 to hym, ‘why wente ye towarde rypus afore me’ / ‘Syr;’ sayd Ogyer, ‘yf ye were not soo nyghe me / I sholde smyte of his hede / But I dare not doo it for love of you. goo ye to hym / for I make you sure he 8 shall have no harme by me.’ Thenne sayd Charle-
magne / ‘I shall defende hym agenste all men.’ And thenne he spored the horse wyth the spores, and cam
to rycharde / wenyng to hym that it had be rypus^ / & 12 sayd to hym, ‘Come nere, my specyall frende rypus / and take no fere of noo thynge / For I shall kepe you agenste all men.’ When Rycharde herde Charlemagne
speke thus, he sayd to hym / ‘I wyll that ye knowe 16 now that I am not the false traytour Rypus, but I am
Rycharde the sone of aymon / and I am the brother of
Reynaude, the best knyghte of all the world, and of
Alarde, and of Guycharde, and cosyn to the valyaun
t20 maw^gis that ye love so moche. Ye smote me to daye
in the mornyng wyth a staff in the hede, wherof ye
mysdyde gretly; & therfore my broder reynaued hath
hanged^ your right wel beloved4 rypus there as he wold 24
have lodged me / and xv. of his felawes wyth him for
to bere him feliship / now beware of me, for I defye
you’ / When Charlemagne vnderstode thes wordes, he
was soo sore an angred of it, that none can be more / 28
and spored his horse & rane vpon rychard, and richard
agenst hym / and gaaf thone to thother so grete strokes
in their sheeldes that they brake bothe their speres all
in peces. ^ And wyth the same^ they recounted eche 32
other wyth their bodies soo myghtely that the strongest

1 par ma foy . . . F. orig. r. iv.
2 de ripemont, F. orig. r. iv. 3 Fol. X. ii. back.
4—4 omitted, F. orig. r. iv. back.
5—5 et apres le briser de leurs lances . . . F. orig.
of bothe habandouned the styropes / but it happe well to charlemagn that he bode wythin tharsons of the sadle ; but rycharde fell down to therth. and whan rycharde sawe hymself a grounde / he was wrothe for it, and rose vp quyckly & set hande to his swerde / and wente & smote Charlemagn vpon his helme soo grete a stroke that he made hym all astonyed wythall ; but the swerde slide vpon the helme, that was goode & fyne, dow to the horse necke soo harde that he cut it a sondre, & with this stroke he felled y* horse sterke.

The King has his horse killed by Richard.

They fight, and Richard is unhorsed.

1 of bothe habandouned the styropes / but it happe well to charlemagn that he bode wythin tharsons of the sadle ; but rycharde fell down to therth. and whan rycharde sawe hymself a grounde / he was wrothe for it, and rose vp quyckly & set hande to his swerde / and wente & smote Charlemagn vpon his helme soo grete a stroke that he made hym all astonyed wythall ; but the swerde slide vpon the helme, that was goode & fyne, dow to the horse necke soo harde that he cut it a sondre, & with this stroke he felled y* horse sterke.

The King has his horse killed by Richard.

They fight, and Richard is unhorsed.

1-1 omitted, F. orig. r. iv. back.  
2 charlemgan in text.  
3 Fol. X. iii.  
4 seigneurs, F. orig. r. iv. back.
that he shoved his swerde thrughe & thrughe his body; and guychard smote a nother with his swerde soo fiersly that he cleved his hede in two peces; & alard smote the fourth knyghte vpon his helme soo grete a stroke that he cast hym deed to fore his fete; and after he ranne vpon a nother knyghte rychely arrayed, & gaff eche other suche strokes that they bothe fell down from their horses to therth / And themne came 8 there reinawd, that dyde so moche that the sayd knyghte was taken prysoner / whiche was called hughe of almagn, and broughte hym to mountalban / what shall I telle you more / the batayll began to be felle / and soo cruell that it was grete pyte for to see / For the one spared not thother, but slew eche other as thicke as bestes. And whan reynawd sawe all redy that y° soone was goon vndre, & that the nyght cam fast on / he was in a doubte for his breder, and sayd, 'Good lord, thrughe thi mercy & redempcyon / kepe me & my breder from deth & from prison / for the nyght that is at hande maketh me to be a ferde' / And as he spake thise wordes, cam there kyng charlemagn, as fast as his horse myghte walop, agenst reynawd, and reynawd agenste hym, by cause he knewe hym not / and smote eche other so harde in their sheldes that thei made their speres to flee in peces, and recounted togyder both wyth thay bodyes & sheeldes soo merveyllously that they overthrew the other to the grounde / and thenne they rose quyckly bothe atones, and set hande to their swerdes / And themne Charlemagn began to crye 'mountioye saynt denys' / and after sayd, 'Yf I be owtraged by one knyghte oonly, I ought not to be a kyng nor to bere crowne.' Whan reynaude vnderstode charlemain speke, he knewe hym well, & wythdrew hymself a syde, & sayd, 'Alas,

1 par prisonier . . . F. orig. r. v.
2 Fol. X. iii. back.
how am I dyllfamed! it is charlemagn to whom I have iousted / I have mysprysed to sore for to have set hande vpon hym / Ha, good lord / it is well XVI, 1 yeres a 4 goon that I spake not ones wyth hym / but I shall now speke to him yf I shold deye for it / for by reyson & right I ought to lese the firste ; wherfore I wyll make to hym a mendes presently, and let hym doo wyth 8 me what he wyll' / and whan he had sayd this, he went to Charlemagn, & kneled byfore hym, and sayd to hym / 'Sir, for god / I crie you mercy, gyve me trews tyl that I have spoken wyth you.' 'wyth a good 12 wyll,' sayd charlemagn; 'But I wote not who ye be, 2how be it that ye have iousted wyth me.' 2 'I thanke you humblili,' sayd reynaud, 3 of that it playseth you to saye soo by me 3 / Syr, wyte that I am Reynawde, the 16 sone of aymon / and I crie you mercy / And for that pyte that our lord had vpon the cros of his moder when he recomended her to saynt Iohan h's dyscyple / I beseche you that ye wyll have pyte vpon [me] & vpon 20 my bredern. ye knowe that I am your man / and ye have disherited me of mi londes, & have chased me 4oute of frauncé. 4 It is a goo xvi 5 yeres ; and by cause of this, are deed soo many noble knyghtes & valyaunt 24 men, & other, in soo grete nombre that it can not be sayd, For god / ye see well what it cometh of the werre / for a lord that hath no pite in him, hath a hert as harde as a stone. 6 And therfore, sire, I beseche you 28 for god that ye have mercy on me & of my bredern that ben suche knyghtes as ye know. I speke not thise wordes for fere of deth, ne for courtysse of ryches / For god gramercy we have goodes ynoughe / but I 32 speke it for to have your love onely / Syr, suffre that

1 quinze, F. orig. r. v.
2—2 mais vous joustes moult bien, F. orig. r. v.
3—3 omitted, F. orig.
4—4 . . . de vostre terre et de la mienne, F. orig. r. v.
5 xv, F. orig. 6 Fol. X. iv.
he offers to give up Montalban and Bayard.

if Charlemagne will pardon his brethren.

The Emperor refuses to accept these terms of peace.

and demands the deliverance of Mawgis into his hands.

we have peas wyth you / and we shall becom your men for evermore, and we shall swere to you feyth & legeauns / and also I shall gyve you mountalban & my good horse bayard, which is the thynge that I love 4 beste in this worlde after my bredern & mawgis / For there is not in all the world suche a nother horse / And yf this can not satysfye your mynde / I shall doo yet more / Playseth it to you for to pardonne my 8 bredern / and I shall forswere Fraunce for evermore, that I shall never be seen there, and I shall goo to the holy sepulcre in Iherusalem, bare fote, for the remembrance of you; and I nor Mawgys shall never come 12 agen in fraunce, 2 but we shall werre styll on god dys enmyes / as ben turques & sarrasins / 2/

Thenne whan charlemagn herde reynawd speke thus, he anserde hym & sayd, 'Eeynawd, ye speke 16 for noughte / ye dyde an over grete foly / whan ye toke that hardynes vpon you for to speke wyth me in my palays as ye dyde / and yet ye dyde worse whan ye slewe my neweves berthelot that I loved so moche; and 20 now ye speke to me of peas, and ye crye me mercy. I promyse you for certeyn that ye shall have noo peas with me, but yf ye doo that I shall telle you' / 'Sire,' sayd reynawd, 'what shall that be? telle me, I praye 24 you!' / 'I shall shewe it to you wyth a goode wyll,' sayd charlemagn / 'And yf ye doo it / ye and your bredern shall accorde wyth me, And I shall gyve you agen your heritage, and yet I shall gyve you / ynoughe 28 of myn owen / It is that ye gyve me mawgys in my handes for to doo my playsur wyth hym, for I hate him 3 more than ony thynge in the world' / 'Syre,' sayd reynawd / 'if I sholde deliver hym to you, what 32 woid ye doo to hym?' / 'Reynawd,' sayd charlemagn,

1 chevalier, F. orig. r. v. back.
2—2 mais ferons guerre contre les turcs, F. orig. r. v. back.
3 Fol. X. iv. back.
I promise you I should make him to be drawn shamefully at four horses tailles thrughe parys. And after that, I should doo take from the body of hym the limmes one after a nother, and thenne I should make him to be Brent, and his ashes to be cast at the wynde. And when he shall be arrayed as I telle you / let hym thenne doo his incantacyons & his magyke as he wyll / and I shall pardonne hym all that he can doo to me after that' / Thanne sayd Reynawd to the kyng / 'syre, wold ye doo it in dede as ye saye?' 'Ye,' sayd charlemagn, 'in good feyth' / 'Emperour,' sayd reynawde, 'wold ye not take townes ne castelles, golde ne silver, for the raunsom of mawgis?' 'Certes naye,' sayd Charlemagne. Sir, sayd reynawd, 'thenne shall Reynawde refusses this request, we never be accorded togyder; for I tell you for certeyn, and teiis the that ye had all my brethern in your pryson, and that ye were delibered for to make them to be hanged, yet shold I not gyve you mawgis for to have them deliverde oute of your handes' / 'Holde your peas thenne,' sayd charlemagn, '& beware of me / for otherwise gete ye noo peas wyth me' / 'Syr,' sayd reynawd, 'I am sorry for it, for we be noo meñ that oughte to be cast from your servyse;' and sith that ye defye me, I shall deffende me / and our lord shall doo me that grace, yf it playse hym, that I shall not be take of you.' And whañ charlemagn herde this / he was sore angry / and ranne vpon reynawd / and whanne reynawd sawe hym come vpon hym / he sayd to hym, 'Syre, for god mercy, suffre not that I sette hande vpon you / For yf I sholde leve my selfe for to be slayne by you, I were well a myschaunt' / 'Vassayll,' sayd Charlemagn, 'all thise words avaylleth you not, For ye must nedes deffende yourselfe' / And thenne Charlemagne smote hym wyth Ioyuse his swerde vpon his helme, and the

1 omitted, F. orig. r. vi. 2 par ma foy, F. orig. 3 sernyse, orig. 4 Fol. X. v.
who seizes the Emperor and lays him on Bayard.

Charlemagne calls on his banners, and deplors the absence of his men.

Roland and Oliver come to his relief;

also Mawgys and his men arrive.

The battle begins again.

stroke slidéd doun vpon the sheeld of Reynawde soo that he kytted quyte and clene a grete parte therof. When Reynawde felte soo grete a stroke that kyng Charlemagne had gyven hym, he was sore an angred for it. He vaunced hym selfe forthe, and caught the kyng wyth bothe hys armes by the backe / and by the waast in maner of wrastelynge, For he wolde not smyte hym wyth his swerde Flamberde, and toke hym and 8 layd vpon the necke of his horse Bayarde / for to have broughte hym wyth hym to Mountalban wythout ony other harme. And whan Charlemagn saw that he was handeled of this facyon / he beganne to crye as lowde as he myghte, 'Mountioye, saynte denys' / and thenne he sayd / 'Ha, fayr neyew Eowlande / where be you / Olyvere of vynne, and ye duke Naymes / and bysshop Turpyn / shall ye suffre that I be thus taken 16 and broughte as a prysoner? / and yf ye doo soo / it shall be a grete shame to you all' / Reynawde began thenne to crye 'Mountalban' as highe as he cowde / whan he herde Charlemagne speke soo / And after he sayd / 20 'Ha, my bredern / and ye cosin Mawgys, com hither / and lete vs goo, for I have gyven the kyng suche a checke, that yf we can now brynge hym wyth vs / we shall have peas in Fraunce fromhens forthon.' Thenne 24 the noble peres of Fraunce / as Rowlande, Olyvere / and the other, came to the socours of Charlemagne / And of that other parte / came there for to helpe Reynawd, his brethern and Mawgys, and well four hundred knyghtes well armed. And whan the valiauant knyghtes were assembled togyder of bothe partyes, ye sholde thenne have seen there a merveyllous bataylle / For they slewe eche other as bestes. And there were so 32 many speres broken, and so many sheeldes cloven / and

\[1-1\] omitted, F. orig.
\[5\] neuneew, orig.  \[3\] son enseigne, F. orig. r. vi.
\[4-4\] Jay pris ung tel eschac, F. orig. r. vi.
\[5\] hunndred, orig.
hewed in to pices, and so many helmes unbokeled / and soo many a quyras broken and perced, and so many horses that drew after theyr guttes a longe in the feeldes, and soo many a man slayne, that it was pyt for to see. And when Rowlande was come to the medlee, he wente vpon Reynawde, and gaaf hym soo grete a stroke vpon hys helme that he was all astonyed therwyth, and after he sayd to hym, 'Vassayll, ye have doon evill that ye trowed to have brought awaye the kyng in this maner of wyse! Ye wote well it is to hevy a bourdon for to lede of this facyon. ye shall leve hym / and yet ye shall abye full dere for it, are ye escape me?/ And when Reynawde sawe that he was thus repreved, and felte the grete stroke that Rowlande had gyven to hym vpon hys helmet, he was wrothe, and toke his swerde in his hande / holdynge always Charlemagne afore hym vpon bayardes necke / and cam to Rowlande, and sayd to hym / 'Damp Rowlande, come forthe! soo shall ye wyte how Flamberde cutteth' / And when Rowlande vnderstode hym, he came vpon hym / And when Reynawde sawe hym come / he lete fall doun Charlemagne & ranne vpon Rowlande / And there beganne amonge theim two a fyers medelynge.

This hangyng, cam Alarde, Guycharde / and the lytyll Rycharde / and ranne vpon Rowlande atones / and gaaff hym soo moche to doo that he muste put hymselfe to flighte / wolde he or noo / And when Reynawde sawe that Charlemagn and Rowlande had saved themselfe, he was right sory for it, and he sayd to his bretherne, 'My brederne, ye have wroughte yll / For yf ye had be styll by me, we had doon a grete fayt / For I had taken Charlemagne, that we shokle have broughte wyth vs to

1 Fol. X. v. back.
2 et vous prometz quil en y eut tant de occis dune part et daultra que lon ne scauoit le nombre et grande fust la pitie, F. orig. r. vi. back.
3–3 omitted, F. orig.
CHAPTER XV.

How after that reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis had dyscomfyted charlemagn after 28 that thei had rescued rychard / that ripus wold have hanged at montfawcon / went agen vpon hym and pulled doun his pavy-

1 mountalban, orig.  
2 Fol. X. vi.  
3 et de ses gens, F. orig. A. i.
lion, and bare awaye wytheim the egle of golde that was thervpon, wherof the kyng was full sori for it, soo that he wolde have taken agen his crowne in to the handes of hys barons / seynge that he wold not be noo more theyr kyng / by cause that they had faylled hym, and had habandouned hym for the four sones of aymon / And sayd to theym / that they shold crowne reynawde therwyth, soo sholde he be their kyng, 'For thei loved hym better than they dyde him ; And how oliver sayd to charlemagn / that he shold take agen his crowne, and that he shold yelde hym mawgis that he had taken as he robbed the pavylion, for he abode there alone; And how charlemagne toke agen his crowne / and was right glade of the pryse of mawgys that he hated 2 so moche /

H ere sheweth the histori, that whan reynaude, the sone of aymon, sawe that the kyng charlemagn was goon agen to his ooste / he made his baner to ryde before hym / and rayled his folke togyder / And whan he had mounted the mountayn of mountfawcon / he called his folke, & sayd to theim / ‘My frendes, put yourself in ordynance, & take on your waye towards mountalban / and I, my bredern & mawgis, shall come behynde / For I fere me leest the frenshemen, that ben so wroth that we have dyseomfyted theim so, shall folowe for to hurte vs yf they can / and yf they doo / we shall better suffre the payne than our folke /

\footnote{1 Fol. X. vi. back.} \footnote{2 hasted, orig.}

Reynawde orders the greater part of his folk to return to Montalban.
I wolde not for noo good that rowlande & olivere sholde mocke wyth vs, nor that thei sholde fynde vs in dysaray.' 'By my soule,' sayd alarde / 'brother reynawd,1 ye speke well & wysely.' And thenne their folke put theymselfe in ordenauce, and thei abode behinde tyll that their folke had passed balencon / And when the moost parte was passed, he2 toke iii. thousand men of the best of his folke, & sayd to S thother, 'goo your wayes to montalban, For I wyll goo assayl the kyng charlemagne in his pavylion, what so ever it hap of it / And soo shall I shewe3 his folke what I can doo / and that I am a man for to seke 12 hym, and not he me.'

Whan reynawd had sayd this, he cam to the water of Balencon / and passed over wyth his thre thousande men1 / And they rode soo longe4 16 that they came to the oost of Charlemagn / that was wroth more than mesure requyreth,5 by cause that he had loste the feelde 4 agenste Reynawde.1 And when Reynawd sawe the pavylion of Charlemagne / he sayd to 20 his brendern / and to all his folke / 'I pray you that ye governe you wysly' / 'Syre,' sayd richard 1 the hardy,1 6 'he that wyll be enhaunceed in price / he oughte not to loke soo nuyhe but he must ieoparde for to conquer 24 worshyp.' And whan rychard had sayd so / he set hande to his swerde, & spored his horse wyth the spores. & went streyght to the pavylion of charlemagn, and out of the cordes, & made it falle doun 28 to the erthe wyth the egle of golde massy, that was of grete value. whan reinawd sawe this, he called mawgis, & sayd to him / 'Cosin, com hider / helpe

1–1 omitted, F. orig. A. i. back. 2 Regnault, F. orig. 3 luy et ses gens, F. orig. A. i. back. 4 luy et ses gens, F. orig. A. ii. 5 Fol. X. vii. 6–6 Qui veult en pris monter Il ne doit regarder de si pres: mais se doit mettre a laventure pour conquester honneur et pris, F. orig. A. ii.
me to bryng awaye this gayn' / 'syr,' said mawgys, 'wyth a good wyll.' and they lighted a fote, & toke the egle of golde, ¹ that was soo riche that noo man
4 wyste what it was worth; ¹ & reynawd said to his folke / 'My lordes, smite now well, & feyn not your self / for he that beginneth a game, he ought to see an ende of it to his prouffyte, yf he can.' / Who thenne
8 had seen the folke of charlemagn arme theim & con oute of their tentes, & renne vpon the sones of Aymon, he wold have merveylled / and it was pite for to see the grete slaughter that was doon there / whan mawgis
12 had put the egle of golde in sure handes / he went agen to the pavylion of charlemagn, & he fonde the kyng, and sayd to hym / 'By my hede, sir emperour, ye have troubled vs sore a long while, but ye shalbye
16 it full derely at this hour, your comyng in to gascoyn, & yeº dethe of my fader, the duke benes of aygre-mount / For I shall gyve to you suche a stroke that ye shall never make were to vs nor to none other.' And
20 with this he bare vp his sperre for to have shoved it thrughe yeº brest of charlemain; but charlemagn abode not the stroke, but he tordned hymself a side, & yeº sperre entred in to the bed of the kyng well
24 ii fote. And whan ² charlemagn sawe this, he was a ferde, and he beganne to erie 'mounstioye, saynt denys.' And theyne he sayd / 'Ha, fayr nevewe rowlande, where are you now?' Whan mawgis herde calle
28 rowlande, he loked aboute hym, & sawe not reynawd nor his brenden / for thei had put theimself to the way to return home agen.

Over long taried mawgis in thost of charlemagn / for reynawd was all redy passed over balencon / and rowland & oliver were all redy com to the callyng of charlemagn, sore auyrayd / and whan mawgis sawe theym, he made noo lenger taryeng / but gaaff the

¹-¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. X. vii. back.
spores to his horse, & went after reinawd as fast as his horse myght reyne. And when he wold have passed balencon, he met wyth a grete company of the folke of charlemagn. and mawgys smote one of theym soo harde in the sheelde / that he overthrew bothe horse & man to therthe; and after that he smote the sone of mylen of puyll, so that he cleved his shield a sondre, & cast hym doun to the grounde with a 8 wounde mortall / and thenne he cryed 'montalban,' & sayd, 'Ha, fayr cosin reynawde, where be you? socour me for god. For if ye lose me, ye shall have harme therat.' And thenne mawgis thought well that Eeynawd was goon / This hangynge, came oliver throughe the pres, & cam vpon mawgys, & smote him so harde that it abode not nother for sheelde nor for coursef of stele, but he made hym a wounde in his brest, and caste hym doun to the erthe / Whan mawgis felt hymself thus hurt & overthrown, he was ryght wrothe for it. Soo rose he vp quy[c]kly vpo?^ his fete, & toke his swerde in his hande, & dyde merveylles of armes / And the nighte was very derke, that almost the one knew not thother. and whan olyver saw mawgys defende himself so well / he sayd to hym / 'I know not the 24 knyghte whom thou art; but, & thou yelde not thyselfe to me, I shall now smyte of thy hede from the sholdres.' 'what is thy name?' sayd thenne mawgis / 'for & thou be a good man / I shall yelde me to the, 28 & elles not, knyght.' 'my name is oliver of vyewe.' Whan mawgis herde hym named, he knewe him well / and sayd to hym, 'Ha, gentyll knyghte olivere, I yelde me to you vpon your feyth, & vnder suche 32 a condyczon that ye shall not deliver me to charlemagn / for yf ye deliver me in his handes, I am deed without remedy, & he shall make me deie shanfully as

1-1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. X. viii.
a thef.' 'By my feyth,' sayd oliver, 'this wyll I not do / for I dare not hide you from charlemagn. but yeſde you / & I promise you that I shall helpe you to
4 my power for to make your apoyntmente wyth the kyng' / 'Sir,' sayd mawgis, ' & I yeſde me to you vpon your trouſh 1 / and toke his swerde to him. & oliver toke it, and after made hym to light vpon a
8 lityll horse, and brought hym to the pavilion of Charlemagn, where they fonde not the kyng, by cause he was all affrayed, as ye herde afore / And whan oliver sawe that he fonde not charlemain / he was sore a ferl
12 that mawgis shold scape from him throughe his incantacyons & wytcheerafte, and sayd to hym, 'Mawgis, ye knowe how I have taken you by armes, & that ye are my prisoner / I wyll that ye gyve me your feyth truly
16 that ye shall not goo oute of wythyn, wythout my leve' / 'Sire,' sayd mawgys, 'wyth a good wyll' / and thus he dyde swere this to oliver. And whan oliver had taken the othe of maugys / he made hym to
20 be vnarmèd / and made his wounde to be wrapped / and gaaff hym a mantell vpon hym, & made hym to lie vpon a bed / Now shall we leve a lityll to speke of charlemain, of oliver, & of mawgis / and shall shewe
24 of reynawd & his bredern, what thei dyde whan thoste of charlemagn was moved / and how thei wonne the egle of golde, that was of so grete value / & how reynaund said to his bredern / 'lordes, lete vs se now
28 for to quyte vs wel / for it were not good for vs for 2 to tary here ony lenger.' And thenne he made to wyth draw his folke, and made them put to the waye / And as they wente / Rycharde sayd to Reynawd /
32 'Syre, we have goten a ryche pray, thanked be god / For Charlemagne shal' be many a longe day wrothe therfore' / 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde, 'fayr broder, ye saye trouſh; & also we have slayn a grete mayne

1 yrouth, orig.  2 Fol. X. viii. back.
of his folke.' 'Ha, god,' sayd thenne alarde, 'where is our cosin mawgys / For I see him not here.' 'Broder,' sayd rycharde / 'be not a ferde for mawgys / for I beleve that he is goon to mountalban afore vs.' 'god be wyth him where soever he be,' sayd reynawde, 'For he is ryght sage / and a noble knyght / I wolde not for all the golde in the worlde that my cosin mawgis had ony harme.'

We shall leve a lityll to speke of Reynaude & of his brederun, that are bounde to mountalban, glad of their proy / And shal now speke of Charlemagn, that was soo sore wrothe, as I have sayd afore.

When Charlemagn was from hys arneys, he felle in a swoune for the grete angre that he had of that he had be thus dystressid / And when he was com agen to hymself, he sent for the duke Naymes, the bishop Turpyn, escouif the sone of oedan, for Salamon of breten, Richarde of normandy, therle Guidellon, & for Oger the dane. and whan thei were all gadred togider, the kyng began to shewe to them his complayntes in this maner, 'Lordes, I have kepte & mayntened you vnder my tuj^cion the space of XL^ yeres & more, that noo man hath not wronged you of a peny / and ye have no neighbour that dare aske you ony thyng. Now, me semeth, by cause that I am now old, that I am but halfe a man, & yet not so gode as I wold be / and I may not be a kyng without you; for whan ye faylle me, I am no kyng / ye knowe well that ye have left me for love of reinawd / wherof I am right sori, as I may well / for reynawd hath taken me where I was habandomed of you, & he hath chased me out of ye felde; certes, I am worse than madde of this that ye have forsake me for reynawde / And sith that it is thus wyth me / I seke not to lyve

1 cinquante, F. orig. A. iii. back.  
2—2 omitted, F. orig.  
3 Fol. Y. i.
CHAP. XV. OF THE WRATH OF CHARLEMAGNE WITH HIS BARONS. 359

ony lenger, nor to be kyng ony more / and now I take
to you the crowne, to thende that ye shall gyve it unto
reynaude whan ye wyll, and that ye make hym kyng
4 of Fraunce, For I wyll be no more your kyng’ /

When the xii peres of Fraunce & the other lorde
herde Charlemagn speke so sorrowfully, they
were sore abasshed, that there was noo man so hardy
8 that durste saye one worde. And thone loked upon
the other & were ashamed. And whan the duk
Naymes of bavyre vnderstode ye® wordes of Charle-
magne / he put hymself forthe and sayd, ‘Syr emperour,
12 god forbede that ye shoold doo as ye say / for it were
grete shame to vs all, & also to you. but I wote
well that we have misprysed agenst you in that we
have supported reynaude / but ye oughte to consider
16 that we have doon / was by no malice, but for good
enteneyon / For we wende to have made the pees
of the werre that hath endured so long / wherby many
good true men are deed / but sith that we see that it
20 playseth not you to make pees wyth the foure sones of
Aymon / take agen your crowne, & be not wrooth wyth
vs / and we shall promyse you that we all shall serve
you wel & truly / and that we shall take Mountalban
24 or a moneth be paste, or elles1 we shall deye all / and
fromhens forthon he that shall spare the sones of
Aymon shall be slayn of vs’ / Theyne sayd the kyng
Charlemagne, ‘Iete all this alone; I telle you for
28 certeyn that I shall never be your kyng / but ye yelde
to me Reynawde or Mawgis, the cursed theef / that
hath mocked me soo often’ / And whan Charlemagn
had sayd this, he 2entred wythin his pavylion sore an
32 angred. And thenne cam there oliver, that was sore
abasshed of that he sawe the king make soo evyll
chere / and after, he sayd to charlemagn, ‘Syre, wherof
are ye soo sore angry’ / ‘by my feyth,’ sayd the duke

1 ellis, orig.  2 Fol. Y. i, back.
Oliver goes to the Emperor, and promises to deliver Mawgis into his hands.

Charlemagne consents to take back his crown if Mawgis is delivered to him.

Oliver tells Mawgis that he must come before the Emperor, naymes, 'he hath shamed vs; for he hath forsaken his crown & his royame.' 'Syr,' sayd thenne olyver, 'doo not soo, but take agen your crowne, & be our lorde and our kynge.' And who dooth not your commaundement, chastysse hym in suche a maner that men take ensample therby' / 'Oliver,' sayd charlemagn, 'ye speke for noughte / for I wyll not doo it / but I have reynawde or mawgis dede or quycke' / 'Syre,' sayd olivere, 'pardonne vs thenne / and I shall deliver to you mawgis or evyn.'

'Damp oliver,' sayd charlemagn / 'I am not a chyld wherof men oughte to mocke wyth / For I wote well that mawgys doubteth you of noo thynge' / 'Syre,' sayd olivere, 'yf ye wyll promyse me that ye shall take agen your crowne, & that ye shall kepe vs as ye have doon a fore tyme / I shall bryng hym now afore you.' 'By my feyth,' sayd charlemagn, 'yf ye doo it, and that I maye have hym at my wyll / (For I hate hym moost of all men in the world) I shall doo all that ye wyll desire of me / and also I shall gyve you londes ynowh that ye shall be contente of me. For yf mawgys were not, the four sones of aymon myghte not endure agenst me / for yf I had them in pryson, and though I had sworne to kepe them, yet shold that theef mawgis stele them awaye fro me.' 'Syre,' sayd oliver, 'I shall brynge hym to you wythoute ony doubte.' And thenne oliver went to his pavylion, & rowlande wyth hym / and many other knyghtes, for to see mawgys. oliver sayd thenne to mawgis, 'Mawgys, ye must come to charlemagn.' 'oliver,' sayd mawgis / 'ye have betraied me / but I wote well that charlemagn shall be more curteis than ye have be / for he shall doo me noo harme / and lete vs goo to hym in the

1-1 omitted F. orig. A. iv. 2-2 I, F. orig. 3 Fol. Y, ii.
name of god, whan ye wyll’ / And thonne oliver leed mawgis to charlemagn. and whan he was wythin the pavylion, he went streyght to the kinge, & sayd to hym / ‘Sire, ye have promysed me, that ye I brought mawgis, that ye sholde take agen your crowne, And that ye shold kepe vs to ryght as ye have doon a fore tyme’ / ‘Certes,’ sayd charlemagn, ‘it is trouth / 8 and ye ye kepe your covenant, I shall doo that I have promysed you.’ ‘Now holde you, sir,’ sayd oliver, ‘here mawgis, that I deliver vnto you for to doo your playsur wyth hym, whyche I have take & conquered bi force of armes.’ Whan the kyng charlemagn sawe mawgys, he was so glad that noo man myght be more; and after he sayd, ‘by my feyth, now have I one parte of my desire. o, false theef 16 mawgys, now I holde the / now shalt thou be rewarde of thi pride that thou hast shewed vnto me when thou barest awaye myn egle of golde / and for all the good toernes & theeftes that thou hast doon in thy 20 dayes! For many tymes thou hast angred me sore, wherof thou shalt be now payd after thy deservyng’ / ‘Syr,’ sayd thonne mawgis, ‘ye shall doo wyth me what it playse you, for I am now in your handes / 24 but I couysylye you for the best, that ye lete me goo, and that ye make peas wyth reynawde & wyth his brederen / for ye shall gete no thyng by my deth; & my cosins ben suche that thei shall avenge it right wel 28 by force of armes / and ye ye doo as I saye / ye shall have with you the flower of knyghthode of all the worlde’ / ‘Ha, thef,’ sayd Charlemain / ‘how ferfull thou art now / Certes, this that thou sayst shall aveylle 32 the noo thynges’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd mawgys, ‘I am noo theef. Now canne I not doo noo thyng, sith that I am in your handes / And when ye shal have put me 1 to dethe, ye shall doo me no more no thyng, and

1 Fol. Y. ii. back.
yet ye shall be sorry for me or ever xiii. owres comen at an ende' / 'Ribawde,' sayd charlemagne, 'speke not so boldly; for, and I can, thou shalt have an evyll nyghte or ever thou escape me; nor the glotons, thy 4 cousins, shall not helpe the therfro, but that I shall make the deye in dyspyte of all thy wytche crafte that thou canste doo.' ¶ Now we shall leve a lityll to speke of charlemagne & of mawgis, and we shall speke 8 of the good knighte reynawde, of alarde, guycharde, and of the lityll rycharde hys brethren.

Whan Reynawd was departed from the oost of charlemagne, as I sayd byfore / he rode so 12 long that he came to montalban, & his folke wyth hym / And whan the lady wyste that her lorde came, she came hym agenste / and said to him, 'Syre, ye be right welcom / have ye deliverde rycharde' / 'ye, 16 vereli,' sayd Reynawd, 'god gramercy.' 'and blessed be god,' sayd the lady. and thenne she wente to rycharde, & kyssed hym more than ten tymes. and there was a chere & a feest made ryght amyable / 20 And after they had made grete ioye / Reynawd began to demaunde after his cosyn / and the lady answerde, 'my lord, I knowe noo tydynges of hym' / and whan reynaude herde that, he was sore agast of it / and 24 tourned hymself towards his bredern, & sayd to theim, 'My bredern, I praye you thät we maye knowe whether our cosyn mawgis is com or not / and goo seke hym in his lodges / For happli he is goon for 28 to vnarme hym selve.' And incontynente guycharde & richearde soughte hym at his lodges, & asked for hym to two of his men, the whiche sayd that they had not seen hym sith he was gon wyth theym. 32 And whan they herde that, thei were full sory, & went agen to their broder reynawd, & tolde him how they cowde not fynde hym / Whan reynawd vnder-

1 xxiii, F. orig. A. v. 2—2 omitted, F. orig.
How the Sons Grieve for Mawgis.

After that Reynawd had thus made grete sorrow, he refrayed hymself a lityll, & thenne sayd / 'ha, my cosin maugys, well ye have stolen yourself from vs / and what shall we doo from hens forth, sith that we have lost you' / When they had made theyr mone in this maner a long while / reynawde sayd to his brederm & to his folke, 'My lorde, I praye you that ye leve your sorrow, for by noo sorrow the mater came not be remedied / I praye you recomforte yourselfe / for I wyll put me agen to the waye, for to goo to the woode of ye serpant, for to speke wyth the abbot of saynt Lazare, to wyte yf he can telle vs ony tidynges; for my hert judgeth me that a fore xxiii hours I shall knowe the certente / and fare wel, my brederm, tyll I com agen.' 'ye speke well and wysely,' sayd alard, 'but we shall goo wyth you for to kepe you.' 'Certes,' sayd reinawd / 'ye shall not come one fote wyth me' / And thenne reynawd went in to his chambre, and made hym to be armed, & came & lighted vpon bayard his good horse / and yssued out of moutatalban / the sheelde at the necke / and the spere in hande, & cam to balence / and passed over the water. and when he was over

1 Fol. Y. iii. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. 3 moult asprement, F. orig. A. v. 4 swonn, orig.
where he finds two pages belonging to the Emperor's folk.

The pages tell him that Maugis is in the Emperor's hands, and still alive.

Reynawde resolves to rescue Maugis on the morrow.

the water, he fonde two laddes, that cam to water theyr horses from the ooste of Charlemagne. Whan the laddes sawe reynawd, that was soo grete / and was all a lone / they sayd to hym / 'Syre, what be you, that are a lone / ye seme to be a noble man?' 'Chyldren,' sayd reynawd, 'I am of rypus folke, that dyde scape when the sones of aymon hanged hym at mountfawcon.' And thenne he sayd 8 agen to theym / 'what dooth the valiaunt kyng Charlemagn / soo it is soupe tyme wyth hym.' 'Syr,' sayd the laddes, 'the kyng is well mery, & maketh good chere; and he hath forgotten all the 12 sorowe that he dyde make for your mayster rypus, For men have broughte to hym mawgys, that he that Maugis 'S, / i 'i / -kx in the Emperor's hated SOO moclie / 'JN ow telle me, sayd reynawde, 'is mawgys deed?' 'Syr,' sayd the two laddes, 'he is yet alive.' whan reynawd vnderstode that maugys was alive, his herte lepte all in his bely for grete ioye; and the?ne he sayd, 'my fayr chyldren, blessed mote you be, sith that mawgys is not deed / Now 20 I fere me not that he shall deye this daye.' All thus as reynawd spake this, the laddes went theyr wayes / and reynawd abode alone thynkyng at the ryver side / and whan he had thoughte ynoughe, he said to 24 hymselfe / 'fayr god, what shall I doo / I wote not now what shall I thynke or saye / for yf I goo assaylle charlemagn atte his souper, the nyghte is derke / and he shall wene that I have grete folke 28 wyth me / and he shall be a ferde to lese mawgys / and thus he myghte kylle hym anone. but sith that I knowe someche of hym, I shall tary tyll to morowe; and yf he bryngeth hym thenne for to be 32 put to deth / I shall defende hym wyth my power / or elles2 I shall deye wyth hym' / Here leveth the history to speke of reynawd, that is at the ryvers side

1 Fol. Y. iii. back.  
2 ellis, orig.
of baleneon all alone vpon bayard / and retorneth to speke of charlemagn, kyng & emperour of fraunce.

CHAPTER XVI.

4 ¶ How the kyng Charlemagn wold have doon hanged Mawgys incontynent after that oliver had deliverde hym to hym / but 1 thrughe the meane of the XII peres of fraunce, that at the request of mawgis were his surety for one nyghte oonly / he dyde so moche that he scaped with his honour, and acquytance of theym that were his suretyes. And he broughte wyth hym to mountalban the crowne & the swerde of the [kyng] Charlemagn that same nyghte / and also the swerdes of all the peres of fraunce, wherof themperour was ryght sory ; and how the kyng charle-
magn sente worde to reynawd that he sholde sende hym agen hys crowne & his swerd, and all that maugis had borne awaye wyth hym / and he shold gyve him trews for two yeres / to the whiche thyng reynawd graunted, wherof happed many grete evylls afterwarde /

In this party sheweth the history, that whan charle-
magne sawe hym seased of mawgys, he called rowlande, oliver, egyer the dane, the bysshop turpyn, 28 rycharde of normandy, guydellon of bavyere, & the duke naymes, and sayd to theym / 1 My lordes, I

1 Fol. Y. iv.
praye you asmoche as I can, that ye doo make a
 grete galehous, for I am delibered that, afore souer,
 mawgis the grete theef shall be hanged by the necke
 for yf all the worlde had sworne the contrary, yet shal I not kepe hym to the daye were com.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes, 'sith that it playse you that mawgys shall deye, ye shall make hym deye by a nother maner of wyse, yf ye doo after me' / 'And 8 how thenne?' sayd charlemagn. 'Syre, I counseyll you that ye hange not mawgys by nyghte / for reynawde & his bredern shold mocke you / and thei shall saye that ye durste not make hym deye by daye 12 lighte for fere of theim. and therfore, sir, abyde tyll the day becom / and thenne maye ye doo excusion vpon hym wyth worsyp. And whan the tyme shall be com that ye wyll sende hym forth / sende many 16 folke wyth hym / that and reynawd & his bredern com there for to socour hym / that they maye be take / and hanged wyth hym' / 'Naymes,' sayd the kyng / 'ye mocke wyth me / for yf this theef scape 20 me / I am defamed' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgis, 'yf ye be a ferde that I shold goo awaye / I shall gyve you surety that I shall not goo' / 'Who is that,' sayd Charlemagne, 'that shall be thy surety / is there 24 ony man in the worlde so hardy that dare take this?' 'Syr,' sayd mawgis / 'I shall finde ynowe, if it playse you.' 'now shall we see,' sayd Charlemagn, 'how ye shall fynde theym' / And thenne mawgis 28 loked abowte hym, and sawe the xii peres. soo called he olyver, and sayd to hym, 'Syr oliver, ye promysed me whan I yeked me to you / that ye wolde helpe me towarde charlemagne. Now I requyre you that ye 32 wyll be my surety, yf it playse you' / 'wyth a good

1 et estrangle, F. orig. A. vi.
2—2 pour le faire pandre, F. orig. A. vi. back.
3 and = if. 4 Fol. Y. iv. back.
sans prendre congé de vous, F. orig. A. vi. back.
CHAP. XVI. OF THE PEERS’ GOODWILL TOWARDS MAWGIS.

wyll,’ sayd oliver, ‘upon my lifl & my goodes I shall be your surete’ / ‘and ye, syre rowlande,’ sayd mawgis, ‘shall ye not be also for god, my surety / and ye, duke naymes; and ye, egyer / and ye, escouf; and ye, bysshop turpyn / and ye, damp rycharde of normandye; and ye, guydellon of bavere / I praye you all that ye wyll be my surete, for the love of the good knyght reynawd’ / ‘Mawgis,’ sayd the duke naymes, ‘wyll ye promyse to vs upon your feth that ye shall not go from vs wythout our leve’ / ‘ye,’ sayd mawgis, ‘upon my feth’ / And thenne came the twelve peers of be your surete

and asks the twelve peers of France to go surety for him. and the peers all swear to be surety for him.

Mawgis makes promise not to escape without their leave,

and the peers all swear to be surety for him.

Narynes makes Mawgis promise not to escape without their leave,

Mawgis asks for food,

3 lawghynge / ‘And shalt thou ete?’ sayd Charlemagne / ‘ye,’ sayd mawgis, ‘yf I canne have ony mete.’ ‘Now here,’ sayd Charlemagne, ‘what it is of this devyll

1–1 omitted, F. orig. 2 but = except.

3 Fol. Y. v.
here that asketh for mete / and soo lityll a terme he hathe to live. For and I were in his plighte / I sholde not mowe have corage for to ete.' ‘Syre,’ sayd the duke naymes, ‘ye saye yll / For who that hath eten 4 well, he is better at his ease / wherof I praye you, that ye lete hym have some mete.’ And thenne the kynge wasshed his handes for to goo to souper, and sayd, ‘where shall mawgis be for to ete?’ ‘Syr,’ sayd 8 rowlande / ‘he shall be well by you.’ ‘Neuewe,’ sayd the kyng, ‘ye saye right well, For here shall we be sure of hym / and I had thoughte for to doo soo / For I sholde not dare truste hym to be by none other 12 man.’ And thenne the kynge was set atte the table / For as longe as the souper lasted, he durste not ete nor drynke / leest that Mawgys sholde werke witche crafte vpon hym / but mawgis ete ryght well, For he had a 16 goode appetyte to his mete / And whan oliver sawe that, he beganne to lawghe, and shewed rowlande, and after sayd to hym / ‘Have ye seen how the kynge durste not ete all this souper / for fere that mawgys 20 shold werke witche crafte vpon hym’ / ‘Surely,’ sayd rowlande, ‘it is true.’ After souper 1Charlemagn called his stywarde / and sayd to hym / ‘stywarde, I praye you brynge me XL.2 torches, and that they brenne al 24 the nyghte’ / ‘Syr,’ 3 sayd the stywarde 3 / ‘I shall doo your commandement.’ And when Charlemagne had ordeyned this, he returned hym towards Rowlande / and sayd to hym, ‘‘Fayr nevewe, I praye you that ye 28 and oliver, and all the xii peres of Fraunce, that ye wyll watche to nyghte wyth me for to kepe this theef mawgys. and make an hundred men to be armed / that shall whatche wyth vs. and make the playe at 32 the tables & at the chesses 4 / to thende that none of

HOW MAWGIS IS PUT IN IRONS.

vs falle a slepe / And also make a thousande knyghtes to make gode watche wythoute / to the ende that yf mawgys sholde escape vs, they sholde take hym agayne' / And whan Charlemagne had ordeyned this / he set hym doun upon his bed / and he made mawgys to set doun by hym / And of that other parte, Rowlande, Oliver, Ogyer the dane / and all the xii peres rounde aboute the bed1 / 'Syre,' sayd thenne mawgys, 'where shall I slepe' / 'what saye ye?' sayd Charlemagne, 'wyll ye slepe?' 'ye, syre,' sayd mawgys, full fayne / 'yf it playse you to suffre me' / 'By my soule,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye shall have evyll rest here, For ye shall not slepe as longe as ye be a live / For ye shall be hanged tomorowe atte the spryngynge of the daye.' 'Syre,' sayd mawgys / 'ye doo me grete wronge. Wherfore have I gyven you surete, but oonly that I maye have my ease for soo longe as I have for to live / Other suffre me to take my reste, and that I maye slepe / or elles2 holde quyte my suretees' / 'Certes, false theef,' sayd charlemagne, 'all this shall not avayll the / For I wyll that thy suretes goo quyte / and dyscharged / But therfore ye be not oute of my handes' / And thenne he made to be 24 broughte a grete payre of yrens, and fetred hym wyth theym, bothe hys fete togyder, And 3gare the cheyn to be fastened harde at a pyller. and wyth all he gaaff hym a grete color of yren abowte his necke / 28 wherof the kynge kepte the key hymselfe. And whan mawgys was arrayed of this facyon, Charlemagne sayd to hym / 'By my soule, mawgis, ye shall not escape me now' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgys, 'ye mocke well with me. But I telle you now byfore the xii peres of fraunce, that I shall see mountalban or it be to morowe pryme.'

1-1 omitted, F. orig. 2 ellis, orig. 3 Fol. Y, vi.
Whan Charlemagn vnderstode this that mawgys sayd to hym / he trowed to have wexed mad all quycke. Soo he stode vp & set hande to his swerde, and cam to maugys all wrothe for to have 4 smyten of his hede. But whan rowlande sawe that, he avaunced hym & sayd to the kynge / ‘Syr, for god, mercy / for yf ye slewe hym / we ben all shamed for evermore. Syre, ye ought not to take hede to that he 8 sayth to you / For that he sayth / he sayth it like a man that is in dyspeyre. And how myghte that be that he sholde escape you as ye holde hym nowel’ / ‘verely, my nevewe, I wote not how / but that he here 12 a fore tyme hath soo often mocked me / maketh me to doubte of hym / but at all aventure I shall leve hym in peassyll to morowe that he shall be hanged’ / ‘Sir,’ sayd Rowlande, ‘ye saye well. Thenne all they that 16 were there beganne to playe at the tables & atte the chees, and many other games. And whan [it] came that they had played longe, they beganne all to have grete luste to slepe / And whan maugys sawe that, he made 20 his charme. And whan he had made it / they beganne all to fall in a stronge slepe; and charlemagne hymselfe slepte soo harde that he fell backewarde vp on his bed. And whan maugys sawe that Charlemagne was soo 24 faste a slepe / and all the twelve peres of Fraunce, and all the company of theym / He beganne to make a nother charme / that was of suche vertue that his feters that were on his fete, and the color and the cheyn 28 of yren, felle all to the grounde a sondre; and thenne maugys rose vpon his fete / and sawe Charlemagn, that slept so well grovelinge wyth his hede a wrye / and he toke themne a pelow, and righted vp his hede with. 32 And thenne he vngirded him, toke Ioyous his swerde.

1—1 omitted, F. orig. 2 bakewarde, orig. 3 Fol. Y. vi. back. 4 Et quant maugis vist ce ii sault en pieds, F. orig. A. viii.
and gyrd it abowte hym / and after he wente to Rowland / and toke from hym durandall his good swende / and after he toke hawtecleere from olivere, and cortyne

4 from ogyer / And after this he went to the couffres, and toke there-out all the treysour of Charlemagne, & wente wyth all this streighte to montalban. And whan mawgis had taken all this / he toke an erhe, and robbed

8 Charlemagnes noose & his lippes wyth it / and vnhoased him / and after he shoved hym wyth the fynger / and sayd to hym, 'awake, syre emperour! I promysed you yesternyghte that I sholde not go wythoute I sholde then robs the Emperor of his treasures, and departs to Montalban.

12 take leve of you / farewell, I goo now / And whan he had sayd this, he wente oute of the pavylion, and set hym to the waye towards montalban. And whan Charlemagne vnderstode that mawgis had sayd to hym / Charlemagne awakes, and discovers the flight of Mawgis;

16 he rose vpon his fete soo wrothe that men cowde be no more / and called vpon his xii peres that he cowde not awake. And whan he sawe that, he bethought hymselfe of an herbe that he had broughte wyth hym from he arouses the XII Peers and Roland.

20 beyonde the grete see / and toke it and robbed wythall the nose, the mouth, and the eyen of rowlande / and in like wyse to all thother xii peres of fraunce / and incontynente they were awaked / and rose vpon theyr 24 fete sore abasshed / and when they were all awaked / they beganne to loke one vpon a nother, And the firste that beganne to speke was the duke Naymes, that sayd to the kynge, 'Where is Mawgys?' 'By my soule,'

28 3sayd charlemagn, 'ye shall deliver hym me agen / for ye have lete hym goo wyfully / For ye aftre have suffered me to have hanged hym yesterdaye, I had be otherwyse ridle of hym.' 'Rowlande,' sayd olivere, 'sawe ye hym goo hens' / 'Naye, by saynt denys,' saydrowlande. 'I saw hym well goo,' sayd Charlemagne / 'Syre,' sayd rowlande, 'ye oughte theune to have tolde vs of it, For

1 la couronne et le tresor, F. orig. A. viii.
2—2 omitted, F. orig. 3 Fol. Y. vii.
Roland discovers the loss of his sword,

and all the peers sorrow over the subtlety of Mawgis.

Mawgis comes to the river Balencon, and finds Reynawde there, in great grief for him.

he shold not have escaped soo' / And in sayenge this, Rowland loked at hys side, & he sawe not durandall his swerd / wherof he dyde caste a grete syghe. And thenne charlemagne sayd to hym, ' Neewewe, where is your swerde / by my hede, I knowe well that the theef mawgys hathe bewytched vs / For none of vs hath his swerde / and / also he hath my hosyn wyth hym,1' now hath he well mocked vs / Whan the xii peres of fraunce saw that they had lost all theyr good swerdes, they were ryght sory for it, more than any man can saye. And after, rowlande sayd, ' by my feth, mawgys hath wonne a grete gayne, whan he bereth awey thus our swordes / For they ben more worthe than is all parys / And whan Charlemagne perceyved that his cofres were open, he wente anone and loked in, and he was sore an angred / Whan he founde not his crowne, nor the best parte of his treysur / wherof he made grete sorowe, and after sayd, ' Ha, false theef mawgis, full lityll I have goten of the & of thy takynge! ' And who thenne had seen the sorow that the xii peres of fraunce made, wolde have had noo luste to lawghe. ¶ Now shall we telle you a lityll of mawgys, that went as fast as ever he cowde towaerde montalbañ / And he came to passe over the water of Balencon, atte that place where Reynawd was full hevy / and full of sorowe / by cause he knewe noo certeyn tidynge of mawgis / but whan mawgis had passed over the water / bayard smelled hym & began to crye, and came towaerde Mawgys / wolde Reynawde or noo. And whan mawgys sawe Reynawde, he knewe hym well, & sayd to hym, lawghyne / ' Knyght! what be ye that rydeth at this tyme of nyghte' / and Reynawd sayd to hym, ' ye know well that I am your cosin Reynawde, ye sone of aymon' / and thenne he lighted from bayarde / and

1-1 omitted, F. orig. A. viii. back. 2 Fol. Y. vii. back.
CHAP. XVI.] HOW CHARLEMAGNE DISCOVERS MAWGYS' FLIGHT. 373

cam to mawgys, & kyssed hym by grete love many
tymes, and thenne sayd to hym / ‘Fair cosin, thanked
be our lorde that I see you deliverde from the handes
4 of Charlemagn’ / ‘By my feyth,’ sayd mawgys, ‘ye
forgate me well behynde.’ ‘Cosyn,’ sayd reynawde,
‘by my soule, I cowde not doo therto, for I have be
here sith yesterdaye evyn. And I promyse you that I
8 was delivered for to have socoured you, or elles to have
deyed wyth you.’ ‘My cosin,’ sayd mawgys, ‘ye
forgt me well behynde.’ ‘Cosyn,’ sayd reynawde,
12 ‘Thanked be our lorde that I see you deliverde
from the handes of Charlemagne / and his swerde Joyous / durandall, the
swerde of rowlande / and the swerdes of all the xii
16 peres of fraunce’ / ‘cosyn,’ sayd reynawd, ‘ye have
wrought wel, god gramerci; but of the swerde of ogyer,
20 me dysplayseth’ / ‘Cosyn,’ sayd mawgys, ‘I have doon
it all wylfully, to thende that the kyng sholde marke
theyr waye towarde Mountalban. And they mette in theyr waye
alarde, guychard, and the lityll rycharde, that came rydynge / makynge
grete mone for doubte of Reynawde. and whan he
24 had sayd thys / they went on theyr waye towarde mount-
alban. And they mette in theyr waye alarde, guychard,
and the lityll rycharde, that came rydyne / makynge
they ride towards Montalban, and meet the three brethren
28 on their way. They meet joyfully,

and Mawgys
showe Reynawde
all the swords
he has taken,
and the crown
of the Emperor.

1 Fol. Y. viii.
The Four Sons of Aymon. [Chap. XVI.

Mawgis relates his adventures to them,

'When rycharde was entred within the pavylion of charlemayn, and had take the egle of golde, I taried wythin the pavylion for to slee charlemagne. And it lacked but lityll that I slewe hym / and when I trowed 4 to have komen after you, I fonde a grete rouwte of knyghtes that arested me / and so I defended me of all my power. And thenne came olivere of vyenne, that overthrew me doun; and I yelded me to him for his prysoner / the whiche deliverde me to Charlemagne, that wold have made me to be hanged shamfully, but, lord, I thanke you / I have doon soo moche that I am escaped.' 

'Cosin,' sayd alarde, 'it is well happed to you' / when they had devisyd longe ynoughe / they went to mountalban, where they made grete fest / when they were com there, it is not to be asked yf the good lady clare was well glad. For incontynent she dyde to be made redy dyverse metes for the dyner. And when they 1 had eten, they went to rest / for they were wery, 2 & specyally reynawd & mawgis wold payne have slept / 2 And the nexte daye they wente to here theyr masse 20 at the chyrche of mountalban / and when the masse was doon / Reynawde called mawgis his cosin & his breder, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, shewe me the boty that ye gate yesterdaye.' 

'Syre,' sayd rycharde, 24 'gladly, syth it playse you' / And thenne he toke the egle, that was of golde massi / and of precyous stones, and gaaff it to Reynawd. and when Reynawde saw that that gyfte [was] so 3 riche / he was glad of it / bycause 28 of ye grete valure of it / reynawd called mawgis, & sayd to hym / 'cosyn, what shall we doo with this egle' / 'My cosyn,' sayd mawgys, 'me semeth that ye oughte to put hym a bove vpon the apple of the grete towre 2 of 32 this castell, 2 to thende that charlemagn & all his ooste maye see it.' 

'By my soule,' sayd reynawd, 'ye saye

1 hay, orig. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. B. i. back.
3 reihe, orig. 4 Fol. Y. viii. back.
well. And thei toke the egle, & made it to be borne vpon the high tower of montalban. And whan the sonne dyde shyne vpon this egle / it casted soo grete a 4 lighte that it myghte be seen v myles thens / And whan Charlemagn & his folke apperceyved it, they were ryght sory for it & an angred / 

When Charlemagn the grete emperour sawe that 8 the four sones of aymon mocked hym thus / he called to him rowlade & olivere, and all the other peres of fraunce, & sayd to them, 'Lordes, it is sore mysshaped tyll vs sith we came in this londe of gas-

12 cogn / for I have loste my crowne, & joyous mi swerde, & myn egle of golde, that was of soo grete value as ye all knowe / and ye all have lost your goode swerdes, wherof we ben well shamed / and also we have ben 16 chased from the felde shamfully / Now have well ye four sones of aymon shamed vs all, throught that false theef mawgys. wherfore, my fayr lordes, I complaine me vnto you, prayng that ye wyll helpe me to avenge 20 me vpon theyn; for they have doon you shame, as well as to me' / 'Thenne sayd the xii peeres / 'sire, we be redy for to doo all that ye wyll.' 'I wyll,' sayd the kyng, 'that ye ogyer / also the duke naymes, and ye 24 bysshop turypyn, & ye escouff, the sone of oedon, that are of the kindred of reynawde / that ye goo to mountalban, and soo telle to reynawde, to his bredern & mawgis, that they delvery me agen my crowne / Ioious 28 my swerde / and myn egle of golde / and the swerdes of you all / And I shall gyve [t]heyim trews for two yeres. And I shall doo all myn oste to retorn agen in to fraunce' / 'sir,' answerde oger, 'I shall wyth a 32 good wyll do your commaundement / but I fere me of reynawd that he wyll kepe vs prisoners' / 'Ha, ogyer,' sayd Charlemagn, 'ye fere hym but lityll.' When the

1–1 omitted, F. orig. B. i. back.
2 bonne espee, F. orig. B. ii. 3 Fol. Z. i.
barons herde the commaundemente of the kyng, they
made no taryeng, but lighted on horse backe and rode
to montalban. And whan they were com to the
drawbrydge, the porter that kepe warde vpon the gate 4
sayd to thaym / 'Lordes, what be ye?' 1 'my frende,' sayd
Ogyer / 'we are of the folke of Charlemagn / goo your
waye to Reynawd, and telle hym that the duke naymes,
the bysshop turpyn, escouffe the sone of oeden, & 8
ogyer the dane wold speke wyth hym' / 'My lordes,'
sayd the porter / 'I shall goo to hym Incontynent; and
thenne he went to Reynawd, & shewed hym howe
foure knyghtes were at y* gate that wolde speke wyth 12
hym. 'what ben they?' sayd Reynawd. 'My lord,'
sayd the porter, 'they tolde me that thone is called
the duke Naymes, that other the bysshop turpyn / and a
nother escouff the sone of oeden / 2 and the fourth 2 is 16
named ogyer the dane.' Whan Reynawd herde this,
he stode vp, & sayd to his brethern / 'My lordes, here
come four valiaunt knyghtes & wyse / I beseche you
that we shewe to thaym that we ben noo children for 20
to be rokked a slepe' / 'Cosin,' sayd mawgis, 'ye speke
well & wysly / Me semeth 3 it were good that we sholde
knowe wherfore they com, or they entre, to thende that
we may best answere to thaym.' Thenne they wente 24
to the gate / and made the brydge for to be lete doun
And whan it was doun, Richard yssued oute first vpon
the brydge / and went agenst thaym, & made to thaym
grete honour, 4 & sayd to thaym, 'My lordes, ye be 28
right welcom ! this castell is at your commaundement /
For I holde me soo sure of my brother Reynawd, that
I dare offre it to you' / 'Cosyn,' sayd the messagers,
'gramercy' / And thenne Reynaude avauenced himselfe, 32
CHAP. XVI.] OF THEIR RECEPTION BY THE SONS.

and saluted them honourable / and after toke ogier by the hande / and he hym / and the other thre he broughte to the dungeon / where they were receyved honestly by the lady clare, the wyff of Reynawde / And whan Reynawd had receyved them, he made them to set vpon a benche; and thenne he sayd to themy, 'Fair lordes, I praye you that ye wyll telle vs wherfore ye be com, For ye com not wythoute a grete cause' / 'Ye knowe well, syr Reynawde,' sayd ogier, 'that all we that ben here have ever loved you wel / And I promyse you, yf it had be at our wyll / ye sholde have had goode peas wyth the kyng charlemagn; but many tyme he hath vnbrayd vs therof. Ye must knowe that your cosin mawgis hath shamed vs all / For we were his surete to charlemagne, vpon oure ooth to deliver hym at his wyll. And the sayd mawgis is come hither wythout our leve agenst his promyse; and that worse is / he hath robbed the crowne of the kynge charlemagne, & his swerde / and all the swerdes of vs all twenty peres / Wherfore charlemagne sendeth to you worde by vs that ye see here / that ye deliver hym agen his crowne / the egle of golde, and all our swerdes / And he shall gyve you trews for ii yeres, and he shall doo retourne all his armee in to fransce.' / After that oger had sayd this, Mawgys stode vp & spake by leve of reynawd, and said, 'Lordes, ye ben right wel-com in this castell of mountalban / And yf it playse you, ye shall not speke noo more of this mater now, and ye shall abyde this nyghte wyth vs / and to morewe ye shall have an answere of that ye have sayd' / 'Reynawd,' sayed thenne ogier, 'wyll ye kepe that mawgys hath sayd?' 'ye, wythout fawte,' sayd

and they are well received by Lady Clare.

Ogier delivers his message to Reynawde.

Mawgis begs the Barons to defer the matter until the morrow, when they shall receive an answer.

1 Fol. Z. i. back.
2 que nous sommes ticux que vous, F. orig. B. ii. back.
3 Regnault, F. orig. 4 aussi, F. orig.
5 et de ses freres, F. orig. B. iii.
6 et a tres grant joye receux, F. orig. B. iii.
reynawd¹ / 'Syth that it playseth you,² we shall abyde for the love of you.' And thenne mawgys went to the stywarde of Mountalban / and devysed hym the metes / wherof the³ knyghtes of Charlemagne sholde be feested⁴ wythall, and tolde that they sholde be well served / what soever it costed. ⁵ 'and see that the grete cuppe be borne afore the duke naymes / the whiche I dyde conquer at reyns.' ⁶ 'My lorde,' answerde the stywarde, ⁷ 'doubt not ye shall well be served at my power.' And thenne mawgys came agen.⁸ And whan Reynawde sawe hym come, he called hym, & sayd to hym / 'my cosyn, I praye ye see that we be well served.' ⁹ 'Syre,' sayd ¹⁰ mawgys, 'I have purveyd for it all redy' / And [whan] reynawd vnderstode hym, he was glad of it / and beganne to devyse wyth the folke of Charlemagne right honestly and of many thynges. And when he thoughte that ¹¹ the mete myghte be well redy, he and his bredern toke the four knyghtes, and brought theym to the hall to theyr mete. And when they were there, Mawgys made theim wasshe / and thenne he toke the duke naymes ²⁰ and made hym sit doun / and my lady clere nexte hym. And he made sit doun the bysshop turpyn & reynawd, and thenne ogier & alarde / and after guycharde & escouf the sonne of Oedon / and thenne the lityll ²⁴ rycharde. And whan they were all set atte the table / the metes of the fyrste cours were broughte to the borde, and thenne the other one after a nother by goode ordenaunce & fayr. And to seye the trouth, they were ²⁸ well and honourable served, ⁵ and of many & dyverse servyses of royall metes⁵ / And after that they had well eten atte theyr ease / the duke naymes called reynawde, and sayd to hym, 'Goode cosin, I pray you that ye ³² wyll delibere your self for to gyve vs a good answere

¹ omitted, F. orig. B. iii. ² se dist ogier . . . F. orig. B. iii. ³ Fol. Z. ii. ⁴ devers les aultres dont il estoit party. T. orig. B. iii. ⁵ omitted, F. orig. B. iii.
of that ye have herde of vs / 'Lordes,' sayd reynawde, 'I shall doo it in soo moche that the kyg shall have a cause to be contente of me, For I shall doo all that he wyll for to have peas & his love wythall / and that 1 for the love of the other, my lordes, that be here now.' And thenne 2 Reynawd made to brynge the swerde of Charlemagn, and the swerdes of the twelve peres / and also the crowne & the egle of golde. And when Ogyer sawe this, he beganne to lawghe, and sayd / 'By my soule, Reynawd, ye had here a fayre gayne yf ye had keppe it.' And when Rychard sawe that his brother wolde deliver the egle of golde / he began to saye / 'By saynte palle, my fayr brother, ye shall not doo soo / ye shall not delivere agayne that I have wonne well and truly by force of armes' / 'Broder Rycharde,' sayd Reynawd / 'lete me doo, I praye you.' 'I wyll not,' sayd Rycharde, 'by my soule / for Charlemagne hymselfe smote me whyle that I was prysoner wythin his pavylion full shamfully 3 wyth a staff' 4 / 20 'Lordes,' sayd the duke Naymes / 'lete this a lone, And take we that Reynawde gyveth to vs in thanke, for he hath doon ynowghe.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the bysshop turpyn, 'he dooth soo.' And thenne they toke the crowne of Charlemagne & all their swerdes; And when thei had theym / Ogyer sayd to Reynawde, 'My cosyn, I counseyl you that ye come wyth vs, and alarde [and] guycharde 4 shall abyde here for to kepe your castell' / 'Syre,' sayd Reynawd, 'I feere me to sore that the kynge wolde make me to be kyllcd owtrageously' / 'Come on hardly,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'For we shall lede you well and surely; For syth that ye shall be wyth vs / ye ought not to fere noo thynge' /

1 pour lamour de vous et de tous les aultres messeigneurs qui ley sont. Et a celle heure regnault, F. orig. B. iii. back.
2 Fol. Z. ii. back.
3—3 omitted, F. orig.
4 Richart et Maugis, F. orig. B. iii. back.
When Reynawde was accorded for to goo wyth the duke Naymes / and wyth the bysshopp 4 turpyn, wyth ogyer the dane, and escouff the sone of Oedon, they lighted all vpon their horses; and Reynawde mounted vyon oayarde & armed hym / And in lyke wyse dyde Alarde / And whan the duches Clare sawe that Reynawde her lorde wold goo wyth the folke of charlemain / she cam byfore them / and kneled doun byfore theym, & sayd to theym / 'My lorde, I thanke you moche of the favour that ye dyde me' / And theym / 'My lordes, I thanke you moche of the favour that ye dyde me' / And theyn / 'My lordes, I thank you moche of the favour that ye dyde me.'
dye than that ye sholde have any harme.' And thenne he and ogier toke the waye toward ye oost of Charlemagn / and reynawde abode¹ wyth the bysshop turpyn & wyth the sone of oedon. Now herken of pynabell, a spye that longed to charlemagn / Wyte it that the sayd spye was at the ryver side of balencon wyth this felishyp / when the wordes afore sayd were spoken / when the spye had wel understonde all the conclusio / he stele hymself fro the company, & rode a good pas as he myght in ye world, & cam to charlemagn, to whom he sayd in this maner / 'Syr, I brynge you tidynge wherof ye shall be right glad' / 'my frende,' sayd charlemagn, 'thou arte welcom. I praye you telle me what tidynge ye bryng' / 'Wyte it, syre, that I have lefte Reynawd & alarde his brother at the ryver side of balencon, wyth the bysshop turpyn & escouff the sone of oedon / and the duke naymes & ogier are comynge toward ye for to aske leve yf thei shall bryng theym to you wyth surete' / 'Is it trouth?' sayd charlemagn. 'ye, wythoute fawte,' sayd pynabell. 'By my soule,' sayd the kyng, 'I shall rewarde the for it ryght well; but kepe wel that ye shewe not this to noo man vpon thy liff, for I shall put thereto a good remedy.' And themne he beheld aboute him and saw oliver, & sayd, 'Oliver, incontynent & wythoute ony deleye / take two hundred knygtes well horsed & well armed / and lede theym at the ryvers side of balencon / where ye shall fynde reynawde & alarde / and see that ye take theym & bryng theym hether. and yf ye doo this, aske of me what ye wyll / and ye shall have it.' And thenne sayd oliver, 'sire, I shall well doo your commaundement.'³ and themne he toke with hym ii hundred knygtes, as charlemagn had ordened hym, and toke his waye towarde the ryver

¹ tout seul, F. orig. B. iv. ² Fol. Z. iii. back. ³ commaundement, orig.
of balencon / Now god thruge his pyte save the good knyghte Reynawde & alard his dere broder / For they ben in grete perell of theyr lives. This hangyng, that oliver was goon towarde the ryver of balencon / the 4 duke naymes & ogier came to thooost / and lighted afore the pavylion of the kyng, & went in / And whan they sawe the kyng ¹ they made him the reverence¹ / but ² he said noo worde to theim² / whan ogier ³ sawe the 8 countenance of yᵉ kyng,³ he sayd to him / ‘Sir, what semblaunt is this that ye shewe to vs? I merveyll me gretly that ye make vs soo evyl chere, seen that we com fro thens where ye have sended vs / that was, ⁴ to 12 mountalban / where we have spoken wyth reynawd the sone of aimon, the whiche is all togyder redy for to doo all that your playsur is, and so he hath deliverd vs agen your crowne & all our swerdes / as for your egle, 16 ye shall have it whan ye wyll.’ ‘Oger,’ sayd thene charlemaigne / ‘what have ye doon of reinaud / for I am sure that ye have brought him with you’ / ‘syr,’ sayd ogier, ‘it is trouth vereli, we have brought him wyth vs 20 vpon our feyth for to take suretess of you of the trews that ye have graunted hym.’ ‘By saynt denys,’ sayd Charlemaigne, ‘I wyll not therof; for if I can have him ones in my handes, all the golde in the worlde shall not 24 save him, but I shall make hym deye a shamfull deth’ / ‘Sir,’ sayd ogier / ‘what saye ye? I merveille me gretly of that ye have sayd’ / ‘damp emperour,’ sayd thene the duke naymes, ‘soo grete a kyng as ye 28 be, oughte never to have said suche wordes ⁶ as ye now have vttred wyth your mouth⁵ for the value of half his royame / ha goddis, swete syr, gyve not to yourself

¹—¹ Ogier salua charlemaigne moult honnorablement, F. orig. B. iv. back.
²—² le roy charlemaigne, ne luy reedit point son salut et ne luy repondit ung seul mot, F. orig. B. iv. back.
³—³ vit ce, F. orig.
⁴ Fol. Z. iv.
⁵—⁵ omitted, F. orig. B. v.
soo grete a blame / and yf ye doo this that ye saye / I promyse you that I, ogier, the byshop turpyn, & the sone of oedon, we shall yelde you evyll for evill, and yet we shall save reynawd at our power, soo that ye shall not doo him harme / sith that we have brought hym vpon our feyth' / 'Now shall we see,' sayd charlemagn, 'how ye shall conne helpe hym' / 8 'Syr,' sayd ogier, 'yf ye do to vs ony owtrage or dishonour, I promyse you we shall forsake the homage & the feyth that we owe to you / and we shall doo the worste that we can agenst you & agenste your royame' / 12 We shall now presently speke a lityll of oliver, that was goon to balencon for to take reynawd & his broder / Wyte it that when Oliver was com atte the ryver side of balencon, It happed as by fortune that the sayd Oliver overtoke reynawde soo ngyhe, the whiche was on fote, that he cowde not have leyser for to mount vpon bayarde / and when reynawde saw that he myght not lighte vpon his horse by cause that oliver had overtaken him soo sore, he was sore an angred of it, that almoste he wexed mad all quycke / And thenne he tornd him towardse the byshop turpyn & towardse escouf, & sayd to them, 'Vasaylles, ye have betrayed me falsly, & I wolde never have beleved it / wherin ye have doon grete synne & grete evyl.' 'Syre,' sayd the byshop turpyn, 'I swere to you vpon my feythe that herof we never knewe noo thyng, nor never thoughte it, & I promyse you that we shall live & deye wyth you' / and wyth this reynawde tornd towardse oliver, & sayd to hym, 'Oliver, maye ye yelde me agen the goodnes that I shewed to you in the playne of valcolours / I knowe that one curtesie requyreth a nother; For whan ye were to the grounde

1 escouf, F. orig. B. v. 2 de vienne, F. orig. B. v. 3 Fol. Z. iv. back. 4-4 omitted, F. orig. B. v. 5 quant mon cousin maugis vous abactit es pleins de vaux de coiffeurs, F. orig. B. v.
Roland approaches, and tells Reynawde that he is betrayed.

Ogier follows Roland, and swears that no harm shall befall Reynawde.

Oliver advises that they should take Reynawde before Charlemagne, and beg him to make peace with the Sons.

caste, I deliverde you your horse agen, and holpe you to lighte vpon hym agen.' 'Syr,' sayd oliver, 'it is trouth that ye saye / and I promise you that I am right sory that I have founde you now here, For I 4 knowe noo man in the worlde that wolde doo to you ony harme / but I wold be wroth wyth hym.' This hangynge, that reynawd & oliver spake togyder / there cam rowland, that was departed from the ooste after 8 oliver, for to helpe him to take reynawd / And whan he was nygh, he began to crie, 'Ha, ha / Reynawde, by my soule ye be now taken & betrapped!' And whan he had sayd this, there was ogier behynde hym, 12 that had followed hym wyth the poynte of the sper / the whyche sayd to hym, 'By my hede, syre Rowlande, ye shall doo noo harme to Reynawde / For the duke naymes and I have broughte hym hether 16 vpon our feyth for to take the suretees of the trews that we have gyven to hym in the kynges behalve, as ye knowe he had charged vs to doo. And I telle you, syre Rowland, yf ye doo to hym ony harme, 20 ye shall doo it to 1 vs.' 'Ogyer,' sayd Rowlande / 'ye shall now be an evyll suretee for hym.' 'Rowlande,' sayd Ogyer, 'I make myn avow to you, that yf ye sawte Reynawde, we four 2 that ben here shall helpe 24 hym agaynste you' / 'Rowland,' sayd themne Olyvere, 'I praye you that ye lete Reinawde in peas / For I promyse you he dyde ones to me a curteyus torne, and a grete playsure / And now I wyll rewarde hym 28 for it, yf it playse you / and I shall telle you what we shall doo. We shall lede Reynaude before Charlemagne, And we shall praye hym that he treateth hym courtely, And we shall parforce ourselfe to make hys 32 appoyntemente. 'Lordes,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'Olyver hath spoken honestly. I counseylle that we lede reynawd to fore Charlemagne, for to see what he

1 Fol. Z. v. 2 omitted, F. orig.
wyll doo of hym / And I swere god, yf he wyll doo ony owtrage to Reynawde, we shall not suffre it, for to deye for it / and we shall helpe hym to save hymselfe, to our power’ /illary 8 After all thyse wordes, they toke themselfe on their waye / for to lede Reynawde to Charlemagne.

W

han Rowlande and olyver had broughte Reynawde in to the pavylion of the kyng Charlemagne, Wyte it that the duke Naymes, the bysshop Turpyn, Ogyer the dane / also Escouff the sone of Oedon, wente never one fote from Reynawde / But 12 whan Olivere wolde have presented Reynawde to Charlemagne / Ogyer avaucned hymselfe / and sayd to the kyng in this maner / ‘Syre, ye knowe how ye dyde sende vs four that ben here a fore you, in your message to Mountalban, for to telle vnto Reynawd as ye had charged vs / To whome we dyde shew in your behalve, that yf he wolde deliver to you agayne your crowne, 1 and the swerdes that Mawgys had borne 20 wyth hym, and the egle of golde, ye sholde gyve hym trews for two yeres, and that ye shold doo tourne your ooste in to Fraunce agayne. Wyte that Reynawde hath doon all that we have requyred hym of in your behalve / And we have broughte hym wyth vs vndre your sauff conduytte / and soo we take hym vndre our charge that he sholde have noo more harme than we sholde. Notwythstandyngye, ye have made hym to be taken / the whyche thynge we wolde never have thoughte that ye wolde have doon it / Seen that here ben your crowne and your swerdes / and the egle of golde ys at your playsure whan ye 32 wyll have it. And, moreover, we promysed hym that yf ye dyde to hym ony harme / that ye sholde do it to vs as well as to hym. And I promyse you, yf ye doo to hym ony harme / ye shall be gretely blamed

1 Fol. Z. v. back.
for it of all the worlde / But and yf ye wyll werke honestly here in, and like a true emperour ¹ and a kynge, ² for to kepe that nether ye nor we be not blamed for it, sende Reynawde agayne to mountalban ³ wyth this that he hath taken to vs / And when he shall be therin agayne / doo to hym the worste that ye canne' /

Ogyer,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye speke for noughte, ⁴ and all your felawes also / For I shall not doo soo; but I shall doo after my owne wyll, though ye all had sworne the contrari. And soo shall I not do of Reynawde as I dyd of the false theef ¹² Mawgys' / And whan Charlemagne had sayd thus, he tourned hym towards Reynawde, and sayd to hym, 'Reynawde, Reynawde, I holde you now / Certes I shal soo kepe you that ye shall not deceyve me,' ¹⁶ as dyd mawgis / ³ For I shall make you anone to be smytten / and cutte in smalle peces, 'and themne brente all to powder.' ⁴ 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye shall not doo soo / and god wyll' / 'Ogyer,' sayd ²⁰ Charlemagne / 'wyll ye deffende agenste me my mortall enmye' / 'Syre,' sayd ogyer, 'I wyll not deffende your enmyes agenste you / but I promyse you that I shall defende my trouthe agaynste all men.' ²⁴ 'Syr,' sayd thenne Reynawd, 'what is your playsur that I doo / ye have called me traytour / wyte it that I was never suche / nor noo man of my linage / nor I know not in the worlde that sayth that I have ²⁸ be a traytour / or that I have doon ony treyson agaynste you / but that I shold fyghte in the qu[a]rell agenste hym, body to body.' 'By my feyth,' said Charlemagne / 'I shall make it to be proved vpon you ³² bi force of armes' / 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'ye speke now as a kyng, and here is my gage that I gyve,

¹–¹ omitted, F. orig. ² ne enchanter, F. orig. B. vi. ³ Fol. Z. vi. ⁴–⁴ omitted, F. orig. B. vi.
sayeng that I am as true a man as ony that is in all the world / and in like wyse all thei of my linage / Thenne Charlemagn sayd to hym / 'Yf ye gyve me surtes / wite that I shall take vp your gage, and not elles' / 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'I shall fynde surete ynoughe.' Thenne he tourned hym & sawe ogyer / and sayd to hym / 'sire ogyer, come forthe, 8 and ye duke naymes, and also the bysshop turpyn, and ye escouff the sone of Oedon / be my suretees, I praj'e you / for ye oughte to be soo / Ye knowe that I dyde never vntrewth.' 'Reynawd,' sayd the duke 12 naymes, 'we shall be suerte for you wyth a good wyll' /

Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'syre, here ben my suretees that I take you / are ye contente of theym' / 16 'Ye,' sayd charlemagn / 'I aske no more,' / 'Syr,' sayd thenne Reynawde, 'who is that shall make the bataylle' / 'by my Feyth,' sayd Charlemagn, 'myself shall it be' / 'Syre,' sayd rowlande / 'ye shall not doo 20 so, & 2playse you / For I shall fyghte for you my selfe.' 'Syre,' sayd reynawd, 'ordeyn in your place suche as it shall playse you.' and whan he had sayd this worde / bayarde was taken agen to reynawd, 24 the whiche lighted vpon & went towarde mountalban. and wyth him went oger the dane, the duke naymes, & escouf the sone of oedon, and togider alarde, that had be taken as reynawde. And whan thei were 28 com nygh mountalban / guychard, rycharde, & mawgis sawe theim com, & came theim agenste / and whan rycharde sawe reynawde / he asked of him how he had doon / 'by my Feyth,' sayd reynawde, 'we were not 32 welcom / For the kyng knewe that we were at balenc'on, where oger had left vs, and he sent anone oliver & rowlande for to take vs and were overtaken so sodenly that we cowde not lighte vpon our horses;

1 ellis, orig. 2 Fol. Z. vi. back.
and we were broughte to charlemagn / and I promise you he is a cruell man, fulfylled wyth all cursednes / And thus recounted reynawde to his brethern all that ye have now herde a fore / 

That nyght reynawd & his company made good chere at montalban, & made the folke of charlemagn to be wel feested by the lady clare, his wyff, right honourable / and after thei had souped wel, they went to bed 8 for that nyght; and when the mornyng was com, that everi man was vp / reynawde & his felishyp went to here masse in the chapell of saynt nycolas, and reynawd offred iii marke of golde / And when the masse was 12 doon, Reynawde and all his barons asked after theyr armes for to armetheim. Whan thei were well armed, reynawde toke leve of his wyff afore all the company; and thenne he called to hym his breder & mawgis / 16 and sayd to theim, 'My lordes, I leve this castel in your proteccyon & sauff garde / and I recomende you my wyff & my childern / for now I goo fight wyth the best knyght of yere worlde, I now I knowe not what shall 20 betyde of me; wherfore I prai you that ye wyll kepe well this castell / for I promise you, ye I deye, ye shall have nede of it. here is oger that shall com wyth me, & the duke naymes also / for thei ben my suretees to 24 the kyng charlemagne.' 'By my soule,' sayd alarde, 'ye speke for nought / for we shall goo wyth you, & we shall bere you company where somever ye goo, and soo shall we see the batayll / and how ye shall be mayntened in your right / and ye shall have nede of helpe, ye shall fynde vs redy to your socours.' 'By saynt paul,' said oger the dane, 'alarde hath spoken wysely' / and when reynawd sawe this, he called mawgys, and sayd 32 to him / 'My fayr cosin, I praye you that ye wyll abythe here, and that ye will kepe all well, sith that my breder wyll com wyth me.' 'Reynawde,' sayd mawgys,

1 Fol. Z. vii
I shall doo as it playseth you / and I promyse you that mouatalban shall have noo harme thrughe my de-fawte / Whan reynawd had ordered all well / he toke on incontynent his waye in the feliship of his bredern, & of the barons afore sayd. And whan they came there, as the bataylle shold be doon, Reynaude lighted a fote, & taryed after rowland. ¶ Here leveth the 8 history to speke of reynawd, of his brethren, & of thother barons that were in the company of the sayd reynawd, And retorneth to speke of rowland, how he & reynawde made their bataylle thone aynst thother /

CHAPTER XVII.

12 ¶ Here sheweth how reynawde faught aynst rowland, the whiche he conquered by the wyll of god, & broughte hym to mountalban, wherof charlemagn was full hevy & wroth / and also how mawgys bare the empereur Charlemagne to mountalban vpon bayard all a slepe, and delivered hym to reynawd in a bed / 3 where reynawd laye / and how mawgis after this went away, & toke thabyte of a heremite, & left his kins-men, & lived pouerli, for he wold not let ye peas of reynaud to Charlemagn / For the werre hath lasted long ynoughe.

Now sheweth the tale, that whan rowland saw the day, he rose fro his bed, & wente, after he was

1 au pin de montfaucon, F. orig. B. vii. back.
2 et comment leurs armes furent faictes et comment le chap fust devise ne a quil demoura a la fin des armes, F. orig. B. vii. back. 3—3 omitted, F. orig. 4 Fol. Z. vii. back.
Roland prepares for his fight with Reynawde.

He approaches Monfaucon, where he finds Reynawde awaiting him.

Roland prepares for his fight with Reynawde.
When reynawde had sayd that worde, he spored bayarde wyth the spores, and cam agenste rowlande, and rowlande agenst reynawd / and they gaaff to eche other soo grete strokes at theyr brestes that they brake bothe their speres all to peces; and wyth the rennyng that they made agenste eche other, they recounted the one the other so harde wyth theyr 8 sheeldes that reynawde muste nedes faire down to the erthe / wyth his sadle bytwene his thyes / by cause of the gyrtes that brake a sondre / and rowlande lost hys styropes wythall. And whan reynawde sawe hymselfe 12 a grounde / he rose vp ryght quyckly, and lighted agen vpon bayard with onte sadle / and cam vpon rowland wyth his swerde in his hannde, and gaaff him so grete a stroke that rowland felt hym selfe sore greved wythall. And whan he sawe that reynawd had stonyed hym so sore / he set hande to durandall his good swerde / and raume aspreli vpon reynawd / And whan reynaude sawe hym come / he went right fiersly vpon rowland / and thenne beganne the bataylle to be harde / and sore cruell bytwene theym two / And I promyse you they lefte not one pec of theyr harneys hole / nether vpon thone nor vpon the other / but it were all to brosten & beten a sondre / in somoche that the barons that loked vpon theym had grete pyte of thone & of thother. Whan the duke naymes had beholde a longe while of this wonderfull batayll, he began to cry as lowde as he coude, sayeng in this manner / 'Ha, kyng charlemagn, ye are over cruell / for thrughe your cruell malice ye put to deth II. of the best knyghtes of the world / wherfor, ye shall ones abie or longe.' Whan reynawde saw that neyther of theim two cowde not overcom the other, he sayd to Rowland, 'Yf ye byleve me, we shall lighte down a fote bothe, to thende that we kyll not our horses /

1–1 omitted, F. orig. 2 thein, orig. 3 Fol. Z. viii. back.
The knights determine to fight on foot, for fear their horses should be killed;

the combat is then renewed,

but neither knight can overcome the other,

and they both fall down from weariness,

For ye we slee theym, we shall never recover none suche nor soo good.' 'Ye saye well,' sayd rowlande / 'and I am soo contente' / And thenne they descended a fote vpon the medowe. 'Rowlande,' sayd reynawd, 4 'now are we per to per / Now it shall be seen whiche of vs two shall be mayster of the place' / And wyth this they ranne the one vpon the other as proude as it had ben two lions. who that had seen thenne the grete 8 strokes and the dangerous that they gave to eche other /

he sholde have sayd that there had be never suche two knyghtes in all the remenaunt of the worlde. whan rowlonde sawe that he cowde not wynne reynawd, he 12 came to hym, and toke hym wyth a full arme / and so dyde reynawde hym. in lyke wyse in maner of wraste-lynge togyder a grete whyle / wythout that the one cowde cast doun the other by noo waye / And I promyse you 16 that a man sholde wel have goon a myle or ever they lefte ech other goo, whan they were cowpled ones togyder / And at the laste, whan they sawe that the one cowde not caste doun the other / they lete ech other goo, the one here, and the other there, for to take their brethe / For they were right wery, and sore traveyld so moche that almoste they / myghte not stonde no lenger / and their helmes, sheeldes / and 24 their armes were all to-cut & broken, and the grounde where they foughte thus was all to stamped 1and beten wyth their fete 1 / as men had beten comme there vpon. 2

Whan Charlemagn sawe that the one cowde not 28 overmayster the other, and how they were bothe evyll arayed / he was sore a ferde for his newe rowlande / And thenne he kneled doun vpon his knees, & heved his handes togyder towards hevyn, & began 32 to saye 3 / 'Good lord, glorious, that made worlde, see, hevyns, and therth / and deliverde the holy vyrgyn

1—1 omitted, F. orig. B. viii. back. 2 vopn, orig. 3 en plorant, F. orig.
margarete from the bely of the horruble dragon / and
Ionas from the bely of the fysshe / I beseeche you also
that ye wyll deliver my neewe rowlond from this
bataylle mortall, and sende me suche a token wherbi I
mai departe thise two knightes from eche other, to the
honour of the one and of the other.' Whan alande, guycharde & rychard sawe their broder so wery, they
were a ferde of his persone. And thenne they began also
to praye god that he wolde kepe theyr brother Reyn-
wad fro deth & from pryson / And whan they had made
theyr praiers / our lorde, for the prayer of Charlemagne,
shewed a fayr myracle / for he made sye soo grete a
clowde, & so thycke, that they myghte not see eche
other / Thenne rowlande sayd to reinawd / 'where are
ye goon, reynawd / other it is nyghte, or elles I can not
see never a whit' / 'Noo more do I,' sayd reynaued,
'verely' / 'Reynawde,' sayd rowlande / 'I praye you doo
to me a curteys torne, and a nother tyme / I shall doo
to you asmoche for you, yt ye requyre me therof.'
'Syre rowlande,' sayd reinawd, 'I am redy for to doo
all that ye wyll requyre me of, soo that my honour be
saved' / 'Gramerci, reynawd, of that ye hae graunted
me / Wyte that the thynge that I wyll desire of you is
this, that ye brynge me wyth you to montalban.'
'Syr rowlond,' sayd reynawd, 'yt ye wyll doo this /
I shall be right glad therof / By my feyght I shall goo
there wyth you wythoute ony falte, yt it playse
you' / 'Syr,' sayd reynawd, 'god of his goodnes yelede
you the worship that ye wyll now doo to me / for I
have not deserved it unto you.' 'Syr reynawd,'
sayd rowlande / 'Wyte that I do this bycause that I
knowe well that ye be in the right, 3 and that ye
fyghte in a goode quarell / and I am in the wronge' /
And whan rowlande had sayd this, he receyved his

1 Fol. A.A. i. 2 se dist rolanl, F. orig. C. i.
3-3 omitted, F. orig. C. i.
sighte, and sawe as he dyde 1 a fore, and thenne he sawe vylaunche his good horse, and he lighted upon hym / and in like wyse reynawde vpon bayarde / And when charlemagne sawe this, he was sore abasshed, 4 and began to calle & crye, 'Lords, lords, now see! I wote not what I sholdc saye / for reynawd ledeth rowland with hym. Now shall I see yf ye shall lete hym goo.' when charlemagne had spoken thus / he 8 cam to his horse, and lighted vpon him / and he began to crie / 'Now shall I knowe who ben my frendes.' when the barons of fraunce herde charlemagne speke thus, they spored theyr horses, & ranne after reynawd / 12

Whan ogier saw Reynawde come wyth rowland that he broughte wyth hym, he was right glad, and he came agenst reynawde, and sayd to hym / 'Syre, ye have well wrougte this day that ye have taken 16 suche a proye' / 'Ogyer,' sayd reynawde / 'I promyse you rowlande hath lete hymselfe to be taken wyth his good wyll.' Thanked be god of it,' sayd the duke naymes. 'Reynawd,' sayd oger, 'gou your waye to 20 mountalban; and the bysshop turpyn, the sone of oedon, & I shall retorne agen / and we shall tary charlemagne that foloweth after you, and we shall doo so moche that ye shall be well at mountalban or they 24 overtake you' / 'Ogyer,' sayd rowlande, 'ye saye well / and I thanke you of your curtesie' / Whan they had thus shortly spoken togyder / reynawde & rowlande rode soo faste that they came to mountalban / It is not 28 to be asked yf rowlande was well feested at moun-
talban; I promise you it is not possyble to feste a prynce better nor more honourable than he was at mountalban / This hangyng, ogier was come agenste 32 kyng Charlemagne / and he dyde so moche by his fayr langage, that he helde the kyng / tyll that he thoughte that reynawd & rowlande myghte be well at moun-

1 Fol. A.A. 1, back.
talban by that tyme / And whan he had doon soo, he spored his horse, and wente to mountalban after the other / Where as he myghte well goo wythoute to be vnbrayed for it / for he was one of ye suretes of reynawde, as ye have herde / and whan charlemagn sawe this, he folowed hym vnto the gates / And whan he was come to the gate of mountalban / he began to 8 crye wyth a hie voys, 'Bi god, reynawd, this that ye have doon shall avaylle you lityll, for ye shall never have peas wyth me as longe as I am man a live.' And whan he had sayd this, he retorned him fro the gate / and said to oliver that was there wyth hym / 'Oliver, goo lightly to mountbendell, and bring here all my ooste / for I will besiege all this castell.' Then seyde oliver, 'I shall goo there wyth a good wil, but, & playse 16 you, ye shall com wyth me, for I promyse you, if ye come not there yourself, they shall not come hether for me.' 'Theyme shall I goo there myselfe.' and thus toke charlemain his waye towarde mountbendell, where his 20 ooste leye. Whan his folke sawe him come, they went agenst hym, & began to saye to hym, 'Sir, what have ye doon wyth rowlande?' 'lordes,' sayd charlemagn, 'rowland is goon to mountalban / but I commanaude you all, that incontynent, wythout delay that my sege be transported all rounde abowte mountalban / and ye damp oliver, shall bere the oriflam / and damp rycharde of normandy shall lede our oost.' Whan charlemagn had commanauded all this, there was none that sayd agenst it / but set theymselwe to bringe downe the tentes & pavylions / and to trusse & lede their bagages / and caryed all to mountalban / Richard of Normandy went wyth twelve thousande men to balencon, to kepe the passage of the ryver

1 Fol. A.A. ii. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. C. ii. 3 Quant tout lost fut trouffe . . . F. orig. C. ii. 4 dix, F. orig. C. ii.
river, while all the host of Charlemagne assemble before Montalban.

tyll all the ooste were over the ryver. This hangynge, charlemagn had putte hymselfe a fore, for to see where he myghte best pitche his tentes and his pavylions / for to kepe sege royall ¹ afore the castell of Montalban. And when all the ooste was come afore mountalban, the kyng made Incontynent his pavylion to be set vp byfore the grete gate / And when all the ooste was sette / the nyghte watche of the grete towre came to mawgys / and sayd to hym / 'Syr, wyte that charlemagne is come wyth his oost / and he hath put his pavylion byfore the mayster gate / 'Is it true?' said mawgis. 'ye, without fawte,' sayd the watche / 'Now care not for it,' ¹² sayd mawgis / 'for charlemagn seketh his dommage; and he shall have it soner than he weneth' / Thenne went mawgys to Reynawde / And shewed hym how charlemagne was come wyth all his oost.² And when ¹⁶ Reynawde herde this, he wente to rowlande, and sayd to hym / 'Syre, ye muste wyte that charlemagne your vnkle hath leyd sege afore vs / but I promyse you that yt it were not for the love of you / I sholde shewe ²⁰ hym that that he hath not doon well.' 'Reynawde,' sayd rowlande / 'I thanke you moche; but one thynge I wyll telle you / save your correctyon. Me semeth that I oughte to sende to myn vncele, the duke Naymes, ²⁴ Ogyer the dane / and also the bysshopp Turpyn, that shall shewe to hym in this maner / Syre emperour, wyte that Reynawd, for the love of you, ³ wyll not gyve noo yrens to your nevewe, nor he ³ wyll not put hym in pryson, but he maketh hym as goode chere as he dooth to hys owne selfe / And that more is, Reynawde, his breder / and mawgys doo presente theymselfe ⁴ for to gyve theym and theyr castell vnto your handes / soo ³² that theyr lives be saved' / 'Ye speke well and wysely,

¹ Fol. A.A. ii. back.
² et luy sestoit louge devant la maistresse porte, F. orig. C. ii.
³–³ omitted, F. orig.
⁴–⁴ de culx rendre a vostre volente, F. orig. C. ii.
syre rowlande,' sayd reynawde / 'and soo I am redy to
do as ye wyll have it.' 'Rowlande,' sayd the duke
Naymes, 'I dare not goo to hym; ye maye well ynough,'
sayd Rowlande / 'for ye be not hated of the kynge.'
'Duke naymes,' sayd Ogyer, 'we shall goo 1 to Charle-
magne, 1 yf ye 2 wyll goo after me' / And they accorded
that they two sholde goo toguder to the kynge, for to
8 shewe vnto hym as Rowlande had devisyd / And whan
thise two prynces / 1 the duke Naymes and Ogyer, 1
were come to the pavylion of Charlemagne, they 3 saluted hym
reverently, 4 and the duke Naymes spake to hym in this
12 maner of wyse: 'Syre emperoure, your nevewe Row-
lande recomendeth hym Humbly to your goode grace /
the whiche Reynawde kepeth wythin mountalban for
his prysoner not vnkyndely, but he maketh to hym as
16 goode chere / 4 and as grete honour he bereth vnto hym, 4
as he were his owne brother and his soverayne lorde;
and all this he dooth for your love / And demaundeth
of you peas, 4 if it playse you for to graunte it to hym, 4
20 by suche maner that he shall gyve you mountalban /
and the egle of golde, and he shall lete goo Rowlande
at his liberte wythoute raunsom. And also he shall
yelde hymselfe to you / and his brethern in likewyse /
24 and also Mawgis, for to doo your wyll wyth theym /
sauff theyr lives / And they shall promyse you, yf theyr
servyse playseth you, that they shall serve you agenst
all men, wyth all their power and puyssaunce / soo
28 that ye shall have cause to thanke theym for it.'

W

When Charlemagne vnderstode thise wordes / he
shoke all for grete angre / And beganne to
saye to the duke Naymes, and to the other that were
32 come to hym, 'Flee out of my pavylion, evyll folke! I
merveylle me how ye have durste come here wythin.
And I telle you that Reynawde shall have noo peas

1–1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. A.A. iii.
3 thye, orig.  4–4 omitted, F. orig. C. ii. back.
wyth me, but yf I have mawgys, for to doo my wylle of hym.' When the barons understode charlemagne that spake thus / they came oute of his pavylion, and toke noo leve at hym / but returned Incontynente to moun-
talban / When they were come there, Rowlande and 1 Reynawd asked theym how they had doon wyth Charlemagne. 'Lordes,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'it is no force to be asked after it / For Charlemagne wyll not doo it, but yf men take to hym Mawgys, for to doo his wylle of hym.' / 2 'Lordes,' sayd Reynawd, 'I am sorry for it / I merveyll how Charlemagn is soo harde herted; and I make myn a vowe to god / he shall not have 12 Mawgys, thoughe I sholde deye for it.' / After thise wordes they wente to theyr mete, and Mawgys made theym to be served plenteously and worshipfully. And when they had souped, the beddes were heeled, and 16 they wente anoone to bed / And when Reynawde wolde goo to his bed / he called to hym Mawgys, and sayd to hym / 'Cosin, I praye you that ye doo make good watche to nyghte / For ye knowe that our lives lieth ther vpon.' 'Syre,' sayd mawgys, 'feere not for to slepe well / and reste yourselfe.' For I promyse you thys castell shall be well kepte by goddys grace' / And when all the barons were a bed / Mawgys wente to the 24 stable 3 and, salded bayarde / and thenne he lighted vpon hym / and he cam to the gate, and sayd to the porter, 'My freude, open the gate, for I muste goo oute a lityll / and abyde me here / for I shall come agayne soone' / 'Syre,' 28 sayd the porter / 'I shall doo soo wyth a good wyll' / Thenne wente oute Mawgys streyghte to the pavylion of Charlemagn / And when he was come there, he beganne to make his cherme / and broughte a slepe all 32 they that were in the oost. And when he had doon soo / he wente to the bed of Charlemagne, and toke

1 Fol. A.A. iii. back. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. C. ii. back. 3 de regnault, F. orig. C. iii.
hym in his armes / and broughte him vpon bayarde /  
And when he had doon soo / he wente his wayes  
agayne to mountalban / and broughte Charlemagne  
4 wyth hym.  

And when he was come there agayne, he  
toke Charlemagne from bayarde,1 and bare hym in to  
his chambre / and layd hym in 2his bed.  
When all  
this was thus doon, He toke a torche and fyred it /  
8 and pytched it bytwene the strawe and the bedsted /  
soo that it helde faste evyn before the wysage  
of Charlemagne / And after, he wente to the chambre of  
Reynawd, and sayd to hym, ‘Cosyn, what wolde ye  
12 well gyve that sholde deliver Charlemagn in to your  
handes’ / ‘By my soule,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘I have noo  
thyng but that I sholde gladly give it, soo that I  
myghte have hym here wythin this castell of mountal-  
16 ban.’  

‘Cosin,’ sayd Mawgys / ‘wyll ye promyse me  
that ye shall doo to hym noo harme of his body /  
nother your brethern, nor none of yours / and I shall  
putte hym into your handes evyn anoone’ / ‘Cosyn,’  
20 sayd Reynawde, ‘I promyse3 you that vpon my feyth.’  
‘Nowe come wyth me,’ sayd mawgys.  

And thenne  
mawgys broughte reynawde in to his chambre / and  
shewed hym Charlemagne that was in his bed, and  
24 slepte; and after he sayd to hym, ‘My cosyn Reynawde,  
now ye have here Charlemagne, kepe hym soo well  
that he scape not you’ / And when mawgys had  
delivered Charlemagn to Reynawde / he came to the  
28 stable where he had put bayarde, And toke some  
strawe and robbed his backe wythall, and his hede /  
and thenne he kyssed hym all wepynges, and toke leve  
of hym / And after, he wente and toke the palster and  
32 the cloke, and came to the porter, and gaff hym all his  
other raymentes that he wered afore / and went out of  
mountalban. /  

1—1 omitted, F. orig. C. iii.  
2 Fol. A.A. iv.  
3 proimyse, orig.
Now leveth the history to speke of Reynawde / and of Charlemagne a lityll / and shall shewe of mawgys, that lefte all his kynred and frendes, 1 and became an heremyte.  

CHAPTER XVIII.

How after that mawgys had delivered Charlemagn in to the handes of Reynawde his 2 cosyn, he wente wythoute ony leve from mountalban / in to a woode beyonde the ryver 3 of Dordonne in to an hermytage / where as he lived like an heremyte a poure liffe, for to doo penaunce for his synnes.

Now sheweth the history, that whan Mawgys had delivered Charlemagne for prysoner vnto Reynawde, he wente oute of mountalban wythoute the leve of Reynawde, and wythoute the knowledge of ony of the castell / excepte of the porter. And wyte it, that the sayd mawgys wente soo longe that he came to the ryver of Dordonne / and passed over the water in a bote / And whan he was over, he entred in to a wylde foreste / and walked wythin it tyll it was none. And whan he had goon ynoughe thoru[h] the woode / he behelde a side / and sawe a lityll hylle / and vpon it a lityll howse in maner of an heremytage 4 / he wente to it, and founde the place 5 devoutly and playsaunte 5 / For a fore the gate sprange a quycke fontaine. And mawgys wente in to the chapell / and kneled a fore an ymage of our lady

1 1 et sen ala hors de moutauban habitue moult pourement, F. orig. C. iii. back.
2 2 bon cousin, F. orig. 3 Fol. A.A. iv, back.
4 4 Quant il congneut que sestoit ung hermitaige . F. orig. C. iii. back.
5 5 moult plaisant, F. orig.
that was there and prayed our lorde that he wolde parchonne hym his synnes. And as he was there makynge his prayer a devocyon toke hym so grete that he made his avowe to god that he sholde dwell in that place, and that he sholde serve there from that dyne forthe on, and that he sholde ete none other but suche wylde herbes as grewe in the woode. And thenne he prayed our lorde that Reynawde and his bretherne myght have peas wyth Charlemagne. And whan mawgys had doon his prayer he rose vp, and cam oute of the chapell and toke the sadle from hys horse, and the brydel and so lete hym goo to the grasse and wente agen to the chapell. But here leveth the hystory to speke of mawgis, that was become an heremyte, And retourneth to shewe of Reynawde and of his brethern, that had Charlemagne for theyr prysoner wythin theyr castell of mountalban.

CHAPTER XIX.

How the barons of Fraunce that were atte Mountalban were sory that they cowde not awake the emperoure Charlemagne that Mawgys had broughte a slepe thrugh his arte. But whan the tyme of the charme of mawgis was passed, the kynge awoke by hymselfe, And he founde hymselfe at mountalban he sware that he never sholde make peas wyth Reynawde as longe as he was prysoner. And how Reynawde lete hym goo agayne to his oost vpon his horse

1 qui estoit moult devoete, F. orig. C. iv.
2 pour faire ce quil auoit en pensee, F. orig. C. iv.
3 Fol. A.A. v. 4 et apourte a Montauban, F. orig. C. iv.
bayarde / wherof Reynawde repented hym afterwarde ryght sore. For soone after that, charlemagn dyde besiege mountalban of so nyghe / that he famysshed Reynawde 4 and his bretherne wythin, wyth his wyff and chyldren.

In this party sheweth the history, that whan mawgys had delivered Charlemagne in to the handes of 8 Reynawde / and that he was goon as ye have herde, Reynawde called to hym his brethern / and sayd to theym / 'Come hether, my fayr brethern / telle me what we shall doo wyth Charlemagne, that we holde 12 now in our handes / Ye knowe how longe that he hath dommaged vs / and hath doon to vs grete harms wythoue reyson; wherfore me thynketh that we oughte to avenge vs vpon hym, sith that we have hym.' 'Sire,' 16 sayd Rycharde, 'I canne not saye what ye wyll doo of hym. But, and ye wyll beleve me, he shall be hanged forthe wyth / For after he were deed / there nys no man in all Fraunce that we sholde feere ony thyng.'

When reynawd vnderstode the counseyll 1 that rycharde his brother had gyven hym, he lokéd doun towarde therthe, and began to thynke sore / And whan Rycharde sawe hym muse soo, he asked him what he thought / and yf he cared who shold doo execucyon vpon the kyng / 'For,' sayd Richard 3 / 'ye shall not lacke for that, for none other 4 shall hange him but myself / and that I shall doo evyn a noone / yf ye wyll deliver hym 28 vnto me.' After thise wordes, reynawd ryghted hys hede vp, and sayd, 'My bredem, ye know well that cha[r]lemayn is our soverain lorde/ And of thother parte, ye see how rowland, the duk naimes, oger the dane, the 32

---

1 counseyll, orig. 2 Fol. A.A. v. back. 3–3 omitted, F. orig. C. iv. back. 4 ether, orig.
CHAP. XIX. HOW REYNAWDE COUNSELS PEACE WITH CHARLEMAGNE. 403

bysshop turpyn, & also escouff the sone of oedon, are wythin for to make our poyntment wyth Charlemagn/ for they know well that we ben in the right, & the kynge in the wrong. And thus yf we kylle hym, be it with ryghte or wyth wrong, all the worlde sholde renne vpon vs; nor never, as longe as we lyve, we shall not be wythoute werre.' And when reynawd had sayd this/ alard spake in thys maner / 'Brother, ye have spoken wysely; but ye see that we canne not have peas wyth Charlemagne by noo wyse. Me semeth. that they oughte to aske it of hym ones for all; and yf he wyll not/ lete vs kepe hym prysoner? / 'Brother,' sayd guycharde, 'ye saye well, but my herte telleth me that he shall never make peas with vs nor love vs' / 'Lordes,' sayd rycharde, 'me semeth that we have a goode hede of Reynawdeoure broder, thanked be our lorde / the whiche hath governed vs right well hereto / Lete hym shyfte with the kynge as he wyl, and that that he wyll shall be doon' / 'By my feyth,' sayd Alard, 'Richarde speketh well' / And when they were all accorded to that / that Reynawde sholde doo, the foure brethern wente to the chambre where Rowlande was, to whom Reynawde spake in this wyse, 'Syre Rowlande, arye, I praye yor. that ye wyll sende for Ogyer, the bisshop Turpyn, and for all other that be here wythin of the folke of Charlemayne; For I wyll telle you one thynge' / And when Rowlande sawe Reynawd 4awde and hys bretherne atte that tyme of the nyghte come in to hys chambre, he was merveyled. Nevertheles he sente for all his felawes / as Reynawde had tolde hym / And when they were all come, Reynawde stode up and sayd / 'Lordes, ye ben all my frendes,

1 le sans le faire mourir par telle maniere que jamais ne nous fasse guerre ne ennuy, F. orig. C. iv. back.
2—2 Ils laisserent le roy en dormir et alerent en la chambre de rolant, F. orig. C. iv. back.
And Reynawde relates to them the capture of the Emperor.

Roland is sore abashed at these tidings.

Osler says this has happened because the war has lasted too long.

godgramercy and you/wherfore I wyll not hyde no thyng from you/ye muste knowe that I have here wythin a prysyoner/by whom I shal have peas, and all myn herytance agayne.' 'Reynawde,' sayd Rowlande, "I praye you tell me what he is; For here is no man/but that wolde fayne ye sholde doo well.' 'By my soule,' sayd Reynawde, 'it is the grete emperour Charlemagn, to whome all Fraunce belongeth.' And when Rowland understode thise tydynges, he was sore merveylled of it, and sayd, 'Reynawde, ye telle me now a wondrefull thyng/How have ye taken myn uncle soo lightly? telle me, & playse you, how ye had hym here wythin/have ye taken hym by force of armes?' 'Naye, verely,' sayd Reynawde/ 'telle me thenne how, I praye you,' sayd Rowlande. 'Wyte it,' sayd Reynawde, 'that I wote not how mawgys my 16 cosyn dyde to nyghte/but wel I wote that he hath broughte the kynge here wythin, oute of his pavylion, and hathe layd hym in a bed/in a chambe, where he is now fast a slepe.'

When Rowlande and all his felawes herde thise tydynges, they were grety abasshed/how it myghte be that mawgys sholde brynge the kynge there/3'I merveylle moche herof,' sayd the duke naymes/24 'For ye knowe well that the kynge made hym selfe to be kepethothe nyghte and daye well sure.' 'Lords,' sayd:thenne oger/ 'all this hath doon our lord for the love of reynawd, by cause he setted hym all to 5mis-cheeff 3agenst Reynawde, and that the werre the hathe lasted to longe, the whiche shall now be left, wherof I thanke god for my parte/For many gode knyghtes

1 Car de le auoir pris en bataille ne en champnë son ost et pavillion onques ne fut si recreant, F. orig. C. v.
2 richart, F. orig. 3-3 omitted, F. orig.
3 Seigneurs dist le due naymes bien fait nostre seigneur a ceulx quil luy plait, F. orig. C. v.
4 Fol. A.A. vi. back.
have loste their lives for it' / And when Ogyer had sayd thus / Reynawde toke Rowlande and the other / and broughte them, alwayes spekyenge, vnto the cham- 
4 bre, where Charlemagne laye so faste a slepe that they cowde not awake hym for noo thyng that they cowde 
doo to hym, For mawgys had chermed him soo harde / And when the barons sawe the kynde soo harde a 
8 slepe / they wondred full sore vpon it, and^ they were 
gretely abasshed on it. Thenne spake rowlande fyrste, and 
said, 'Reynawde, where is mawgys that hath 
wroughte soo wel to nyghtel I praye you lette 
hym come here / and that he awake myn uncle Charlemagne 
oute of his slepe / And when he shall be awakened, we 
shall all falle atte his fete / and shal crye hym mercy / 
And soo I praye you2 that thoughe yf ye holde 
vncle in your handes / that ye wyll not be the prowder 
for it in your wordes.' 'By my feythe, syre Rowlande,' 
sayd Reynawde / 'I wylle that ye knowe / I sholde 
rather deye than that I sholde saye to my soverayne 
20 lorde a fowle worde; But I shall put me, my goodes, 
and all my brethern to his wylle / to the ende that it 
wyll playse hym to graunte vs peas wyth hym / And 
I wyll goo fetche Mawgis to you / ther to doo wyth 
24 hym what ye wyll' / And thenne Reynawde wente and 
soughte Mawgys, the whyche he cowde not fynde / 
wherof he was full sory / And when the porter wyste 
28 and sayd, 'Syre, ye seke hym for noughte, for he wente 
hys wayes oute ryghte now' / 'And how knoweste 
thon of it?' sayd Reynawde. 'Syre, wyte it that this 
nyghte he made me open the gate / and he wente oute 
32 vpon your horse bayarde / And he had not / taryed 
longe when he broughte a grete man and a bygge vpon
the horse necke afore hym / 1 and wente in, I wote not where / And soone after he came agayne vpon a nother horse / and he had clothed himselfe pourly. And thenne he made me to open the gate, and he wente out, and he came not sith agayne. And all this is trouthe that I telle you.'

When Reynawd had vnderstondde thise wordes, he was soo wrothe that he wyste not what to saye nor doo; For he knewe well by hymselfe that Mawgys was goon his wayes, by cause he wolde noo lenger abyde the wrathe of Charlemagne. 2 2 Thenne beganne Reynawde for to wepe full tendrely for his cosin that was thus goon / And all wepyng, he came agayne to the barons / and sayd to theim how Mawgys was goon awaye wythoute his knowledge, 3 wherof he was soo wrothe and soo sorie that he wente almoste oute of his mynde. And whan Alarde, Guychard / and Rycharde had well vnderstonde this, they beganne to make grete moone / and sorrowed full sore. And thenné Rycharde beganne to saye, 'Ha, my fayr cosyn Mawgys, what shall we doo from hens forthon, sith that we have loste you / We maye well saye that we ben dyscomfyted, For ye were our salvacyon, our socours / and our hope, our counseylle, our refute, our defence / and our guyde / For it is not yet longe agoo that I sholde have deyed an evyll deth yf I had not be socoured thorughe your helpe / Alas! all the hevynes that ye bere of the wrathe that Charlemagn hath agenst you, cometh oonly by vs / And whan he had sayd soo, he knocked his teeth for angre, and sayd / 'We ben now well all loste, syth that we have loste Mawgys.' And wyth this, he sette hande to his swerde, and wolde have slayne Charle- / but Reynawde drewe hym a syde, And the duke

1—1 omitted, F, orig. C. v.

2 ne estre en sa mala grace, F. orig. C. v. back.

3 knowleche, orig. 4 Fol. A.A. vii. back.
Naymes and Ogyer sayd thenne to hym, 'Rycharde, Rycharde / refrayne your courage / For it were not well doon for to kylle a man that slepeth; And also, afore that we shall departe hens, we shall sette all attone, and god wylle.' ¶ Shortly to speke, Oliver and the duke Naymes spake soo fayr to Rycharde, that they made hym promyse theym that he sholde doo noo harme to Charlemagne / Nevertheles Rycharde lefte not to make grete sorowe for his cosyn \(^1\) mawgys that he had loste; For all theym that sawe hym make soo grete mone, had pite to see hym. It was not merveylle yf Rycharde made sorow for Mawgys, For I promyse you he had grete nede of hym not longe after, And soo had all hys brethern / as ye shall here / alle thus as the four sones of Aymon made theyr mone for the love of theyr cosyn maugys, The duke Naymes beganne to speke /and sayd in this wyse:

'By god, lordes, ye doo not well for to make soo grete sorow! \(^2\) I praye you leve this hevynes / And lete vs begynne to speke of your peas that muste be made wyth the emperor charlemagne, that an ende maye be had of this werre that hathe endured soo longe' / 'By god,' sayd Rowlande, 'ye be passynge slowe thervpon. And also we muste fyrste have hys merci, or ever we move ony thynge of the peas / For ye wote well that I left him by cause that peas shold be made \(^3\) / 'syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'ye speke wysely and well / but how shall we speke wyth hym wythoute Mawgys were here / we can not awake hym / And but yf god remedyeth it / we shall never speke wyth hym.' But all thus as the barons speke in thys wyse, The charme that Mawgys had sette vpon Charlemagne was come

---

1. cosym, *orig.*
2. car je ne vis jamais rien gagner en perte que lon fasse pour en demener dueil, F. *orig.* C. vi.
3. qui a trop dure, F. *orig.* C. vi.
at an ende, 1 and the strength of it 2 was passed 1 / And sodeynly Charlemagne beganne to move his body, and arose anone vpon his fete / and ryght sore abasshed, loked all a boute hym / And whan he sawe that he was 4 atte mountalban, in the subgectyon of Reynawde the sone of Aymon / he was sore an angred / and made suche sorrow for it / soo that all they that were there, trowed that he had be mad, 1 and from hym selfe. 1 And 8 whan hys wyttes were come to hym agayne, he knewe well that mawgys had doon it to hym, and swears that, as longe as he were man on live, he sholde make noo peas tyll that he were oute of mountalban / and that 12 men had broughte mawgys to hym 3 / And whan Rycharde vnderstode this that Charlemagne sayd, he beganne to saye in this wyse / 'How the devyll dare ye thus speke / syre, ye see well that ye be our 16 prysoner / And yet ye threten vs / I make to god myn a vowe and to saynte peter, were not that I have pro-

1-1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. A.A. viii. 3 pour en faire sa volente, F. orig. C. vi. back.
The sons, with Roland and the other barons
plead for mercy and peace from Charlemagne.

Thenne reynawde and all his bretherne, and Rowlande, and oliver, and Ogyer the dane, the duke Naymes, the bysshop Turpyn / and Escouf the sone of oedon / beganne all to falle on their knees before the emperour / And Reynawd spake fyrste / and sayd in this maner of wyse: 'Noble emperour, have mercy of vs! for I and my brethern, we yelde vs vnto you for to do your playsure of vs / and your wyll be so that our lives be saved / And there is noo thynge but that we wyll doo it for the love of you, if it playse you to graunte vs peas wyth you. And for that pyte and pardonne that god gaaf vnto mary magdalene when she washed his fete in the house of Symeon / goode syre, have pyte of vs! And yf it playse you not to pardonne me / atte the leest pardonne my brethern, And take theym agen their londes / and I shall gyve you mountalban, and bayarde, my good horse ; And soo shall I goo in to the holy londe, I and Mawgys, where we shall serve to the temple of our lorde.' And when Charlemagne herde reynawde speke thus / he blastred all for angre / and sayd, 'by that goode lorde that made me / yf all the worlde speke to me therof / yet sholde I never consente me to noo peas / but I have mawgis in my handes for to doo my wyll vpon hym.' 'Alas,' sayd thenne reynawde / 'now have I herde that worde bytynge, wherof I am all disperate / For I shold rather let me selfe be hanged / than that I sholde consente to the deth of mawgis my good cosin; For he hath not deserved towards vse that we sholde betraye him / but rather he were worthy by reysen for to be lord above vs' / 'Reynawd,' sayd thenne charlemagn / 'thynke not, though I am your prysoner, that ye shall make me doo any thynge agethen my wyll.' 'syre,' sayd reynawde / 'wyte it that myn entent is to meke my selfe

1 Fol. A.A. viii. back. 2 dooc. orig. 3 a celle fin que je luy face tout detrancher, F. orig. C. vii.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON.  [CHAP. XIX.

towarde you / for I have lever that we suffre wrong of you, than ye of vs / now tell me, sir, how I shall deliver you mawgis, that is our liif, hope, socours, our com-forte, our sheeld, our speres, and also our sword / our brede, our wyne, and our flesche / also our refute, our mayster, our guyde / and our defence in all places / wherby, syre, I telle you, that yf ye had all my brothern in your prison / and that ye sholde make theym to be hanged, and that mawgis were wythin my power & wyth me / yet wold I not yele my hym vnto you for to quyte wythal my brederm. And also I swere you, vpon my feyth, that I wote not where he is goon: god wote it. ' Ha,' sayd the kyng charlemagne, 'goddlys curse have he / for I am sure he is here wythin you' / 'he is not,' sayd reynawd, 'I take it vpon my baptysme' / And thenne reynawde tormal hymselfe towarde row-16 lande & the other barons, & sayd to theym / 'Lordes, I besuche you for god, that it wyll playse you to praye our soverayne lorde the kyng, that he wyll have mercy of me & of my brethern / to thende that peas maye be 20 had in fraunce, yf it playse him' / And thenne naymes, that was kneelinge vpon hys knees / and that herde that reynawde had sayd, & wyst well that he spake but wel, sayd to thempour in this wyse / 'Sire, I praye 24 you that ye wyll not be dy[s]playesd of that I shall telle you / ye knowe, sire, that I am surete for reynawde / and soo is ogyer the dane; but me semeth that we oughte now to be dyscharged therof / 2 sith that ye be 28 here present wythin his castell; 2 but a nother thynge I wyll telle you / me thynke that ye ought to take that 3 therle reynawd proffereth to you, or that any more harme come to you therof; and so helpe me god, ye 32 shall doo well / And all they of your courte shall be

1 Fol. B.B. i.
2—2 comment savez, F. orig. C. vii. back.
3 belle offerte, F. orig. C. vii. back.
gladde of it’/ And when the barons herde this that
naymes had sayd to the kyng, they spoke all & sayd,
‘Syre, doo that the duke naymes hath tolde you, for
he hath gyven you goode counsaylle and true; And yf
ye doo it not, ye shall come to late for to repente you
of it.’

When Charlemagn vnderstode this that the duke
naymes had sayd to hym, he was right wrothe for
it/ For hys herte was soo harde astonyed wyth grete
angre, that he tooke noo hede of good counsayll; And
he swere by saynt Denys of fraunce that he sholde not
do it for noo man / but yf he had fyrste mawgys in
his handes, for to doo hys wyll over hym. And when
reynawde herde thise wordes, he bluste red in his face
for angre, and rose vp from knelyng, his brethern & all
the other barons also. And thenne reynawde said to
rowlande & to all the other lorde that were there /
‘Syre, I wyll well that charlemagne knowe my wylle
&myn entente/ the whiche I shall shewe afore hym
vnto you. Wyte it, that sith I can fynde noo mercy in
hym / I praye you that ye wyl not blame me fromhens
forthon yf I seke my right, For I shall seke it in all
the maners that a true knyghte oughte to doo’/ And
when Reynawde had sayd this, he tourned hym towarde
the kyng / and sayd to hym / ‘Syre, ye maye goo hens
whan it playseth you / for by my soule ye shall have
noo harme of me now / for ye be my soverayne lorde;
and wyth good wyll we shall be in good peas wyth
you’/ The barons of fraunce that were there, wondred sore
of the grete kyndenes of reynawd / Thenne sayd
the duk naymes, ‘have ye herde the grete humylite of
the noble knyghte reynawde?’ ‘By my soule,’ said

1 Et de ce faire vous prions, C. vii. back.
2 Fol. B.B. i. back.
3—3 omitted, F. orig.
4—4 Et quant dieu plaîra, F. orig. C. viii.
Richard is very angry at the escape of the Emperor, and fears they will all be slain.

Reynawde orders Bayard to be saddled for Charlemagne,
whan rycharde herde this, he went fro thens all swell-
ynge wyth angre as a fiersfull lion, bycause he knewe
that Charlemagne shold goo soo / And wyte it, that
the kynge charlemagne herde & understode well all
thise wordes, but he durste not saye noo thynge / soo sore he fered the fiersnes of the yonge rycharde.
This hangynge, cam there agen the gentylman that was
8 goon for bayard, whiche he brought wyth hym. And
thenne Reynawd toke his good horse Bayard,1 and
came to Charlemagne / and sayd to hym / 'Syre, ye
may lighte when it playse you, and goo atte your
12 lyberete / for to 2 conforte your folke / whiche I am
sure / ben full sory for the takynge of you' / And when
charlemagn saw this, he lighted anone vpon bayarde,
and went oute of mountalban for to goo to his oost /
16 And reynawde conveyd hym to the gate of mount-
alban. and when the kynge was goon, he made
the gate to be shet anone. And the frensheman that
sawe their kynge come agen, they were ryght glad /
20 and receyved hym worthely. and after, they asked
hym how it went wyth hym, and yf he had graunted
the peas / 'Lordes, it is well wyth me, god gramerici /
but of peas I have made none, nor never shall as longe
24 as I am man a live, for noo man that shall speke
to me of it / but yf I have the traytour Mawgys,
for to doo wyth hym my wyll' / 'Syr,' sayd some
of his barons, 'how have ye be deliverde?' 1 'by my
28 feyth,' sayd charlemagn, 'Reynawd hath deliverde
me agenst the wyll of his bredern, all quyte at my
liberte.' 'Syr,' sayd the barons, 'have ye not seen
rowlande, oliver, the duke naymes, the bysshop
32 turpyn, oyger the dane, nor escouf the sone of oedon?' 'ye, surely,' sayd charlemagne, 'but they have all
forsake me for the love of reynawd; wherof, bi that
god that hynge vpon the crosse, yf I can have them

1 par le frein, F. orig. C. viii. back. 2 Fol. B.B. ii. back.
agen, I shall shewe theym that they have not doon well." and whan he had sayd thus / he lighted from bayarde, & made hym to be broughte agen to reynawd / And whan reynawd sawe bayarde, that 4 charlemagn had sent hym agen, he called rowland & his felawes, & sayd to theym / 'Fayr lordes, I knowe well that ye be not in the grace of the grete kynge charlemagn / for the love of me / but I wyll not 8 that ye have mawgre for me nor for my brethern / and therfor, fayr lordes, I quyte you all quarelles that I maye laye vpon you and gyve you leve to goo when it playse you.' And whan the duke naymes 12 vnderstode the kyndnes of the hert of Reynawde, that was 1 so noble / he thanked him highly, and kissed & enbrasde him for grete love / and wolde have kneled doun afore hym / but reynawd wold not suffre hym / 16 Theyne the duke naymes began to saye, 'lete vs thynke to goo after the king charlemagn your vncle / sith it playseth reynawd to gyve vs leve.' 'naimes,' sayd rowland / 'how can we doo this / shall we leve 20 reynawde, the whiche ye see myn vncle wyll dystroye wrongfully?' 'Syr,' sayd the duke naymes, 'here me, yf it playse you. I counseill that we goo hens / and when we shall be afore charlemagn / we shall 24 aske hym how reynawd dyde deliver hym; for yf we speke to hym of peas, he shall be wrothe wyth vs; but when he shall remembre the grete goodnes & curtesi of Reynawde / his herte shall be molified / 28 and it can not be but he shall doo to hym som grace & favour / for he shall knowe well2 that hys hert is overgrete / 3 and that he hath doon to reinawd grete wrong'3 / 'Certes, sir naymes,' sayd the barons / 'ye 32 speke wysly, and ye gyve right good counseyle' / And

1 Fol. B.B. iii.
2 quil a grant tort et trop dur cuer, F. orig. D. i.
3—3 omitted, F. orig. D. i.
whan they were accorded to the conseille of the duke naymes / Rowlande asked after his horse, and eche of the other barons also. And whan they were redy for to lighte on horsbacke / there cam my lady clare, the wyf of reynawde, that kyssed rowlande, oliver, & all theother barons. and after, she sayd to theim in this maner: 'Lordes that be here present, I beseche you in the name of god, & for his blessed passyon, that it playseth you for to purchase the peas of my lord reynawde / and semblably of his brethren, towarde the grete kyng charlemagn. Ye knowe, my lorde, that the kyng doth to my lord great wro?ge, and also ye know the grete curtesie & the kyndnes that my lord my husbonde hath shewed vnto Charlemagn / and well ye wote that yf my lorde had not be / his brother richarde wolde have stryked the hede fro the body of hym' / 'Madam,' sayd the duke naymes, 'doubte not / For and god be played, the peas shall be made wythin thise thre dayes.' And theenne they lighted all on hors- backe / and the brethren of reynawde conveyed theym to the gate. and reynawde taryed after theym vpon the brydge / and whan they were come to the sayd bridge / Reynawde sayd to theym, 'My lorde, I comende you to god / I maye no lenger goo wyth you / prayeng that ye wyll have me in your remem- braunce.' Thenne all the peres of fraunce that were there began to wepe tenderly / 2 and toke their leve of reynawde, the noble knyghte / and after they toke their waye towarde the oost of charlemagn. And whan themperour sawe theym com, he called to hym his barons, & shewed theim they that were comyng / And whan the barons sawe theym, they merveyllled

Lady Clare begs the barons to intercede with Charlemagne for peace towards her husband.

The Barons take leave of Reynawde with much sorrow.

1 Fol. B.B. iii. back.
gretly, & had grete fere, for they wist not what it was / but [Gu]ydellon the erle sayd / 'By god, we have recoverde rowland & his felawes.' 'Ye,' sayd charlemagne / 'godlys curse have they!' This hangyng, rowlande & his felawes cam tofore charlemagne / and lighted a fote / and incontynente they kneled humbly afore the kyng / and them the duke naymes began to speke fyriste, & sayd, 'Noble emperour, we are come in your presence for to crie you mercy, besechynge you for god that it wyll playse you to take vs vnto your good grace, for we have doon noo thynge agenst you / but that it was for your wele. But sith that we have knownen that your wyll was not to have peas / we have forsaken Reynawd & all his brethren; nor never, whyle we ben a live, they shall have noo socours of vs' / 'Lordes,' sayd Charlemagn, 'I par- donne you; but I telle you, yt we tary here longe styll / we shall have lityll gaynes therby. wherfore, I praye you that we goo assawte mountalan bothe by daye & by nyght, by suche maner that he be taken of vs incontinent, and they all that ben in it broughte to deth.' 'Syr,' sayd the duke naymes, 'ye sai well / but and yt ony mysfortune happeth to vs, as it hathe doon here a fore tyme, I promyse you it shall be to you grete dommage; and me semeth it were moche better to have peas than for to contynewes the werre.'

And whan the barons of fraunce herde this that the duke naymes had sayd to the kyng / they began to crye wyth an highe voys / 'Syre emperour / we praye you that ye wyll doo this that naymes counseylleth you, For he gyveth you good counseyll.' Whan Charlemagne herde the crye that his folke made to hym, he came to the duke Naymes, that was kneeling afore hym / and toke hym vp / and in like wyse his nevew rowlande, & all the other, and sayd to

1 pardonue, orig. 2 Fol. B.B. iv.
theym, 'My lorde, ye knowe that I have pardoned you wyth ry\[g]\h good wyll / but I wyll well that ye know, but yf ye kepe yerselfe from helpynge of my enmyes mortall / I shall angre you vpon your bodies; For I hate theym so moche, that yf I shold abyde here all my liff / I shall dystroye theym.' And wite it, that Charlemagne was glad that he had recovered his neyewe rowlande & his other peres; how be it, he made no semblaunt of it. And he sayd yet a\[c\]on / that he shold never departe from his seege tyll that he had taken montalban & alle the four sones of aymon / wherof he shall doo sharpe iustjce, and shall doo bresne mawgis the false traytour / 'Syre,' sayd rowlande, 'I promyse you that mawgys is not wythin montalban / for he fereth you somoche that he dare not abyde you, leest ye sholde make hym to be hanged, by cause he dyde stele you so falsly oute of your oost.' 'Ha, god,' sayd Charlemagne, 'whau shall I see that I have hym for to doo my wyll of him, For thenne the sones of aymon sholde soone be agreed with me.'

Thenne whan the kyng charlemagn had devysed longe ynuoghhe, he gaff leve to all his barons for to goo agen in to theyr tentes for to see theyr folke. And whan the morow cam / all the barons came agen to charlemagne / and whan the kyng sawe theim togyder wythin his pavylion / he was therof gladde / and spake to theym thus / 'Lordes, I have beseged mountalban as nere, as ye see; and I am not disposed for to parte bens, nother for colde, for hete, nor for hungre, vnto the tyme that I have taken hym by fyne force / the whiche thynge shall be lyghtly doon / for I am sure that thei shall wauet vytaylles wythin / And worse is for theim, thei have lost the traytour mawgys, whiche was theyr hope and comfort. wher-

1 Fol. B.B. iv. back.

CHAP. XIX.] HOW CHARLEMAGNE BESIEGES MONTALBAN.

VOL. I.

417

Charlemagne promises to grant the request of Naymes; but vows he will take vengeance upon the Sons and Mawgis.
fore, I saye that they can not holde it longe agenst my power.' when the barons herde that charlemain threatenèd reynawde soo sore / there was none of theym but they were sory for it / for the moost parte of theim loved reynawde, for the worthynes & the kyndnes that was in him. Theane spake the duke naymes, & sayd to themperour, 'Sir, ye say that they of mounatalban be dyspurueyd of mete, and that ye shall not departe fro the siege tyll that ye have taken the castell, & that is a thyng that shall be doon lightli. but I promyse you, yt ye tary to their vitaylles be doo, ye shal lie here lenger than ye wene of / Wherfore, sir, I beseche you, syr, that it wyll playse you to byleve my counseyll, yt it semeth you good / fyrst take hede to the curtesy that reynawde hath doon to you; for ye wote well that yt he had not be, his brother Rycharde sholde have slayn you / al the gold in the worlde sholde not have saved you / Item, thinke also in the grete mekenes that he hath alwayes shewed to you / also for the grete trust that he hathe had in you / he lened you his good horse bayard, that hath no matche in all the world / sir, yt ye overthynke wel al, ye shall fynde that noo man dyde never to none other soo grete curtesie as reynawd hath doon to you. and of that other parte, he & his brederen ben suche knyghtes, as everi body knoweth / I swere to you, sire, by all halowen, that or ever ye shall take mounatalban, Reynawde & his brethern shall bere to you suche dommage, wherof ye shall be wroth. And yet ye oughte well to take hede how we waist & dystroye the countrey & the feldes, and grete good ye doo dispande / whiche for your honour were better to be employed vpon the sarrasins, than vpon the four sones of aymon / for the sarrasins ben now in rest, makyng grete ioye for

1 Fol. B.B. v.
the cause of this warre / and they do wel, For warre hath lefte theim / and it is come among ourself so horrible & soo cruel, that many noble and worthy 4 knightes ben deed therof.'

The kyng charlemagn was sore abashed / whan he herde the duke naymes speke so, and it moved his blode full sore, & becam pale as a white 8 cloth for the grete wrath that he had at his herte, and casted a side his sighte angrely vpon the duke naymes, & sayd to hym by grete wrath, 'Duke naymes, by the feyth that I owe to that blessed lady 12 that conceyved the sone of god in her virgynyte / that if ther be ony man soo hardy to speke more to me of accorde to be made wyth the four sones of aymon, I shall never love him, but I shall angre hym on his 16 body / For I am not disposed to make peas with theim for noo thing that can be sayd / but I shall hange theim what soever it cost me, or I departe from this siege.' Whan the barons herde charlemagn speke thus 20 proudly / they were sore mervecyled of it / and lefte to talke of this matere. But whan oger sawe that all the barons helde theim stylle, he began to saye to the kyng charlemagn / 'Cursed be the hour 1 that 24 reynawd suffred not rychard to smyte of your hede / for ye had not threatened him soo now' / And whan charlemagn herde that oger sayd to him / he bowed his necke, & loked dou[n]warde all pensifull ; & sin he said, 28 'now, lordes, make you redy, and see that every man fall to his armures / for I wyl now gyve assaute to mountalban' / And whan the frenshemen herde the commanaundemente of the kyng, they made noo tary- 32 enge, but went & armed theymself. And whan they were all redy, they cam in good ordynance, and broughte ladders & other instrumentes wyth theim 2 for to sawte wythall the castelle, & engynes for to breke

In great anger the Emperor replies, that nothing shall make him consent to peace with the Sons, continue so cruel a war.

2 E 2
dow the walles, and presented them before charle-
magn for to acomplishe hys wyll / and whan the
kynge sawe them soo well appareyled, he com-
maunded them to goo sawte the stronge castell of 4
Mountalban.

And assone that reynawd saw his enmyes com, he
called his broder alard, & sayd to him, 'Broder,
I pray you take bondy, my good home, & blowe in it
strongly / to thende that our folke arme theymself
whan thei here it, for here comen the frenshemen for
to sawte vs.' Whan alard vnderstode the commaundy-
ext of reynawde / he toke bondy, and blewe in wyth 12
soo grete a wynde thre tymes, that all they of
the castell herde it / and were all abashed wyth;
and wythoute any taryeng they went & armed theymself,
and lightly gate vpon the walles for to defende the 16
castell. Nevertheles, the frenshemen came nere, &
entred in to the dyches as hogges doon in a myre /
and dressed vp their ladders to the walles / But
wyte it, that they of wythin the castelle beganne to
20
defende so strongly with castynge of stones, that thei
dommaged sore the frenshemen, so that many of them
lay deed within 1 the dyches ; for reynawd & his breder
dyde there so grete faytes of armes that no body
24
myght endure their strokes / who had seen the poure
duches & her yong children at that sawte brynge
stones to reynawd & to his breder vpon the walles,
he wolde have had pyte of it / For the two yonge
28
sones of Reynawde sayd to their vnceles / 'holde our
vnceles thise stones / for they ben grete ynough.'
Suche defence made they of mountalban, that they
overthrowe theym that were vpon ye ladders to the
32
botom of ye diches, all deed & sore wounded / and
whan the kyng charlemagne sawe this, he was wrothe,
for he knewe thezne well that he sholde never take

1 Fol. B.B. vi.
CHAP. XIX.] HOW THE SONS REPULSE THEIR ENEMIES.

Mountalban by force, nor also the noble knyghtes that were within it / as Reynawde & his brederne / And theryfore he made the trompet to be blewne / to calle his folke abacke, wyth so grete aügre that he was almost mad / and whan the frenshemen herde blowe the retrete, thei were glad, for thei were shrewdly handled; and I promyse you that charle-

8 magne lefte such a company deed wythin the dyche that he long after was / full sory for it

When Charlemagn & all his folke were withdrawn agen / he began to swere saynt denys of fraunce that he shold never departe thens tyll he had famysshed Reynawde & his brederne1 wythin the castell of mountalban / and thennhe commanded, that a fore every gate of the castell shold be layed two 16 hundred knyghtes / for to kepe, that noo body myghte in nor oughte / but he shold be take / And whan reynawd sawe that, he kneled doun vpon his knees, and heved vp his handes towards heven, & sayd, 'Good 20 lord, that suffred deth on ye crosse, I beseeche you that ye wyll graunte vs that grace that we mai have peas with charlemain & save our lives.' and whan richard herde the prayer of reynawd, he toke hede to it, & sayd, 24 'Brother / I promyse you yf ye wolde have beleved me, we sholde now have be in good reste & peas / For Charlemagn wolde have be glad therof for to save his liff / Ye knowe that our cosyn mawgys broughte him not here for none other cause to be our prisoner / but to the entent that we sholde make our peas; but ye wolde not take hede to it / whan we myghte have had our wyll; and I promyse you we shal not now doo as 32 we wolde.'

Themperour charlemagn abode soo long at the siege afore mountalban / that they that were wythin it

1 et tous ses gens, F. orig. D. iii. back.
2 Fol. B.B. vi. back.
Great famine prevails in Montalban, and the men die daily in the streets.

Richard grieves because he did not slay Charlemagne, had grete neade of vytaylles / for he that had ony mete, he hyd it incontynent. and so grete scarstee of vytaylles was there wythin a while, that men cowde gete there noo mete for golde nor for silver / 1 And many other fell 4 down at grounde here, & there soo feynt for hungre, 2 that it was grete pyt for to see / for the derthe was there soo grete, that thone broder hydde his mete from the other / and the fader fro the childe / and the childe fro 8 ye fader, & fro the moder / And shortly to speke, I promise you, that the pour folke deyed for hungre by the stretes / and with this, was soo grete stenche wythin mountalban of the deed were there, that noo man cowde 12 endure it. And whan reynawde sawe this, he was sory for it. and the he dyde do make a grete charnell, wherein he made all the deed bodies to be buryed. And whan richarde sawe so grete mortalite wythin the castell 16 of mountalban, throughe cause of the grete derth that was there / and sawe his broder reynawd in so grete distresse / he cowde not forbere / but he said to hym, 'by god, my broder now gooth it worse than ever it 20 dyde! it had be moche beter if ye had byleved me / For yf ye wolde have suffred me to slee the kynge Charlemagne / we sholde now not have be in this myscheef and grete poverte that we have now / nor 24 your folke had not deied for hungre as thei doo' / and the he 2 began to wepe tenderly / and sayd, 'Alas! why doo I complayn other? I myghte well complayn myselfe, sith that I must deye, & be put in to the 28 charnell as the pourest of vs all. Ha, mawgis, my fayr cosin / where be ye now? ye faylde vs at our nede; for & ye were here wythin wyth vs, we sholde not be famyshed for hungre / and also we sholde not doubte 32 moche the kyng charlemagn; for I wote well that ye

1—1 Et commenca le pays a lentour a deffailir de viuexes, F. orig. D. iv.
2 Fol. B.B. vii.
sholde gete vs vitaylles ynough to live vpon, for vs & our men / and now we muste deye for hungre, as the wulf sholde vpon a see / for charlemague hateth vs more than he dooth the sarrasins. And therfor it is not for vs to wayte after pyte of hym / for he is over cruell a kyng vpon us.'

Charlemagn,¹ by the reporte of som folke / knew the grete derthe & scarste of vytailles that was wythin mountalban / wherof he was right glad / and called to hym his folke / and sayd to theyn, 'Lordes, now can not reynawde escape / but he shall soone be taken & hanged / and the false richarde drawen at an horse taylle / and alarde & guycharde also, and theyren worthy-nes shall be lityll worthe to theyn.' And whan the kyng charlemagn had sayd thise wordes, he sent for all his peres & barons / and when they were all come wythin his pavylion / he was glad of it, & sayd to theyn, 'Lordes, thanked be god that I have brought mountalban so lowe, that reynawd & his knyghtes have no more vitaylles in it / and now they shall yelde theymselfe at my wyll, mawgre their teeth, for the moost parte of theyr folkes ben deed for hungre / and yet [they] deyen dayly, and ye must wyte I wil that reynawde be hanged & his bredern also, but first I wyl that Richarde be drawen atte an horse taylle / And soo I charge you that none of you be so hardy to move my wyll to the contrary. For I wyll that it ²be doon as I saye.' Whan the duke naymes, rowlande, oliver, oger, the bysshop turpyn, & escouff the sone of oedan, that were there, herde the kynge speke thus, thei were right sory, for the love of reynawde & of his bredern / and loked doun, & sayd no worde at al, for fere that they shold be shent of the kyng / and oger wyth grete peyne kept his eyen fro wepyng, leest charlemagn shold not perceyve his sorowfull herte.

¹ Charleamgn, orig. ² Fol. B.B. vii. back.
Here ye ought to wyte that, duryng the tyme that charlemagn laye at the sege afore mountalban persecutyng the foure sones of aymon, Reynawde, alarde, guychard, & Rycharde of aymon their fader helde the 4 party of the kyng agenste his children, for he had promysed hym to doo so / as ye have herde above / but wyte it, that when he herde how the emperour thretned his children, how be it that he had forsaken theym, he 8 was wrothe for it / for he knewe well, if his children dyed soo he sholde never have joye after that. For what soever werre he made agenst theim, he loved theim kyndly, as the fader oughte to love the childe, 12 for 1 nature maye not lie. And therfore he toke soo grete sorow, wann he herde of his sones that they were thretned to be hanged, that he almost fell downd deed to the grounde; and of the grete sorow that he had, cowde 16 not kepe himself, but he sayd / 'Syr emperour, I besche you that it wyll playse you to bryng my children to right / For though he have forsake theim / yet are thei my sones of my body begoten' / 'holde your peas, 20 aymon,' sayd charlemagn / 'for I wyll that it be so doon of theym / For reyna wd dyde sley my nevewe berthelot, that I loved so moche.' And after he torned hymself, & sawe the barons that spake thone to thother, 24 & sayd to theim / 'Lorde, leve your musyng! for I tell you for a trouth, that I shall not leve to doo herin my wyll, for no man that speketh / ye wote wel it is iij yere goon sith we beseged this 2 castel first, and ever sin have 28 layen here, where we have lost many of our folke / wherfore I commaunde you, that eyther of you doo make engynes for to bryng downd this grete towre & all the remenauet also / For wyth suche maner we shall 32 abashe theim gretly / and ye, my nevew rowland, ye shall doo make of the engynes vii. and oliver shall doo make vi. the duke naymes iii. the bysshop turpyn &

1 nature, orig.  
2 Fol. B.B. viii.
CHAP. XIX.

HOW ENGINES ARE CAST AGAINST MONTALBAN.

oeger the dane other iii. / 'and ye duke aymon,' sayd ye' kyng charlemagn, 'ye shall make thre' / 'How shold I now doo this, good lord,' said themne aymon, 'for, sir emperour, ye knowe well that they be my chyldren, nother truantes nor knaves / but be the best knyghtes of the worlde / and soo I tell you, syr, that yt if I sawe theym deye / I shold forgoo my 8 wyttes for angre.' And when charlemagn herde aymon speke thus, he was wroth, & began to gnawe on a staff that he helde in his hande, & after sayd / 'By that god that made me, yt there be ony of you that gaynsayth my wyll, I shall stryke of his hede wy th my swerde' / 'syr,' sayd the duke naymes, 'angre not your selfe / For that that ye have commaundet, shall be doon incontynent' / Whan the barons vnderstode the commaunde-ment of charlemagne / thei went their waye for to do make the engynes that the kyng had commaundet, the whiche were anone made redi, and thise engynes were for to cast grete multytude of stones / And as sone that thei were made, thei were set for to cast agenste moun- talban, and in [a] short tyme they dommaged it full sore / and soo I promise you that wythin the castel were made grete criyng of wimen & of children / and for fere of the stones, thei went & hid them vnder the grounde; and so thei of mowntalban endured this mischeff aslong as thei had ony morsell of mete / And I ensure you that there was soo grete derth & soo grete mortalite that men wyst nomore where to laye the deed / For the charnell was all full / Alas, who had seen soo younge bachelers / that for feintnes went lenyng vpon their staves through mowntalban for lacke of mete / he wold have had grete pyte / For a fore that the castell was beseged, they were so strong & soo myghty that none cowde have overcome them; but they were theym

The barons obey the Emperor, and the engines are filled with stones and cast against Montalban.

1 Fol. B.B. viii. back,
soo feble that they felle where thei wente, musseling in the ground as hoggges.

And when reynawde saw the grete pyte that was amonge his folke, he had of it grete sorow, because he myght not put noo remedy thereto; and theame he began to say in himselfe, "O good lord, what maye I now doo? now I see well that my wytte avaylleth me noo thynge; for I wote not where to seke vyтайлles"

Alas god! where may maugys be now, that he knowe not my grete nede, & the outrage that Charlemagne dooth to vs'/ And when the good lady Clare sawe her lord reynauade, that complayned hymself soo piteusly/ she began to saye vnto hym in this wyse, "Forsooth, my lord, ye do not well for to dyscomfyte youselfe soo sore; for ye discourage vs al wythin; moreover, I promyse you that here ben yet wythin moo than a 16 hundred horses/ I praye you lete one of theim be kyllled, and ye, myselfe, & our poure children shall eate of it, for it is more than thre dayes agoo that they nor I eate ony thing that dyd vs good; and when she had sayd this she fell down in a swoune at the fete of reynauade her husbonde, for grete feblenes for lacke of mete. And when reynauade sawe her fall, he toke her vp anone in his armes, and after that she was come agen to herself/ she sayd, all wepyngue/ "Alas, dere lady mary, what shall I poure wretne soo, for all my herte faylleth me. And almoste wyll my soule departe, all soo sore is my body famysshed. Alas, my chyldren, who 28 sholde ever have wende that ye sholde have dyed for hungre?"

When Reynawde sawe the grete dystresse wherin hys wyff was, he had grete pyte of her, and the teeres began to falle over the chekes of him, and all wepyng he wente to his stable/ and there he made a horse to be slayn, the whiche he made to be dressed for

1 Fol. C.C, i.
mete to hys folke / but I promise you that horse flesshe lasted not longe afore theym / For they were men ynow to ete it vp lightly. And here ye must knowe that all the horses that were wythin mountalban were in lyke wyse eten one after a nother except four, that is to wyte, bayarde, & the horses of the thre brethren of Reynawde, the whiche four horses they wolde not ete by cause they wolde not be a fote / And when Reynawde sawe that there was noo more thynge that they myghte ete / he called his brederm, & sayd to theym, 'Fayr brederm, w[h]at shall we doo? we have noo more fode to take vs to, but onely our four horses that are lefte vs alive. Lete vs doo kylle one of theym that our folke maye ete wyth vs. 'By my hede,' sayd richard, 'that shal not be myn / and yf ye have lust to it, lete yours be slayn / for ye shall not have myn. And yf ye have grete mysheef, ye be well worthy / For throughe your pryde we are brought in this plighte / by cause that ye lete goo the kynde charlemagne ; for ye had byleved me, this grete myshappe had not befalle vs' / This hangyng, came the lityll Aymon, the sone of Reynawde, that sayd to rycharde in this maner, 'Holde your peas, myn vncele / for that thynge that may not be amended / men oughte to lete it passe in the best wyse ; For it is to shamfull to reherse that / that is passed ; but doo as my fader commaundeth you / and ye shall doo well. For ye doo not well to angrre him soo as ye doo ; and though he hath myssed of his entente, he hath boughte it dere ynochge, as well as we. Yf the kynde charlemagn hath adommaged you long, it may well hap that god shall helpe you, or ought long, yf it playse hym ; and I byleve certeynly that he shall doo soo / for the kindeness that my lorde my fader dyde shewe vnto charlemagne, whan he had hym here, can never be loste, as I wene.'

1 Fol. C.C. i. back.
Grete pyte had richarde of his newe he when he herde hym speke thus wysly / and toke hym betwene his armes, and kissed hym all wepynge / and thenne he said to reynawde / 'Broder, commaundende my horse to be slayne whan it playseth you / and gyve som conforte therwithall to this folke, and to my lady your wyff, & to my yong newews, your children / For my lityll newewe that is here, hathe well deserved to ete of it / for the good couseyll that he hathe gyven to me now.' 'Brother,' sayd alarde, 'ete be slayne whyche ye wyll of the thre / for it were to grete adommage yf bayarde sholde deye; and also I tell you that I had lever deye my selfe, than that bayard sholde be slayne / 'Broder,' sayd guychard, 'ye saye well;' and anone the horse of richarde was kylled & dressed to their mete / and soo in lyke wyse was doon wyth the horses of ye two other brethern; and full savourly it was eten / And whan reynawd sawe that there was no mete more, he wist not what he sholde doo, for he was more sory for his bredern, & for his wyff, & his childe / than he was for hymselfe; and began to say in this wyse / 'Alas, what shal I do? I am vaynquysshed & overcome wythout ony stroke. It had be better for me that I had byleved my broder rychard, for I had not be now in the myserye & grete nede where I am in atte this hour / Now I see well that charlemagne hath chased me soo moche that he hath betrapped me wythin his gynnes / wheroute I can not scape; and I knowe well that I oughte not to be complayned / for I have made myself ye rodde wherwith I am beten; and yf I sholde repente me therof, it shold proufite noo thyng, for I com to late for to do so.' whan rychard saw his broder reynawde make suche sorowe, he knewe well his mynde, & was right sory for hym, so that he shoke all for

---

1-1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Richart, F. orig. 3 Fol. C.C. ii.
sorow, and wyst not what he sholde say. For if reynaude wolde have had of his owne flesshe, rychard wolde well have given hym of it, yf he myght have be

4 comforted therwith / 'Theune spake guycharde, that other broder, & sayd,¹ 'My ²good ²broder, what shall we doo / we shall yelde ourself, ³or elles deye here for grete rage of hangre ³/ and we maye noo more fromhens

8 forthon / ²but oonly wayte after deth ²/ 'What saye ye, ²broder guycharde?² sayd reynawd; 'wyll ye yelde your selfe to the most cruell king of the worlde ⁴/ for he shold make vs all to be hanged shamfully. Yf ony

12 pyte cowde be founde in hym, I wold yelde me gladly; but there ys none in him, and therfor I am delivered that we shall not yelde us to him / we shalle rather ete my children, & after our bodyes / But alwayes yf ye wyll

16 ete bayarde, I am therof content for to passe the tyme forthon, for I have ofte herde saye that a day respyte is worthe moche.' But, nevertheless, what soever he sayd / he had no courage to ete bayarde / for it was all

20 his socours / 'Broder,' sayd alard, 'I couseille that we ete bayarde, rather than we shold yelde vs in to the handes of charlemagn / for he is to cruell, nor he shall never have mercy of vs.' And whan reynawde sawe

24 that they wolde ete bayarde his good horse, he toke for it suche a herty sorowe that he alsmeste fell in a swoune to therthe; but he toke togyder his strengthes, & stode vpryghte, and began to saye / 'Fayr bredern / what

28 wyll ye doo / wyll ye ete bayarde, my noble horse, that soo ofte hath kepte vs from deth, and from perell mortall / I praye you, that a fore ye sley hym / that ye sley me / For I may not see hym dey; and whan ye

32 have slayn me / sley hym hardly. And yf ye wyll not

¹-¹ Quant il ent este une grant piesse en celle detresse il dist a ses freres, F. orig. D. vii.
²-² omitted, F. orig.
³-³ puis que nous ne savons plus que faire, F. orig. D. vii.
doo so, I forbode you, in as moche as ye love me, that ye touche not bayarde. For he that shall hurte hym / shall hurte me.' And when the duchesse herde Reynawde speke thus, she wiste not what to doo / thenne she sayd to hym in grete wrathe, 'Ha, gentyll duke debonayr / and what shall now doo your pour children / wyll you that they deye for hungre, for fawte of your horse? For it is thre dayes passed that they ete ony 8 mete; shortly shall their lives come atte an ende / myn also / For my hert cleveth me in my body for fyne force of hungre. And soo shall ye see me deye presently / but yf I have socours / Whan the children 12 herde the moder speke thus, they sayd to Reynawde, 'Goode fader, for god dys love deliver your horse! For he shall deye as well for hungre / And it is better that he deye fyrste than we afore hym.' And when alarde 16 guycharde and Rycharde herde their nevewes speke thus, rycharde speke / and sayd to his brother, 'Ha, gentyll duke, for god suffre not that your children nor my lady, your wyffe, deye for hungre, and we also.' 20 And when Reynawde herde his brother Rycharde speke so to hym, his herte tendred with, all ryght sore / and felle to wepe, and sayd / 'My fayer breder, syth that it playse you that bayarde shall deye, I praye 24 you go and slee hym / And whan they were all accorded that bayarde sholde be slayn and eten, 2 they wente streyghte to the stable / where they founde bayarde / that casted to theym a grete syghe / And 28 when Reynawde sawe that, he sayd he sholde rather slee hymselfe / than that bayarde sholde deye / that many tymes hathe saved hym from deth / And whan the chyldren had herde this / they returned agayne to 32 theym moder wepynge, and all deed for hungre.

Thenne whan Reynawde sawe that hys chyldren were goon / he wente to bayarde, and gaff hym a

---

1 Fol. C.C. ii. back. 2—2 omitted, F. orig.
lityll hey, 1 For he had none other thynge to gyve hym. And thynne he came to hys brethern, and founde Aymard holdynge Aymon his neyewe that wepte / and Rycharde helde Yon, and Guycharde the duchesse, that in his armes was swouned, and sayd to theym / 'Alas, for god mercy, I praye you take in you corage tyll nyghte. And I promyse you that I shall doo so moche, that we 8 shall have mete / and god wyll.' 'Brother,' sayd Alarde, 'we muste suffre it, wyll we or not;' Soo longe abode the knyghtes that the nyghte came / and when it was come / Reynawd sayd to his brethern / 'My brethern, 12 I wyll goo speke to our fader / for to see what he shall saye to me / and yf he shall lete vs deye for hungre;' / 'Brother,' sayd rycharde, 'I wyll goo wyth you, yf it playse you, and ye shall be the more sure that I be in your company.' 'My brother,' sayd the good knyghte Reynawd, 'ye shall not so. For I will goo there alone / and yf I brynge you not mete, I shall thenne deliver you bayarde,' and when Reynawd had sayd this, he 20 made hymselfe to be well armed, and lighted vpon bayarde, and well secretly went oute of mountalban, and came to his faders pavylion / the whiche he knewe well / For he had aspyed it from above the grete towre 24 while it was day. And it hapsed so that he founde his fader aymon out of hys pavylion all alone, waytynge yf he myghte by ony way vnderstonde some tydelynge pryvely of the castell / And when reynawde 28 sawe his fader / he sayd to hym, 'What arte thou that goo now at this tyme of the nyghte all alone?' And when aymon herde hym speke, he knewe hym anone, & was righte glad / but he made of it noo semblaunt / 32 and sayd to hym / 'but what art you thisel, that goost at this owre so hie mounted.' Whan reynawd herde his fader speke, he knewe hym well, & sayd to hym, 'Syr, for god have merci vpon vs / for we deye 2 all for

---

1 Fol. C.C. iii. 2 Fol. C.C. iii. back.
hungre! and all our horses ben all redy deed & eten, and soo we have nomore but bayarde, that shall not deye as longe as I live / For rather I sholde lete me be slayn / For to me & to my brethern he hathe often saved our lives. Alas, fader, yf ye will not have mercy on vs, have mercy of my yonge children!'

'I camie not helpe you of no thynge / but goo your waye agen / for I have you forswnre, ye wote it well / and therfore I wolde not dou agetste myn othe for all the good in the worlde / and my herte is right sory that I maye not helpe nor gyve you socours.'

'Syr,' sayd reynawde, 'you speke yll / sauff your reverence. For I promyse you, yf ye gyve vs noo socours, that my wyff, my children, my brethern, and myself shall deye for rage 16 of hungre, or ever thre dayes ben passed / For it is all redy more than thre dayes, that none of vs ete ony mete / and so I wote not what I shall dou / Alas, ye be our fader, soo oughte you to conforte vs / For I 20 wote well, yf the kyng have vs, he shal make vs all to be hanged, and deye shamfully, whiche were not your worshyp; wherfore, fader, ye oughte not to faylle vs, yf the lawe of nature is rightwys / My fader, for god have pyte & mercy vpon vs, and holde not your courage agetn your pour children for it were grete crueltie; and also ye knowe well that charlemagne dooth to vs grete wrong, for to persecute vs as he dooth' / Whan Aymon herde reynawde speke thus, he had grete pyte of hym / and was soo sory that almoste he felle down in a swoune to the erthe. and after he began to beholde his childe reynawde; ^1 & sore wepynge, he sayd to hym / 32 'Fayr sone, ye have sayd trouthe that the kyng dooth you grete wrong / and therfor a lighte fro your horse, & entre wythin my pavylion, and take what it playse

\(^1\) reynawrd, orig.
you / for noo thing shall be sayd nay to you / but I shall not gyve you nothyng, for to save my othe / And when reynawd herde his fader speke soo, he descended

4 a fote, & kneled before him / and sayd 'an hundred gramerces, dere fader' / and themhe he entred wythin the pavylion of his fader, and laded bayard wyth brede, & wyth flesshe, both salt & fresslie / and wyte it that bayard dyde bere more than x other horses shold have doon. And when reynawd had well laded bayarde wyth vitaylles, he toke leve of his fader, & went agen to mountalban / it is not to be asked what welcom

12 reynawd had of his brederen, of his wytf, & of his men / and wyte it that when they sawe hym brynge soo moche vitaylles / thei swouned all for ioye to the erthe / And when reynawd sawe this, he wende thei

16 had ben deed for hungre. Soo began he to make grete sorowe, & not wythoute a cause / and while that reynawd sorowed & made grete mone, his brederen began to com agen to theimselfe, his wyff, & also his two

20 children. And when reynawd sawe theym all vpon their fete, he was glad, & presented to theym mete for theym, & for his folke. and thei themhe made grete ioye, & ete their fyll at their ease / And when they had

24 eten well, thei went to slepe, except reynawd, that wold kepe watche himself. And on the morne when the day was com, they rose & went to here masse / and after the masse was doon, they fell to their mete agayn,

28 and ete all that was left over, evin of that reynaud had brought. and when the next nyght was come, aymon, that cowde not forgete his children / made his stywarde to com byfore hym, & sayd to him / 'ye knowe how I

32 have forsworne my children / wherof I am sory that ever I dyde soo; but it is sayd, that at the nede the fremde is knowen / I lete you wyte that my children ben yonder wythin in grete poverte & mysease, and

1 Fol. C.C. iv.
how be it that I have forsworne them / I oughte nor maye 1 not faylle them / we have thre engynes that charlemagne hath made me doo make for to hurt with my children, wherof we have dommaged theim asmoche 4 as we myghte / now must we helpe theym after their dommage / And I shall telle you how : see that ye put wythin the engynes brede & flesshe, bothe salt & freshe, in grete plente in stede of stones / and lete this be cast 8 in to the castell, for yf I sholde deye myself for hungre, I shall not fayll theim aslong as I have wherof to helpe theim / and also I repent me full sore of the harme that I have doon to them / for all the worlde ought to 12 blame me therof wyth good right, 2 and we ben in the wronge.' 'Sire,' sayd the stiwarde, 'ye saye well / for ye have doon so moche agenste theim, that all the worlde blameth you therof / but incontynente I shall 16 doo your commaundement' / And thenne the styward, went & made the thre engynes to be fyllde wyth vitaylles, & after, he badde the governer to caste theim in to mountalban / And ye must wyte that many of 20 thoose blamst aymone sore, that he made his engynes to be caste agenst his children / for they wende it had be stones. And whan the nyght was passed, & that reynawd was vp / he went here & there wythin the 24 castell, and founde fouyon of vitaylles that his fader had cast / wherof he was ryght glad, & sayd / 'Good lord, blessed be you / now see I well that they that have their truste in you, can not fare amys.' and thenne he called 28 his bredern, his wyfe, 3 & his childern, 3 & sayd / 'My bredern, ye see how our fader hath the pite of vs' / And thenne he made the vitaylles to be gadred vp, & put in a sure place / and soo they ete therof at theyr ease, for 32 they had well grete neede therof, for they were so sore

1 Fol. C.C. iv. back.
2 Car mes enfans out le droit, F. orig. E. i.
3–3 omitted, F. orig.
an hunred that it was grete pyt / And wyte it that aymon made cast so moche vitayll within mountalban, that thei of within had ynoughe for thre monethes 4 wyth good governaunce.

Now we must vnderstonde that charlemagne had some knowledge howe the olde duke aymon had gyven vytyalles to hys children, wherof he was sore an angred, & made aymon to com incontynent afore hym, & sayd to hym, 'aymon! who maketh the so bolde to gyve ony mete to myn emyres mortall? I know well all thy wyles / thou mayst not excuse thyself; but by the feth that I owe to god I shall avenge me soo well are nyght, that yf I may, ye shall lese your hede for it' / 'Syr,' sayd the duke aymon, 'I wyll not denye it; for I telle you truly, yf ye shold make me deye, or be brente in a fyre, I wyll not faylle mye helpe theym. For my children be no theves, tray-tours, nor no murdrers, but they ben the moste valiauant knyghtes of the worlde, & the truest. and wene not you to slee my children in suche maner! ye have to long wrought your foly if it wold suffyre you' / Whan charlemagne herde aymon speke thus / he was angri wyth it, and for grete wrathe he loked as fire, & almoste he smote aymon. And whan the duke naymes sawe this, he avauounced hym forthe, & sayd / 'Sir, sende home aymon, for ye have kept hym here tolong; ye ought well to vnderstonde that aymon wyll not see his children to be distroyed, and therfor ye ought not to blame him nor smyte hym;' after that charlemagne herde the duke naymes speke, he sayd to hym / 'Naymes, sith that ye have iudged it, ye shall not be gaynsayd;' and thenne he turned hym towards the duke aymon, & sayd to hym / 'Now goo forth oute of myn oost / for ye have doon me more dommage than prouffyte' / 'sire,' sayd the duke aymon / 'I shall

1 Fol. C.C. v. 2 Damps roy, F. orig. 3 F 2
The Four Sons of Aymon. [Chap. XIX.

He recommends his children to the Peers,

gladly doo your commandement. And anone he went & lighted on horsbacke, and after sayd to the peres of fraudence, 'Lordes, I praye you all that ye wyll have my children for recommended / for they ben com of your 4 blode, and lete the kyng see well to / For ye he make my children to deye by suche grete vengance as he hathe sayd / ye I sholde be-come a sarrasyn, and dwelle in affryque all the dayes of my liff, I shall stryke of his hede; for none other gage I wyll not take.' And when aymon had sayd thus, he went oute of the ooste in to fraudence to his countrey, well hevy by cause he lefte his children in soo grete povertie / And Charlemagne, that sawe aymon goo thus quyte, and that he had gar-nysshed mountalban of vytayllis, he was full angry for it / Soo studyed he vpon this a longe while / and when he had studied longe ynoughe, he was soo sory that 16 none myghte be more / and returned hymselfe towards his barons / and sayd, 'Lordes, I commaunde you that ye breke all our engynes / For by theim I have myssed to have the castell of mountalban.' And In[con]tynente 20 the barons made breke the engynes, as the kynge had commaund / And by all thus Reynawde abode a longe while in good peas, but theyr vytaylles began sore to mynysshe / And when Reynawde sawe that / 24 he was sory / and beganne to complayne in hymselfe, and sayd, 'Good lorde, what shall I doo / I knowe that atte longe reynyngue we shall not move holde, and soo shall charlemagn have noo mercy of vs, but he shall 28 make vs deye. Alas, mawgis, where be you? For ye were wyth vs, we sholde doubte noo thynge, nor I sholde not suffre this grete distresse that I have.' All thus as Reynawde complayned hymself / thenne came 32 alarde, that was so feble, that wyth peyn he myghte stande vpon his fete, and sayd to Reynawde / 'Reynawde, for the love of god make bayarde to be slayne /

1 Fol. C.C. v. back.
For I maye noo lenger live wythoute mete / nother yet my brethern.'

Thenne whan reynaude herde his brother alarde speke thus / he was right sory for it, & toke his swerde, & went to bayarde for to slee him / And whan bayarde saw reynaude, he began to make grete ioye / and whan reynaude sawe the chere that bayarde hym made / he sayd to hym, 'ha, bayarde, goode beest / yf I had the herte for to doo the harme, I were welle cruell.'

And whan yownet, the yonger sone, herde that / he cryed to lisiis fader, 'sir, wherfore tary ye, that ye slee not bayard, sithe he must deye, for I wexe madde for hungre / and so I tell you, yf I have not shortly som fode ye shall see me dey afore your eyen / and yet my moder & my broder also / for we may no lenger live thus, soo harde we ben famyshed' / And whan reynaude herde his sone speke to hym soo, he had grete pyte of hym / & grete sorowe in his hert / and soo he had of bayard that chered hym somche.

Reynawde goes to Bayard, who makes signs of joy when he sees him.

Theane wyst not reynaude what he sholde saye nor doo, and soo began to thynke a longe while / And whan he had bethought himself longe ynoughe / he advysed hym how bayarde shold not deye. And theane he called after a basin, and made biaird be leten blode moche / and after he had lete him blode ynoughe, reynaude stopped the vayne, & gaff the blode to alarde for to be dressed ; and whan it was soden, they ete all a lityll therof, whiche gau theim grete sustenaunse. And to say the trouth / reynaude & his folke were well four dayes wythout any other fode.

And whan came to the fiftie day, that thei wold hane biaird lete blode agen / he was soo feble that he cast noo blode at all. and whan the duches sawe that, she began to wepe tenderly, & sayd / 'Sire, for god, sith that he gyveth no more blode, lete him be slayn / and

Reynawde cannot slay his horse, but sends for a basin, and draws his blood instead, which his folk eat.

1 Fol. C.C. vi.
soo shall ete your pour children of him, that deyen for
grete hungre, & I also, 'Madame,' sayd thenne reynawd, 'I wyll not doo so / For bayarde hathe borne vs
goode company in our liff, and so shall he do tyl 4 thour of our deth, for we shall dey alle tegyder.' And
ye oughte to knowe that Reynawd \(^1\) and his company
were brought soo lowe / that they wayted none other
but deth / the whiche was theny nyghe ynouge, whan 8
an olde man that was amonge theim, cam & sayd to
reynawd, 'Sir, what shall it be / I see that you &
mountalban shall be destroyed / but in you is not the
fawte, for it hath be well defended aslong as ye myght, 12
as it apereth, and syth that I see ye may nomore doo /
come after me, & I shall shew you a waye, where throug
we shall well all goo out wythoute ony danger / and I
wyll well that ye knowe mountalban was ones made, & 16
shit afore ye dyde make it / and the lord that buylde
it first, lete make a waye vnder the erth, that bryngeth
folke vnto the wode of the serpent ; and I was a yong
childe whan that way was made, and I know well 20
where it lieth / doo dygge where I shall shewe you,
ye shall fynde it wythout ony fayll, and thus shall
we goo fre wythout ony danger' / when reynawd herde
these wordes, he was so gladde of it that none myght 24
be more / so that he forgate his hungre withall, & sayd,
'O fayr god, that all made, blessed be you! Now have
I founde that I desired; for I shall goo to ardeyn,
whiche I ought to love dere.' And thenne he toke the 28
olde man by the hande, & made hym to bring him to
the\(^2\) place where he sayd / and there he made to be
dygged in therth, & founde ye\(^e\) waye that the olde man
said / wherof he was right glad / and thenne he went 32
to the stable, & put the sadle vpon bayard, & after
brought him to the weye / but wyte it that bayard was
soo feble that he scante woode goo the pase. And

\(^1\) Fol. C.C. vi. back. \(^2\) the repeated in text.
the ne reynaude, his wyffe, his bredern, his children, & the remenaunte of his folke, put theimself to the way vnder therth, so that noo creature a live abode wythin

4 the castell.

**G**rete plente of torches made reynawd to be fired,\(^1\) that they myght see the beter wythin ye cave as thei went, and he \(^2\)ordered his forwarde of that few folke that he had / and wente forthe in good orden-

ance wyth his baner displayed / and he with his bredern made the reregarde\(^3\) / And whan they had goon a longe while thrughe the cave, that was wyde &

12 large, reynawd made his folke to tary, & sayd to his bredern / ‘mi bredern, we have doon evyll / For we have lefte behynde vs kyng yon in the pryson / certes I sholde lever deye than that I shold leve hym soo /

16 for he sholde deye there for hungre as a famysshed woulfe / and that were to vs grete synne.’ ‘By god,’ sayd richard, ‘he hathe well deserved it, for of a man that is a traytour, men oughte not to have pyte’ /

20 ‘Broder,’ sayd reynewde, ‘ye saie yll.’ and thenne he retorned again, & cam to the prison where the kyng yon was / whiche he toke out & broughte wyth hym. And whan the duchesse sawe her broder the kynges yon com, she sayd to hym / ‘Ha, broder, ye are right yll come to me / for all the harme that we have suffred, cometh throughthe cause of you / I am sory that ye be not deed rotyn wythin the pryson, for ye have well

28 deserved it.’ ‘Madame,’ sayd reynawde, ‘lete that alone, I praye you, for he shall not dey if I maye, For I have doon to hym homage, wherfore I ought to obey hym. and how be it he hath wroughte full yll aegenst

and with his wife and children, and the remainder of his folk, goes through the passage.

After they have gone some time Reynawde discovers the absence of King John;

he returns, and brings John out of the Castle prison.

---

\(^1\) quant luy et ses gens furent dedens la cave, F. orig. E. iii.
\(^2\) Fol. C.C. vii.
\(^3\) Quant Regnault eut bien ordonne sa besongue ilz se mirent a la voye par dedens la cave qui estoit grande et plantureuse, F. orig. E. iii.
\(^4\) yf, orig.
vs, yet shall I never be forsworne agenst hym’ / whan his brendern herde him speke thus / they sayd to hym / ‘broder, ye speke well & wysly, and ye doo that ye ought to doo / nor ye shall never be rebuked of vs for 4 it; doo therin as it playseth you’ / And after thise wordes thei went on their waye /

So longe went thise knyghtes, that thei cam oute of the cave, and fouonde theymself at the woode of 8 the serpent, evyn at the sprynge of the daye / and assone as thei were issued oute of the sayd cave, thei were glad / bycause that they were soo scaped fro charlemagne. Yonnet thenne, the lityl hone 1 of Reynawd, swnouned there for grete hungre / And whan Reynawd sawe that, he was right sory for it / and toke hym vp and sayd / ‘Fayr sone, I praye you be a good chere, for we shall have soone mete grete plente’ / 16

And whan he had sayd this, he toke his other hone aymone in his armes, & recomforted hym moche / and whan reynawd had doon soo / he loked abowt hym, & knew wel where they were. and he sayd to his 20 brethern / ‘Lordes, me semeth that we ben nygh the hermytage of my good frende bernarde.’ ‘sire,’ sayd alarde, ‘ye saye trouthe, but what shall we doo?’ ‘Broder,’ sayd reynawd, ‘I counseill for the moost 24 profytably that we goo there / and we shall abyde there tyl the nyght be com / and thenne we shall take our waye towarde ardeyn; for I counseill not that we goo by day / and also it can not be but the hermyte shall 28 have some mete whiche we shall gyve to my wyff, & to my children’ / ‘Broder,’ sayd alarde, ‘by my feyth ye speke wel.’ and thenne they put theimself to the waye / and they had goon but a lityll that they fouunde 32 the hermytage; but as they wented all throught the woode, they departing thone fro the other as wynde bestes, etyn the herbes and the gresses as it had been

1 Fol. C.C. vii. back.
apples or peers, so grete hungrę they had. And when Reynawd sawe this, he was sory, & called theym agen, & sayd, 'Lorde, ye doo not well for to separe thus the 4 one from the other, For it myghte lightly tourne vs to dommage / I praye you that every man calle other, & gadre yourself togyder / and lete vs goo in to the hermytage / For we shall fynde ther bernarde, that 8 shall make vs good chere, I wote it well' / And whan they were come there / Reynawde knocked at the gate / And whan bernarde herde it / he cam anone, and sawe Reynawde and hys folke / wherof he was ryght gladde / 12 and came and kyssed Reynawd. And after he sayd vnto hym / 'Fayre lorde, ye be ryght welcome / of whens come you / and how is it wyth you?' / 'My frenede bernarde,' sayd themne Reynawde, 'Wyte it that 16 I have lefte myn herytaunce by fyne force of hungrę, and soo I goo to Ardeyne / For I canne none otherwyse doo atte this tyme / And I praye you that ye have ony mete, that ye, for godys sake, wyll gyve it to 20 my wyffe / and to my children, For they ben soo sore famysshed that they dey for hungrę, but yf they have some mete.'

When Bernarde vnderstode thise wordes of Reynawde, he had of hym grete pyte / for the dystresse wherin he sawe Reynawde & his folke / And of the other parte, he was gladde whan he wyste that they were scaped oute of the dangeours of Charle-28 magne / and anone he wente to the duchesse, & sayd to her / 'Madame, ye be right welcome / I praye you doubte noo thynge, For ye be arryved in a good place / for to take your reste atte your ease’ / And 32 thenne he wente in to his chambre, and broughte oute

1 quant regnault eut se dist chescum se ralia ensemble et sen vont vers hermitage, F. orig. E. iv.
2 Fol. C.C. viii.
3 dordonne, F. orig.
4 larmite, F. orig.
he sets bread and wine before them.

Reynawd says he shall defy Charlemagne when he reaches Arden.

At night they all take farewell of Bernard, and set forth for Arden.

The people of the city welcome them gladly.

brede and wyne / and all suche as god had sente hym / And after he sette hym besyde Reynawd, and sayd to hym / ‘Lorde, take a worthe suche vytaylles as god hathe gyven to me! there they ben / I shall 4 gyve you mete in dyspyte of Charlemagne’ / ‘Gramey, syre,’ sayd Reynawd / ‘here ben good tydynges for vs; but when the nyghte is come, we shall goo to Ardeyne.'

For I doubte sore that Charlemagne shall 8 aperceyve that we ben departed / For yf god graunte me that I may bryng me and my company to Ardeyne / I shall not sette a rotyn appuull for all the power of Charlemagne / for I shall well defende me agaynste 12 hym.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd the heremyte, ‘ye saye well / I praye god that he wyll fulfylle your wyll.’ All that daye soiourned Reynawd and his folke wyth Bernarde the heremyte / the whiche served and comforted theim of all his power, and also he gaf of the otis of his asse to bayarde, as moche as he myght ete. And when the nyghte was com, Reynawd wolde departe / and bade fare well to the heremyte. and when the heremyte 20 saw that they wold goo awaye, he founde the meanes that they had thre horses, wherof the duchesse had thone / and the children had the other tweyne / And thus reynaunde wyth his felishyp went on theyr waye 24 so long that they cam to ardeyne. And when they of the cyte wyst that their lord was com, that they had desired so longe / they were well glad, & cam agenste hym in fayr company, and receyved hym honourable / 28 and conveyd hym vnto the fortresse. and after they went & made feest thorughe all the towne / like as god had descended there, 4 for grete ioye that they had of theyr lord reynawd. And when the barons of the 32 londe wyst that theyr lord reynawd & his brederne were

1 dordonne, F. orig.
2 Fol. C.C. viii. back.
3 qui estoit si rescreu. F. orig. E. iv. back.
4-1 omitted, F. orig.
come to ardeyn,\(^1\) they were glad / and cam soone \[to\] see hym / and to hym they made reverence / But here leveth the history to speke of reynawde, of his brethern, 4 his wyff & his chyldren, that were in ardeyn\(^1\) well at ease / for theyr grete hungre was ceased / and shall retorne to speke of charlemagn & of his xii peres / for to shewe how he entred in to mountalban, after 8 that reynawd was departed.

CHAPTER XX.

\\(\|\\) How Charlemagn, after that he had beseged mountalban, and had famysshed reynawd & his brethern / knewe that they were goon, and had habandouned the place,\(^2\) and were goon to Ardeyne,\(^1\) He wente there and beseged theym agayn, But or ever he had pyghte his siege, 16 Reynawde / and his breder made an yssue vpon hym and hys folke, and slewe many of theym, And toke prysoner Richard the duke of mormandy.\(^3\) \&c.\

20 In this party sheweth the history, that whan Charlemagne was at the siege / byfore mountalbaï, sore an angred that he cowde not take Reynawd ne his breder / Nowe it happed on a daye that Charlemagn rode nighe the castell for to wyte how they bare themself within mountalban. And when he was nygle,\(^5\) he loked vp to the walles, and sawe no body

---

\(^1\) dordonne, F. orig. 
\(^2\) luy et ses freres sa femme et ses enfans par dessoubz terre, F. orig. E. iv. back. 
\(^3\) pert de france dont charlemagne fut moult dolaït, F. orig. E. v. 
---

Charlemagne rides towards the Castle of Montalban, where he sees no one on the wall;
that was there / as they were wont to be / And when he saw that / he was abasshed of it, and came agen to his pavylion / and sent incontynent for all his barons / and when thei were come, he sayd to theym / 'Lordes, 4
it is well nyghe eyghte dayes a goo / that I sawe noo body vpon the walles of mountalban / wherfore I beleve that alle they of it be deed.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes, 'it were good that men wyste the trouth 8 of it / sende thider, syre, yf it playse you' / Whan charlemagn herde this, he lighted anone on horsbacke / and all his barons wyth him, and went to mountalban / And when they were come to the gate / they 12
made semblaunt to gyve a sawte to the castell / but reynawde was to ferre for to defende it1 / and thenne Charlemagn wende verely that Reynawde & all his had been deed for hungre & grete distresse / and he made 16 to be broughte there a longe ladder, and righted it to the walles. And incontynent rowlande mounted vp2
first of all / and after him ogyer, olivere, & the duke naymes. And when they were vpon the walles, they 20
behelde wythin, and they saw nother man nor woman, and soo they went doun from the walles / and yede & opened the gate / and made charlemagn to come in, & all his folke / But wyte it that Charlemagne wente in 24
as angry as ony man myghte be. And when he was wythin & founde noo body / he was sore merveylled, 28
that he wyste not what he shold say nor doo. Soo went he vp to the dongeon, & he fonde there noo 3 body / wherof he was more merveylled than he was a fore, and thenne he began to saye / 'Bi my soule, lordles, here is grete merveylles, & well the devyilles werke / wyte it that Reynawde is goon, & all his bredern, and 32 all his folke also, and all this hathe doon that theef

1 Quant Charlemaigne vit ce que nessun ne se apparissoit
pour le chastel deffendre, F. orig. E. v.
2 vs, orig. 3 Fol. D.D. i. back.
mawgys, that hathe ben here wythin / for it can none otherwyse be.'

After that Charlemagne had sayd thise wordes / he began to walke wythin the castell, sekynge all aboute to see yf he myghte fynde reynawd or ony of his brethern. And soo longe he went thus here & there, that he founde the waye there as they wente 8 oute / and whan the kyng charlemagne sawe the cave, he was sore abasshed wyth it / and called ogyer the dane, & sayd to hym, 'Ogyer, here is the waye where thrughe the traytours are goon awaye; and all thys hath doon me mawgis / For he hathe made this cave in dyspyte of me, Wherof he maketh my herte to breke in my bely.'

'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes / 'ye blame mawgys; but thys cave sheweth not that it hathe be vnmade this hundred yeres passed / and I telle you for certeyn that sarrasins made it fyrste.'

Whan charlemagne herde thise wordes, he began to smyle wyth an angry face / and cursed theym that made the cave / and was merveyllously an angred, For he knew wel that reynawd & all his company were goon oute at the same hole / and soo he was dysmyssed of his purpose. he sayd theene to his folke, 'Now goo lightly in, and seke where this hole bryng men vnto, for I shall not be at myn ease tyll I knowe it' /

And whan rowlande vnderstode charlemagne / he put hymself wythin the cave / and made lighte a grete mayne of torches for to see in it. and after rowlande wente with grete plente of frenshemen, that folowed hym / And thei wente soo longe tyll they came at thende of the cave, and fouunde theymself in the wode of the serpent / And whan rowlande was come out of the cave / he loked about for to know where they were, but he cowde not hymself knowe it. and thenne he sayd to hys folke, 'Lordes, me semeth that

1 Fol. D.D. ii.
Roland relates to the Emperor how Reynawde and his folk have escaped.

All the host of Charlemagne lodge themselves in Montalban.

A messenger brings tidings of the Sons in Arden.

for to goo ony forder for to seke after reynawd / it were but foly, for he knoweth well the countrey, and we wote not where to goo’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd his felawes, ‘ye saye well; therfore lete vs retourne to charlemagn 4 your vncle, for to telle hym what we have founde wythin this cave.’

When rowland & his felawes were accorded, they retourned that way that they were come. 8 And when ye kynge sawe theym come outhe agen / he asked of theym what they had founde, and yf they had founde ony yssue to goo outhe of the cave / ‘Syre,’ sayd rowland, ‘ye, wythout faylle / Wyte that reynawd 12 & his folke are scared you / and they have bayarde wyth theim / for here ye maye see the paath ’ / And whan the kynge charlemagne knewe the trouthe, how reynawd & his company were gone, he was soo gretly 16 an angred that none myght be more / and the same hour he sent his messengers in all his londes & countres, for to wyte yf he myghte understonde ony tydynges where reynawd & his brethern were become. And 20 whan he had doon this, he commaundde that hisoste shold dyslodge / and that they shold come all to mountalban. And whan the barons herde the kynge, they dyde his commaundemente / and cam all to 24 mountalban, & lodged theym as wel as they cowde / and abode there well six dayes, makynge grete ioye that reynawd & his brethern were thus expelled out of it. And as the barons were devysing wythin mountalban, 28 there came a messager to fore charlemagne, and salved him as to hym apperteyneth / and to hym he sayd in this wyse, ‘Syre, wyte it that I have seen Reynawd, Alard, guychard, 1 & Rychard, ledyng grete ioye wyth 32 grete company of knyghtes / kepinge a grete courte wythin the cyte of ardeyne2 / Where as reynawd gyveth grete gyftes to every one, and I am sore

1 Fol. D.D. ii. back. 2 dordonne, F. orig.
merveilled where he hath goten soo grete tresour. And also is there wyth hym the kynge you of gascoyn / and that more is, I telle you for certeyn, 4 that Reynawd hathe made a grete assemble of folke for to defende him agenst you, yf ye goo in ony wyse for to assayle hym’ /

The kynge was moclie angry whan he herde hys messager / soo swære he by saynt denys he sholde never lie in noo bed tyll he had beseged ardeyn1 / And whan he had sayd soo, he commanded to his barons that every man sholde trusse his bag-/ 12 gage / and that they sholde take on theyr way streyghte to ardeyn1 / And whan the barons herde charlemagn speke soo, they toke on theyr waye wythoute any more taryeng, "towarde ardeyn2 / and rode soo longe tyll that they came to mountargweyll / that was not ferre from ardeyn1 / For men myghte see from thens the steples of the towne. There was lodged the oost of charlemagne that nyghte / but I proymse he dyde doo make 20 good watche, for doubté of the four sones of aymon. And whan the daye was come / charlemagne dyde set his folke in good ordenaunce / and wyth his baner dys-played they rode towarde ardeyn1 / And whan reynawde wyste that charlemagn was come for to besiege theim wyth in arleyn3, he began to swere that he sholde not lete him beseged, as he had doon wythin mountalban. For rather he wolde fyghte wyth charlemagne / And yf it maye soo falle that he come in his handes, he shall not have pyte of hym as he had to fore tyme, by cause he had founde hym soo cruell, and wythoute pyte / ‘Brother,’ sayd theune Rycharde, ‘now 32 I see you speke like a knyghte / and by the feyth that I owe vnto you / I promyse you that, or ever charlemagn shal besiege vs, I shall slee moo than an hundred

1 dordonne, F. orig. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. 3 Fol. D.D. iii.
of his folke. And, but ye god sayd we / we shall doo suche a thyng that shall be to the grete hurt and dys-playsure of hym / wherof he shall be sori all the dayes of his lif / For he is not manered like a gentyll man / 4 For the more that he is prayed / the lesse he dooth.'

'Brother,' sayd alarde,1 / 'ye speke well & honestly, And I shall conne you thanke for it aslong as I live.'

Ye oughte to wyte that whan reynawd sawe that 8 charlemagne come for to besiege hym wyth a grete puyssaunce of folke / he was noo thyng abasshed wyth it. But2 he made incontynente bondy, his good horne, to be blowen / and made his folke to be arryved 12 redely, that were in grete nombre, and made theym yssue oute of the cyte / And whan his armye was assembled in the feeldes / it was a noble thyng for to see. And thenne he ordeyned his bataylles by good or-16 denaunce as a wyse fyghter / And after that he had doon soo, he called his brethren, and sayd to theym, 'My fayr brethren, this daye is the daye that we shall deye, or elles doo soo moche that we shall brynge the 20 werre atte an ende / Wherfore, I praye you that every of vs shewe hym selve a goode knyght ; for in you is all my truste. And soo I promise you that I have lever deye worthily in bataylle, than for to be hanged sham- 24 fully as a theffe. My brethren, I praye you come alle nyghe me / for I wylle that we ben the firste that shall smyte vpon our enmyes.'

'Brother,' sayd alarde, 'we shall doo your commaundement / doubt ye not of it / 28 and goo forthe whan ye wylle' / And whan they were soo agreed, Reynawde dyde chuse an hundred of the beste knyghtes of his felawship, and sayd to theym, 'Sires, I praye you that ye wyll be with me in the 32 firste bataylle, and ye shall doo me grete honoure.'

34 Syre,' sayd the knyghtes, 'we shall gladly doo your

---

1 par la foy que je vous doy, F. orig.
2 But, orig.
commandeunte, and we shall not leve you as longe as lif is in vs; and so we thanke you of the grete worshyp that ye doo to calle vs in your company. 

4 For we knowe well that we can not fare amys as longe as we be wyth you.'

When Reynawd had ordeyned well his bataylles / he made none other taryeng / but went the 
8 formest of all, the sheeld atte the necke / and the spere in the fyst, and was mounted vpon bayarde, that behelde proudly about hym, makyng grete noyse / And thenne reynawd gaff hym the spore / and wente 
12 fayr vpon the folke of charlemagne. And whan charlemagne sawe bayarde comyng, that made so grete bruyte / and reynawde vpon his backe that came in soo fayr ordenaunce / he was sore abasshed of it / and sayd in 
16 hymselfe / 'O, goode lorde / and where the devyll have all redy had the four sones of Aymon so many folke as I see here now wyth theym? I byleve it is some devylles werke; for I had not lefte many wyth theym 
20 late a goo. And now reynawde is soo puyssaunte that he fereth me noo thynge. But I promyse god, all this shall not avaylle hym / but I shall doo instyce vpon hym & his bredern or oughte longe' / And thenne he 
24 made his bataylle to be sette in ordenaunce in the beste wyse that he cowde / and lighted on horsbacke for to come fyghte wyth reynawde / And whan the duke naymes sawe that Charlemagne was soo madde that 
28 he wolde go fyghte wyth Reynawde, he wente to hym and sayd / 'Syre, Syre, what ys that ye wylle doo? I promyse you it were grete foly for to fyghte wyth thise folke / and it were better that ye sholde make peas 
32 with Reynawde / For I am sure that Reynawde shall doo all that ye wyll commannde hym. And I telle you well, that yf we fyghte wyth theym, that ye shall

1 see many knyghtes to trayle theyr bowelles thorughe 

the feeldes / wherof it shall be grete harme to the one party / and to the other. And suche shall the losse be, that it shall not be recovered agayne' / 'Naymes,' sayd the kynge Charlemagne, 'lete this alone / For I 4 shall doo none other wyse, for no man that liveth. I sholde rather let me to be dysmembred.' And whan the duke Naymes had understonde his wordes, he was full sory of it / and lefte his spekynger therof. And 8 from that hour, Charlemagne delibered hymselfe for to fyghte / and always he rode forthe in grete wrathe.

And whan Reynawd sawe that the two oostes were approched sore nyghe, thone the other / as to 12 hande and hande, he sayd to his brother Rycharde, 1 that was nexte hym,¹ 'I wylle goo speke wyth the kynge Charlemagn, for to wyte of hym yf he wyll pardonne and take vs vnto his grace. For yf he wolde 16 doo soo / I sholde doo enteerly all his wylle & playsure, as to our soverayne lorde' / 'By god, brother,' sayd thenne Rycharde, 'ye be not worthe a botelle of heye / For the herte is all redy faylled in your bely' / 'Goo 20 forthe, myschaunte,' sayd thenne Reynawde / 'thou wote not what thou sayste, For I wylle goo there; noo man shall kepe me therfro / and yf he refuseth the peas when I shall axe it of hym, I shall make myn a vowe 24 to god that I shall nevermore requyre hym therof' / 'Brother,' sayd Alarde, 'ye saye well and wysely, goo there hardly / and doo therin your wylle' / And thenne Reynawde made none other delaynge / but he smote 28 bayarde wyth the spores, and wente incontynente towards the kynge Charlemagne, and sayd to hym, 'Syre, for god mercy suffre, yf it be your playsure, that we have peas and accorde wyth you / that this werre 32 that hathe lasted solong maye fynyshe, and that your wrathe be putte awaye from vs, yf ²it playse you / and I shall be redy to doo all that ye wyll / and also I shall

gyve you bayarde my good horse.' Thenne sayd the kyng to hym / 'goo fro me, false gloton / the devyll spede the / for all the worlde shall not conne kepe the,

but that I shalle slee the.' 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'ye shall not doo soo / and god wylle / for I shalle defende me well / And wyte it, sith that it is com to this / ye shall not be spared of vs / but we shall do the worste

that we can.' 'Smyte, knyghtes,' sayd the kyng / 'I shall never prayse you yf this evyll gloton scape me now' / and whan reynawd sawe this / he sayd, 'Syr kyngge of fraunce, I defye you!' and forthwyth he spored bayarde / and ranne wyth his spere vpon a knyghte / whiche he smote soo harde in the breste, that he overthrewe hym deed to therth. And after that he wente agen to his folke. And whan Charlemagne sawe this, he cryed wyth an hie voys, 'smyte, knyghtes! now shalle they be dyscomfyted' /

The Emperor insults him wrathfully, and calls on his knights to slay him.

Reynawde returns to his folk.

Roland spurts after Reynawde with many other knights, but cannot reach him.

Charlemagne commands Naymes to fight worthily.

Thenne whan rowlande herde the kyngge charlemagne erye thus / he spored after reynawde, and many other knyghtes also / but they overtoke hym not /

Whan rycharde sawe his brother come, he cam hym agenst / and sayd to hym, 'Brother, what tydynges brynge you / shall we have peas or werre?' 'Broder,

sayd reynawde, 'lete vs doo the best that we can, for peas we shall not have' / 'Brother,' said thenne richard, 'god blisse you for the tydynges that ye brynge! for I thinke to doo this daye suche a thynge wherof charlemagn shall be angry' / 'Brother,' sayd reynawde, 'I praye you that ye shewe yourselfe vertuons & stronge agenste our enmyes.' Whan the kyngge charlemagne sawe that it was tyme to set vpon, he called hastily the duke naymes, & sayd to hym / 'Naymes, holde my oryflam, and thynke to smyte well and valiauntly as a worthy knyght ought to doo at ether hande in keping

my worshyp, and herof I praye you heartly' / 'Syre,'

sayd the duke naymes, 'ye nede not for to praye me, for I am bounde to doo the same, but it greveth me that ye have not doon otherwyse / that is, that ye sholde have graunted to the peas; for the werre hathe lasted 4 to longe.' 'Naymes, I commaunde you that ye speke nomore therof to me / for while I live they shall have noo peas wyth me.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes, 'I am sory for it / Now lete see what ye shall doo / for I 8 goo to bataylle firste of all; and loke that ye folowe me yf ye wyll, for I shal put me in suche a place, wherof ye shall be sore merveylled, and not wythout a cause / for there nys noo man so oolde / but he sholde soone 12 gete hete there wythin a lityll while. Now folowe that wylle!'

Whan Reynawd sawe the oryflame of fraunce com / he broched bayarde wyth the spores, and ranne 16 among the thickest, and smote a knyghte soo harde that he cast hym down deed to the erthe / And after, he turned hym towards his folke, and chered theym honestly, and thenne he went agen vp on his enmyes, 20 and of theim he overthrewe foure, one after a nother, and vpon the fytte' he brake his speres in to many peces, & hurted hym right sore/ and anone he set hande to his swerde, & smote a knyghte wyth vpon his helme soo strongly, that he cleved hym to the teeth / and forth-wyth he smote a nother wyth suche strengthe that he made fle the hedde fro the body of hym / And after he had doon thise two strokes, he cried 'ardeyn' as hie as 28 he cowde, for to reioysse his folke. And whan he had cryed soo / he sayd to theym / 'Now vpon theym, goode knyghtes / For this daye we shall avenge the grete shame that charlemagne hathe doon to vs soo 32 longe wythout ony reyson.' And whan alarde, guy-charde, & Rychard herde reynawd speke thus / they

---

1 quartriesme, F. orig. E. viii. back.
2—2 omitted. F. orig. E. viii. back. 3 dordonne, F. orig.
raune vpon their enmyes by suche a maner that eche
of them overthrew vii knightes at that enpraynt. who
that had be there than, he sholde have seen grete faytes
of armes doon of the four sones of aymon / For after
that they were ones assembled togyder / the folke of
charlemagn myght not endure a fore theim / For reynawd & hys bredern went smytynge at eyther hande,
and felde theyr enmyes doun sterke deed as bestes /
soo that the moost parte of theim were slayn or dis-
comfyted /

Whan the kyng charlemagn sawe the grete domage
that the four sones of aymon bare to hym /
he was right sore an angred for it. And wyth grete
wrathe he went & raune vpon the folke of reynawd, &
smote a knyghte soo vengably that he cast hym doun
deed to the erthe / and brake his spere all in peces.
And after, he toke his swerde in his hande, wherof he
dyte merveylles of armes / so moche that his folke
praysed hym for it, for he bare hymself there valiant
& stronge / And wyte that this merveylous bataylle
was soo cruell that it was grete pite for to see.

It is trouth that rowlande was a ferde for his uncle
charlemagn, that he sholde be overthrown, whan
he-saw hym in the presse, wherfor he went anone nyghe
hym / and soo dyde oliver, ogyer, & all the xii peres, for
to kepe that he sholde have noo harme. And whan
the grete bataylles were assembled one agenst thother,
ye sholde a seen there a sharpe & a hevy bataylle, so
that it was pyte for to see / for sin that rowland, oliver,
& all the xii peres of fraunce were com in the medle /
they begann to make soo grete slaughter of the folke of
rey nawd, that they made theym leve the place / and
whan reynawd & his brethren saw that, thei medled
theim so sharply amonge the freashemen that every
man made them way; for they raught no man / but

The Sons of Aymon.

[CHAP. XX.

Thei threw hym deed to therthe, somoche that there was no thing but trembled a fore them. Ye ought to wyte, *that* fro thour of prime vnto thoure of *none*, endured this mortalle bataylle / that none wyste who sholde have the better of it / But whan none was passed, the folke of Reynawde began to wythdrawe theymself, for they myghte nomore. And for to saye the trouthe, *yf* the folke of reynawd wythdrewe theym / they were not to be blamed for it / for charlemagn had foure tymes more folke than reynawde, besides the twelve Peres that were suche knyghtes as men well know / But this that the Folke of reynawd dyd, was *for* the good ensample that they sawe in reynawde & in his bredern / And whan the noble knight perceyved that his folke wythdrewe theymself, he came to him that bare his standarde, & sayd to him / *‘My frende, 16 ryde towards ardeyn’* in the wysest wyse that ye can, for this day we have foughte right sore / and it is tyme that we goo reste ourself.’ *‘Sire,’* sayd the knight, *‘I shall well doo your commaundement.’* and incontynent he toke his waye towards ardeyn. *And thenne reynaud called his bredern, & sayd to theym, ‘leve vs be behinde & for to kepe our folke, for otherwyse we are lost’ / ‘Brother,’ sayd rycharde, ‘doubte not / for as longe as 24 god gyveth liffe to you & to bayarde, we nede not fere noo thynge’ /

When charlemagn sawe that reynawd & all his company was goon / he cried wyth a hie 28 voys, ‘now after, lordes, after! for now ben they dyscomfytied’ / But this worde of Charlemagne was cause that many a worthy knyghte loste his life / For suche dyde folowe after Reynawd that payd derely for it, For Reynawde and his brethern slewe moo than an hundred that folowed after theym / And wolde Charle-

---

2 dordonne. F. orig. F. i.
3–3 omitted, F. orig. F. i.
magne or noo, Reynawde and his bretherne entred agayne wyth their folke wythin Ardeyne. And ye muste knowe that Rycharde, the brother of Reynawde, 4 iosted wyth Rycharde, the duke of Normandy, by the 2 gate of Ardeyne, as they wolde have entred in / And there the duke was overthrowen, the whiche was taken prysoner by Rycharde the brother of Reynawde / and 8 broughte hym in to the cyte, mawgre the folke of Charlemagne / And whan Reynawde and all his folke were wythin Ardeyne, he made the gates to be shitte / And after, went and dysarmed theym for to take some 12 ease / For they had well nede therof.

Ye oughte to wyte, that whan Charlemagn saw that the four sones of Aymon had saved theymselfe, and that they had taken Rycharde the duke of 16 normandy prysoner, that was one of the twelve peres / he was so angry that noo man canne be more / For he feered sore leste Reynawde sholde make to deye rychard of normandy. and whan he saw that he 20 myghte doo none other, he commanded that the cyte sholde be besieged of all sides; the whiche thynge was incontynente doon as he had commanded / And thenne sware charlemagne, that he sholde never leve 24 his siege vnto the tyme that he had taken the cyte, and the four sones of Aymon to be hanged shamfully / 'Syre,' sayd Rowlande, 'ye knowe that I am he that moost hath hurted the four sones of aymon, nor 28 never I spake to you of peas bytwene you & theym / but fro hens forth reyson commandedeth me that I sholde speke & move therunto / Syre, ye know well that it is a goo XV yeres & more that ye have werred 32 wyth the foure sones of aymon, and we had alwayes the worse of the werre / and not without cause / for reynawd & his bredern are valiaunt knyghtes, nor they

be not to be lightly brought to dyscomfyture\(^1\) / And I promyse you, if ye had werred solong vpon the sarra-
syns, as ye have doon on the four sones of aymon, ye shold have be lord of the moste parte of theim / whiche had be to you more worship & les dommage. & wors is, ye know how richard of normandy, one of the beste knyghtes that ye had, is taken; and ye otherwyse it happeth to hym than well, it shall be to you grete dyshonour and blame. For therof ye shall see all fraunce in a rore & trowble / but ye put som remedy therto;\(^3\) and I telle you, ye were in the cas that Reynawd is in, I sholde slee hym / Syth\(^12\) that I myghte have noo peas wyth you / Wherfore, syre, ye shold doo it gladly wythall that ye wyll commaunde hym / and soo shall all his brethern also./ ‘rowland,’ sayd 20 thenne the kynge / ‘wylle ye saye ony thynge more’ / ‘Naye, syre,’ sayd Rowland. ‘And I swere you vpon my feyth,\(^4\) that the four sones of Aymon shall never have peas wyth me / and soo I telle, that I fere me 24 not for Richarde of normandy, For Reynawde sholde rather put oute bothe his owne eyen than that he durste doo to Rycharde ony harme vpon his body’ / And whan the barons herde Charlemagn speke soo / 28 the teres began to falle dum from theyr eyen, for grete feere that Rycharde of normandy, theyr pere, sholde have ony harme / After all thes thynge, Reynawd & his brendern were within ardeyne,\(^5\) makynge 32

\(^1\) comment lon cuide, F. orig. F. ii.  
\(^3\) Car le dit richart de normandie a moult de grans amyz et paresse, F. orig. F. ii.  
\(^4\) dist Charlémagne, F. orig. F. ii.  
\(^5\) dordonne, F. orig.
grete ioye / And after they were all oute of theyr harneys, Reynawd ordeyned good watche vpon the walles of the cyte. And thenne he made come the 4 duke Rycharde of normandy a fore hym, and sayd to hym in this maner / 'Duke Rycharde, ye know well that the kyng dothe grete wronge for to trouble vs soo as he hath doon, and yet dooth wythout ony resonable cause / And therfor I tell you for certeyne / but yf ye make vs to have peas, thynke not to live ony lenger / For I shall doo smyte of your hede, and your body to be hewed in four quarters' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke 12 Richarde of normandy, 'I am in your dangeour, soo may ye doo of me your playsure / Ye have taken me by werre / and none otherwyse. yf ye doo to me otherwyse than ye ought of ryght of werre / ye shall 16 have dishonour for evermore / And soo I wylle well that ye knowe, that as longe as I live / I shall not faylle charlemagne for noo fere of dethe' / Whan Reynawde herde Rycharde of normandy speke thus, 20 he refreyned a lityll his wrathe; and thenne he com- maundd that he shold be put in yrons wythin his chambres, and that he sholde be well kept & curtesly, and that he be well served of that apperteyneth to his 24 estate / Thenne was the duke Rycharde all thus in prison / but he was well served of all goode metes; and he had good company for to playe to what game that he wolde. And also the good duchesse clare dyde 28 visite hym often, and recomforted hym with her fair langage / When charlemagne had besieged the cyte rounde aboute, and sawe that by noo sawtynghe he 32 myghte not gete it / he dyde doo make grete engynes for to caste stones in / But what somever that he dyde, Reynawd & his bredern, and also his folke yssued oute often, as well by nyghte as by daye, vpon

the folke of the kyng Charlemagn / and dyde hym grete dommage / For reynawd toke noo man but he kepte him for prisoner / for to see yf he myghte have peas wyth charlemagn by meanes of theim, and whyle that charlemagn had layd his siege thus afore ardeyne / the kyng yon of gascoyn fell sike a bed of a grete sikenes / and shrofe him of all his sinnes / prayenge god to have pyte & mercy on hym / and after he had be long sike, he deyed / god pardonne his soule! And wyte that reynawde made hym to be buried worshipfully, as to a king perteyneth / but ther was no man that wept for hym / For all they of the cyte hated hym, by cause of the grete treyson that he had doon to the four sones of Aymon. Now leveth the history to speke of this matere, and retorneth to speke of mawgys, that was in his hermytage, that served our lorde wyth good herte, somoche that he had forgotten Reynawd, his bredern / and his frendes.

CHAPTER XXI.

¶ How mawgys, he beynge in his hermyt- age / came hym a wylle by a vysion that he had by nyghte in his slepe / for to goo see reynawd & his bredern, And how he mette wyth ii marchauñtes, that vii theves had robbed in a wood, of whiche theves the sayd mawgys slewe fyve / and deliverred to yñ marchauñtes all their good agayn / And after this he wente to ardeyne / for to see reynawd & his bredern /

1 dordonne, F. orig. F. iii. 2 add orig. 3 Fol. D.D. viii. 4 Au matin se mist a chemin. F. orig. F. iii.
Now sheweth the history, that when mawgys was in his hermitage, and had watched so long aboute his prayers to god, he felle a slepe and him semed in his slepe that he was at mountalban, & sawe reynawd & hys brederne, that cam agenst hym, and made their complaynte to hym of charlemagn, that wolde take fro theim the goode horse bayarde / but reynawld had hym fast by the brydle / and wolde not let it goo / And wyte it, that mawgys had soo grete sorowe in his dreme, that he awoke wythall all wrothe, and arrose on his fete incontinent / And thenne he sware our lorde he shokle never ceasse to goo / till he had seen reynawde and his brethern, his good cosyns / And whan mawgys had sayd soo, he made none other taryenge, but he shet the dore of his chapell, and toke his wede & his staffe, and wente on his waye all soone as he myghte / And abowte the hour of noone he founde hymselfe in a grete woode / where he founde two men, that wente makynge evyll chere, and sees two merchants who are in great sorrow; He finds himself in a wood, and sees two merchants who are in great sorrow;

and vows he will go to him.

they tell Mawgis that thieves have robbed them, and slain one of their men.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 que nous pourtons vendre. F. orig. F. iii. back.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mawgis says he will fight the robbers; the merchants mock him, seeing his poor appearance.

Mawgis encounters the thieves, and demands them to restore their stolen goods.

Be wroth with theim / and soo I shall fyghte wyth theym as well as I can / wyth my staff, for to wyte yf theyr hedes ben softe or harde. When the merchantes herde mawgis saye soo / they began to loke vpon hym, yf they cowde knowe hym; but they myghte not knowe what he was / Thenne spake to hym one of theym in this maner / and what devyll is that ye say? thou art but a man alone all naked, & thei ben all armed / and also ye can scantly have vp your staff.' 'Lete this fole alone,' sayd that other, 'see ye not how his eyen goo in his hede.' and the/ne they sayd to mawgys, 'Broder, goo thy wayes, and lete vs in peas / or elles I shall gyve the suche a stroke wyth this staff that thou shalt fele it well / and when mawgis sawe the marchau?ites spake thus to hym, he sayd / 'Broder, thou doost not well to speke to me so / for by force thou can not gete oughte of me' / And thus departed mawgys fro the marchau?ites, & went his way somoche that he overtoke the theves, & sayd to them, 'lordes, god save you / I pray you tell me why ye take away y' goodes fro thise marchau?ites: ye know wel that it is not yours / Wherfore, I praye you, lete theym have agayne thyeir marchandyse, and god shall come you thanke / Whan the theves herde mawgis speke to theym thus / they were angri for it, And behelde vpon mawgis from over the sholder, as he had be a sarrasyn / Thenne spake the mayster of the theves, & sayd to mawgys / 'Goo thy waye, hourson / or elles I shall gyve the suche a stroke wyth my fote that I shall breste the herte wythin the bely.' And whan mawgis herde this, & knewe that the theves fered nother god nor his moder / he was right an angred / And heved vp his

1-1 omitted, F. orig. F. iii. back.
2 Ils sont sept et .. F. orig. F. iii. back.
3 Fol. E.E. i.
4 qui estoit de mauluaise part, F. orig.
CHAP. XXI. HOW MAWGIS SLAYS FIVE THIEVES IN A WOOD.

461

palmers staffe, & smote the mayster theef wythall vpon his hede soo strongly, that he caste hym doun deed to the grounde. And whan thother theves sawe 4 their mayster deed / they raze all vpon mawgys for to have kyllde hym / but mawgys arched them so wyth his staffe, that he slewe fyve of them wythin a lityll while / and thenne the other tweyne beganne to 8 flee awaye thrugh the wood. And whan mawgys sawe that they forsoke the place, he followed them not / but cryed vpon them, ‘Ha, false theves, tourne agen for to deliver your thefte where ye toke it.’

12 And whan the marchauntes herde mawgys crye thus, they came Incontynent towarde hym / and they founde that the theves that had robbed them were deed / And thenne they sayd the one to the other, 16 ‘here is a good pylgryme! I wene it is my lorde saynt martyne.’

When the marchauntes sawe this that mawgys hadde doen, they were ryght gladde of it / Soo came 20 they to warde mawgys, & kneled byfore hym, & cryed mercy of that they had sayd to hym. ‘Londes,’ sayd mawgys, ‘yf ye gaff me grete wordes, soo dyde the theves moche more, For they called me “rybawde, 24 truante, & hoursone”;’ but they have boughte it right 1 dere, as ye may see,1 and I am ryght sory that two of 2 theym are scraped from me. Stonde vp themne, & take wyth you your goodes agen / and god be with you! but 28 I pray you, telle me, or ye goo, yf ye wote not where is charlemagn’3 / ‘Syre,’ sayd the marchauntes, ‘We wote well that charlemagn hath taken mountalban / but we promyse you he hath not yet taken none of the four 32 sones of aymon;4 for they were goon oute wyth their

1—1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. E.E. i. back.
3 si vous en savez ne se Il a pris montaunban et les quatre filz aymon qui estoient dedans, F. orig. F. iv.
4 ne les gens, F. orig. F. iv.
folke thorugh a cave vnder the erthe, that they founde vnder the walles of the castelle, vnto the cyte of ardeyn, where as they ben now / And charlemagn hathe layd their his siege afore theym / and wylle not make no 4 peas wyth Reynawd nor wyth his bredern 'Certes,' sayd mawgys, 'I am sori for theym, for they ben good knyghtes & true.' When mawgys understode that charlemagne had beseged Reynawd within ardeyn / he 8 comended the marchants to god, and toke his waye towards ardeyn; and soo moche he wente, that he came in to the ost of charlemagn, and went streyght towards the cyte, and made semblaunt to be sore feble / for he 12 went lenyng vpon his staff / And when the folke of charlemagne sawe mawgys goo thus / thei loked sore vpon hym, and sayd the one to the other / 'that pylgryme is like to goo ferre / he can not stonde vpon his 16 fete' / 'By my otie,' said a nother, 'it myghte well be mawgys, that is soo dysguysed for to dysceyve vs' / 'It is not soo,' sayd thother / 'mawgys is not a live' / And while that they devyzed thus togyder, mawgys cam nere 20 to the wycket of the gate, and founde the meanes that he gate in amone / And when he was wythin ardeyn, he wente to the palays / where he founde Reynawd, & the duchesse his wyffe, and bothe theyr children, aymonet & ynomet, and ther vnclcs, his cosines, with a grete meiny of noble knightes, that were all at theyr mete. When mawgys had loked a while vpon theym / he lened agenste a pyler that was in the myddes of the halle afore reynawde. Thenne began he to loke agen vpon his fayr cosines, that he loved so moche above al thynges of the worlde. And when the maryshall of the halle sawe mawgys, wenyng to hym that it had be a pour hermyte / he commaundede that he sholde be

served of his dyner, for goddys sake⁠¹ / And whan mawgys sawe the mete that was broughte him / he sayd / 'My lordes, I besche you, for the love of god, that ye 4 wyll playse you for to bryng me som broun brede & water in a treen dyshe / and thus I shall be served as to me apperteyneth, For I dare not take none other mete' / And whan the stywarde ² of reynawde² sawe that / he 8 made him anone to be brought all that he wold have / Thezne toke mawgys the broun brede, & made soppes in water³ / and ete of it wyth goode apetyte. And when reynawd sawe this poure man afofe hym, that 12 lived soo pourely, and was soo lene & so pale / he had of hym grete pyte / Soo toke he a dysshhe that was before hym, that was full of venyson / and sente it to hym by a squyre of his, that presented it to hym, saieng 16 thus, 'holde, goode man, the duke sendeth you this' / 'God yelde hym,' sayd Mawgys. and thenne he toke & set the disshe afofe hym, but he ete noo thynge of it. And when reynawd sawe that, he was gretly merveylled / 20 and sayd to hymselfe / 'God, who is that goode man that liveth soo harde a lif? yf he were not soo lene, I sholde saye it were myn cosin mawgys⁴ / but a nother thynge sheweth me that it is not he / For he wolde 24 not hyde hymself from me in noo wyse.'

Reynawd behelde style mawgys somoche, that he lefte his mete for to loke vpon hym / And whan the tables were take vp / and that everi man had eten 28 at his ease, they wente to their warde to defende the towne as they were wounte to doo / in their harneys. And when Reynawd saw⁵ that every man was goon /

¹ Et que on luy appourtast et pain et vin aussi de cher a grand plante la quelle chose fist Incontinent faicte ainsi que le seneschal lauoit commande, F. orig. F. iv. back.
²—² omitted, F. orig.
³ dedens uug anap de bois, F. orig. F. v.
⁴ qui nons a fait suffrir maintes detresses, F. orig. F. v.
⁵ Fol. E.E. ii. back.
and that there was no body within the hall for whom he wolde leve to saye his wylle, he wente to nawgis, & sayd to hym, 'goode hermyte, I pray you, for the reverence of that god that ye serve, that ye tell me ye be nawgis or noo / for ye are well like hym.' Whau nawgis herde reynawde speke thus to hym / he cowde hide himselfe noo lenger, and sayd all on hie / 'Cosin, I am nawgis without doubt / I am com to se you, and I am glad that I see you, & also all your bredern in good plight.' And whau reynawd vnderstode that it was his cosin that he loved mooste of all the men in the world, and that had kept him dyverse times from perel! 12 & dangeur / he had not be soo glad yf men had gyven hym the halve of all the worlde / Soo went he & kyssed him more than a C. tymes, & after he sayd to hym in this maner: 'fayr cosin, I praye you that ye wyll doo of this cope that ye were vpon you / For my eyen can not see you thus pourly arayed.' thenne answerde nawgis to hym, & sayd / 'My cosin, be not dysplaysed of that I shall telle you / ye must wyte, that I have made my 20 vowe to god, that I shall never ete but alonly brede & wylde herbes, & that to my drynke I shall take none other but water / and that I shall never were, the dayes of my liff, none other clothes but suche as this is; for I 24 have gyven myself utterly to serve & love our blessed savour & his gloryous moder, for to bryng my soule to salvacyon in the blisse that ever shall laste.'

W

Whan reynawd herde his cosin nawgis speke 28 thus, he was in a thoughte whether it was nawgis or noo, For he cowde not knowe hym well, by cause he was soo sore apayred of hys persone, And began to loke well vpon hym agen. And he sholde 32 never have knowen hym, yf it had not be a lityll liste that he had by his right eye. And after that he had

1 et luy must ses bras au col, F. orig. F. v.
2 Fol. E.F. iii.
very knowlege of him /he made grete ioye for hym. And he prayed hym agen / sayenge in this wyse / 'fayr cosin, I praye you for the love of the feyth that 4 ye owe to me, that ye wyll telle me the trouth of that I shall aske you.' 'Syre,' said mawgis, 'I shall telle it you gladly' / 'Cosin,' sayd reynaude, 'I wolde wyte where ye have be, ever sith that ye wente fro me / and 8 from whens ye come now' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgys, 'sith it playse you to wyte of my livynge, I shall shewe it you wyth a goode wylle. Ye ought to knowe, my fayr cosin, for certeyn that I have made myselfe an hermyte, 12 and I have lefte the worlde for to serve hym that made me, & the blessed virgyn mary, 1 his moder,1 for to have pardonze of my sinnes that I have doon in my life / For I have don many grete eyvilles agenst my creatour / 16 and by me are deed so many folke, wherof I knowe that our lorde is gretyly wrothe agenst me' / After that Reynawde had herde mawgis speke thus / he had so grete pyte on hym that the teres felle alonge his chekes 20 fro his eyen for love of his good cosin. And thenne he called his bredren, & sayd to theym / 'come hither, my brethern, and ye shall see your cosin mawgis' / And whan alarde, guychard, & rycharde herde thys 24 wordes / their hertes rose in their belies for ioye, and ranne all to mawgys, & kyssed hym full swetely / And whan the duchesse wyste that mawgis was com, she came anone there as he was, and kyssed hym / wepyngge full 28 sore 1 for ioye that she had to see hym1 / And themne cam .there Aymonet & Yonnet, that made grete ioye, 1 and welcomed hym1 / And thrughe all the cyte was anone knownen the comynge of the valiament mawgys / 32 wherof many folke came to see hym. But he was soo chaunged / and soo apayred, that it was pyte for to see. Thus was Reynawde well glad of the comynge of his goode cosyn / And after that 2 they had made grete ioye

1—1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. E.E. iii. back.

CHRL. ROM. XI.
a longe whyle / Reynawde called his brother Rycharde, & sayd to hym / 'Brother, goo fette anone a goode gowne for our cosin mawgys, and lete hym be brought a payr of shone that ben wyde ynoughe, for I know 4 well that his fete ben sore' / and thenne he sayd to hys wyffe / 'Lady, aryse / and fette hym suche linzen as he nedeth' / 'Syre,' sayd she, 'he shall have of the beste ynoughe anone.' And whan mawgys herde this worde, 8 he sayd to Reynawde, 'Syre, I telle you truly, that I have sworne that I shall never were shone, nor liizen clothes abowe me / But doo to me, if it playse you, to gyve me a newe sloppe and a large hode, a palster well 12 yrende, & a male / and therwyth ye shall well contente me; And thenne I shall comende you to god / and I shall goo my waye. For I am not comen here but only for to see you / wherof my desire was sore sette vnto' / 16 Right sory was Reynawde whan he herde mawgys say soo, in somoche that almoste he was swoninge for sorowe 'Reynawd,' sayd thenne mawgys, 'leve your sorowe, For I have gyven myselfe to god ytterly, for to brynge 20 my soule to blysse of heven / And soo wylle I goo to the holy londe, for to serve to the temple of Iherusalem,¹ and for to vysite the holy sepulcre of our lorde / And whan I have doon so, I shall come agen to see you,² and 24 god spare me my liffe.² And thenne I shall goo agayne to myn hermytage / and shall live there as a beest wyth rootes & wyth wynde herbes, as I dyde byfore that I came here' / Whan Reynawde herde this, he was sory 28 for it / and sayd to mawgys in this wyse / 'Fayr cosyn, for god, take wyth you a gode horse, and monye ynoughe / For ye shall have all thys of me' / 'Holde your peas,' sayd mawgys / 'I wylle not therof / for whan 32

¹ trois ou quatre ans. Et si dieu me donne la grace que Je puisse la venir Je me brazil toute ma poine pousse servir, F. orig. F. vi.
²² omitted. F. orig. F. vi.
CHAP. XXI.]

OF THE DEPARTURE OF MAWGYS FROM ARDEN.

I have brede / it is to me ynoughe / For all my hope is in god / to whome I praye that I maye come agayn hole and 1 sounde / 4

A fter all thise thynges thus sayd, Mawgys prayed Reynawd that he wolde make haste to make hym be deliverde suche thynges as he had desired of hym. And Reynawde dyde see, syth that he myghte not make hym to take none other thyng wyth hym / And whan the morowe came / and that mawgys had his newe sloppe and his hode / he toke his palster, and his newe male that reynawde had gyven hym / he wente & 12 herde masse / and after the masse / he toke his leve of every one, and wente on his waye. And reynawde conveyed hym vnto the wyket of the gate of the cyte, and kyssed him; and in like wyse dyde all his brethern / 16 and also the duchesse clare and her chyldren / And whan they had all kyssed mawgys, he comended theym to god / and wente oute of the towne, and wente forth the ryght waye. But he was not ferre goon, whan he 20 was advysoned rounde abowte hym wyth the folke of the kynge Charlemagne / And the one sayd to the other, 'here is the heremyte that we sawe yesterdaye, but he is now better clothed than he was atte that 24 time / It myghte be well mawgys, the cosin of reynawd, that hathe mocked vs dyverse tymes.' 'Certes,' sayd the other, 'It is he verely: lete vs slee hym / and we shall doo wel' / 'we shall not,' sayd some / 'For this man semeth to be an hundred yere olde / It can not be / but that he muste be a goode man, and it were synne to doo hym harme' / All thus as thise folke said thise wordes, Mawgis herde all that they sayd, and helde his 32 peas, But wente on his waye stylle thorugh the ooste withoute ony lettyng of ony man. ¶ Here leveth the histore 2 to speke of mawgys, that wente in to the holy londe, And retorneth to speke of Charlemagne, that had

1 Fol. E.E. iv. 2 hisstore, orig.

2 H 2
beseged ardeyn\(^1\) / by cause that reynawd & his brethern were wythin.

CHAPTER XXII.

How reynawde wolde doo hange rycharde of normandy, by cause he myghte not have 4 peas wyth the kynge charlemagne / And how the twelve peres reuqyred Charlemagne to make peas wyth reynawde.\(^3\) And how they lefte charlemagne by cause he 8 wolde not make peas / And how he sente worde to theym that they sholde come to hym agen, And he sholde make peas wyth reynawde /\(^4\)

In this party sheweth, that the kinge Charlemagne was at the siege afore ardeyn\(^1\) sore an angred, that he myghte not knowe how rycharde of normandy dyd. Soo sent he for all his barons for to com to hym; and 16 whan they were come in his pavylion, he sayd to theym /

'Lordes, I see well that it gooth yll wyth me, by cause I see that Reynawde hathe not sente me agen rycharde of normandy / and he myghte well have deliverde hym fre & quyte, and have sende hym vnto me, for all the harmes that he hathe doon to me.' 'Uncle,' sayd rowland, 'I merveylle gretly of that ye saye. Ye shewe well to vs that ye be wythout counseylle. By the feith that I owe to you / I promyse you ye shall never see rycharde of normandy / but if ye pardonne reynawde & his brethern. Dyverse tymes he hathe meked hymselfe vnto you / and hathe be always redy to fullfylle 28

---

\(^1\) dordonne, F. orig.  \(^2\) Fol. E.E. iv. back.  
\(^3\) pour anoir leur compagnon le duc richart de normandie a la chose charlemaigne respondit qu'il non feroit rien dont 1\(^1/2\) furent si mavis qu'il le laisserent, F. orig. F. vi. back.  
\(^4\) Iroit outltre mer son pain querant, F. orig. F. vii.
your playsure / and ye wylle not take hym to your grace. Be not themme merveyllled yf Reynawde shewe now some dyspyte agenste you. For, and ye consydarre

4 well the grete curtesy that he hathe doon vnto you, namely, whan he had you atte hys wyll wythin moutenthalban, and that he delivered you, and suffred you goo quyte & free from hym atte your libertee, ye sholde

8 doo for hym otherwyse than ye doo. But syth that

Reynawde seeth that he maye not fynde noo mercy in you / he wylle not lese his curtessye, But he shall doo the worste that he canne / as ye maye well perceyve

12 the experyence of it every day / For he dommageth vs dayly, and kepeth his prysoner the beste knyghte that ye had / that is, Rycharde the duke of normandy / the whiche I wene be deed by this tyme.’ ‘Nevewe,’ sayd

16 the kyng Charlemagne, ‘I promyse you that Reynawde hath not put hym to dethe / But he kepeth hym well atte his ease & wyth grete honoure.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd thenne the duke Naymes, ‘syth that the wordes ben

20 come to this, I must telle you my minde.2 Syre, yf Reynawde bereth you dommage / ye canne not blame him for it / For he hathe prayed you soo many tymes humbly that ye wolde have mercy on hym / And ye

24 wolde never here hym / But ye have alwayes shewed your self the moost prowde kynge of the world agenste hym, and the moost angry; and ye wylle byleave noo counscyelle. And soo I telle, yf Reynawde hathe not

28 made to deye Rycharde of normandy, he is the kyndeste man of the worlde / But I byleave better that he is deed than otherwyse; For noo man here canne telle whether he be deed or a live.’

32 W

han the kynge Charlemagne herde the duke Naymes speke thus / he knewe well that he tolde hym trouth / Soo beganne he to syghhe sore / and

1 Fol. E.E. v.

2 quil me semble estre vray, F. orig. F. vii.
to thise wordes came forth the bysshop Turpyn & Ogyer the dane / that sayd in this maner / 'Syre, wyte it verely that Naymes telleth you trouthe / For Reynawd hath a goode cause to be angry wyth you.' 4 And whan Charlemagne herde his barons speke thus / he was all abasshed of it / And called the duke Naymes, the bysshop Turpyn, Ogyer the dane / and Escouff the sone of Oedon, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, 8 I praye you goo to Ardeyne 1 / and telle Reynawde in my behalve, that he wylle sende me Rycharde of normandy / And 2 whan he hathe doon soo / that he delyver Mawgys in to my hande, 3 for to doo my wylle 12 of hym / And thenne he shall have peas wyth me 4 all the dayes of my liffe' / 'Dere syre,' sayd the duke naymes, 'ye sende vs for noughte / For I wote well that mawgys is goon from Reynawde / it is thre yeres 16 passed and more / And yf Reynawde wolde deliver hym / he maye not / For he knowe not hymselfe where he is' / 'Naymes,' sayd the kynge / 'ye shall atte leste here what Reynawde shall saye to you / And 20 ye shall also knowe how Rycharde of normandy dooth' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'sythe that it playse you that I shall goo, I am well contente / but I praye our lorde that we maye retourne agen hole and sounde 24 of our persones / wythoute to be dyshonoured' / When the barons sawe that Charlemagne wolde that they sholde goo to Ardeyne 1 for to doo his message, they durste not saye there agenste / And so they wente 28 theder anone, 5 and eche of them bare in his hande a branche of an olive tree in token of peas / And whan they came to the gate, they founde it open for theym /

1 dordonne, F. orig.  
2 Fol. E.E. v. back.  
3–8 omitted, F. orig.  
4 et si luy rendray sa terre et tiendray ses deux enfans auceques moy, F. orig. F. vii. back.  
5 et ne cesserent jusques a ce quilz furent a dordonne, F. orig. F. vii. back.
For Reynawde had seen theym come fro ferre. Wherefore he commandeed that the wycket shoelde be open. And whan the barons sawe the lityll gate open / thei went in to the towne / and came to the palays / And when Reynawde wyrste that they were come within the palais, he wepte and layd hymselfe down on a bed wyth his legges crossed, and swere god & his moder that he shoelde not preye Charlemagne of noo thyng, For he had doon hym to grete harme. For throughe the kynge charlemagne he had lost his goode cosin mawgis, & mountalban / that he loved somoche. This hangynge, cam there the messagers of kynge Charlemagne a fore Reynawd / Whan the duke Naymes, that was the formeste, sawe Reynawde, he saluted hym honourably.  

And after, he sayd to hym / ‘Syre Reynawde, the kynge sendeth you worde by vs / that ye sende hym agayn Rychard the duke of normandy / And more over, he sendeth you worde, that yf ye wylle deliver hym mawgis, ye shall have peas wyth hym all the dayes of his liffe / And he shall delivere you agayne all your londes. And he shall kepe bothe your children in his courte wyth hym, & shall make them knyghtes wyth his owne handes’ / ‘My lordes,’ sayd Reynawde / ‘ye be ryght welcome to me, as the knyghtes of the worlde that I oughte to love beste. But I merveyle me gretely of charlemagn / that sendeth me thise wordes; for every man knoweth well that I have not mawgis / But by hym I have loste hym / And wolde god that I had here Charlemagne, as well as I have Richard of normandy / And yf he wolde not graunte me peas wyth hym / I promyse you he shoelde leve his hede for a pledge / Soo shoelde I be thenne avenged of all the grete harmses and dommages that he hathe doon to me /

1 et puis luy dist, Sire dieu soit auceques vous et vous gard de mort et de prison, F. orig. F. vii. back.
2 Fol. E.E. vi.
syth that I have be made knyghte of hym / Lordes, I wende that Charlemagne had be more curteys than he is. For yf I had wyste that he wolde have be soo felle vpon me and my brethern, I sholde well avenged it vpon hym / But it is to late to repente me that I dyde not doo / Wherfore, that ye voyde oute of my paleys, and goo telle your kynge that I have not mawgys / But I have loste hym for hym / and also yf I had hym he sholde not have hym / And by cause I have thus loste my goode cosyn mawgys for Charlemagne, hym / I shall make to morowe Richard the duke of normandy to be hanged vpon the cheef gate of this cyte, in the dyspyte of hym; for no lenger respyte he shal not haue of me, how be it that he is of my linage. & I telle you / com nomore here / nor no man of Charlemagne / For I promyse you, I shall stryke of the 2 hedes of as many as shall come from hym to me, wythoute ony fayle.'

Whan ogier the dane sawe Reynawde soo angry, and that he answerde soo proudly, he mer veylled sore / And drewe hymselfe by Reynawde / and sayd to hym / 'Fayr cosin, I praye you that ye wylle shewe to vs Rycharde of normandy / to the ende that we maye telle Charlemagne that we have seen hym.' 24

'Ogyer, I have well underande you,' sayd Reynawde, 'but ye shall never see hym afore that I have hanged hym. And yf Charlemagn be angrwyth me for it / lete him avenge it yf he canne / 1for I defye hym & all 28 his power;1 and goo you hens anone! For, by my soule, yf ye abyde here ony lenger, it shall repente you full sore! / And whan the barons sawe that Reynawde was soo fervently wrothe / they durst noo lenger tary there, 32 but toke leve of hym / and wente oute of the cyte / and

1—1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. E.E. vi. back.
3—3 car puis que lon este en folie lon la doit maintenir, F. orig. F. viii. back.
wente lightly to the ooste of Charlemagne that awayted after theym. Whan the kyng sawe the barons come, he sayd to theym, 'Lordes, ye be welcome / what tydynges brynge you? have ye not seen Rycharde of normandy?' 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes / 'Reynawde dooth you to wyte, that aslong as he maye ryde vpon bayard / ye shall not have mawgys / for he 8 hathe loste hym by you / And for vengauce to be taken of the same / Reynawd sendeth you worde by vs, / that he shall hange tomorrow wyche of normandy vpon the gret gate of his towne; / and thus shall be doon 12 of all your men that he shall take. / and yet he sayeth more / yt he had you aswell as he hathe rychearde of normandy / that yt ye wolde not graunte hym peas, ye sholde leve with hym your hede for a pledge.'

Whan 16 rowlande herde the wordes that naymes had reported to his vnclen charlemagne / he sayd / 'Syre, be not displeised of that I shall telle you / me semeth that ye shall 2 never see the duke Rycharde; / and all for your pryde. / Syre, we fynde in holy serypture that god curseth the frute that never is rype / thus shall it be by you, that never wylle rype, nor condescende to noo peas wyth the four sones of aymon, the best knyghtes 24 of the worlde / that so many tymes have praied for it humbly & full pytously / Wherfore I swere to you vpon all halowes, that yt the duke rycharde be hanged / ye shall lose honour & worshop all your lif dayes.'

Whan charlemagne herde his nevewe rowlande speke thus, that sayd that rycharde of normandy sholde he hanged, he was soo myschevously an angred, that he gnewe the nayles of his handes / for grete wrathe / And 32 ye oughte to wyte that charlemagne was soo angry atte that tyme / that yt he had had ony maner of staffe in his hande / he wolde have gladly smyten rowlande /

1 ne aultre chose nen prendroit, F. orig F. viii. back.
Charlemagne replies that Reynawde dare not hang the Duke.

Duke Naynes again remonstrates with the Emperor for his conduct towards the Sons.

But when he saw that he myght not accomplisshhe his wylle / he called his barons / and sayd to theym / 'Lordes, ye wene to make me a-ferde wyth your wordes / I am no childe for to be thus abasshed / and soo I swere you by my feythe, that ye Reynawd were soo hardy to doo ony harme vnto richarde of normandy, I sholde hange hym wyth myn owen handes / he & all his linage, that none sholde be lefte a live' /

Right sore wrothe was the kynge charlemagne whan he herde telle that reynawde wolde make Rycharde the duke of normandy to be hanged / But whan ogyer herde charlemagne swere thus, that sholde hange all the linage of Eeynawde / he & all his handes, that none sholde be lefte a live /

This hangiug, the duke naymes sawe that the kynge was angry, and he sayd to hym / 'Syre, wyte it that we all be sore abasshed, that ye threten vs of ony parte, & reynawd of the other / And I merveylle me not of reynawde, for he is soo wrothe, for by cause that ye have made hym lose mawgys, that noo man myghte be more / And I promyse you, for grete angre he shall make rycharde of normandy to be hanged; and as to you, namly, he wolde stryke of your hede ye he had you in the cas that he hath rycharde now / and ye he hangeth rycharde, what maye we doo thereto / that ye threten vs somoche therfore / wherfore I conaseyll all my

1 ne Il ne se sauroit eschapper en espaigne qui est tant grant, F. orig. G. i. 2 Fol. E.E. vii. back.
CHAP. XXII.] HOW CHARLEMAGNE REFUSES ALL TERMS OF PEACE. 475

felawes that are of the linage of reynawd, that we goo
our wayes, and that we let ye shyfte of the weren of
the four sones of aymon' / 'By god,' sayd thother peres
of fraunce, 'naymes speketh well, 1 and he gyveth vs
good cousseylle' / 1

Thenne when Charlemagne sawe his barons soo sore
moved / he wyste not what he shold goo, but
8 gaff theim leve to wythdrawe theym selfe vnto the
morowe, 1 that they sholde retorne to him; 1 and he
hymself went to his bed / but al nyghte he coude not
fall a slepe / but wentled in his bed without ony rest /
12 and wyst not what to doo / and when the daye cam, he
rose from his bed, and sent for all hys barons. And
when thei were come, he sayd to theim, 'Lordes, what
shall we doo of reynawde, that wylle hange the duke
16 rycharde of normandy afore myn eyen?' 'Syr,' sayd
theane the duke naymes, 'for noughte seketh one
cousseylle, that will not put it to effecte / why aske ye
cousseylle, sin that ye wylle doo noo thing but after
20 your owne hede / but, & ye wylle blye leve me, I swere
you on my feith that all good shal com therof / Sir,
make peas with reynawde, and ye shal have the duke
rycharde / and also ye shall have the good love of all
24 your men / for there is none but he is wery of the
were / and they have raisin.' 'Naymes,' sayd the
kynge, 'I wylle not doo it! holde your peas therof, for
that shall be the last worde that ever I shal saye' /
28 'Syre,' sayd rowland / 'by my soule ye doo grete wrong /
for yf ye suffre the good duke rycharde to be hanged,
that someche hathe loved you & doon grete honour, it
shall be to you grete shame ; and soo I swere to you vpon
32 all halowes, that yf I see hange rycharde of normandy,
I shall parte out of your ooste fro your servyse / and I
shall goo soo ferre that ye shal never have helpe of
me' / 'Rowlaude,' sayd oliver, 'wene not that I shal
1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. E.E. viii.

and is so
wrot that he
advises the
departure of the
Barons from the
war.

The Emperor
gives his Barons
leave to withdraw.

Next day he asks
them what he
shall do for Duke
Richard.

They all advise
him to make
peace with the
Sons,

and declare they
will depart if he
will not consent
to end the war.
Reynawde preparest o hang Duke Richard;

This mornynge, thenne, reynawde that was wythin ardein,1 after that he had herde his masse / he called his there brerden, & sayd to theym, 'My brerden / It gooth full yll wyth vs that we can have noo peas with charlemagn / but sith it is thus com / by the feyth that I owe to the olde aymon, our fader, I shall angre him ryght sore / For I am sure, yf he had vs in his handes, he wolde vutterly dystroye vs wythout pyte / And therfore I am dysposed for to doo the worste that I can agenste hym. For now, afore his eyen, I shall hange y' duke Rycharde of Normandy / For I am well sure that Charlemagne shall wexe fyre angry for it, 20 when he shall see hym' / 'Broder,' sayd alarde, 'I praye you, as moche as 2I can, that ye wylle not3 doo as ye saye, For I shall hange hym myselfe ye wylle,' 'brother,' sayd reynawd, 'I wylle wel.' 'Now com-24 maunde,' sayd alarde, 'that the gibet be dressed all hie vpon the gate, that charlemagn & all his oost may see him.' Shortly to speke, reynawd dyde doo make the gybet in suche a place that charlemagne myghte see it 28 as well as he had be by / And wyte it, that rowlande was the firste man that perceyved it / and whan he sewe this, he began to crye as hie as he myghte / 'Syre, sire! now see how they wylle hange the duke 32 richarde wyth grete shame / alas, he hathe shrewedly emploied his tyme in your servyse, And now he is full

1 dordonne, F. orig. 2 Fol. E.E. viii. back. 3 omitted, F. orig.
yll rewarded for it / and also it is a shrewed ensample to all them that serve you !’  ‘Alas,’ sayd oliver, ‘now shall the goode duke rycharde be hanged wyth grete shame, for I see the gybet righted vp’ / ‘Holde your peas,’ sayd charlemague, ‘they doo all this but for to make me abassshed, and that they myghte have peas wyth me; but for all this, thei shall not have it / and soo I promyse you they dare doo hym noo harme of his body.’ Thus recomforted charlemagne hymself, wenynge that reynawd had not durst hange the duche rycharde. This hangynge, rowlande, that had the thyng at herte, behelde alwayes towarde the towne, and sawe that men ryghted the ladder to the gybet / them said he to oliver,2 ‘Ha, oliver, true felawe & good frende, yonder I see the ladder that is set vp all redi for to hang richearde of normandy / full yll he hathe bestowed his good servyse wyth charlemagne.’  ‘Syre oliver,’ sayd rowland, ‘ye saye well trouthe, god save Richard!’

Affer that the ladder was ryghted to the gybet above, vpon the hygte gate3 of ardeyne3 / Reynawde called ten of his folke / and sayd to theym, ‘Galantes, goo fet me the duke rychard / For I wylle that he be hanged Incontynente.’ 4 ‘Syre,’ sayd they hang richearde of normandy / full yll he hathe comanded that ye shal be hanged Incontynent. ’ When the duke rycharde of normandy herde thyse felawes speke thus to hym, he loked vpon theym over the shouder / and wolde not answer to theym, but sayd, ‘my fair yonnet, hast you for to

1 oliver, F. orig. G. ii. back.
2 Rolant, F. orig. G. ii. back.
3–3 omitted, F. orig.
4 Fol. F.F. i.
The Duke slays three men, and the rest escape hastily.

Duke Richard finishes his game of chess with Johnnet, then orders the dead bodies of Reynarde's men to be thrown out of the windows.

playe, for it is tyme that we goo to dyner' / And whan thise galantes sawe that rycharde of normandy answered noo worde vnto theym / they began to take hym on everi side, & said to hym / 'Aryse vp, duke rycharde / for in dyspyte of charlemagn that loved you somoche, ye shall be hanged now' / Whan the duk rycharde saw that thise sergauntes had hym thus by the arme / and helde in his hande a lady of yvery, wherwyth he wolde have gyven a mate to yonnet / he wythdrew his arme, & gaff to one of the sergauntes suche a stroke wyth it in to y' forhede that he made him tomble over & over at his fete. and thenne he toke a roke, & smote a nother wythall vpon his hede that he all to broste it to the brayn. and after that, he smote another of theim wyth his fiste so grete a stroke that he breake his necke, and felle deed to therthe / And whan the other sawe theyr felawes thus arayed, they began to re?2ne awaye. And whan rycharde sawe theym goo, he cryed to theim: 'Fie, rybawdes, goddys curse have you / come not here again' / And whan he had said soo, he sayd to yonnet, that was all abasshed / 'Playe well, my childe / for ye shall be mated / I trowe thise truauntes were dronken, that thus wolde have had me awaye, but I have well gyven theim their parte.' And whan yonnet herde him saye so / he durst not speke agenst it, by cause he sawe hymselfe soo sore an angred / but played wyth his roke that he sholde not be mated / but he myght not save the mate / Whan the duke rycharde had mated yonnet, he called a yoman that was there / and sayd to hym / 'Goo, take thise carles that lien here deed, and caste theim oute at the wyndowes' / The yoman dyde incontynente his commaundement. For he durst doo noo thyng there agenst, for doubte he sholde have fare as the other, that he had seen slayen in his presence /

1 Fol. F.F. i. back.
Arrarde was the same tyme oute of the castell, and awayted that rycharde were broughte to hym, that he mighte goo hange hym / and he saw how the deed were cast down oute of the wyndowes of the towre / wherof he was wrothe, and wente to reynawde, & sayd to hym / 'Syre, I knowe that the duke rycharde wylle not lete hymselfe be take. and ryght dere it shall coste 8 or he be broughte to the gybet / see how he hathe slayne your men / and how he hath caste theym oute atte the towre at the wyndowes' / 'Brother,' sayd reynawde, 'the duke rycharde is to be doubted in his takynge / 12 lete vs goo to the helpe of our folke, for elles they ben in daungeur of their lives' / And thus as they wolde have goon / they that he had sente for to take rycharde came there vnto hym. and when they saw reynawde, 16 they sayd to hym, 'By god, sire, the duke rycharde shall not be take wythoute grete stryfe, For he hathe slayne thre of our felawes / and when we saw that / we fledd awaye, and lefte hym playeng wyth your sone 20 yonnet.' Whan reynawd understode this / he was ryght angry for it, and sware by all halowes, that yf he had not peas that day wyth charlemagne / rycharde of normandy sholde not scape hangyng, what somever it 24 sholde hap therof / And whan he had sayd thise wordes, he went towarde the towre where richard 1 was / and his bedern went wyth him / for thei wold not leve him. and also XL men well armed, for to take the duke 28 rycharde, yf he wolde defende hymself / whan reynawd was come to the gate of the towre, he made it to be opened, & went in, and whan he was wythin, he sayd to the duke rycharde, 'Vassall, why have you slayn my 32 men?' 'cosin,' sayd richarde, 'now here me, if it playse you / It is trouth that X rybawdes cam here ryght now / and layd hande vpon me; and they sayd, that ye had thus commaundeth theym / whiche thyng

1 Fol. F.F. ii.
I cowde not byleve. For, & ye had sayd soo, it sholdes have be spoken outrageously. soo made I theim to flee oute of this chambr in grete haste / and sleeve of theim I wote not how many, be cause I myghte not absteyn 4 me\(^1\) / and yf it semeth you that I have doon amys, soo take ye amendes vpon me. But I wyll wel, that ye wite that I wolde not have don to you suche a shame as ye have doon to me, yf I had had you as ye have me. So reynawde, yf I have doon amys in ony maner / I am redy to make amendes for it / but ye knowe it is no reyon that no carle shall iudge suche a man as I am / for that longeth to a kyng, to a duke, or to an erle. the 12 costume is suche ye wote it well / Yf the kerles have harme\(^2\) / be it that have medled theym wyth it, none ought to blame me therfore' / 'By god, rycharde,' sayd theym reynaud, 'ye shall saye what ye wyll, but trust 16 me yf I have not this daye peas wyth charlemagne, I shall make you to be hanged in suche a place where that charlemagn may see you'\(^3\) / And whan reynawd had sayd this, he made richard to be take / and made 20 his hande to be bowde fast, and after sayd to him, 'I telle you, on my feyth, that if I have not this daye my peas wyth charlemain, that for no prechinge that ye can make, nor for noo man of the worlde, I shall not 24 leve, but I shall make you deye a shamfull deth.' 'By my 4 soule, reynawd,' sayd richard, 'I fere me not that ye shall doo that ye saye, for ye dare not doo it as long as charlemagn is a live' / Whan reinaude herde the 28 duke richard speke thus / he was so wrothe that he loked all blace in the face for angre / and theyme he said to richarde, 'by that god that made me, ye shalle soone knowe what I dare do, & whether I am cowarde 32

\(^1\) Puis les fis jecter hors de sceans par ses fenestres, F. orig. G. iii. back.
\(^2\) harut, \textit{orig}.
\(^3\) et si ne vous pour donner ayde ne secours, F. orig. G. iii. back.
\(^4\) Fol. F.F. ii. back.
or hardly' / And thenne he made hym to be brough
whereas the galohous were righted / and thenne he
sayd to hym / 'Rychard, I wyl that of two thynges ye
4 chose thone ye lust / that is, that ye make me have
peas with charlemagn, or elles that ye helpe me agenst
him / and, but ye ye doo this / wyte that I shall make
you hanged & strangled, and I shall not leve you for
8 all this that ye be of my linage. And ye ye wylle
take my parte agenste the kynge Charlemagn, ye shall
be deliverde forthwylth.' 1 'By god, reynawd,' sayd
thenne rycharde, 'now have I herde you speke like a
12 childe / wene ye that I shall do that ye saye for fere of
deth? certes, nay. for the kynge charlemagn is my
sovereyn lorde, and of hym I holde myny herytage / and
though he dothe wronge to leve me here / I oughte
16 not to faile hym therfore 2 / But, & ye wylle do well /
leme me a messager, the whiche I shall sende to charle-
magn & to his barons, for to wyte ye he be disposed
for to lete me deye here shamfully.' 'By my feyth,
20 rycharde,' sayd reynawd, 'ye speke now wysely' / and
thenne he called one of his folke, & sayd to hym,
'Goo & do that rycharde of normandy shall telle you.'
'My frende,' sayd rychard to the messager, 'ye shall
24 goo to charlemain, & tell him on my behalve / that I
praye hym as to my sovereign lorde, that ye ever he
loved me, that he wylle pardonne reynaude. And I
shall take vpon me to make amendes for hym / ye he
28 hathe in ony thyng mysdoon agenste hym / as the
twelve peres of fraunce shall iudge him / And ye he
wylle not doo soo, that he wylle loke hederwarde /
and he shall see me hange shamfully / Of that other
32 parte, ye shall saye to rowland, & to all my felawes,

1 thynges, orig.
2 car puis apres feray grant dommage a charlemaigne se
vous me volez ayder de tout vostre pouvoir, F. orig. G. iv.
3 mais le tort qu'il aura de moy il le trouvera au jour du

CHARL. ROM. XI. 21
that yf ever they loved me, that thei wylle shewe to charlemagn that it shal be a grete shame to hym, yf he suffreth that I deye thus shamfully' / 'syre,' sayd the messager, 'doubt not, I shall doo your message well' / 4 After this thynges thus sayd / the messager wente oute of the towne to the oost of charlemagn, the whiche he founde full of thought / And whan he sawe him / he made hym reverence / and after sayd to hym, 'Syre, 8 wyte it that richarde the duke of normandy recomended hym humbly to you / and prayeth you as hertly as he can, & as to his sovereign lorde, that yf ever ye loved hym, that ye wylle shewe it now / for he mystreth well of it / For yf reynawd have not peas this daye, torne your sightes vpon yonder gate, after that I am com home agen / and ye shal see hym hange shamfully' / And whan the messager had sayd this to the 16 kynge / he loked abowte him, and sawe the twelve peres / and sayd to theim, Fyrst to rowlande / and after to the other / 'Lordes, the duke rycharde prayeth you, rowlande, and all ye in generall, that yf ye ever loved hym, that ye wylle praye Charlemagne that he wylle make peas wyth reynawd, or otherwise he is deed without mercy' / And whan rowlande herde this, he speake fyrste to the kynge, and sayd, 'Syre, for god I praye you / suffre not that ye be blamed. Ye knowe well that how the duke rycharde is one of the beste knygthes of the worlde, and he hathe best served you at your nede. For god, sire, make peas wyth reynawd / for to recover suche a knyght as is the duke rychard of normandy / for grete shame it were to you for to lete hym thus deye.' And whan the duke naymes, and the bysshop turpyn, ogyer, escouffe, the 12 sone of oedon / and olivere of vyen herde.
speke soo, They beganne to saye to the kynge / 'By god, sire, yf ye wylle not make peas with reynawd for to recover our felawe the duke Rycharde of normandy / ye shall lose moche by it / For wythin shorte tyme ye shall see your londe dystroyed afore you'/

When Charlemagne sawe that his peres were thus moved for love of Rycharde of normandy / and that they accorded all for to make peas / he wende for to have goon oute of his mynde / And sware by grete wrath as a man mad, that Reynawde sholde never have peas with hym / but yf he had mawgys to doo his 12 wylle wyth hym. And when he had sayd so, he tourned hym towarde the xii peres of fraunce, and sayd to theym, 'My frendes, take noo fere for Rycharde of normandy / For Reynawde sholde sooner lete to be drawe one 16 of his eyes oute / than he sholde do him ony harme or shame' / 'Syre,' sayd the bysshopp Turpyn / 'ye are besyde your selfe / For ye see all redy that Rycharde is judged to dethe' / 'Bysshopp,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye 20 speke well folyshly. Knowe ye not well that Rycharde of normandy is of the linage of Reynawde. I promyse you he dare not doo hym harme by noo maner' / 'By god, syre,' sayd Oliver, 'ye have well payed vs by 24 your sayenge. Why dare not Reynawde hange the duke Rycharde? For I knowe somoche by him that, yf he had you as he hathe Rycharde / He durste well hange yourselfe and all vs.' 'Syre Oliver,' sayd the 28 messager / 'I swere you on my feyth, that Reynawde ceased not all this daye to praye the duke Richard that he wolde forsake charlemagne / and he sholde save his life, wherof the duke Richard of normandy wolde doo 32 noo thyng / but spake grete wordes to Reynawde.' And when the messager had sayd thus / he sayd to the kynge, 'Syre, gyve me leve to goo, of it playse 1 you, and telle me what I shall saye to rychard of normandy from you.'

1 Fol. F.F. iv.
Charlemagne sends him back without an answer to his appeal, and will not believe that Reynawde dare hang the Duke.

The great wrath of the Peers, because of the anger of Charlemagne.

Frende,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye shall telle hym on my behalve, that he put noo doubte in noo thynge, For Reynawde shall not be soo hardy to doo hym ony harme.' When the messager, that was a wyse knyght, vnderstode charlemagne, he cowde not absteyn hymselfe, but he sayd to hym / 'Syre emperour, ye be overproude; but I promyse you that reynawde setteth lityll by your pride / and I make you sure that alarde 8 wayteth well for my comynge agen / For he wolde not take a hundred thousande pounde for to leve rychard, but that he sholde hange hym his owne handes' / And assone as he had sayd soo / he went his wayes wythoute ony leve takynge of the kynge, streyghte to ardeyn.

Whan the xii peres sawe the messager goo wyth an ill answere / they were full sory for it. ' Ha, 16 godys,' sayd ogyer, 'how the devyll the kynge is felle, & harde of herte / that wylle nother peas nor concorde / I am well sure that his pryde shall be cause of a shamfull dethe to rychard.' 'Oger,' sayd rowland, 'ye saye 20 troth, but, & I see him hang, god never helpe me at my nede yf I abyde after it wyth charlemagne whiles I live' / and whan he had sayd soo, he went to thother peres, & sayd to theim, 'Lorde, what shall we doo / shall we lete thus rycharde be hanged? our felawe, one of the best knyghtes of the worlde, & moost hardy / for thrughe his prowes he is there as he is. Never noo fowle worde issued oute of his mouth / alas, we shall now see hym hange wyth grete shame. certes, yf we suffice it, we ben shamed for ever.'

Roland, as a man dysperate, cam thezne to the kyngh all wrothe, & sayd to hym in this maner / 'Syr, by my soule, I goo now oute of your servyse wythout your leve.' and after he sayd to ogyer, 'Oger, what wyll ye doo / wyll ye com 2 wyth me / and leve

---

1 Roluand, orig. 2 Fol. F.F. iv. back.
CHAP. XXII.]

How the Peers Forsake Charlemagne.

this devyll here / For he ys all beside hymselfe'1 / ‘By
my hede, rowlande,’ sayed ogyer, ‘ye saye trouthe / I
shall never in my liffe abyde wyth hym / but I shall
4 go gladely wyth you where ye wylle. And I shall not
leve you for no man in the worlde / syth that he
suffreth that suche a valiaunte man shall deye, as is
the duke Rycharde of normandy, that he loved somoche.
8 He sholde soone doo soo by vs / for he is a man that
hath in him nother love nor pyte.’ And whan Olyver
of vyenne vnderstode these wordes, he stode vp / and
sayd / ‘Lordes, I wylle goo wyth you / I have dwelled
12 here to longe.’ ‘And I also,’ sayd the duke Naymes /
and like wyse Escouff the sone of eodon / And whan
the byshop turpyn sawe this / he casted a grete sighe,
and sayd, ‘By my feythe, Charlemagn, It is evyll to
16 serve you / For of gode servyse ye doo yelde an evyll
rewarde / as it is well seen now by the duke Rychard
of normandy, that hath served you so well and so
truly / And yf I dwelle ony lenger with you, I praye
20 god punyssh me for it.’

Thenne whan Charlemagne saw his peres that were
soo sore moved wyth angre agenste hym / he sayd
to theym / ‘Lordes, have noo doubte of noo thynge /
24 For the duke Richarde shall have no harme.’ ‘Syre,’
said the duke naymes, ‘ye doo grete wronge for to saye
soo / for a fole never byleveth tyll he fele sore.2 wene
you to make vs foles wyth your wordes / We see the
28 galohous made vp for to hange our felaw / wherfore I
tell you that a mischief take me if I dwel wyth you ony
lenger.’ when the duke Naymes had sayd soo, he went
oute of the pavylion of charlemagn, and in likewise all
32 the peres of fraunce wyth him / and went in to his
tent, the whiche he made to be pulde doun inconti-

1 Pour ce que luy avons tant obey et tant de fois prie et
pour ce il sen tient si fier et si orguilleux, F. orig. G. v. back.
2-2 tant qu'il a pris, F. orig.

Ogier also threat-
ens to leave him,

and other of his
Peers,

because of his
treachery to the
good Duke.

All the Peers
depart from the
host of Charle-
magne,
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. XXII.

nent / And whan they of the oost of Charlemagn sawe that, they were sore affrayed. And ye oughte to wyte that they were so sore moved wythin a lityll while, that there abode in the ooste of charlemagn not one baron nor knyghte, but oonly the pour simple gentylmen / and comyn people. Whan Rowlande sawe this, he wente on his wayes wyth the other peres / And wyte it, atte that hour the oost of Charlemagne was made lesse than it was afore by XL thousand men.

Reynawde, that was vpon the hyghe gate of Ardeyn, sawe soo grete nombre of folke comyng togyder / soo called he to hym the messager, that was but comen fro charlemagn / and sayd to hym in this maner / 'Come here, messager, telle me what Charlemagne hathe sayd to you.' 'Syre,' sayd the messager, 'wyte it that ye have myssed of peas / For Charlemagne wylle noo thynge of it, But he sendeth you worde by me, that ye be not soo hardy (vpon the eyen of your hede) to doo ony harme to the duke Rycharde of normandy.' / And when he had sayd this / he tourned hym towarde the 20 duke Rycharde, and sayd to hym, 'Syre duke, now maye ye knowe how moche Charlemagne loveth you / Wyte it for certeyn that ye gate nother helpe nor socours of hym; and for the love of you, Rowlande and 24 all the other peres of fraunce ben full sore an angred wyth hym. For ye maye perceyve it well by their tentes that ben pulled down / And soo I am sure that the moost parte of the oost shall departe for the love of 28 you / And soo shall not abyde there, but oonly the erle Guynnellon and his linage / For theyr tentes ben ryghted, and all thother broughte doun' / When reynawde wyste that the frenshmen were angri wyth Charlemagn for the 32 love of the duke rychard of normandy / he chaunged his corage, and cowde not kepe hym from wepyng. And after he tourned hym towarde Rycharde of nor-

1 Fol. F.F. v.
mandy, and sayd to hym, 'for god, my cosyn, I praye you to pardonne me the grete shame that I have doon to you.' 'Reynawde,' sayd Richarde, 'I blame you not, for I wote well ye can not doo therto. For the grete pryde & cruellnes of Charlemagn is causer of all this.' Whan reynawde had cryed mercy to the duke Rycharde / he vnbounde him; and alarde & guycharde cam to helpe him / for they were all glad that richarde was deliverde / notwythstading afores that they were dysposed for to make hym deye shamfully. And whan they had doon, Reynawd sayd / 'cosyn rychard, lene vpon this walle, and we shal loke what charlemagn wylle doo' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke rycharde, 'ye saye wel, lete vs see it.'

Whan Charlemagn sawe that his barons went awaye as it is sayd / he was sory for it, that he wexed almoste madde all quycke for angre, and helde a demye launce in hys hande, the whiche beganne to gnawe wyth his teeth, so angry he was. And whan his wrathe was a lityll goon / he called a knyghte, and sayd to hym / 'Now lighte on horsback lightely / and ryde after rowlande & after the other barons, & telle theim in my behalve, that they com speke wyth me, and I shall be demened as they wylle themself / and that I shalle pardonne reynawd yf they wylle come agen to me.' 'Syre,' sayd the knyghte, 'blessed be god, that hath brought you to this mynde.' And thenne this knyghte toke an horse, and rode hastely after the twelve peers of fraunce. And whan Reynawde, that was wyth the duke rychard vpon the gate of ardeyne, apperceyved this, he sayd to the duke of normandy / 'cosyn, I see come a knyghte 4 oute of the

1 Fol. F.F. v. back.
2 si roydement quil sembloit que la terre deust fendre dessouiz les piedz de son cheval, F. orig. G. vi. back.
3 chevalier qui cheuavchoit si roydement, F. orig.
4 moult vistrement, F. orig.
pavilion of charlemagn / I byleve that he gooth to the twelve peres of Fraunce for to make theym to retourne agayne / I wene we shall 1 have this daye peas, and god byfore’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd Richard, 2 ‘ye shall have peas 4 mawgre all theim that letteth it / I oughte to love derely my felawes that ben cause to kepe me from dethe / and also to have peas.’ Wyte it that the knyghte rode so faste that he overtoke Rowland / and all the 8 other peres, and sayd to theym, ‘Lordes, the kynge sendeth you worde by me that ye wylle retourne agayne / and he shall pardonne reynawde for the love of you / And for goddys love come lightely / For he 12 never lefte wepyng syth that ye wente your waye from hym.’ ‘Naymes,’ sayd Rowland, ‘lete vs retourne agayn / For I hold the peas made / wherof this sorowfull werre shal faylle that hathe lasted soo 16 longe.’ Whan the duke Naymes herde Rowlande saye soo / he was glad of it, and Ioyned his handes towards heven, and sayd / ‘Good lorde Ihesus, blessed be the tyme that it hathe played for to tourne the corage of 20 our kyng / and that this unhappye werre is broughte atte an ende.’ And whan the duke naymes had sayd this / they returnned agayn towarde charlemagn.

And whan reynawd appereyved that the twelve 24 peres wente agayn to Charlemagne / he sayd to the duke Rychard of normandy, ‘Cosyn, the barons retourne agayne / I by-leve that the peas shall be made, and that we shall mowe well goo soone at our liberte, 28 now shall reynawd may say that I & my brederen ben at his commandemente / and shall be as longe as we ben men an live.’ Well gladde were the barons on the one parte / and of the other, By cause that god had 32 suffred that the peas sholde be made / And whan charlemagn sawe his barons come agen, he went agenste theym & sayd / ‘Bi god, my lordes, ye are welle full

1 Fol. F.F. vi. 2 Reynawde, orig.
of grete pryde *that* ye make me to be com peasible

1 wyth reynaud1 *agenst* my wyl; ye knowe *that* I have

hated him somoche *that* I maye not see him, 2but I

shall be angry by cause of his pryde that is soo grete.

Wherfore, yf ye wylle that I make peas wyth him, I wyll

that he goo into the holy londe pourly clothed on fote /

And soo I wylle have his horse bayarde. And I shall

8 retourne agayne to his bretherne all their livelode oute

of my handes. Therfore, yf thus he wylle doo / I shall

falle to peas, and accorde wyth him, and elles not. For

I make myn a voue to god that I shall never do other-

12 wyse therin / than I telle you now. And therfore loke

well whiche of you shall doo this message.’ ‘Syre,’

sayd the duke Naymes / ‘I shall goo to Reynawde

wyth a good wylle / yf it be your playsure that I goo

16 to hym.’ ‘Naymes,’ sayd Charlemagne / ‘It playseth

me well’ / And thenne Incontynent the duke Naymes

rode to ardeyne3 / And whan Reynawde saw hym come,

he knewe hym well / and wente hym agenst / and soo

20 dyde the duke rycharde / and all the brethern of Rey-

nawde / Whan the duke Naymes sawe the noble

barons come agenste hym, he lighted from his horse

anone / and wente and kyssed theyn all, and after he

24 had doon soo, he sayd / ‘Reynawde / Charlemagne

sendeth me to you with his gretynge’ / ‘God yele

dym,’ sayd Reynawde / ‘Now have I that I have

desired soo longe / Naymes, shall I have peas?’ ‘Ye,’

28 sayd the duke naymes, ‘vndre a condycyon / whiche

I shall telle you. It is that ye must goo pourly clothed,

and beggyng your brede for goddys sake in to the

holy londe, and soo shall ye leve bayarde wyth charle-

32 magne / And this doon ye shall have peas / And he

shall gyve agayn your heritages to your brethern.’

‘Duke Naymes,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘ye be ryght welcome /

1–1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. F.F. vi. back.  
3 dordonne, F. orig.
who promises to fulfil the Emperor's commands.

Duke Naymes and Richard rejoice over his concessions.

Roland admires the goodness of Reynawde, who will sacrifice himself for his brethren and his folk.

Naymes presents Bayard to the Emperor;

he tells him how well Duke Richard fareth.

And I promise you that I am ready to do the commandement of the kynge. And yf he wylle have of me ony thynge more by ony wyse, I shall in every poynyt fulfylle his wylle if it be possyble / 1 for me to doo it / Now shall I be a goode trewaunt / for I can well aske brede whan me nedeth' / When the duke Naymes herde Reynawde speke thus, he was well gladde of it, and so was the duke Rycharde, that they sawe the 8 noble Reynawd agreed to the wylle of Charlemagne / soo moche as for to be-come a poure begger for to have peas. And after that Reynawde was thus accorded herto, he went into his stable and toke bayarde, and deliverde hym to the duke Naymes / and thenne he toke his baner, and bare it on high vpon the highe towre in token of peas. And when Charlemagne sawe the baner of Reynawde, he shewed it to rowlande / 16 'Ha god,' sayd Rowlande / 'how meke is Reynawde, and good of kynde, to have made peas in this maner of wyse. Blessed be Ihesus that hathe gyven hym that wylle for to goo now a fote, wherof I playne hym / 20 sore' / 'Rowlande,' sayd ogyer / 'Reynawde is a lambe full of mekenes / and in him are all the gode condi- cyons that a knyghte oughte to have.' This hangynge, came there the duke naymes that broughte bayarde 24 wyth hym / and presented hym to charlemagne / and sayd to hym / 'Syre, Reynawde is redy for to doo all that ye have commaundded hym / and he shal departe to morow yf ye wyll, syth your playsure is soo.' 'I 28 wylle well,' sayd charlemagne / 'but telle me where is the duke Rycharde, For I wylle knowe it.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes / 'wyte that the duke Rycharde fareth well, and is abyden wyth Reynawde / for he 32 wylle conveye hym whan he gooth' / And wyte that reynawde, thys hangynge, made grete chere wyth his folke at his ease, and after sayd to theym / 'Lordes /

1 Fol. F.F. vii.
I beseech you be not sory that I goo / for I have made this pease more for you than for me. I praye you that ye holde well togyder till I com agen.' And whan he had sayd this to theim / he wente to his chambre, & caste vpon him a pour mantell, and a payer of bygge shone wel clouted / and made be broughte to hym a palster well yrened for to bere in his haunde. And ye muste wyte that the duke rycharde was styll wyth hym, to whome reynawde commended his wyfe and hys chyldren / and all his brethern / And that he wolde praye the kynge that he sholde liave theym for re-

Reynawde clothed himself in poor garments,

and commends his wife and children to the care of Duke Richard.

hen the noble duchesse claire sawe her husbonde soo arayed in his beggers clothyng / she toke suche sorowe for it that she felle doun in a swonne to the erthe as she had be deed. And whan reynawde sawed her falle, he ranne for to take her vp / and after sayd to her, 'Lady, for god take it not soo sore at your herte / For I shal soone come agen, and god byfore / And wyth you shall my brethern abyde that shall serve you as theyr lady / And soo I telle you that I am so glad of the pease, that me semeth that I am come agen all redy / Madame, my dere wyfe, I praye god kepe you from all evylles' / And with thys he kissed her full swetly / and thenne he toke on his waye. And whan the duchesse sawe hym go, she toke for it soo grete sorowe that she swouned agen / and abode thus a longe while, that all her gentylwymen wene she had ben dead / And after she was come agen to hersclfe she made grete mone for her lorde reynawde. For she scartched her face / and pulled her heres from her hede for grete sorow / And whan she had made soo moche sorowe / she sayd, 'O gode husbonde reynawde, whos

The Duchess swouns with sorrow at her husband's departure;

and mourns his loss with great grief.

1  Fol. F.F. vii. back.
like is not in all the worlde of goodnes / god be wyth you / For I wote wel that I shall never see you.' And when she had sayd these wordes she went in to her chambre, & toke all her noble raymentes & caste theym 4 in a fyre; and whan they were all brente, she toke a poure smocke, and caste it 2 abowte her / And sayd she sholde never were no other clothes tytle she sawe her lorde husbande agen.

A fter that reynawd had taken leve of his wyfe / he departed. the duke rychard, his bredern, and his folke conveied hym a grete waye / alwayes spekyng that it was pyte to here / and whan reynawd thoughte 12 that they had goon ferre ynough with him, he turned him toward theim, & sayd, 'Lordes, I praye you humbly that ye retorne home agen / for aslong as ye be wyth me I am not at my ease / goo your waye in the 16 name of god, & recomforte my wife the duchesse, that wepeth so sore. & to you, my bredern, I come nde her & my children also.' Wyte it that whan reynawde had sayd this / there was none that cowde take leve of him, 20 soo full of sorrowe they were / except alarde, that sayd to him, 'My dere broder, I praye you hertly that ye come shortly agen / for your departynge is so hevy to me that I trowe I shall dye for sorow' / and whan 24 aland had sayd soo, he enbrased his brother, & toke leve of hym, makynge grete sorow. and so dyde rycharde of normandy, to whome reynawd sayd / 'my cosin, I comende you ones my wyfe agen, & my children / and 28 all my bredern, For they ben of your blode; well ye knowe it.' 'Reynawd,' sayd the duke rycharde / 'I promyse you, & swere as a knyghte, that I shall helpe & defende theym agenst all men except agenst the 32 kyng; and doubt not for theym, for thei shall want noo thyng.' ¶ Now leveth the history to speke of Reynawd, that went to the holy londe arayed as ye have herde /

1 Fol. F.F. viii. 2 hit, orig.
And returneth to speke of hys brethren, how they came to the kynge Charlemagne / wyth the duke rycharde of normandy /

CHAPTER XXIII.

How after that reinaude was departed fro ardein to make his viage beyonde see clothed pourli as a pilgrim, asking his mete for god sake, the duke of normandy toke alarde, guycharde, & rycharde / and brought them wyth him to charlemagne / whiche receyved theim honourably / and toke vp his siege / and went agen to parys. But when he came to the cite of lege, vpon the ryver of meuze / he made bayarde to be caste in it / with a mylle stone at the necke of hym. But men sayen that baiard scaped oute / and that he is a live yet in the forest of ardeyn.

In this party sheweth the history, that whan reynaude had put hymselfe to the waye as ye have herde / Richarde of normandy & his brethren came agen to ardeyn, full sory for reynawd / where as they founde the good duchesse clare, that made grete sorowe for her lordes departynge. And when they were come agen there / the duche richard toke the duchesse by the hande, and began to recomforte her / and soo many fayr wordes he sayd vnto her that she slaked a lityll her sorowe / and after this, the duke rycharde sayd to the brethern of reynawd in this maner / 'Lordes, goo make you redy, and we shall goo to charlemagn.' 'Sir,' sayd the thre brethern / 'lete vs, whan it playse you.'

1 dordonne, F. orig. 2 pilgrim, orig. 3 Fol. F.F. viii. back.
4 baiart, F. orig. 5-5 omitted, F. orig.
and thene they went, & toke on the beste clothynge that they had; And I promise you they were thre fayr knyghtes. and after they were well appareyled / they mounted eche of theym vpon a palfrey of hye 4 price, right fayr, without ony armes / And for to speke shortly, they issued oute of ardein,¹ & cam to the pavylion of charlemagne / and whan the kyng sawe theym, he was right glad, Soo commaundde all his 8 barons that they sholde goo agenste theim / ‘Ha, god,’ sayd rowland / ‘now comen the thre brethern well sory / certes, they haue a cause / for they have loste theyer helpe, socour, & hope. Now I see that the duke 12 richard cometh with theim / wherof he dooth wel / for he is their kynnesman.’

¹ Y e oughte to wyte that the thre bredern of reynawde came to the pavylion of charlemagne welle honestly arayed. and whan they were afore the kyng, thei kneled humbly at his fete / and alarde speke firste, & sayd / ‘Syre, reynawd our broder recomendeth him humbly to your good grace, and salveth you as his 20 soverayne lorde / and he sendeth you Rycharde, the duke of normandy, whiche ye see here; and soo he prayeth you that ye wylle have vs for recomended / for he hathe taken his waye towards the holy londe for 24 tacomplyshe your commaundement.’ ‘Frende,’ said the kyng charlemagn, ‘ye be ryght welcom / Syth that it playseth our lorde that we shall be frendes, I shall doo for you, and shall brynge you all to honour, 28 as it aperteyneth to suche knyghtes as ye ben / And yf god wylle bringe reynawd sauf agen from his vyage, I shall holde hym as dere as I doo myn owne nevew rowlande / for he is replenyshed wyth grete worthynes’ / 32 ‘Syre,’ sayd rycharde, ‘god brynge hym agen!’ When the kyng had thus spoken wyth the bredern of reynawde / he cam to the duke richarde of normandy, &

¹ dordonne, F. orig. ² Fol. G.G. i.
kyssed hym more than X tymes / and whan he had feested hym ynough, he sayd to hym / 'Duke richarde, I praye you that ye wyll telle me what pryson gaaff you reynawde, and what metes for to ete? ' Syr,' sayd the duke of normandy, 'by the fETH that I owe to god & to you, I had better pryson, & was more at my ease, than ever knyght was, for I 8 was served of the same that reynawd was / and som-tyme better; and soo I promise you, sire, that the gentyll duchesse, his wife, made me grete chere and good company wyth her two fayr children / Sir, I 12 beseche you, ye wythly worship Alarde & his brethern, ye if playse you, For they have doon to me grete honoure / And they have gyven me grete yeftes / And ye if it playse you, ye shall have the 16 goode duchesse and her children for recomended, for she is the humblest lady of the worlde / and the moost wise' / 'Rycharde,' sayd charlemagn, 'wyte it that I shall not faylle theym aslonge as life shall be in 20 my body / and whan the children of reynawd shal be in age for to be made knightes, I shall dowbe theym to it myn owne handes wyth grete worship / and god spare me liffe, and soo shall I gyve theym landes 24 ynough for to mayntene theyr astate' / 'Gramercy, sir,' sayd the duke rycharde / 'and god yelde you!' Whan they had devysed all ynough of the thynes afore sayd, the kynge charlemagne 28 commanded that he sholde be dyslodged; and anone his commanademente was doon, and thenne every man put hymself to the waye towarda his countrey. And whan the kynge sawe that it was tyme, he mounted on 32 horsbaucke, and toke on his waye towarda the cyte of lege / and whan he was come in lege, he lodged hym vpon the brydge of the ryver of meuze. and whan the mornynge was come / he made be broughte afore hym 1 thye, orig. 2 Fol. G.G. i. back.
the goode horse of reynawd, bayarde / And when he saw hym he began to saye in this wyse / 'ha, bayarde / bayard / thou hast often angred me, but I am come to the poyn, god gramercy for to avenge me / and I pro-
mfyse the thou shalt now abye it full dere the tourment & felony that I have often tymes had by the.' And 
whan the kynge had sayd so / he made a grete myl-
stone to be fastened at the necke of bayarde / and 8 
thenne made hym to be caste from the brydge doun in 
to the water / And whan bayarde was thus tombled in 
the ryver, he sanke vnto the botome of it. And whan 
the kynge sawe that, he made grete Ioye, and soo sayd, 12 
' Ha, bayarde, now have I that I desired, and wysshed 
soo longe / For ye be now deed, but yf ye drynke onte 
all the water' / And whan the frenshe men sawe the 
grete cruelnes of Charlemagne, that avenged himselfe 16 
vpon a pour beest, they were yll contente / And thenne 
spake the bysshop Turpyn, and sayd / 'Ogyer of dan-
marke, what thynke you by charlemagn? he hathe well 
shewed atte this tyme a grete parte of his grete felony' / 20 
'sire,' sayd ogyer, 'ye saye trouth / he hathe doon to 
grete foly for to make dy suche a goode beest as this 
horse was' / 'Syr,' sayd oliver to rowlande / 'Charle-
magne is now woxen all folisshe' / 'ye saye full trouth,' 24 
sayd rowland, 'I perceyve it full well' / and for to say 
the trouthe, there was none of the twelve peres, but 
he wepte for love of the good horse bayarde / But whos-
soever was sory for it / charlemagne was glad of it. 28 
Ye oughte to know that, after that bayarde was cast 
in the ryver of mueze / he wente to the botom, as ye have 
herle / and myghte not come vp for by cause of the 
grete stone that was at his necke, whiche was horryble 32 
hevy / and whan bayarde sawe he myghtn other none other 
wyse scape, he smote soo longe and soo harde wyth his 
fete vpon the myll stone that he braste it / and came

\[1\] reviere de muse, F. orig. H. ii.  \[2\] Fol. G.G. ii.
agen above the water / and began to swimme / soo that he passed it all over at the other side. And when he was come to londe, he shaked hymselfe for to make falle the water from hym, and began to crye hye, and made a merveyllous noyse / and after, began to renne so swyftely as the tempeste had borne hym awaye / and entred in to the grete foreste of ardeyne. And

he escapes into the forest of Arden,

whan he was come to londe, he shaked hymselfe for to make falle the water from hym, and began, to crye bye, and made a merveyllous noyse / and after, began to renne so swyftely as the tempeste had borne hym awaye / and entred in to the grete foreste of ardeyne. And

escapes into the forest

whan the kyng charlemagn sawe that bayarde was Aiden, escaped, he toke soo grete sorowe for it, that almoste he lost his wytte for angre;

But all the barons were glad of it. Thus, as ye have herde, escaped bayarde oute of the handes of Charlemagne / And wyte it for very certein that the folke of that countrey sayen / that he is yet a live wythin the wood of ardeyne. But wyte it, whan 1he seeth man or woman, he renneth anone awaye, soo that noo body maye come nere hym / And after all thyse thynges, the kynge Charlemagne, as angry as he was, departed from meuze, and wente in to a chapell that was nyghe / and called to hym all his barons, and 20 gaaff theym leve to goo in to theyr countreys, wherof they were ryght gladde / For they were sore desyrynge for to see theyr wyves, theyr chyldren, and theyr londes 2 /

CHAPTER XXIV.

24 How Reynawde 3 founde mawgys his cosyn, as he wente by the waye for to accomplisse his vyage to the holy sepulcre, in the coun-
trey of Constantynoble / And how thei wente together to Iherusalem / whiche the

1 Fol. G.G. ii. back.
2 mais a tant laisse le compte a parler de charlemaigne et de ses barons et retourne a parler du noble regnault qui este en son voyiage pour aler aultre mer, F. orig. omitted in Caxton.
3 fust departy de dordonne de ses freres de sa femme et enfans en moult grans regretz et lamentacion pour aler aultre mer accomplir son voyiage ou saint sepulcre il . . . F. orig. H, ii. bk.

CHARL. ROM. XI.
admyralle of perse had taken by treyson upon the crysten. But reynawde & his cosyn mawgys dyde somoche wyth the folke of the countre, that the cyte Iherusalem was goten 4 agayne by the crysten people.

Reynawde departs for the Holy Land, and arrives at Constantinople; he lodges with a holy woman, who tells him another pilgrim is there.

Now telleth the histori that, after that reynaud was departed from ardeyne for to goo in to the holy londe, he wente so moche by his iourneys that he came 8 to Constantynoble, and lodged hym in an holy womans howse / whiche served hym as well as she cowde / and gaffe hym suche mete as god had gyven to her / And after, she washed his fete as she was wounte to doo to 12 other pylgrymes / And whan this good woman had doon soo / she toke Reynawde by the hande / and broughte him into her owne chamber / and sayd to him / 'Good man, ye shall lie here, for in my other 16 chambre ye maye not be / for there is a pourre pylgrym that is sore syke.' 'Dame,' sayd reynawde, 'lete me see that pylgryme that ye speke of, whiche is soo syke.' 'wyth a gode wille,' sayd the pourre woman, 20 'ye shall see hym. For I promyse 2you there is grete pyte in hym.' And thenne she toke reynaude by the ha?ide, and brought hym to the pylgryme that was in his bedde / And whan reynawde sawe hym, he knew 24 wel that it was his cosyn mawgys, wherof he was ryght glad; soo beganne he to speke to hym / and sayd / 'Frende, how is it wyth your persone?' And whan mawgis herde reynawde speke to hym, he lepte oute of 28 his bedde, as he never had be seke, and embrased reynawde more than twenti tymes, and after sayd to hym, 'Cosyn, how is it wyth you / and what adventure bryngth you here in this pourre clothynge that ye have 32 on / telle me, yf it playse you / have ye had peas wyth

1 dordonne, F. orig. 2 Fol. G.G. iii.
the kyunge Charlemagne? ’ ’Cosyn,’ sayd Reynawde / ye, by suche a maner as I shall telle you.’ And thenne he rehearsed hym all the maner as ye have herde above / and all the treaty that he had wyth Charlemagne1 /

When mawgys vnderstode the wordes of Reynawde, he was ryght gladde of it / And thenne he embraced agayne reynawd, and sayd to hym, ‘I am now hole, for the gode tedynges that ye have broughte to me, And therfore I am disposed to goo wyth you / Mawgis, I shall joo togyder, and doubt not we shall not dy for hungre / for I am to Jerusalem, mayster for to begge brede / And the goode woman sawe that thyse two pylgrymes made so grete feest the one to the other, she thoughte it myghte none other- 12 wise be but thei were of grete linage, and that they had some grete a doo togyder, and she sayd to theym / ‘Fayre lordes, I see that ye knowe well eche other / whence I pray you telle me what ye be / and from whens ye come.’ ‘Goode woman,’ sayd mawgys, ‘syth that ye wylle knowe of our beynge / I shall telle you a parte of it / Wyte it thynne that we ben two pour gentylmen that are banysshed oute of fraunce, S0o muste we goo in suche habyte as ye see in to the holy 14londe; and we ben cousins germain / and we shall d0o our vyyage togyder, 24 yf it pleyse god.’ And whan the lady,5 that gode woman, vnderstode this / she had grete ioye / Thenne made she to brynge theym mete ynoughe / and wyne / Mawgys, that syn so long had d0ranken noo wyne, dranke some 28 that nyghte for love of Reynawde. Shortly to speke, none myghte say nor thynke how grete fest made the two cosyns to eche other. And whan the daye was come, Reynawde & mawgys arose / and toke leve of 32 the holy lady, and put theymselfe to the wyaye. And

---

1 sans laisser un seul mot, F. orig. H. iii. 2 bedge. orig. 3 Et moy se dist regnault seulement que je aye fain, F. orig. H. iii. 4 Fol. G.G. iii. back. 5 omitted, F. orig. H. iii. back. 2 K 2
wyte that somoche wente the two pylgrymes by theyr iourneyes, that they came nyghe the cyte of Iherusalem, and were but a lityll myle fro it / soo that they myght see well the temple and the towre of davyd, and the 4 moost parte of Iherusalem. And whan mawgys & reynawde sawe that, they were ryght gladde of it / and yelded graces vnto god that he had suffred theym to come soo nyghe the holy cyte. Whan they had doon 8 thus theyr prayers / they wente on theyr waye for to have goon wythin Iherusalem; But they were goon but a lityll when they sawe a grete oost abowte the cyte, evyn afore the towre of davyd / Where were many 12 pavyllions of the crysten, that were there for to fyghte with the admyrall of Perce, that by force helde the cyte of Iherusalem / Reynawde dyde tary whan he sawe the oost that was afore the cyte, and sayd to hys 16 cosyn mawgys, 'Cosyn, what folke is yonder, as ye thynke / for it semeth a grete oost a fore Iherusalem / are thei sarrasyns or crysten? what saye you?' 'Surely,' sayd mawgys, 'I canne not telle, and I am sore mer- 20 veyled what it maye be' / Thus as reynawde and mawgys spake togyder / there cam an olde man rydyng 1 that way that came from the oost. And whan reynawde sawe hym 2 he wente hym agenste / and sayd to hym / 24 'God save you, gode man / telle me, and playse you, What be they afore the holy cyte; are they crysten or sarrasyns?' 'Pylgryme,' sayd the olde man, 'they ben crysten that have beseged Iherusalem / and canne not 28 take it / but ye maye well goo wythoute parell' / 'Now telle me,' sayd Reynawde, 'who is wythin Iherusalem' / 'Wyte it,' sayd the olde man, 'that the admyrall of perse hathe taken it by treyson.' 'And how hathe he 32 taken it by treyson?' sayd reinawde. 'Wyte,' sayd the olde man, 'that the admyrall arrayed hym as a pylgryme, and many of his folke wyth hym / and wente

in to the cyte one after a nother / And whan they were all wythin, they blew an horne ryght hyghe, and set hande to theyr swerdes / and fought strongly, soo that 4 they were maysters of the cyte or ever the kynge thomas cowde be armed, nor his folke / the whiche cowde not save theyrmyselfe wyth suche fewe folk / as was lefte hym a live / but he was taken prysoner / and the King Thomas taken prisoner, whose folk sur-round the city.

8 anone all the countrey rose vp, and have beseged the cyte as ye see ; and I truste wyth the grace of god that the cyte shall be take shortly / 'Now telle me,' sayd reynawde, 'yf they of the cyte come oute often upon 12 the crystyn.' 'Ye,' sayd the olde man, 'for they ben moche folke wythin ; and the thynge that most greveth vs, is that our folke have noo hede nor noo lorde. And ye wote well that folke that have noo hede nor noo 16 lorde can doo but lityll goode.' / And whan reynawde herde this worde, he began to smyle, and after he sayd / 'Fare well, goode man / we wylle goo there for to see what shall happe of it' / And whan he had sayd soo, 20 he toke on his waye wyth his cosyn mawgys / and ceassed not tyll they were comyn wythin the oost / And whan they were come there / every man loked upon reynaude, that was soo fayr a pylgrym, / and so 24 talle a man.1 And reynawd loked here 2 and there / and wyste not where to put hymselfe. Thenne he advysed hym, and sayd to mawgys / 'My cosin, we must see that we have a lityll reede or some other thynge / for to 28 make vs a lodges there at one corner of the walle' / and whan reynawde had sayd so / mawgys ceassed not tyll he had made a lityll lodges / This hangyng, that they made theyr lodges / thadmyralle of Perce yssued oute 32 of Iherusalem wyth well thre thousande fyghtyng men / And entred in to the crystyn oost towarde saynt stevyns chirche.

---

1-1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. G.G. iv. back.
And thenne when the good erle of rames, & walleran of fayete, & geffraye of Nazareth sawe that, they ranne anone to theyr harneys. And I telle you that therle Iaffias of rames was soone armed, sooner than 4 thother, and incontynente he ranne vpon the turkes / and began to crie 'Iaffa' as hie as he cowde / and smote vpon the persans / and dommaged theim sore, for he was a valiaunt man in armes. And whan all 8 they of the oost were armed / thenne began there a bataylle of the one parte, and of the other, ryght cruell / Thenne came there 1 geffraye of nazareth / whiche entred amonge the thyckest of the sarrasyns, and began faste 12 to smyte theym deed 2 to the erthe / Shortly to speke, this batayll was ryght grete & mortall / for there were many speres broken, & many sheeldes cloven; and of the one parte and of the other, many men overthrown 16 to the grounde. And ye oughte to wyte that 3 waller-aven of fayete smote there deed mani a panym, 4 soo that it was wonder to see his faytes of armes / for noo persante durste abide afore hym / And whan the admyr-20 alle sawe this / he sayd to hymselfe / that he sholde never set noo thynge by hymselfe / but he sholde avenge vpon geffray that soo tourmented his folke. 5 And anone he toke a spere in his hande / and went 24 agenste geffray / And whan 6 geffraye sawe that, he ranne asprely vpon hym / and thei gafe eche other suche strokes in their sheeldes, that bothe theyr speres flewe in many peces 7 / and wyth this cours was thad-28

1 le coute de rames monte sus ung destrier, F. orig. H. iv. back.
2 ainsi comment loupz les brebiz, F. orig. H. iv. back.
3 geoffroy de nazareth, F. orig. H. iv. back.
4 et de turcz, F. orig.
5 Amiral de perse eust moult le cueur dolant de ce quil veoit que geoffroy luy faisoit a luy et a ses gens, F. orig. H. iv. back.
6 Fol. G.G. v.
7 si se en contrerent si grans comps lung contre lautre quil enconuint tomber lamiral, F. orig. H. iv. back.
miralle overthrown from his horse to therthe, but geffraye of nazareth abode in the arsons of his saddle / And whan the admyrall sawe hym on the grounde, he was angry for it / soo rose he vp lightely, & set hande to his swerde, and made grete semblauate for to defiende hymself. and whan geffraye of nazareth sawe thys / he torne hym towarde thadmyralle, & smote hym so grete a stroke with his swerde vpon his helme, that he astonyed hym / And whan geffray sawe that he made no defence / he bowed his body towarde hym, and toke the admyrall by the helme, & wolde have broughte him awaye / And whan thadmyralle sawe that he was take, he cryed ‘Perce’ as lowde as he myghte, soo that his folke herde hym, & raune there as he was / and delivarde hym from the handes of geffray, and set hym vpon a horse, & brought him wyth theym / whan thenne reynawd sawe that the bataylle was soo cruel, he sayd to mawgis, ‘Alas, cosyn, yf I had my harneys, I sholde goo gladly socour our folke, for it is that thyng that I have moost desired / as that I myghte bere armes agenste the sarrasins’ / ‘Thenne,’ sayd mawgys to hym, ‘ye are not wyse to say so / ye wote how we ben traveyld of our pylgrimage / and that it is tyme that we rest vs a lityll / And also the werre shall not be ended soo soone / but that ye may prove yourselfe in armes afore the holy cyte 1of Iherusalem be wonne1 / wherfore I pray you rest yourselfe this nyghte / and to morowe, & god byfore, we shall be fyght our enmyes / for I have delibered that I shall be noo hermyte aslonge as we ben togyder, but I shall helpe you wyth all my power. But one thinge I telle you, that never wyhle I live, I shall cast noo charme 2more, for I have promysed it god, & all the sayntes, to whom I pray to kepe me therfro / but I telle you that I love you so hertly, that if I sholde be damyned / yet shold I com

THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. XXIV.

out of my hermytage for to socour you yf ye had nede' / 'My cosin,' sayd reynawde, 'I thanke you of your good wyll / and I knowe well ye saye trouthe, that we have mystre of reste / but I can not kepe myself / but I 4 must goo to batayll / Alas, that I have not bayarde, & flamerde my good swerde / for I shold do thys daye that god shold comme me thanke of it' / Ryght sory was reynawde that he had nother horse nor harneys for to 8 helpe the crysten folke.

Thys hangyng, that reynawd & mawgys spake togyder, therle of rames, geffray of nazareth, & walleraven made grete slaughter of the turkes & of 12 the persans. And whan thadmyrall sawe this, he withdrewe his folke agen in to the cyte of Iherusalem / For he myghte noo longer suffre the grete harme and hurtre that the crysten made hym / And whan the 16 crysten sawe that the sarrasyns were dyscomfyted / thei chased them sharply / and slewe so many of theim that none canne telle the nombre / And thenne therle Iaffras, that was a worthy knyghte & a wyse / 20 he wente to the gate of saynt stevyn / and kepte him there wyth his folke. And then the turkes came for to save themself wythin Iherusalem / therle Iaffa went agenst theim / and kept the passage that they 24 myght not entre at theyr ease wythin the cyte / and there agen were many of theim slayne. And when the admirall saw that, he was an angred for it, and toke a nother way to the cyte, towarde the gate foere / 28 and it happed themne that the turkes passed afore the lodges of reynawd, and by the grete pres & stampyng of their horses ye lodges of reynawde was broken and marred / Wherof reynaude was angry. 4Thenne Rey- 32

to fyghte wythall / but a forke that susteyned vp their lodges / that was grete & stronge. And he toke it anone with bothe his handes, & mounted vp on a 4 walle that was bi the waye ; and as the turkes passed by, he layed vp on them wyth that grete staff / and smote theim doune two & two at ones, as swynes. And to say the trouthe / reynawde being thus vp on that 8 broken wall, slewe moo than a hundred of theym as they passed bi hym. And whan mawgis sawe that reynawde dyde soo well / he toke his palster & cam vp on the wall by hym, and began to smyte wyth both 12 his handes soo grete strokes / that they that he raught felle deed to the grounde. While that reinaude & mawgis dyde thise faytes of armes, cam there therle of rames & geffray of nazareth, that followed after the 16 sarraysns wyth all dyligence, Whiche sawe the grete quantyte of deed sarrasins / that reynawde & mawgys had slayen vp on the way by their prowes / in so moche that almost men cowde ryde nomore that way, 20 for the grete hepe of turkes that lay deed there, whereof the sarrasins were sore abasshed. The Earl marvel over the prowess of reynawde and mawgis; 24 veylld of him that helde the forke, that he was soo grete & soo valiaunt a man / and in like wyse that other that helde the palster, that was not so grete. 'See,' sayd he, 'how the way is covered abowte theym 28 wyth this cursed folke; I byleve that they ben felawes.' 'Ha, goddis,' sayd geffray / 'I merveylle what folke they are. I byleve that god hath sente theym to vs for our savyng / or elles they ben over and wonder at their strange appearance. 32 hardly fooles, seenge that they ben all naked / and fere not the deth.' 'Syre,' sayd the earl of Rames / 'What so ever they ben, they doo like worthy men. God

1 que sus les mors, F. orig. H. v. back.
2 sur le chemin, F. orig. H. v. back.
all mighty kepe theym from hurte, dangeur,¹ and from ²evyll combraunce / For they have well greved our enmyes; And I shall never be at myn ease tyll that I have spoken wyth theym, for to wyte what folke they ⁴be / and fro whens they come.’

Grete was the chasse that the erle of Rames, geffraye of Nazareth, and walleraven³ made after the turkes & persans, For ryght grete slaughter ⁸they made of theym or they were wythdrawen wythin Iherusalem / For they lefte not the chasse tyll they were wythin the gate force / Whan reynawde sawe that all the sarrasyns were passed / he caste after theym ¹²his grete staffe / for he cowde doo no more to theym. And after he bethoughte hym / and descended from the walle / and sayd he wolde not lese his forke, and fet it agayn / for it sholde serve for to make his lodgys ¹⁶as it dyde byfore. This hangynge, the erle of Rames came from the chasinge agayne / and soughte the two pylgrymes for to speke wyth theym / and he founde theym where they were makyng of theyr lodges / ²⁰Themme he behelde theym well, and sayd no thynge. And whan he sawe that they were soo grete and so well shapen / pryncypally reynaud / for he waunted noo thing, he lighted from his horse and toke theym ²⁴by the hande, and made theym to sitte beside him / Whan they were set, the erle sayd to Reynawde / ‘My frende, I praye you telle me trouthe of that I shall aske you / By the feyth that ye owe to the temple where ye purpose to goo, telle me your names, and what ye be, and of whens ye come / and why ye goo soo pourly arrayed.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd reynawde, ‘syth that it playse you to wyte of our beynge / and ³²of our name / I shall telle it you wyth a goode wylle / Now wyte it that I am called reynawde of mount-

¹ dangeur. orig. ² Fol. G.G. vi. back. ³ et le conte de Jaffes, F. orig. II. vi.
alban, but charlemagn hath casted me therfrom wrong-
fully. the duke aymon is mi fader, & am now com
in to the holy londe for to serve our lorde agenste his
enmyes, for thus hath he commande me doo, Charle-
magne, my soverayn lorde / when I made peas wyth
hym. And that worse is, I muste nedes come thus
poorly arrayed, as ye see, beggynge my brede where
soo ever I goo or come / where agenst I wolde never
goo for to have peas’ / Whan the erle of Rames
vnderstode reynawde, he was gladde of hym / and
heved vp his handes toward hevyn / and thanked
god / and after sayd / ‘O, noble knyghte Reynawde
of mountalban, the beste knyghte of the worlde, take
here my homage / For I gyve myselfe vnto you, and
all my goodes’ / And when reynaude sawe this, he
sayd to the erle of rames, ‘Stande vp / for ye prouffer
me owterage’ / ‘By god,’ sayd the erle, ‘I shall never
aryse tylle ye have granted me a thynge.’ ‘Syre,’
sayd reynawd, ‘I graunte it you wyth a goode wyll,
and wyth gode herte’ / ‘Gramercy,’ sayd the erle /
and thenne he stode vp and sayd to reynawde, ‘Is
it trouth that ye have peas wyth the grete kyng
charlemagn / Alas, where ben your brethren, the
worthy knyghtes / and mawgys your cosyn, in whome
ye have soo grete truste, and your goode horse
bayarde?’ ‘Syre,’ sayd reynawde, ‘wyte that I had
peas wyth the kyng Charlemagne of the werre that so
longe hathe lasted, by suche maner as I shal tel you /
that it is, that I muste come here in suche clothynge as
ye see vpon me. and here is mawgys my cosyn, that
is comen heder wyth hys free wylle / for he is not
constrayned therto / for the kyng charlemagn weneth
he be deed longe a go, and my brethren ben abyden
wyth my wyffe & my children, For the kyng hathe
returned all our livelode vnto them agayne’ / And

1 Fol. G.G. vii. 2—2 omitted, F. orig.

'CHAI.' XXIV.

HOW EARL RAMES OFFERS ALLEGIANCE TO REYNAWDE. 507

Reynawde relates to him his history.

The Earl offers homage to Reynawde, and enquires after his brethren and Mawgis.

Reynawde tells of the hard conditions imposed on him by Charlemagne.
when the earl vnderstode the trouthe of all, he was ryght gladde of it / soo that he beganne to crye wyth 1a highe voyce, 'Ha, duke Reynawde of mountalban / how gretely be you welcome here to vs / as the moost 4 valiaunte knyghte of the worlde / blessed be the good lorde that hathe conduytte you hether / And I praye you for god that ye receyve my homage / so shall ye save the worshyp of the kynge thomas, that is 8 now prysoner there wythin the cyte2 / for and ye be our capytayne and our hede / I put noo doubte but we shall soone take Iherusalem, And thus shall the kynge Thomas be delivered 3oute of the handes of the 12 false sarrasyns

There came all the barons of Surry, that were full gladde of the comynge of reynawde of mountalban, to whome they made grete reverence, and feested 16 hym ryght highly. And shortly to speke, they all prayed hym to be theyr lorde / and hede captayne / and that he wolde guyde theym as therle of Rames had doon afore / And whan reynawde sawe that all 20 the barons of Surry desyred & prayed hym so sore for to receyve theyr homages, he sayd vnto theym / 'Lorde, syth that it playseth you for to doo me this grete honour / I take it, sauff alwaye the ryght of 24 kynge Thomas / whyche is your soverayne lorde.' 'Syre,' sayd the barons, 'we wyll have it thus' / And thenne he receyved theyr homages / and whan he had receyved theym / the erle Rames kneled byfore hym, 28 and sayd, 'Syre, I wylle that ye gyve me now that thynge that ye have graunted me.' 'Syr,' sayd Reynawde, 'say what it is / and ye shall have it.' 'Syre,' sayd therle of rames, 'it is that ye wylle woushesauff 32

3—3 omitted, F. orig.
to be lodged in my pavylyon, and that ye spende none
other good but myn / And yf ye wylle gyve ony
thynges / I shall deliver it to you / and I shall gyve
4 you syx of my knyghtes for to serve you'1 /  'Good
erle of rames / gramercy of the worshyp that ye doo to
me'2 / thesme the 3 erle toke Reynawde by the hande,
and broughte hym in to his pavylion / and made hym
8 to be served as his soverayne lorde. And whan all
the barons had conveyed Reynawde to the pavylion of
the erle of Rames, they toke leve of hym, and wente
agayne in to theyr pavylions / and thanked god that
12 he had sente theym suche a knyghte 4 and soo valiaunte
a man to be theyr capytayne and theyr lorde 5 / And
thenne, whan the erle of rames sawe that all the
barons were goon to theyr pavylions, he made to be
16 broughte there many good horses & fayr palfrays, and
ryche raymentes of dyverse colours, furred wyth ryche
furres, and all maner of good harneys / for the werre;
curaces, and ryche helmes / and noble swerdes / and
20 grete plente of plate, bothe of fyne golde & of sylver;
and all thys he presented to reynawde / But he wolde
take noo thynges but onely a complete harneys for his
body / and a swerde that he chose there amonge all,
24 and an horse. And all the remenaunte he made to be
dealed to the poure knyghtes 6 that had mystre of it 7 / 
and whan the erle of rames sawe that Reynawde had
taken but one horse, one harneys, & one swerde / he
28 sayd vnto him / 'Syre, for god take on you a nother
raymente / for ye wote well it apperteyneth not to
suche a man as ye be for to goo cloathed as ye doo.'
'Syre,' sayd reynawde / 'pardonne me & it plaise
32 you / for I shall never were none other rayment but

1 de tout leur pouvoir, F. orig. H. viii.
2 de si beaux dons car H ne sont mye a refuser, F. orig. H. vii.
5-5 omitted, F. orig. H. viii. back.
this that I have now on / tyll that I have kyssed the holy sepulcre wherein god was put after that he was broughte down from the crosse' / 'Syre,' sayd thenne the erle, 'doo as ye wyll' / And thenne he wente 4 to mawgys, & sayd to hym, 'I praye you put awaye this cap & this hode / and take other raymentes' / 'Syre,' sayd mawgys thenne, 'I praye you be not dysplayed / yf I fulfylle not your desyre at this time, 8 for I tell you that I have promysed1 that I shal were no 2 other clothe as longe as I live, 3 but suche as the same is.'3 / Thenne when the erle sawe that Reynawde nor mawgys wolde not take none other raymentes for 12 noo thynge that he cowde saye vnto them, he was sory for it. And thenne he made the tables redy for to goo to souer / And when they had souped, the erle Rames called walleraven of flayet, and geffray of 16 nazareth4 / and sayd to theym, 'Now thynke for to doo well, syth that god hathe sente to vs suche socour.'5 / And when the barons herde the erle speke thus / they answerd, 'we shall doo our beste, by the grace of 20 god' / And thenne every man wente to his pavylion, and made grete plente of torches to be fyred, soo that it was mervelles of the light that was in the oost / and every man began to daunce & disporte theymselwe 24 abowte theyr tentes & pavylions a longe while, 6 for ioye of the comynge of reynawde6 / And when the turkes that kept the towre of dayvd saw the grete light that was in the oost of the crysten / thei were 28 all merveylled of it. Thenne some of theim went & shewed it to theyr mayster & lorde / And when thad-

1 a nostre seigneur, F. orig. H. vii. back.
4 et le conte Jaffez, F. orig. H. vii. back.
5 que de regnault et de mawgis. Et me semble que en lonneur de dieu nous devons faire ceste nyrt chescun en sa tente grant lumiere de sierges en louant dieu du secours quil nous a envoye. F. orig. H. vii. back.
6—6 omitted, F. orig. H. viii.
myrall herde the tidynges / he began to crye hie, & said / 'O machomet, what eileth now that unhappy folke that make soo grete feest / I byleve that they ben as the swane is whan he shall deye, for I am sure they shall one of thise dayes be all slayn / and therefore thei make so grete ioye.' And when barbas the admvrall had sayd this, he sware by machomet, afore Tiie Admiral

'Syr,' sayd an olde paynim / 'beware your flesshe well of a grete kerle that is there newe come amonge them, whiche bereth a grete forke in his hande / For yf he hit you, ye are but deed. I am well sure that all they of thoost make this ioy for that lorden' / 'I know hym not,' said thadmyrall to yª panym, 'but and I can hit hym wyth my branke of stele / I shall make hym leve his grete hede behynde hym for a pledge tylle he cometh agen / for he is naked, and therfore he maye not endure agenste me.'

Whan the kynge Thomas, that was there prysoner, sawe the grete feest & the ioye that the crysten made, he wyste not what he sholde thynke / but sayd to hymselfe / 'Ha, goodys, what have now my folke that they make suche a noyse / and suche a sporte / Alas, doo they not remembre me / I byleve better ye than nay, for the feest that they make now is for somwhat.' Wyte it that they of Rames & of Iapphes / and of all the countrey aboute Iherusalem, whan thei sawe the grete lighte, they wende that the cyte had be sette a fyre; and some were sore a ferde leest thoost had a doo. Thus was all the countrey abasshed / but they that were in the oost cared but lityll for it / And whan they had sported theymselfe ynough, they ordered the watche / and after went to reste. And whan the daye was come, the barons rose

and wente to the pavylion of reynawde / whiche was vp & redy. and they salved hym reverently / and after sayd vnto hym thus / 'Syre, what thynke ye that we must doo? shall we assayle the cyte or noo' / 4 'Lordes,' sayd the duke reynawde / 'me semeth that it were goode for to gyve to it a sawte, For we have grete avautage a fore hande, for he that shall deye in the sawtyng of the holy cyte, he shall be saved wythout 8 doubtes.' whyles that the barons devised thus togther for to gyve a sawte to the cyte / the admiral of perce made to open the gate force, and yssued oute of the town wyth ten thousande fyghtynge men well armed / 12 And when reynawd & the barons of surry knewe it, they ranne to theyr harneis / Reinawde was armed incontynente / and toke his helme & his swerde, 1 and lighted vpon his horse that therle of Rames had given 16 hym. And when reynawde was on horsbacke / mawgys armed hym also / and mounted on horsbacke, and began to crye, 'Barons of surry, be not dysmayed in noo wise / for I promyse god I shall never retourne to be hermyte, yf the turkes be not dyscomfyted & overthrown.' And after he had said soo, he wente to gesfraye of nazareth, & sayd to hym / 'Baron, kepe you by reynawde; for yf all thother knyghtes in the feliship were suche as ye be, barbas sholde be dyscomfyted or none.' and whan all the barons were all armed & well on horsbacke / thei ordeyned theyry bataylles as well as they cowde. And them came 28 thadmyrrall barbas, that smote in to thoost of the cristen. The fyrste bataylle of the sarrasyns was conduytted by a kynge / that had to name margarys, that was lorde of the towre of Talles, whiche was 32 ryght cruell, and bare in his armes a dragon pypetured wyth an horruble figure.

1 Fol. H.H. i. back.
Whan the kyngge margarys sawe it was tyme to smyte vpon the crysten / he spored his horse wyth his spores & ranne agenst reynawde / And whan reynawde saw him come / he sayd to therle of rames, 'here cometh one to seke his deth wyth grete hast; ye have don me grete honour, but this kyngge shall have dyshonour for your love at the first' / And whan reynawd had sayd this / he spored his horse / and ra?me agenst margarys so harde that nother shelde nor quyras coude not save hym, but he shoved his spere through the breste & overthrew sterke deed to the 12 grounde / and whan reynawde had gyven that grete stroke, he sayd, 'Goo thy waye to helle, the devylle spede the, and here felishyp to thy predesessours that went there afore the!' and after, he put haunde to the 16 swerde, & smote another sarrasyn1 soo harde throughe the helme that he clove him to the teeth / and forth withal he raughte a nother 2vnder the bavere soo that he made his hede to flee fro the shoulders / And whan he had slayn thise thre, he cried, 'mountalban / vpon thise paynyms!'3 And whan mawgis herde him / he put him-self amonge the turkes soo courageously / that the fyrste that he encountred he sent hym doun in to helle, and themne toke his swerde in his hande & dyde merveylles of armes4 / soo that he slewe soo many turkes that reynaude & the barons merveylled gretyly. themne sayd reynaude to therle of rames, 'what saye you by my cosin mawgys / sawe you ever soo good an hermyte' / 'By my soule,' sayd therle, 'he is to be comended / blessed be the wombe that bare him, & thour that ye ben come in to this londe / for now I am wel sure that Iherusalem shall be recovered, and the kyngge Thomas deliverde oute of prison, wyth the grace of god'3 /

---

1 sarrasyns, orig. 2 Fol. II, H. ii. 3–5 omitted. F. orig. I. i. 4 et lors commencea a frapper a destre et a fenestre, F. orig. I. i.
Whan therle of rames had sayd this to reynawd / he spored his horse wyth the spores, & smote a turke suche a stroke that he made thynen of his spere to apere at the backe of hym, that felle deede to therth / and after he toke his swerde in his hande, & began to cry 'rames' as hee as he cowde, sayeng, 'Barons, smyte now a goodede, for the persans shall be now vtturli discomfyted / yf god kepe the valiaunt reynaude of mountalban & his 8 valiaunt cosin mawgys / Now is thour come that the traytour barbas shall fynysshe his life, that thus betrayed the holy cyte of Iherusalem by his false wytte.' The me dyde sette on the barons of the londe, whiche began to make merveyelles of armes agenst the sarrasins / Who had seen that tyme reynawde & mawgys, how they made waye to theym that cam after theym, he wold have merveylled gretly / For I promyse you none durste abyde afore them, were he never so hardy or valiaunt, but he was slayn of them. After reynawde & mawgys was therle of rames, geffraye of nazareth, & walleron of fayete wyth their folke, and they made merveylles of 20 armes agenst their enmyes. and when the sarrasins sawe that thei cowde not abide the grete dammage of that the cristen bare to theim / they put theymself to flight towards the cyte / 4

Whan thatmyrall barbas saw that his folke were discomfyted, he was angry / for it, and sayd / 'hoursons! why do ye flee thus away / knowe ye not that I am your lorde, that shall defende you agenst this vnhappy cristens / Where is margarys becon that I see hym not?' 'sire,' sayd one of the sarrasins, 'he is deed at the first iousting that he made' / and when thatmyrall herde this, he wende to have gon out of his 32
wyt, and sayd, 'who is that hath borne me soo grete harme as to see the noble kyng margayrs / Is it not the grete kerle with the forke' / 'ye, sir,' sayd his folke / 'for he is called the best knyghte of the worlde / and also he hath brought this daye to deth many of your men with his handes' / Moche sori was thadmyrall for the dethe of margaris, and swore the god 8 mahom that he shold perse the hert in his bely / And whan he had made this othe, he gaaf the spores to the horse, & put himselfe to the medle / And the first he recou?itred was walleron of faiete, to whom he gaff suche a stroke throught the sheekle that he made his spere hede to apere oute at the backe of hym, & slewe him deed to therth. And whan thadmyrall had gyven that stroke, he put hande to his swerde & shoved him 16 amonge the thykest / crieng 'perce' as hie as he cowde / and sayd, 'barons! smyte vpon this unhappy cresten, for now shall they be discomfyted.' And whan therle Iaffas & geffray of nazareth sawe that thad-myrall fared soo fowle wyth the crystens / they put theym in to the prees amonge the sarrasins, and there was grete slaughter made of bothe partyes; but at the laste the crystens had ben shreudly handled yf Rey 24 naude and mawgis 1had not come lightly there / Reynaude, that sawe this harde batayll, shoved himself among the thickest, as a wolfe amonge a flocke of shepe, and smote a persante that was cosin to thad- 28 myrall / that had to name Orrende, & gaffe him suche a stroke wyth his swerde / that he made his hede to flee well a spere lengthe from his body, wyth helme & all / And after he smote a nother that was nevew to 32 malbon / soo that he slew both horse & man 2with one stroke 2 / To say the trouth, reynaude made there soo grete merveylles of armes, that all the paynymys were sore abasshed / for he had his sheld caste behynde

1 Fol. H.H. iii. 2 2 omitted, F. orig. I. ii.
his backe, & helde the rayne of his horse aboute his arme, & helde his swerde wyth bothe his handes, and habandoned hys body, smityng merveyllous strokes on ether side vpon ye sarrasyns, soo that he smote noo 4 stroke but he slewe 1 a turke or 1 a paynym / And whan thadmyrall sawe the grete greeff that reynawd bare to his folke, he swere his god appolin / he sholde never ete mete till he had slayn the grete vylayne / ‘Syre,’ 8 sayd theme the kyng alebrondy to him, ‘I pray you leve this enterprise, for I telle you for very certeyn that ye goo afore him he shall kille you wyth one stroke.’ Thenne sayd thadmyrall to hym / ‘yf I had 12 now a good guysarne in my hande, he sholde as lityll endure myn efforte as shold a boye / For & I brynge hym not doun / I shall never requyre to bere ony armes more, nor to ryde vpon ony horse more ’ / 16

Moche cruel & harde was the medlinge 2 / mawgis was there that made grete occysion fro thone side & fro thother. And whan reynawd saw mawgis that dyde so well, he was glad ; and so smote he a turke 20 vpon his helme suche a stroke / that he cloved his hede in two peces / and soo he smote a nother at the sides so that he cleved all his rybbes / and cut all togyder a sonder his body / and after this he smote a 3 nother soo 24 that he hewed his hede cleue of, and one of his armes ; and whan he had slayn thise thre wyth one enpraynt, he cried, ‘montalban,’ sayeng, ‘smyte, barons / for the sarrasins, both turkes & persans, ben deed & over 28 throwen / and thynke to avenge your lord thomas / whiche is soo excellent a kyng.’ And whan thadmyrall barbas herde crie ‘montalban’ / this worde abasshed hym more than ony other thynge / for he 32 knew well theme that he that his men called ‘the grete

1—1 omitted, F. orig. I. ii.
2 dune part et daultre, F. orig. I. ii.
3 Fol. II.H. iii. back.
carle 1 wyth the forke"1 was the valiaunt reynawd of mountalban / of whom he had herde speke of many tymes afore that / and that he was the best knyght of all the worlde / and whan he knew this / he wolde full fayn have be aen in perce ; and the ne he toke his waye anone towarde the cyte as a man discomfyted & overthrowen1 / and drewe to the gate foere for to have 8 gon in to it2 / but the valiaunt erle of rames pursued hym so nygh that he suffred hym not goo at his wylle./ And whan thadmyrall sawe that he was soo sore pursued / he was aferde to be take / and soo smote his 12 horse wyth his spores, & gate into the cyte wyth grete payn, and lefte all his folke behynde, 1 & saved himself;1 but the moste parte of his men were there slayn.3 / And when reynawde wyst that thadmyrall of perce was soo 16 scaped / he was ryght sory for it ; and the ne he loked abowte him, & sawe there a grete pecce of tymbre that had XV fote of lengthe / he lighted doun a fote and toke the balke and trussed it vp afore hym vpon his 20 horse necke, as lightly as it had be som pecce of welowe. Thenne he sayd to theim that had victory as wel as he, 'Lordes, folow me yf it playse you.' 'wyth a good wyll,' sayd the barons / for we shall never leve you

N

ow wylle I telle you why Reynawd dyde take the balke a foresayd / Ye oughte to wyte / that Reynawd 4 bethought well that thadmyrall barbas sholde 28 not make the gate to be shet after hym / for love his folke shold com in that were out, and therfore bare reynaude the grete balke or beme, to the ende that yf he founde the gate open, he sholde put it vnder the

1—1 omitted, F. orig.
2 pour soy garentir de regnault, F. orig. I. ii.
3 Car regnault et maugis et le conte de rames et geoffroy de nazareh et le conte de Jaffes en firent si grant destruction que peu eschappa, F. orig. I. ii. back.
4 Fol. II. ii. iv.
porte colisse, that it sholde not be shut lightly agen.
And after he had bethought himself therof, he went on
his waye wyth the cristens as fast as they cowde reyne
toward the gate of Iherusalem where thadmyralle
had saved hymself and when he came there, he sawe
the gate open, wherof he was glad; soo toke he therein
his beme, & put it vnder the port colisse soo that it
myght not be lete downe nor the gate cowde not be
shet nother. But ye maye well knowe that reynawd
dyde not this wythout grete traveylle, for there was so
many bodyes both quycke & deed in his waye that
he myght not well helpe hymself; but one thyng helped hym well; for whan the sarrasins sawe hym,
they were soo ferde of hym that they made hym wyth
and fled all afore hym.
Whan the noble knyght reynaude sawe that the 16
porte colisse was well faste vpon the beme
that he had brought there, wythout ony taryeng he put
hande to his swerde and put himselfe wythin Iherusal-
em. And whan he was in, he began to crye as bie as he
myght 'mountalban, the cyte is wonne'/
and made there soo moche of armes that mawgys, the
erle of Rames and many other barons gate in by fyne
force / And whan the sarrasins sawe that the crystens
were wythin the cyte they putte themself so to flighte,
and hydde them wythin the houses where as they
myght, for to save theyr lives and alwayes reynaude
was at the gate for to kepe thentre / They that were
vpon the grete towre of davyd, cryed fast to the other
sarrasins that they sholde shet the gate / sayenge that
yf the grete lorden entred wythin they sholde be all
lost / And whan reynawde sawe that a grete parte of
the cristens were wythin Iherusalem, he sayd to maw-

1—1 luy et tous les aultre barons, F. orig.
2—2 omitted, F. orig.
3 knyght, orig.
4 du portal, F. orig. i, iii.
gis / 'Cosyn, kepe well this passage, and I shall goo at a nother gate for to make it open' / 'Cosyn,' sayd mawgis, 'goo your waye hardely / and doubt noo 4 thynge / I shall well kepe this path.' Thenne departed reynawde, acompanyed wyth many valiaunt cristens, and went vnto a nother gate, whiche he founde wel garnysshed wyth panyms; but reynawd, thrughe his 8 prowes, put theim anone to flighte, and gate the gate open. Thus as ye here was doon / for all y° sarrasins lost their lives / and was recovered agen the cyte of Iherusalem / thrughe the grete prowes of the noble 12 Reynawde of mountalban / And when thadmyrall sawe this / he wende to have wexen mad all quycke, and fared as he had be oute of his wytte, and cursed his goddis mahomet ² & appolin,² and pulled his heres of his 16 berde, ² and rente all his raimentes,² and ³ / after he sayd / 'By apollo, sovereyn god, yf thomas helpe me not to save my life / I shal make him to be slayn incontynten.' and thenne he sent for the kyng thomas, & 20 sayd vto hym, 'Kynge thomas, ye must chuse of two thynge thone / that is, that ye must save my liffe that I maye go to perce agen wyth two ⁴ of my men in my felishyp, or elles ye to be now cast oute of thise wyn- 24 dowe down ¹ / Thenne sayd the kyng thomas / 'and playse you, ye shall have pacyence that I may speke wyth my folke.' 'goo on,' sayd thadmyrall, 'to theyn at this wyndow, For nee ferder ye shall not goo, and 28 deliver you lightly' / Thenne wente the kynge thomas to the wyndowes, and sawe reynawde of mountalban & mawgys come, that cam all the formest for to sawte the towre of davyd / where he was prysoner to the 32 admyrall / And when he sawe reynawde & mawgis the formest of all, he knewe them ⁵ not / and loked

¹ Sire, F. orig.  ²-² omitted, F. orig. I. iii.  
³ Quant II cut asses demene son dueil II dist, F. orig. I. iii.  
⁴ troisiesme, F. orig.  ⁵ Fol. H.H. v.
ferder / and sawe therle of Rames behynde theym, which he knewe not well / and them he aspyed geffraye of nazareth, 1 wheroof he was glad whan he saw hym, and them he began to crie / 2 Lorde of naza-reth, 2 loke vp to your kyng that is here prisoner; thad- myrall barbas sendeth you worde, that ye ye lete hym not goo sauff in to his countree & royaume of perce wyth two of his men with him / he shall cast me now 8 downe oute of this wyndowes / Then he answerde to hym therle of rames / 'ha, good kyng, god save you / ye wote well that a good man ought not to make ony lie. It is trouthe that yesterday we made our governer 12 & maister of that lord that ye see here afore vs / whiche is the best knyght of the worldke, and to hym ye must showe your nede, for wythoute hym / we maye noo thynge.' And when the kyng thomas vnderstode this 16 tilynghe, he waxed almost out of his wyt for sorow / by cause he wende none other but he shold delye an evyll deth. them sayd he to the erle of rames in grete angre, 'Ha, erle of rames / have ye betrayed me 20 soo / that ye have made a nether lorde than me.'

'Syr,' sayd therle to hym agen, 'doubte noo thynge, for we have doon soo / your right & honoure is alway saved in this behalve; nor ye shall not lese noo thynge 24 of your owne / for the good knyght hath ynowge in fraunce, and ye must knowe that he hath taken this cyte, he & his felawe; and take noo suspicion of him, nor of vs / for I am sure he shall doo evyn as ye wylle 28 yourself / for he is here for none other cause but for to deliver you / for assone as he shall have visite the holy sepulcre of our lorde, he shall goo agen to fraunce.' Then he sayd the kyng thomas / 'lordes, how is the 32 knight named?' 'Syre,' sayd therle of rames, 'he is called Reynaude of mountalan / the sone of the duke

1 et le conte Jaffes, F. orig. I. iii. back.
2-2 Seigneurs, F. orig.
aymon, and the beste knyghte of the worlde. For he is suche a knyghte that the grete kyng Charlemagn myght never greve him / and yet 1 have they mayn-
tened the werre XV. 2 yeres 3 & more, 3 thone agenst thother / and soo hath he doon soo many noble & grete faytes of armes duryng that werre, that the renommee thereof is flowen over alle the worlde' / 'Erle of rames,' 8 sayd the kyng / 'I pray you that ye will tell him in my behalve, thys that I have said 3 to geffray of nazareth.' 13 'sire,' said therle, 'with right good wylle I shall doo soo.' And thenne he went to reynawde, and shewed to 12 him all that the kyng had sayd. 'lordes,' sayd reynawde, 'we shall not doo soo / but lete vs sawte the towre / for at the worst fall / we shall alwayes well have that apoyntment that thatdymyll asketh / And 16 soo I telle you, yf we sawte well / the towre shall be lightly wonne by force of armes / and we shall deliver the kyng thomas at our owne wylle / and soo shall we slee barbas that thrughe treyson toke the eyte.'  'sire,' 20 sayd therle rames / 'we shall doo your commaundement / doubt not of it.' 4 Thenne commaunded reynawde that the tower sholde be sawted of all sides, and made 5 grete plente 6 of 5 ladders to be righted agenst it, 24 and he hymselfe began first to clime vp, with his sheldre for to cover him with; and after hym went mawgys, & thenne therle of rames / and after theim geffray of nazareth, & well thirty 7 knyghtes more; 8 and men with 28 crosbowes & other archers abode byneth for to shote vpwarde / where they sawe the sarrasins loke out 8 / and whan thatdymyll sawe reynawde that wold have com

1 Fol. H.H. v. back.  2 XVII., F. orig. I. iii. back.  
3—3 omitted, F. orig. I. iii. back.  
4 Moult estoit regnault preudomme car II ne voloit point de mauluals plait ... F. orig. I. iv.  
5—5 omitted, F. orig.  6 plente, orig.  
7 ,XX., F. orig. I. iv.  
8—8 Le viel conte de Jaffes demoura au bas auchoques les archiers et arbalestiers, F. orig. I. iv.
in to the towre, he was sore a ferde / soo wyst he not what he sholde doo, but raune to the kyng thomas & caught hym by the neck, & sayd to hym / 'By apollo, thou & I shall lepe both atones oute of this wyndowe' / 4 'sire,' sayd the kyng / 'kyll not yourself nor me also / for I shall make the sawte to ceasse' / 'I wyll well that ye doo soo,' sayd thadmyrall / 'but ye shall com with me' / Soo toke him by the [neck\(^1\)] & had him to the S wyndow, and sayd all hie, 'Reynawd of montalban, I shall angre you / For I shall cast\(^2\)te the kyng thomas doun yf ye pardonne me not / and I shall see myself wyth him, for I maye well deye after suche a kinge' / 12 And when the duke reynawde sawe that the kyng thomas hyng thus / the hede dounwarde, \(^3\)all redy for to fall\(^5\) / he had grete pite of hym, and sayd to himselfe / 'Ha, good lorde, what shall I doo / for if I leve 16 the sawte it shall be grete shame / for the towre is almost taken / and of the other parte it shall be grete mysshap yf the good kyng thomas take deth for it.'

Thus, as reynawd was vpon the ladder thykynge what 20 he myght best doo / all the barons of the londe began to crye to reynawde, 'swete sir, for god suffre not that our kyng lese his lift\(^4\) / soo it were grete shame to vs & to you also.' 'Lordes,' sayd reynawde, 'by the feyth 24 that I owe to my brederen & to my cousin mawgis, I wolde not that the kyng sholde take deth for me' / and when he had sayd so / he cam down fro the ladder, and after cryed to thadmyrall / 'Leve the kyng thomas 28 & doo hym no harme / for ye shall be delivered bi suche a covenauunt that ye and your two\(^5\) men shall goo on fote in to perce, & ye shall leve here all your goodes.' 'By mahom,' sayd thadmyrall, 'I wyll not doo soo / 32 but shall ride on horsbacke, I & my ii\(^5\) men / and so

2 Fol. H.H. vi.  3-3 omitted, F. orig.
3 si honteusement, F. orig. I. iv. back.
4 troys, F. orig. I. iv. back.
shall ye gyve me saufconduyt vpon your feyth, and yf ye wylle not doo thus, I shall lete fall dou the kyng thomas.' 'Admyrall, sayd reynaude, 'that ye aske, I 4 graunt it to you vpon my feyth / for ye have wyth you suche a pledge that ye shall not be touched at this tyme for me.' thadmyrall was ryght glad whan he herde reynaude speke thus; so drew he vp the kyng 8 thomas agen, & sayd to hym, 'kynge thomas, ye shall goo quyte fro me;' and thenne he went dou wyth the kyng / and opened the gate / and wente oute, he & his two men / There was made grete ioye bitwene

12 the king thomas and Reynawde, And after, of all the other barons of 2 surre / and the grete thankes that the kyng dyde to reynaude & to mawgis are not for to be named; and the langage that was bytwene theim are 16 to longe to be recounted. After this, thadmyrall toke his saufconduyt & went his waye towarde perce. Here of hym is made none other mencyon. and after he was goon / the kyng thomas, reynaude, & wyth all thothre 20 barons went togyder in to the towre / and whan they were com vp / the kyng thomas kneled afore reynaude. 'sire,' sayd reynaude, 'ye ought not to doo soo.' 'Yes, verely,' sayd the kyng / and whan reyn- 24 naude sawe that / he wexed red for shame, & toke vp the kyng 3 / and thenne the kyng colled him & sayd, 'Blessed be our lorde, that brought you in this londe. For ye have socoured Iherusalem the holy cyte / 4 & 28 brought myselfe out of the sarrasins handes 5 / Now tell me, & playse you, yf ye have made peas wyth charle- magn the grete kyng of fraunce / that hath doon you soo grete hinderaunce.' 'sire,' sayd reynaude, 'ye / 32 and by cause of the peas I am com here / beggynge my bred, & pourli arayed 7 / and when the king thomas

1 troyes, F. orig. I. iv. back.
4 et moy ost de prison, F. orig. I. iv. back.
5 comme voyez, F. orig. I. v.
and vows to reward him for his services.

Mawgis and Reynawde are feasted honourably by the king, who gives them many rich presents before their departure for France.

Thomas takes leave of them with much sorrow.

herde him speke, he had grete pyte of hym / and sware by the holy sepulcre that he sholde araye hym honourably, as to hym apperteyneth, for to retourne in to fraunce / after that the kyng had said this worde, they cam down fro the towre of davyd for to go to the holy sepulcre. And ye oughte to wyte that they made grete feest thrugh the cyte of that was soo be-fall / Thenne went they all to the holy sepulcre / for to 8 yelde thankes to our lorde of the cyte, that was recovered fro thandes of the sarrasins. And whan all this was doon, the barons of surre toke leve of the kyng, of reynaude, & of mawgis / and after went every man to his place in theyr countrey / And the kyng toke reynaude & mawgis / and broughte theim to his palays / where he fested theim a hundred dayes honourably.

And this hangyng, he shewed theym all the countrey about Iherusalem / and whan reynawde had sported him ynounge wyth the kyng thomas / he wolde departe for to goo agen in to the marches of fraunce / And whan the kyng sawe that, he gaff to reynawd many riche yeftes / as horses / silkes, golde and silver / and many other thynges in grete plente. and ye oughte to wyte that mawgis wolde take noo thyng / nor chauyne his hermytes araye in no wyse, but arayed hym agen as a pilgryme & bare fote, wherof reynawd was sory / The kinge made a shyp be redy honourably atte the haven of Iaphes. Reynawd, full tenderly wepyng, toke leve of the kyng & of his barons / and entred in to the ship / And wyte it, that by fortune of wedryng, they were well eyght monethes vpon the see / and at last they

1—1 omitted, F. orig. I. v.
2 felons payens, F. orig. I. v.
5 sans peuvoir prendre terre, F. orig.
toke lond at a towne called palerne; and whan they had taken lond / reynaude commaundeth that ye ship shold be vulade / and all thus as they vulade the 4 ship, the kyng of palerne / which he was called simon of pyll,1 lokyng out at a wyndow of his castell2 / themne sayd to theym that were about hym / 'I see yonder in the haven a ship setteth her gode a londe, and it can 8 not be but there must be som grete man in it / for I see horses that ben had out, & grete riches / I can not say what it may be, but it were pilgrymes.' Themne he commaundeth a horse for to be made reydy, for he 12 wolde sporte hymselfe to the haven side.3

The valianut kyng simon of pyll, wythout ony more taryenge / came to the see syde4 wyth many a noble knyghe in his company / And w[h]an he was 16 come to the haven / he foude reynawde, that was come a londe. and assoone as the kyng sawe hym / he knewe him well / wherof he was right glad / And also reynawde knewe well the gode kyng Symon.

20 Soo themne embraced they ech wyth other,5 made grete chere thone to thother / 'Reynawde,' sayd the kyng, 'ye be ryght welcom / I pray you comm lodge in my castell, for thadmyrall barbas is entred in my londe, & wasteth it dayly. I fought yesterday wyth hym / but he drove me out of the feeld shamfully, & dyde grete harme to my folke. and I am sure he shall come to besiege me tomorow; and I had thoughte to have 28 sende for socours towards charlemagn / but sith that god hath brought you here / I fere not the kyng, nother his admiral1 of perce'/ 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'I make you sure I shall helpe you wyth all my

1—1 omitted, F. orig.
2 et vist comment lou dechargoit la nef. Lors dist a ung chevallier qui la estoit le quel se appelloit Symon de pueille et a ceux qu'entour luy estoient . F. orig. I. v. back.
3 pour congoistre que ce feroit pour le loger aneques luy, F. orig. I. v. back.
4 sus son cheval . F. orig. 5 Fol. H.H. vii. back.
Reynawde vows to help him against the Admiral.

A knight approaches the king, and announces the arrival of the Admiral before Palermo.

Reynawde arms himself for the battle, and Mawgis also.

power. and if thadmyrall come tomorrow, he shall not mysse of batayll, for I shall never ete brede tyll I have dyscomfyted him.' Theyne the kynge simon brought reynawd to his palays / where he made him 4 gode chere / and thus as simon 2fested reynawde 2 / cam there a knyghte that was called ymes / that sayd to the kynge simon, 'Sir, thadmyralle of perce 3 is come byfore palerme wyth soo grete folke that all therth 8 is covered wythall.' whan the kynge vnderstode thise tydynges, he was sory for it, & reynawde glađ. Thene sayd reynawde to the kynge, 'sire, I pray you be not abasshed of noo thyng, for this day shall ye be 12 avenged, and god before, & the holy sepulcre, fro whens I cam but late.' and whan the kynge herde reynawd speke so, he made be cryed that every man sholde arme himself. 4 and whan reynawde sawe that, he sent 16 for his harneis, and armed hym / and sware the body of god he sholde dco greef to thadmyrall that daye / sithe that he had founde hym agen. and whan mawgis saw reynawd wolde arme him for to fight, he sayd 20 to him / 'My cosin, I am yet dysposed for your love to bere armes, for I cowde not suffre you in dangeour.' And whan the kynge simon herde mawgis speke so, he said him grete thanke / and went & embraced hym, & 24 after sayd / 'By my soule, here is a good hermyte / For 5whan it was nede, he put well hande to the swerde' / 'sire,' said reynauilde, 'ye saye well trouthe / and I promyse you men shold fynde in the worlde but 28 fewe suche knyghtes as he is one' / After all thise thynges sayd / every man toke his harneys; and the kynge all armed went to mawgis, & sayd all laughyng,

1 mal entra oncques en peuelle luy et ses gens, F. orig. I. v. back.
2 le roy de peuelle faisoit grant feste pour lamour de regnault, F. orig. I. v. back.
3 nomme barbas, F. orig.
4 et fist esmouvoir la ville, F. orig. I. vi.
5 Fol. H.H. viii.
'My frende mawgis, I pray you that ye wyll here my standarde this day'1 / 'syre,' answerde mawgis, 'ye take me it, I promise you I shall have it in suche a place that ye shall swete or ever ye shall com to me.'

And whan the kyng herde mawgis spoke so, he was right glad therof / and thonne he toke him his baner. And whan mawgis had it in his hande, he sayd to the kyng / 'sire, now folowe me that wyll for this day shall these be dyscomfyted, yf it playse god' / And whan mawgis had said soo / he gave the spores to his horse, & put hymself amonge the sarrasins as a lion. Reynawde followed him nyghe, & recounted a persan, whom he smote wyth his spere soo grete a stroke that he made hym tomble deed to the grounde, wherof thother were sore abasshed; & after he put hande to his swerde, & shoved himself in to the gretest prees, and smote on eithere side of hym upon the persans soo merveyllouse strokes that they were gretely merveyllde wyth it, for all they that he hit / he brought them to their endyne / and whan thadmyrall sawe the grete efforte of armes that Reynawde made agenste his folke, he sayd to a nevewe of his that was by hym / 'By mahom, I sawe not yesterdaye that grete man of armes / nother he that bereth now the baner of symon / from whens the devyll are they com that soo gretely greveth vs / I see wel they be som strau?ge knyghtes / I am alle redy soo ferde of them that all the blode in my body trembleth.'

This hang- yng, the king simon & reynawd made grete slaug[h]ter of sarrasins / But whan thadmyrall sawe that his folke bare theimself soo yll, he wanst not whether he 32 wolde flee or abyde / Thenne cam reynaude brekyng

---

1 car a meilleur chevallier que vous ne la scauroie vailler, F. orig. I. vi. 2--2 omitted, F. orig.
3 Et Illeques eut vue merveilleuse meslee d’une part et daultr... F. orig. I. vi. back. 4 Fol. H.H. viii. back.
he hears Reynawde call on Montalban, and knows against whom he is fighting.

The Admiral flies hastily to his ship.

pursued by Reynawde and Mawgis, who

the prees / that cryed as lowde as he cowde 'mountalban' / And whan thadmyrall herde that erie / he was soo sore a ferde that he wyst not whether to goo, but said, 'by machone & by appolin, I byleve that this 4 devyll helpeth himself wyth som devirly, For I lefte hym in Iherusalem, and now he is here.'

Theane whan thadmyrall barbas knew that he that made soo grete greef to his folke, was reynawde of mountalban / he shook all for here, & sayd to his nevewe, 'By machomet my god, we have doon yll to come here for to make werre agenst the kyng simeon, sith that he hath this devyll reynaude of mountalban; for his like is there not in all the world of knyghthode. now wold I be well in my ship in the myddes of the see / for if I abyde him, he shall make an ende of me.' 'Syr,' sayd his folke, 16 'have noo doubte of that grete vylayn / For & he come ones in our handes, he shall not lightly scape vs.' 'Iordes,' sayd thadmyrall / 'ye wote not what ye saye; ye know not the grete prowes of reynawde; for & 20 we were ten tymes moo folke than we ben / yet sholde not we endure agenst him. and therefore, by the feyth that I owe to machomet, I wylle abyde here noo lenger.' And whan he had sayd thise wordes / he 24 torned the bridell / and assone as he myghte, fled towards his galleys, and all his folke after hym. And whan reynaude sawe that the paynysms were discomfyted, he began to erie / 'after, mawgis, after / for the 28 truauztes are dyscomfyted.' And whan he had sayd so, he put himself to the chase, and the kyng simon after him / and went castyng deu doun sarrasins as bestes / And wyte that they slewe soo many of 32 theym / that men shold not bileve the nombre / but

1 on je lay trouve par mon pêche et sommes en voie deestre perduz se mahom ne nous ayde, F. orig. I. vi. back.
2 reynaude, orig. 3-5 sont tous mors, F. orig. I. vii.
they cowde not take thadmyrall, for he was the formest

Barbas, thadmyralle of Perse, whan he founde hymselfe saved in his ship / he began to loke a londe, & sawe the grete dommage that reynawd & mawgis made of his folke / for all the shores of the see were full of sarrasins slayne, wherof he had grete sorowe. Soo began he to pulle his heres of his berde / and cursed thour that ever he was borne / Reynamde cam to the shores, & sawe thadmyralle was saved / wherof he was full sory, & wyst not what he sholde doo more to him / but he made to be cast boltes of wilde fyre in to the galley of the admyrall, soo that he brent the moste parte of it / and barbas was fayne to entre in to a nother shyppe. And ye oughte to wyte that all the sarrasins that bode a londe, lost their lives /

When the kyng Symon saw that he was to his above of hys emyyes, he was ryght glad of it / soo raune he & enbraced reynawd, & after sayd to hym / ‘Reynawde, I knowe well that I am kyng by your prowes / for & ye had not be, thadmyralle barbas had dystroyed me, and had made an ende of me / wherof it is reyson that ye be rewarded for it / And therefor, reynawd, I make you lorde of all my goodes & of all my londe’ / themne sayd reynawd, ‘Syre, I thanke you moche of your good wylle / For we be not that have dyscomfyted the sarrasins. It was god, & none other, for we be not soo puysaunt, I & mawgys, for to doo it wythout hym’ / And whan they had thus spoken togyder a longe while at the see side / the kynge toke reynawd wyth the one hande, & mawgys wyth thother / and went toward the cite. And whan they were com there / the kyng made the gayn to be broughte, and presented it to reynawde his land and all his goods as a reward for his bravery, which is refused by him.

1-1 se sanvast dedens sa nef, F. orig. i. vii.
2 Fol. I.1. i.
3 tone, orig.

CHAP. XXIV.] OF KING SIMON’S GRATITUDE TOWARDS REYNAWDE. 529
A great feast is then held in the town to the honour of Reynawde and Mawgis.

The two knights take leave of the king and his barons,

and journey to Rome, where they confess to the Pope;

they then depart for Arden, where they are joyfully welcomed by all the people there.

nawd & to mawgys / wherof reynawde & mawgys wolde take no thing, but gaf it to the pour knyghtes / and incontynent mawgys toke agen his hermytes wede / 1Thenne began the feest to be the2 grete3 4 for the victory that god had gyven theim / The chere that the kyng made to reynaude in his paleys is not for to saye, for it was grete. and for to make shorte tale / Reynawd was honourably feested the space of four dayes / And thenne he wolde departe / and asked leve of the kyng / wherof the kyng was full sory / by cause he wold byde no lenger. and whan he saw that he wolde goo, he gaff hym many fayr yeftes, and made his shyp to be garnysshed wyth moche good vytylls. And whan this was doon / Reynawd toke leve of the kyng simon4 & of his barons / and the kyng conveyed reynawd to the ship. 16 And whan he came to the partyng / the kyng simon kyssed reynawd,5 sore wepyng / and after went agen to palerne / and reynawde dyde doo hale vp saylle, & toke the see / and ceassed never tyll he came to rome. 20 and there they toke londe, and he & mawgis went & confessed theym to the pope. and whan thei were confessed / they retourned agen in to the shyp / and toke theyr waye towards fraunce / Shortly to speke, 24 they dyde soo moche by theyr iourneis, that they cam to ardeyne about none. and whan the peple of ardeyn6 wyst that reynaude & maugis were comyng, they were never soo glad / and went to alarde, & sayd, 'wyte 28 that your broder reynaude, our lorde, is come / and also maugis, your cosin, hole & sounde / 4thanked be god!'

1—1 Puis apres la feste commenca et les dances et tous aultres esbatements par toute lacite . . . F. orig. I. vii. back.
2 there in Copland.
3 Fol. I.I. i. back.
4 omitted, F. orig.
5 et puis maugis, F. orig. I. viii.
6 dordonne, F. orig. I. viii.
And thenne whan alarde & his brethren herde these tidynge, of theuyr broder reynaude, that was come, they had almost swoned for grete ioye that thei had, and anone wente to the gate of the towne agenst their broder / but they founde hym that he was alredy wythin the towne / and whan they sawe hym / they ranne hym agenst. and alarde embraced 8 him fyrst, wepyng / and after kyssed hym by grete love; and in like wyse dyde guycharde & richarde / and thenne they kyssed mawgis, their good cosin / And whan thei had thus welcomed hym, they went into the palace. togyder in the paleys / and whan they were there / alarde sayd to reynaude, 'Fayre broder, telle vs how ye have founde our cosin mawgis.' 'Broder,' sayd reynawde, 'I found him in constantyn noble by fortune.' and thenne he began to reherse vnto theym alle his adventures that he had sin he becam pylgryme / and whan he had tolde all / he loked in his broder alarde in his face, & sawe he was pale, whiche gaff him suspicetion, & sayd / 'Fayr broder, how is it with my wyff & my children? I merveylle me moche that I see theym not here' / 'broder,' sayd alarde, 'have noo doubte for them / for they ben hole & sounde at montalban / and wyte it, that sith your departure we have doo repayre agen the towne / and have doon garnyshe the castell wyth vitayll ynoughe / for fere of werre, yf ony thynge had happed vs amys.' And thenne whan reynawde herde good tidynge of his wyff & his children, he was right glad of it; and soo he kneled doun and thanked god of it.

\[1\] Fol. I.I. ii.  
\[2\] vous soyez le tresbien venu . . . F. orig. I. viii.  
\[3\] ehe, orig.  

Whan reynaude knew that his wife & his children were well, it recomforted hym moche / and began to make good chere; but whan he sawe that his
but seeing how sad his brothers look, he enquires the reason.

Alarde tells him of the death of his wife,

who sorrowed so much for her husband’s absence that she died.

Reynawde asks to be shown his wife’s tomb.

brethren made noo grete ioye, he merveilled moche / soo torked himself towarde alarde that sighed sore, & sayd to hym, ‘Broder, I awayte for to here som heavy tidynges; I trowe that that ye have tolde me is not 4 trouthe; and ye telle me not how is it of all, I shall goo fro myself / and therefore I pray you tell it me, for I wyl knowe it’ / And alarde sawe that reynawde helde hym so short, he began to wepe full tendrely, 8 and theone said vn to hym / ‘Sire, sith that it playse you that I telle you the trouthe / I shall doo soo / Wyte it that my lady, your wyff, is deceassed oute of this worlde 2 vn to god. 2 For ever sin that ye departed, she ceased 12 not her sorowe for no thynge that we cowde doo or shew 3 vn to her / And thenne she cast all her clothynge in to a fyre, & wolde never were vpon her / but a sory mauntell & a smocke ; and soo longe she wept & 16 sorrowed, day & nyght, that she dyed at last / wherof I am sory for it, for she was the goodlyest & fayrest of all the worlde.’ When reynawde vn der stode thise wordes, he swooned down to therth for grete sorow that 20 he toke at his hert of the deth of 2 the good duchesse clesre, 2 his wyfe / and whan he was come agen to hymselfe, he began to wepe, and sayd, ‘Ha, kyngge charle magne, how well maye I hate you, for by you have I 24 lost my wyff / for she is deed by cause she see that ye chassed me out of fraunce wyth soo grete shame as to make me goo a fote / beggynge my brede like a trewaut / but I know well that my sinnes ben cause of all this.’ 28 And whan reynawde had made his mone / he sayd to alarde, his broder / ‘fayr broder, I pray you come & shewe me the tombe where my wyff is begraven?’, ‘broder,’ sayd alard, ‘wyth a gode wille I shall doo 32

1 mais faiscent descript chiere . F. orig. I. viii.
2-2 omitted. F. orig.
3 Fol. I. ii. back.
4 A dont qui est fast fast les moygys ne est fast pas joyeux. Si fast si marry quil ne scanoit que faire, F. orig. I. viii. back.
soo.' And thenne he broughte him to the chirche where his gode wyfe the duchesse was buryed / And whan reynawde came there / he swowned thre tymes vpon her tombe ; and whan he was come agen to hymself / began to make grete sorow / for he rented his clothes & pulled his heres / And whan he had sorowed longe / he sayd, as a man replenysshed wyth sorowe, 8 'Ha, god, what a pilgryme I am! I byleve there is none in the worlde more vnhappy than I am. Now see I well that I have lost all my ioye & my comforte / sith that I have loste the fayreste lady of the worlde, & the goodliest / And as he was spekyng these wordes / came there his children / aymonet & yonnet, that kneled byfore theyr fader. And whan reynawd sawe theym knelinge a fore hym, he wende 16 his herte sholde have breste. Soo toke he them vp, and kyssed theym by grete love, all wepynge, and after sayd to theim, 'My fayr children, see that ye be good men / for I fere me that ye shall mysse me soone.' 20 and whan reynawd had said this to his children, he began to make more sorow than he had doon afore, & soo dide mawgis. Thenne began y° sorowe thrughe all the towne right grete, and lasted x dayes without ceasse / and whan cam to the xiii. daye / Reynawe toke his waye towards mountalban / that was almost as well peopled as it was or the werre beganne / And mawgys habandouned never reynawd whersomever he went, but he went alwayes on fote in his hermytes aray / and as they went thys to mountalban / the broderne of reynawd & his children went on fote for to bere company to mawgis their cosin. And whan they of mountalban knewe the comynge of their lorde / they were right glad of it / and made all the stretes for to

1 que onques fis dieu ne men scet ne gre ne grace. F. orig. I. viii. back.
2 Fol. I.I. iii. 3 onziesme jour, F. orig. L. i.
They are received with great joy by the inhabitants, who bring Reynawde into the Castle.

He calls his brethren, and makes a vow that he will never marry again.

Mawgis takes his departure next day.

be hanged with fair clothes; and they cam agenste hym all togyder, makyng grete ioye / and made hym grete reverence, and welcomed him honourably / and reynawde receyved theim gladly, & made theim good chere / For at that tyme he dyssymuled his sorowe that he had at his hert, bycause he sholde not discomforte his folke, that soo grete ioye made for his comynge there. And also they of mountalban welcomed mawgis 8 honourably / by cause they loved hym of olde very well. And theme they brought reynauade, makyng grete ioye, vnto the castell / and whan reynauade fouade hymselfe wythin his castell of mountalban, he was glad of it, and came to a wyndow & loked doun in to the towne / and saw that it was as well pepled as ever it was / and had merveylle of whens somoche peple was com there for to dwelle ; & he was right glad of it / for he wende never to have seen mountalban in that plught as it was byfore the werre began. After that the feest was ended, reynauade called his bredern, & said vnto theim / 'Lordes, I holde me distroyed for love of the gode duchesse / whiche I have loste, wherof I am right hevy for it, for love of the grete goodnes that I have knownen in her / I make my vowe to god, that never while I live I shall never mary agen.' 'cosin,' sayd mawgis / 'ye doo well / but I praye you recomforte yourself / for ye knowe well that a thyng that maye not be amended must be lefte alone' / 'cosin,' sayd reynawde, 'ye saye well / and I shall doo soo / Whan reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis had doun grete chere that daye at mountalban, mawgis on the morow next toke leve of his cosins, & went agen to his hermytage; and

1 et de plusieurs riches draps tant de foye que de laine, F. orig. L. i.
2-2 omitted, F. orig.
3 Et pendant ceuls de montauban demenoient grant feste merveillenement mais regnault ne pouvoir faire bonne chiere pour chose quilz scussent faire, F. orig. L. i.
4 Fol. 1.l. iii. back.
when he wolde departe / he sayd to reynaud, 'Cosin, remembre you well, that for you are dede soo many folke / for whom ye be beholden to pray god that he wylle have mercy on their soules' / and whan mawgys had sayd soo / he toke his waye, & wolde not suffre no body to conveye him; and he dyde somoche by his iourneys that he came to his hermytage / where he lived a holy 8 life; for after he was com agen to his hermytage / he ete never but herbes & rotes of the wode; and in this maner of wyse lived mawgys the space of vii. yeres, that he sawe nother man nor woman / And whan it cam to 12 the viii. yere, the good mawgis deceassed fro this worlde / aboute ester. These for his pite pardonne his soule! ¶ Here leveth the history to speke of mawgis, whom god pardonne, and tourneth to speke agen of 16 reynaud, of his bredem, and of his children, how they were made knyghtes.

CHAPTER XXV.

¶ How reynaude sent his two sones to the kyng charlemagne moche honourably / for to be made knyghtes at paris.

In this party sheweth history / that after that mawgis was retorned to his hermytage, Reynawde was ever after sory for hym & also for his wyffe. But he recomforted hymselfe aswell as he myght wyth his bredern. A longe while abode reynaude wyth his bredern, makyng as good chere as he cowde / and wyte it, that about that tyme dyed tholde duke aymon, whiche lefte grete goodes to hys children. But shortly to speke, reynaude departed & gaaff all his goodes, as well that that he had of his owne / as that was fallen bi the deth of his fader aymon, vnto his bredern, ex-

1 spade, orig. 2 Fol. I.I. iv.
cept only that he reteyned for hymself the castell & towne of mountalban / and founde the wayes that thei were all maryed noble & richely. Who that sholde speke of the bredern of reynaude & of theiyr dedes, it were to longe to be recounted. Reynawd themne dwelled longe at mountalban wyth his children / whiche he endoctryned & taughte in all good & vertuous maners aswell as he cowde, and norysshed theym tylle that 8 they were men / and cowde bere both sheeld e and spere. And vpon a daye he had theym to the feelde on horsbacke / and made to be brought there speres & sheeldes for to assaye theymself / and toke wyth hym xx. 12 knyghtes / whom, whan thei were come to the feelde / he made his children to ioust wyth / And ye ought to wyte that the two sones of reynaude iousted aswelle as thoughe they had be hauntyng the werre x. yeres & 16 more. And when reynawd saw that they dyde so wel, he called theym afore hym / and afore the knyghtes, & sayd to theim / 'My fayr children / thanked be our lorde / ye ben talle men, and well made of body / It is now tyme that ye were made knyghtes; wherfore I wyll that ye goo serve the kynge charlemagn, our soverayn lorde / whiche shall make you knyghtes. For of more noble hande ye can not be dowbed to the noble 24 ordre of knyghthode.' 'Syr,' sayd aymonet / 'we are redy to fulfylle your wylle in every thynge that ye com-
maunde vs' / 'fader,' sayd yonnet, 'ye saye well to vs / for it is tyme that we folowe the werres; but sith it is 28 your playsure to sende vs to charlemagn, we must goo there honourably / but it can not be wythout grete cost' / 'My soc,' said reynaude, 'care not for the cost / for we have good ynoughe / gramercy our lorde, for 32 to bring you there acourding to your astate; and I pro-
myse you / I shall sende you there or I be vii. nyghte

1–1 omitted, F. orig. L. ii.
elder, as honourabli as ony went thider sin my tyme’ / ‘fader,’ sayd the children / ‘we are redy to goo whan it plaise you’ / Whan reynaude had said this to his 4 children, he went home agen to mountalban well joy-full of his two sones that proved so well; and whan he was wythin his castell, he called his stiwarde & said to him / ‘Stywarde, I commaunde you that ye 8 araye my chyldren honorably & richely of dyverse maners of clothyng, 1& of thinges that longeth to theim1 / for I wyll sende theim to ye court of the kyng charlemagne, for to be made knyghtes of him / and see 12 that they goo as honestly 2 as ony went thider this xx. yeres12 / ‘My lorde,’ sayd the stiwarde / ‘I shall well doo your commaundement, sith that it plaiseth you / for ye have ymoughie clothes full riche of your owne of 16 diverse colours.’

Whan the stiwarde herde the commaundement of his mayster / wythout ony tarieng / he dyde right well alle that was commaunded him by reynaude / 20 for he made to be redy many palfreys & coursers well barded & covered wyth riche clothe of golde, wyth belles of silver & gylte in grete plente / and purveyd for two goode harneyes all complete / 1 for speres & 24 swerdes, & for all suche other thynges as aperteyneth1 for the two yonge bachelors. Shortly to speke, it was not possyble to aray better two yong squyres than the ii. yonge sones of reynaude were by the purvyauce of 28 his stiwarde / and whan all thinges were redy / he brought theym bifoire his maisters.3 And whan reynaude sawe this, he was glad, & sayd, ‘by god, 4 stywarde / I commaune you thanke / that ye have purveyd so well 32 for mi children.’ and reynawd made V.C knyghtes

1–1 omitted, F. orig.
2–2 *quil en y ala jamais point, F. orig. Z. ii. back.
3 a regnault son maistre, F. orig. Z. ii. back.
4 Fol. I.I. v.
Reynaud charges his sons to spend their money honestly, and to treat all women courteously, so shall they be praised of men.

He tells Johnnet to honour and reverence his brother as his elder.

...well redy to bere company to his sones. And whan they were all redy, reynaude caled his sones, & sayd to theym / 'my fare sones, ye be well apoynted / thanked be god, and here is a fayr bende of noble men to bere 4 you feliship / And therfore ye shall now go to the court of charlemain our grete kynge, whiche shall make you grete chere & honour for my love. my children, ye be of hie linage & right noble, and therfore beware 8 that ye doo noo thing agenst your noblenes / ne that myght retourne to ony shame to me nor to your linage / and I commaunde you vpon the feyth that ye owe to me, that the monei that I deliver to you now / 12 ye dyspende it honestly, and spare not to doo good therwyth to pour gentylymen & yonge bachelers 1 that wold fayn com to worship 1 / and whan ye have all spended it honestly / sende to me for more, and ye 16 shall have ynough ; and above this, I charge you that ye serve god alwayses afore ony thing that ye have a doo ; 2 and that ye speke no worde fowll out of your mouth to no ladi nor to damesell / worship your better, 20 & love your neyghbour, and soo shall you be praysed of every man. Moreover, I charge you that ye live frendly togyder as ii bredern ought to doo / and to you, yownet, my fayr sone / I commaunde you that ye bere 24 honour & reverence to your 3 broder / for he is your elder / that know ye well.'

Thenne sayd younet, 'fader, be you sure I shall serve my dere broder as I wold doo you / that 28 are my lorde & my 1 dere fader.' "By my feyth, fayr sone," 1sayd reynaud 1 / 'yf ye doo soo, ye shall be praysed for it, 4 whersomewer ye com or goo. But yet one thyng I forbede you / that ye speke not to moche, 32

1—1 omitted, F. orig.
2 je vous sa recommande les pouvres cretien, F. orig. Z. ii. back.
3 chier, F. orig.
4 toute vostre vie, F. orig. Z. iii.
for yf ye doo the contrary / the freushemen shall saye / that ye be not like in condycions to your parentage'1 / 'Fader,' sayd the 2children, 'we have suche a trust in our lorde god that he shall kepe vs from all thyng that is contrary to his wylle, and that we shall soo governe vs / that ye shall gladly avowe vs for your children / and all they of the court of charlemagne shall love vs, but yf they wylle do wrong' / And whan reynauде herde his children speke soo, he was right glad therof, and drewe theim aside, & sayd vnto theym / 'My fayr children, ye goo now in to fraunce / remembre well hereafter all whiche I shall telle you now / Ye must knowe that there ben in the court of the kyng charlemaine a grete linage of folke that never loved vs but litill, the whiche are of grete power / thei be of maunte / I charge you that ye nor goo nor com wyth theym / for noo thing that they can telle you / and if they hurt you by ony wyse, see that ye revenge yourself wysly, and shew theim that ye be the sones of reynauде of mount-alban' / 'Fader,' sayd the children / 'doubt not we shall not suffre that ony outerage be doo to vs, yf we maye.' 'Fayr children,' sayd reynauде / 'knele afore me' / and they kneeled anone byfore their fader; & Reynauде gaff theim his blessinge, and after kissed theym wepyng many tymes, & gaaff theym leve / and after torned him towards his knyghtes, & sayd, 'My lorde, I commende to god, & praye you that ye tende well my children / and suffre not that ony wrong be doon to theim to your power / for ye know well that we ben hatred in fraunce; and I pray you gyve theim always good counseylle / and that they be alwaies courteys, gentyll, & liberall of their goodes / for a prince covetous was never praised.' and whan reynau

'1 car jamais nous ne sermonoyent volentiers, F. orig. Z. iii.  
'2 Fol. I, I. v. b2ck.
had sayd this, he wythdrew him sore wepyng. Thus leveth thy story to speke of reynawd & of his brederi, and retorneth to shew of his children, that were goon to the court of the kyng charlemagn.

CHAPTER XXVI.

\[\text{How after that the kyng charlemagn had receyved full swetly the sones of reynawd, thei fought with the sones of folques and discomfited them in thile of our lady, s wythin paris, bycause thei had layd treison vpon reynaud their fader / for cause that he had slayn folques in the playn of valcolours /}

\[\text{Now sheweth the tale, that after that aymonet & 12 yonnet were departed fra their fader, thei rode somauche by their iourneis / that they cam to paris / and lodged theim by the paleys / And when thei were lodged / the ii children clothed theimself honestly, & i6 all their folke / and theame thei went wyth their feliship, holding each other by thandes, to the paleys / And when the barons of charlemagn sawe com the two brederi so richely arayed, & suche a goodly feliship 20 of knyghtes after theim, they merveylled gretly what thei myght be / so sayd thone to tother / 'here be two fair children, and by liklihode they shold be brederi / and they must be of som hie linage' / The 24 barons theame folowed theym / whan they mouted to the palays / And they entred wythin the grete halle, where they fouade the kyng charlemagn / that devysed with som of his barons; and there was the duke 28 maynes, richard of normandi, salamon of breten, ogier}

1 Fol. I.I. vi. 2 de montauban, F. orig. Z. iii. back. 3 Et deuez scanoir quilz ressembloient bien enfans de prince, F. orig. Z. iii. back.
of denmarke, therle ganellon / and also constans & rohars / whiche two hated reynaud of mountalban right sore, for they were the sones of foulques of morillon, that Reynaud had slayn in the playne of valcolours, when he & his bredern defended them so well at the roche mountbron / Thise ii. bredern, constans & rohars, had grete name in the courte / but 8 their hertes were full false / and the kynge charlemagn loved theim well for their prowes & grete knighte-hode / Wyth charlemagn were also many other grete pryncis & barons / wherof the boke maketh noo mencyon, 1 For it were to longe a thynge to be recounted1 / 

Thenne whan the ii bredern, 1 the sones of Reynawd of mountalban, 1 were com in to the hall / they 16 sawe the kinge among his barons. soo went they vnto hym, & kneled doun afore hym, and kyssed his fete / and theay aymonet spake first, & sayd / 'Syre, god gyve you good liff & longe / and kepe from evyll all 20 your noble company / Syre, we are com to you for to have thordre of knyghthode / 1yf it playse your gode grace to give it vs1 / for of noo better hande than is yours we can not have it; wherfore, sir, we beseche 24 you humbly for god, & for the love of our fader, that it wille plaie you to retayne vs in your servyse vnto the tyme ye gyve the sayd ordre of knyghthode? / 'Who ben you,' sayd the king, 'that speke thus?' 'sire,'1 sayd 28 aymonet1 / 'we are the sones of reynawde of mount- alban '3 / And whan the kyng charlemagne understode that they were the sones of reynawde, 4 he rose vpon his fete lightly, & receyved theim honourably, and after 32 sayd vnto theim, 'My children, ye be right welcom / and how fareth your fader?' 'sire,' sayd the children /

1--1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. I.I. vi. back. 3 a qui dieu doint bonne vie, F. orig. Z. iv. 4 de montauban, F. orig.
‘he dooth well, thanked be god / and he recomendeth him right humbly to your good grace, besechyng you that ye will have vs for recomendeth / and we have left him at mountalban / but he draweth now sore to age.’

‘Thus gothe the worlde, my children’ / sayd the kyng, ‘every man muste take in it an ende.’ Moche glad was the kyng charlemagne of the comyng of the two sones of reynawd, and right gladly he looked vpon them for the 8 love of their fader; for the more he behelde them, and the more fayrer he founde them, & better liked them, and well he loved them, bycause they were like the fader; and whan he had loked vpon them ynoughe / he sayd to his barons / ‘Lordes, if the children wold forsake their fader / they cowde not, for never children were more like to him / than they;’ and when he had sayd soo, he torned toward the children / and said to theim / ‘Fayr children, ye shal be made knyghtes at all tymes when ye wyll / for the love of your fader, my good frende / and I shall gyve you moo londes than your father hathie, and for love of you / I shall make an 20 hundred knyghtes more wyth you, for ye ben of suche a stocke come / that ye ben worthy to be honoured, praised, & holden dere’ / And thenne when the duke naymes, rowlande, & olivere that came there, & all the 24 other peres of frunce saw that they were the two sones of reynawd of mountalban, they were ryght glad of it / and thenne every man kyssed themy in grete love, and asked theym how reynaude & his brederm dyde / ‘Lordes,’ sayd aymonet, ‘what are you that be so glad of our comyng?’ / ‘children,’ sayd the duke naymes / ‘we ben all you[r] kinnesmen.’ And thenne the duke naymes tolde theim all their names / and when the 32 children knewe what they were / thei maked theymself

1 de montauban, F. orig.
2 Et cuyde quilz feront une fois bonnes gens se ilz vivent leur cage, F. orig. Z. iv.
4–4 omitted, F. orig.
byfore theim honestly; and after, younet sayd to theim / 'Lorde, our fader greteth you well, and prayeth you
that ye wylle have vs for recomended as your kynnes-
4 men.' And theone when the barons herde the two
children speke soo wysly / they were glad of it, &
also of their comynge. But the ii. sones of foulques of
moryllon were full sory & wroth for it. 'bi my soule,'
8 said constans to his broder rohars, 'the fader of thse
two children slewe our fader / wherof the hert in my
body swellethe highe for angre that I see theim here;
nor my eyen can not loke vpon theim'11 / 'broder,' sayd
12 rohars, 'nor I nother, by my trouth / but I couseyyll
not that we fyghte wyth theim not here, for it were
foly. But lete vs awayte a tyme & place covenable / 
for sith that they shall dwelle here / we shall avenge vs
16 vpon theym' / 'Broder,' sayd constans, 'lete vs doo
one thing that I shall telle you / whiche is easy for to
do, that ye shal cal thone of treyson, & I thother,
saient 2 that theyr fader slewe our fader by treyson.
20 And also we shall prove that their fader wrought
treyson agenst the kinge charlemagn' / 'Broder,' sayd
rohars / 'ye speke well: we must suffre a while tyll we
see how they shall Bere theimself in court / for & they
24 doo ony otherwyse than they ought to doo, we shall
mow kille theim, & be not blamed for it.' After this
doone / ye ought to knowe that the children of reynaude
of montalban / bare theimself full honestly in court,
28 for all y's barons loved theim dere, save oonly the two
sones of foulques of morillon, wherof aymonet & younet
perceyved it right well / and spake not wyth theim /
nor haunted theim not. It was grete merveylle of the
32 grete yeftes that 3 the sones of aymon 3 gaff to the barons
& gentylmen of the court charlemagn, as were fayr

1 Et si ne feray jamais liez jusques je naye ung occis, F. 
orig. Z. iv. back.
3-3 lez enfans de regnault, F. orig. Z. v.
horses, & harneys, & many clothes of silke of dyverse colours / and in likewyse they gaff to the ladys & gentilwymen fair gownes of clothe, of gold, & of silver. And of thother part they kept a grete astate 4 & goode hous to all pour gentylmen & esquyres / and dyde so moche good that they were gretly praysed of every man / What sholde I telle you more / the children of reynaude dyde so moche in the court of the 8 kyng charlemain, that of all the worlde they were loved / and prynicipally of the kyng charlemagn / When the kyng sawe that they behaved them soo well & so wysly in his court / he was ryght glad of it, 12 soo loved he theim moost of ony yong knyghtes of his court, and made theim his kervers afore him / And themne when the ii sones of folques sawe that the kyng loved theim so moche, they were full angry / in so moche 16 that they wexed mad all quycke for it / and soo sware by grete angre that they shold slee theim, or ever they shold slee goo from the court. It happed soo that on wytsundaye evyn, as the kyng was atte Parys, and wolde 20 1kepe open court, and there were aymonet & yonnet wyth thother barons in the hall / This hanging, aryved there a knighte of almayn, that presented to the kyng a fayr knyff, after the facyon of the londe. themne called 24 the kyng yonnet, & gaff it hym by grete love / and when yonnet had receyved this yefta of the kyng, & as he sholde have goon to his place agen, he shoved con-
stans wyth his elbow agenst his wyll; and when con-
stans sawe that yonnet had doon soo / he had grete dyspite at it / and sayd, 'what is this? must there be so moche set bi thise two boyes, the sones of a traytour/ whiche ben not worth a roten apple / and thys one is 32 all redi becom soo proude that he hath now shoved me wyth his elbow by grete envy & pryde.' moche other langage constans sayd by yonnet, whiche he

1 Fol. I.I. viii.
ought not for to saie. And when yonnet herde that constans had called him the son of a traytour / he was sore an angred. So cam he to hym, & sayd, 'constans, 4 ye have lerned a fowle crafte / that ys, that ye can speke shrewdly wythoute a cause lawfull. why for I have herde that ye have called me & my broder the sones of a traytour / and that the kyng knowethe well 8 that our fader slewe yours by treyson / wherof I wylle ye wyte that ye lie falsly / but your fader dyde assaylle our by treyson / as a traytour / come of the linage of traytours. But god wold not that my fader sholde 12 deie soo, nor myn uncles. My fader slewe your fader, it is trouth; but it was in his defendyng of his body / and he dyde them as a noble knyghte / as he is / and yf ye be soo hardly that ye wylle mayntene that he 16 dyde it by treyson / here I cast now my gage afore this noble companye / sayeng that ye have lied falsly / 1 save the reverence of the kyng, and of his felishyp.1

The ne when the kyng charlemagn sawe that none 20 of the barons sayd noo thynge of the striffe of yonnet 2and of constans / he was angry for it, & sayd / 'Constans, ye doo grete wrong for to saie that I & the twelve peres of fraunce knowe well that reynaude 24 of montalban slewe your fader by treyson. holde your peas,' sayd charlemagne. 'For yf ye knewe well how the matere is, ye sholde not speke of it / wherefore I commaunde you, in asmoche as ye fere to angre 28 me, that ye make amenedes to yonnet of that ye have sayd / or elles voide incontynent my court & my royame / for ye have troubled all my courte / wherof I am not contente.' And when rohars herde this that 32 the kyng charlemagn had sayd to constance his broder / he was angry, and soo rose on his fete and sayd, 'Sire, I am redi for to prove vpon aymonet that his fader slew our fader by treyson, and here is my gage' /

1-1 omitted, F. orig. 2 Fol. I.I. viii. back.
CHARL. ROM. XI. 2 N

Johnnet advances towards Constant, and tells him he lies in calling his father a traitor; he throws down his gage before the assembly.

Charlemagne rebukes Constant for his accusation against Reynawde, and commands him to apologize to Johnnet for his words.

Robert rises and throws down his gage, stating his willingness to fight Aymonet.
'Rohars,' sayd Charlemagne, 'here ye take a wronge waye, and it shall be to you over late whan ye shall repente it.' whan aymonet & yonnet vnderstode thys wordes / they kneled afore charlemagn, & sayd to him 'Sir, for god we pray you right humbly that ye take the gages that rohars hath cast / for wyth goddys grace we shall well defende our fader of the treyson / that they put vpon him.' 'Children,' sayd the kyng / sith it playse you that I take theim / I shall doo soo / and thenne the kyng charlemagn toke the gages / and constans avauued hymself & sayd / 'Sire, we vnderstande that we shall fyght two & two, thone 12 agenst thother.' ¶ whan the kyng charlemayn had taken the gages of bataylle of constans & of rohars, he asked them who shold be their seurtes? theme lepte forth the traytour guenellon, berenger, escouff of morillon, lion of pignabell, and gryfon of haute braunehe / the whiche sayd vnto kyng charlemagn, 'Syre, we wyll be suretes for constans & rohars, for they be of our linage?' 'Lordes,' sayd charlemagu, 'I take theim you 20 to kepe; And I charge you to brynge theym agayn to the 3 court whan tyme shall be.' 'Syre,' sayd the suretees, 'we shall doo as ye commaunde vs.' and whan the kyng had receyved the suretees of constans & of rohars / aymonet & yonnet came forth / and sayd in this manere / 'Syre, here ben our gages, how that we will defende that our fader slew never fouques of moryllon by treyson.' 'Children,' sayd the kyng charlemain, 'ye speke well / but I must have surete of you, as I have of ye other party / yf I wyll doo reyson' / Thenne lepte forth rowland, oliver, the duke naymes of bavyre, ogier of denmarke, richarde of nor-mandy, & escouff the sone of oedon, whiche sayd to y'

1 Constans, F. orig. Z, vi.  
2 Si ne leur devons faillir. F. orig. Z, vi.  
3 Fol. K.K. i.  
4 ef, orig.
kyng / 'Syre, we ben suretees for the sones of reynaude / and we shall present theym to you at the daye of bataille' / 'Sire,'¹ sayd the kyng charlemagn, 'it ⁴ playseth me well; but the children of reynaude ben not yet knyghtes as ye knowe, but by the feyth that I owe to god, they shall be to morowe,² and themne we shall sende our lettres to reynawd, that he come for to see the bataylle of his children / for this daye fourthy dayes I devyse it.' Whan came at theyn, the kyng charlemain made be called his stywarde, & sayd to hym / 'Goo, and brynge me to morowe the sones of reynaude / for I wylle that they ben tomorrow named knyghtes / and that they ben well honourde / for I wylle doo this for the love of their fader; and pourn-vey soo that thei have ech of theim a good courser,³ and gode harneis ⁴ mete for their bodyes⁵ / Whan the stywarde herde the commandement of the kyng charlemagn / he dyde well the tenour therof / and whan the mornyng came/ the stywarde brought aymonet & yonnet well apoynted / and in there company all suche other as the kyngge ⁴ for their love ⁴ wolde make knyghtes⁶ that daye / And whan they were afore the kyng, aymonet & yonnet requyred thorde of knyghthode / to whome the kyng gaff it wyth good hert, and in like wyse to the other for love of theim; and themne was a grete feest made that daye / And whan the feest was / finysshed / charlemagn toke a messager / whiche he sente to reynawd of montalban, and sent him worde that he sholde come to the court wyth gode company / for his children were called of treyson / by the sones of foulques of morillon, sayeng, that he had slayen their

¹ Seigneurs, F. orig. Z. vi. back.
² de ma main, F. orig. Z. vi. back.
³ ou parlefroy, F. orig. Z. vi. back. ⁴-⁴ omitted, F. orig.
⁵ Lesquelz il auoit fait veiller celle nuyt en legilse de nostre dame, F. orig. Z. vi. back.
⁶ Fol. K.K. i. back.
fader by treyson / and how his children had caste their
gages, sayeng that they had lied falsly.¹

The ne whe the deke reynawd² herde thiese tidinges
that charlemayne sente hym, he merveyllod of it ⁴
sore. The ne sent he for all his bredern by his letters
that they sholde com to him in armes, for it was nede /
And whan the bredern of reynaude vnderstode thiese
tydynges / wythout ony tarieng they came to ³their ⁸
broder at⁸ mountalban / And whan reynaude sawe
theym, he was glad / and kyssed theym, thone after the
other / and after, he tolde theym all that the kyng
charlemagn had gyve him to knowe; and whan the ¹²
bredern of reynaude vnderstode it / they merveyllod of
it. ‘Broder,’ said richarde, ‘doubte not / for the mater
shall come better than ye wene of / by the grace of
god / I counseylle that we goo to the court of the kyng ₁⁶
charlemagn. For whan we shall be there, we shall
soone vnderstonde the kynges mynde, and what his
wylle is towarde you; and I promyse you yf he hath
doon ony wrong to our nevewe, ²³your children³ / god ₂⁰
never have mercy on my soule / but I shall slee hym /
what happe therof.’ ‘Broder,’ sayd reynawde, ‘I wylle
well that we goo to parys ; and whan we shall be there /
we shall well vnderstonde how the kyng charlemagn ²⁴
bereth hymself towarde my chyldren.’ ‘Brother,’ sayd
alarde / ‘ye speke wel & wesly / and me semeth after
myn advyse that we ought to goo thider wythout ony
long taryenge.’ And the ne whe they were therto ²⁸
acorded, ⁴they departed from mountalban wyth right a
noble company / and so moche they rode by their journ-
neis that they cam to the cite of parys. And whan thei
were comen there, all the xii. peres of france knewe ³²

¹ Comment gens traictres extraitz de traictres par droite
ligne, F. orig. Z. vi. back.
² de montauban, F. orig. Z. vii. ³–⁵ omitted, F. orig.
⁴ Fol. K K. ii.
anone of their comynge, and went agenst theim / and brought wyth theym aymonet & yomnet, and receyved reynawd & his bredern wyth grete ioye & honour / 4 And thenne when reynawd saw his two fayr sones, he sayd to theim in this wyse / 'My children, now shall it be seen yf ye be my sones or noo; for and ye be my children / ye shall avenge me of that grete shame 8 that thise traytoures put vpon me wythout a cause.' 'Fader,' sayd the children, 'doubte not therof / for & they were ten agenst vs / yet shall we overcom theim 12 that ye be as true a knyghte as ony is in the world.' / And whan the kyng charlemagn knewe the comyng of reynawd, that was come so well acompanyed, he was glad of it / and sent worde to reynawd that he shold com to hym, the whyche thynge reynawd dide / And when the kyng saw hym, he made him good chere, and with good hert / and also to his bredern / And whan reynawd had be with the kyng a longe while, he toke 20 leve of hym, & went to his lodges agen / And when he was there, he called his bredern & his chyldren, & sayd to theim / 'My sones, come hider / telle me how the kyng charlemain bereth hymselfe towaerde you, and 24 what he sayeth of this quarell that ye have under-take / I must knowe the trouthe of it' / 'Fader,' said the children, 'wite it that the king charlemagn loveth vs moche / and he entreteyneth vs above all other 28 honourabli / for the love of you that he loveth right moche, as he sayeth.' And thezane thei tolde him how he had made theim knyghtes2 / and how he susteyned their quarell agenst the traytours and all other. 32 When reynawde and his bredern herde the chil-dren speke thus / thei were glad of it / for

---

1—1 omitted. F. orig.
2 moult honnorablement, F. orig. Z. vii. back.
3 Fol. K.K. ii. back.
they doubted lest charlemagn wolde have faren yll wyth theym / And whan reynaude of mountalban wyst that the\(^1\) kyng had borne himself soo well towarde his sones, he sayd that he sholde serve hym evermore 4 as his soverayn lorde / And on the morowe\(^2\) reynawde went to see the kyng at his risynge from his bed, & thanked hym moche of the grete worship that he had doon to his children. Thenne sayd Charlemagn to 8 hym, 'Reynawde, ever sin that I sawe that ye dyde my commanagement with good wylle, and that ye were obeyeng to me / I dyde cast all my angre from me, & all the evyll wylle that I had agenste you / 12 and I wylle that ye wyte that I am well yours, and shall be aslonge as I live in this worlde, for I take 3 you for one of my best frendes\(^3\) / And whan Reynawde herde the debona'rite 4 & the kynde wordes of the kyng,\(^4\) 16 he cast hymself to the fete of hym / and in likewyse dyde all his bredern, and thanked hym moche / and wyte that reynaude & his bredern abode in paris wyth grete ioye \(^5\) & playsure \(^5\) vnto the daye of the bataylle 20 that shold be of his children / And this hangyng, reynawde had doon make good harneys for his children, and had pourveyed two goode horses for theym /

When the daye of the bataylle was come, the 24 children of fouldres of moryllon cam & presented theim afore the kyng redy for to fyllghete. And whan the kyng sawe theym / he sayd to theym / 'Children, ye have had evyll causeylle \(^6\) to callenge the 28 sones of reynawd of mountalban as ye have doon.\(^6\) For I am sure it shall repente you / but thys is not the fyrste rawte that your linage hathe doon / nor it shalle not be the laste / I fere me of it.' And whan ther'e 32

\(^1\) grant, F. orig.  \(^2\) au matin, F. orig. Z. vii. back.
\(^3\) pour mon amy, F. orig. Z. vii. back.
\(^4\) de Charlemaigne, F. orig. Z. vii. back.
\(^5\) omitted, F. orig.
\(^6\) de faire ung si fort appel, F. orig. Z. viii.
ganellon and all they of the lineage of foulques of
morillon herde the kyng speke soo, they were so
gretely abasshed / that they wyste not what they
sholde doo / but kepte all theyr peas, and answere
doow ordre. And thenne sayd constans to the kyng, 'Syre, we praye you for god that ye wylle telle vs the
place where we shall fyghte agenste our enmyes.'

8 Thenne stode vp the duke naymes of bavyre / and
sayd / 'Syre, constans speketh well ; ye must devyse
the place, and where they shall fyghte two agenst
two / or one agenst a nother alone.' 'Naymes,' sayd

12 the kyng / 'I wylle that ye ludge this matere /
'sire,' syth that it playse you soo / I shall bespeke
it wyth a goode wylle. 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes
'me semeth / because that constans hathe callid the

16 sones of reynaude to batayll bothe for one matere
that they oughte to fyghte two agenst two / and all
foure togyder.' 'Syre,' sayd reynawde / 'the duke
naymes sayth ryght well' / 'By my feythe, reynaude,'
sayd the kyng charlemagne / 'and I graunte it soo /
but I wylle that the bataylle be made in the Isle of
our lady wythin savoyne, to morowe in the mornynge.'

And when kyng charlemagne had sayd thus / the

24 barons toke leve of hym / and eche of theym wente to
their lodgys, and reynawd also, the whiche toke his
two sones wyth hym. and the two sones of foulques
of moryllon wente also wyth theyr frendes.

When reynaude & his bredern had souped / and had made
gode chere / he made brynge harneys ynoghe, and
made alarde & rycharde / and his two chyldren,

1 Fol. K.K. iii.
2 et comment nous devons faire est assauoir se nous com-
battrons deux contre deux ou ung contre ung, F. orig. Z. viii.
3—5 que lon doit faire, F. orig. Z. viii.
4 dist le due naymes, F. orig. 5—5 omitted, F. orig.
6—6 traictres sans riens nommer et rohars lautre, F. orig.
Z. viii. 7 et juge leaulment, F. orig. Z. viii.
8 et parens, F. orig.


aymonet & yonnet,¹ to be armed. And thenne he made to be shewed to aymonet & to yonnet how they shold defende themselfe of theyr enmyes, and in what maner they shold assaylle theym / And whan ⁴ this was doon / reynaudye dyde sende his chyldeyn to saynte vyctor, and the traytours went to saynt germayn, ² for to watche ³ that nyghte.² And whan the daye came, a bysshop, that was of the linage of constans & of ⁸ rohars, sange masse afoir his cosyns ; and the bysshop turpyn sayd masse a fore the sones of reynawd⁴ / whiche was wyth theym at saynte vj^ / and also the twelve peres of fraunce / And whan the yong knightes ¹² had herde the masse, they came all in their harneys to the palays before the kyngge charlemagn / And whan the kyngge sawe theym / he called his neveewe rowlande, & oliver, the duke kaynes of bavere, & richarde ¹⁶ of normandy, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, ye ben all my men. I commaunde you vpon the trouth that ye owe to me, that ye goo kepe the feeldé by suche maner that my honoure be saved bi it, and that ye ²⁰ kepe to every man his ryght / For by the feith that I owe to god / yf there be ony man soo hardy that wylle doo ony owtrage / I shall angre hym ryght sore / Wherfore I wylle that ye passe the water of sayne ²⁴ in to the yse wyth the fyghters, and that ye bere wyth you the halowes for to make theym swere ther-vpon, afoir they shall entre in to the feeldé / that they goo to it all in goode quarelle fruly.' 'Syre,' sayd the ²⁸ barons / 'we shall doo your communaudemente, and also we shall kepe therin well your honour / for we ben bounde therto.' 'Lordes,' sayd the kyng charlemagn, 'ye speke well,⁵ but ye muste take gode hede ³² well to all / For there shall be grete folke gadred of

the one parte / and of the other / wherfore I fere me that some medlyngue shall hap amonoge theym / For rohars is full of grete treyson, and all his frendes, I know it well. And of the other parte / Reynawd & his brethern are right puyssaunt & wyse / and have grete power wyth theym, and they wylle not see theymselfe wronged. and namely, Richard the broder 8 of reynawd / For & he be ones angry / he spareth 1 nother kynge nor erle. And therfore I fere hym moost of all the other, for he wolde ones have slayn me / I am yet wel remembred therof / Of reynaude I 12 doubte noo thyng / for he is in every thyng resonable.'2 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes, 'be not dismayed of noo thyng, for we shal wel kepe your ryght & your honoure wythoute to doo3 ony wronge to 16 ony body' / This hangynge, the children of foulques of moryllon went to the sayd isle / where as the kynge charlemagne had tolde theym that they sholde fyghte / And when they were passed over the ryver in to the 20 ysle wyth their horses, they bounde theym / and thenne they set theymselfe down vpon the fayr grasse / waytynge after their adverse party. Now here what the traytours had ordeyned / Ye oughte to wyte that 24 while the kynge charlemagne had spoken wyth his barons 4 as ye have herde,4 Berenger, arlocke, & gryffein of haute brauzechye dyde put theymself in a busshe / nyghe by the sayd isle of our lady / and had proposed 28 that yf the sones of reynawde had the beter of the feeld avenst the two other sones of moryllon / that thenne they sholde yssue oute vpon theym wyth a ryght grete nombre of folke, for to see theym sham-32 fully.

When thenne reynawde sawe that it was tyme that his sones sholde goo to the isle for to

1 Fol. K.K. iv. 2 et bien amesure, F. orig. Z. viii. back. 3 dooe, orig. 4-4 omitted, F. orig.
accomplisshe theyr bataylle / he called aymonet, and sayd to hym / 'Come hyder, fayr sone. ye be the eldest/ and therfore ye oughte to be honoured a fore the young brother. holde, I gyve you flamberde, my goode swerde / 4 by the whiche ye shall take vengaunce of thyse traytours / For ye ben in the right/ and they in the wronge.' 'Fader;' sayd aymonet, 'ye may be in a surete that ye shall see thys daye suche a thynge that 8 shall be to your hertes ioye, for we shall bryng the traytours to thyshamfull dethe/ 2 and it plaise god' 2 / And whan Reynau'de herde his sone soo valiauntly spoke, he was glad / and kissed hym / and thenne he gaff hym 12 his benedictory/ and in lyke wyse to yoonet. And whan he had don this, he broughte his brethern & his children to ye isle of our lady. And whan they were over, he & his breder were agen toward the kyng / 16 But as they wolde have goon / there came a messager that ascryed to reynau'd as lowde as he mighte / 'Reynau'de, haue mercy on thy children / For yf thou see not well to thym they be lost / Wyte that gryff'en of 20 haute braunche is embussshed wyth a grete nombre of folke by the isle for to slee thy chyldren' / And whan reinaudr vnderstode thise wordes, he blustred rede in his face all for angre / and said / 'Ha, swete franuce / 24 that it is grete dommage that ye maye never be wythout traytours' / And whan he had sayd this / he called his brother richarde / and said to hym, 'Fair broder, goo wywithout taryeng / and arme yourself / and doo 28 arme all our folke, and thenne bryngye them to the isle, and yf the false traytour gryff'en of hautbraunche come for to greve my children, see hym incontynent. and whan ye be there, doo that ye may be seen of 32 bothe partyes / And for god kepe well, yf the sones of foulques of moryllon have the better, that ye helpe not

1 Fol. K.K. iv. back.  2-2 omitted, F. orig.
in noo wyse my children, but let me theim deye yf it come soo. For it were grete dyshonour for us yf ye dyde otherwise' / 'Broder,' sayd rycharde / 'lete me alone therof / our worship shall be saved by the grace of god. For I wolde not helpe if it came soo, for all the goode of the worlde / For all our live dayes we sholde be rebuked for it, and all our linage also' / And 8 whan rychard had sayd soo / he departed fro his brethren / and went & armed hym & all his folke / and thenne thei lighted on horsbacke, and went anone there as reynaude had sayd. This hangynge, went 12 reynaude to the kynges in his paleys / and when the kynge sawe him / he sayd to him, 'Reynawd, ye be right welcom.' 'Syre,' sayd reynaude / 'god encrease your honour' / And when charlemagn saw not rycharde 16 wyth his brethren, he toke some susspeyton of him, & sayd to reynaude, 'Where is your broder richarde, that he is not here wyth thother?' / 'Sire,' sayd reynaude, 'he is goon there as I have sent hym, but take noo 20 susspeyton at all for hym' / 'nomore I doo not,' sayd Charlemagne, 'as longe as ye be alive; but we must goo vpon the towre of sayne for to see the bataylle of your children' / 'lete vs goo there, sire,' sayd reynaude, 24 'whan it playse you' / Thonuc went they vpon the towre, and wyth theym the bysshop turpyn, salamon of breteyne, ogier the dane, guydellon of bavere, & many other barons. 28 T
Thus as the kynges charlemagn was goon vpon the towre for to see the bataylle / he loked, & sawe come the broder of reynaud / and a grete company of men armed / and whan charlemain sawe hym he knewe 32 hym well / for he bare his owne cote of armes. and richarde had doon soo, for bi cause he sholde be knowen / And whan charlemagne sawe this / he was

1 Fol. K.K. v. 2 a paris, F. orig. M. i. back. 3 ricliart, F. orig. M. ii.
all abashed of it / and thenne he called reynawde, & sayd to hym, 'What wylle ye doo, reynawde? wille ye dishonour me? have ye forgotten all redi your trough?' 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'nay, save your reverens / but I 4 wylle serve you & worship you as my soverayn lord' / 'whi,' said the kyng charlemagn, 'is rycharde goon in to the isle of our lady wyth soo grete felishyp for to breke the feelde? of the whiche thynge / I shall 8 be dyshonoured' / 'Syre,' sayd reynawd, 'have noo doubte therof / for I take god to surete & waraunt that knoweth alle 1thynges / that rycharde shall doe no thynge that shall torne to your dishonour me to noo 12 dommage to you / and I shall telle you why my broder rycharde hath put himself in armes. ye must wyte that the traitour gryffen of haute braunche is embussshed vnder saynt marcell in a garden, with a grete nombre of 16 folke armed / that wyll breke your felde for to slee my children / And therfore hathe my broder rychard armed him for to socour theym yf nede be / and yf ye see that rycharde doe ony thynge agenst your wylle & com- 20 maundement / here I am that vpon me take the veng- aunce' / 'Is it trough,' sayd charlemagn, 'that gryffen hathe doon soo as ye saye' / 'ye,' sayd reynawd, 'verely / for I wolde not telle you otherwyse' / Ryghte angry 24 was charlemagne whan he herde that reynawde had tolde hym / Thenne he swere god, & all his sayntes / that yf he myght take gryffen of haut braunche / that he shold make him to be hanged, and all his folke wyth 28 him. He called thenne salamon & the ecle of poytees, & guydellon of bavyere, & said to theym, 'Lordes, make me anone a thousande knyghtes to be armed / For I wylle goo in to the isle for to see the pryde of 32 thise traytours. And I swere you by saynte James, yf I maye, they shall doe me noo more dyshonoure; and yf I can fynde theym / they shall abye it full derely' / 1 Fol. K.K. v. back.
'Syr,' sayd reynaude, 'ye speke like a kynge.' The barons thenne dyde that the kyng charlemagn had sente in to the isle, saw rycharde wyth his folke in armes / And whan rowlande sawe that they were armed / he was not well contente wyth it, and sayd to the other barons that were come wyth hym for to kepe the feelde, 'What wyll ye rycharde doo / blame have the kynge yf he take not vengaunce uppon reynaude of that they have doon agenst his commaundement.' 'by my feyth,' sayd oliver & the duke naymes, 'ye saye well' / Thenne sayd ogyer / 'lordes, I promyse that Eeynawd knoweth noo thyng of that richarde dooth / Thus as the peres of frawne were spekyng of that richarde was come to the feelde in armes, Gryffen yssued out of his busshement wyth his folke, by cause he was a ferde that richarde wold greve the children of foulques of morillon. And whan rowlande saw him / he cried to hym with a hye voys, 'By god, traytour, this shall not avaylle you, for afore that ony stroke be gyven of theym, they shall make theyr othe / and ye shall abye full derely that ye have doon.' Right sory was rowland when he sawe the fowle treyson that gryffen wolde have broughte abowte / This hangyng, cam there charlemagn wyth a grete company of folke well armed, and whan he sawe rowland, he sayd to hym, 'Nevewe, why doo ye suffre the outrage that the sones of foulques of morillon wolde doo to the children of reynawd of mountalan / I blamed reynawd / by cause his broder had armed him, but I knowe now well

1 or avez vous bien dist. Passes vous mesmes en lisle et qui fera outre vosstre commande ment qu'il soit puy guy a la rigueur tellement que ung chescun y preigne exemple. Lors les gens du roy sen alerent sus lisle ainsi que le roy lanoit commande la ou ilz trouvrent richart qui sestoi mis en tel lieu que chescun le pouvoir bien voir, F. orig. M. ii.
2 richart qui estoit en armes, F. orig. M. ii.
3 sur ma foy, F. orig. M. ii. back.
4 Fol. K.K. vi.
5--5 omitted, F. orig.
that they had reyon.'  'Sir,' sayd roulande, 'none can beware of traytours' / 'nevew,' sayd charlemagn, 'ye saye trouth / but by the seyth that I owe to god, I shall make them all to be hanged in dyspyte of all theyr 4 linage, oonly for the treyon that they have doon this daye' / 'by god, sire,' sayd rowlande, 'ye shall doo well.' And thenne cam there reynawd vpon a palfrei wythout swerde; and whan rouland sawe hym / he sayd 8 to hym, 'Sir reynaude, is it your wille that richarde your broder is come hither in armes' / 'sire rowlande,' sayd reynaude / 'ye verely / For noo thynges that I have doon shall not be hyd from you. Ye have now seen 12 the treyon that the traytours wolde have wrougthe agenst my children / And therfore whan I knewe theyr falshode / I commaunde my brother Rycharde that he sholde put hymselfe shortly in armes wyth my men, 16 for to socour theim if the traytoures came them vpon. And yf ye thinke that Rycharde or I have doo amys in ony thynges, soo lete the kyng make iustycye of it' / 'By my soule,' sayd rowlande, 'nother you nor your 20 broder be not to be blamed / but ye have doon as good knyghtes sholde doo / And I promyse you that your emyys shall be this daye broughte to shame & confusion' / 24

W

hen Rycharde of mountalban sawe charlemagne / he knewe well that he was come for to kepe the feelde, and that the traytours sholde not come doo ony thinge to his nevews / Soo sayd he to his folke, 28 'lete vs take of our harmes, For sith that the kyng is here hymselfe, we nede not to wayte here noo more' / Thenne wenete rycharde & his folke, and dysarmed theym / and whan rycharde had doon soo / he 32 lighted agen vpon his horse / and came agen over the ryver of sayne, swymmyng vnto the forsayd ilse.2

1 Fol. K.K. vi. back.
2 la quelle chose vist charlemaigne, F. orig. M. iii.
and when he was on londe, he spored his horse / and made hym to lepe thre or four lepes afore the company / and thenne he cam streyghte afore the kyng, and made to hym reverens honourably / Whan the kyng sawe richarde / he sayd to hym / 'and ye, richarde, wylle ye dishonoure me / that are come in armes for to breke my feelde?’ ‘Syre,’ sayd rycharde, ‘save your grace, for I never thoughte it / but wyte it well for certeyn, that ye fylle the traytours of Maunt / ye shall ones repente it / I am well apayed that ye / [&] your twelve peres have seen the treyson of griffen of hautbraumche, how he wold have slayn myn nevews’ / ‘Ha, bi god,’ sayd charlemagne, ‘ye saye trouth, he is well worthy to be blamed. and I telle you they that shall be over. come shall be hanged / nor shall not be saved for none of theyr linage’ / ‘Sire,’ sayd rycharde, ‘it playseth me well, but I telle you that ye should deye / I should never suffre my nevews to be wronged’ / ‘By my hede,’ sayd the kyng / ‘ye shal see that I shall do reyson to every party / For I shall bryng theym togyder / lete god helpe the ryght!’ Thenne whan charlemagne had sayd soo / he wente to the two chyldren of foulques of moryllon / and sayd to theym / ‘Now, lordes, hyghe you of that ye have to doo / goo and swere vpon the halowes, that instyly ye entre in this quarell’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd they, ‘we shall doo it wyth ryght good wylle / for the children of reynawde ben deed, but ye that they confesse / that their fader slew our fader by treyson.’ Thenne spake the bysshop turpyn, and sayd / ‘lordes, come hither / and swere

vpon the halowes / and see to that ye forswere not yourself / For he that forswereth hymselfe shall be overthrownen⁴ / noo doubteth therof'' / when the bysshop turplyn had sayd this, the two sones of foulques of 4 moryllon kneeled doun afores thalowes / and sware that reynawde of mountalban had slayn theyr fader by treyson / and after they had made theyr oth, they kyssed the halowes / and offred two besans of golde / 8 and thenne wente & lighted vp on their horses. And thus as they lighted / they were to nye eche other, soo that thone hurted the other soo harde that thei felle doun almoost bothe to the erthe. And when reynawde 12 sawe this, he sayd to thother barons, 'here is an evyll token; I byleve that they ben forsworne.' Thys hangyng, came the chyldren of reynaude, that kneled afores the halowes, & sware that the two sones of 16 foulques had lied falsely all that they had sayed / And thenne they putte theyr handes vpon the halowes / and offred a ryche gyfte. And the bysshop turpyn gaaff them the benedyctyon / and in like wyse the 20 kynge charlemain / and all the other barons / and thenne of reynawde / and of his brethren / And after they wente & mounted vpon their horses lightly.

When the foure chamypions were vpon theyr 24 horses, they made none other taryeng / but gaaff the spores to their horses, and raine the one agenste thother, & smote eche other in their sheeldes so sore that the speres flew in peces wythout that ony 28 of theym felle to the grounde. And when they had broken theyr speres, they set hande to theyr swerdes / Thenne aymonet, that helde flamberde in his hande, sayd to younet his brother / 'I praye you, brother / thynke to doo well / For yf ye helpe me, they shall be vitterly shamed & dyscomfyted, as traytours as they

chap. xxvi.] of the battle between the four champions. 561

ben' / 'broder,' sayd younet, 'doubte not / for I shall never faylle you to the dethe; and also we oughte to recomforte vs / for we ben in the right / and they ben in the wronge' / when the two brethern had spoke ynoynghe, they went bothe atones vpon theyr enmyes / wyth theyr swerdes in their handes. And thenne aymonet overtoke constans wyth flamberde his swerde / and gaaff hym suche a stroke that the swerde slide vpon the vyser / and kut it and his nose a sondre. And when aymonet sawe the nose of his enmye falle to the erthe, he mocked hym, and sayd, 'by god, constans / it is worse wyth you than it was afoyre, for ye shall never be wythout a mocke for that, that this stroke hath doon to you / Flamberde that slewe your fadre / and soo shall it doo you, & it playse god.' And when rohars sawe that his brother was so sore wounded, he ranne vpon younet / and gaaff hym soo myghty a stroke vpon his helme / soo that yf it had not be of goode stele, he had slayne hym wythoute faylle / this hangyng, aymonet ranne agayne vpon constans / and gaaff hym suche a stroke vpon his helme / that he made hym to bowe his backe vpon the sadle / and for the grete myghte of the stroke the horse muste nedes falle doun vpon his knees / and smote his mussell in to the erth / and when the horse felte that stroke, he rose lightely vp agen all afrayed / and began to reyne thruhe the medowes magre of his mayster, as madde, nor constans had not the myghte to rule hym / by cause he was amased & astonyed of that stroke / that he had recyved / and thenne aymonet & younet wente both vpon rohars, and beganne to fare fowle wyth hym. And when rohars sawe hymself soo sharply handled / he began to crye wyth a hie voys, 'broder! where be you? shall ye lete me thus to be slayn falsly?' constans, that

1 fol. k.k. viii

charl. rom. xi. 2 0
5G2

THE FOUR SONS OF AYMOM. [CHAP. XXVI.

ranne thorough the medowe, was comen agen to hymself, and apeased his horse a lityll, herde his broder crye / Soo came he agayn to hym / and smote aymonet vpon his helme a grete stroke ; but the helme was 4 goode, and dommaged hym not / And whan constans sawe that he had not slayne aymonet wyth his stroke / he wende to have goon oute of his wytte; and of the other parte, he sawe the place that was all covered 8 wyth the blode of his broder / soo wyst not constans what to doo / For aymonet gaaffe hym soo moche to doo.

Thys hangyng, yonnet toke rohars by the helme, and 12 wolde have strangled hym bi fyne force / But whan constans saw that / he spored his horse wyth the spores, and shoved hym bytwene rohars & yonnet, soo that it was force to yonnet to lete goo his prise, wolde 16 he or noo / And whan aymonet sawe that constans had delivered rohars from the handes of yonnet / he wente, and ranne vpon constans, 1 and smote him wyth flamberde vpon his sheelde soo harde that he made of it 20 two peces / Shortly to speke / the children of reynawde hasted somoche the ii. sones of foulques of morillon that thei began to lese place, and were soo wery / that they asked none other / but to rest theimself / But 24 aymonet & yonnet had none other wylle but for to fight styl / and I telle you for certein, that they were all iii. soo sore wounded that they loste moche blode, for thei had foughit longe 2 / and whan constans had soiourned 28 a lityll / he cam vpon aymonet, & gaffe him suche a stroke, 3 soo that he made him a grete wounade / but no deed wounade. And whan aymonet saw hym so wounded he gaff constans soo grete a stroke vpon the ere, that he 32 bare it awaye wyth all the iawe bone / whan charle-

1 Fol. K.K. viii. back.
2 sans culx repouser ne les ungs ne les aultres. F. orig. M. iv. back.
main saw that grete stroke, he myght not forbere / but he sayd / 'By god, now is he worse arayed thanne he was byfore / for the two sones of foulques of morillon 4 ben shamed & confuse.' 'Syre,' said reynaud, 'thei have well deserved it / for thei have forsworne theymself falsly.' This hangyng, yonnet went vpon Rohars / and gaff him so grete a stroke vpoii his lielme, that he brake it, and made his swerde to entre in his hede a fynger depe / Wyte it that the bataille lasted longe thone agenst the other. and it happen that by force of fightynge / thone agenste the other / they were fight-yng two & two togyder, well a bowe shot from eche other / and soo made they two bataylles. For aymonet fought agenst constans, and yonnet faughte agenst rohars, whiche was sore greved, for yonnet had brought 16 him to therthe / and whan yonnet sawe that he had brought doun rohars / he said that it were shame to fighte with hym on horsbacke agenst hym on fote, soo lighted he doun for to fyght wyth rohars / But whan 20 he had habandouned his horse / Incontynent, the sayd horse ra?aie to the horse of rohars, 2 and wold have strangled hym / and whan charlemagn saw that, he began to lawghe wyth it, & sayd / 'By my feyth, we have 24 iii. bataylles; but I see well that yonnet hath broughte rohars soo lowe that he maye noo more.' 3 Whan rohars sawe that he myght nomore endure the grete strokes of yonnet / he began to crye, & sayd, 'Ha, fayr broder constans / where are ye that ye com not & helpe me that are soo good a knyght, and that toke first the quarell in hande / wherof it goth full evyl wyth vs. For yf ye socour me not now, I shall deye incontynent' / 32 and whan constans herde his broder crye thus / he left aymonet / and went toward yonnet / for to helpe his

1 lelme. orig.  2 Fol. L.L. i.  3 mais va en reculant, car il ne peult plus souffrir les grans coups que yonnet luy dorne, F. orig. M. v.
broder / but wyte it well that he went not very sounde from aymonet / for he had made him moo than xx. wounded / and when constans was com to his broder, incontinent, he ranne vpon yonnet with his horse. And when aymonet sawe that / he began to crye after constans, & sayd / 'By my soule, he baptysed you full yll that named you constans. For I sawe never more cowarde than ye be that so renowneth awaye for fere of me' / and when he had sayd soo / he ranne after for to socour his broder yonnet. And when he was come there / he went a fresshe vpon constans / and constans vpon him / the whiche gaff him a grete stroke vpon his 12 helme, but the stroke slide vpon the horse, & slewe hym wyth all! And when aymonet sawe hym a grounde / he righted hym quye[k]ly, & smote constans vpon his helme, & it was soo harde that flamberde cowde not 16 entre in it, and y stroke slide vpon the viser / and brest it, and a grete parte of his visage, soo that the teeth were seen playnly, and wyth that felle the stroke vpon the horse nekke / soo that he kut it in two / and 20 soo felle thorse deed to the erth /

Sore abashed was constans 2 when he sawe his horse slayn, 2 and thame aymonet sayd to him / 'By god, false 3 traytour, now shalt you deye / ye dide yll 24 when ye called ever my fader of treyson, whiche is as true a knyghte as is ony in all the world / but now is the daye come that ye shall aby it full dere.' And when reynaude herde his sone speke thus / he was right 28 glad of it, and thanked god therof hertly / and when aymonet sawe constans vpon his fete agen, he went him vpon / and hasted him right sore with grete strokes, so that constans had no power to strike one stroke more / 32 but he wente abacke here & there for to eschewe the

1—1 et constans cheust a terre mout felonneusement mais incontinent se releva au mieulx quil peust, F. orig. M. v. 2—2 omitted, F. orig. 3 Fol. L.L. i. back.
The battle continues fiercely. And when Aymonet saw that, he wiste no more what to doo, he cast his sheeld to therthe, and toke Aymonet by the wast for to wrastle wyth hym. And when Aymonet sawe this he was not aferde of it, for he was strong & lighte / soo toke he constans by the helme, and drewe it towarde hym wyth suche myght / that he pulled it from the hede of him.

8 And when constans sawe hym so sore handled / he cried vpon his broder Rohars, & sayd, 'ha, broder, socour me, for I have noo power for to defende myself' / Whan Rohars herde his broder calle thus / he was full sory that he niyght not help hym, for he had loste soo moche blode that he myght not well stande on his fete, but always he forced hymself somoche / that he came vnto his broder constans / and wende for to have smyten Aymonet from behynde, but he dyde not, by cause Aymonet sawe hym come, and went & smote hym suche a stroke / that he feilde hym to the erthe / And theame went agen vpon constans / and gaaff hym suche a stroke / that he smote almoste his lefte arme of. Theame began constans to cry, & sayd / 'ha, fayr broder, socour me, or elles I am deed' / 'Broder,' sayd Rohars, 'I can gyve you nother socours nor helpe, for I am myself nere goon' / And when Charlemagn sawe this, he sayd, 'by god, now are deed the sones of foulques of moryllon by theyr false wyt.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogier, 'ye oughte not to recke / for they mayntened a false quarell.' 'ye saye trouth,' sayd Charlemagn. 'Now their falshode apereth well.' Whan Reynauade saw that his chyldren were to their above, he was right gladde of it / but soo was not Ganellon / for he was soo angry for it, that he became as blacke as a moure. Theame called the said Ganellon, Berenger, Hardocke, Henry of Lion, & Pygnabell

1 parmy les espaulles . . F. orig. M. v. back.
3 Fol. L.L. ii.
of moryllon, & sayd to theym, 'Lorde, now be we all dishonoured / for the sones of foulques of moryllon are dyscomfyted. I wolde fayn socour theym yt I durste / but I fere to sore the kyng that is there wyth grete 4 puyssance' / 'Syre,' sayd hardres or hardocke / 'woo is me for it / but we can not doo none other thynge as for this tyme, therfore we must refreyne our wrath, and shewe a good face / to thende that noo medling 8 falle not vpon vs / and let vs abyde tyll tyme come / that we may avenge vs herof.'

This hangyng, aymonet sawe that he had smyten constans a deed wounde / soo was he right glad 12 of it. 'By god, broder, ye have doon yll that ye have slaine this false traitour / for I wold have slaine hym myn owne handes; but sith ye have brought it soo ferre, make an ende of hym atones, & I shall goo 16 slee rohars' / 'Broder,' sayd aymonet, 'ye speke well, now goo slee thone & I the other, for thus oughte men to do wyth traytours' / Theynne raune the two brodern vpon theyr enmyes that yeve on grounde / that is to 20 wyte, vpon constans, to whom he sayd all on hie, by cause all they that loked vpon sholde here it / 'Telle me, constans, false traytoure / why dyde ye calle my fader of treyson, wythstandyng that men know well that he 24 is one of the trueste knyghtes of the worlde / And that he slewe your fader in his body defandyng / where as your fader had purchased for to have slayn hym by treyson. ¹Now telle me your fals-shode, and confess 28 your treyson afore the kyng / ²or elles I shall now cut your throtes' / 'Aymonet,' sayd constans, 'for god have mercy on me / For I yelde me to you' / and thenne he toke hym his sverde / And whan aymonet had 32 the sverde of the sayd constans / he toke hym vp and broughte hym afore the kyng charlemagn, to whom

¹ Fol. L.L. ii. back.
²-² ou autrement vous estes mort, F. orig. M. vi.
he sayd, 'Syre, holde this traytoure, & doo wyth hym as reyson requyreth' / and whan charlemagn sawe this, he was glad of it, & sayd to aymonet, 'Frende, ye have doon wel your devour, I can no more aske of you / and wyte it that whan thother is vayneqysshed / I shall gare theym bothe to be hanged.' 'Syre,' sayd aymonet / 'doo your wylly wyth theim' / And whan he had sayd soo, he went agen to his broder yonnet for to helpe hym, holdynge his swerde in his hande & all suocne wyth the blode of constans, & said to rohars / 'By god, false traytoure, ye shal deye here anone' / and whan yonnet saw that his brother wolde nedes helpe agenste his wylle, he sayd vnto hym, 'Fayr broder, I make myn a vowe to god / yf ye touche rohars I shall never love you' / 'broder,' sayd aymonet, 'ye saye not well, but I shall forbere me sith it playse you soo / but I promyse you, yf I see you in dangeour, I shall helpe you yf ye sholde slee me' / 'Broder,' sayd yonnet, 'I wylle well.' And thenne aymonet wyth-drew him a lityll a backe, and thenne ranne yonnet vpyn rohars / that rose vp agen for to defende hym-selfe / thenne gaaffe yonnet to hym soo grete a stroke vpyn the sholder / that the arme wyth the sholder bone felle clene of to the grounde, and his swerde wythall. whan yonnet had gyven that stroke / he put his swerde agen to the sheath, & said to rohars, 'Thou false traytoure, thou must now confesse wyth thy owne mouth that reynawd my fader is noo tratour / but he is one

1-1 omitted, F. orig.  
2 Fol. L.L. iii.  
3 traytoure, orig.  
4 tratour, orig.
of the truest knyghtes of the worlde, and yf you wylte not doo soo / then shalte deye incontynten' / and whan he had sayd soo, he toke rohars by the helme & pulled him to hymware so harde that he drew it fro his hede, and began to smyte hym with the pomell of his swerde vpon the bare hed. And whan rohars sawe that he was soo shrewdely handled / he began to crye, & sayd / 'good lorde, have mercy on my soule, for I know well that it is doon wyth my body.' And whan constans herde his broder saye soo / he began to wepe, for he cowde none other doo / and whan yonnet / saw that rohars wolde not forsake that he had said / nor wolde not crye him mercy, he smote hym wyth his owne swerde soo harde that he toke awaye thone legge from the body of hym, and thenne he put his fote vpon hym and sayd, 'Now anone, false traytour, confesse your falshode / or elles ye be now deed,' to the whyche thynge rohars answernde not; and whan yonnet sawe that / he smote hym the hede of / Whan aymoneyt sawe that his broder yonnet had sleyn rohars / he was glad of it / and went to hym and sayd, 'Broder, ye have doon valiawtly / lorde gramercy, that ye have sailyn soo this traytour' / the two bredern toke eche other by the hande & went to charlemagne, to whom aymoneyt sayd in this wyse, 'Syre, like it you that we have doon / for we be redy for to doo moche more for you yf ye commannde us.' 'Fayr sones,' sayd charlemagne / 'ye nede not to doo more, For ye have doon ynough / for constans is overcome / and rohars deed / Now goo reste yourselve / and see that ye have goode leches for your woundes / And I promise you that I shall doo wyth the traytours as it perteyneth.' And the Empero charlemagne commaunded that constans shold behanged / and the body of his broder by him / and

1 de monti grans coupes, F. orig. M. vi. back.
2 godde, orig.
3 Fol. L.L. iii. back.
when the kyng had gyven this commandement, constans was anone taken, & the body of his broder, and were drawn at horses taylles before all their linage / and themne were hanged as they had well deserved. when they were hanged, charlemagne sayd, 'Lorde, wyte that I wold not for a grete thyng that it went otherwyse.' wyte it that when ganellon sawe hange the 8 ii. sones of folques, that were his nevews / he was sore angrerd for it, that he almost had lost his wit / Themne called he hardres, berenger, & malger, that wistique more falshode than lucyfer, henry of lion, pynabell, & 12 gefray, men that never dyde good, & sayd to them, 'Lorde, ye see how charlemagn hath doon to vs grete dyshonour, for he hath doon hange our kynsmen shamfully / but we shall see yet the day that this shame 16 shall be avenged.' he sayd trouth, the traytour, For he betrayed afterwarde the xii peres of fraunce / and made them all deye at the bataylle of rouncevals. 

After thise thynges above sayd, reynaude of mount-20 alban sawe that his children had vaynquessed the children of foulques / he was right glad of it, & thanked moche our lord god therof / themne he & his brethern went to them and asked how they dyde / 24 'fader,' sayd the children, 'we do right wel, lorde gramercy' / Themne alarde & guycharde behelde their wounded, wherof they were glad / This hangyng, cam there charlemagn; & the children cam him agenst, and kneled afore hym. themne charlemagn asked them, 'children, how is it wyth you? be ye sore wounded?' / 'Syr,' sayd the children, 'it is well with vs, thanked be our lorde & you / we shall soone be hole' / Themne 32 the kyng sent for all his leches, & sayd to them that they sholde loke the wounded of aymonet & of yonnet, the whiche thinge they dyde without ony tarieng / and after they sayd to the kyng that they made noo doubt

1 Fol. L.L. iv.
of them, & that they shold be soon hole. And after that the justice was doon of the sones of foulques of moryllon, Reynawde abode in paris till his children were hole / and whan thei were hole, they wente to ye 4 palays to see the kyng charlemagn, the whiche made them good chere, and gaff them many fayr yeftes, as ben castelles & fortresses of grete name. Thenne reynaude & his bredern asked leve of the kyng / and 8 he gaff it theym agenst his wylle, and prayed them that they wold come see hym agen / 'sire,' sayd reynawde / 'we shall doo gladly your commaundement' / Whan reinaud had taken leve of the king, & also his 12 bredern & children, they toke on their waye towards montalban / and they dyde so moche by their iourneis that they cam to bourdeus / And whan reynaund had rest him a lityll, he called his children afore his bredern, 16 & said to theim / 'my children / here what I wylle saye to you / I ordeyn at this tyme that younet shall have arden for his part, & aymonet montalban / for it is not long agoo sin I herde saye that god sayd / that 20 the tree that bereth fruyt shall never deye. wyte it that I have offended god gretly / and me semeth that the tyme is now com that I sholde amende myself, for I fere sore my pour soule / wherfore I shall doo my 24 devour for to yelde it agen to that blessed lorde that made it after hys ymage.' and whan his bredern herde speke thys, they knewe well what he wolde doo / and therfore they began to make grete sorow / And whan 28 reynaud sawe that, he sayd to theym, 'forsothe, sires, ye are not wyse to make suche sorowe, for ye know not yet what I wylle doo / see ye not that I am yet wyth you, wherof are ye abasshed / be not ye ryche ynoough / 32 there is nother of you / but may kepe a thousand 2 horses in his stable / Of the other parte, though he I am now hole of my body / thanked be our lorde / yet

1 dordonne, F. orig. 2 Fol. L.I. iv. back.
wylle I gyve in my life to my children their parte / 
to the ende that they fall not in discorde after my 
dethe; and therfore I wylle that eche of you know
4 fromhens forthon what he shall have.' And when
reynawde had thus ordeyned for his children / yonnet
departed from his fader wyth his blessinge / and wente
to arleyn,² where they of the londe receyved him to be
8 their lorde, & made to him fewt & homage / And after
that yonnet was gon, reinawd & his breddren wyth
aymonet went to montalban / and when they of
montalban sawe their lorde / they were right glad, &
12 receyved him honourably. And when the feste was
passed, Reynawd commanded all his subgettes that
thei sholde make their homage vnto his sone aymonet / 
and when al this was doon, and that nyghte was come / 
16 every man went to bed / And thenne reynawde entred
his chambr & walked in it tyll it was mydnyght
passed. thenne reynaude vnclereth hymself all naked / 
and toke a cote of sory russet vpon his flesshe wythout
20 ony shert, and therupon a grete mantell of the same.
And thus arayed, barefote, and wythout ony wepyn, but
oonly a staaf in his hande for to defende him from the
dogges, yssued out of his chambr / and went oute of
24 yᵉ paleis / and came to the gate of the towne / and
made it to be opened / and when the porter sawe his
lorde soo yll, & in soo pourly araye and barefote, he
sayd to him / 'Syre, alas, whether goo ye thus wyth-
28 outhe felislyp, and soo yll apoynted? I wylle goo
awake your brethrem, & my lorde your sone / for ye
be in grete dangeour of theves, by cause ye have
nother armour nor wepyn for to defende yourself.'
32 'frend.e,' sayd reynaude, 'lete alone / goo not there /
For my truste is in god, that he shall kepe me from
all dangeour. But thou shalt telle my ³breddren whan

¹—¹ omitted. F. orig. M. viii.
and charges him to tell his people on the morrow that he has gone from them for ever, to do penance for the safety of his soul; he gives the porter a ring, and departs on his way. The porter grieves sorely for his master.

thou seest theym to morrow, that I grete them well / & to my sone also / and that they thinke alwayes to do well / and that they love eche other as they oughte for to doo; and soo telle theym that thei shalle never see me more as I trowe, For I goo to save my soule, yf god gyve me the grace to doo soo; and soo shall I deye when it playse god / For throught my cause are deed many a man, wherof I fele my pour soule greved sore, 8 and therfore wyll I bere peyn on my body / for it doyng penauunce all the remnaunt of my life / and yf I may save my soule, I aske none other thyng' / And whan reynaude had sayd this, he loked on his fynger, 12 & toke a ryng wyth a precyous stone, whiche was well worth v.1 marke, and gaff it to the porter, & sayd to hym, 'My frende, ye be well rewarded of your servyse that ye have doon to me.' 'Syre,' sayd the 16 porter, 'gramercy of this yefte / but alas, sir, ye put now all your countree in grete sorowe for your depart-yege!'2 and thence he began to wepe right sore. This hangyng, went reynaude on his waye, thus arayed as ye 20 have herde; and as he wente / the porter loked ever-more after hym by the lighte aslonge as he myght see hym; and whan he myght nomore see hym / he felle down in a swoune to the erthe, and was thus a longe 24 while / And whan he was come agen to hymselfe, he made grete mone / and sin sayd / 'Ha, god, whether gooth now my lorde soo pourly arayed' / and after he had made grete sorow a longe while / he shet the gate 28 agen, and went in to his house / And whan he was there, he loked vpon the rynge that reynaude had gyven hym, and knewe well that it was a ryche yefte / wherof he was glad. ¶ We shall leve here to speke a lityll 32 of the valianzt reynaude of mountalban, that gooth for

1 cent. F. orig.
2 or nous est grant mal advenu car nous sommes du hault ou bas, F. orig. M. viii. back.
to save his soule, and to doo penance for his simnes thurgh the wodes lokynge downwarde / and we shall speke of 1 his brederne / and of his sone aymonet /

CHAPTER XXVII.

4 ¶ How after that reynaud was goon from montalban 2 never for to retorne, 3 his brederne & his sone aymonet made grete sorow / where they knew of it / that he had not take leve of theym. 4

Now sheweth thystory / that whan the morowe came, & that aymonet & his vnles were vp, thei went to ye chirche / wenyng to haue reynaud there as they were wouante. And whan they save him not come to matynes, they merveyled sore, and there was com his chapeleyn for to saye matynes there wyth hym / the whiche, when he founde not his mayster in the chirche / he was al abasshed, & spered after him to his brederne. 'Syre,' said alard / 'I wene he be seke, for god lete vs goo see how he dooth,' and theane they went to seke him in his chambre, where they founde hym not / wherof they wende all to have ben dysperate / 'Lorde,' sayd alarde, 'now be we lost / for here ben his gownes, his shertes, his shone, his swerde, & all his armours; now is he goon fro vs / I see it well, in pour araye: god be wyth hym!' And as they were thus makyng their mone / cam in the porter that made grete sorowe for the love of his mayster reynawd / And when he was come in to the chambre, he began to creie as he had be from hymselfe, & sayd, 'Fayr lordes, 5

---

1 Fol. L.L. v. back.
3 apres ce quil eust departiz ses bien a ses enfans . . . F. orig. M. viii. back.
4-4 quant ils seurent quil estoit party, F. orig. M. viii. back.
what shall we do sith that we have lost our lorde? For he is goon his wayes wulwarde & barefote, wyth a sory staff in his hande / and he sendeth you gretyng by me, and prayeth you for god, that ye ever ye loved him / that ye wyll worshipp eche other, & that everi man have his part as he hath devysed it / And he dooth you to wyte that ye shall never see hym, for he is goon to save his soule / and soo hathe he gyven me the 8 rynge of his fynger, that ye maye see here'/

\[ W \]

\(^1\) Whan alarde, guycharde, & richarde, and aymonet hende thyse tydynges / they toke soo grete sorowe at hert that they felle doun in a swoone to 12 the erthe. And whan they were come agen to theymselfe / they beganne to make a right grete sorowe, and so merveuillouse, that he that had seen it / his hert had be full harde / but he sholde have wepte for pyte. 16 'Alas,' sayd alarde, 'my fayr brother reynawde / ye have lefte vs in moche grete sorowe. Certes it had be moche better for vs that ye had sleyne vs all / than for to have lefte vs in this wise / For fromhens forthe we 20 be noo thynge.' and whan he had sayd soo / he felle agen in a swoone. And whan he was com agen to himself, he pulled his heres of his berde, & scratched his visage\(^2\) / 'Alas, my broder!' sayd richarde, 'how shall we now live wythout you / Alas! now have we lost him bi whom we have had so grete honour in this worlde. alas, my broder! ther is not your leke under the cote of heven, that ever bare swerde, sheeld, or 28 spere / sith that we have lost you, we maye saye, farewell the ioye of this world.' / And whan he had said soo, his hert swelled so that he lost his speche, so that he cowde not speke a good while after. Of 32 aymonet & of guycharde / what shall we saye / I promyse you, none can telle ne reherse half of the sorow that they made / so that it was grete pyte to

\(^1\) Fol. L.L. vi. \(^2\) moult ydeusement, F. orig. N. i.
beholde. Grete sorow was made of all four for the love of reynawd, that was goon as ye have herde / praynge our lorde to be wyth him, & to recomforte his brederne.

4 But presently leveth the [h]istory to speke of alarde, guycharde, rycharde, & aymonet that were at mountalban / makyng their mone / and retorneth to speke of reynaude, that was goon at his adventure / sekying his 8 brede for to save his soule.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

1 How reynawde went to coleyn vpon the ryne, where he founde that men edefyed the chirche of saynte peter. And there toke hym a wylle for to serve there the masons for the love of oure lorde / and dyde so / but at the last thother laborers had so grete envy by cause he dide better his devour than thei, & that he was better loved than they of the maisters, for the good servyse that he dyde / that they slew him, & put hym in a sacke, & casted him in the water of ryne. But bi the wylle of god / his body apered above the water, makyng grete myracles / soo that he was named a saynte that day that he was buried.

In this party sheweth this history, that whan reynawd was departed from montalban / he toke his way

1 Comment apres ce que regnault fust party de montauban pour son aume sauvier, il ala a colongne .. F. orig. N. i. back.
2 Fol. L.L. vi. back.
3 guerissant de toutes maladies .. F. orig. N. i. back.
and wanders through the woods, eating nothing but wild fruit.

He arrives at a religious house, where he is given food by the monks;

he journeys to Cologne, where the church of St. Peter is being built;

through the wodes, and went a long while that he ate but apples & medlers wylde all that daye. and when the nyghte was com, he layd him down vnder a tree / and as he wold slepe, he made the signe of the crosse vpon him / and recomended to our lorde, & slept till it was daye. and when the daye appered, reynaude rose vp & went on his waye thrugh the wode / and went evermore thrugh the travers of the wodes wylde all that daye. and whan the nyghte was com, he layd him down vnder a tree / and as he wold slepe, he made the signe of the crosse vpon him / and recomended to our lorde, & slept till it was daye. and whan the daye cam, he went on his waye / and dyde somoche day by daye that he cam to coleyn vpon the ryn / And whan Reynawde was come to the cyte / he founde the chirche of saynte peter a makyng / where were many masons & many laborers, that served theim. And whan he sawe this / he went in to it, and kneled before the hie auter / and made his prayers by grete devocyon / And as he was thus knelinge full besely aboute his orisons / It came sodenly in to his mynde that he wold abyde there and serve the masons for thonour of god & of saynt peter / And whan he had made his praier, he rose, & began to loke the place well, & vpon the werkmen that wrought there / and sayd to hymself, that it was better to serve the masons than to walke styll in the forest amonge the wylde bestes. And whan reynawde had bethought hym well, he went to the mayster mason, & sayd to hym / 'Maister, I am a stranger, & have noo goodes of the worlde / wherof I may live / yf it playse you

1 de plusieurs sortes, F. orig. N. ii. 2 omitted, F. orig. 3 a nostre seigneur, F. orig. N. ii. 4 Fol. L.L. vii. 5 au mostier de nostre seigneur, F. orig. N. ii.
CHAP. XXVIII.] HOW REYNAWDE ARRIVES AT COLOGNE.

I shall serve the masons of suche thynges as theim nedeth for their werke as a pour laborer nedeth / And whan the mayster mason here de reynawd spoke soo, and saw he was a tall man & wel made / he answarde to him swetly in this wyse / 'my frende, ye seme not to be yssued of a pour hous / for ye are more like a kyng than a mason 1or laborer, 2 wherfore I 8 dare not put you in werke by noo wyse, notwythstandyng that ye be thus pourly arayd' / 'Mayster,' sayd reynaude, 'care not therfore, for & it playse you / I shall serve you truly after my power' / 'My 12 frende,' sayd the mayster of the werke, 'sith it playse you to doo soo / it plaiseth me ri[g]ht well / but I wyll not reteyn you for that pryse that I do knaves, for I shall paye you in conscyence after the werke that 16 ye shall doo' / 'mayster,' sayd reynaude, 'I am wel content.' Themne the mayster mason said to hym, 'my frende, goo helpe thise four that ye see there, that may not bere the stone / for thei be but 20 truauntes' / 'mayster,' sayd reynaude, 'be not angri wyth the pour folke, for I wyll goo fetche it to you anone' / 'frende,' said the maister, 'peyn not yourselfe therto, for it is not in your puissauence wythoute ye 24 had more helpe than thilke knaves, For the stone is of grete weyght' / 'mayster, 2lete me alone,' sayd reynaude, 'I shall brynge it to you.' 2 and whan reynaude had said soo / he cast his mantell fro him & cam to 28 the iiiii men that helde 3 the stone, & sayd to theym / 'Lordes, & playse you / goo fet another stone, & I shall bere the same.' 'frende,' sayd the four men, 'ye saye well yf ye can / and we wylle lete you doo 32 wyth a goode wylle' / Themne reynawd toke vp the stone, & charged it vpoun his necke / and bare it vpoun

1—1 omitted, F. orig. N. ii.
2—2 vous aurez la pierre incontinent sans ayez daultruz que de moy si dieu plait et tous les sains, F. orig. N. ii. back.
3 Fol. L.L. vii. back.

CHARL. ROM. XI. 2 P
the walle where it sholde be set / and whan thother laborers saw that, they were abassshed, & merveylled gretly of it / and began to saye thone to thother, 'here is wonder! fro whens may this devylle becom / we shall never winne but lityll aslonge as he is wyth vs here.' And whan the mayster masons sawe reynaude bere soo grete a stone & soo hevy / he was glad of it ; and whan reynaude had brought the stone there as it sholde be set, the mayster sayd to hym, 'frende, put not doun the stone yet from you' / 'Syr,' sayd reynawde, 'I shall well holde it in my armes as longe as ye wyll.'

and brings it to the master mason, who is astonished at his wonderful strength.

Reynawde fetches stones and mortar, doing more work than x. men could have done.

whan the mayster made the place redy there as the stone shold be set. and whan he was redy / he sayd to reynaude, 'lete goo the stone, my frende, whan ye wyll / and blessed be god & thour that ever ye were borne.' and whan reynaude had set doun the stone, the mayster commaundad hym that he shold fette him morter / 'wyth a good wille,' sayd reynaude. Thenne came reynaude doun, & laded of the morter more than x. other men sholde have doon / and bare it to the mayster mason, & sayd to hym / 'Mayster, care not for noo thing / for I shall serve you well of all thyng that ye nede, by the grace of god. and see that ye werke as fast as ye can / for I shall bryng you more stones & morter myself alone than ye shall comne occupy, but ye haste you well' / and whan the mayster mason herde reynaude speke thus / he was merveylled, & sayd / 'By my soule, frende, yf ye doo half that ye say, ye shall doo ynoughe.' thenne went reynaude agen, & brought vp so many stones that he made wyth it a grete hepe upon the walles, for to occupye at ones all the masons that were there / and thenne reynawd sayd to theim / 'Fayr maysters, thynke to werke well / for whan thise stones ben layd

1-1 devant les maistres... F. orig. N. iii.  
2 Fol. L.L. viii.
CHAP. XXVIII.] HOW REYNAWDE WORKS AS A LABOURER.

& this morter occupied, I shall brynge you more,' 
And when the masons herde hym speke soo / thei 
began to saye amonget theym that the chirche of 
4 saynte peter had founde a goode laborer / and that he 
oughte to be well rewarded. 'By my feyth, mayster,' 
sayd reynawde, 'I care not for noo money' / and 
whan came at evyn that the laborers sholde leve 
8 werke & receyve their money, the mayster mason 
set hym doun for to paye the laborers, whiche toke 
v.\(^1\) penys a daye. thenne the mayster called reynawde, 
& sayd to hym / 'Com hider, my fayr frende, take here 
12 what it playse you / for ye have served better than ony 
of thother' / thenne [Reynawde] put hymselfe forthe / 
and toke a peny, sore agenst his wylle / And when the 
mayster sawe that, he sayd to hym / 'by the body of 
16 god, my fayr frende, ye shall have xx more / for elles 
my consencey sholde becharged wyth your labour; 
& yf ye wylle werke, ye shal every daye have 
somoche / for there was never soo good a laborer as ye 
20 be one.' 'Mayster,' sayd reynawde, 'yf ye wylle 
that I shall werke ony more / gyve me but one peny / 
whiche shal be for to bye brede for to susteyne wythall 
my body / for this that I doo / I doo it for the love 
24 of god, & for none other.' frende,' sayd the mayster, 
'I wylle not trouble you nomore; doo as ye wylle' / 
Thenne toke reynawde leve of the mayster mason, and 
went to the towne for to get hymself a lodgynge, & 
28 boughte a peny worthe of brede. and soo had he nomore 
to his souper but brede & a lityll water. And when he 
had eten / he went & leyed him upon a lityll strawe 
3 for to take his rest that nyght.\(^2\) and when the day was 
32 com, reynawde rose vp & wente to his werke, & founde 
no body there / and thenne he wente to the chirche, & 
sayd his prayers afore an ymage of our lady. \(^3\)This

\(^1\) viii. F. orig. \(^2\) omitted, F. orig. \(^3\) Fol. L.L. viii. back.
THE FOUR SONS OF AYMON. [CHAP. XXVIII.

hangying, the masons cam for to goo to their werke; and whan they were vpon the walle / they asked yf the stronge man were not come. 'Mayster,' an-
swerde reynaude, 'I am here; wylle ye ony thing?' 4 'frende,' sayd them the mayster mason / 'brynge vs stones & mortar.' 'sire,' sayd reynawde / 'I shall wyth a good wille, & that anone' / Theyne fet he stones & morter in grete plente / and brought it vp 8 vn to them1 / and I promyse you that reynawd laded more atones than xv. other dyde / And thus served reinawde the masons in the chirche of saynt peter at coleyn many dayes; and every daye at evyn he toke 12 his peny of the mayster, & nomore, for to bye hym brede with, as ye have herde / for he ete never but bred, & dranke water / Thus lived Reynawde there a longe while, servyng there the masons, as it is sayd, for 16 the love of god & of saynte peter / and dyde so truly his devour, that thother labourers had grete envy at hym, for they were all set at nought for the love of hym of the masons / for the grete servyse that he 20 dyde to them / Sore an angred were thother laborers whan they sawe that they were all thus forsaken & all set aside, & sayd to eche other in this wyse / 'By god, we ben dyffamed bi thys grete knave, that doth 24 someche labour / and therfore we be put a side of the maysters. the grete devyll broughte hym well here, for we shall never gete noo thyng aslonge as he is here, for he serveth all the masons alone of al that 28 thei nede for to have, and thus we ben left alone.' theyne sayd one of theim / 'My felawes, yf ye wylle byleve me / we shall slee him.' 'How saye ye that,' sayd a nother / 'ye wote well it is impossible 32 to vs to doo soo, for he is horryble stronge / and if we set vpon hym, he shall kylle vs all.' 'frende,' said he, 'I shall tell you how we shall doo soo / See you

1–1 omitted, F. orig.
yonder vawte by the grete hous?' 'ye,' said theother / 'wyte it that that grete knave goth & slepeth there every nyghte when we are goon home / And therfore, 4 yf ye wylle byleve me / we shall goo this nyght there where he is a slepe / and we shall take eche of vs a pykeaxe, or elles an hamer / and therwith we shall dasshe the brayn out of his hede / and when we have 8 thus slayn hym / we shall put hym in a grete sacke, & shall cast him wythin the ryver / 2 that is there nyghe / and thus shall be nomore herde of hym '/ and when theother laborers herde this traitour spoke, thei 12 accorded all to his counseylle / and they dyde as they were purposed soner than they wende thei sholde have do / For at noone, whan the masons left werke & went to their dyner, the poure reynawd went & rested 16 hymself vnder the vawt, where he was withe to rest hymself every nyghte. And when the traytours saw that, they cam to him that first had spoken the treyson, & take him a grete hamer of a mason in 20 his hande; 2 and they spyyed that reynawd was fallen a slepe. this traitour wyth the hamer went to reynawde softly, 2 & smote hym wyth the hamer well depe in to the brayn / And when Reynawd felte the stroke that 24 the traytour had gyven hym / he set his armes in maner of a crosse bypon his brest, & said in this maner / 'O, good lord Ihesu criste, have mercy on my soule / and wyll pardonne theim that have broughte 28 me to my dethe / and whan he had sayd thise wordes / the soule departed oute of the body. And when the traytours had thus slayn reynawd, they put him in to a grete sacke, that they had ordelyned 32 therfore / and thenne they laded the carte wherein they brought the stones wyth the body of hym, and soo caryed hym to the ryver of ryne, wherein they cast hym. And when they had doon soo / they laded the

1 Fol. M.M. i.  2-2 omitted, F. orig.
carte wyth stones, & brought theym to the chirche werke as thei were wonte to doo / and as thei were by the way / thei met the mayster mason / that said 1 to theym / 'By my feyth, galantes, I conne you now 4 thanke, for ye mende yourselfe, For ye have doon grete dyligence sith dyner / that ye have laden soo many stones / and that ye ben soo ferre wyth theym to the werke warde' / 'Mayster,' sayd the traytours / 8 'mocke not wyth vs soo; but goo to your purse & gyve vs som drynkynge money' /

Sore merveyllled was the mayster, of that he sawe his laborers more dyligent than they were acustomed / 12 themne the laborers began to say to the mayster of the werke / bi maner of a mocke / 'where is that grete lorden, that he helpeth not now / I holde hym goon wythout leve, by cause he myght not labour noe lenger / 16 For we herde saye / that he shold neuer ceasse tyll he had founade hys wyfe agen.' And when the maister mason herde that / he was sory, & sayd to theym agen, 'By my feyth, I byleve that ye have chassed hym 20 awaye; but I promyse you yf I can wyte that ye have doon soo / It were better for you that ye were at Iherusalem' / 'Mayster,' sayd the laborers, 'ye maye well saye to vs what ye wille / but we dyde neuer saye 24 oughte to hym that sholde dysplayse hym' / and when the noble reynaude was thus caste in to the river of ryne by the laborers of the chirche of saynt peter, ye must wite that he wente not to the botome of the 28 water / but wente harde above the water alonge the streme. And at that [hour] our lorde shewed for him a fayr myracle. For all the fysshe of the ryver gadred theym abowte the corps / and by the grete strenghte of 32 the fysshes it was taried, 2 and went noo ferder with the 2 streme / by the wille of our lorde / And the grete fysshes put theymselfe vnder hym, and bare hym vpon

1 Fol. M.M. i. back. 2-2 omitted, F. orig.
the water, soo that he apere to every mannis syghte / 
And there the fysshes bare him soo vp vnto nyghte.
And whan the nyghte was come / apere abowte the 
4 corps a grete quantyte of torches by the vertue of our lorde / and angelles that song there so melodyously, that they that herde it wolde never have goon fro it.
And to saye trouthe / there was soo grete lighte abowte 
8 the corps / that all they that saw it, wende that all the water of the ryne had be a fyre / and whan the folke of the cyte saw soo grete a myracle they ranne all thyther / bothe men & wynen & children / And also the arch.
12 byshop of saynte peter wente thyther wyth all his colage in a fayr processyon / syngyng by grete devocyon / and taryed vpon the ryne /for they durste not goo noo ferther / and they sawe the fysshes that bare vp the corps above 
16 the water. And whan they that were there sawe that / they were abasshed / and merveyled gretyly what it myghte be, and beganne to saye the one to the other / 'God! what may he be, for whom our lorde sheweth so 
20 fayr a myracle?' / 'Lorde,' sayd the archebyshop / 'I shall telle you as myn avyse gvyeth me / Wyte it that it is the body of some saynte that our lorde wylle have worshypped, that is come here from somewhere / whiche 
24 god wylle not that he be loste / nor drowned in the water / See ye not how the fysshes holde hym above the water / by the vertue of our lorde? / Thenne the byshop commaundaed that men sholde goo see what it 
28 was, and anone folke wente there wyth botes, and they fouade that it was the grete man that was one of the labourers wyth the masons in the chirche of saynte peter / And whan the mayster of the werke saw this, he 
32 was gretyly abasshed / and went to theim that had slayn him, and sayd to theym, 'Ye hoursons, false traytours! ye have slayn the good man / saye ye the troth / for yf ye denye it, I shall prove it vpon you' / And whan the 

1 Fol. M.M. ii. 2-2 omitted, F. orig.
The labourers herde the mayster mason speke thus / they began al to crye, and said, 'By god, mayster / we have doon it withoute doubte / for envye that we had atte hym. And therfore 1 lete vs be drowned, hanged, or drawen, or 4 what instyse ye wylle / For we have well deserved to be punysshed' / And whan the archebysshop herde the traytours soo speke, he began to wepe tendrely, and all colage also. And the archebysshop was counseyllled that 8 he sholde lete goo the murderers at theyr adventure for to doo penance of their sinnes, the whiche thynge the archebysshop dyde wyth a goode wylle. Themne was the body of reynawde broughte to londe, and was put 12 upon a carte for to bere hym to the chirche / whereas he was had worshipfully with fair processyon. And whan the corps was in the chirche, the archebysshop made hym redy for to syngle the masse by grete devo-16 cyon. And whan the servyce was doon, the archebysshop wolde have goon a processyon wyth the corps aboute the chirche, and commaundad four lorde that were there that they sholde bere the corps / And themne 20 the barons wolde have don his commaundement / but whan they cam therto / they coude not move the corps / by noo strengthe that they coude put therto. Sore merveilled were the barons whan they saw that, and sayd 24 to 2 eche other / 'Now may we well knowe that we be not worthy to touche thys holy corps. For we be wycked synners / wherfore lete vs go to shryve, and put ourselfe in good astate' / And while they spake thus 28 togyder / 3 the corps rose vp of hymselfe / and was borne / noo man knoweth how, oute of the chirche in to the carte whiche anone moved / and wente his waye streyghte oute of the cyte, wherof they were all gretyl 32 merveilled. 3 and when the carte was oute of coley, he

---

1 Fol. M.M. ii. back.  
2 till, orig.  
3—3 le charret se partist tout seul par laid de nostre seigneur nondaultre et se mist a cheminer moult fort au devant de tout
went a pas all the hie waye. And whan the peple sawe
that / they began all to wepe by cause the corps wolle
not abyde / Thenne sayd the archbysshop to theym /
4 'Syres, now may ye well see that this is a holy corps,
by the grete myracles that god sheweth by hym¹ now /
and all this daye a fore vs all / wherfore lete vs goo
after hym for to worshyp hym / For it were not well
8 doon for to lete hym goo thus alone' / 'My lorde,' sayd
the peple / 'ye saye well' / and theynne all the clerge &
all the comen peple, lityll & grete, that myghte goo,
folowed the corps.² And ye oughte to wyte, that in all
12 the cyte of colen abode nother man nor woman / but
went wyth the corps, and all the clerge folowed after,
singyng in grete devoeyon. Soo moche wente the carte
that he came to a lityll townye that is called croyne, and
16 there he abode styll. And ye must wyte that our lord
dye shewe there many fayr myracles for the love of the
holy body / For all sike peple, of what sikenes it was,
that cam there for to worshyp the holy body / were
20 hole incontynent / This happed of the noble knyghte
Reynawde of mountalban / as ye have herde. And ye
ought to wyte that the renomme of the holy body was
soo spred all aboute, that folke cam to croyne, where it
24 abode,³ from ferre ways for to seke hym / and he made
there so fayr myracles / that of all the royame,⁴ & of all
almayn, folke drew theder. And so moche were worthe
the offrynges / that were doon there wythin a short
28 while / that of a litil chapell there as the body rested /
whiche was of our lady, is now a royall chirche & a grete.

le peuple. Quant le clerge vist ce ils commencerent a plouer
tendrement apres le charret qui sen aloit ainsi que ony avez.
Vous denez scavoir que quant le charret se mist a chemin
qu'il passa devant la tombe la ou lon le voloit enterrer, mais il
passa tout outre que lon ne le peult arrester et sortie hors de la
cite de coulongne, F. orig. N. v.
¹ Fol. M.M. iii. ² saint.
³ pour la volente de dien, F. orig. N. v. back.
And when the holy body was abyden in this lityll chapell, as it is sayd, where god made continuelly myracles / tharchebysshop of coleyn & all the clerge cam\(^1\) to the corps, and vncovered his visage, that every 4 body sholde see hym / that cam there, yf haply that ony man or woman myghte knowe hym for to have his name / for none cowde name him, but the holy corps / But there cam noo man that cowde knowe hym. And 8 when the archbysshop sawe that no body cowde saye what he was / he was sory for it / for if he had knowen his name, he wolde have put hym \(^2\) in a shryne of golde, by cause of the grete myracles that he made dayly; for 12 he made ye\(^e\) deef to here / the blinde to see / the lame to go, & right mani that were dombe he made to speke / and often tymes apered tapres of wexe brennyng about the corps.\(^3\) ¶ Now shal ye here how the noble 16 reynaud was known / Ye oughte to wite that the bredren of reynaud / that is to wyte, alarde, guychard, & rycharde, were on a day vpon a mountain soo sorry that they cowde not conforte themyself / bycause they cowde not here noo tydynges of theyr broder reynaud / Theone cam a pylgrym forthby that salved the barons. ‘Pylgrym,’ sayd alard / ‘fro whens come ye / yf ye wote ony newes, telle it vs, I praye you’ / ‘Lorde,’ \(^24\) sayd the pylgrym, ‘wyth a gode wyle I shall telle you that I knowe. Wyte it that I com out of almayn, from a towne that is called croyne, by coleyn vpon the ryne, where I have seen many grete myracles doon of 28 god, for the love of a man that cam to the cyte but late ago, the whiche was so grete / that every body sayth there that he was a gyau?it / and wyte ye, that whan he

---

1 a croyne. Quant larcevesque vist que le corps estoit delibere de demourer illegques il vit au corps . . . F. orig. N. v. back.  
2 Fol. M.M. iii. back.  
3 En celluy temps que larcevesque et tout son clerge gardoient a croyne le corps saint, ainsi que vous ay compte, F. orig. N. vi.
cam there / that he sawe men make the chireche of saynt peter / soo dyde he presente there his servyse to the mayster mason, the whiche reteyned hym gladly / 4 Shortly to saye, this grete man dyde wonder of berynge of stones & of morter. For he bare more atones than XV.1 other of the laborers that were there wyth him; and he was all day wythout mete, saff at evyn / he toke 8 a peny that he gate, for nomore he wold have for his labour a daye, and therwyth he boughte hym brede, and dranke none other to it but water / 2and thene went to his rest vpon a lityll strawe vnder a grete vawte2 / 12 And ye must wyte that this grete man was well loved of the maysters masons of the sayd chireche, whiche wold often have gyven hym mete & wyne / and more mony. But he woldde never take noo thynge 3but a 16 peny oonly by the daye for to bye hymself brede, as I tolde you afore / He served so well all the masons there, that they were more contente of hym alone / than of the other laborers. And whan the laborers sawe that 20 they were soo lityll set by / for love of this grete man / they were sore an angred / and toke grete envi at hym / and conspyred togider for to slee hym shamfully / Soo dyde they aspye hym where he slepte vnder 4the sayd 24 vawte4 / while the mayster masons were goon to dyner / And thenne one of theym came to hym with a grete harmer in his hande / and brayned him. thenne they put hym in a sacke, & caryed hym in a cart to the 28 ryver of the ryne / where they cast hym / And wyte that whan they had doon soo / our lorde shewed there a grete myracle / For all the fysshes of the ryne assembled thym aboute the corps / and made it abyde in 32 one place above the water. And whan the nyghte was com, angelles were herde there / that songe melody-

---

1 dix, F. orig. 2-2 omitted, F. orig. 3 Fol. M.M. iv. 4-4 ung grant voultre sus ung peu de paille entredeux, F. orig. N. vi. back.
ously the servyse of the deed soo hie, that all they of
the cite myghte here theym / and it semed that all the
water about hym had be in a fyre of the grete light
that was seen there / Thenne cam the archebysshop of 4
colen wyth all his colege, & made the corps to be
taken / and broughte in a carte vnto the chyrche.
And whan he was there / tharchbysshop sange masse /
for this was in the mornynge. And whan the servyse 8
was doon, the archebysshop sayd to four lordes that
were there / that they sholde take vp the corps for
to have hym to his grave wyth fayre processyon / But
thise foure barons cowde never move hym / from
How the body was miraculously carried out of Colegne,

12

and taken to Croyne, where
great miracles are performed by it.

11

2

and all the clerky that hathe doo make of the offerynes 28
that ben gyve there to thys holy corps, a fayr place / and
a royall chirche / there as the sayd chapell of our lady
was afore 1 /

W

When alarde, guycharde / and rycharde herde the 32
pylgryme speke soo / they beganne all thre to

1—1 Et en ce faisant le charret sen partist dilleceques tout
a par foy . . . F. orig. N. vi. back.
wepe full sore for pyte that they had of theyr brother Reynawde / for well they knewe it was he of whom the pylgryme spake / 'Alas, my brethern,' sayd rycharde, 'now be we well dystroyed / and vndoon for ever; For I knowe well that it is our dere broder that we have soughte soo longe' / Wyte it that the thre brethern made there soo grete sorowe, that it canne not be rehearsed / And whan they had made this grete sorowe / they toke leve of the pylgryme / and thanked hym, and wente to make them redy / and thenne toke theyr waye towardwe croyne, by Coleyne on the ryne / And they dyde soo moche by theyr iournyes / that they came to Croyne / And lighted before the chirche, they and theyr folke / where they founde soo grete a flowynege and gaderynge of the people, and soo grete prese of folke, that wyth grete peyne they myght entre wythin the chirche. And whan the knyghtes were wythin, they wente nyghe the holy corps, that was vpon a fayr bere all vncovered, and sawe soo grete light abowte the corps as there had ben a hundred torches / Theyne went they as nyghe him as thei cowde for to loke hym in the face / and anone they knewe that he was their broder / and wyth that thei loked vpon hym, they felle doun all in a souone to therthe. And whan tharchbisshop sawe that, he was sore abasshed, & sayd to some of his colege / 'Sires, I byleve that we shall soone knowe that we have desired soo longe / For I wene that thyse lordes knowe well this holy corps' / This hangyng, were the thre brederen comen agen to theymselfe / and began to crye and fare as they had ben mad / theyne sayd alarde, all wepyng in thys maner, 'Alas, what shall we now caytyff knyghtes doo, pour of honour & of all wele, sith that we have lost our broder, by whom we were so sore doubted & dred / Alas, dere broder! who was soo hardy to laye honde on

The three brethren weep over the pilgrim's story, knowing that it refers to Reynawde.

They depart for Croyne, and arrive at the chapel where the body of Reynawde rests.

They lament sorely over the cruel death of their brother.

1–1 omitted, F. orig.  2 Fol. M.M. v.
you? I byleve that he knew not your debonairte & kyndnesse / for he wohle not have slayne you so cruelly' / And them he torned him towarde his two bredern & sayd / 'My fayr bredern, we ought well to be sory / sith we have lost our broder reynaude / that was all our hope, our trust, & comfort.' 'Alas,' sayd rycharde, 'broder reynaude, why had ye ever that courage for to habandoune vs as ye dyde / seeng that ye loved vs somoche. Alas, ye stale awaye yourself by nyghte / for to come amonge thes of the murderers that have slayne you soo cruelly / Alas, they wyste not the grete dommage that is of your dethe!' 12

When the thre bretherne had wepte ynoughe, in grete sobbynges and lamentacyons for the love of theyr dere broder ¹Reynawde / they went and [kissed] the corps on the mouthe, the one after the other; and wyth this 16 thei felle doun agen in a swoune / And when thei were come agen to theymself / rycharde began to crye, & saye / 'Alas, fair bredern, now ben we lost for ever / For we shall no more be set by, nother doubted nor drede more than children / wherfore I saye that we shold slee ourself / to the ende that we maye be wyth you, for we oughte not to live after your deth' / Wyte it that who had be there, he sholde have had an harde 24 hert, but he sholde have wepte for to see the thre bredern make theyr mone.2

When the archebysshop and the burgeys that were there, sawe the grete sorow that the thre 28 knyghtes made, the good archebissop³ came to theym, and sayd / 'Lordes, be ye not dysplaysed of that I shall saye to you! Syres, to my seynge, ye doo not well for to make soo grete sorowe, nor to discomforte 32 yourself so moche as ye doo / but rather ye shold make

¹ Fol. M.M. v. back.
² et non sans cause, F. orig. N. vii. back.
³ archebysshop, orig.
chap. xxviii.] how reynawde's corpse is richly entombed. 591

grete ioye / and be glad for your broder, that is a saynt
in hevyn, the whiche hathe suffred martyrdom in the
servyse of our lorde / wherof ye maye see that he
rewardeth hym well for it. For ye see now before
your eyen the grete myracles that he dooth. wherfore
I praye you that ye wyll recomforte your selfe. And
telle vs, yf it playse you, what ye ben / and how is this
holy body named, and what his name was whan he
lived in this worlde / to the ende that his name be
wyten abowte his tombe.' And whan his brerdren
herde the archebysshop speke thus, they began a lityll
12 to leve theyr sorowe / and thenne alarde, that was
theldest after reynawd, sayd to hym, 'Lorde, sith it
playse you to knowe what we be, & how this corps is
called, I shall telle it you wythoute fawte / Ye muste
wyte that this corps was called, 1 when he was amonge
us alive1 / Reynawde of mountalban, the ryght2 worthy
knyghte ; and [we three th3]at ben here are his brerdren.
And well I wote that ye have herde speke of the four
20 sones of aymone / the whiche charlemagn the grete,
kyenge of fraunce, werred soo longe.' Thenne whan the
archebysshop / and the people herde that they were the
four sones of aymone / of the whiche all the world
24 spake / and that the holy corps was the goode reynawde
of mountalban / the noble & valiant knyghte / they
began al to wepe for pyte and for ioye / by cause they
sawe all before theym the moost noble & worthiyeest
knyghte of the worlde / that in his life was more to
drede than ony man alive, that was deed in the servyse
of our lorde / doinge penaunce. After that thise thre
brerdren had thus lefte a lityll theyr sorowe / they
32 made their broder to be layd in his tombe, that was
ryght ryche, that the archebysshop had doon make /

1-1 omitted, F, orig. 2 Fol. M.M, vi.
3 [ ] from Ed. 1554, corrected. A piece cut out of
Caxton's edition.
where the holy corps resteth yet at this daye / as evydently is knowen / and he is called saynt Reynawde the marter / The memory of hym was that tyme put in wrytyng auctentykly; and every yere is there 4 kepte for hym grete solempnyte & feest. And after the sepulturynge of the holy corps, the brethern wente agen in to theyr countree.

May all who read this present boke shall 8 rede or here, we shall praye god & the gloryous saynte Reynaude the marter / that he gyve vs grace to persevere / and contynue our lif in good werkes, by the whiche we may have at our endynge the lif that 12 ever shall laste.¹

A M E N

¹ en gloire celesticelle de paradis.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

(N.B.—A few proper names are registered in this Index, because they present features of Glossarial interest.)

Abacke, 142/6, stepped back.
Abasshe, 160/16, humble.
Abasshed, 44/33, ashamed.
Abbyt, 282/19, habit, dress, uniform.
Abie the bargayn, 195/35, "with it.
Abode, 19/26, were made, became.
Abote, 504/33, "about.
Abrode, 352/7, "about.
Absolucyon, 335/20, "absolution.

Absteyn, Absteyne, 474/14, 480/4, "abstain, refrain.
A busshe, 553/26, "ambush.
Abyde, 23/4, 63/6, stay; 203/24, remain.
Abyden, 490/32, "abide.
Abyden, 507/33, 586/1, "abiding.
Abyde to, 42/4, "remain with.
Abye, 38/6, "abide.
Accomplysshed, 149/17, "finishing building (said of a castle).
Accorde, 47/17, "peace.
Acquyte, 301/8, "acquit.
Acquyeted, 135/16, "acquainted.
Acquit, 301/8, "acquit.
Acquyted, 582/12, "accustomed.
Admyralle, 408/1, "commander-in-chief of an army. Later on in the story, the same Admyralle reappears at Palermo, where, being defeated, he and his army take to their galleys; so that, when at sea, he might well have been called an admiral in the modern sense.
Adommaged, 427/30, "damaged.
A doo, 52/3, "ado.
A doo, 194/29, 254/17, 499/15, "to do.
A doun, 291/29, "brought down.

CHARL. ROM. XI.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Al fayra, 177/25, all fair.
Aliance, 202/34, lineage.
All by nyghte, 164/9, at night.
All halowes, 99/17, all saints; all hallowes, 168/18, all the saints.
All in generall, 74/25, all of you.
All merveyyled, 303/34, much marvelled.
All other our, 341/22, all our other.
All quycke, 17/28, alive; 544/17, quickly.
All redi, 556/3;} All redy, 341/28, already.
All the fayte, 193/7, all the facts.
All they, 420/13, all those.
All to bruised, 303/24, bruised.
All tymes, 542/18, any time.
Alle angry, 26/25, ever angry.
Alle for angre, 174/16, with rage.
Alle to hewen, 35/13, hacked about.
Almayn, 42/7, German.
Almesse, 121/16, alms.
A londe, 145/30, 525/7, 529/4, on land.
Alonge, 465/19, adown.
Alonely, 464/21, always only.
Alowe, 229/21, low.
Alredy, 531/6, already.
Also sone, 79/14, as soon.
Alwayes of, 29/9, out of.
Alwayes spekynge, 405/3, talking all the way.
A makynge, 576/18, being built.
Amased, 561/29, mazed, dazed, bewildred, frightend.
Amende hym, 46/24, make amends to him.
A mendes, 347/7, amends.
Amiable, 20/20, dutifully.
Amys, 320/6, amiss.
An angred, 38/3, 162/13, angry.
And, 162/1, = and when; 269/18, if.
And but ye ye doo, 253/32, but if ye do not.
And we maye, 231/26, if we are able.
An heyth, 200/10, on high.
An hole, 129/19, a whole.
An live, 488/31, alive, on life.
Anone, 398/17, anon.
A nother, 529/15, 551/11, another.
Apayed, 559/15, assured.
Apayred, 267/30, 464/29, impaired, injured.
Apayred, 117/2, apparelled, clothed.
Apesed, 562/3, appeased, quieted.
Apeched, 373/20, impeached.
Aperceyved, 442/9, perceive.
Apered, 583/3, appeared.
Apetyte, 463/10, appetite.
Apoynted, 547/20, appointed, equipped, provided.
Appoyntmente, 357/4, peace ("make your apoyntmente wyth the kyng ").
Appareyled, 74/25, furnished, fitted up.
Appell, 74/16, Charlemagne's golden apple.
Apperceyued, 79/16, 375/5, perceived, saw.
Apple, 374/32. It seems to mean a round ball of stone set as an architectural adornment on the top of a tower.
Appoyntemente, 384/33, peace, atonement.
Appull, 442/11, Apull. 222/3, apple.
Appyered, 69/16, 241/15, appeared.
Arayed, 88/21, bespattered with blood.
Arayed, 434/17, arrayed, dressed.
Archebysshop of that feeldes, 343/29, a satirical expression, seeming to mean that he of whom they spoke was then in hell.
Ardeyn, 178/30, = Ardeyn = Ardennes.
Ardeyne (also called in the French original Dordon), 16/22, Ardennes.
Are, 351/12, 435/13, ere, before.
Are, 563/29, art.
Areched, 461/3, reach, catch, tackle. Armed of all peeces, 232/13, completely armed.
Armee, 377/24, army.
Armatures, 419/29, armour.
Armatures of stele, 110/6, steel armour.
Arneys, 358/13, harness.
Arrested, 171/11, rested, sat down.
Arreste myselfe, 200/35, rest myself.
Arsoms, 309/23, seat.
As angry, 497/17, all angry.
A sawte, 188/28, assault.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 595

Aseryed, 554/18, cried out.
A seen, 453/28, have seen.
A seven nyght, 204/8, a week.
A side, 580/25, on one side.
As longe that I am man on lyue, 78/1, so long as I live.
Aslong that lyf is in our bodyes, 233/12, so long as life remains.
As moche, 299/18, as loud.
A sondre, 345/9, in sunder.
Aspreli, 391/18, Asprely, 502/26, sharply.
Aspyed, 431/23, espied.
Assaye, 184/17, 536/12, essay. prove.
Assayled of, 301/30, tried.
Assayle, 552/4, assail.
Assemble 43/7, encounter. fighting.
Fr. 'Assemblee . . . the fight, copping, or encounter of two armiz.'
—Cotgrave.
Assone, 88/30, 203/34, as soon.
Assured from their enmys, 149/18, need no more fear their enemies.
Assurynge, 380/2, assurance.
Astate, 115/19, 295/2, estate.
A stonyed, 165/17, astonished. And well he might be, "quilk yhy fist
chanceler les dens en la gorge,' which Caxton omitted to translate.
At, 69/14, 349/5, 496/3, to.
At, 69/15, on (30/22, "hanged at a gybet ").
At a nede, 75/10, necessity.
At an ende, 408/1, to an end.
At an ende of, 22/1, make an end of.
At another, 79/21, to another.
At eyther, 453/7, on either.
At his sheld, 229/24, by his shield.
A thynge, 507/18, one thing.
Atons, 82/33, at once.
Atorned, 160/31, turned, changed the complexion of.
Atte, 190/3, according to.
Atte an ende, 430/9, to an end.
Atte oo side, 146/7, on one side.
Atte the grounde, 141/15, on the ground.
Atte the herte, 217/16, at heart.
At the first, 513/7, in the beginning.
At this owre, 226/29, at this time, just now.
A traverse, 179/22, behind.

Attone, 227/1, 407/4, at one, reconciled.
Aunctentykly, 592/4, authentically.
Aventure, 86/33, adventure.
Aynghte answerd, 18/12, said anything.
Aulter, 156/22, altar.
Auncyent knyghtes, 193/3, ancient, old knights, apparently, also, minstrels.
Auter, 576/21, altar.
Avantage, 233/5, advantage.
Avynted hynmys, 546/11, came forward, advanced himself.
Avaylle, 177/31, avail.
Aventure, 370/14, adventure.
Avow, 384/23, vow, pledge.
Avowe, 593/6, own, avouch.
Avyronned, 305/20, environed, surrounded.
Awaited, 390/20, awaited.
A worthe, 247/2, at its worth (when death comes, we are quite prepared for it).
A wry, 370/31, awry, askew.
Axe, 450/24, ask.
Ayde, 327/20, aid.
Ayen, 58/9, again.
Ayenste, 25/31, against.
Aylleth, 226/32, aileth.
Ayre, 26/3, Ayere, 96/31, Ayer, 295/31, air.

Bachelors, 193/25, bachelors.
Backe of hym, 63/13, his back.
Bagages, 395/30, baggage.
Balke, 517/19, a piece of timber.
Bane, 17/15, 490/14, banner, standard.
Baptysme, 410/15, baptism.
Barbacanes, 149/15, barbicans, outworks? Fr. 'Barbacane: f. A casemate; or a hole (in a parapet, or town wall) to shoot out at; some hold it also to be a Sentrie, Scut-house or hole; and therupon our Chancer vseth the word Barbican for a watch-tower, which in the Saxon tongue was called, a Bourrough-kenning.'—Cotgrave.
Barred, 537/21, barred, appareled, trapt. Fr. 'Bardé . . Barbed

2 Q 2
or trapped, as a great [war]horse.'

—Cotgrave.

Bare, 157/10, 453/12, 527/31, bore.
Bare, 70/9, carried.
Barefoot, 571/21, barefooted.
Bare of their arms, 226/22, without their arms.
Bare vppe, 45/18, lifted up.
Barle, 537/10, barley.
Baronye, 219/21, barons.
Base, 93/33, small.
Bataylle, 31/13, Battayll, 270/15.
Batayll, 526/2, battle.
Bataylle mortall, 303/4, deadly battle.
Bataylles, 40/8, battalions.
Barere, 513/18, beaver, face-guard of a helmet.
Bayns, 129/4, baths.
Bayted noo where, 36/11, halted nowhere.
Be, 209/13, are.
Be, 44/28, been (sing.).
Be agen, 517/5, been again.
Beaulite, 54/23, beauty.
Be cause, 202/29, by cause.
Becom, 578/4, be come.
Bedeleynm, 37/8, Bethlehem.
Beest, 265/15, beast.
Befyghte, 106/19, fight with.
Begate, 273/7, begot.
Begger, 315/21, 490/10, beggar.
Begonne, 176/11, begun.
Begraven, 532/31, buried, in the grave.
Begyled, 177/32, beguiled.
Behalve, 25/14, 76/19, 156/1, 470/10, behalf.
Be happed, 33/3, has happened.
Beheld, 381/24, Behelde, 237/29, looked.
Behelde vpon, 460/26, looked upon.
Beholde, 391/26, beheld.
Be holde, 74/3, behold.
Be in age, 495/20, be of age.
Be in a surete, 554/7, be assured.
Bene, 517/30, beam or balk of timber.
Ben, 3/16, be (pl.).
Ben, 336/13, are.
Benche, 75/30, 377/6, seat.
Bende, 538/4, band, train, company.
Benefeyttes, 290/11, benefits.

Ben none other thynge of it, 157/8, nothing would have come of it.
Berdes, beards: fy rst berdes, 188/3.
pryme berde, 191/17 (said of young knights only just bearded).
Bere, 213/14, carry.
Bere, 245/21, bear (a wild beast).
Bereth, 570/21, beareth.
Bere oute, 227/4, carry.
Bere oute, 208/1, uph0'd.
Bere peyn, 572/19, inflict penance.
Bering, 327/6, wearing.
Besans, 560/8, bezants; gold coins named from Byzantium.
Besechynge, 416/9, beseeching.
Besenge, 70/19, 395/14, besiege.
Beseyle, 576/22, busily.
Besemyng, 199/26, seemingly.
Besethyng, 4/23, beseeching.
Besines, 307/4, business.
Bespeke, 551/13, bespeak.
Beste, 234/2, beast.
Bestes, 164/26, beasts, or oxen and sheep.
Besy, 408/22, busy.
Be take, 143/10, been taken.
Bete, 320/6, beat.
Beten, 391/24, beaten.
Beter, 553/28, better.
Betokenyng, 152/32, meaning, signification.
Betrained, 224/23, 360/32, betrayed.
Betrapped, 384/11, entrapped.
Better, 65/25, richer.
Betyde, 388/21, become.
Betyng, 73/34, beating.
Beyng, 499/19, lit. being = whom we are.
Bi, 303/30, of.
Bi suche maner, 61/24, in such manner.
Bi the myddes, 304/5, in the midst.
Blastred, 409/20, blew forth, broke out.
Blindelfe, 331/8, blindfolded.
Blisse, 451/26, bliss.
Blode ranne me doune, 88/19, blood ran down me.
Blowen, 69/34, blown.
Blustre, 411/14, blushed.
Blustred rede, 554/23, became red, blushed.
Blynde, 226/11, blind.
Blyssse, 466/21, bliss.
Boban, 193/26, sudden enrichment, uplifting. Fr. *Bobans*: m. Riot, luxurie, wasting, unthrifftiness, excessive spending, superfluous or immoderat expence.'—Cotgrave.

Bolle, 529/16, remained.

Body of hym, 42/9, his body.

Body to body, 298/5, hand to hand.

Botles of wilde fyre, 529/12, engines of warfare, anticipatory of modern torpedoes.

Bonel, 238/25, bound.

Borde, 378/27, board, table.

Bore, 115/34, bore.

Borow, 215/18, borough, town.

Boste, 212/6, boast.

Bote, 400/19, 583/28, boat.

Botell, 277/16: Botelle, 450/19; bottle, a bundle, truss. 'Ye be not worthere a botelle of heye' (a proverb).

Botes, 315/3, boots.

Boteme, 496/11, bottom.

Boty, 198/24, 374/24, booty.

Bourdeyne, 114/24, Bourdon, 351/11, burden.

Bourgeys, 27/24, Burgeys, 150/9, 590/27, burgesses. Fr. *bourgeois*.

Bowelles, 243/27, bowels.

Brake, 115/30, broke our line of battle, charged.

Brake, 214/12, 256/6, broke.

Branke of stele, 28/24, 511/16; Brochen, 81/7, battle-axe. Fr. *Bran, bran, brand*, épée, hache d'armes. A.-Sax. *brand*—Hipp(e)anu.

Braste, 173/13, 496/35, broke.

Brayn, 581/7, brains.

Brayned hym, 587/26, knocked his brains out.

Breake, 478/15, broke.

Bred, 442/1, bread.

Bredern, 583/39, brethren.

Breke felowship, 55/26, depart from one another.

Brenne, 417/13, burn.

BrennYGON, 586/15, Brenynge, 136/21, burning.

Brente, 19/28, 386/19, 492/5, burnt, burned.

Breste, 451/13, breast.

Breste of hym, 273/14, his breast.
By suche a wyse, 42/15, in such wise.
By suche wyse, 239/32, on such wise.
By thanked, 72/9, be thanked.
By there journeys, 156/19, 548/30, on their travels, on their way.
Bytwene, 523/15, between.

Caas, 297/9, case.
Caled, 538/2, called.
Calle, 566/23, accuse.
Called of, 547/30, accused of.
Callenge, 550/28, challenge.
Cam, 442/27, came.
Cam to hyrn agenszt, 151/23, came to meet him.
Came at thevyn, 547/9, the evening came.
Came for, 70/19 (for redundant).
Came to his above of it, 206/6, had the best of it.
Capitayn, 292/14; Capytayne, 508/10, captain, commander.
Carles, 478/30, churls.
Carnall frende, 205/3, brother-in-law.
Caste, 372/3, heaved.
Casted, 55/4, 173/14, cast; 375/3, did cast; 485/1, heaved.
Caste their gages, 548/1, thrown down their gages.
Cause lawfull, 545 5, lawful cause.
Cause why, 148/22, without any cause.
Causer, 487/5, the cause.
Ceasse, 459/12, cease.
Cered, 173/28, wxt.
Certente, 33/19, 363/25, certaintit, truth.

Challenge of you, 261/18, require of you.
Chambrelayne, 211/29; Chambrelayn, 333/9, chamberlain.
Chapeleyyn, 573/14, chaplain.
Charbokell, 74/14, carbuncle.
Charboncle, 179/5, Charlemagne’s carbuncle.
Charged me of, 19/1, instructed me to do.
Charme, 370/20, enchantment.
Charnell, 422/14, burial-place.
Chafed, 314/21, chafed, rubbed, chewed.

Chauffed, 46/3, chafed, heated, fretted, vex’d.
Chauffed, 330/17, 343/15, hot, heated, vexed, weary.
Chayre, 152/4, chair of state, or pulpit.
Checke, 350/23, check (in the game of chess).
Chekes of him, 426/33, his cheeks.
Chere, 26 7, cheer, fare.
Chere, 83/16, cheer (v.).
Chered theym, 452/19, made them good cheer.
Cherne, 398/32, charm, enchantment.
Chesses, 58/29, the game of chess; ches borde, 58/29, chess board.
Cheyntaunce, 104/27, mischance, bad outcome.
Cheyn, 335/26, 369/25, chain.
Chuse, 112/32, 519/20, choose.
Chynne, 287/11, chin.
Chyrche, 374/21, church.
Clayme, 339/4, claim.
Cleene of, 516/25, clean off.
Clim, 521/24, climb.
Clothe, 510/10, clothes.
Clothes, 175/19, rolls of cloth or silk.
Clouned, 61/31, cleft.
Clouted, 491/7, patched and nailed.
Cloved, 231/35, cleaved.
Clowdes, 302/18, clouds.
Clowte, 282/33, cloth.
Clyned, 244/29, climed.
Cofres, 372/15, coffers.
Co’le, 60/19, 209/17, coal. ‘Becam blace as a cole’ = turned black in the face with anger.
College, 583/12, college, all the members of the monastic establishment of the Cathedral of Cologne.
Coler, 369/27, collar.
Cole, 50/32, 64/5, embrace round the neck. Fr. ‘Collée: f. A necke-imbracement, an imbracing about the necke; a greeting, or welcome, expressed by such an imbracement.’—Cotgrave.
Combraunce, 19/15, 62/34, 217/3, hindrance, evil, mishap.
Come, 173 7, comes.
Comen, 41/21, 486/12, 507/31, ceme.
Comende you, 492/28, commend to you.
Commandment, 376/1, command.
Cumyessed, 58/15, committed.
Complayne me, 17/11, complain.
Complyn tenne, 46/1, Evensong, one of the old ecclesiastical divisions of the day equal to 9 o'clock P.M.
Comyn, 195/6, 501/21, come (pl.).
Comyn, 486/6, common.
Conclusion effectuell, 151/16, effectual conclusion.
Concordans, 220/31, concord, treaty.
Conduyt, 18/22, safe-conduct, guard.
Conduytte, 508/7, Conduytted, 41/21, conducted.
Condyccion, 367/20, condition.
Confuse, 563/4, in confusion.
Conne, 30/31, 70/32, give.
Conne, 282/23, know, learn.
Conne d0o soo moche, 61/9, be able to do so much.
Conquested, 16/32, 132/30, conquered.
Constantynoble, 498/9; Constantyn noble, 531/15, Constantinople.
Contente, 545/31, contented.
Contrefaytted, 172/24, counterfeited.
Contynewe, 416/26, continue.
Cope, 574/28, covering.
Coppe, 38/11, cup.
Corageus, 192/16, courageous.
Cordwainers, 173/21, cordwainer's, shoemaker's.
Corven, 271/5, carved out.
Corsetes, 75/10, steel corsets, breast and back armour.
Coste, 130/4, 143/25, country.
Cosyn, 498/25, cousin.
Cote, 555/32, coat.
Cote of mayle, 117/8, coat of mail.
Conde ... thanke, 26/24, gave. "To conne thanke," to give thanks.
Conde, 80/12, could.
Confres, 371/4, coffers, strong chests.
Coumselyle, 43/29, advise (v.).
Contrefayfyt, 315/1; Contrefayte, 115/13, counterfeited, changed, disguised.
Courage, 432/25, heart, disposition.

Fr. 'Courage'... the mind, will, humor, funie, affection, disposition.'—Cotgrave.
Cours, 378/26, course.
Course of the horses, 168/14, horse-racing.
Courset, 393/26, corset, doublet.
Coutresli, 320/19, courteously.
Courtesys, 539/33, courteous.
Covenable, 169/21, 543/14, convenient.
Covent, 281/27, convent; but in this case applying only to monks.
Cowardes of veri kinde, 295/11, ingrainend cowards.
Cowde, 191/12, could.
Cowpled, 392/18, coupled, as wrestlers, with their arms round each other.
Coyffe, 44/28, scull-cap: 'Coiff, a close hood for the head.'—Fairholt. Fr. 'Coyffe; f. A coife, cowle, or cap, for the head.'—Cotgrave.
Craftes, maner of, 150/10, handicrafts.
Crafty men, 149/5, men of craft, handicraftsmen.
Crake, 320/22, croak.
Creatures humain, 23/31, human beings.
Cristeyn, 511/9, Crysten, 511/22; Crystens, 515/20, Christians.
Cronyikes, 3/7, chronicles.
Croper, 267/4, crupper.
Cruelnes, 29/5, cruelty.
Crusified, 336/18, crucified.
Crystendome, 329/31, Christendom.
Crystmasse, 83/12, Christmas.
Culp, 286/32, fault. Fr. 'Coulpe: f. A fault, offence, trespass, misdeed, or ill deed.'—Cotgrave.
Curaces, 509/19, cuirasses.
Cursidnes, 339/12, cursedness.
Curstly dealde wythall, 257/31, hardly dealt with.
Curtessey, 469/10, courtesy.
Curtois, 38/33, courteous.
Curtoysly, 75/28; Curtoyusly, 146/2, Curtesly, 211/17, courteously.
Custuum, 480/13, custom.
Cuttet, 56/4, cut.
Cyte, 301/18, city.
Glossarial Index.

Barnard, 8, 144/2, damsel.
Barnard, 27/18, damsels.
Damp, 199/29, 201/19, 272/18, L. 
Dominus, Sir or Lord.
Dans ne, 256/13, 503/35, damned.
Dangeour, 352/7, 457/12; Dangeour, 218/12, 479/13, danger.
Daws, 194/31, birds.
Dawned, 17/17, 53/33, 177/23, deigned.
Day respite, 429/17, respite, day or day of respite.
Dealed, 143/27, divided, shared.
Dealed to, 509/25, divided among.
Debarneire, 550/16, good will.
Decease, 244/17, die.
Deceased, 227/5, deceased, dead.
Deed wounde, 562/31, death wound.
Deef, 586/13, deaf.
Defawte, 139/35, default.
Defende themselves, 552/3, defend them selves against.
Defoyle, 266/6, strip of renown, overcome. Fr. 'Defeuleir. To vndeane, to plucke the leaes from, to deprive of leaes.'—Cotgrave.
Deferred, 301/22, deferred.
Deied, 61/19, died.
Delayinge, 450/28, delay, delaying.
Deliberated, 157/27, deliberated, come to a decision.
Delyver yourselfe of, 208/27, get rid of.
Demended, 487/24, demeaned.
Demye launce, 487/18, a small lance.
Depart, 242/10, separate.
Departed, 540/13, gone away.
Departed, 308/22, 535/29, parted, separated.
Departed well erly, 52/16, departed very early.
Departyring, 492/23, departure.
Depeeste, 115/11, closest, thickest.
Derely, 464/32, 488/6, dearly.
Dere syre, 470/14, dear sir.
Deryth, 187/31; Derthe, 422/6, death.
Deservynge, 336/24, deserts.
Desire I not, 34/20, I do not desire.
Desyrynge, 497/21, desirous.
Devocyon, 156/14, devotional im-

pulse, desire. "Can to hym a devocyon for to goo in pylgryme-
age."
Devoyr, 72/20; Devoyre, 19/23; Devour, 567/4, devour, duty.
Denysed, 41/32, arranged.
Devys, 547/9, appoint.
Devysynge, 227/14, talking, chatting. Fr. 'Deviser. To com-
mune, talke, discourse, conferre, denote, chat, converse with.'— Cotgrave.
Deyed, 406/25, died.
Deven, 438/1, die (pl.).
Deyeng, 79/12, dying.
Deyeth, 232/26, dieth.
Digne, 3/16, great.
Dishered, 347/20, disinherit.
 disposing, 97/24, despite.
Disworshippe, 324/14, dishonour.
Do, 22/10, cause to be; "he shoul d hange hym," should cause him to be hanged, have him hanged.
Do brene, 17/29, cause to be burnt.
Domn, 82/10, dumb.
Dommage, 28/28, damage, hurt, injury.
Domnaged, 111/12, done great mischief to.
Dungeon, 23/22, donjon.
Doun, 132/24, got down.
Doo all myn oste, 375/30, make my warriors.
Doo dygge, 438/21, caused to be dugged.
Doo knowe, 72/22, cause to be known.
Doo marchandyse, 177/32, trade.
Doon, 317/16, 548/20, done.
Doon, 420/18, do (pl.).
Doon, 110/13, 189/1, given.
Doo of, 464/16, do off.
Doo of me, 26/33, do with me.
Doo of hym, 56/7, done with him = 'all up with him.'
Doo put, 90/24, cause to put.
Doo repayre, 531/25, caused to be repaired.
Doo sawte, 189/26, make assault.
Dcoterd, 208/9, dotard.
Doo theym nothyng, 248/6, do them no evil.
Dooth me to wyte, 211/18, makes me to know.
Doo to be caste doun, 185/8, cause to be cast down.
Doo yon to wyte, 89/27, cause you to know.
Do pyghte, 73/30, cause to be pitched.
Dores, 204/13, doors.
Doubed, 31/25, dubbed.
Doubte ... of a strawe, 229/8, care a straw. (Doubte = fear.)
Doubte of death, 18/10, in peril, fear of losing one's life.
Doubted, 155/12, feared.
Doubted in his takyng, 479/11, difficult to take him.
Dounce france, 191/18, 367/23, true, right France, nothing but France, lit., sweet France.
Doungeon, 96/4, donjon.
Douse, great, high, chief, 16/18.
Dounsyers, 203/19, the "twelve peers" of France.
Douve, 53/3, dove.
Dowbe, 495/20, dub.
Dawbed, 163/5, dubbed.
Drawe, 139/12, gone.
Drawen, 66/4, withdrawn, gone away.
Draweth now sore to age, 542/4, is getting old.
Drawnen, 96/26, drawn.
Drame, 221/23, dream.
Dressed, 420/19, placed, prepared, got ready.
Drew after, 351/3, carried behind.
Drewe alle, 27/11, all drew.
Drone, 93/8, drunk. The yeomen of the stable had supped, and "thei were dronke."
Dronken, 478/22, drunk.
Drynkyng money, 582/10, money to buy drink with.
Duange, 248/21, troubled, vext. A.S. dwinan, to dwine, pine or waste away; ' dwinge, to shrivel and dwindle (Eastern), dwingle,' Brome's Songs, ed. 1661, p. 183.'
Hal. Gloss.
Duche, 477/10, duke.
Dure, 207/12, endure.
Dute, 324/17, duty.
Duytes, 150/6, duties, dues.
Dyches, 65/15, 420/18, ditches.
Dyd doo make, 182/26, made.

Dyde, 57/27, 88/26, 327/9, did, performed.
Dyde caste a grete syghe, 372/3 heaved a great sigh.
Dydest, 226/7, didst.
Dyde mysse, 99/15, missed.
Dyde on, 31/23, put on.
Dyde soo moche, 156/19; Dyde somoche, 342/7, 576/15, went so far, went so fast.
Dyde so moche by their journis, 570/14, rode so fast on their way.
Dyde tary, 500/15, tarried, stayed.
Dyffamed, 326/22, 580/24, defamed.
Dyffyance, 112/7, defiance.
Dygne, 337/2, worthy.
Dyner, 478/1, dinner.
Dyverse, 467/25, divers.
Dysaray, 534/3, disarrayed, unready.
Dysarmed, 198/22, unarmed.
Dysarmed hym, 91/11, took his arms away.
Dysase, 277/31, disease.
Dysavowed, 134/20, disowned.
Dyceyve, 462/18, deceive.
Dyscoupled, 241/16, uncoupled.
Dysease, 244/31, danger.
Dysguysed, 314/26, 462/18, disguised.
Dyshe, 463/5, dish, wooden bowl.
Dysheythed, 134/19, disinherited.
Dyspende, 538/13, spend.
Dysperate, 245/24, 409/26, desperate.
Dyspeyre, 370/10, despair.
Dysplaysed, 464/19, 510/8, displeased.
Dysplaysure, 30/19, displeasure.
Dyspurneyd, 418/8, unprovided.
Dyspyte, 161/22, 362/6, 478/5, despite.
Dyssymuled, 534/5, dissimulated.
Dystressed, 116/6, distress'd.
Dystroyed, 71/14; Dystroyed, 483/5, destroyed.

Eche, 453/1, 547/15, each.
Edelyfed, 575/10, erecting, building.
Edlyfed, 67/4, erected, edificed.
Eeles, 264/13, eels.
Eest, 336/7, east.
Eere, 136/12, ear.
Efforte, 527/21, exhibition.
Efte agayne, 252/9, often again.
Eagle, 355/3, euyll.
Elder, 537/1, older.
Ells, 489/10, else.
Elles where, 178/2, elsewhere.
Embussed, 554/21, ambushed.
Emonge, 218/31, among.
Embrased, 414/15, 492/25, embraced.
Encrece, 214/28, increase.
Endevorde, 4/12, endeavoured.
Endoctryned, 536/7, instructed.
Endure, 511/19, stand.
Endyng, 527/20, end.
Endwred, 187/15, inured.
Engynes, 457/32, war material, machines for casting stones.
Enhabyte, 159/4, inhabit.
Enlevyn, 125/9, eleven.
Enmye mortalle, 64/26, mortal enemy.
Enoynted, 169/29; Enmoystnted, 35/27, anointed.
Employed, 476/34, employed.
Enpraynt, 458/2. Fr. 'Em-preinte: f. A stampe, a print, a violent assault, a furious and forcible onset.'—Cotgrave.
Enprynting, 4/14, printing.
Ensampel, 477/1; Ensample, 295/17, example.
Ensure, 329/23, assure.
Enteerly, 450/17, entirely.
Entencyon, 359/17, intention.
Entent, 409/34, intention.
Enterprise, 21/34, undertaken.
Enterprys', 54/13, enterprise.
Enterlyles, 251/30, entrailes.
Entre, 173/3, entrance.
Enterlynyth, 549/27, entertaineth.
Envyronned, 191/30, 227/18, surrounded, environed.
Erbe, 371/7, herb.
Ere, 562/32, ear.
Ernesta, 328/8, earnest.
Escheve, 564/33, evade.
Escuse, 112/21, excus:
Ester, 83/12, 535/13, Easter.
Ete, 516/8, eat.
Eten wyth, 52/34, eaten by.
Ether, 451/34, either.
Etyng, 440/35, eating.
Euyll rest, 70/30, 'God gyne them euyll rest._ = no peace.
Euylle was to hym, 27/2, it was unlucky for him.

Eyn, 73/35, even, close.
Eyn, 53/20, evening.
Eyer, 17/20, always.
Everyche, 186/16; Eueriche, 53/10, every.
Euyll contente, 253/8, not well contented.
Euyll daye gyve you, god, 107/3.
Euyll, 408/25, evils.
Eyn, 500/12, even.
Eyn, 243/7, evening.
Eyn anone, 306/16, even now.
Expowne, 152/17, expound.
Eyen, 99/8, 360/16, eyes.
Evghte, 210/6, Eyghtt, 74/21, eight.
Ey leth, 226/26, 310/25, aileth.
Eyres, 324/7, heirs.

Ecyon, 227/16, 351/11, 544/24, fashion, shape, manner.
Falsed your feyth, 264/20, made false your faith.
False wyt, 565/23, falseness, falsity, treachery.
Falshode, 558/15, falseness, treachery.
Falsi, 341/3, falsely.
Famysshe, 74/27, starve out.
Famyshshed, 421/13, made him to be famished.
Famyshynyng, 21/25, famine.
Fare, 478/34, fared.
Fared soo fowle, 515/20, did so evilly.
Fare fowll wyth vs, 42/2, do evil unto us.
Fauce posternes, 190/31, false gates, or passages.
Faucones, 59/21, Fawcones, 192/25, falcons.
Faughte, 99/22, fought.
Fawcebrayte, 77/27; Fawcebrayte, 149/15, a secret passage, or covered way.
Fayle, 37/13, fail.
Faylled, 75/10, failed.
Fayne, 80/33, fine, good; 301/16, fain, willing.
Fayr clothes, 534/1, goodly hangings; cloths and carps hung from the windows, &c.
Faytes, 4/7; Fayttes, 32/22, feats.
Faytes of armes, 138/18, 453/3, feats of arms.
Feere, 80/13, 398/21, fear.
Feered, 455/18, feared.
Feest, 499/12, feast, rejoicing; 175/27, sport.
Feintnes, 425/30, faintness.
Felawe myn! 301/26, my man!
Felawshyp, 16/23; Felawshyp, 46/26, company, party.
Felde, 267/22, 288/30, 565/18, felled, knocked down.
Feliship, 289/17, 512/25; Felishyp, 545/18, fellowship, following, company.
Fell, 165/6; Felle, 30/17, wicked, cruel, fierce.
Felony, 496/20, villainy.
Ferdor, 57/2, further.
Ferdful, 249/8, fearful.
Fere, 481/12, fear.
Fered, 149/13, feared.
Ferfult, 361/30, fearful.
Ferre, 60/27, far.
Ferre wavs, 585/24, far countries.
Fery, 337/27, fayery, the fairy race, magic folk.
Feste, 83/13, 163/7, feast.
Fet, 477/22; Fette, 216/25, 466/2, fetch.
Fete, 466/5, feet.
Fete of hym, 550/17, his feet.
Feters, 370/28, fetters.
Fetred, 369/24, fettered.
Fewe, 571/8, fealty.
Feynte, 184/15, 249/2, faint (from loss of blood).
Feysaunte, 124/6, pheasants.
Fethy, 99/12, 538/11, faith.
Fiersly, 262/33, fiercely.
Fiersnes, 413/6, fierceness, ferocity.
Fifty, 108/1, fifty.
Fisher, the miracle of the, in sustaining the body of Reynawde above the water, 582-583.
Fissher, 264/13 fisherman.
Flancardes, 79/10, flank or side armour. Fr. ‘Flancars: m. Side Langes; armour for the flanks, or sides of a barbed horse.’— Cotgrave.
Fleeng, 140/27, fleeing.
Fleyn theym quycke, 157/31, fly them alive.
Fleyen, 25/11 (slayne in ed. 1554), flyed, slain.
Fleyn quycke, 320/20, flyed alive.
Fleynge, 232/26, flying.
Flouge, 30/10, 262/5, flew, travelled.
Flowen, 521/7, flown.
Flowynge, 589/15, influx.
Flyghte, 243/24, flight.
Fole, 460/10, fool.
Fole destestable, 331/31, detestable fool.
Folie, 80/7, mischief, evil.
Folisshe, 171/5, foolish.
Folke, 29/6, 224/25, attendants, followers, retinue.
Foly, 21/34, silly enterprise.
Folysly, 243/12, foolishly.
Fonde, 67/20, 194/23, 363/1, found.
Fontaine, 400/26, fountain, stream.
For, 36/19, 301/20, from.
For cause, 53/4, 540/10, because.
For double to be blamed, 81/4, for fear he should be blamed.
For nyce, 171/18, as assys. Fr. ‘nice, dull, simple.’— Cotgrave.
For our saynyge, 505/31, to save us, for our salvation.
For prisoners, 30/6, as prisoners.
For recommended, 170/20, 495/16, as commended or committed to your charge, under your care. ‘Recomander.. to give one charge, to commit unto the care, of.’— Cotgrave, 1611.
For to = to; 18/4, ‘oughte for to doo’; 18/25, ‘come not for to serve’; 20/7, ‘for to tell.’
For to deye for it, 296/27, if I have to die for it.
For to knowe, 193/6, to find out.
For to light on horsbak, 74/20, to mount horse.
For whi, 202/28, because.
Forbanysshed, 79/32, disinherited, banished, dispossessed.
Forbede, 244/14, 359/12, forbid.
Forcened, 201/33. Fr. ‘*Forcené . . .
Mad, wood, franfick; raging, furious, out of his wits.’—Cotgrave.
Foreclosed, 289/11, foreclosed, shut off.
Forder, 446/1, further.
Foreby, 116/5, near.
Forewarde, 40/12, the advance guard.
Forfayt, 32/29, default, forfeit.
Forforte, 173/12, forefoot.
Forfayte, 336/19, forgave.
Forfayte, 259/3, forget.
Forgate not, 51/19, did not forget.
Forhede, 48/14, 478/11, 559/11, forehead.
Foremost, 106/27, 137/13, 449/8, foremost.
Forsayd, 558/34, aforesaid.
Forsoke, 461/9, forsook.
Forthby, 586/22, thereby, that way.
Foster, 194/17, forester.
Fote, 176/3, foot.
Fote, 279/33, feet ("xv fote of lengthe" = fifteen feet in height).
Foot is still used, as "six foot high."
Fouer, 109/9, four.
Founded, 32/6, formed, made.
Foundemente, 56/16, fundament.
Founde the wayes, 536/2, made the arrangements.
Fourth, 39/23; Fourth, 27/8, 60/7, forth.
Fourth, 26/8, forth.
Fourthi, 55/20; Fourthy, 547/8, forty.
Fowl fall, 304/11, evil befall.
Fowndered, 123/3, bedrenched.
Fownder, 140/3, give way, founder.
Foyned, 43/25, thrust.
Foyson, 181/4, 434/25; Foison, 20/2, plenty, many, a great number.
Franchyse, 283/12, service.
Fraye, 62/11, fray.
Fraye hym sayle, 33/18, not put himself in fear.
Free knytth, 199/29, free-speaking.
Frende, 498/27, friend.
Frende carnell, 225/8, near kinsman.
Frenshemen, 238/10, Frenchmen.
Frenshyp, 83/11, friendship.
Fro, 302/32, 486/13, from.
Frohens, 140/1, from hence.
Fromhens forthon, 350/24, from henceforth.
From my behalve, 159/18, on my behalf.
Frompeled his forhede, 48/14, made the wrinkles appear in his forehead.
Frutes, 336/28, fruits.
Fyred, 586/22, finished building.
Full made, 419/20, full of.
Full often, 55/17, many times.
Fyred, 199/14, furred, fringed.
Fysshes, 308/7, fish's.
Fysshes, 309/2, 582/31, fish.
Fysshe, 666/2, fish's.
Fysste, 43/18, hand, fist.
Gaaf, 32/35; Gaaff, 62/13; Gaff, 143/29, gave.
Gagbe, 338/29, speak mockingly.
Gadre, 441/6, gather.
Gadred, 168/12, 552/33, gathered.
Gage, 218/28, defiance; 386/34, pledge.
Galons, 334/21; Galohous, 331/22, gallews.
Gare, 567/6, cause.
Garnysshed, 87/25, supplied.
Garnyssheng, 251/3, gathering.
Gate, 374/24, got; 486/23, get.
Gate the pryce, 338/7, won the prize.
Gayn, 355/1, 529/34, booty, prize taken from the enemy.
Gayne, 194/23, gain.
Gaynsayth, 425/11, gainsayeth.
Gentill, 19/19, noble.
Gently, 495/10, gentle.
Gentlywomen, 491/30, gentlewomen.
Gete, 452/13, get.
Gird, 31/25, girded, girt.
Gladder, 211/11, more glad, more pleased.
Glave, 82/25, glaive, blade. Fr. 'Glave': m. A Gleane, or Sword; also a Launce, or horseman's staffe.'—Cotgrave.
Gluttons, 63/19, 81/1, gluttons, blackguards. Fr. 'Glutton': m. A glutton...also a knave, rascal, filthy fellow.'—Cotgrave.
Glystered, 93/14, glistened.
Gnawed, 49/25, gnawed.
Go, 586/14, walk.
God before, 488/3, God leading.
Goddyis, 231/14, God's.
Gode, 485/16, 499/3, 525/7, goods, cargo.
God mercy, 450/31, God's mercy, or the mercy of God.
God you, 146/33, God keep you.
Golde massy, 61/23, massive gold.
Goo, 452/8, go.
Goo agenstethem, 494/8, go against, to meet them (i.e. in a friendly manner, not as in war).
Goo at, 519/1, go to.
Goo fro myself, 532/6, go beside myself (i.e. lose my wits).
Goo in pylgrymage, 156/14, go on a pilgrimage.
Goo vpon, 25/23, attack.
Good, 30/27, goods, good things.
Good arraye, 29/17, a sarcastic way of speaking of a man whose head has been cut off.
Good of kynde, 490/18, good by nature, naturally of a good disposition.
Goode gowns, 49/25, best clothes.
Goon, 445/22, gone.
Goon to sportynghe, 193/10, gone sporting.
Gooth, 270/6, 315/27, goeth.
Goten agayne, 498/4, again taken.
Gremery, 82/30, 301/33, 'grand meri,' great thanks.
Greef, 236/21, pain.

Greefull, 251/29, grievous.
Gresses, 440/33, grasses.
Grete, 572/1, great.
Grete hall, 149/8, principal room.
Grete luste, 157/8, great haste.
Grete name, 541/7, high esteem.
Grete occasion, 226/31, great cause.
Grete peyne contynuall, 28/32, long-continued trouble.
Grete rage of hungr, 429/7, great pangs of hunger.
Grete wordes, 412/27, big words.
Grethenes, 232/9, greatness.
Grettter gentilman, 208/30, better man.
Gretynge, 480/25, greeting.
Greureth, 76/22, grieveth, angereth.
Greve, 452/2, grieveth.
Grovelinge, 370/31, grovelling.
Grylle, 54/12, grief.
Gryffon, 52/31, griffin, dragon.
Grylled, 176/32, expanded.
Guarished, 278/14, healed, cured.
Fr. 'gueri.'
Guyded, 281/18, guided.
Guysarme, 516/15, a long weapon with a scythe and a spear at its head. See it figured in Fairholt's 'Costume in England,' ed. Dillon, i 216.
Guyven, 263/21, given.
Gyant, 586/31, giant.
Gybet, 30/22, Gynette, 96/21, gibbet, gallows.
Gyfte, 246/18, gift.
Gylte, 537/22, gilt, gold.
Gylty, 286/6, guilty.
Gynnes, 357/17, clutches; 428/28, snares.
Gyrtes, 321/10, girths.
Gyrthe, 197/15, part of the harness of a horse.
Gyve him to knowe, 548/12, given him to understand.
Gyueth, 69/30, forewarneth.
Gyveth, 131/9, foretelleth.
Had enuye vpon hym, 150/23, were envious of him. 
Had out, 525/9, taken out.
Had theym, 536/10, took them.
Hadde, 92/14, took.
Hadde doo brynge, 56/28, had brought.
Hale vp saylle, 530/19, haul up the sails.
Half discomfyted, 228/30, half vanquished (because they had no arms with them).
Halowes, 552/26, sacred relics.
Halted sore, 177/9, was sore lame.
Haltyng, 175/6, lamely.
Halve, 464/14, half.
Hamere, 581/6, hammer.
Hanftdl, 107/4, handful.
Hanged, 74/18, furnished (when the tentes wer all spred & hanged').
Hangyne, 50/14, pending:—'This hangyng,' 71/13 (very frequently).
Fr. ce-pendant, meanwhile, meantime. (After relating the doings of one set of his characters, the narrator leaves them alone, and goes on with the doings of another set.) Fr. 'Pendant cela (adverbially), in the meantime, in the mean time, in the meanae season.'
—Cotgrave.
Happed, 86/33, 504/29; Haped, 19/24, happened, came to pass, turned out.
Happed of newe, 202/12, newly happened.
Hardenes, 106/7, harshness.
Hardly, 194/25, hardly, stoutly, quickly.
Harneyces, 44/4, armour, accouterments, both of horses and knights.
Hast, 477/33, haste.
Haste the mete, 255/15, hasten, 'hurry up' the dinner.
Hasted sonioche, 562/22, harried, worried, so much.
Hastly, 451/31, hastily, in haste.
Hathe be, 468/28, hath been.
Hatred, 539/31, hated.
Haubergeon, 42/24; Haubergeren, 79/10, a coat of mail, a breast-plate, the diminutive of 'hauberk.'
Hane accorde, 51/10, have accorded, i.e. to have made peace between.
Hane do made, 70/29, have caused to be made.
Haunted, 543/31, acquainted.
Hauntynge, 536/16, following.
Haunoyre, 64/29, 71/23, goods, valuables.
Have, 17/27, capture.
Have be, 456/4, have been.
Have me, 166/6, take me.
Hede, 418/31, heed.
Hede, 37/26, 403/16, head.
Hede captayne, 508/18, commander-in-chief.
Heded, 266/22, beheaded.
Heder, 75/19, hither.
Hederwarde, 481/30, hitherward.
Hedles, 331/6, heedless.
Heelde, 398/16, covered (with bed-ding, &c.).
Heeres rise vp, 228/27, hair stands up.
Hehelde, 229/17, beheld.
Helde hym so short, 532/8, was so hasty with him.
Helde syde, 238/4, took side.
Hele, 278/5, heal.
Helpeth hymself wyth, 528/5, applies himself to.
Hens fourthe, 49/17, henceforth.
Hensfourthon, 59/6, henceforth on.
Her, 21/29, its; spoken of the castle of Aygremount.
Heraulde, herawde, 203/16, 31, herald.
Herbowrynge, 28/9, dwelling-place (metaphor).
Here, 50/6, hear.
Heremynage, 400/24, hermitage.
Heremyte, 315/24, 467/22, hermit.
Heres, 177/16, hair (referring to colour).
Heres pulled, 62/10, hairs torn out of the head.
Herke, 246/23, hearken.
Herken, 90/21, hearken.
Hermyns, 129/9, ermine.
Hermeis, 79/5, war apparel.
Herte, 48/9, heart.
Herte so fell, 205/31, such wicked hearts.
Herte tendred, 430/22, heart became tender.
How, 363/10, however.
How be it, 224/16, though.
How soever, 174/27, howsoever.
Humility, 411/32, humility.
Hunger, 433/16, hunger.
Hurt, 78/20, 452/23, hurt, did hurt.
Hurted, 560/11, hustled.
Husband, 415/14, 491/15, husband.
Hyde, 422/7, 518/26, hid.
Hyghe, 486/10, high.
Hyghe you, 559/29, hie, hasten, be quick.
Hylle, 400/23, hill.
Hyn, 482/10, 503/3, himself.
Hyn demanded, 40/26, demanded of him.
Hym I beseeche, 19/13, I beseech him.
Hym shold yll betyd, 61/29, it should ill betide him.
Hynge, 413/35, hung.
Hyt, 48/3, it.

I am borne, 316/32, I was born.
I am mayster for to begge brede, 499/10. This is one of Mawgis's playful remarks that he was one of the best of beggars, and that if fair means did not procure the bread, then his staff did.
I am not therto consentyngue, 52/15, I do not consent thereto.
I me complayne, 183/15, I complain me.
'I nether prayse you nor doubte you not,' 27/3. This seems to be a proverbial expression.
I shall maye, 181/24, I may, shall be able to,
I wold be reformed wyth rayson to, 159/26. I would reasonably conform to: Iape, 148/27, jape, play with, mock at.
Iawe, 562/33, jaw.
Ieoparde, 329/7, put in jeopardy.
I'll be it, 17/19, albeit.
Impreuenable, 21/24, 160/9, impregnable.
In, 210/20, into.
In a good hour, 132/27, an auspicious time.
In a scorne, 261/11, in scorn.

Hertes, 124/5, harts.
Hertes rose in their belies, 465/24, hearts rose in their bellies (apparently proverbial).
Hertly, 451/35, heartily.
Hertly sorowe, 429/25, sorrow at heart.
Herytanne, 404/4, inheritance, heritage.
Hete, 417/30, 452/13, heat.
Hether, 31/2, hither.
Heved, 194/30, held.
Heved yppe, 28/24, lifted up.
Hevered, 122/4, heaved.
Hey, 532/3, heavy.
Hey, 114/15, censorious, bullying.
Fr. 'Lourd . . . vanhansome, vn-vnciule, vnmannerlie.'—Cotgrave.
Hey to me, 492/23, heavy on me.
Hevyn, 112/29, 507/11, heaven.
Hevynes, 99/9, 143/9, heaviness.
Hey, 116/27; Hey, 431/1, hay.
Hidon, 121/10, hideous.
Hie roche, 73/8, high rock.
Highe voyes, 165/25, loud voice.
Him vpon, 564/30, upon him.
His body defendynge, 566/26, defending his body.
His hert rored in his beli for ioye, 261/7, he was so overjoyed, that his heart beat furiously.
His strokes cam right, 70/2, each stroke of his sword killed a knight.
Hit, 29/29, it.
Hode, 282/19, 466/12, hood.
Holde here, 154/11, look here !
Holde, 62/26, regain, recover.
Holden, 70/33, bound.
Holde, 46/14, 312/22, whole.
Holpe, 110/34, 384/1; Holpen, 159/5, 271/24, helped.
Honed, 215/32, hung, hanged.
Hongre, 115/14, hunger.
Hoote, 136/7, hot.
Horns, 137/27, clarions.
Horryble, 276/3, horribly.
Horsis tayles, 73/19, horses' tails.
Hosin, 372/17, stockings or socks.
Housson, 61/25, whoreson.
House of reliugyon, 280/22, 576/12, religious house.
In certayne, 22/12, certainly.
In the crosse, 62/25, on the cross.
In to the breste, 55/32, in the breast.
Incontinent, 67/6; Incontynente, 24/26, forthwith, immediately, at once.
Indygne, 152/27, unworthy.
Inhumanly, 54/15, inhumanly.
Joye atte my herte, 33/9, apparently a proverbial expression for 'be easy in my mind.'
Is abyden, 490/32, does abide.
It is no more spoken of him, 227/5, no more is said of him.
It semeth me, 21/32, it seems to me.
It shall repente you, 550/10, you will repent it.
Justynge, 141/9, jousting.
Justysye, 584/5, justice.

Kaytiff, 272/9, caiff.
Kechyn, 255/15, kitchen.
Kepe, 453/26, guard.
Kepe parlyamente, 202/6, hold counsel.
Kepe the wayes, 116/4, play the highwaymen.
Kepe well, 62/5, take care.
Kepe yon by, 512/23, keep close to.
Keped, 157/9, kept.
Kepeth, 302/24, hindereth.
Kerles, 480/13, carls, churls, knaves.
Keruers, 544/14, carvers (at the dinner table).
Knacked, 406/29, grashed.
Knaue, 264/20, knave.
Knewe, 549/13, heard of.
Knoewe the kyng, 87/25, let the king know.

Lady, 478/8, a chess term, meaning what is now called the queen. It is to be understood that, from the use to which the player put this lady, the 'pieces' employed in the game must have been of gigantic dimensions.
Laked, 80/10, lacked.
Langage, 172/25, language, speech.
Lapped, 281/31, wrapt up, covered, i.e. put back his entrails into his stomach, and bound them in.
Largenes, 143/30, liberality.
Late a goo, 449/20, lately, a short time back.
Lawde, 208/6, laud, honour.
Lawghe, 372/22, laugh.
Lawghe wyth it, 563/23, laugh at it.
Layd a donn, 291/28, laid low.
Layde, 227/31, laid hidden.
Layed, 421/15, laid, placed.
Leches, 568/31, physicians.
Ledded, 240/8, led, did lead.
Leden, 81/2, deal with.
Ledernes, 125/20, idleness, lethargy.
Leest, 289/13, least.
Leggeauns, 348/3, allegiance.
Leiser, 80/7, leisure.
Leke, 574/27, like.
Lended, 304/9, lent.
Lene, 116/24, lean.
Lene, 481/17; Lened, 418/21, lend.
Lenge, 529/30, long.
Lenger, 336/1, longer.
Lengthe, 55/12, 335/16, lengthen.
Lenyng, 320/30, leaning.
Lepe, 258/31, leapt; 522/4, leap.
Lepte, 337/3, leaped.
Lese, 99/6, 522/23, lose.
Lese place, 562/23, lose ground.
Lese the pryce for age, 170/4, be reckoned younger than he is.
Lesyng, 343/13, lying story.
Lete, 172/32, left.
Lete falle thyselfe, 302/25, let thyself fall.
Lete flee, 192/25, let fly.
Lete goo donn, 91/10, let down.
Lete renne theyr horses, 42/5, let their horses run.
Lete you wyte, 73/6, give you to understand.
Leten, 437/25, let.
Letre, 214/16, letter.
Glossarial Index.

Lettel, 269/14, 333/2, hindered, prevented, stopped.
Lettynge, 407/33, hindrance.
Lever, 33/13, value, estimate.
Lever, 37/17, sooner.
Leve, 481/15, leave.
Leve, 298/17, take, accept.
Leveht, 254/21, leaveth.
Lever, 14/12, sooner.
Leves, 116/23, leaves.
Leye, 45/14, 395/20, lay.
Leyed, 579/30, laid.
Leyser, 229/5, 383/17, leisure.
Liberte, 488/28, liberty.
Liff, 142/16, life.
Liff days, 473/27, days of life.
Lifte, 182/23, lifted.
Lifte, 233/17, left (side).
Ligeaunce, 155/11, allegiance.
Lighte, 291/12, lighted.
Lightely, 488/12, quickly.
Ligneage, 166/10; lygnage, 166/30, lineage.
Like it you that, 668/25, do you like that which.
Like wyse, 485/13, likewise.
Limmes, 72/28, limbs.
Linage, 499/14, lineage.
Lippes, 371/8, lips.
Liste, 59/7, care to.
Liste, 464/33, outgrowth, exrensence, tag of flesh. Fr. 'Liste', a small square out-inting brow, or member of a piller. *Le mol de l'oreille.* The lig, or list of th' eare.'—Cotgrave.
Litil, 177/27, little.
Littill, 400/23, little.
Littyll myle, 500/3, short mile (proverbial expression).
Littyll pace, 227/13, slow pace.
Live dayes, 555/6, remaining days.
Livelode, 489/8, livelihood, possessions.
Lodges, 49/31, 174/34, lodgings, or tents; 501/28, a reed hut.
Loke, 576/26, examine.
Loke, 569/33, look after and heal.
Loked, 315/11, looked.
Loked a traverse, 179/22, looked behind.
Loked ful angrily, 48/15, looked swollen up with anger.
Lound, 525/1; Lounde, 489/6, land.

Longed vnto, 193/5, belonged unto.
Longeth, 480/12, belongeth.
Lorden, 511/14, burden, bount, low fellow.
Lordsheyp, 90/4, lordship.
Loned, 70/10, loved.
Loughs, 200/25, laughed.
Lounes, 241/15, lungs.
Lowde, 503/13, loud.
Lust, 481/4; Luste, 370/20, desire.
Lyberte, 413/12, liberty.
Lyers, 113/9, liars.
Lyfte, 123/32, left.
Lyghtly, 89/33; Lyghtelye, 307/16, lightly.
Lynced, 215/34, likened.
Lynce, 24/23, lineage.
Luyen, 229/9, linen.
Lyon, 113/34, lion.
Lystes, 167/33, race-courses.
Lytyll, 133/6, little.
Lyuered, 54/23, delivered.
Lyvered, 214/15, delivered.

Machomet, 511/2, Mahomet, now usually transliterated Muhammad.
Machyned, 216/8, machinated.
Mad, 55/27, made.
Made a longe neke, 177/1, arched, or spread out his neck.
Made accorded, 153/21, agreed upon.
Made be called, 547/10, caused to be called.
Made com, 203/16, caused to come.
Made noo lenger dwelling, 76/24, stayed no longer.
Made noo grete ioye, 532/1, did not rejoice.
Made of it two peces, 562/20, cut it asunder.
Made swere my good fader, 289/8, made my good father swear.
Made them way, 453/35, made way for them.
Made to be redy, 62/23, made ready.
Made to open, 512/11, cause to be opened.
Magre, 86/14, Fr. *malgré*, in spite of; 86/16, damage.
Magyke, 349/7, magic, necromancy, enchantment.
Mahom, 515/8, Muhammad.
Mai, 393/5, may.
Maister, 265/27, master.
Make as mani men for to make the warre, 22/3, number as many men to carry on the war.
Make his benle to be cutte harde by the chynne, 186/2, shave him
(apparently proverbial).
Make the forwarde, 235/16, be in front.
Make to hym, 26/8, to tell him.
Male, 466/13, knapsack, bag. Fr. 'Male: f. A Male, or great Budget.'—Cotgrave.
Malencolye, 38/10, melancholy.
Maner, 486/13, 499/3, manner, matter, doings.
Man of werr, 74/20, man of war, warrior.
Maner of craftes, 150/10, handicrafts.
Manly, 102/16, manfully.
Manson, 178/27, common-man’s son, a derisive title (fils de proudomme).
Many of sheldes, 42/23, large number of shields.
Marbell, 282/7, marble.
Marchauntes, 458/24, merchants.
Marches, 138/33, countries.
Marre not, 140/32, do not endanger.
Marter, 96/27, slaughter.
Martyrdom, 164/14, trouble, torment.
Maryshall, 462/31, marshal, seneschal; in modern parlance, master of the ceremonies.
Masse, 325/18, mass, religious profession; not mace, or bishop’s pastoral staff, now called a crozier.
Massi, 374/26, massive.
Masteres, 288/31, without masters.
Masters gate, 76/33, the chief gate.
Mate, 478/9, a chess term; it seems here to mean 'check,' and not 'mate,' as the game is now played.
Mated, 478/22, checked.
Matere, 253/9, matter.
Mathe, 90/19, maketh, for 'made.'
Matynes, 573/13, matins, early morning (5 A.M.) prayers, according to the old ecclesiastical regimen.
Mauntelles, 212/2, mantles.
Mawgre, 229/1, in spite of. Fr. malgre.

Maye, 26/27, 232/21, be able.
Maye noo more, 563/25, may do no more, unable to do more.
Mayles, 142/1; Mayles, 267/24, links.
Fr. 'MAILLE: f. Mayle, or a linke of mayle, whereof coats of mayle be made.'—Cotgrave.
Mayne, 357/35, 445/28, many, number, lot, mass. Cf. 'the main of them are fools.'
Maytene, 545/15, maintain.
Maytended, 358/22, maintained.
Mayster theef, 461/1, chief of the thieves.
Maysters masons, 149/4, master masons.
Maystres strete, 94/5, principal street.
Meane, 134/33, 219/25, means.
Meddle, 22/14; Medle, 292/24, battle, fight.
Medlee, 37/10, meddle.
Medled, 43/5, mingled.
Medlers wylde, 576/2, wild medlars.
Medlynge, 289/1, fighting.
Medowe, 392/4, meadow.
Me dysplayseth, 373/18, it displeaseth me.
Meete, 123/29, meat.
Meiny, 426/26, many, train.
Meke, 409/34, make meek.
Meked hymselfe, 468/27, borne himselfe meekly.
Mele, 124/2, meal.
Medolously, 227/11, melodiously.
Men bryng, 74/22, men shall bring.
Men make often a rodde for theym selves, 97/11, a proverbial expression, apparently put into Charlemagne’s mouth to belittle him, because he would set down all his misfortunes to the fact that he had knighted the Four Sons.
Men of crafte, 27/25, handicraftsmen.
Mercy of you, 20/21, mercy on you.
Merueyliouse, 307/8, marvellous.
Merueyll, 32/35, marvel.
Merueyll, 36/33, marvelled.
Merueyll hymselfe, 53/22, marvelled within himself.
Merwelouse, 246/10, marvellous.
Merely, 227/3, Merrily.
Mery, 102/8, merry.
Glossarial Index. 611

Missager, 74/31; Messenger, 287/32, messenger.
Mete, 547/16, meet, sufficient.
Mewed, 152/6, fastened with a peculiar string (said of a hawk).
Mewle, 189/3, mule.
Meyne, 316/6, men, followers.
Meyne of knyghtes, 34/1, body or troop of knights.
Mischeef, 404/28, mischief.
Misdoone, 359/14, done wrongly, erred, offended.
Moche, 299/18, loud.
Moche glad, 542/6, very glad.
Moche honourably, 535/19, very honourably.
Moche humbly, 212/17, very humbly.
Moche sori, 515/6, very sorry.
Moche worthily, 45/23, very worthily.
Moche wroth, 36/3, very angry.
Moche for that, 661/13, something to mock at.
Mocyon, 290/15, motion, action of the mind.
Moeved, 136/27, stirred, moved.
Molified, 414/28, mollified.
Mone, 111/28, 312/27; Moone, 29/33, moan.
Moneth, 359/24, month.
Montagne, 90/26; Montayn, 145/13, mountain.
Moo, 328/7, more.
Mooste, 209/3, most, greater.
More dred, 190/24, more dreaded.
Morowe neste, 146/5, next morning.
Mortalle, 213/23, deadly.
Mote, 364/20, might.
Mountenaunce, 29/21, amount, value.
Moure, 565/32, Moor (i.e. became as black as a Moor).
Moved, 164/28, bestirred.
Mow, 89/26, 162/19, be able.
Mowes, 175/29, pesters.
Muche longe, 21/17, for a long time.
Murders, 435/18, murderers.
Murtrished, 261/22, murthered, murdered.
Musardes, 171/18, Fr. 'Musard: m. A muser, dreamer, or dreaming fellow... a pauser, lingerer, de-
Rerer, delayer... a man of no dispatch.'—Cotgrave.
Myske, 225/24, music.
Musselinge in the grounde, 426/1, grabbing with their faces in the ground.
Mussell, 561/25, muzzle, a horse's face.
Mystres, 187/33, musters.
Musyng, 425/25, complaint.
Myddes, 160/26, 304/5, 528/15, midst, middle.
Myght, 165/13, power, strength.
Mykyll, 99/4, much.
Myte, 35/4, miles.
Mylle, 493/14, mill.
Myldstone, 496/17, millstone.
Myte, 52/33, the spleen.
Myn, 190/6, mine.
Myn, 52/32, my (pl.).
Mynysche, 436/24, diminish.
Myracle, 582/31, miracle.
Myre, 420/18, miry, dirty place.
Myschaunt, 72/24; Myschaunte, 125/27, wicked.
Mysdoon, 481/28, misdone, done amiss.
Mysdyde, 344/23, did amiss.
Myslypght, 231/12, mishap.
Myspyrseed, 59/26, 347/2, mistook, mistaken, erred.
Myssayed, 174/17, missaid.
Myssed, 486/16, missed.
Mysshaped tyll vs, 375/11, ill-betided us.
Mystre, vb. 129/14, 141/5, behove, supply need, help; Mystre, n. 504/4, need. Fr. 'Mestier... need, lacke, necessitie, want, occasion for the vse, of a thing.'—Cotgrave.
Mystruste, 219/33, distrust.
Nacyon, 121/15, nation.
Nagge, 133/6, small horse.
Nanly, 72/30, specially.
Nature maye not lie, 424/13, nature is true to herself, i.e. the paternal instinct cannot be overcome.
Naturell, 36/30; Naturell, 83/17, natural.
Nayles, 473/33, nails.
Ne, 25/22, nor.
Ne, 168/18, never.
Nere goon, 565/23, nearly dead.
Nerer, 273/8, nearer.
Nethes, 206/21, nevertheless.
Never dayes of our lyues, 50/23, never again.
Never dethe was so sore solde ne so dere boughte, 38/25 (apparently a proverbial expression).
Never was such terrible vengeance taken, or misery caused, as was for the death of Lohier.
Never in my dayes, 228/26, never before.
Never wylle rype, 473/22, never will become ripe.
Newew, 188/6, nephew.
Newe, 63/26, newly.
Newe tyne, 89/25; next spring.
Nighed, 315/15, come nigh to.
Nigromancy, 24/6, necromancy, enchantment.
Nobilesse, 44/12, nobility, noblemen.
No moo but two, 239/13, no more than two.
None, 400/21, noon.
None, 454/3, the old ecclesiastical division of the day, viz. 3 p.m.
None otherwyse, 457/14, otherwise.
Nocse, 371/8, nose.
Norissyshed, 172/18, brought up, bred.
Norysshed, 114/26, 327/28, nourished.
Nostrelles, 176/32, nostrils.
Nother, 26/22, 60/25, 70/32, 217/12, neither.
Not well atte ease of his persone, 216/19, uneasy in his mind.
Noynted, 278/13, anointed.
Noynement, 169/29, ointment.
Noyous, 227/18, difficult.
Nye, 500/10, nigh.
Nygge, 69/15, night.
Nyghe was the sonne vnder, 45/35, the sun was well nigh set.
Nygramancer, 277/20, necromancer.
Nys nno, 452/12, is no.

Obeyeng, 550/13, obedient.
Obeyssance, 33/31, obeisance.
Obeyssannte, 166/10, obedient.
Oblacyons, 315/35, oblations.

Occupied, 579/1, used up.
Occysion, 45/16, 82/1, slughter.
Fr. 'Occision: f. An occasion, killing, slaying, murthering, slaughtering.'—Cotgrave. L. occidere, to kill; occasio, killing.
Of, 20/21, 73/33, on.
Of, 26/33, with.
Of, 49/25, off.
Of, 74/20, for.
Of, 210/6, by.
Of, 369/29, in.
Of a freshe, 110/23, again.
Of a heygthe, 73/26, from on high.
Of a longe whyle, 153/32, for a long time.
Of all four sides, 151/9, said of Reynawde, who was 'a noble gentleman of all four sides.'
Of ferre, 106/17, from afar.
Of fro y' tholders of hym, 81/7 from off his shoulders.
Of heyghe, 62/4, on high.
Of his behalve, 158/27, on his behalf.
Of hym, 472/1, by him.
Of length, 194/4, long.
Of lighte, 106/6, lightly.
Of newe, 288/24, afresh, again.
Of ryght of were, 457/15, by right of war.
Of that, 87/6, for that.
Of whens, 158/15, 441/13, from whence.
Offre, 298/17, offer.
Offrynges, 585/27, offerings.
'Often happeneth evil for a good turne,' 265/14. This is quoted as a proverb, and seems to mean that in doing a good turn for any one, evil often happens to the doer.
Olyue tree, 47/23, an emblem of peace.
Ones, 64/16, once, at one time.
On lyue, 29/11, alive.
Ononly, 116/22, only.
Ony, 116/5, 226/21, any.
On you, 306/14, on your account.
On, 113/13, 146/7, one.
Oolde, 452/12, old.
Ononly, 486/5, only.
Oost, 69/14, host.
Ootes, 116/21, oats.
Operacyon of the d'uyll, 80/2, the devil's work.
Oppyion, 192/19 opinion.
Or, 129/22, 269/5, before, ere.
Ordenaunce, 195/15, ordinance, order.
Ordered, 511/34, ordered, ordained.
Ordeyned, 188/25, made ready.
Ordeyned, 69/18, put under the leadership of.
Or ever, 160/3, 301/15, before.
Or ever a, 90/14, before a.
Or ener it be a moneth, 74/27, before a month's time.
Or evyn, 360/10, before evening.
Or oughte longe, 449/23, before long.
Oreyson, 226/19, orison.
Oryflam, 451/33, banner; Oryflame, 41/17, the banner of Charlemagne.
Othe, 112/6, oath.
Other, 215/9, either.
Other two, 220/13, two other.
Otis, 442/17, oats.
Overthrowe, 106/6, overthrown.
Oughte, 125/13, owe.
Oughte for to doo, 18/4, ought to do.
Our, 545/10, ours.
Oure, 55/31, hour.
Ourselxe, 78/15, ourselves.
Overhwarke, 238/28, cross-ways, athwart.
Over late, 546/2, too late.
Overmayster, 392/29, overcome.
Overronne, 177/20, overrun, beaten.
Over subtyll, 171/2, very cunning.
Overthynke, 418/23, think over.
Overtoke, 460/19, overtook.
Owen, 17/20, owe, pl.
Owen, 474/7, own.
Oweth, 173/33, owneth.
Owre, 27/16, 70/6, hour, time.
Owterage, 507/17, outrage.
Oxeforde, 3/19, Oxford.
Paas, 114/1, 174/23, 229/19, pace, step.
Pacyence, 233/28, patience.
Padde, 314/21, toad.
Pagnymes, 164/27, pagans.
Palays, 19/32; Paleys, 530/6, palace, castle.
Palfreys, 500/16; Palfrei, 558/7, horses.

Glossarial Index.

Palfrenyer, 257/17; Palfreynyer, 257/15, the keeper of the palfrey.
Fr. 'Palfrenier': m. A Groome of a stable; a Horse-keeper.'—
Cotgrave.
Palmer, 315/23, pilgrim.
Palster, 399/31, 466/12, a pilgrim's staff, shod with iron.
Pappes, 143/12, breasts.
Paremente, chamber of, 151/27, chamber lung with tapestry. Fr.
'Parement ... Arras, Tapistrie, or any costlie Hangings.'—Cot-
grave.
Parentage, 123/10, parental care.
Parleyll, 121/21, peril.
Parforce, 183/24, by force.
Parforce, 138/4, to make greater exertions than usual.
Parfornysse, 304/33, perform, finish.
Parliamente, 136/6, speech.
Parte of paradys, 297/27, hope of Paradise.
Party, 115/27, 143/27, part.
Parlyle, 243/5, peril.
Pase, 315/6, pace.
Patrymonyse, 327/3, patrimony.
Paulyon, 73/30, tent.
Payed, 483/23, paid.
Payer, 491/6, pair.
Paymente, 28/34, reward.
Paynym, 17/2, pagan, infidel, mis-
believer.
Peas, 26/26, 47/24, peace.
Pease, 207/19, appease.
Peasible, 489/1, peaceably.
Peces, 96/26, pieces.
Peeres, 441/1, pears.
Pelow, 370/32, pillow.
Penouncell, 153/24, pennon.
Pensifull, 419/27; Pencyfull, 120/21, pensive, thoughtful.
Penethecoste, 16/3, Pentecost.
Pepled, 150/11, peopled.
"Perce!" 515/16, "Persia!" (a war-cry).
Perced, 333/21, pierced.
Perceyve, 224/27, perceive.
Perdicyon, 224/13, perdition, de-
struction.
Perell, 291/19, peril.
Perell mortall, 429/29, mortal peril.
Peres, 481/29, peers, lords.
Persante, 502/20, Persian.
Persan, 515/8, pierce.
Persone, 498/27, person, body. The common phrase is, 'Frende, how is it wyth your persone?' = 'Friend, how are you?' (spoken to a man who is ill in bed).
Per te per, 392/5, peer to peer = hand to hand, equal to equal.
Pertrycles, 124/6, partridges.
Peryle, 220/19, peril.
Peyn, 259/20, pain.
Peyne, 248/24, trouble, effort.
Pighte, 191/11, pitched.
Pintre, 390/17, pine-tree, fir-tree.
Plaise, 509/31, please.
Plaisir, 248/24, to please.
Plain, 169/25, plain.
Plaise, 193/18; Playne, 195/31, plain (country).
Playne, 480/20, complain.
Playsant, 74/1, pleasant.
Playse, 29/23, 303/20, please.
Playsed them not well, 226/22, did not well please them.
Playseth, 159/28, pleaseth.
Playsure, 298/7, pleasure.
Plente, 448/20, plenty.
Plentuosse, 129/27, plentiful.
Pomell, 169/25, pommel.
Portcolisse, 149/15; Porte colisse, 518/1, portcullis.
Postle, 272/6, apostle.
Pouerli, 319/22, poorly.
Pouff (pouffe in ed. 1554), 25/18, puff.
Pour vnhappy, 270/19, poor unhappy [one].
Poure, 139/31, poor.
Poure estate, 49/30, evil condition, naked.
Poure herte myn, 131/3, my poor heart.
Pourest, 422/29, poorest.
Pourey, 547/14, provide.
Powre, 117/19, 220/27; Power, 242/19, poor.
Poynte me wyth, 230/18, point at me with.
Poyntment, 408/2, peace.
Poytrel, 197/15, breastplate of the armour or harness of a horse.
Praisers, 393/11, prayers.
Prate, 320/22, talk.
Prately, 282/7, prettily, neatly, deftly, that is, sivagely.
Praty, 150/1, pretty.
Praye, 200/2, pray.
Praye god, 74/25, pray to God.
Praysyne, 208/6, praise.
Prechinge, 480/23; Prechynge, 235/1, preaching, speaking.
Presedessours, 513/14, predecessors.
Preeff, 161/2, proof.
Preesse, 44/18, pressure.
Pren, 23/32, pren.
Presently, 287/4, at once, forthwith.
Preu, 43/30; Fr. preux.
Preu, 72/19, prove.
Prince covetons, 539/34, covetous prince.
Promytte, 32/27, 56/26, promise.
Protectyon, 388/18, protection.
Proneesses, 72/23, powercss (pl.).
Proffer, 507/16, proffer.
Proneffy, 127/11; l'rouffyte, 26/20, profit.
Prove vpon, 545/34, affirm, make known.
Proye, 164/12, prey, booty.
Prui, 79/30, 197/6, preux.
Pryce, 144/5, 175/23, prize.
Prynge, 369/34, prime; the old ecclesiastical division of the day; meaning 6 A.M.
Pryour, 382/6, prior.
Pryse, 32/13, praise.
Pryse, 577/14, price.
Pucell, 144/10, damsel.
Pulde, 485/33, pulled.
Punysshe, 485/20, punish.
Punyssyon, 30/24, punishment.
Purchase this matter, 151/13, compass, carry out, follow up this matter.
Purchased, 232/15, purchased; 560/27, bargained.
Purveyd, 388/13, 587/22, provided.
Purveyanne, 537/27, providence.
Put, 508/10, make.
Putted, 176/22, put, got ready.
Pycyured, 512/33, pictured, painted.
Pyetons, 45/15, 59/6, piteons, sorrowful.
Pyetonsely, 473/25, piteously.
Pykeaxe, 581/6, pickaxe.
Pygrymage, 156/15, pilgrimage.
Pyller, 369/26, pillar.
Pyller of marbell, 282/7, marble pillar.
Pyn tre, 239/20, pine tree.
Pyttched, 399/8, fixed.
Pyt, 236/34; Pytte, 327/18, pit.
Pyte in hym, 498/22, cause for pity in you for his sore sickness, or like Fr. 'Pitié, Pitie, ruth, compassion . . . charitie, kindnesse or tenderness of disposition' (Cotgrave) in the pilgrim himself.
Quarelle, 272/20, quarrel.
Quieke, 19/18, 62/6, 320/20, alive.
Quycke, 400/26, lively, running.
Quycke & deed, 518/11, 'dead and alive' is the modern equivalent.
Quyras, 241/32, 299/4, cuirass.
Quyte, 210/16, assure.
Quyte, 29/19, quit, free.
Quyte, 268/16, quits, equal.
Quyte, 412/23, quietly.
Quyted, 143/25, quieted.
Ranne hym agenst, 531/7, ran up to him.
Rather, 63/31, sooner.
Raight, 453/35, 505/12, struck.
Rainsom, 397/22; Rainsome, 144/21, ransom.
Rayled, 353/23, rallied, gathered together.
Raymentes, 492/4, raiment.
Rayle, 516/1, reins.
Rayson, 20/15, 225/7, 231/34, reason.
Reconysance, 218/11, recognition.
Recounted, 52/20, 72/7, 302/9, encountered.
Recontre, 307/19, encounter.
Recovered, 309/20, returned.
Recreaunte, 109/17, worn out.
Recule, 81/27, recoil.
Red, 211/11; Redde, 214/15, read.
Redi, 477/15; Redly, 468/23, readily.
Redoubted, 329/29, redoubtable.
Redly, 61/17, readily, easily.
Reede, 501/27, reeds to build a hut with.
Reest, 45/19, 229/21, the 'rest' for a spear.
Reformed, 159/27, conformed.
Refrayne, 407/2, refrain, restrain.
Refreynd, 457/20, refrained.
Refuce, 159/34, refuse.
Refute, 406/24, refute.
Reguilet, 325/19, unfrocked, turned out of the service of the Church. Lat, 'Regulatus Regulis seu lineis distinctus ; rayé, réglé. Ad regulam institutus, ordinatus; réglé.'—D'Arnis. 'Rayé . . . . Rased, scraped, crossed, or cleanse put out; also rayed, rewed, streaked, or skored all over.'—Cotgrave.
Reherce, 214/23, rehearse, tell.
Reherced, 142/31, rehearsed.
Rehere, 427/25, retell, recount.
Reioysse, 452/29, rejoice, reanimate.
Rekenynghe, 264/31, reckoning.
Rele, 198/21, 268/13, reel, stagger.
Reled, 314/35, reeled, rolled.
Relesse, 324/5, release.
Reliques & hallowes, 112/28, sacred relics.
Remedyed it, 213/27, willed otherwise.
Remedyeth, 407/29, remedies.
Remenaunt, 150/27, rest, remainder.
Remyse, 367/20, remit.
Remysed, 270/26, committed, retained, kept. Fr. Remettre is 'also, to remit, forgive, pardon, acquit, release, vnto.'—Cotgrave.
Renne, 141/25, 478/17, run.
Renne theym vpon, 77/21, run upon them.
Renomme, 39/9; Renommee, 132/15, 292/19, renown.
Rented, 553/5, rent.
Replenished wyth, 494/32, possessed of.
Replenysshed, 533/7, possessed.
Reproued, 65/30, 328/12, reproved, repented.
Requyre, 450/25, seek for.
Requyred, 547/23, requested.
Reregarde, 292/4, rear guard.
Resonnably, 297/6, reasonably.
Respyte, 336/1, respite.
Retche to you, 234/4, reach you.
Retourned, 70/12, returned.
Retourne, 301/15, return.
Retrete, 421/6, retreat.
Reynes, 117/6, reins.
Royse, 156/6, raise.
Rysedest, 336/15, raised.
Reyson, 38/13, reason; 546/31, reasonably.
Right a noble company, 548/29, a goodly host.
Right now, 304/10, just now.
Righted, 370/32, put right, put straight; 316/29, lifted.
Righted vp, 477/4, put all ready, right and proper.
Rightwys, 432/24, righteous.
Robbed, 371/7, 399/29, rubbed.
Roke, 478/12, a chess term, now called indifferently 'rock' and 'castle.'
Rokked a slepe, 376/21, rocked to sleep.
Rood, 113/13, rode.
Rore, 456/10, roar. (Apparently proverbial: 'Ye shall see all Fraunce in a rore & trouble.')
Rored, 261/7, made a noise ('his hert rored in his beli for joye').
Roten, 544/32, rotten.
Rotes, 116/23, 505/9, roots.
Rotyn, 489/27, rotten.
Rought, 63/10; Roughte, 141/33, wrought.
Roume, make hym, 79/19, give him, or leave him, room; give him a wide berth; keep out of his way. (The Four Sons don't want to fight their father.)
Rousty, 117/4, rusty.
Rouwte, 374/5, quantity.
Rowme, 245/9, make room.
Royame, 35/21, 68/7, realm.
Rybawde, 173/4, rascal, rogue.
Rybbes, 516/23, ribs.
Ryden, 233/30, ridden.
Ryghtnow, 332/17, just now.
Ryght sore traulyled, 77/20, very weary.
Ryghtwys, 207/17, right wise.
Ryght-wyse, 20/13, lawful.
Ryghtwysness, 114/33, righteousness.

Rype, 473/22, become ripe, ripen.
Ryvage, 221/21, bank, shore, waterside.

Sadel, 257/33, saddle.
Sadeles, 268/28, without a saddle.
Sadyllès, 117/5, saddles.
Sænige, 297/34, saying.
Sage, 18/1, 298/3, wise.
Said, 526/24, spoke, gave.
Salued, 24/16, 47/27, saluted.
Sapyne tre, 242/33, 323/20; Serpyn trees, 213/20. Fr. 'Sapin': in. A Firre tree.—Cotgrave.
Sarasyne, Sarasins, 16/8, 9; Sarassins, 127/4; Sarassyns, 163/11, Saracens.
Satysfye, 348/7, satisfy.
Sauff, 29/20; Sauff, 103/2, 192/30, safe.
Saufconduyte, 51/15; Sauff conduytyte, 385/25, safe conduct.
Sauff garde, 388/18, safeguard.
Sauldyer, 70/31, soldier.
Save, 545/17, saving.
Sawdours, 129/17, soldiers.
Sawe thus, 42/13, thus saw.
Sawmones, 264/13, salmon.
Saw the day, 389/25, woke up.
Sawtyng, 149/13, assault.
Sawtyng, 253/20, 457/31, assaulting.

Sayd, 162/15, spoken.
Sayed, 560/17, said.
Saye on hardely, 146/15, speak out boldly.
Sayen, 196/8, have said.
Scante, 438/35, scarcely.
Scanily, 460/9, scarcely.
Scape, 62/5, 330/16, escape.
Scapeed, 55/1, escaped.
Searmysshe, 87/15, skirmish.
Searmysshynges, 108/11, skirmishing.
Scarstee, 422/2, scarcity.
Scratcht, 491/33, scratched.
Seate, 308/1, harm, injury. A.S. *scendas*, to harm, injure.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Shalte, 363/26, in possession of; 320/4, seized.
Secretary, 210/8, secretary.
See, 327/3, 423/3 sec.
See his death, 225/9, see him put to death.
S葎, 316/16, 322/11, seeing.
Sege royall, 396/4, royal siege.
Seke, 498/29, sick, ill.
Seke so mocho, 157/24, go quickly and seek,
Sekeigne, 445/4, seeking.
Semblaunt, 230/24, semblance.
Semeth you, 480/5, seemeth to you.
Sendall, 154/25, 'A thynne stuffe lyke Sarcentett, and of a rawe kynde of sylke or sarcentett, but courser and narrower then the Sarcentett nowe ys, as my selfe canne remember.'—Francis Thynne, Animadversions, 1599, ed. Furnivall, 1875, p. 41.
Sende, 214/27, sent.
Sendynges, 17/18, summons.
Separe, 441/3, separate.
Sepulture, 200/26, 317/1, sepulchre.
Sepulturynge, 592/6, burying, burial.
Sergauntes, 478/10, sergeants.
Sermon, 252/4, speech.
Seryse, 325/5, service.
Sesne, 16/10. ? (Fr. 'Sener, 1. faire signe; 2. guerir.'—Hippeau. Fr. 'Sesne: Synode, assemblee ecclesiastique. Voyez Sesne.'—Roquefort. Fr. 'Sesne. The mother of wine, the white or mouldie spots which float on the top of old wine.'—Cotgrave.)
Set, 377/6, sit.
Setted, 245/23, 404/28, set, did set.
Settetth lyttle by me, 20/4, doesn't think much of me.
Set to your necke an halter, 233/28, put a rope round your neck.
Searthes, 387/4, sureties.
Shaked, 497/3, shook.
Shall goe bye-yege, 17/26, will go and besiege.
Shall wyll, 64/21, shall desire to.
Shalt you, 564/24, shalt thou.
Slayed, 377/14, made ashamed.
Sharpe, 141/23, fitesse.
She, 136/27, it (applied to a city).
Sheethes, 86/32, sheaths.
Shieldo paynted, 32/3, painted shield.
Shelynges, 187/29, shillings.
Shent, 423/33, punished, disgraced.
Shertes, 49/32, shirts.
Shet, 22/33; Shette, 72/31, shut.
Shevered, 259/2, shivered.
Shit, 335/25; Shitte, 312/18, shut, closed.
Shoke, 161/12, trembled; 272/3, 528/9, shook.
Shoke of, 217/5, shook with.
Sholdre, 241/34, 356/27, shoulder.
Shone, 460/4, shoes.
Shoren as monks, 279/31, shorn as monks.
Shortly, 558/16, quickly.
Shot of adventure, 221/31, chance shot.
Shote, 521/28, shoot.
Shotte of a bowe, 180/33, bowshot.
Shoned, 54/2, shoved (in the sense which is now considered vulgar).
Shrededly handlyd, 257/32, roughly handled.
Shrewdely, 421/7, harshly.
Shewedly, 476/33, evilly, badly.
Shrofe, 458/7, shrove, shrived.
Shrymke his eeres, 257/25, shrink, draw in, his ears.
Shryve, 335/10, shrive.
Shyfte, 274/8, 403/18, deal.
Shyffte hardlye, 301/13, deal, harshly.
Ship, 524/26, ship.
Signyfvcasion, 152/18, signification.
Sic, 458/6, sick.
Sikenes, 458/7, sickness.
Silkes, 524/31, pieces of silk.
Simple, 153/13, common, not of high lineage.
Sin, 64/5, 225/17, since.
Sithe, 68/4, since.
Skynne of parchemente, 280/3, parchment skin.
S'aked, 493/25, slackened, abated.
Slaughter, 453/31, slaughter.
Slaundred, 263/10, disgraced.
Slayen, 505/18; Slayne, 504/26, slain.
Slea, 18/29, 93/26; Sle, 230/21, slay.
Slea him quycke, 22/10, slay him alive.
Slepe, 459/4, sleep.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Sloppé, 466/12, a gown fit for a hermit.
Slangthe, 117/28, sloth.
Slyne, 336/26, slime.
Snable, 188/12, short.
Small lyyen clothes, 220/9, under-linen.
Small people, 187/31, poor, common people.
Smocke, 492/6, smock.
Smot, 61/26, smote.
Smote, 243/23, took.
Smote hym the heede of, 568/19, smote off his head.
Smyt, 273/3, smote.
Smyte, 231/28, smite.
Smyten, 370/5, smitten.
Sobbinges, 590/14, sobbings.
Socoured, 159/5; Socourde, 278/33, succoured, relieved.
Socoure, 40/30, succour, relief.
Sodaynly, 56/8, suddenly.
Soden, 437/21, seethed, boiled.
Sodenly, 304/26, suddenly.
Softe, 88/21, mild, quiet; 177/25, gently, slowly.
So hardy, 74/20, be so disobedient.
Solempnyte, 592/5, solemnity.
Somner nexte conynge, 29/22, next coming summer.
Sommer, 280/20, sumpeter horse, a baggage horse laden with provisions, i.e. he had not one with him.
Sumneres, 100/26, 145/2, sumpters, forage carriers.
Sommoche, 299/12, so much.
Somewhat, 511/27, something.
Somewhat more to do thanne I wende, 74/11, something more to do than I thought for.
Soner, 223/30, 320/20, sooner.
Song, 583/5, sung or sang.
Sonken, 177/2, sunk.
Sonne, 341/28, sun.
Sonne goon vnder, 68/32, the sun was set.
Soo moche, 26/14, so great.
Soper, 92/15, supper.
Sopped, 92/17, supped.
Soppes, 463/9, sopped bread.
Sore an angred, 28/22, he was very angry.
Sore apayred, 117/2, clad in sorry clothes.
Sore badde, 247/10, very wicked.
Sore charged for you, 209/9, h rd pressed on your account.
Sore depe, 116/2, a great way; 227/22, very deep.
Sore grete, 216/11, very large.
Sore lade, 232/4, sore laden.
Sore lene, 117/22, very thin.
Sore vengable, 52/26, very revengeful.
So requyre I to you the deth humbly, 34/19, Charlemagne thus prays to God for death.
Sori, 81/13, 181/7, sorry.
Sory, 571/19, sad.
Souked, 143/13, sucked.
Souldyournes, 256/27, soldiers.
Sounde, 564/1, whole.
Sounded of the noyse, 55/30, the noise of the battle resounded all around.
Supped, 551/28, supped.
Souper tyme, 87/3, 364/10, supper-time.
Soverayne, 216/26, sovereign.
Sowne, 176/21, sound.
Sowned, 217/1, sounded.
So worthy, 225/26, such worthy.
Sowre lone, 83/11, anything but a father's love.
Sped, 49/21, prospered.
Spede, 451/3, speed.
Spekyng, 492/11, speaking.
Spere went in peces, 141/11, spear broke in pieces.
Spered, 573/16, enquired.
Sperhawke, 152/6, sparrowhawk.
Sperkled, 352/6, dispersed.
Spoken to, 269/24, spoken for, i.e. in behalf of.
Spored after, 451/19, spurred after.
Spored hys horse terryble, 42/30, spurred his horse terribly.
Spores, 31/23, spurs.
Sporte, 525/12, go, ride.
Sported, 524/17, disported, gone about with.
Sported, 192/31, had sport with falcons.
Spryngynge, 369/14, uprising.
Spylle my selfe, 247/11, do myself more harm.
Spyrites, 352/10, spirit.
Stacke, 52/32, stuck.
Stakerde, 302/11, staggered.
Stale, 590/9, stole.
Stamped, 169/24, bruised.
Stampyng, 93/22, stamping, making a great row.
Stele, 561/19, steel.
Steles, 360/25, 417/17, steal; 381/9, stole.
Sterke deed, 45/4, stark dead.
Sterte, 328/13, started.
Sterying, 94/4, staring.
Stocke, 542/22, lineage.
Stode, 485/10, stood.
Stomackes, 28/5, stomachs.

Stomackes,' 485/10, stood.
Stomachs, 288/20, stomachs. But in this case the word seems to be used in a sarcastic sense: 'knewe their stomackes,' really meaning knew their minds.
Stoure, 42/21, stir, noise.
Stranged, 251/7, 324/8, stranded.
Streme, 582/34, stream.
Strengest, 208/23, strongest.
Strengthed, 370/22, sound, deep (sleep).
Stronge, 175/28, strife.
Strif, 111/27, 204/1, strife.
Stronge, 370/22, sound, deep (sleep).

Suspectyon, 148/23; Suspectyon, 531/20, suspicion.
Sustenanuse, 437/29, sustenance.
Suster, 144/1, sister.
Susteyned, 540/30, sustained, maintained.
Susteyned vp, 505/1, propped up.
Swan that syngeth that yere that he shal dye, 225/27, the swan's dying note.
Swanne, 511/4, swan.
Swete, 527/4, sweet.
Swete, 158/16, sweet: 'We ben of the swete Praine.'
Sweeted, 31/32, sweated.
Swetly, 540/6, sweetly.
Swoninge, 466/18, swooning.
Swonne, 491/17; Swonne, 80/11, 224/15, swoon.
Swynes, 505/6, swine.
Symb, 18/13, kindred, relationship.
Syghe, 372/3, sigh.
Syke, 294/16, sick.
Syn, 19/5, since.
Syngye, 225/23, singing.
Syre Peter, 209/30. This seems to be a synonym for a "secretary," like "Sir John" for a "priest."
Syth, 32/15, sit.
Syth, 66/8, 192/3, since.

Tables, 368/33, the game of backgammon.
Taccoupysshe, 494/25, to accomplish.
Take, 247/19, 374/2, 479/17, taken.
Take, 136/29, put.
Take, 546/20, give.
Take an ende, 87/31, be ended, come to an end.
Take kepe, 101/13, take care.
Take the head from the body of him, 19/22, a roundabout way of saying they would cut his head off.
Take the lift fro me, 306/21, kill me.
Take to them, 228/4, given to them.
Take wages, 216/14, take service.
Taken lond, 525/2, come to the shore.
Taken to you my men in your kepyng, 164/1, given my men into your keeping.
Taketh us to mercy, 88/28, granteth us mercy.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 619
Tapres of wexe, 586/15, wax

tapers.
Tapysery, 154/24, tapestry.
Tarre alle his heres, 34/16, tore his
hair.
Taried, 582/33, stayed.
Tarieng, 69/13, waiting.
Tarre, 78/3, tarry.
Taryed, 18/31, delayed.
Taverners, 150/14, tavern-keepers.
Telled, 174/4, told.
Tempered, 169/25, mixed.
Tende, 539/28, tend, look after.
Tendred, 430/22, became tender.
Tenour, 547/18, meaning.
Teres, 99/7, tears.
Thabbot, 282/13, the abbot.
Thacquytauusen, 112/6, the acqui-
tance.
Thactes, 4/7, the acts.
Thadmirall, 502/28, the admiral
(i.e. commander-in-chief).
Thalowes, 560/5, the hallows, i.e.
sacred relics.
Than, 453/3, then.
Thandes, 524/10, 500/10, the hands.
Thanked be god, 550/30, to God be
thanks.
Thanswere, 257/21, the answer.
Tharchbysshop, 588/7, the arch-
bishop.
Tharsons, 345/2, the seat.
That, 88/26, 136/9, what; 523/3,
545/28, that which; 452/14, 516/25,
who.
That that, 218/30, that which.
The, 72/21; ? ye = yea.
The, 26/1 (thee in ed. 1554), 36/29,
thee.
The whiche, 546/18, who.
Theder, 470/29, thither.
Theefes, 361/19, thefts.
Theef, 184/20; Thefe, 448/25, thief.
Themperour, 70/27, the emperor.
Thende, 74/25, 232/30, the end.
Thentente, 207/2, the intent.
Thentre, 95/7, 518/28, the entry.
Ther, 85/5, their.
Ther vpon, 398/21, thereupon,
There agenste, 470/28, thereagainst.
Therefro, 333/2, therefrom.
There-out, 371/5, therefrom.
Therele, 72/3, the earl.
Theropon, 213/4, thereupon.
Therth, 80/29, 336/26, the earth.
Theves, 125/33, thieves.
Thevyyn, 547/9, the evening.
They, 90/19, those.
They two togyder, 301/13, the two
together.
Theyn, 58/5, them, those.
Theymyselmes, 39/3, themselves.
Thiderward, 287/28, thitherward.
Thie, 303/3, thigh.
Thile, 540/8, the isle.
Thilke, 577/24, those.
This during, 23/33, 53/35, ap-
parently a variation of "This
hanging." See Hanging.
Thise, 78/5, these.
Thistory, 111/20, the history.
Tho, 292/21, those, them.
Tho ther, 44/8, thother = the others
= les autres.
Thoccasion, 111/22, 286/1, the occa-
sion.
Thoder, 283/6, the other.
Thofflyve, 326/10, the office.
Tholde, 152/33, the old.
Thone, 238/11, the one.
Thonour, 204/18, the honour.
Thoos, 186/11, those.
Thoost, 70/14; Thooste, 191/15,
the host, the army.
Thordre, 541/21, the order.
Thorouhge, 178/17, 467/32, through.
Thorse, 564/21, the horse.
Thorouge and thorouge, 56/11,
through and through.
Thother, 42/26, the other.
Thoughte, 206/10, anxiety, trouble.
Thour, 513/30, the hour.
Thred, 173/28, thread.
Threte, 390/27, threaten.
Thrytyng, 19/30, 207/31, 279/15,
threatening.
Throte, 366/30, throat.
Throuhge, 461/8, through.
Thurste, 171/14, thirst.
Thwerled, 32/4, twirled, handled.
Thye, 236/6, thigh.
Thyke, 103/33, thick.
Thyren, 514/3, the iron.
Thystories, 8/15, the histories.
To, 159/15, from; 160/24, so; 83/
25, 496/21, too; 50/4, with.
To a knyghte, 163/6, a knight.
To brost, 478/13, to burst.
To bro ten, 79/11, burst, broken.
To cut, 392/25, lewed.
To day in the morning, 249/11, this morning.
To fore, 186/24, 310/17, before.
To hymwarte, 568/4, towards him.
To sore, 566/4, to make angry.
To stamped, 392/26, trampled.
To the regard, 27/31, in regard.
To the werke warde, 582/8, towards the work.
To their above, 565/30, had gained the victory.
To warde, 461/20, towards.
To wyte, 163/11, to know.
To gyder, 47/3, together.
Toke, 145/10, captured.
Toke grete debate, 341/16, made much talk.
Toke hym, 566/32, took to him, i.e. gave him.
Toke hym selfe for to wepe strongly, 54/4, began to weep.
Toke on, 143/14, went on; 494/1, put on.
Toke the see, 530/20, put out to sea.
Toke theym the hande, 217/20, took them by the hand.
Toke togyder, 429/26, pulled togethether.
Toke up his bede, 249/33, lifted his head up.
Toke vp his siege, 493/10, raised the siege.
Tomble, 478/11, tumble.
Tonge, 283/16, tongue.
Too, 274/33, toe.
Toren, 62/11, torn.
Torne, 168/19, 265/15, turn.
Torned, 170/6, changed.
Touremented, 502/23, tormented, Tourned, 486/20, turned.
Tournement, 34/18, torment, trouoble, tribulation.
Towre, 479/4, tower.
Transfigured, 170/2, disfigured, disguised.
Trase, 310/21, trace, track, trail.
Trase, 298/30, trace.
Trason, 51/14, treason.
Tratour, 25/10, traitor.
Travers, 576/8, diameter, crossroads. Fr. 'Travers... crosse, crosse-wise. Traverse: f. A cross-way, or by-lane, which leads out of the highway.'—Cotgrave.

Glossarial Index. 621

Traveyle, 116/18, 518/10, trouble labour.
Traveylled of our pelyngrimage, 503/23, journeying as pilgrims.
Trayle, 449/35, trail (v.).
Trayson, 90/20, 189/32, treason.
Traytorsly, 61/12, traitorously.
Traytour approved, 287/31, approved traitor.
Traytores sarrasyns, 164/17, Saracen traitors.
Traytte, 87/20, treaty.
Trayuyelle, 70/30, cause much trouble or travail.
Treen, 463/5, wooden: "treen dyshe" = dish or bowl made out of a tree.
Trembleth, 527/28, trembles: "All the blade in my body trembleth."
Trewaunt, 490/5, truant.
Trewes, 142/9, trace.
Trewson, 230/8, 373/21, treason.
Treyour, 371/5; Treysur, 372/18, treasure.
Triews, 106/18, trace.
Tronpettes, 69/34, trumpets.
Trotte, 280/1, trot.
Trout, 97/31, truth.
Trowed, 43/27, thought.
Troweth, 21/34, thinketh.
Truamtes, 478/22, truants.
"True blood may not dye," 248/25, a proverb.
Trasse, 395/30, 447/11, to make Trussed, 98/16, made ready; 517/19, placed.
Truste, 166/33, trusting.
Tryewes, 51/32, trews, promises of safety.
Tryews, 166/6, truce.
Turques, 348/14, Turks.
Tuycion, 358/22, tution.
Twayne, 442/23, twain, two.
Two and two, 235/14, fight in pairs of two.
Two & two at ones, 505/6, four at a time.
Two tymes, 67/14, twice.
Twynkeling, 586/15, twinkling.
Twys, 46/32, twice.
Tylunges, 193/13, tidings.
Tymbre, 517/17, timber.
Tyme forthon, 429/16, time to come.
Tyme shal be, 546/22, at the proper time.
Tyme ynough, 173/4, in time.

Unarmed them, 87/2, took their arms off.

Unto, 212/29, until.

Valop, 229/21, wallop, gallop.

Valure, 374/29, value.

Valyannte, 31/18, valiant.

Valyauntnes, 16/11, valour.

Varienge, 203/29, varying.

Vassall, Vassayll, 172/20, 30, varlet.

Vasseylles, 69/22, vassals.

Vaunced, 273/2, 350/5, advanced.

Vawte, 581/1, vault.

Vayne, 437/26, vein.

Vaynquyshed, 428/22; Vaynqueshed, 569/20, vanquished.

Vaysall, 25/15, vassal.

Vengable, 412/6, revengeful.

Vengably, 453/15, vengefully.

Vengance, 59/30, vengeance.

Venge, 244/16, avenge.

Venison, 463/14, venison.

Veray certeyn, 60/13, the truth.

Vereli, 224/22, verily, truly.

Vertuous, 451/29, strong, powerful, valiant.

Very frenshe, 191/18, nothing but French.

Vitupered, 182/2, reproach.

Vunbrayed, 241/30, taken in umbrage.

Vnboked, 42/25; Vnbokled, 343/23, unbuckled.

Vnbryo, 377/13, taken umbrage at us.

Vnder couerte, 77/29, under cover.

Vnderstonde, 483/26, learn.

Vndertake, 549/24, undertaken.

Vndon, 459/24, undone.

Vnhappe, 38/24, mischance.

Vnhapp, 194/7, unlucky.

Vnhosed, 371/8, took off his hose or breeches. Fr. 'Deschaussier...to vnhoose, or draw off hosen.'—Cotgrave.

Vnlade, 525/3, unload.

Vnmayled, 73/10. Fr. 'Desmailler.' To vnlinke, vndoe, cut in peeces, or hacke to peeces, a coat of mail. Desmaillé...Vnmailed; vnlinked; vnloked; vndone, cut in peeces, hacked unto peeces, as a coat of mail.'—Cotgrave.

Vnstopped hys eyen, 306/10, took the bandage off his eyes.

Untrue, 387/11, untrue.

Vntrewth, 63/6, untruthful.

Voyde from our sighte lightely, 76/21, quickly begone from our sight.

Voyde oute of my presence, 60/21, begone!

Voys, 44/17, voice.

Vturi, 514/7, utterly.

Vyage, 155/18, voyage.

Vgoriously, 268/15, vigorously.

Vlayne, 516/8, villain.

Vys, 61/26, face.

Vysages, 320/3, faces.

Vyser, 561/9, visor.

Vytaylers, 188/13, suppliers of victuals.

Vytaylles, 74/23, victuals.

Vytnerpered, 337/15, vituperated, reviled.

Waast, 350/7; Wast, 565/3; Waste, 319/33, waist.

Wages, 216/14, service.

Waloped, 305/17, galloped.

Wan, 303/13; Wanne, 318/32, won.

Warde, 463/28, guard, station.

Warranted (wraunted in ed. 1554), 27/9, guaranteed.

Was betyng a grete rierer, 75/34, a great river was beating.

Was force to yonnet, 562/16, Johnnet was forced.

Was to his above, 529/17, had overcome.

Wasse, 61/2, wash.

Wash'd, 61/2, washed.

Wasshed their woundes to them all, 278/12, tended all their wounds.

Wasted, 19/28, destroyed.

Wasteth, 525/24, destroyeth.

Waye, 227/28, road.

Waye crossed in four, 278/28, four cross roads.

Wayte, 558/30, wait, stay.

Wayte after pyte of liyn, 423/5, wait for pity from him.

Waytyng after, 558/22, waiting for.

Wed, 469/16, garment, robe, cloak.

Weke, 55/18, week.

Wele, 290/25, 416/12, weal, good.

Well, 47/1, wi l.

Well, 246/33, 501/32, quite.
Well, 528/14, better.
Well contente, 557/5, satisfied.
Well defensable, 148/15, well to be defended.
Well depe, 238/25, deeply.
Well ferre, 176/26, far away.
Well folyshly, 483/20, very foolishly.
Well garnysshed, 106/5, well armed, prepared for any emergency.
Well gladde, 490/7, very glad.
Well greved, 506/2, well caused to grieve.
Welle honestly arayed, 491/17, dressed very handsomely.
Well lik, 177/15; Well like, 464/5, much like.
Well like a beste, 234/1, most like a beast.
Well nyce, 159/16, overmuch nice.
Well rayson, 225/7, with reason; 231/34, good reason.
Well shape, 232/9, well shaped.
Well sure, 221/23, well assured.
Well trouth, 159/1, good truth.
Well woute, 178/21, well used.
Wel ye wote, 20/13, you know well.
Welowe, 517/20, willow.
Wene, 26/33, think.
Wente hym agenste, 500/24, went up to him.
Wente nyghe out of his wytte, 62/4, was beside himself.
Went to their mete, 287/13, sat down to dinner.
Wentled, 475/11, tossed about all night in his bed, not being able to sleep.
Wepyn, 571/21, weapon.
Were, 31/17, 'wene, 'think.'
Were, 492/7, wear.
Were not, 273/14, were not here.
Were take, 73/15, was taken.
Wered, 117/8, 399/33, wore.
Werke, 582/8, work.
Werof, 106/3, whereof.
Were, 72/15, make war.
Wery, 161/33, weary.
Weryes, 271/18, wearies.
Werynes, 77/23, weariness.
Wether, 91/30, whither.
Wex, 61/13, 476/20, wax, became.
Wexed, 226/20, waxed.
Wexen, 170/4, wax.
We be not that, 529/26, it is not us that.

Wedryng, 524/29, the weather.
Weete, 226/20, wet.
Whan, 163/10, even if.
What we ben, 78/3, what we are.
What wynde brought you hider, 162/21 (apparently a proverbial expression).
Whatche, 69/30, watch, guard.
Where thrughe, 445/10, through which.
Wheroute, 428/28, wherefrom.
Whete, 187/28, wheat.
Whether they are drawn, 66/4, whither they are gone.
Whiche, 43/14, 512/1, who; 547/27, whom.
Whiles, 33/7, whilst.
Why for, 546/5, ?pour quoi, because.
Whytle, 28/10, wilt thou.
Whysontyde, 184/2, Whitsuntide.
Wilde fyre, 529/13, wild fire (a war term).
Wisly, 333/4, wisely.
Wit, 20/14, know.
Wold he had, 301/17, would that he had.
Wolde, 47/2, would; 479/28, should.
Wonde, 143/10, wened, thought.
Wonne, 238/1, won, procured.
Woode, 28/22; Wood, 267/32, mad.
Worde bytynge, 409/25, biting word.
Worde fowll, 538/19, foul word.
Worship, 329/26; Worsyp, 77/16, 495/12, honour.
Worship your better, 538/20, honour your superiors.
Worsypd, 315/34, worshipped.
Worshipfully, 34/28, properly, honourably.
Worsse shalle retourne vnto hym, 39/17, he shall be worsted.
Worst dooth, 78/19, doth most harm.
Worthe, 442/3; 'take a worthe,' 'take for what they're worth.
Wote, 327/33, know.
Wounde mortall, 356/9, mortal wound.
Wounte, 215/19, 463/29, wont.
Woushesauff, 508/32, vouchsafe.
Woxen, 496/24, waxed.
Wrang, 34/15, wrung.
Wrapped, 357/20, covered.
Wrastle, 565/3, wrestle.
Wrestled, 320/1, wrestled.
Wrathe, 78/26, quickness.
Wronge wawe, 540/1, wrong course.
Wrongen, 37/26, wrung.
Wroth for it, 150/23, wroth on account of it.
Wrothe to them, 50/4, wroth with them.
Wulff, 423/3, wolf.

Wulwarde, 574/2. 'Woolward, in wool only, without linen, a dress often enjoined as a penance by the church of Rome.'—Schmidt, on 'I have no shirt; I go woolward for penance' (Love's Labour's Lost, V. ii. 717).

Wycket, 471/2; Wykett, 467/14, wicket.

Wylde, 401/7, wild.
Wylde bores, 216/11, wild boars.
Wyll fyghte, 174/2, in the habit of fighting (intending to imply that Bayard was a vicious horse).
Wyll do knowe, 74/22, will cause to make known.
Wylle, 458/21, desire.
Wymen, 131/9, 164/13, women.
Wyndowes, 519/24, windows.
Wynne, 160/12, win, gain, carry off.

Wyselli, 38/34, wisely.
Wysesst wyse, 454/17, wisest manner.
Wysly, 539/19, wisely.
Wysse, 38/8, washed.
Wysse after, 242/8, wish for.
Wyssshed, 54/5, 496/13, wished.
Wyte in bores, 357/13, witchcraft.
Wyte, 27/22, know.
Wyte it for trouth, 44/9, know it for the truth.
Wyte vs of cowardues, 78/4, deem us to be cowards.
Wyth, 586/15, in.
Wyth all, 241/34; Wyth alle, 37/10, withal.
Wythdrawe, 352/12, withdrawn.
Wythin, 357/16, within. 'Ye shall not goo oute of (= from) wythin,' = 'Ye shall not go outside,' i.e. 'Thou shalt not attempt to escape.'

Wythout to make any noyse nor crye, 78/24, without making any noise.

Wythout, 560/23. It means that though they fought so hard that their spears broke in pieces, still none of them fell off their horses.

Wythoute to be dyshonoured, 470/25, without dishonour.
Wythoute to doo, 553/15, without doing.

Wythstandyng, 566/24, also:ob:it. Wytsoundaye, 544/19, Whitsunday. Wyttes, 408/9, wits.

Ye, 64/7, 511/26, yea, yes.
Ye, 17/2, 546/30, y* = the.
Yede, 444/22, went.
Yeelde, 66/2, ailed; A.S. eilede.
Yefte, 129/14, 153/3, 495/15, gift.
Yeles, 74/32, 142/15, yield, yield up.
Yelde, 495/25, shield, help. It occurs in the phrase, 'And God yelde you!'

Yelled, 304/9, returned.
Yelled, 458/21, desire.
Yemen, 93/7, grooms.
Yere, 271/24, year, time.
Yet wel remembered, 553/11, still recollect.
Yf it be longe of you, 50/23, if it be your fault.

Yll, 173/9, evil.
Yll a hungred, 367/29, sore hungry.
Yll chere, 220/28, evil cheer.
Yll contente, 496/17, not well satisfied.
Yllumyned, 336/26, illumined.
Yrke, 210/10, ink.
Ynough, 111/21; Ynowe, 303/9, enough.

Yoman, 123/27, 150/10, 478/29, yeoman.
You, 82/11, John.
Yonge, 420/26, young.
Yonglynge, 162/18, youngling, young man.
You, 142/8, thou.
Youghte, 244/5, youth.
Your hertes ioye, 554/9, joy of your heart.

Yrefully, 230/21, full of ire.
Yren, 363/27, iron.
Yrende, 460/13, shod with iron.
Yrens, 369/24, fetters.
Yron, 156/7, iron.
Yssue, 250/3, 446/11, issue, way out.
Yuor, 61/22; Yvery, 478/8, ivory.
NAME INDEX.

[Note.—In the following pages the letter C. stands for Charlemagne, the King of France. The letter R. stands for Reynawe, Duke of Mountalban.]

Affryque (Afric), 436/8.
Alaffre upon the sea, a province of Spain, 327/3. [? Algarve in Portugal.]
Alais, Alays, the watchman at Mountaynforde, 75/15.
ALARDE, THE SECOND SON OF AYMON, at the court at Paris, 16/24;—is knighted by C., 31/21;—he comes to C.’s court at Paris, 59/16;—he slays Thierry, 80/28;—he is right sorry to see their folk go back, 81/28;—he slays the Earl of Estampes, 84/24;—his horse wakes him, and thus reveals the treachery of Hernyer, 93/7, and he tells R., ‘We ben betrayed!’ 93/23;—he declares he will not separate from his brethren, 98/13;—he tells R. to cheer up, 99/12;—his horse is slain under him, 108/13;—he mounts Bayard behind R., 109/3;—he mounts Esmenfray’s black horse, 110/16, and slays Sir Anfray, 110/20;—he is forced back by Aymon’s folk, 110/32;—he counsels that they all should go and see their mother, and try to obtain service with some great lord, 118/11;—he counsels R. not to set his hand on Aymon, 126/22;—seeing Borgons slay one of R.’s men, he becomes wroth, and speedily tells a ‘paynym’ sterke deed, 138/12;—thinking that R. has been slain, he makes grievous moan, 139/13;—he rejoices much when he meets with R., 143/5;—he advises R. to seek permission to build the castle afterwards called Mountalban, 147/17;—he well advises R. concerning his marriage, 153/6;—he recommends R. to the care of Mawgis, 170/19;—he tells his followers to come out of their ambush, 179/23;—he tells his brethren to have no fear as long as R. can ride Bayard, 185/22;—he thanks King John for the gift of the scarlet mantles, 218/4;—he reminds R. how often C. had taken oath to bring them to a shameful death, and counsels that they should not carry out King John’s instructions, 219/23;—he joyfully sings a new song when going to Vancoloures, 225/21;—he questions R. wherefore he weeps, 226/25, and bids him bear out a good face, 227/4, advising him to join in the harmony, 227/7;—he discovers that they have been betrayed, 228/18;—thinking that R. has betrayed them, he induces Guycharde and Richard with himself to attack R., 230/4, but they speedily repent, 230/28;—he reproaches R. for having betrayed them, 230/32;—he advises that they should shrieve themselves, 232/28;—he tells Guycharde that he had been well deceived for doubting R., 235/20;—he bewails when R. is overthrown, 236/3;—he wins a horse, and also a wound, 238/1;—he promises to help in the rescue of Guycharde, 239/25;—he deems it unwise to search for Richard.
243;'3:—he carries Richard to the top of the rock, 245/25;—he is angered because so many knights come against them, 246/4;—he advises R. to go to Mountalan to procure help, 246/23;—not wishing that the Frenchmen should be dismayed and run away at the coming of Mawgis, he advises that they descend to the bottom of the rock, and re-engage in the battle, 250/32, which is forthwith done, 260/7;—he tells R. not to be overhasty, for that Ogier had well helped them that day, 269/16;—he thanks Ogier, and advises R. to return and see how it is with Richard, 269/23;—his wounds are cured by Mawgis, 278/12;—he curses King John, and also Roland, if the latter onsets to hang the former, 287/27;—he tells R. he will not go to help King John, 290/19, but relents and says he will never fail R., 291/31;—he meets with R., and asks him why he makes such sorrow, 310/24, is told of the capture of Richard, 310/27, and his sorrow therefor, 310/32;—he reproaches it to R. for coming to succour King John, 311/9, and counsel's Guyocard to cut off King John's head, 311/14;—he stays R. from going to C., 311/28;— he acquaints Mawgis of the capture of Richard, and how R. would go to C. to rescue him, 312/6;—he kisses Aymonet, and acquaints the Lady Clare of the capture of Richard, 313/15;—he advises his brethren to put themselves in ambush, 323/1;—he counsels R. that C. should be asked once for all if he will grant peace;—if not, then detain him prisoner, 403/8;—he summons his folk to defend the castle, 420/12;—he counsels that Bayard should be killed for food, 429/20;—he beseeches R. to kill Bayard for the love of God, 436/33;—while waiting to hang Richard of Normandy, he sees the three dead bodies flung out of window, and acquaints R. thereof, 479/1;—he takes leave of R., begging him to come again shortly (the other brothers were too much cut up by sorrow to take leave of him), 492/22;—he comes before C., and tells him how R. has gone to the Holy Land, 494/19;—he tells R. that his wife and children are whole and sound, 531/23, but seeing that R. holds him so short, he recounts how the Lady Clare had joined away and died, 532/9;—he counsels that they depart speedily for Paris, 548/25;—he discovers the departure of R., and makes great moan, 573/21;—he and his brethren are informed by a pilgrim of the great miracles being worked at Croyne, where the body of R. is honourably tended by the Archbishop of Cologne, 586/24—588;—he and his brethren, feeling sure that the corpse is that of R., make great sorrow and set out for Croyne, 589/11;—he explains to the Archbishop of Cologne that the corpse is that of Reynawde of Mountalan 'the right worthy knight,' 591/13.

Alebrondy, king, advises Barbas to let R. alone, 516/9.
Alexander the Great, his horse Bucephalus compared with Bayard, 31/30;—never was heard such history since his time as this, 68/2.
Almagne, Hughie of, taken prisoner by R., 346/10.
Almanyas (Germans) at the Court at Paris, 16/19;—33/15;—43/4.
Alphinias, the Earl of, placed in front of the second gate at Mountayneford, 77/3.
Amaney, 81/6, one of R.'s knights, slain by Aymon, 81/6.
Anfray, Sir, one of Aymon's knights, slain by Alarde, 110/20.
Anguenon, the Earl of, slain by R., 237/13.
Ansom, the Duchy of, offered as a bribe to Solomon of Breton, 325/29.
Assom, the Earl of, counsels King John to yield the Four Sons to C., 205/19, and is slain by R., 231/32.
Anthony, the old Earl, traduces R., and advises King John to yield the Four Sons to C., 206/32.

Antony, the Earl, wounded by Richard. 309/17.

Appolin, the god of Barbas, 516/7. [It is not quite clear what god is here meant: can it mean Appollion? Further on, Barbas swears "By Apollo!"]

Ardeyne, 16/22, see also Aymon, and Dordon: the great forest of, 65/5, where the Four Sons take refuge, 103/20;—the fight in, between Aymon and his Sons, 107—111.

Ardeyne, Margerye, Duchess of (wife of Aymon, and mother of the Four Sons), right gladly welcomes her husband and children, 36/13, advises R. to honour his king, and upbraids Aymon for departing from C., 36/31, counselling him to serve the king. 37/12;—she is grieved with R. for slaying Berthelot, and advises them to flee away, giving them her treasure, 62/15;—she weeps when she sees her husband, and tells him she knows not where the Four Sons have gone, 66/1;—she upbraids Aymon for fighting against their children, 114/18;—she is frightened when she sees her sons, and weeps for pity of them, 121, but recognizes and embraces them, 122;—she makes them and their three knights good cheer, 123;—she prays Aymon to let the Sons stay that night, 124/20;—she causes baths and clean raiment to be made ready for her sons, and clothes them in rich apparel, 129/1, advises them to go to Spain, 129/26, swoons when they set out, 130/29, and mourns grievously for them, but is comforted by Aymon, 131/3.

Ardeyne, the city of, the Four Sons come to, 120/1;—they set out therefrom with six hundred men, 131/1;—the Four Sons arrive at, after the abandonment of Mountalban, 442/25;—C.'s host arrives at, 447/23;—the battle near, 452—455;—R. and his folk retreat within the gates of, 455/2;—C. lays siege to, 455/20;—Mawgis comes to, 462/12, and departs from, 467/20;—C.'s messengers arrive at, 470/31, and depart from, 472/33;—great joy at, when R. returns from the Holy Land, 530/28;—it is given by R. to his son Yonnet, 570/19.

Ardocke, one of the treacherous barons ambushed in the Isle of Our Lady, 553/25.

Arles, conquered by Borgons, 132/22.

Armony, 187/9.

Aspes, otherwise called Myleyne, 70/2.

Aubeforde, Guyon of, one of C.'s peers, 69/22.

Aultbery, 80/18.

Avynyon (Avignon), Godfray the Earl of, joins C. at Paris, 187/3.

Aygramounte, description of the castle of, 21/20;—the battle at, between Duke Benes and Lohier, 27—29.

Aygramounte, Duke Benes1 of, had not done the bidding of C., 17/9;—he, his son Mawgis, and his wife are unkindly spoken of by C., 17/19;—he is informed by a spy of the coming of Lohier, 19/32, of which he tells his folk, 20/3;—he rejects the good counsel of Sir Simon, 20/22, and also that of his Duchess, 21/5;—he will not make peace with C., 21/16;—the porter tells him of the arrival of Lohier, 23/8;—his speech to his barons, 23/23;—enraged at Lohier's threatening message, he answers that not only will he disobey the behest of C., but that he will destroy the land of France, 25/20, and tells Lohier that

1 'Benes' is the spelling all through this book, and is doubtless a mistake for 'Bevis.'
to his own evil cheer he came to do his message, 26/7;—he than's Sir Water for his wise counsel, but bids him hold his peace, 26/24;—he waxes very wroth and calls on his barons to slay Lohier, 27/5;—he tells Lohier this day shall be his last, 28/16, cleaves him to the teeth, 28/26, and cuts his head off, 29/5;—he causes all Lohier's followers to be slain, except ten, whom he sends back to C., in charge of the corpse of Lohier, and with his message to C., 29/13;—his message is told to C., 33/30;—he hears of C.'s projected attack, 39/10;—he sets out for Troyes, 39/22;—he goes against the host of C., 41/27;—he slays En- guerran, 42/30, and Sir Walter Pyercelee, 44/13;—he jousts with Duke Richard of Normandy, and his horse is slain under him, 44/20, but quickly rising to his feet, he slays a knight, Sir Symon, 45/4;—he is horribly wounded, 46/11;—he adopts Nantuelle's advice, 47/1;—he comes before C., begging pardon [and there were four thousand in his train 'alle bare fote & in theyr shertes'—what a sight i must have been!], 50/16;—swearing falsely, and promising to do his service, he takes leave of C., 51/1;—he departs from Aygremounte to go to the court of C. at Paris, 51/19;—he is apprehensive of treachery through the vengeance of C., 52/26, and relates his dream, 52/30;—he commands his men to arm themselves, 53/8, and laments that C. is an untrue prince, 53/23;—he laments the absence of his son Mawgis, his brethren, and the Four Sons, 54/6;—his folk are beaten back by Earl Guenes, 55/5, but he defends himself as well as he could, 55/11, and slays Sir Helye, 55/27, but is unhorsed by Gryffion of Hautefelle, 55/31;—he is treacherously slain by the Earl Guenes, 56/12;—his body is treated with indignity by Duke Gryffion, 56/17, and is put in a ller and taken to Aygremounte, 57/1, where it is reverently buried, 57/29.

Aygremont, Myneus of, father of Ogier the Dane, 272/28.

Aygremont, the Duchess of, gives her husband good counsel, 20/29;—hears the news of her lord's death, and her grief therefore, 52/16.

Aymonoy, cousin of Gerarde of Roussillon, killed at the battle of Troyes, 46/6.

Aymery, the Earl, interferes in the quarrel between Ogier and Roland, 273/11.

Aymon, the Duke of Ardeyne, at the court at Paris, 16/22;—is cousin-germain to Benes of Aygremont, 18/14;—he offers his service to C., 30/23, who commands him to send his son to be knighted, 31/3;—being afraid of C.'s anger for the slaughter of Lohier by the Duke Benes, he and his sons depart from Paris, 36/1;—he comes to C.'s court at Paris, 59/15;—he complains to C. of the treason done to Duke Benes, but agrees to forgive it, 59/25;—he swears to C. that he will war against his sons, and leaving Paris, goes to Dordon, 65/24;—he relates to his lady the doings at Paris, and the reason why he has come seeking his sons, 66/6;—he is placed in front of the third gate at Mountayneford, 77/4;—he comes against R.'s army, and does much damage to it, 79/13;—he is stung by R.'s words, and suffers his sons to pass by him unharmed, 80/8;—he slays Amaney, one of R.'s knights, 81/6;—he is rebuked by R. for his harsh conduct, 83/7, and he retaliates that he is too old to do treason towards C., 83/25;—he again commences an attack on R.'s folk, 85/24, and his horse is slain under him by R., 85/27;—he is succoured by Ogier the Dane, 86/1;—when he is again horsed, he

1 The Earl Guenes, who is mounted on a good horse, sees Duke Benes on foot, and acting uncauvalery (i.e. without waiting till he should be horsed again), takes him at advantage, and thus treacherously slays him.
pursues his children as a 'man wrothe and out of his wyte;' 86/6, but his folk are put to flight by R., 86/14;—on returning to his own country, he falls in with his sons, 105/9, and seeks counsel of his lords, 105/11, which being witheld, he says he will do his own will, and sends two knights to defy Reynawde and his brethren, 105/32;—he spurs after his sons, 106/27, makes an outrageous speech to R., 106/34, and bringing his spear in rest, puts himself among his children 'lyke as they hadde ben strangers,' 107/10;—he loses half his men in the battle, 108/4;—he chases R. to the mountains, 108/6;—he is unhorsed by R., 108/26;—many of his knights are slain, and he grieves for Esmenfray, 110/28;—he makes moan and grieves for the state to which R. is reduced, 111/21, and taking the body of Esmenfray, he sets out for Paris, 111/32;—he comes before C., to whom he relates the recent events, 112/2, which C. doubting, 112/21, he offers to swear it on 'reliques and hallowes,' 112/28;—he perceives C.'s anger, and departs for his own country, 113/12, where he relates all his adventures to his wife, 113/18, to whom he acknowledges his fault, 115/1;—he is hawking upon the river when his sons arrive at Arleyme, 120/19;—he curses them, and tells them to go beg at another place, 124—125;—his heart waxes soft, 127/14, and he goes without, because he will not be forsworn against C., and tells his lady to give their sons whatever they desire, 127/32, and excuses his conduct to R., 128/13;—he parts amicably from his sons, promising for evermore to be their good father, 130/17;—he reconciles his duchess, 131/9;—he takes the part of C. against his sons, 424/4, but becomes wroth with C. when he threatens them, 424/9;—he beseeches C. to right the Sons, 424/17;—R. comes to his pavilion, begging for succour, 431/24;—he tells R. that he cannot help him on account of his oath to C., but bids him enter the pavilion and help himself, 432;—he bids his steward fill the three engines with food and cast it into Mountalban, 433/31;—C. threatens him with the loss of his head for relieving his sons, 435/9;—he tells C. that he will not fail his children so long as he can help them, 435/14;—he is dismissed by C. from his host, 435/33, and threatening C. if harm happens to his sons, he departs from C.'s host to his own country, 436/3;—he dies, leaving great riches to his sons, 535/27.

AvMonet, the elder son of Reynawde, is spurned by R. in his anger at King John's treachery, 285/5;—he rebukes his uncle Richard, and conveys him to submit to the will of R., 427/23;—he arrives at the palace of C. at Paris, 540/18;—he introduces Yonnet and himself to C., asking him to bestow on them the order of knighthood, 541/18;—he is knighted by C., 547/24;—he and his brother swear on the 'halowes' that the sons of Foulkes had lied falsely, 560/16, and the fight begins, 560/26;—he cuts off the nose of Constans, 561/9;—he is wounded by Constans, 562/30;—he cuts an ear and all the jawbone off Constans, 562/32;—his horse is slain by Constans and he slays that of Constans, 561/13;—he overthrows Rohars, 565/17;—he almost snares Constans' left arm off, 565/20;—he takes Constans prisoner, and brings him to C., 566/32;—he is applauded by C. as having 'doon wel' your devour,' 567/4;—he wants to assist Yonnet in despatching Rohars, but is not permitted by Yonnet, 567/11;—he compliments Yonnet on his valour, 568/21;—Mountalban is given by R. to, 570/19, and the folk thereof render homage to him, 571/14.
Balancon (Balencon), one of the rivers bounding Vaucolures, 227/24;—
Roland pitches his tent at, 191/20;—the battle at, 194—199;—other battles near, 298—307;—the meeting of Mawgis and the brethren at, 372/24;—Richard of Normandy keeps the passage over the river of, 395/32.

Banyere, Guydellon of, 40/10.

Barbas, the Admiral of Persie (? Persia), has treacherously taken the city of Jerusalem, 500/12;—he issues from Jerusalem into the besieging host, 501/31;—he engages in combat with Geffray of Nazareth, by whom he is overthrown, but is relieved by his folk, 502/24;—he withdraws his forces into Jerusalem, 504/14;—when he sees the great joy and feasting made in the Christian camp, he believes that they are the swanne is when shall deye, 511/2;—he again comes forth from Jerusalem, and attacks the Christians, 512/11;—he reproaches his followers for running away, and hearing of the death of Margaris, he furiously attacks Walleron of Faiete, and kills him, 514/25;—he vows to slay the 'grete wylayne' R., but becomes abashed on hearing R. cry out 'Mountaiban!' 516, and he takes his way to the city as a man discomfited, 517/6;—seeing that the Christians have retaken Jerusalem, he is very wroth and curses his goddis Mahomet and Appolin, 519/12;—he goes to king Thomas, and tells him that he (Barbas) must be allowed to depart in peace, or that he (Thomas) must be instantly cast out of the window, 519/20;—seeing R. coming to assault the tower, he seizes king Thomas and threatens to cast him out of window, unless R. grants his terms, 522/9;—R. accedes to his terms, and he descends the tower, and with two of his followers goes out through the gate of the city, 523/3;—at Palermo he is afraid of the strange knights he saw not yesterday, 527/25;—he discovers who they are, and quickly takes to flight, 528/3.

Banyers at the court at Paris, 16/20;—Beryngers, 33/14;—Banyers, 33/16;—Beryngers, 40/2.

Bason, the 'grete theif,' who aided C. against the treachery of the Twelve Peers, 327/17.

Bavyre, at the siege of Montayneforde, 77/14.

Bavyre, Guydellon, the Earl of, 292/16;—he withdraws Ogier from fighting Roland, 308/21;—he overthrows Richard from behind, 309/22;—he is ordered by C. to take and hang Richard, but refuses, 324/20.

BAYAL. D. Raynawde's wonderful horse, given to him by his cousin Mawgis, 31/28;—when he 'wyste hymselfe late wyth two knyghtes, he strengthened hymselfe' accordingly, 109/5;—he could feed better with roots than other horses with hay and oats, 116/27;—he runs after Borgons' horse, and taking him by the mane, brings him back to Borgons, 141/26;—he uplifts his fore-foot and kills the 'Rybaywde' who would have arrested the progress of R., 173/12;—his feet are bound up by Mawgis, so that he goes halting, 173—175;—he is mocked and jeered at by the assembled competitors, but being unbound by Mawgis, he speedily wins the race, thus securing C.'s crown for R., 175/7;—he resents being handled by Mawgis, but, being 'curstly deald wythall,' he submits to the inevitable, 257/24;—he smells his lord, and runs to him carrying Mawgis on his back, 262/9;—he kneels before R., when

1 There is something incongruous here, considering that Mahomet preached the existence of one only God. Indeed, the whole of the Jerusalem story seems quite out of place in the romance—the crusades against the Saracens not taking place till long after C.'s time.
Mawgis alights, and he is mounted by R., 262/11:—he engages on his own account in a fight with Ogier's horse Brayford, 267/9, and also with Roland's horse Melantes, 303/11: he understands human speech, and awakens his master, 337/28:—he is embraced by the brethren, because he awoke them in time to deliver Richard, 340/23:—he smells Mawgis coming, and goes to him, 372/28:—he is bled, to provide food for the folk at Mountalban, 437/24:—he is delivered to Duke Naymes to be taken to C., 490/12:—he is cast into the river Meuse, with a millstone at his neck, \(^1\) sinks to the bottom, breaks the stone with his feet, rises and swims over the river, and running as swiftly as the tempest, enters the Forest of Ardeyne, wherein, according to popular tradition, he still abides, 496, 497.

Bayonne, Duke Guynarde of, upholds the conduct of R., 207/22:—he defies Sir Humarde, 208/7.

Beaulande, Sir Arnaulde, slain by the Saracens, 16/16.

Berarde the Bourgoynier, slays Simon of Bremons, 84/11.

Berenger, 51/26.

Berenger, one of the sureties for Constans and Rohars, 546/16:—he ambushes in the Isle of Our Lady with treacherous designs, 553/25.

Berenger, Sir Yvorye, slain by the Saracens, 16/16.

Bernard, a Doctor (apparently a Ph. D., not an ordinary M.D.), expounds the dream of Godefroye of Molyns touching the marriage of the Lady Clare, 152/14.

Bernard (qq. the same person as the foregoing), the hermitage of, 440/22:—he welcomes and succours R. and his folk, 441.

Berne, Guynarde, the lord of, 202/29.

Bermyer, Sir Lambreyght, 17/14.

Beth-lot, the nephew of C., engages R. to play at chess, 61/16, a quarrel arises, 24, and R. slays him with the chess-board, 31.

Bethe (Bertha), the mother of C., 327/1.

Bloye, C.'s army arrives at, 188/12.


Bollon, Sir Walleramute of, slain by the Saracens, 16/16.

Bondy, Boudy're, the name of R.'s hunting horn, 216/23, 312/1.

Bordews (Bordeaux), a city in France, where the Four Sons first meet with King John, 132/22:—the battle at, between King John and Borgons, 136–139.

Borgoyn, Borgons, Bourgons, the Saracen, has conquered nearly all King John's territory, 132/28:—he marches from Toulouse to Bordeaux, and there put himself in ambush, 136:—he emerges from ambush, 137/26, and slays one of R.'s men, 138/7:—he and his folk flee from the battle, pursued by R., 139/4:—he is overtaken by R., 140/24:—he breaks his spear on R., 141/10, by whom he is overthrown and wounded, 141/13:—he fights on foot with R., and is severely wounded, 141/23:—he begs for a truce, and surrenders himself to R., who promises him his life shall be spared, 142/7:—he appeals to be delivered from prison, offering a rich ransom, 144/19:—he is ransomed, and with his folk goes to his own country, 144/34.

\(^1\) Charlemagne perpetrates a little joke at Bayard's expense, which is perhaps worth noting. 'When Bayard \(^1\) was thus tumbled in the river,' he remarks that his desire has been accomplished, 'for ye be now deed, \(bt yf\) ye drynke ouste all the water.'
NAME INDEX.

Pourdele, Geoffroy of, slain by the Saracens, 25/4.
Bourdelois, Sampson of, a knight who came to help R., 77/33.
Bourgoynes, Bourgyns. Guyon, Guynon of, in command of a thousand knights, assists in Hernyer's treachery on the Four Sons, 91/14;—he enters the castle of Mountaynforde, slaying all he can find, 93/1.
Bourgoynes, Sampson of, 35/5.
Bourgoyne, the Duke of, placed in front of the second gate at Mountaynforde, 77/2.
Bourgoyns, at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77/14.
Bourgoyns, in C.'s army, 40/3.
Brounoys, 169/11.
Brayford, Broyrforte, Ogier's celebrated horse, 45/26;—he engages in a fight with Bayard, 267/9.
Bremoys, Simon of, slain by Berarde the Burgundian, 81/11.
Bretayne, Salamon de, joins C. at Paris, 39/31, 186/25;—he weeps on seeing the combat between R. and Roland, 300/28;—he is commanded by C. to hang Richard, but refuses, 325/26.
Bretayne, Salomon of, slain by the Saracens, 16/15.
Bretons, at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77/13.
Brou-veau, the isle of, 31/33.
Broykarre, Mawgis's celebrated horse, 'the best that men wyste after Bayarde,' 276/15.
Busifall (Bucephalus), the Great Alexander's horse, 31/30.
Byhense, a province of France, 132/6.

Cedres, King, slain at Pampelune, by C., his armour given to R., 31/15.
Champayne, the country of, 39/23.
Champenoye, 33/15.
CHARLEMAGNE, Emperor of France, 4/9;—holds court at Paris, 16/5;—his address to his barons, 16/31;—becomes angry with them, 18/17;—grieved to part from his son Lohier, 19/16;—his doubts as to the safety of Lohier, 30/13;—he knights the four sons of Aymon, 31/25;—again in fear for Lohier, 33/1;—receives the news of the fight at Aygremounte, and the death of Lohier, 33/30;—his grief thereat, 34/15;—buries Lohier, 35/27;—receives news of the departure of Aymon and his four sons, and his anger thereat, 38/2;—determines to wreak his vengeance on Duke Benes, 38/14;—instructs his followers to prepare next summer, 39/4;—sets out for Aygremont, 40/3;—he goes to Troyes to succour Aubrey, 41/16;—fights with Gerarde of Roussyllon, 45/19;—Roussyllon, Aygremont, and Nantuell offer their allegiance to, 47/28;—he pardons the three Dukes, 49/7, who appear naked before him to express their thanks, 50/25;—holds a great court at Paris, 51/15;—endeavours to persuade his nephew Earl Guenes from acting traitorously towards Benes of Aygremount, 51/32;—again holds court at Paris, 59/7, and Aymon complains to him of the treachery done towards Duke Benes, 59/26, when they come to a mutual understanding that the death of Lohier is to be set off against that of Benes, 60/3;—but Reynawde expresses his hatred for him, 60/15, and he becomes as black as a coal for wrath, 60/19;—his nephew Berthelet slain by R., 61/31;—he commands Aymon to make war against his sons, 65/24;—he gains tidings of the Four Sons, 68/19;—he sets out after them, 69/13, and reaches Mountaynforde, 70/4;—his grief for the loss of Guyon, 71/17;—he swears to be revenged on R., 73/15, and commands his men to surround the castle of Mountaynforde, 73/28;
—the splendour of his tent, 74/14;—his message to R., 75/32, and R.'s answer, 76/8;—he commands that the castle be assailed, 76/31;—his grief for the death of Thierry, 80/30;—calls for help, 81/1;—commands his men to depart from the battle, 84/7;—he goes against R., and forbids him to go further, 86/23;—he besieges the castle fourteen months, 87/14;—sends for more men to help him, 89/10, and seeks counsel of his barons, 89/17;—he adopts Hervey's advice, 90/10;—tame to his evil fate, 97/8;—he was glad when R. evacuated Mountauclare, 100/29, and follows after the four brethren, 101/7;—is in danger of his life from R., 101/28, but is saved by Dampe Hugh, 101/32;—he stops the pursuit, 102/20;—he orders his men to disperse, 104/11, and himself retires to Paris, 104/16, where he gives way to grief, for that he cannot avenge himself on R., 104/20;—he will not believe that Aymon had fought against his own sons ('for never raven eie his yonge byrdes'), 112/22, and becomes angry with him, 113/1;—he goes on a pilgrimage to Galicia, 116/19, and on the way back sees the castle of Mountauclare, 156/27, and when he understands to whom it belongs, he becomes right angry, 157/17;—he commands King John to deliver to him the four brethren, 157/23;—he holds a council at Paris, 161/16, and receives his nephew Roland, 162/26;—he puts Escorfawde in prison, 166/35, and inquires after Roland, 167/5, for whose benefit, he ordains a horse-race, 167/31, at which he is sore afraid that R. will appear, 171/1;—he comes to the field appointed for the race, and commands 'that noo noyse nor noo stryffle were there made,' 175/27;—he offers to purchase Bayard off R. (who is disguised), 177/29, when the latter tells him he has been beguiled, 177/32;—he follows after R., offering him a truce, and begging for his crown, 169/29;—but R. only jeers at him, 173/4;—he seeks counsel of his barons as to how he may recover his crown, 181/23;—he causes preparations to be made for a seven years' siege of Mountauclare, 182/31;—bids his followers be ready for the war by next Easter, 185/30;—he musters his army, 188/1, and gives the command to Roland, 188/7;—his message to R., 189/21;—he resolves to starve out R. and his brethren, 191/4;—and for that purpose closely invests the castle, 191/13;—when he sees the golden dragon on the high tower at Mountauclare, he weens that Roland had taken the castle by force, 198/31;—he hears the news of Roland's defeat, 201/23, 'and thence he sware saynte Denys by grete angre,' 201/33;—he causes a parliament to be held, 202/6;—he sends a herald to King John, bidding him send back the four sons of Aymon, on pain of wasting his land, 203/17;—his joy at the reply of King John, 211/12;—he sends letters to King John, and instructions how to carry out their traitorous proceedings, 211/30;—he details the particulars of the plot to Foulques of Morylon and Ogier the Dane, 212/26;—his wrath when he hears that the Four Sons have escaped, 271/16, and hatred for Mawgis, 271/26;—he stops the quarrel between Roland and Ogier, 273/24;—is befouled by Mawgis, 315/16;—his joy when he sees that Richard has been made prisoner, 319/8, whom he threatens to torture and hang, 319/18, and unites him with a staff, 319/29;—he wrestles with Richard, 320/1;—he orders his peers, one

1 This is a clever and amusing scene: the way in which Mawgis comes the old soldier over Charlemagne, culminating in the former (after much fulsome adulation) asking the latter to kiss his palmer's staff in return for the 'pardons' that he bestows on Charlemagne.
after another, to hang Richard, 324/1;—becomes very angry when all, even Roland, refuse to 'bring his will abut for to hang Rycharde,' 326/31;—he relates to his barons the story of his life, 327/1, and calls on another baron to 'goe hang that house son Richard,' 327/32, but is refused and rebuked, 328/9;—he is deserted by the Twelve Peers of France, 328/15;—once more he tries to induce a baron to hang Richard, 328/26, and again is severely rebuked, 329/1;—he is further reproved by Duke Naymes, 330/6, and by Ogier the Dane, 330/25;—he pardons the Twelve Peers, 333/4;—he prevails on Rypus of Riplemonde to execute Richard, 333/9;—he goes after Ogier for fear he should slay Rypus, 342/31;—he fights with Richard, 344/29, and with R., 346/22;—he refuses R.'s terms of peace, 348/16, and demands that Mawgis be given into his hands, 348/29;—he refuses to listen to R., 349/31, and renews his attack, 349/33;—he falls into the power of R., who lays him on Bayard, 350/6, but is obliged to let him down, 351/22;—his pavilion is cast down by Richard, 354/28;—his attempted assassination by Mawgis, 355/20;—complains of the infidelity of his barons, 358/21, and offers to resign his crown, 359/1;—he consents to take b'ck his crown if Mawgis (against whom again he expresses his deep hatred) is delivered to him, 360/17;—his joy when he sees Mawgis a prisoner, 361/13;—he is anxious to hang Mawgis before supper, 366/2, but consents to remand him till to-morrow on the surety of the peers of France, 367/18;—he derides Mawgis for wishing to eat (since 'soo lityll a terme he hathe to live'), 368/1, but at the same time is himself unable to eat, 'lest that Mawgys sholde werke witchecraftes vpon hym,' 368/14;—he commands his steward to keep lights burning all night, 368/23, and the Twelve Peers and a hundred armed men to keep watch over Mawgis, 368/28;—he jests with Mawgis for wishing to sleep, 369/9, and fetters him with 'a grete payre of yrens,' 369/24;—he is angered at Mawgis's speech, and would have s'a'n him, 370/2;—he is thrown into a deep sleep by the enchantment of Mawgis, 370/23;—he awakes, and discovers the flight of Mawgis, 371/16, and arouses the Twelve Peers, 371/20;—he discovers that Mawgis had bewitched them, 372/6;—he perceives that the Four Sors mock him, 375/7, complains to his barons, 375/18, and sends to R. demanding restitution of his crown and treasure, 375/22;—he is informed by a spy of the coming of R., 381/11, and sends Oliver to fetch R., 381/25;—he becomes angry with Naymes and Ogier, 382/8, and he vows that R. shall die a shameful death, 382/24;—R. is brought before him, 385/7;—he refuses to listen to Ogier, 386/8, and threatens R. that he shall be 'cutte in smalle peces,' 386/18, but relents, accepting sureties from him, 387/16;—he commends Roland to God, 390/6, prays to God to part the two knights, 393/5, and a miracle is manifested in answer to his prayer, 393/12;—he sees Roland following after R., 394/4, spurs after them, 394/12, and comes to Mountalban, again threatening R., 395/7;—he returns to Mountebendell, 395/19, commanding his army forthwith to lay siege to Mountalban, 395/24;—he pitches his tent before the great gate, 396/7;—he receives Roland's message, 397/12, which makes him shake for anger, 397/29, vowing that he will not make peace unless he may do his will of Mawgis, 398/1;—he is again enchanted by Mawgis, 398/32, and carried to Mountalban, 399/3;—when he discovers that he is in the 'subjectyon of R.,' he is sore an angered, 408/6, and swears that he will make no peace, 408/11;—he is granted liberty by R., 411/25;—he holds his tongue because
'he fered the fiersnes of the yonge Rycharde,' 413/5; —he mounts Bayard and leaves the castle, 413/14; —he is received by his men with good grace, 413/19, and tells them he has made no peace, 413/23; and explains how he was delivered, 413/28; —he returns Bayard to R., 414/3; he pardons Roland and the other lords, 416/16, and orders the assault on the castle to be renewed, 416/21; —he announces his intention of starving out the four brethren, 417/28, and becomes in great anger with Naymes for endeavouring to dissuade him therefrom, 419/10; again avowing that he will never make peace with them, 419/16; —he discovers that he will be unable to take Mountalban by force, 420/34, and orders a retreat, 421/3, declaring that he will famish the brethren, 421/12; —he rejoices over the scarcity of victuals in the castle, 423/8, thanks God Mountalban has been brought so low, 423/18, and devises fresh indignities for 'yonge Rycharde,' 423/25; —he will not listen to the appeal of Aymon, 424/20, nor that of his barons, 424/25, but commands them to make engines 'for to bryng down this grete towre,' 424/31; —he discovers that Aymon had supplied his sons with food, 435/5, is very angry therewith, 435/22, and dismisses Aymon from his host, 435/33; —he rides to Mountalban, and not seeing any one, believes its defenders are all dead, 444/7, but entering the castle, he finds they are all gone, 444/32; —he discovers the underground passage through which they escaped, 445/8, and curses those who had made it, 445/19; —in great anger he sends everywhere for tidings of R., 446/19, and eventually learns that he is in the city of Arden, 446/34, whereat he is so moche angry,' that he swears he will 'never lie in noo bed' till he had besieged the city, 447/7, and forthwith proceeds to do so, 447/22; —he is sore abashed when he sees R. in such good condition, 449/15, and still hopes to do 'justice upon him,' 449/22; —he uses bad language towards R., 451/2, and calls on his knights to slay him, 451/8; —he is right angry when he sees the damage done to his army by the Four Sons, 453/11, and taking his sword in his hand, he performs 'nerveyeles of armes,' 453/18; —he is 'so angry that noo man canne be more' when he sees the brethren have saved themselves and taken prisoner Richard of Normandy, 455/13, and swears that he will not leave the siege till he has taken the city, and hanged the Four Sons, 455/24; —he is angry at having no tidings of Richard of Normandy, 468/14, and sends to R. to yield up Duke Richard and Mawgis, 470/8; —his anger when he hears of the unpleasant position of Duke Richard, 474/9; —he gives his barons leave to withdraw, 475/8, but cannot sleep at night, 475/11; —he tells his barons that R. dare not hang Duke Richard, 477/8; —he again refuses to make peace, 483/11, and repeats that R. will not injure Duke Richard, 483/15; —he is deserted by the peers of France, 485/30, on which he sends after them, offering to make peace with R., 487/21; —he acquaints the peers with his conditions for the peace, 489/5, and sends Duke Naymes to inform R. thereof, 489/16; —his gracious reception of the three brethren and Duke Richard, 494/25, and his promise to look after the children of R., 495/20; —he raises the siege and departs from Arden, 495/28, and casts the good horse Bayard into the Meuse, 496/9, but the horse escapes, whereat he 'toke grete sorowe,' 497/9, and, angry as he was, he gives his followers leave to go to their own countries, 497/17; —he honourably receives the two sons of R., 541/31, makes them his carvers, 544/14, and gives Johnnet a fair knife, 544/25; —he rebukes Constant for bringing a false charge against
R., 545/23;—he accepts the gages of Johnnet and Aymonet and of Constant and Rohart, 546/8;—he knkts R.'s two sons, 547/24, and sends to R. to come to the court, 549/29;—he makes R. good cheer, 549/17, and makes friends with him, 550/9;—he reproves the sons of Foulkes of Maryloun, 550/25;—he fixes the place of the battle, 551/21;—he commands that good order he kept at the battle, 552/17;—he becomes suspicious of Richard, 555/16;—he ascends the tower to see the battle, 555/28, and again is suspicious of Richard, 555/34;—his anger when he hears of the treachery of Gryffen of Hautbranche, 556/24;—he comes to the battle-field, 557/24;—he rebukes Richard, 559/5, and commands the children of Foulkes to swear that they enter the quarrel justly, 559/29;—he is glad when Aymonet has overcome Constant, 567/3, and commends the two brothers, 'for ye have doon ynoough,' 568/27;—he orders that Constant be hung, and the body of his brother by him, 588/33, and express s his satisfaction thereat, 589/5;—he appoints his own physicians to tend the wounds of Aymonet and Johnnet, 589/32, and they, with R. and his three brethren, take leave of him, 570/8.

Clare, the Lady, sister of King John of Gascoyn, 144/1;—rejoices when she hears of the prowess of R., 144/11;—she is making 'a penouncell of a speere' for R. (but she durst not tell it), when King John informs her of the projected marriage of herself to R., 153/24, whereat she is right glad, 154/5, and the marriage presently takes place, 154/19;—she promises to take great care of the castle during R.'s absence, 168/35, and gladly welcomes him back, 180/17;—she welcomes King John, who repulses her, 215/20;—she affectionately receives R., 220/15, implores him not to go to Vancooloners, 221/10, and rel tes her fearful dream, 221/24;—she is very glad when R. and the brethren return, 285/14, but is cruelly repelled by R. in his anger against King John, 285/21;—she cries him mercy, and reminds him that she had tried to persuade him not to go, for that she misdoubted of the king her brother, 285/31;—through the mediation of his brethren, R. makes peace with her, 287/2;—she is glad to meet again with R., 313/3;—she makes great sorrow for that Richard has been taken prisoner, 313/25, and joy when she sees he is rescued, 362/17, and grieves at the absence of Mawgis, 363/9;—she beseeches the barons to protect R., 380/12;—she takes leave of Ro'and and the other barons, beseeching them to purchase peace with C., 415/7;—she counsels that the horses be slain for food, and swoons 'for grete felenes for lacke of mete,' 426/13;—she and her sons beg R. to have Bayard killed for food, 430/5;—since he can give no more blood, she prays R. to slay Bayard, 437/34;—she is sorry her brother has not rotted in his prison, 439/24;—she comforts Richard of Normandy, 457/28;—seeing her husband arrayed in beggars' clothing, she swoons, 491/5, and mourning grievously for him, she casts her 'noble raymentes' in the fire, and taking a 'pourre smo.ke,' vows to wear no other clothes till his return, 492/1;—she weeps and sorrows so much that 'she dyed at last,' 532/16.

Clermont, the earldom of, offered as a bribe to Escon, 327/31.

Cologne, the Archbishop and College of, make a procession to the miracle exhibited on the Rhine, 583/12;—he avows the body to be that of some saint, 583/22, and they discover that the body is that of R., 583/29;—he orders the murderers to do penance, 584/10;—he points out that the corpse is a holly one, by reason of the great miracles shown forth, 585/4;—he and all the people of Cologne follow the corpse, 585/9;—he
uncovers the visage of the corpse, so that, if possible, it may be recognized, 586/4;—he tells R.'s brethren not to be displeased with him, but they do make too much sorrow, 590/30;—they should rather rejoice because now he is a saint in heaven, 591/1, and inquires of them how the corpse should be called, 591/14;—he and all the people, when Alarde has answered his question, begin to 'wepe for pyte and for joye by cause they sawe all by fore theym the mooste noble and worthyest knyghte of the worlde,' 591/21.

Cologne, the city of, besieged by the Saracens, 163/9;—the battle at, between Roland and the Saracens, 164, 165;—R. arrives and works as a laborer on the church of St. Peter at, 576/16.

Constans (Constant), a son of Foulkes of Morillon, possesses a false heart, 541/1;—he conspires with his brother to do harm to the sons of R., 543/7;—being accidentally shoved by Aymonet, he makes use of hard words, and calls him the son of a traitor, 544/30;—he is rebuked by C., and hidden to hold his peace, 545/22;—he asks C. to tell the place where the fight shall take place, 551/6;—he and his brother swear on the 'halowes' that R. had slain their father by treas, 560/5;—his nose is cut off by Aymonet, 561/9;—he wounds Aymonet, 562/30;—an ear and his jawbone are cut off by Aymonet, 562/36;—he kills Aymonet's horse, and Aymonet kills his, 564/13;—he surrenders himself to Aymonet, and is taken to C., 566/30;—he weeps when he hears Rollars pleading for mercy, 568/10;—he is drawn at four horses' tails, and then hanged, 569/3.

Constantinople, R. arrives at, 498.

Cortyne, Ogier's address to his sword so called, 268/1.

Croyne, the town where the corpse of R. stopped, 585/15;—R.'s brethren come to, where they recognize his body, 589/17, and make great sobbings and lamentations, 590/14.

Damp Rambault, tells Roland and Oliver what has happened at Balcon while they been bent on sport, 199/29.

Dampe Hughe, slain by R., 101/32.

Dordon, apparently synonymous with Ardévray, 20/27, 30/23, 31/22, 36/13, 38/2, 59/15, 62/20, 64/3, 131/23.

Dordonne, the name of one of the rivers bounding Vanco'oures, 227/23.

Dousse Peres (the Twelve Peers) of France, assemble at the court at Paris, 16/18;—they have come with C. into Gascony, 203/19;—C. relates to them his former exploits, and warns them that they may meet the same fate as their predecessors, 327/11;—when they see C.'s assault on Escouf, they all leave him, 328/14;—(having had news that Mawgis is acquainted with the state of affairs), they come to C., and tell him they are willing that Richard shall be hanged, 332/27, and he pardons them, 333/3;—they listen to C.'s complaints and offer of resigning his crown, 358/20;—their amazement when they discover how finely they have been cozened by Mawgis, 371, 372;—their swords, etc., are returned to C.'s messengers, 379/7;—Richard of Normandy's message is delivered to them, 482/19;—they each in turn implore C. to make peace, if only to release Richard of Normandy, 482/32;—in great wrath and with angry bitter words to C., they all depart from him, 484/15;—the messenger tells them of C.'s resolve at last to make peace, and they all return again, 488/9;—they are disgusted with C.'s treatment of Bayard, 496;—they receive the Four Sons with great joy and honour, 540/1.

Durandall, the name of Roland's sword, 282/16.

Erglyshemenne (Englishmen) at the court at Paris, 16/19;—33/16;—at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77/14.

Enguerran, lord of Peronne, slain by Duke Benes, 42/31.

Escoffawde, the Saracen, taken prisoner by Roland, and cast into prison by C., 166.

Escof (Estorlafude, 318/14). Hector, the son of Oed n, 40/11, 45/11:—he is ordered by C. to hang Richard, and refuses, 327/26, whereat enraged, C. throws a staff at him, 328/12;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/33.

Esmenfray, one of Aymon’s knights, advises him to keep faith with C., and a-sail his sons, 105/25;—he follows after R., 109/30, by whom he is forthwith slain, 110/6, and his horse given to Alarde, 110/10.

Estampe, the Earl of, 78/17, is slain by Alarde, 84/24.

Estborwgh in Almayne, 268/5.

Fawcon, Sir, slain by the Earl Guenes, 54/1.

Fawcon, the name of one of the gates of Montalban, 258/7.

Fayete, Walleran of, kills many of the Persians, 502;—he is attacked and killed by Barbas, 511/11.

Feyry, the valley of, 65/6.

Flamberge (Flamberd, 300/17), the name of R.’s wonderful sword, 95/22;—R. gives it to his elder son, 554/4.

Flamynges (Flemings), 33/15, 40/2;—at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77/13.

Fletcher, the name of one of the gates of Montalban, 215/17.

Fore, name of one of the gates of Jerusalem, 512/11.

Foulquet, Sir, slain by Ogier, 46/27

Fryse, Goodebew of, 41/11.

Fryse, Leon of, 45/10.

Fryse, Sir Magon of, 245/33.

Galicia, see St. James in Gales.

Garn, one of C.’s peers, 69/23.

Garnyer, son of Gerarde, Duke of Roussillon, 26/30.

Gascoyn, Kyng Yon of (King John of Gascony), the Four Sons first hear of him, 132/10;—he rejoices at their coming, 134/25, and retains them in his service, 135/3;—he comes to succour R., fights valiantly, and gives great praise to R., 138/17;—he orders the chase after Borgons to be stayed, 139/15, and goes seeking for R., who was supposed to be amongst the slain, 139/23;—he tries to comfort R.’s brethren, and they all go in search of R., 140/6;—he and his party meet with R. after the latter has captured Borgens, 142/26;—he promises Borgens that no harm shall happen to him, 142/34;—he makes a great feast in honour of the Sons, 143/19, and causes the ‘buty’ to be dealt, 143/27;—he takes counsel of R. as to the release of Borgons, 144/26;—he grants permission to R. to build a castle, 146, and next day goes to examine the site, 147;—he is reminded by a knight that he runs some risk if he allows R. to build the castle, 147/19, and begins to hesitate, 147/31, but will not break his promise, 147/35, and confirms his gift to R., 148/29;—he goes to view the castel built by R., 149/20, and names it Mountalban, 150/2;—he gives the lordship of Valeriy to R., 150/20;—his
barons, envious of R., tell him to beware of R., 150/22, but he tells them that R. will never think of treason, 150/30:—an old knight 1 counsels him to give his sister to R. to wife, 151/7, to which he agrees, and returns to Bordeaux, 151/12, where he receives R. with great joy, and taking him to the 'chambre de parlement,' they play at chess, 151/24;—he hears Godfray's dream and Dr. Bernard's interpretation thereof, 152, and causes the marriage of R. and the Lady Clare to be accomplished, 153, 151;—he hears C.'s message delivered by Ogier, and his answer thereto, 158, 159;—he receives C.'s herald, and tells him to wait seven days, 204/4;—he relates C.'s message to his barons, and asks for counsel, 204/16;—he bewails himself because his barons have advised him to surrender R. to C., 209/4, and indites the letter of betrayal to his secretary, 209/30;—he receives C.'s letter giving the details how to carry out the treachery, 214/9;—he goes to Mountalban, but, full of his evil intent, forbears to salute his sister, 215/16;—the trumpets sounded in his honour arouse his guilty conscience, 217/3;—he feigns illness as an excuse for his cold reception of the Sons, 217/21, and puts the scarlet mantles on them, 218/3;—he tells them that he has made peace for them with C., and explains how they are to go tomorrow to Vaucoloures to render homage to C., 218/23;—he tells R. they must go to Vaucoloures mounted on mules only, and unarmed except their swords, 222/32;—he swoons four times when he sees the Sons depart, 224/15;—his folk recomfort him, 224/25, but he is apprehensive of the vengeance of Mawgis, 225/6;—his name and dignity are rooted out for ever, 225/16;—he is informed by a spy of the disastrous ending of his treacherous designs, 278/19, and, bewailing his evil fate, resolves on becoming a monk in the Abbey of St. Lazare in the Wood of the Serpent, 279;—he arrives at St. Lazare, where the abbot 'made them monks in the devylles name,' 281/22;—he is taken prisoner by Roland, by whom he is scoffed at, placed backwards on a horse, and taken to Mountfaucon, 282/22;—he bewails his unhappy fate, and prevails on one of the knights to go to R. for succour, 283/4;—he is observed by R., 305/19;—he is abandoned by the fourscore knights his guards, 306/3;—he is unbound by R., and rebuked for his treachery, 306/10, and he begs R. to slay him, 306/19;—he is reproached by his little nephews, 313/7;—he gets left behind, in the prison at Mountalban, but is brought therefrom by R., 439/13;—he falls sick, dies, and is honourably buried, 456/6.

Gascogne, in C.'s army, 40/2;—they bless R. for going to the succour of King John, 290/29;—are considered to be cowards, 295/10;—they draw aside to see the combat between R. and Roland, 300/24.

Gastynoys, a province of France, 132/7.

Gaydon, an assumed name of Mawgis, 316/32.

Gefray, one of C.'s peers, 61/23.

Gerard, Sir, one of Ogier's knights, is sent to Mountalban for succour, 253/31.

Godfray, Sir, nephew to King John of Gascony, counsels his uncle not to act in such a manner as to bring dishonour on himself, 204/31.

Godfraye, Duke, serves C. at dinner, 61/6.

Goderes, Godarde, Sir Peter, the secretary of King John, 209/30, pens

King John's treacherous letter to C., 210/10;—he weeps when he reads

1 This old knight was the author of the memorable saying, that 'R. is well a noble gentylman of all four sides.'
of C.'s treachery, 214/16, and explains C.'s letter to King John, 214/26;—he weeps for pity when he sees the Sons go forth to their death, 255/5;—and tells the sad tale to Mawgis, 255/23;—he stays Mawgis from slaying himself, 256/10.

Guemes, Guenelon, Ganelon, the Earl, nephew of C., suggests that he should waylay and slay Duke Benes, 51/23;—with four thousand men, he tarry in the Vale of Soyssons for Duke Benes, 52/19;—he slays Peyner, 51/29, and Sir Fawcon, 54/1, and Toyusselyne of Boye, 55/4;—he becomes surety for Constans and Rohars, 546/16;—he calls his kinsmen together, and points out to them the dishonour done to them by C., 569/13;—his treason at Rouncevaux's foreshadowed, 569/17.

Guithelyn, Guetelym, the Sesne, overcome by Charlemagne, 16/9, and reduced to the Christian faith, 17/3.

Guy, the Earl, joins C. at Paris, 39/32.

GUYCHARDE, the third son of Aymon, at the court at Paris, 16/24;—is knighted by C., 31/21;—he comes to C.'s court at Paris, 50/17;—he inquires of Earl Guyon, who are these folk? 70/26;—receiving a rough answer, he fights with Guyon and slays him, 71/1;—he regains Mountaunforde, and is commended by R., 71/28;—he relates his adventure to R., 72/1;—he counsels R. to go to Vaucoloures fully armed and mounted, 226/16;—he advises R. that they should cross the river, 232/16;—his faith in R. is restored, 235/25;—he is taken prisoner, and maltreated, 238/23;—his captors set him free, 240/10, and he is unbound by his brothers and set upon a horse, 240/23;—he does not mind for himself, but wants no damage to happen to R., 246/12;—he is sore wounded, and advises R. that they should surrender themselves, for which he is sharply rebuked by R., 249/1;—he regains his courage when he hears the words of Richard, 250/7, and implores Ogier to save R., 250/15;—he descends the rock with his brethren, to re-engage the French, 260/8;—his wounds are cured by Mawgis, 278/12;—he recomforts the Lady Clare, 286/11;—he tells R. he will not go to rescue King John, 290/22;—he restrains R. from going to C. alone, 311/29;—he opines that C. will never grant peace, 403/13;—he counsels that they should yield themselves to C., 429/4.

Guymard, the Earl, tells R. he was a fool to believe King John, and asks him whether he will yield or defend himself, 247/17;—he commands Ogier to join in the attack on the Sons, 252/12;—he is slain by Mawgis, 263/18.

Guyenmault, Anthony, taken prisoner by R., 85/14.

Guyner, C.'s esquire, is slain by R., 83/31.

Guyon, one of R.'s knights, overthrown by King Yon of St. Omars, 82/13.

Gyronde (Gironde), the river, 145/12.

Gyrounde, the name of one of the rivers bordering Vaucoloures, 227/22.

Hardres, 51/26.

Haton, a knight, slain by the Saracens, 16/16.

Haultebraunche, Gryfon of, one of the sureties for Constans and Rohars, 546/17;—he ambushes near the Isle of Our Lady with treacherous designs, 553/25;—he issues from his ambush, 557/14.

Hautefelle, Gryffoon, Duke of, unhorses Duke Benes, 55/33, and is himself unhorsed, 56/3;—he treats the body of Duke Benes with indignity, jeering at it the while, 56/14.

Hawteclere, the name of Oliver's sword, 371/3.
Hector, son of Oedon, 297/33;—he weeps on seeing the combat between R. and Roland, 300/28.

Hector, the ancient Earl, advises King John to deliver the Four Sons to C., 208/13.

Helye, Sir; slain by Duke Benes, 55/27.

Henry, the Earl, 80/19.

Hosy, the mount, where Sir Gerard keeps watch against the coming of Mawgis (but this is a little counterplot of Ogier the Dane’s contrivance), 254/4.

Humall the Breton, smites Richard, and is unhorsed by him, 309/19.

Humarde, Sir, tells Duke Guymarde that he has lost his wit, 207/32.

Huon, Earl of Manns, slain by the Saracens, 16/15.

Huon, see Manns.

Illande, 187/8.

Iousser, the assumed name of Mawgis, 172/9.

Ioyuse, the name of C.’s sword, 349/34.

Isle of Our Lady wythin Savoyne, the spot selected by C. for the fight between Yonnet and Aymonet and Constans and Rohars, 551/21;—Constans and Rohars arrive at, 553/20;—Aymonet and Yonnet arrive at, 554/15;—C. and his company arrive at, 557/24;—the fight at, 560—568.1

Indas, King John compares himself to the traitor, 216/1.

Jerusalem, King Thomas of, taken prisoner by the Admiral of Perce, 501/7;—when he sees the joy amongst his folk, he thinks they have forgotten him, 511/20;—the alternatives put to him by Barbas, 519/20;—he addresses Geoffrey of Nazareth, acquainting him with Barbas’s terms, 520/4;—he is vexed when he hears that his barons have made R. lord over them, and accuses Earl Rames of betraying him, 520/16;—he is placed in a perilous position by Barbas, 522/5, and Barbas takes his leave of him, 523/8;—the joyful meeting between him and R., 523/12;—he thanks R. for succouring Jerusalem, and honourably entreats him for some days, bestowing rich gifts on him, 523, 524.

Jerusalem, Mawgis and R. arrive nigh the city of, 500/2, which they learn has been treacherously taken by the Admiral of Perce, and is now besieged by the Christians, 500/28;—the battle outside the city of, 502—506;—the second battle, 512—517;—it is retaken by the Christians, 518.

Julius Cesar’s tower at Troyes, 41/3.

Langon, one of C.’s peers, 69/23.

Langres, O.let (Oedon) of, 48/27.

Langres the province of, held by Esconf, the son of Oedon, 327/29.

Lews (Lewis), a nephew of C., would have slain R.’s brother Richard, 288/27.

Lezonne, taken by C.’s army, 192/7.

Lion (? Lyons), Henry of, 565/33.

Lion (? Lyons), the city of, offered as a bribe to Ogier, 325/4.

Lohier, the eldest son of C., is commanded to go to Duke Benes with a

1 The telling of this fight is done with great gusto by the chronicler; but his gloating over the gruesome details is not calculated to raise the reader’s estimation of the characters of the knights as being much higher than that of the ordinary sanguinary savage.

CHARL. ROM. XI. 2 T
threating messaee, 18/21;—he deparls, 19/15, bragging by the way, 19/20;—he notes the imprregnabiliy of the castle of Aygremont, 21/26;—his conversation with Sir Savare, 22/16;—he arrives at Aygremonte, 22/33, and he and his folk enter the castle, 23/21;—he delivers his inflammatory speech to Duke Benes, 24/17, which is followed by another full of imprecaons, 25/26, and then one of contempt, 'I nether prays you nor doubt you not,' 27/3;—he slays one of the knights of Aygremont, 28/4, and, receiving in what deadly peril he is, prays God for succour, 28/7;—he attacks Duke Benes, by whom he is slain, 28/17;—his body is sent back to C., 29/27;—the burial of, 35/27;—the great sorrow for the death of, 37/24.

Lombardies at the court at Paris, 16/20;—43/4.

Lombardy, C.'s return from, after fighting with the Saracens, 16/6.

Loyre (Loire), the river, crossed by the Four Sons, 132/8;—169/18.


Malbon, a nephew of, slain by R., 515/32.

Marcyll, a Saracen, beheaded by R., 205/5.

Margarys, King, is slain by R., 513/1.

Maseon, the city of, offered as a bribe to the Earl Guymellon, 324/25.


Maunsealx at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77/14.

Maunte, the territorial name of the enemies of R., 539/16.

MAWGIS, son of the Duke Benes of Aygremont, and cousin to the Four Sons, threatened with death by C., 17/25;—is a great master of the science of Nigromancy, 24/6;—his gift of Bayard to R., 31/34;—hears of his father's death, 57/15, and says that C. 'shall aby e for it full derely,' 57/33;—he recomorts his mother, promising to avenge his father's death, 58/4;—he fights well in the fray that ensues from the slaughter of Berthelot, 62/15, and escapes with the Four Sons, 62/16;—his meeting with the Four Sons, 129/28;—he comes from Paris, having stolen three horses laden with gold, belonging to C., 130/7;—he advises R. to serve King John of Gascony, 132/14;—he backs up Alarde's advice about the building of Mountalban, 145/24;—he disguises Bayard and R., 159/24;—he deceives Duke Naymes, telling him that he is of Peron, and that R. is his son, 172;—he makes a bed for Bayard, and binds his feet so as to make him go halting, 173/27;—he rebukes R. for slaying the cordwainer, 174/27;—he mounts Morell, and goes with R. to the place appointed for the race, 174/31;—he unbinds the feet of Bayard, 176/24;—he leaves Paris, and meets R. on the way, 177/17;—he advises R. to attack C.'s army, 193/20;—he comes out of his ambush, and slays a number of Frenchmen at Balcon, 198/6;—he captures the golden eagle, 198/18, and sets it up on the great tower of the castle, so that both hosts may see it, 198/28;—his wrath when he knows the treachery of King John, 255/25;—he takes a knife to kill himself with, 256/8;—he causes all the soldiers in the castle to arm themselves, and acquaints them with King John's treachery, 256/27;—he orders the 'palfreyner' to saddle Bayard, and he refuses, whereon Mawg's smites him with his fist and casts him to the ground, 257/15;—he saddles Bayard, after 'dealing curstly' with him, 257/33;—he departs from the castle by the gate Fawcon, 258/7;—he comes to Montbn, and bitterly upbraids Ogier, 261/17;—he wounds Ogier, 262/5;—he dismounts from Bayard, 262/12, and mounted on another steed he s'ays the Earl Guynarde, 263/16;—he encourages his followers, and bids
them not let Ogier escape, 263/23;—he is specially cursed by C., 271/23;—his address to R., in which he promises to make Richard whole and sound, if R. will help him to be avenged of C., 276/22;—being the 'sublimest nygramancer that ever was,' he incontinently cures the wounds of Richard, 277/17;—by the same means, he cures the wounds of the other three, 278;—he is eager for the fray, and tells R. he makes too long a sermon, 293/22;—he causes R. to remount, 304/18;—he inquires of the Sons the cause of their sorrow, 312/4, and dissuading R. from going to C., offers to proceed himself, 312/12;—he comes to Mountalban and disguises himself, 314/12;—he leaves Mountalban and reaches the tent of C. before the arrival of Roland, and he salutes C., praying God to keep him from treason, 315/5;—in his disguise he banters C., and tells him how he had been set on by the Four Sons, and maltreated by Mawgis [himself!], 315, 316;—he gives C. half the pardons that he had 'womne in his vyage makynge,' 318/1;—he notes the coming of Richard, 319, and returns to Mountalban, 321/13;—he tells the Sons that C. has promised to hang Richard at Mountfawcon, and that they must go there to deliver him, 322/3;—he resumes his armour, and they all set out for Mountfawcon, 322/24, which they reach, and put themselves in ambush, 323/6, and they all go to sleep, 323/17;—he blesses God because Bayard had awakened them in time to rescue Richard, 340/24;—he slays the lord of Pyerrefrite, 345/32;—he enters the pavilion of C., whom he tries to slay, 355/13;—in returning he is attacked at Balencon, where he slays Mylen of Puyll, 356/7, but is himself wounded and overthrown by Oliver, 356/13, and surrenders himself to Oliver, 356/31;—he is brought back to C.'s pavilion, and swears to Oliver that he will not attempt to escape, 357/8;—he tells Oliver that he has betrayed him, 360/31, and is led before C., 361/10;—he is threatened by C., 361/14, and he advises C. to let him go, and to make peace with R., 361/22;—he is sought for by the brethren at Mountalban, 362/26;—he promises the Twelve Peers not to go forth without their leave, 367/9;—he asks for some meat, 367/29, for which he had a good appetite, 368/16;—a goodly watch is ordered to be kept over him, 368/28;—he asks C. where he is to sleep, 369/9;—he is fettered to a pillar, and an iron collar placed on his neck, 369/23, but tells C. that he shall still see Mountalban before prime to-morrow, 369/32;—he makes his charm and causes C. and the Twelve Peers to fall asleep, 370/20, another charm, and the fetters fall off him, 370/27;—he then collects all their swords, and the treasure of C., 370/33, whom he awakens, and departs for Mountalban, 371/8;—he meets with R. at Balencon, 372/25;—he shows the spoil to R., and explains why he had taken Ogier's sword with the others, 378/13, and he relates his adventures in the pavilion of C., 374/1;—he advises that the answer to C.'s message be deferred till the morrow, 377/26;—he prepares a special banquet for the messengers, and they are honourably treated, 378;—he is informed of the designs of C., and tells R. thereof, 396/9;—he goes to the pavilion of C., and charming all the host asleep, he takes C. in his arms, he lays him on Bayard, and returns with him to Mounta ban, 398/24;—he then puts C. in bed and informs R. of what he has done, and showing C. to him, bids him 'kepe hym soo well that he scape not you,' 399;—he then, after kissing Bayard, dons a hermit's garb, giving his other raiment to the porter, and quits Mountalban, 399/28;—he crosses the Dordonne, and finding a hermitage in a wild forest, he makes his avow to God to dwell there, living on wild herbs, and then prays that there
may be peace between C. and R., 400, 401;—he is sought after and lamented by R., who apprehends that he has departed because he will no longer abide the wrath of C., 405, 406;—he dreams about the Four Sons, sets out to see them, and on the way finds two merchants who have been robbed, 469;—he tells them that he will fight with the thieves, 'to wyte ye theyr hedes ben softe or harde,' 460/1;—he overtakes the thieves and s'ays five of them, 460/19, whereat the merchants exclaim, 'Here is a good pylygryme! I wene it is my lorde St. Martynel.' 461/16;—he inquires after C., 461/28;—understanding of the siege of Ardeyne, he goes straight there, 462/8;—he passes through C.'s host, but not without suspicion, 462/17;—he reaches the palace at dinner-time, 462/23, and being deemed a poor hermit, food is offered to him, 463/1, but he says he only wants brown bread and water, which is brought to him, 463/4;—he is suspected and discovered by R., 464/3, whom he acquaints with the particulars of his present life, 464, 465;—great joy is made over him by all the folk of R., 465/20;—he will not accept any of the luxuries provided for him, 466/9, and says that he is going to serve the temple of Jerusalem, 466/22, and takes leave of everyone at Ardeyne, 467/13;—he again passes through the host of C., but at great risk, 467/20;—he is recognized by R. in the holy woman's house at Constantinople, 498/25;—he is so rejoiced by R.'s good tidings that he becomes whole again, and they feast together, both leaving Constantinople on the morrow, 499;—he makes a 'lityll lodges' for himself and R., 501/29;—he advises R. to rest this night, and fight the Saracen's to-morrow, and tells him that he will never more make charms, 508/21;—seeing the slaughter made by R. with the fork, he brings his 'yalster' into use, 506/10;—he refuses the rich gifts that the Earl Rames would bestow upon him, 510/7;—he admonishes the barons of Syria, 512/19;—he performs marvels of arms, to the admiration of R., 513/21;—he offers again to bear arms, for he cannot suffer R. to be in danger, 526/21, and becomes King Simon's standard-bearer, 527/2;—he recombs R. for the loss of his wife, 534/24;—taking leave of R., he returns to his hermitage, where he lives a holy life for seven years, and then 'deceased fro this worlde aboute Ester,' 525.

May, the month of, when all 'creatures humain' ought well to rejoice, 23/31.

Melanke, Bawdoyn, lord of, slain by the Saracens, 25/5.

Melantes, the name of Roland's horse, 302/10;—his master would 'kit of his heede,' 302/23, and Bayard nearly breaks his thigh, 303/3.

Melyn, Myllon (Meynn), Al rde and the others stay at, while R. and Mawgis go to the horse-race, 169/14, and they all meet again at, 179/27.

Mobandes, the Earl of, relates the good deeds of R., and tells King John that he will be a traitor if he delivers the Four Sons to C., 206/11.

Melynys, Godfraye of, counsels King John to give his sister to R. for wife, 151/8, and he relates his dream, 152/1.

Mondydyer, Dron of, one of C.'s barons, 104/31.

Montrolonde, Richard of, is ordered by C. to hang Richard, but refuses unless C. will accompany him, 328/24.

Morell, the name of Mawgis's horse, 170/10.

Morcoedon, the real possessor of Langres, 327/33.

Morillon, Escouf of, one of the sureties for Constans and Rohars, 546/16.

Lohier, 53/18.;—he advises that Mountaynford he forthwith assailed, 73/22.;—he is placed in front of the 'musters gate' of Mountaynford, 76/33.;—8/19.;—he exorts C. to make greater exertions against the Sons, 81/18.;—he raises at R., and threatens him with death, 88/8., for which he is rebuked by R., 88/33.;—he thinks R. is in his power, but R.'s disguise and the speech of Mawgis completely baffle him, 171, 172.;—he is made acquainted with C.'s treacherous designs against R., and proceeds to Vancolores to carry them out, 212, 213.;—he taunts R., telling him his best friend King John has betrayed him, and threatens to slay him, 233/25.;—he refuses to entertain the proposals of R., 235/1.;—he overthrows R., 236/4., but directly afterwards he is 'clove to the harde teeth,' and slain outright by R., 236/30.

Mountalan, the first inception of the building of the castle of, 145/8.;—details of the building, 149.;—it is first called Mountalan by King John, 150/2., and is by him made free from dues for ten years, 150/6.;—it speedily becomes well peopled, 150/12.;—it is beheld and admired by C., 156/27.;—the Sons depart from, in order to take part in the forthcoming horse-race at Paris, 168/27., and they all safely arrive home again, 180/16.;—preparations are made by C. for a seven-years' siege of, 182/26.;—a spy arrives at, with news of C.'s projected attack, 184/23.;—C.'s army encamps before, 188/19.;—King John arrives at, bent on treachery, 215/16.;—it is left by the Four Sons, who go on their perilous journey to Vaucolones, 225/20.;—Mawgis departs from, to the rescue of R., 258/7.;—the Sons and Mawgis return to, 285/3., and a right great feast takes place there, 287/12.;—the Sons again depart from, 291/33.;—R., Alarde, and Guycharde again arrive at, 312/23., but depart again from, to go to Mountafawcon, 322/23.;—the Four Sons again arrive at, 362/13.;—they again depart from, to try and find Mawgis, 363/32.;—and again return to, with Mawgis, 374/14.;—C.'s messengers arrive at, 376/3., where they receive courteous welcome, 376/23.;—the castle is left by R. in the charge of Mawgis, 388/16.;—R. returns to, with Roland, who is there entertained right honourably 394/23.;—C. comes to the gate of, and threatens R., 395/8.;—it is again laid siege to by C., 395/23.;—C. pitches his tent before the 'myster gate' of, 396/3.;—the assault of, commences, 419/32.;—439.;—the great death at, 422.;—it is abandoned 'so that no creature a live abide wythin,' 439.;—C. discovers that it is deserted, whereat he is as angry as any man might be, 444.;—it is occupied by C. and his barons, 446/24.;—the Four Sons and Mawgis return to, 533/25., and are welcomed by the inhabitants with great joy, 534/1.;—it is given by R. to his son Aymon t, 570/19.

Mountirgweyll, some place near Aireynye, 447/16.

Mountaynford, R. builds the castle of, on the river Menue, 65/9.;—C.'s host arrives at, 70/4.;—the first battle at, commences, 71/1.;—description of the castle of, 73/32.;—it is assailed by C., and before each of its three gates are placed sundry warriors, 76/31.;—the various nationalities arrayed against it, 77/13.;—its 'rweebray,' 77/27., from which R. and his folk issue without noise and fall upon the host of C., 78/24.;—the second battle at, rages fiercely, 79/7., and a long description of it follows, 79/86.;—R.'s forces return to, 87/1.;—it is besieged for fourteen months, 87/14.;—it is treacherously entered by Herrayer of Seveynye, 91/10., and he lets in Guyon of Bourgoyne, 93/1.;—the treachery is made known through the 'somewhat proude' horse of Alarde making a noise and waking his master, 93/7.;—the castle is set on fire, 94/16.;—
the third battle at, commences, 95, 96; —the castle is deserted by the
Four Sons and their folk, 98/31, much to the grief of R., 99/7.
Mountbandlel, Mountbendel, C.'s t·nt at, 270/12; —Pygwade the spy
arrives at, 280/18; —C. removes his pavilion from, when laying close
siege to Mountalban, 395/19.
Mountbony, the rock at, 198/1; —Richard flees to, 238/22; —the fight at,
249—269.
Mountfacon, the 'pyn tree' of, 239/20; —Mawgis and the three brethren
ambush themselves at, 323/6; —Richard is brought to the gallows at,
to be hanged, 334/20; —the great fight between R. and Roland at,
390—393.
Mountferrant, the Earlom of, offered as a bribe to Esconuf, 327/31
Mountlyon, one of C.'s towns, 69/14.
Mountpeller, Guyon, Guy, Earl of, in the 'forewarde' of C.'s army, 69/19;
—he gives a brutal answer to Guycharde's question, 70/26, and is
forthwith slain by Guycharde, 71/1 ; —C.'s grief for his death, 71/15.
Mountpeller (Montpeller), 65/13; —conquered by Borgouns, 132/31.
Muse (Mense), the river, 65/7.
Mylyyne, otherwise called Aspes, 70/2.

Nantuell, Duke Dron of, had not done the bidding of C., 17/9;—
comes to help Duke Benes, 39/13; —he goes against the host of C.,
41/28; —he counsels his brethren to sue to C. for mercy, 46/18; —he
refuses to go with C. into Gascony, 183/20.

NAYMES, Duke of Bavyere, gives good advice to C. concerning Benes of
Aygremounte, 17/32; —he tells C. to put no credence in dreams, 33/10,
and not to fray himself till he knows the certainty, 33/18; —he re-
comforts C., and advises him to go against Duke Benes, 34/22; —38/22;
—he counsels C. to accept the allegiance of Duke Benes and his brethren,
49/2; —69/24; —he goes with Ogier after Guycharde, 'but their labour
was nought worth,' 71/27; —he advises C. to send a message to R.,
commanding him to surrender Guycharde, 74/30, and he and Ogier
to thwift depart for Mountaynforde, 75/12; —he delivers the ms sage,
75/31; —having heard R.'s answer and defiance, they quickly return,
76/23; —he counsels C. to raise the siege of Mountaynforde, and
resume it 'when the newe tyme [next spring] shall be come,' 80/21;—
he advises C. to cease from the pursuit of the Sons, 103/30; —he accom-
panies C. to Galicia, 156/13; —he counsels C. to remain quiet for five
years, 162/6; —he highly extols the merits of Roland to C., and says
he only wants a good horse, 167/6, to obtain which, he advises C. to
proclaim a horse-race for a valuable prize, the winner of which is to be
bought for Roland, 167/20; —he says that C. makes him look like a fool,
171/16; —he is deceived by the disguise of Bayard and R., 171, 172; —
he advises C. to restrain his anger, and prepare to go against R. 'atte
Cameldas neste comynge,' 182/11; —he advises C. either to grant the
request of R., or to starve out the castle, 190/18; —he advises C. to send
messengers to King John ordering him to deliver up the Four Sons,
202/23; —he interferes in the quarrel between Ogier and Roland, sharply
rebuking the latter for his great pride, 273/12; —he rebukes C. for
striking his barons, 328/20; —he counsels C. to restore Richard to his
brethren, to make peace with them, and induce them to become his
subjects, 329/14; —this counsel not being acceptable to C., he pro-
poses that Richard should be put in a deep prison and starved
to death, 'and ye shall not be blamed ye doo soo!' 330/6; 1—
he begs C. not to lay down his crown, promises him that Mount-
alban shall soon be taken, and that the Four Sons shall not be
spared, 359/11;—he advises that Mawgis should be spared till to-
morrow, and the Twelve Peers become surety for him and Mawgis,
366, 367;—he rebukes C. for his unseemly language, 382/27;—he
advises the barons to accept Oliver's counsel, and that if any outrage
is offered to R., they will help him, 384 33;—he goes to C., telling him
how well Roland is treated by R., and offering terms of submission on
the part of the Four Sons, 397/12;—he tells R. that C. will not listen
unless Mawgis is delivered to him to do his will of him, 398/7;—he
marvels at the capture of C., considering what strait watch he always
kept, 404/24;—he counsels the Four Sons to cease bewailing Mawgis,
and think of the peace to be made with C., 407/18;—he entreats C. to
accept the terms proposed by R., 410/24;—he and the other barons
wonder greatly at the kindness of R. in letting C. go scot free, 411/30;
—he counsels the barons that they should go after C. and plead the
cause of R. before him, 414/21;—he kneels before C., crying his mercy,
and advising him to make peace, 416/8;—he again appeals to C. to
make peace, 418;—he counsels C. to allow Aymon to return home,
435/25;—he again urges C. to make peace, 449/29;—he tells C. that he
believes R. has caused the death of Richard of Normandy, 469/19;—he
delivers C.'s conditions of peace to R., 471/15;—he tells C. that R. sends
word that he will hang Richard of Normandy to-morrow, and moreover
that he would also hang C., were he in his power, unless he made peace,
473/5;—he expostulates with C. for his angry threats, and counsels
that all the kinsmen of R. go their ways, leaving C. to shift by himself,
474/24;—he tells C. that it is useless seeking counsel, since that he will
'do no thing but after his own head,' 475/16;—he rides to Ardeyne
with C.'s conditions for the peace, 489/17;—he makes R.'s children to
become acquainted with their kinsmen, 542/30;—he becomes surety for
Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/32;—he decides how the forthcoming fight
is to be 'two agenst two and all foure togyder,' 551/17;—he tells C.
not to be dismayed, for they will well keep his right and honour,
553/13.

Nazareth, Geyfray of, kills many of the Saracens, 502, and fights with the
Admiral of Perce, whom he overthrows, 503/1;—King Thomas is glad
at the sight of Geoffrey of Nazareth, and addresses his speech to him,
520/4.

Nemours, Yzacar of, 40/10.

Neron (Nero) of Rome, never made so great a treason as King John of
Gascony, 279/11.

Neurers, Neeners, the Earl of, placed in front of the 'masters gate,' at
Mountaynford, 77/1;—he is taken prisoner by R., 85/15.

Nore (Noire), one of the rivers surrounding Vancoloures, 227/24.

Normandy, Ilcharde of, joins C. at Paris, 30/29;—placed in the 'fore-
warde'of C.'s army, 40/9;—he is one of the guardians of the 'Oryflane,'
41/17;—he slays one of Roussillon's knights, 43/11;—he jousts with
Duke Benes, and kills his horse, 44/20;—he rejoins C. at Paris,
186/22;—he keeps the passage over the river Balencon, 395/32;—he is

1 This advice, though seriously given, seems meant for a joke, for C. in reply
tells Naymes, 'ye doo jape wyth me,' and that the necromancer Mawgis would not
allow Richard to remain long in prison.
made prisoner by Richard, and carried into Ardeyne, 455/4;—he is threatened with death by R. unless peace is made, 457/10, to which he replies that he is a prisoner of war, and does not fear death, 457/14;—he is recomforted by the Lady Clare, 457/28;—ten of R.'s men are sent to fetch him to the gibbet, of whom he slays three, and the rest flee away, 477/21, and he causes the three dead carles to be thrown out of the window, 478/30;—he expostulates with R. for sending 'kerles' to take him, and assures R. that, if their cases had been reversed, he would not have done such a shame to R., 479/32;—he taunts R. that he dare not hang him as long as C. is alive, 480/25;—he is brought to the gallows, 481/1, and sends a messenger to C., entreatting him to pardon R., 481/23;—the messenger tells him of the failure of his mission, and how the Twelve Peers have deserted C., 486/21;—he is released by R., who prays pardon for the great shame done unto him, 487/1;—he is entreated by R. to take care of his wife and children, 491/10;—he takes leave of R., 492/26;—he recomforts the Lady Clare, 493/23;—he recounts to C. how honourably he had been treated by R., and begs him to worship R.'s wife, children, and brethren, 495/5;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/32.

Normandye, Thiery of, taken prisoner by R., 85/15.
Normans at the court at Paris, 16/20;—33/14, 40/2.
Nycoll, Emery the Earl of, slain by R., 195/33.

OATHS, GREETINGS, AND BATTLE-CRIES:—

Alas, dere lady Mary! [i.e. the Virgin], 426/25.
And God confounde me! 171/20.
Arme you, knyghtes! 136/25.
A thousande gramercys, 154/13.
Aygremounte! 42/34.
Aygremounte his banner! 45/6.
Balancen! Guycharde's battle-cry, 233/20.
Blessyd be the hour that ever ye were borne! 163/26.
By all halowen! 418/27.
By Apollo! 519/17.
By God omnypotente! 37/16.
By my soule! 379/16.
By myne othe! 188/22.
By St. Denis of France, 17/24.
By St. Janes, 556/33.
By St. Palle! 379/13.
By St. Peter of Rome! 311/31.
By St. Peter the postle! 272/6.
By St. Symon! 60/22.
By that God that suffred death and passyon! 23/25.
By the body of God! 579/15.
Goddys curse haue thou! 28/6. 42/33.
God gramercy! 181/4, 277/34.
God gyve you good adventure! 133/17.
Goo thy waye to helle! 513/13.
Hourson cowarde kaytiff! 272/9.
Jaffa! 502/6.
Mountalban Cleremount! Mawg's's battle-cry, 263/22.
Mountalban! R.'s battle-cry, 233/19.
Mounteinforde! 71/7.
Mountiaye St. Denys! 71/6.
O Machomet! 511/2.
Pavereymant! one of Alaride's battle-cries, 315/29.
Perce! (Persia l), 503/13.
Rames! 514/5.
Roussillon, Roussillon l 42/11.
The devyll spede you! 326/28.

Ogier of Denmark, does on the spurs of R. when made a knight, 31/22;—
in the 'forewarde' of C.'s army, 40/11;—he is one of the guardians of
the 'Oryflame,' 41/17;—he slays Ponson, 42/15, and Sir Fouquet,
45/27;—69/23;—he goes after Guycharde, but is too late, 71/26;—he
returns to C., and tells him of the strength of the castle of Mountayn-
ford, 73/5;—he is placed in front of the 'masters gate' at Mountaynford,
77/1;—he prevents Aymon from being made prisoner by his sons, 86/1,
and banters him on their chivalry, 86/3;—he encourages R., and tells
him he will deliver his message to C. 87/32;—he accompanies C. to
Galicia, 156/13;—he delivers C.'s haughty message and defiance to
King John, 158/20, and rebukes R. for his inflammatory speech, 160/15;
—he returns to C., and relates the saying of King John and R., 161/9;—
—he responds to Duke Naymes' assertion that they had been made
fools of by C., 171/19;—he is left in charge of the camp at Balencun,
193/1;—he prepares to meet the host of R., 195/12;—he overthrows
Richard, 197/4, but is himself speedily overthrown by R., 197/16;—he
promises to do a good turn for R., 197/28;—he slays many of the
Gascons, 198/4;—he is made acquainted with the details of C.'s treason
towards R., 212/33, and, with Fou kes of Morillon, goes to Vancouleurs
to carry it out, 213/19;—he first espies the Sons coming to Vancouleurs,
and prays his folk to do them no harm, 228/5;—he bids the captors of
Guycharde to let him go, 240/6;—he tells the Sons they did as fools
to believe King John, 246/2;—he will not fight against the brethren,
but withdraws himself and his folk a bow-shot away, 248/5, and makes
great sorrow for R., 248/16;—he orders the assault to be stayed, 250/
24, and tells his cousins to rest and have breathing-time, 251/1;—to
R.'s ungracious speech he retorts that for what he is now doing C. will
give him no thanks, 251/18;—he tells the Frenchmen that he will help
his con ins, 252/9, and prays that they may be left in peace, 252/19;—
he threatens to smite off the head of any one who ventures to take any
of the brethren, 252/27;—he sends one of his knights to fetch Mawgis
to help the brethren, 253/31;—thinking that the brethren are about to
surrender themselves, he tells them they are fools for abandoning the
rock, 260/23, but he is warned by R. to escape, 260/32;—his great
delight when he sees the host coming to the succour of the Four Sons,
261/2;—he is rebuked by Mawgis, 261/17, and is also wounded by him,
262/3;—he is unhorsed by R., 262/33;—he and his followers fly from
the battle across the river Dordonne, 264/8, where he is chaffed by R.
for running away, and bitterly assailed for his treachery, 264/12;—the
Frenchmen also reprove him and depart from him, 265/3;—he laments
his ill-fortune, and cries to R. that he wrongfully blames him, 265/16;—
he recrosses the river, and made himself ready to just all wet as he
was, 265/31;—he tells R. that he will fight, and he had rather be slain
than return in this manner to C., 266/7;—he is defied by R., and the
combat takes place, 266/32;—both knights are unhorsed, 267/4;—he
goes to assist his horse Brayford, 267/15, and is wounded by R.,
267/25;—he deals R. a stroke that makes him reel, 263/13, but seeing
his brethren come, he flies from R. and again swims over the Dordonne,
268/22;—he promises to wait for R., 269/9;—he is thanked by Alarde,
269/23, and bestows a parting threat on R., 269/32;—he comes before
C., to whom he relates the adventure at Vancouleurs, 270/26;—he is
fiercely assailed by Roland, who calls him 'cowarde kaytiff,' 272/4;—
he tells Roland that he lies falsely, and recounts his noble kinsmen,
272/18;—he tells Roland to beware of setting hand on him, 273/5;—he
tells C. that there is no one who can accuse him of treason, and explains
how he had not joined in the attack on the Four Sons at Montbrun, but
that in the future he will help them, 273, 274;—he promises to go with
Roland after R., and derisively offers to lend him a rope if he has need
of it, 281/13;—he prays God to grant Roland's request that he might
find R., so that R. may take the pride out of Roland, 284/3;—he blesses
God, and chuckles in his sleeve that now Roland has found R., 292/26,
and turns himself round with a mocking speech to Roland, 293/1;—he
is very pleased when R. unhorses Roland, 304/22;—he again mocks
Roland about the superiority of R., 308/10;—he is ordered by C. to take
and hang Richard, but refuses, defying C., 324/32;—he tells Naymes
that he makes too long a sermon, and bids him argue no more with C.,
330/24;—he and the other barons quit C.'s pavilion, 330/31;—he
threatens any one who should be so hardy as to lead Richard to hang-
ing, 331/3;—he goes to the pavilion where Richard is, whom he is
minded to release, 331/7, and then rails angrily at him, 331/31;—he
reminds Ro'and of his promise, 332/9, and is delighted to know Mawgis
had been there, 332/23;—he calls Rypus of Riplemonde a coward for
avenging himself at this time, 333/12;—he thinks Rypus is returning
from hanging Richard, and swoons for grief thereat, but recovering,
goes after Richard, who is arrayed in Rypus's armour, 342;—he argues
with him, and discovering his identity, inquires after Rypus, 343;—he
bids good-bye to Richard, and returns to C., giving his reason for not
striking off Rypus's head, 344/2;—he comes with the other barons to
Mountalban, 376/3;—he relates C.'s message to R., 377/9;—he advises
R. to come to C., 379/25;—he promises the Lady Clare that no harm
shall happen to R., 380/16;—he begins to doubt the wisdom of having
brought R., and counsels that they shall discover C.'s intentions, 380/
24;—he chides C. for his evil reception, since they have accomplished
their mission, and also brought R. with them, 382/9;—he threatens to
forsake C. if any outrage or damage is done to them, 383/3;—he comes
after Roland to prevent him harming R., 384/12;—he relates to C.
how the barons had conveyed his message to R., and that R. had
performed all that was required of him, and yet C. had caused R. to be
taken, and advises him to send R. back to Mountalban, and there do his
worst against him, 385, 386;—he congratulates R. on having taken such
a prize as is Roland, 394/15;—he tells R. to take his way to Mountalban,
and he will do all he can to prevent C. from following, 394/20;—he
does so much by his fair language that he holds the king till he thinks
R. and Roland are at Mountalban, 394/32;—he deems the capture of C.
to be a miracle ordained by God to terminate the war, 404/27;—he begs
R. to show him Richard of Normandy, 472/22;—hearing C.'s threat to
hang R. and all those of his lineage, he asks Turpin what he thinks of
'our kyng that sayeth by his grete pryde that he shall hange us all,'
474/9;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymoet, 546/32.
NAME INDEX.

651

—

Olyvere (of Vyenne, ? Vienna), Ifi5/i2
ho reminds Roland liow tiiey
had taken Lezunne and Sernoble, 192/6
he goes iiawking with
Rohind, and is beside liiinself when he knows wliat lias happened
during tiieir absence, 2OO/15; 1^° deals roiigiily with tlie Prior of St.
Lazare, 282/6
he praises K. as knowing more of war than any other
knight, and relates his good qualities, 294/28
he counsels Roland to
fight with H., because he (Oliver) will be enemy to R. onely for liis
worthynes,' 298/io
he causes Roland to remount, 304/21
he takes
Melantes' bridle, and stops Roland from goi:ig to finish the duel with
R., 305/14;
he withdraws Roland from lighting Ogier, 308/2O
he
wounds and overthrows Mawgis, 306/13. whom he takes prisoner,
356/31, and brings back to C.'s tent, 357/8; he promises C. to surrender Mawgis to him before evening, 360/8
he extracts a promise
from C. to resume his crown, 36O/17, and delivers Mawgis unto him,
361/io
he laugl s at C.'s evident dread of Mawgis, 368/i8
he goes
he overtakes R., who is
to Balencon to take R. and Alarde, 38I/34
afoot, 383/i6;
he advises Roland to let R. be at peace, and taken
courteously before C, 384/25
he tells Roland he will not stay with
he tells C. that R. would
C, after his (Roland's) departure, 475/35
have no more s ruple about hanging C. tlnin he has of hanging Richard
he becomes surety for Yonnet uud Aymonet,
of Normandy, 483/22
;

—

;

;

—

—

;

—

'

;

—

;

—

—

;

—

—
—
;

;

—

—

;

—

;

;

;

—

;

—

—

—

546/31.1
Originers, at the siege of Mountaynford, 77/14.
Orleaunce (Orleans), a city in France, 132/7
169/12.
Orrer.de, a cousin of Barbas^ slain by R., 515/28.
^

—

—
—

Palerne (Palermo), R. arrives

at, 525/1 ;
the battle at, 527.
referred to, 3I/15.
Paris, C. holds a great court at, I6/5
the jousting at St. Vyctor, ne^.r,
32/16; assembling of C.'s forces at, 39/26; C.'s court at, 51. 19;—
another great court held at, on the Feast of Pentecost, 59/8
C. returns
to, after the fighting at Mountaynford, 104/i6;
C. departs from, to go
on a pilgrimage to Galicia, I56/13
C. returns to, and holds a great
council at, 161
R. and Mawgis arrive at, preparatory to th horse-race,
the horse-race at, in a meadow by the Seine, 175
177 ; Mawgis
173/2
departs from, 177/i7
the gathering of C.'s subjects at, 183/4, I86/18
great dearih at, 187/27
^'-'s army sets out from. I88/1 1
R.'s two
sons arrive at C.'s p lace at, 540/i8
R., his brethren and sons depart
from, on thf ir return home, 570/ 13.
P^ris, the Archbishop of, s';e Turpyn.
Pepyn, the father of C, 327/ 1.

Pampelune, the battle

at,

;

—

;

;

:

—

—

—

;

—
;

:

—

—
—

—

—

—

!

—

;

;

—

—

;

Peronne, Enguerran of, 42/31.
Perron, 268/6.
Pignabell, Lion of, one of the sureties for Constant and Roliars, 546/17.
Poeteuyns, ut the court at Paris, I6/20
40/2
13/4.
Ponson, a knight, slain by Ogier, 42/15.
;

—

;

—

Poycy, Godfra}-, the lord of, 2O2/30.
Poytees (? Poictiers), the Earl of, 556/29.
Poyters (Poictiers), a province of France, 132/9, wdiere the Four Sons
hear of King John of Ga^cony, 132/il.

first

^ Oa
p. 477, Hue 11, Caxton by a lapsus calami has trau.sposed the names Roland
aud Ollv.r, as shown in the footnote on that pajju.


NAME INDEX.

Puill, Mylen of, slain by Mawgis, 356/7.
Pyerelee, Sir Walter, slain by Duke Benes, 44/14.
Pyerrefrite, Magen, alias Sampson, the lord of, slain by Mawgis, 345/32.
Pygwad, the spy, who had 'fifteen fote of lengthe, and wente as faste as any horse cowde trotte,' 279/32,—he goes to Mountbendel, and tells Roland of the flight of King John, 280/18.
Pynabell, the spy, tells C. of the arrival of R. and Alarade at Balcon, 381/5.

Rambault, the free knyght, 199/29.
Rames, the Earl Jafflas of, kills many of the Turks, 502,—he bars the ingress of the Turks into Jerusalem, 504/20,—he speaks to the two p'girms, wishing to know who they are, 506/27, and offers to pay hommage to R., 507/13,—he rejoices at the coming of R., and begs him to be 'our captayne and our heede,' 508/3,—he lodges R. in his own pavilion, and fully equips him with horses, raiment and arms, 509, and wants to do the same with Mawgis, 510/3,—he commends the great prowess of Mawgis, 513/29,—he tells King Thomas that he must address his speech to R., 520/10, and to have no doubt of R., 520/22,—he takes King Thomas's message to R., 521/10.

REYNAWDE, THE ELDEST SON OF AYMON, 16/24,—his stature, 16/28,—is knighted by C., 31/24,—his wonderful horse Payard, 31/28,—he jousts before C., 32/19, by whom he is much commended, 32/22, and whom he promises to serve truly, 32/26,—he leaves the court of C., with his father and brethren, 36/9, but returns there again, 59/15,—his indignant speech to C. for the death of Duke Benes, 60/10, and C.'s irsuiting answer, 60/21,—he cannot eat because of the shameful insult, 61/7,—he plays at chess with Berthelot, 61/21, they quarrel, 61/24, and he slays Berthelot with the chess-board, 61/31,—he escapes from the palace, 62/15,—he makes sorrow for his brothers, 62/32,—he slays three of the pursuing knights, and gives their horses to his brethren, 63/10,—he reaches Dordon, 64/3, and tells his mother the reason why he has left the court, 64/7,—he departs from Dordon and enters the forest of Ardeyne, 65/5, where he builds the castle Mountaynford, 65/12,—he welcomes his brother Guycharde, 71/32, whom he highly commends, 72/14, and then, addressing his folk, tells them that the time is come that 'everiche of us must preve hymselfe a good man,' 72/17,—he orders the gate of the castle to be shut and to draw up the bridge, 72/31,—he receives C.'s envoys, 75/28, becomes angry when he hears their message, 76/6, and with a scornful answer defies the king, 76/8,—he well defends the castle, 77/10, gives his followers good counsel, 77/17, and they issue forth from the castle upon the host of C., 78/23,—his wonderful feats of arms, 78/31,—he perceives his father in the battle, 79/16, and turns to another side, 79/21,—he reasons with Aymon, 79/26, and threatens him with injury if he does not repent, 80/6,—he sees C. and others coming, 80/20, and causes his men to be brought together, 80/21,—he rebukes Aymon for slaying one of his men, 81/9,—none can compare with him for 'so grete mercevyll of arms,' 82/4,—he causes the horse of King John of St. Omers to be captured, 82/19, and gives it to his brother Richard, 82/31,—he again rebukes his father, 83/7,—he kills C.'s esquire, 83/31, and three hundred knights, 84/18,—he blesses his brother Alarade for slaying the Earl of Estamps, 84/29,—he puts the folk of the Emperor to flight, 85/12, and causes his own folk to withdraw, 85/19, but again encounters his father,
whom he unlooses, 85/28, and eventually he puts Aymon's folk to flight, 86/14;—he encounters C., to whom he makes reverence, 86/26, forbids his followers to lay hands on him, 86/30, and they enter into the castle, 86/34, where he again thanks Alarde for slaying Estampes, 87/6;—though closely besieged, he is not debared the pleasure of the chase, 87/17, and at divers times he speaks with the followers of C., offering to give up the castle if he may have his life and goods safe, 87/20;—he excuses his conduct to Fonkes of Moryllon, 88/11, whom he rebukes for unseemly language, 88/33;—he welcomes the traitor Hernyer of Seveyne, 91/30, whom he treats as a friend, 92/13, and whose treachery is speedily discovered, 93/10;—he prepares to defend himself, 94/1, but the castle being fired, he and his folk issue out at the faussebray, 94/28;—they enter a pit for fear of the fire, and defend themselves strongly, 95/1, but hearing the cry of his men who are being slain, they come out of the pit and join in the battle, 95/17, and he gives marvellous strokes with his sword, 95/22;—he accuses himself of cowardice for hiding, 95/32, and seeing the fire a little quenched, he shuts the donjon-gate, and has up the drawbridge, 96/5;—he causes Hernyer to be drawn and quartered, his body burnt, and the ashes scattered to the winds, 96/22;—he finds out that their victuals had been consumed in the fire, 98/3, and prepares to depart from the castle, 98/16;—he beholds the burning castle, whereof he takes great pity, 98/34;—he and his followers light their way in the night: through the host of C., 100;—he sets his forces in array, 101/12, and would have slain C., but Dampe Hugh intervenes, and receives the death-stroke, 101/28;—he does so much harm to the followers of C., that the latter stops the chase, 102/10;—he passes over the river, 103/1, and finds the pursuit has stopped, 103/4;—he goes to the forest of Ardeyn, 103/20;—he receives Aymon's messengers, and pleads for a truce, 106/16;—he expostulates with his father, 106/29, and receiving hard words in reply, 107/1, prepares for the fray, 107/14;—he is beaten for lack of men, 107/34, and flees towards the mountains, 108/5;—he overthrows Aymon, 108/26;—he makes four jousts, having at the same time Alarde behind him on Bayard's back, and kills each time, 109 9;—he never wearies or becomes weaker for all his exertions, 109/18;—he slays Esmenfray, 110/7, and gives his horse to Alarde, 110/10;—he is saved by a little river, 110/33;—his grief for the loss of his folk, 111/16;—his sufferings in the forest of Ardeyn, 116, 117;—he asks counsel of his brothers, 117/28, consents to return to their mother, 118/29, and departs the same night, 119/5;—he raises a doubt as to the action of their father, 119/17;—they enter Ardeyn, and make their way to the palace, 120/14, and wait till the arrival of their mother, 120/29;—they are recognized by the Duchess, 122/10, to whom he relates his misfortunes, 123/5;—he and his brethren and knights dine with his mother, 123/30;—they are cursed by Aymon, 124/26, and R. blames his father for his cruel treatment, 124/29;—his conversation and reconciliation with Aymon, 125—128;—his delight at sight of his father's treasure, of which he takes at his will, 129/11;—he meets with Mawgis, 129/31, and they all depart from Ardeyn, 130/31;—he and his followers pass through France, wasting the country, 132/4, go to Bordeaux, 132/22, and arrive at King John's palace, 133/11;—he talks with the steward at the gate, 133/16, and salutes King John, 133/31, to whom he offers his service, 134/1, which is willingly accepted, 135/4;—he causes his men to prepare to meet Bourgons, 136/30, promising success to the king, 137/5, and goes.
forth foremost against the Saracens, 137/13, slaying the ‘paynymes’ as beasts, 137/24;—he pursues after Bourgons, 139/5, whom he overtakes, 140/93, and they fight, 141/7;—he dismounts because Bourgons had been unhorsed, 141/21, and finally takes him prisoner, 142/20;—he presents Bourgons to King John, 142/32;—he shares his portion of the booty amongst his followers, 143/29;—he counsels the king to ransom Bourgons, 144/29;—he requests permission to build a castle on a high mountain, 146, and next morning takes the king to see the place, 147/7;—his request is granted, 148/6, for which he thanks the king, and defends himself against a suspicion of treachery, 148/10;—he causes the castle to be built, 149, which is named Moutalan, 150/2;—he is described as ‘well a noble gentlyman of all four sides,’ 151/8;—he goes to see King John at Bordeaux, 151/20, who plays with him at chess, 151/20, and offers him his sister Clare to wife, 152/34, to which he readily consents, 153/17;—he is affianced 1 to the Lady Clare, 154/16, and the marriage is forthwith solemnized, after which great feasting and jousting take place, 154, 155;—he recounts to Ogier the evils wrought against him by C, 159/23, to whom he sends his defiance, 160/11;—he sets out with his brethren for Paris, 169/6;—he is enchanted by Mawgis, so that he appears as if he had become only twenty years of age, 169/29, and in this disguise he befools Duke Naymes and Foulques of Moryllon, 171, 172;—he enters Paris and is recognized by a ‘rybawde,’ 173/4, upon whom Bayard lifts his forefoot, so ‘that he braste the herte in hys bely,’ 173/12;—he alights at a shoemaker’s house, 173/21, by whom he is recognized and threatened, 174/10;—he slays the shoemaker, 174/24, and, mounting Bayard, departs from his lodging, 174/34;—he follows after C, and the barons to the appointed race-course, 175/14;—he is scorned and mocked at by the assembled knights, 175/32, and though his heart swelled high, 176/9, yet he cared not much of what was said to him, 176/19;—he encourages Bayard, 176/28, who overruns all the other horses, 177/20, and he takes C’s crown, but the silver and the cloth he leaves alone, 177/21;—he tells C, ‘Now have I well beguiled you, and I hold you for a child,’ 177/31, and, giving the spurs to Bayard, 178/6, he passes over the Seine, 178/20;—he tells C, that he will sel the crown, and pay his knights with 1, 179/4, and, meeting with Mawg’s and his brothers, 179/24, 180/4, they all return to Moutalan, where, being right gladly received by the Lady Clare and the folk of the castle, he relates his adventures, 180/22;—he is informed by the spy of C’s projected attack on the castle, 184/32, which he retails to his brethren, 185/16;—his reply to C’s messengers, 189/31;—a spy informs him how Oliver and Roland have gone sporting, 193/11, whereupon he arms his men, 193/31, who issue from the castle, 194/12, and they all come to Balanccon, 194/20;—he perceives that they are discovered, 195/20, and, spurring into the opposing host, he slays Earl Emery, 195/33;—he makes great ‘occision’ of knights, 196/4, and calls after Roland and Oliver, 196/7;—he fights with Bishop Turpin, 196/14, whom he jeers at, ‘it were better for you to be in some churche to synge some mase,’ 196/24;—he unhorses Ogier, 197/17, but restores him his horse again, 197/23;—his party discomfit the enemy, 198/13, and he deals out the booty, 198/25;—

1 The ceremony of affiancing, or betrothal, was generally in olden times, and still is in some countries, held to be of equal importance with, if not greater than, the ceremony of marriage.
—he returns from hunting, 216/9, and makes 'feast and joye' for the coming of the traitor King John, 216/25, whom he offers to tend right well, 217/26;—he consents to go to C., for which he is upbraided by Alarde, 219/21;—he takes leave of King John, and goes to 'the faire lady his wyff,' 220/11, telling her that John has made his peace with C., 220/21;—he is implored by his lady not to go, 221/10, but he will not listen to her, 222/11;—he and his brethren (in accordance with King John's treachery), clad in scarlet mantles, with roses in their hands, and without any armour, take their way on mules to the plain of Vaucolures, singing as they go, 225;—he prays to God for protection, 226;—he discovers the treachery, 229, and is upbraided by his brethren, 230;—he demands of the escort that they help him, 231/21, and slays the Earl of Anson. 231/32;—his mule falls under him, 232/4;—he rebukes Foulkes of Merylon for the treachery, telling him 'to doo as a gentylman oughte to doo,' 234/10;—he proposes certain terms of peace, 234/12, which Foulkes scornfully rejects, 235/1;—he and his brethren prepare to fight, 235/14, and they go among st their foes, 235/30;—he is overthrown by Foulkes, 236/6, but quickly rising, he clove Foulkes 'into the harde teeth, and felde hym decd to the erthe,' 236/30;—he kills many dukes, earls, and knights, 237/21;—he is mad with anger when he sees that Guychard has been taken prisoner, 239/4, and sets out to rescue him, making a 'grete noysse wyth his swerde amongst his enmyes,' 239/25;—he finds his brother Richard, 243/30, whom he causes to be taken up the rock by Alarde, whilst he and Guychard 'rowme the wavse,' 245/5;—his great feats of arms, 245/18;—he j opards himself as a man desperate, 245/23;—he tells Guynard and Ogier that he will never yield, 247/27;—he tells his brethren he will never yield, nor will he forsake them, 249/7;—he casts great stones on his enemies, 249/28;—he threatens to slay Ogier, 251/12;—he binds up the wounds of his brethren, 251/27, and gathers a heap of stones, 251/35;—he bewails the absence of Mawgis and Bayard, 253/5, and weeps for his brethren, 253/15;—he rests himself, 253/21, and sees Mawgis, mounted on Bayard, coming with his folk, 258/28, of which he informs his brethren, 259/5;—he takes Richard in his arms, and shows him Mawgis, 259/26;—he and his two brethren descend the rock, 260/12, and he counsels Ogier to flee, 260/32;—Bayard smells his lord, and ran mightily and kneeled before him, 262/9;—he arms himself, and leaps upon Bayard, 262/22, and runs upon Ogier, striking him to the ground, 262/32;—he causes Ogier to remount, 263/4, and bids him keep away, 263/8;—his sarcastic address to Ogier, after the latter had crossed the river in the general retreat, 264/12;—Ogier recrosses the river, and the fight is renewed, 266/33, and R. wounds Ogier, 267/25;—he again taunts Ogier (who had once more crossed the river), 268/29, and wishes himself to cross the river to again renew the fight, 269/12;—he returns to the rock Mountbrun, 276/1, and falls into a swoon when he sees the sad state of Richard, 276/7;—he consents to do the bidding of Mawgis, 277/4;—he spurns his children, and upbraids his wife, for the treachery of her brother, 285/17, but, on the entreaty of his brethren, he makes peace with her, 287/11;—the message of King John is delivered to him, 287/18;—he recounts the story of his life, 288—290, and resolves to rescue King John, 290/17, for which he is thanked by the Gascons, 290/30, and for which purpose he makes preparations, 291/8, and arrives at the camp of Roland, 292/12;—he orders the plan of battle, 293/17, and prays 'even
man doth his parte wyth all his power;" 293/30;—his brethren try to persuade him not to fight with Roland, 294/3, but he will not listen to them, 294/7, and goes before his host fully armed, 294/22;—he hastily approaches Roland, 295/28, alights on foot, 296/1, appealing for mercy, and offering terms of peace, 296/6;—he remounts Bayard, 296/30, and offers to engage in single combat with Roland, 297/17;—he puts himself among the thickest of the frenshemen, 298/35, and crying "Mountalban!" makes great slaughter of them, 299/9;—he fights with Roland, 300/22—304/16;—he receives the traitor King John, 305/19, whom he unbinds and reproaches for his treachery, 306/10;—he learns that Richard has been taken prisoner, 310/8, his grief thereat, 310/17, and he sets out to rescue him, but is restrained by his brothers, 310/27, and they return to Mountalban, 312/25;—he swoons when Mawgis returns without Richard, 321/14, but is recomforted by Mawgis, 322/14;—he sets out with Mawgis and his brethren for Mountfawcon, 322/24, they put themselves in ambush, 323/6, and, being very weary, fall asleep, 323/20, from which they are awakened by Bayard, 337/29;—he leaps to his feet, and seeth Richard on the ladder, and quickly lighting on Bayard, he rushes to rescue him, 338/3;—he slays Ripus, and releases Richard, 339/26;—he encases Richard in the armour of Ripus, 340/8, and hangs the corpse of the latter on the gallows, 340/13;—he tells Mawgis who it was that waked him, 340/22;—he comes to the succour of Richard, 345/27;—he fights with C. (though unknowingly), 346/24, and, when he understands who it is, he withdraws, 346/33, blaming himself, 346/35, asking pardon of the Emperor, 347/10, begging for peace, 348/1, offering Mountalban and Bayard therefor, 348/3, and also he and Mawgis will go and fight against the Turks, 348/13;—he argues with C., 348, 349, but the latter will not listen, and reneweth the attack, 349/28;—he catches the king in his arms (because he would not smite him), and lays him on the neck of Bayard, 350/5;—he is attacked by Roland, 351/7, and lets C. fall down, 351/22;—he orders the greater part of his folk to return to Mountalban, 353/25, and himself going straight to C.'s pavilion, he cuts the cords thereof, making it fall down, 354/27, and, with the help of Mawgis, possesses himself of the golden eagle, 355/3;—he withdraws his folk from the battle, 357/29, and returns to Mountalban, 362/13, and inquires after Mawgis, 362/22;—he and his brethren grieve for Mawgis, 363/2, of whom he goes in search, 363/33, and learns that Mawgis is a prisoner in C.'s hands, 364/16;—he meets with Mawgis, 372/32;—he causes C.'s golden eagle to be set on the high tower of Mountalban, 375/1;—he honourably receives the envoys of the king, 377/1, and consents to his conditions of peace, 379/1;—he restores the peers' swords, the crown and the golden eagle to Ogier, 379/6;—he consents to go to C., 380/1;—he abides with Bishop Turpin while Ogier goes to find out C.'s intentions, 381/3;—he fears that he is betrayed, 383/20, and accuses the Bishop of treachery, 383/23;—he requests Oliver to render him the courtesy he owes him, 383/32;—he is led to C., 385/5, and after some hot words from C., 386/17, a duel is arranged, 387/16, and he returns to Mountalban, 387/28, where he recounts the news, 387/32;—he makes a feast that evening, 388/5, hears mass in the morning, and takes leave of his wife and friends, 388/11;—he leaves Mawgis in charge of the castle.

1 An early synonym of this saying, 'England expects this day each man to do his duty.'
388/33, and departs for the place 'there, as the bataylle shold be doen,' 389/6;—he meets with Roland, and they exchange mutual courteous speeches, 390/20;—the fight commences, 391/, and is continued with varying fortune till Roland yields himself, 391—393;—he and Roland ride fast to Mountalban, 394/28;—he finds out the castle is besieged, 396/16, and adopts Roland's advice, 397/1;—he marvels at C.'s hard-heartedness, 398/11;—he shows C. (who had been brought thither by the magic of Mawgis) to his brethren, 402/10, and counsels that no harm shall be done him, 403/4;—he goes to Roland's chamber, and thither summons the other Frenchmen, 403/22, and explains to them the capture of the Emperor, 404/1;—he takes them to the place where C. lies fast asleep ('for Mawgys had charmed him so hard'), 405/4;—he tells Roland that he will not say a foul word to his lord, 405/19, and goes in search of Mawgis, 405/24, for whom he weeps when he knows the cause of his departure, 406/12;—he pleads for peace with the Emperor, 409/6, and beseeches the peers of France to support his appeal, 410/17;—he tells Roland that since C. will not grant peace, he will seek his own right, 411/18, and tells the king that he may go hence, 411/25;—he is displeased with his brother Richard, 412/22;—he orders Bayard to be brought for C., 412/29, whom he conveys to the gate of Mountalban, 413/16;—when he sees that Bayard has been returned, 414/4, he gives the barons of France leave to go, 414/11, who courteously take leave of the Lady Clare, 415/4;—he accompanies them to the gate, 415/21, and commending them to God, 415/23, they take leave of him, 415/28;—he perceives the beginning of the second assault on the castle, 420/6, and performs great feats of arms, 420/24;—his prayer to God when he discovers C.'s intention of starving him out, 421/19;—his grief when he sees the piteous condition to which his folk are reduced, 426/3;—he orders a horse to be slain for food, 426/35;—after all the horses had been eaten, except those belonging to the four brethren, he advises them to let one of theirs be slain, 427/13;—he bewails his evil state, 428/22;—when it is suggested that Bayard should be eaten, 429/26, he prays that 'a fore ye slee hym, that ye slee me; For I may not see hym dey,' 429/30, but his heart becomes tender and he consents, 430/22, though when the crisis comes, he again says he would rather slay himself before Bayard is slain, 430/28;—he promises to get food for them, 431/5, proposes going to see his father, 431/12, and comes to his father's tent, 431/22;—he speaks to Aymon, 431/28, and tells him that they all die for hunger, 431/35;—he has permission from Aymon to take what he can find, 432/35, and, lading Bayard with bread and flesh, 433/7, returns to Mountalban, 433/11, where they all made great joy and eat their fill, 433/23;—he finds the victuals that his father had caused to be cast into the castle, 434/25, which begin 'sore to mynysshe,' 436/24, and he goes to Bayard to slay him, 437/5, but he has not the heart to do him harm, 437/9, on which his younger son rebukes him for delaying, 437/11, and after long thought, he 'made baiarde be leten blode moche,' 437/25;—he and his company are brought very low, 438/7, when an old man comes to him, and offers to show him a way out of Mountalban, 438/10, whereas he was so glad that he forgot his hunger, 438/24, and causing the entrance to be dug out, he and all his folk quit the castle, 439/1;—he returns and brings out the traitor King John, who had been left in the prison, 439/21;—they find themselves at the Wood of the Serpent, 440/8;—he advises his men not to separate, 441/3, and coming to the monastery, where he finds Bernard,
he begs food of him, 441/15;—he bids farewell to Bernard, 442/19, and, with his followers, comes to the city of Ardeyne, 442/25, and is well received by the citizens, 442/28;—when he perceives that C. would again besiege him, he swears he will not be besieged, but would rather fight with C., 447/23, for which saying his brother Richard praises him, 447/31;—he calls his folk together and they issue out of the city, 448/12, and he ordains his battles as a ‘wyse fyghter,’ 448/17;—he exhorts his brethren to show themselves good knights, 448/19;—he chooses a hundred knights to be with him in the first battle, 448/30;—mounted on Bayard, he goes upon the folk of C., 449/9, whom he approaches, and pleads for peace, 450/31, which not being granted, he says, ‘Syr Kyngge of Franc, I defe ye1’ 451/10, and after smiting a knight, he returns to his own folk, 451/13;—he slays many of the enemy and rejoices his folk, 452/16;—his folk give way before the Frenchmen, 453/22, and he orders the retreat into Ardeyne, 454/16, himself bringing up the rear, 454/22, slaying more than a hundred of the pursuers, 454/34, and when all were within Ardeyne, he made the gates be shut, 455/10;—he causes the prisoner, Richard of Normandy, to be brought before him, 457/3, threatens him with death, unless peace is made, 457/9, and has him put in irons, but otherwise behaves courteously, 457/21;—he and his brethren often issue out of the city, 457/34, and take many prisoners, 458/2;—he begins to suspect that the ‘goode man’ before him is Mawgis, 463/22, of which when he is assured, ‘he had not be soo glad yt men had gyven hym the halve of all the worlde,’ 464/12;—he asks Mawgis to relate his story, 465/6;—he shows Mawgis to his brethren, whose ‘hertes rose in their belies for joye,’ 465/21;—he orders a fresh outfit for Mawgis, 466/1, and conveys him to the city gate, 467/14;—he sees come the messengers from C., 471/1;—his angry reply to them, 471/23, bidding them tell their king that he will hang Richard of Normandy on the morrow, 472/11;—he refuses to let Ogier see the Duke, 472/25;—he tells his brethren that he intends to hang Richard of Normandy, 476/11, and causes the gibbet to be dressed in the sight of C. and his host, 476/28;—he sends ten of his men to fetch the Duke, 477/21, of whom the Duke slays three, and the rest take to flight, 478/10;—he and his brethren go towards the tower where Richard was, 479/25;—his colloquy with Richard, 479, 480;—he has him brought to the gallows, 481/1, and tells him that he must either cause peace to be made, or be hanged, 481/3;—he bids one of his folk go to the Duke, and do what he is told, 481/21;—the messenger relates to him how C. will have no peace, 486/16;—he tells Richard how the peers have deserted C., 486/21, and craves his pardon for the shame done to him, 487/1, releasing him from the gallows, 487/7, and tells him to lean on this wall and see what C. will do, 487/11;—he perceives the messenger sent after the peers, 487/31, and their return to C., 488/24;—he goes to meet the messenger of peace, 489/19, and offers to do all—and more if necessary—that C. requires of him, 490/2;—he gives Bayard in charge to Duke Naymes, 490/12, and hangs his banner on the tower in token that he accepts the conditions of the peace, 490/14;—he arrays himself as a pilgrim, 491/5, and commends his wife and children to Duke Richard, 491/10;—he tries to soothe his lady, who had swooned, 491/20, ‘and them he toke on his waye,’ 491/27, and takes leave of his brethren and Duke Richard, 492/14;—he departs for the Holy Land, and arrives at Constantinople, 498/9, where he meets with his cousin Mawgis, 498/25, to whom he rehearses the treaty of peace, 499/4;—he and Mawgis come
'but a lityll myle fro Jerusalem, 500/2, and they see a great host about the city, 500/11;—he inquires who they are before the city, 500/25, and learns how it had been betrayed, 501;—he sees the cruel battle between the Christians and Saracens, and wishes that he had his harness, 503, 18, and laments that he has not Bayard and Flambrerde, 504, 5;—He is angry when the Turks trample down his lodging, 504, 32, and taking a fork 'with bothe his handes,' he smote them down two & two at ones, as swynes,' 505, 1; he is interviewed by the Earl Rames, to whom he relates his story, 506, 507;—he accepts the leadership of the barons of Syria, and accepts their homage, 508, 23;—he is honorably entertained by the Earl Rames, and lodged in his pavilion, 509, 1;—he is offered many valuable things, 509, 16, but accepts only 'a complete harness for his body, a swende, and an horse,' 509, 22, dealing the remainder to the poor knights. 509, 23;—he advises the barons of Syria to assault the city, 512, 6, but while thus devising, the Persians issue out, 512, 12;—he instantly arms himself, 512, 14, and they ordain their battles as well as they could. 512, 28;—he slays King Margary, 513, 10 and seeing the 'merveylles of armes' performed by Mawgis, he asks Earl Rames if he 'sawe ever so good an hermyte,' 513, 27;—he puts himself in the battle 'as a wolfe amonge a folk of shepe,' 515, 25;—he slays many of the Turks or Persians, 515, 516;—he picks up a great bale of timber, 517, 17, which he puts under the portcullis of the gate of the city, so that it could not be shut, 518, 7, and he enters Jerusalem, followed by the barons and Mawgis, 518, 19;—he keeps the gate till a great part of the Christians are within the city, 518, 32, and calls Mawgis to take care of this gate, while he goes to open another, 519, 1;—he commands the tower where King Thomas is kept prisoner to be assaulted, 521, 21, and is the first to climb up the ladders, 521, 24;—seeing the perilous condition of King Thomas, he offers peace to Barbass, 522, 28;—his meeting with King Thomas, 523, 12, who entertains him honourably, 524, 15;—he takes leave of King Thomas, and entering a ship, arrives at Palermo, 524, 27, where he is welcomed by King Simon, 525, 17;—he again makes great slaughter of the Persians, 527, 12;—he is sorry when he finds that Barbass is safe aboard, 529, 10, and he causes his ship to be burnt with 'boltes of wylde fyre,' 529, 4;—he is thanked by King Simon for his prowess, 529, 20, and honourably entertained, and taking leave of Simon, he comes to Rome, confesses to the Pope, and finally reaches Ardeyne, 530;—his brethren swoon for joy when they see him, 531, 3, and he relates his adventures, 531, 15;—he is comforted when he hears that his wife and children are well, 531, 32, but observing the deception played on him by his brethren, he tells them he awaits to hear some heavy tidings, 532, 3, and swoons for sorrow when the manner of the Lady Clare's death has been rehearsed to him, 532, 20;—when he sees her tomb, he swoons thrice, 533, 3;—when he sees his children, he tells them to be good, 'for fere ye shall myssse me no,' 533, 19;—he takes his way to Mountsalban, 533, 25, where he is received with great joy, 534, 2;—he vows never to marry again, 534, 24;—he parts his inheritance amongst his brethren, 535, 31, and married them all nobly and richly, 536, 2;—he dwells at Mountsalban with his children, endoctrinating them in good and virtuous manners, and in the use of arms, 536, 7, tells them it is time they were made knights, 536, 20, and promises to send them to Paris come seven nights, 536, 34;—he causes proper outfits to be prepared for his sons, 537, appoints five hundred knights to bear them company, 538, 1, and giving them good counsel and his blessing, he
weepingly bids them farewell, 538, 539;—he is sent for by C. to come to Paris, 547/27, and calling his brethren to him, 548/5, they all arrive at Paris, 548/31, where they are joyfully received, 549/3;—he extols his sons, 549/5, and has an interview with C., 549/16;—his sons relate to him their adventures, 549/25;—he thanks C. for the worship done to his children, 550/6;—he and his brethren cast themselves at the king's feet, thanking him for the unity and concord that has been established between them, 550/16;—he instructs his sons how to conduct themselves in tomorrow's battle, 552/1;—he gives his good sword Flambert to Aymonet, 554/4, and after blessing his sons, he brings them to the Isle of our Lady, 554/12;—he is made acquainted with the treachery of Gryffen of Haute- branche, 554/18, and orders his brother Richard to take measures to guard against its accomplishment, 554/27;—he returns to the palace of the king, 555/12, and tells him not to be suspicious of Richard, 555/20, and they and others go up the Tower of Seine, 555/23;—he acquaints the king with the reason why Richard has gone on with so great fellowship, 556/9, and this he repeats to Roland, 558/10;—he thanks God much when he perceives that his sons have vanquished the children of Foulkes, 569/19, abides in Paris till they are made whole of their wounds, 570/3, and taking leave of C., 570/8, they all depart for Mountalban, 570/13;—he rests at Bordeaux, and there calling his sons, gives Arden to Jonnet, and Mountalban to Aymonet, 570/17;—his brethren, foreseeing that he means to dedicate himself to the service of God, make great sorrow, 570/26, for which he rebukes them, 570/29;—he arrives at Mountalban, where he tells his subjects that they must pay their homage to Aymonet, 571/13;—then, laying aside his clothing, he dons the garb of a hermit, 571/18, and leaving the palace, comes to the town gate, 571/24, and bids the porter to tell his brethren on the morrow that he has gone to do penance to save his soul, 572/1;—he gives the porter a ring, and goes on his way, 572/12;—he wanders through the woods a long while, and finally reaches Cologne, where the church of St. Peter is being built, 576/18, and he obtains employment in carrying stones and mortar, 577, 578, and will only accept a penny a day to buy bread with, 579/20;—the other labourers become envious of him, 580/18, and they agree to slay him, 580/30;—he is slain next day as he slept with the stroke of a hammer, and feeling the stroke, his last prayer was his son departed from his body was that Jesus would pardon those who had brought him to his death, 581/21;—his body is put into a sack, and cast into the Rhine, 581/34, but did not go to the bottom of the water, 582/28;—all the fish of the river gather about the corpse, and keep it upon the water, 582/31, and torches appeared round it, so that the folk weened that the river was on fire, 583/4;—it is discovered to be the corpse of R., 583/29;—it is brought to land, and mass said over it in the church, 584/12;—the corpse rises up, and was borne out of the church to the cart in which it had been brought there, 584/28;—the cart containing the corpse proceeds in a miraculous manner followed by all the people of Cologne, till it comes to the little town of Croyne, where it stops, 585/15, and here our Lord worked many miracles for love of the holy body, 585/18;—the visage of the corpse is uncovered so that it may be recognized, 586/4;—his brethren hear from a pilgrim of the remarkable events, 586/24, and they weep for pity of R., 589/1;—they arrive at Croyne, and recognize their brother, over whom they sore lament, 589/13;—the corpse is entombed, he is called St. Repnawde the Martyr, and the memory of him is put in writing, 590—592.
Renyer, one of C.'s peers, 69/22;—he is placed in front of the 'masters gate' at Mountaynford, 76/31.


Riplenond, Rypus of, nephew of Foulkes of Morillon, commanded by C. to hang Richard, 333/5;—he willingly consents because Richard slew his uncle at Balencen, 333/9;—he takes the oaths of the Twelve Peers that they will do him no hurt when he returns, 333/20;—he leads Richard forth to the gallows, 334/7;—arrived at Mountawen, he shows Richard the gallows, and tells him he will hang him with his own hand, 334/20;—he grants permission to Richard to repeat his orison ('wherof he dyd like a foole'), 336 5;—he is abashed when he sees R., tells Richard he is delivered, begs his mercy, and tells him to go down from the ladder, 338;—he is reproved by R. and Mawgis, 339/19, and slain by R. with his sword Flambeur, 339/26;—his body is stripped of his armour, and trussed up on the gallows with the halter round his neck, 340.

Rohars (Rohart), a son of Foulkes of Morillon, possesses a false heart, 541/1;—he conspires with his brother to harm the sons of R., 543/12;—being angry for C.'s reproach to his brother, he throws down his gage and offers to fight Aymonet, 545/33;—C. tells him he takes a wrong way, and it will be overlate when he shall repent it, 546/1;—he is severely wounded and unhorsed by Yonnet, 563/6;—he is overthrown by Aymonet, 565/17;—Yonnet cuts off one of his arms, and smites him on the bare head, 567/29;—he cries for mercy, which he does not obtain, 568/8, but loses a leg, and finally his head, 568/14;—his body is drawn at horses' tails and hanged with that of Constans, 569/3.

Roncaveaux, the treason at the battle of, hinted at, 569/18.

Roussillon, Roussillon, Roussillon, Duke Rycharde (also called Gerarde) of, had not done the bidding of C., 17/8;—comes to help Duke Benes, 39/13;—he is informed of the approach of C., against whose host he proceeds, 41/23;—he slays an Almayn, and raises his war-cry, 42/7;—he slays one of Ogier's men, 42/8;—he counsels Nantuell that they should turn back, 43/20, and sends to Duke Benes for aid, 43/28;—his nephew is killed by Walleron of Bollon, 43/24;—he is overthrown by C., 45/19;—he counsels that the fight be renewed on the morrow, 46/15;—he adopts Nantuell's advice, and sends messengers to C., lamenting the death of Lohier, and offering their allegiance, 47/1;—he recommends that they all take off their 'good gownes,' and go naked before C., crying him mercy, 49/24.

Rowlaxe of Bretayn (nephew of C.), first meets with C., 162/22;—he is made a knight, 163/6;—he offers to go and raise the siege of Cologne, 163/21;—he goes to Cologne, puts the Saracens to rout, and, taking prisoner Escorfawde, brings him back with himself to Paris, 164—166;—he intercedes for Escoffawde, 166/28;—he advises C. to exile R., 182/3;—he is put in command of C.'s host, 188/6;—he pitches his tent at Balencen, 191/20;—he marvels at the strength of Mountalban, 192/1, and says that they will never be able to take it, 192/5;—he extols R.'s character, 192/16;—he goes hawking, 192/28;—he gets a hint of what has been done at Balencen during his absence, 199/29, whereat he is astonished, 200/12, and calls upon his barons for counsel, and, fearing the wrath of C., offers to go to the Holy Land, but is recomforted by Bishop Turpin, 200/34;—he returns to C.'s camp (with a hundred followers all afoot because they had lost their horses). and is so ashamed
that he remains hid in Duke Naymes's tent, for he dare look no man in the face, 201/4;—he sharply reproves Ogier, whom he calls a coward, 272/4;—he is ‘wounderful wrothe,’ when he hears Ogier's rebuke, and advances against him to smite him, 273/1;—he is rebuked by Duke Naymes, and advised by C. to keep quiet, 273/12;—he tells Ogier that he shall be glad to meet it. mounted on Bayard, 274/30;—he is informed by Pygwaude of the flight of King John, 280/18, and also of the whereabouts of the Four Sons and Mawgis, 280/30;—he thanks Pygwaude, and tells him he deserves a great reward, 281/1;—he calls his knights to follow him and tells Ogier to go also, so that he may see the great prowess of R., 281/4;—he comes to St. Lazare, 'seeking,' he tells the Abbot, 'the falseste traytour of the worlde,' 281/24;—he deals roughly with the Abbot when the latter refuses to yield King John, 282/4;—he enters the cloister, finding King John on his knees before an image of the Virgin, 282/17;—he derides King John for the failure of his treachery, and blindfolding him, places him on a horse with his face to the tail, 282/23, and returns with him and his company to Mountfawcon, 283/33;—he espies the coming of R.'s forces, 292/15, and swears to Ogier that before evening it shall be seen who shall be master, 293/8;—he sets his battle in order, 293/15;—he asks his friends what they think of R.'s battle array, 294/26;—stung to the quick, because of the praise bestowed on R., he rushes against him, 295/19;—he tells R. he cannot accept the proposed terms of peace unless Mawgis is delivered to him, 296/24;—he comes to an agreement with R. for a single combat, and departs to take leave of his fellows, 297/24;—he tells Oliver and the others that R. has required to fight with him 'body to body,' 298/5, but his barons dissuade him from the single combat, 298/14, to which he agrees, 298/22, and shouting Mountjoy St. Denis! he commences the battle at Mountfawcon, 298/28;—he calls on R. to come to single combat, 300/13, the duel forthwith commences, 300/22,;—he is unhorsed, 302/13;—in his wrath he would cut off Melantes' head, 302/24, and seeing how Bayard is dealing with Melantes, he turns to smite Bayard, 303/4;—he is mocked by R., 303/12, 29;—he cleaves R.'s shield, 304/4, and gibes back at R., 304/8;—he calls sornfully after R., 304/32;—he is withheld from going to the Wood of the Serpent with R. to finish the combat, 305/14;—his folk are discomfited, and all ashamed, 308/4;—he is mocked by Ogier, and runs upon him with his sword, but is stayed by Oliver, 308/10;—he fights with Richard, 308/30, and calls on him to surrender, 309/25;—he brings Richard to C. as a prisoner, 319/12;—he is prayed by C. to go and see Richard hanged, and offered therefor the city of Cologne, 326/8;—he refuses to do the bidding of C., prays the Twelve Peers not to take the charge on them, and threatens to forswear C. and serve under R., 326/14;—he vows to keep his promise to Richard, 332/13;—he attacks R. so fiercely that the latter has to let go of C., 351/5, but being himself attacked by R.'s brothers, he puts himself to flight, 351/24;—he reproaches C., 352/19;—he restrains C. from striking Mawgis, 370/6;—he and the other Peers are awakened by C., 371/19;—he comes to Balencon to take R., 384/10;

1 With his usual bias, the chronicler has made R. put his sword Flamberd in the sheath, awaiting with his spear only the onslaught of Roland. The kingsmen of R., apparently deeming the contest to be unequal (with the exception of Ogier, who tells them that R. is no child to be made afraid so lightly as they trow), induce Oliver to remonstrate with Roland, who then, 'like as a curteys man,' did as he was told, and 'toke a spere' (pp. 300–302).
—he brings R. into C.'s pavilion, 385/7;—he offers to fight for C. against R., 387/19;—he prepares for the combat, and receives C.'s blessing, 390/2;—he arrives at the 'pintre' of Mountfawcon [here fortuitously printed Mountalban], and meets with R., and after the usual amenities have passed, the fight begins, 390/20, but eventually Roland surrenders to R., because he knows well that R. is in the right, and that he is in the wrong, 393/22;—he is entertained by R. at Mountalban in a princely manner, 394/27;—he is told by R. of C.'s designs against the castle, 396/18, and R. is counselled by him to send to C. stating how honourably he is treated, and that R. is willing to surrender the castle, 396/22;—he is awakened by R., who tells him to assemble the other barons of C. and when they are all come, R. tells them that C. is his prisoner, 403/23, whereat he is amazed, 404/21;—he views C., who had been 'cherished so hard,' that he cannot be awakened, 405/4;—he marvels at the manuquete of R., 412/1;—he is released by R., 414, 6, and takes his leave of the Lady Clare, 415/5;—he comes before C., 416/5;—he tells C. that Mawgis has gone from Mountalban, 417/14;—he enters the secret way by which R. had gone from Mountalban, and reports the result to C., 415/26;—he counsels C. to make peace, 455/26;—he tells C. that he will not see Richard of Normandy until he makes peace with R., 468/22;—he tells C. that if Duke Richard is hanged, it will be all through his (C.'s) pride, 473/17;—he threatens C. that if the Duke Richard is hanged, he will quit C.'s service, 475/25;—he first espies the preparations for the hanging of Duke Richard, 476/30, and acquaints C. thereof, 476/32;—he supplements Duke Richard of Normandy's appeal to C. to make peace with R., 482/24;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/31;—he is not content when he sees Richard and his folk in arms, 557/4;—he cries out at the traitor Gryffen of Hantebranche, 557/17;—he tells C. that none can beware of traitors, 558/1;—he praises R. and Richard for acting as good knights should do, 558/20.

RYCHARDE, the youngest son of AYMON, at the court at Paris, 16/24;—is knighted by C., 31/21;—he comes to C.'s court at Paris, 53/17;—he perceives the host of C. coming to Mountaynford, and tells his brother Gnycharde, 70/13;—he slays king Yon of St. Omars, 82/25; and captures his horse, 82/26;—he encourages R., 133/1;—he fears that R. is being chased, 170/30;—he is overthrown by Ogier, but quickly rises up again, 197/4;—his heart shakes for fear of betrayal, 228/25, and he rebukes R. for not taking the good advice offered him, 229/4;—he is the first to repent of having doubted R., 230/25;—he flees to the rock Mountbrun, 238/22;—he slays many earls and knights, 240/31;—he is wounded by Gerarde of Valcome, whom he forthwith slays outright, 241;—he laments the absence of his brethren, and prays God to succour them, 242;—he is discovered by R., 243/25;—he recovers from his swoon, and counsels R. that they should go to the top of the rock, 244/24;—he asks R. to bind up his belly, so that he may help in the fight, 250/1;—he is lifted up by R. to see the coming of Mawgis, 259/26;—he abides at the top of the hill because he could not move, 260/9;—his brothers and Mawgis lament over his evil condition, 276;—he is made whole of his wounds by Mawgis, 277/15, and inquires after Ogier and his folk, 277/32;—he is mounted on a horse, and they all return to Mountalban, 278/14;—he counsels his brothers to beg R. to pardon the Lady Clare, 286/18;—he tells his brethren that they shall do the will of R., 290/23;—he fights as valiantly as R., and calls on the latter to give some of his
great strokes upon the Frenchmen, 309/16;—he fights with Roland, and is unhorsed, 308/30;—he is attacked by forty Frenchmen all at once, and his horse is killed under him, 309/12;—he is smitten by Humall the Breton, 309/19, and overthrown by the Earl Guydellon from behind, 309/22;—he yields himself to Roland, 309/27, and is set upon a mawle, 310/1;—his servant acquaints R. with the case, 310/8;—he is brought before C. as a prisoner, 318/12;—he is derided by C., whom he sharply answers, 319/15;—he wrestles with C., and they both fall, 320/1;—whilst engaged in mutual recrimination with C., he turns and sees Mawgis, wherein he becomes sure of his life, 320;—he hears C. call separately on each of his peers to hang him, and also their refusal, 324—328;—he thanks the barons for travailing themselves for him, but advises them not to lose the grace of C., 331/18;—he is reproached by Ogier, 331/31;—he pardons Roland, 332/4;—he tells Ogier that he had seen Mawgis 'ryghtnow;' 332/16;—he is delivered to Rypus of Riplemonde, and led forth to execution, 334/4;—he begs Rypus to have pity upon him, 334/32;—he asks for a priest to shrieve him, 335/9, and when the priest ('som sayen that he was a bysshopp') came, he relates 'many moo synnes than ever he dyd,' and this was 'for to lengthe the tyme,' 335/12;—he receives absolution, 335/20, and asks Rypus for time to say an orison that he 'dyde lerne in his yowthe,' 335/30;—he offers up his prayers, and then resigns himself to Rypus, 336;—he is perceived by his brethren, 338/3, and told by Rypus of his release, 338/18;—he is brought down the ladder by R., 339/31;—he puts on the armour of Rypus, 340/7;—he relates the goodness of the barons of France, and begs permission to show himself to Ogier before returning to Mountalban, 341/9;—he goes to the host of C., bearing the banner of Rypus, 342/5, which deceives C. and the barons, 342/14;—he makes himself known to Ogier, and tells him the fate of Rypus, 343/23;—he tells C. who he is, recounting the fate of Rypus, and defying him, 344/16, and they fight each other, 344/30;—he is unhorsed, but quickly aims such a stroke at C. that he kills his horse, 345/3;—he sounds his horn, and his brothers come to his succour, 345/20;—he cuts the cords of C.'s pavilion, making it to fall down, 354/27;—he is angry with R. for returning C.'s golden eagle, 379/13;—he counsels R. to hang C. forthwith, and offers to do the job himself at once, 402/16, but afterwards counsels that R. should do his own will in the matter, 403/15;—bawling the departure of Mawgis, he would have slain C., but is restrained therefrom by R., 406/20;—he admonishes C. to be more circumspect in his language, 408/15;—he considers R. to be mad and working great folly in releasing C., 412/5;—he retorts upon R. that he should have made peace with C., when the latter was their prisoner, 421/24;—he points out to R. how much better they had fared if his counsel had been followed, and grieves over their present distress, 422/20;—he tells R. that he will not have his horse slain for food, because it is R.'s great pride that has brought them to their present plight, 427/15;—but being rebuked by Aymonnet, he consents, and his horse is slain and 'ful savourly' eaten, 428, and he is willing to yield up his own flesh if it would comfort R., 429;—he tells R. that now he speaks like a knight, and that he will slay more than a hundred of C.'s men, because C. is 1

1 Reynawde had apparently been dealing small strokes like those of the 'lityll Rycharde,' because he did not wish to be thought more of might than Richard, that is, in the choice, sly humour of the text, 'Reynawde faughte not for to loke the better upon hym' (T. c. Richard).
NAME INDEX.

not mannered like a gentyllman,' 447/32 ;—he makes a prisoner of Richard Duke of Normandy, 455/3 ;—he counsels R. to proceed to Paris, the better to know C.'s intention, and whether any wrong has been done to R.'s sons, 548/14 ;—he goes with his followers to the Isle of Our Lady, 555/10 ;—he is suspected of treachery by C., 556/1 ;—he disarms himself and followers, and coming to C., makes him honourable reverence, 558/31 ;—he shows C. how Griffen of Hautebranche would have wronged his nephews, and vows that he will never suffer them to be wronged, 559/7 ;—his grief at the departure of R., 574/24.

Ryne (Rhine), the body of R. is cast into the river, 581/34 ;—the fishes of the, bear up the body of R., 582/31 ;—it seems to be attire owing to the miraculous light about it, 583/3.

Salamon, King, the fair, serves C. with the cup, 38/11, 61/5.
Saliene (also spelt Galiene), the 'love' of C., whom he wedded on the same day that he was crowned King of France, 327/5.
Savary, a knight, advises Lohier to deal gently with Duke Bene{s}, 21/31.
Sawmore (Saumur), the Four Sons arrive at, 62/30.
Sernoble, taken by C.'s army, 192/8.
Serpent, the Wood of the, whither King John proposes to betake himself after the failure of his treachery, 279/24 ;—R. is on his way to, when he meets King John, 305/19 ;—the secret way between Mountalban and, is discovered to R., 438/16.
Seveyne, Sayne, Hernyer of, promises C., on conditions, to yield him the Four Sons prisoners within a month, 90/1 ;—his request is granted, 90/8, and he proceeds to put his treacherous scheme in operation, 90/22 ;—he reaches Mountaynfoerde, and, pleading that he is pursued by C., is quickly admitted, 90/31 ;—he is made right welcome by R., 91/30, and tells lies about the condition of C.'s host, 92/1 ;—after supper, he is 'well and honestly brought to bed,' 92/22, but, 'as the false Judas,' he slept not, 92/24, and arising, he lets down the drawbridge, and slays the watchman, 92/30 ;—he lets in Guyon of Bourgoyne, 93/1, and then his treachery is made known to R., 93/24 ;—he sharply attacks R. and his brethren, who are in the pit, 96/5 ;—he is made prisoner, and dire retribution is taken on him as a traitor, 96—97.
Simon of Puyll, the King of Palermo, sees R. arrive, makes great cheer with him, and tells him of Barbas, 525 ;—he thanks R., and offers him all his possessions as a reward, 529/19, and after honourably feasting and entertaining R., he takes leave of him, 530/16.
Simon, Sir, a knight, gives Duke Bene{s} good counsel, 20/10.
Soysson (Soissons), the Four Sons arrive at, 63/34.
Soyssons, the battle in the valley of, between Earl Guenes and Duke Bene{s}, 52—58.
Spayne (Spain), was apparently then accounted a wealthy country, 170/22.
St. Germanye of the medowes, near Paris, 31/28 ;—burial of Lohier at, 35/26 ;—Constans and Rohars watch in the church of, the night before the fight, 552/6.
St. James in Gales (Galicia), C. goes on a pilgrimage to, 156/14.
St. John the Baptist, C.'s court at Paris on the feast of, 51/17.
St. Lazare, the Abbey of, in the Wood of the Serpent, where King John proposes to take up his residence as a monk, 279/27 ;—the Abbot of, makes King John a monk, 281/23 ;—Roland and Oliver arrive at, where
they are welcomed by the Abbot, 281/32, who's dealt savagely with by Roland, and the Prior also by Oliver, 282/4, and he and all his monks run away, leaving King John to his fate, 282/13.

St. Marcell, where the treacherous barons ambush themselves, 556/16.

St. Mychaell, Mount, R. is in a hurry to go to, naked in his 'smalle lyen clothes,' 220/9.

St. Nycolas, the chapel of, at Mountalban, 221/33, 223/33.

St. Omars, King Yon of overthrows one of R.'s knights, 82/11, but is himself slain by Richard, 82/25.

St. Peter, the church of, at Cologne, in the building of which R. assisted as a labourer, 576/18.

St. Quayntyne, Engierran of, 42/31.

St. Steyrus church at Jerusalem, 501/33;—Earl Jaffres prevents the Turks from entering Jerusalem by the gate of, 501/20.

St. Vyetor, near Paris, the jousting at, 32/16;—the church of, where the sons of R. watch the night preceding the fight, 552/6.

Steun, Sir, one of Roussillon's messengers to C., 47/26;—C.'s answer to, 48/17.

Surry (? Syria), the Barons of, tender their homage to and elect R. for their 'the de captayn,' 508/14;—they are exhort ed by Mawgis, and await the onset of Barbas, 512/19.

Symon, Sir, a knight, slain by Duke Benes, 45/4.

Talles, the tower (town) of, 512/32.

Temple, the, at Jerusalem, 500/4.

Thiery, Tycre, Thyerry, one of C.'s knight, slain by Alarde, 80/28.

Tholouse (Toulouse), conquered by Borgons, 132/31.

Tower of David at Jerusalem, 500/4, where King Thomas is kept prisoner, 519/31;—it is assailed by R., 521/24.

Tower of Sayne, where C., R., and the barons go to view the fight between Aymonet and Yonnet and Constands and Rohars, 555/22.

Troye, Aubrey of, seeks aid of C., 40/30.

Troye, Hector of, was not worth more than R., 127/28.

Troye, Pyramus (Priaun) of, never had better men to his children than are the Four Sons, 127/19.

Troyes, the town of, 39/22, besieged by Duke Benes, 40/32;—the battle at, 41 et seq.

Turfpn (Turpin), the Archbishop of Paris, 32/34;—he joins C. at Paris, 187/13;—is left in charge of Roland's forces at Balleon, 193/1;—he sees three ravens and three 'dawes' flying over Roland's pavilion, which he regards as an evil token, 194/27;—he sees the enemy come, and informs Ogier thereof, 195/2;—he fights furiously with R., 196/16;—he recomforts Roland, 200/29;—he relates to C. the disaster that has overtaken the force of Roland, 201/16;—he tells Roland that the approaching force is that of R., and they will have to fight, 292/21;—praises R. as a good guide, a valiant man, and a worthy captain, 285/13;—C. offers to make him Pope of Rome, if he will take and hang Richard, 325/14, but he refuses, 325/16;—he swears to R. that he has not betrayed him, and that he will live and die with him, 383/26;—he says mass before R.'s sons on the eve of their fight, 552/10;—he celebrates the ceremony of swearing on the sacred reli s, 559/35, and gives the benediction to R.'s sons (this was apparently withheld from the sons of Foulkes), 560/20.
Valcome, Gerarde of, cousin of Foulkes of Moryllon, grieving over the death of Foulkes, perceiving Richard, whom he so wounds that 'the guttes come oute of the body into his lappe,' 241, and he is immediately thereafter slain by Richard, 241/32.

Valery, the lordship of, given to R. by King John, 150/20.

Valots (Valois), Berenger of, is requested by C. forthwith to hang Richard, but politely refuses, 324/1.

Vaucoloures, the plain of, the spot appointed by C. and King John for the betrayal of the Four Sons, 212 5 ;—the Sons depart for, clad in scarlet, mounted on mules, bearing roses in their hands, escorted by the eight earls, and singing by the way, 224. 225 ;—they arrive at, and description of the place, 227 15 ;—the great battle at, 228—270.

Vydelon, one of C.'s barons, 104 5.

Vylaunche, the name of Roland's horse, 394/2.

Water, Sir, a knight in attendance on the Lady Clare, 144/4.

Water, Sir, a knight of Duke Baines, counsels him to submit to C., 20/10.

Wyliam the Englyssse (William the Englishman), at C.'s court, 59/12.

Ymes, one of Simon of Puyll's knights, 526/6.

Yonnet, the younger son of R., is spurned by R. in his anger at King John's treachery, 285/5 ;—he asks R. why he tarries from slaying Bayard, 437/11 ;—he promises R. to behave to his brother as a younger son should behave, 538/27 ;—he arrives at the palace of C. at Paris, 540/18 ;—he receives a knife from C., and on going to his place, accidentally shoves Constans with his elbow, 544/26 ;—he reproves Constans for his unseemly language, tells him that he lies, and defies him, throwing down his gage, 545/3 ;—he is knighted by C., 547/24 ;—he gives Rohars a stroke so that the sword entered his head a finger deep, 563/8 ;—he unhorses Rohars, and himself dismounts, 563/16 : 1—he will not call his brother to help him to slay Rohars, 567/13 ;—he cuts an arm off from Rohars, 567/29, and calls on him to acknowledge that R. was no traitor, 567/32 ;—he smites him on the bare head with the pommel of his sword, 568/5 ;—he cuts off one of his legs, again calls on him to confess, and finally smites off his head, 568/14 ;—Ardeyn is given by R. to, 570/19 ;—he takes his way there, and is received with homage, 571/8.

Yves, Sir, slain by the Saracens, 16/16.

1 No names are given to the horses; but, like Bayard, Yonnet's horse runs after that of Rohars, and would have strangled it, at which C. begins to laugh, 563/22.